The Beginner's Greek Book

WHITE

K. C. Key.

W. W. Kumbrough

W. W. Kumbrough.

d. d.

$1.50

Kerr & Co

THE

BEGINNER'S GREEK BOOK

BY

JOHN WILLIAMS WHITE, PH.D. (HARV.)

PROFESSOR OF GREEK IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY

Οὐκοῦν οἶσθ' ὅτι ἀρχὴ παντὸς ἔργου μέγιστον, ἄλλως τε καὶ νέῳ καὶ ἁπαλῷ ὁτῳοῦν; — PLAT. *Rep*, II. 377 a.

BOSTON, U.S.A.

PUBLISHED BY GINN & COMPANY

1895

Copyright, 1892,
By John Williams White.

All Rights Reserved.

Typography by J. S. Cushing & Co., Boston, U.S.A.

Presswork by Ginn & Co., Boston, U.S.A.

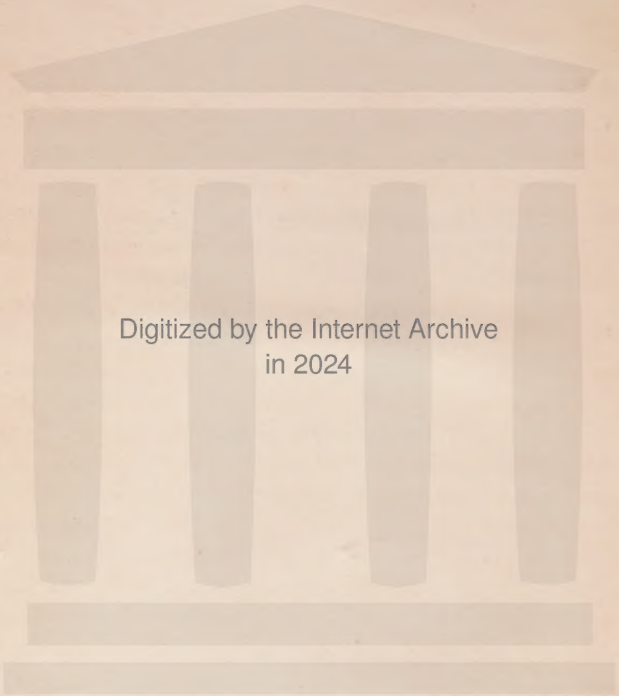
TO

PROFESSOR WILLIAM W. GOODWIN,

τοῖς φίλοις
φίλῳ, τίεσθαι δ' ἀξιωτάτῳ βροτῶν
τῶν νῦν,

THIS BOOK

IS GRATEFULLY DEDICATED.


Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2024

https://archive.org/details/beginnersgreekbo0000unse_e7q4

PREFACE.

THE Beginner's Greek Book which is here submitted to the public is complete in itself, and is intended to furnish work for the first year's study. In writing it I have assumed that the main object of elementary instruction in Greek is to teach the beginner to read; further, that the pupils who use this book will be fifteen years of age, on the average, when they take it in hand, that they will already have studied Latin for at least one year, and that they are to be fitted at the end of two years to read simple Attic prose at sight.

This book differs in important particulars, but not essentially in its plan, from my First Lessons in Greek, first published in 1876. The two books make about equal demands upon the pupil during the first six months of his study. The increased size of this book is due mainly to the fact that it is complete in itself and contains the text of the first eight chapters of Xenophon's Anabasis, with summaries of contents and notes, arranged as reading lessons. I am well aware that there is a demand in some quarters for small introductory books in teaching the elements of Greek and Latin. But the remarkable favour with which my First Lessons in Greek has been received encourages me to think that most teachers agree with me in believing that in the study of Greek at least, which is so highly inflected, it is well to lay broad and secure foundations.

In order to be able to read even simple Attic prose at sight one must know the usual forms of the Greek language, its

ordinary constructions, and its general vocabulary. These three things are absolutely necessary and are of equal importance.

In presenting forms I have employed strictly the deductive method, if so large a phrase may be applied to such elementary matters. The pupil is given a set of facts, commonly a paradigm or the like, with the necessary explanations, and is then required to observe the illustration of the general law or fact in particular instances of its use. In each of the lessons on inflexion a double set of exercises, consisting of Greek sentences to be translated into English and English sentences to be rendered into Greek, follows the facts of Grammar which form the subject of the lesson. I have small faith in the method which requires a pupil to construct the Greek paradigms from bits of text by a process called induction. Such a method of acquiring the forms of the language is unnecessarily difficult and confusing, and cannot establish its claim to afford superior mental training.

I have aimed to give only the usual forms of the language, those that will be of practical service to the pupil when he begins to read. The study of grammar should be only the means to this end. My aim in general has been to give the minimum amount of grammar. When this minimum amount has been learnt thoroughly, what else the pupil will need to know, as he reads, he will acquire naturally and easily at the time when he needs it. During the second year's study a good grammar should be constantly in hand and constantly in use. Opinions differ as to what this minimum amount is. It is a mistake to reduce it unduly, in the hope of getting on rapidly. There is no such thing as learning Greek in six easy lessons. Its forms are numerous, apparently complex, and hard to acquire; its syntax is highly developed. The first year's study of Greek is the hardest. If it is made too simple and easy, we merely defer to an evil day the acquisition of knowledge which should be got early, and bring confusion on

our pupils by setting them to read before they are properly prepared.

The verb is introduced at the first and its forms are developed alternately with those of the other parts of speech. Fifty-three of the first one hundred lessons are on the verb, twenty-nine on the other parts of speech. If this is a proper division, it is obvious that the heavy task of mastering the verb should be undertaken as early as possible. We thus also secure variety, and are able to employ from the beginning exercises for drill that consist of complete sentences. The verb is developed first by moods, later by tense systems, a method which has received the hearty approval of teachers. If the development were at first by tense-systems, the subjunctive and optative moods would be introduced at a time when it would be impossible adequately to explain their uses. But when the beginner first learns the forms of these moods, he should have the most important of their uses explained to him. If he is taught to translate the subjunctive with *may* and the optative with *might*, as if they were independent moods, he gets no adequate feeling of their force, and his confusion of mind is often permanent. He should first be taught the forms and uses of the indicative, the mood of predication, in all of its tenses and voices. He can then safely undertake the subjunctive and optative, which are mainly moods of dependence. The presentation of verbal forms a second time by tense-systems furnishes the needed review of a difficult part of speech, with the great advantage of the variety secured by a new order of development. In general reviews should not be the mere repetition of earlier lessons.

Only vowel verbs and verbs with themes in -δ are introduced in the exercises of the first fifty-nine lessons, with the exception of three common mute verbs, ἄγω, ἔχω, πέμπω, and some forms of εἰμί; and vowel verbs which contract are not introduced until the thirty-first lesson.

I have not hesitated to analyze the forms of the verb, since I believe that this is the quickest and surest way in which to learn them. It is a severe strain upon the memory of the eye and ear to attempt to retain these numerous forms as separate and individual elements. But if the pupil is given a clear conception of the significance of theme, tense stem, and personal endings, the strain is greatly relieved. He is then able to construct his paradigms by the combination of a relatively small number of facts, and is not dependent solely on his memory in recalling forms, but reclaims them by a logical process of form-building. This very process fixes them more securely in his mind. I have for the same reasons analyzed the forms of nouns of the consonant declension. The recognition here of stem and case endings as distinct elements in combination makes the acquisition of the forms easy.

Since the exercises of the lessons consist of sentences and not of phrases, in developing the forms I have had to deal also with laws of construction. Principles of syntax are presented inductively as needed. Examples are given and the general law is developed from particular instances of its use.[1] But the subject of syntax is not made prominent in the first one hundred lessons. Principles which hold good also in Latin or English or in both are taken for granted, being at most referred to in a foot-note. Moreover, single occurrences of constructions not in themselves difficult are explained by a mere statement of the fact in a foot-note. Difficult constructions have been avoided in selecting the sentences for these exercises, and with the same object in view the sentences have often been simplified.

The subject of syntax is formally presented in nineteen lessons at the end of the book, which are arranged alternately with lessons for reading. Each of the lessons on syntax contains three parts: first, a Greek exercise consisting of num-

[1] See §§ 89, 173, 222, 270, 272, *etc.*

bered sentences which illustrate a given set of principles; secondly, statements, in the form of rules, of the laws of construction thus illustrated, each rule having prefixed to it, with comment, the numbers of the sentences which establish it as a law; thirdly, an English exercise consisting of sentences to be rendered into Greek, in which the pupil will apply constructively the principles just reached by induction. Lessons of just this constitution have never before been used, to my knowledge, in any elementary Greek book.

Fourteen of the first one hundred lessons are solely devoted to the study of words and to the art of reading. These fourteen lessons mark a significant departure from the methods of most elementary Greek books, especially in the attention here given to the systematic acquisition of a vocabulary.

The meagreness of the vocabulary of most pupils who enter college from the schools is an evil not to be ignored. There is no good reason why this evil should exist at all. The vocabulary of ancient Greek is copious; but one does not need to know a multitude of words in order to be able to read with facility. The important words to fix in the memory are the root or stem words; with these the words that are related to them in form and meaning, the two tests by which we establish the relationship of words in etymologizing, naturally group themselves. The very great majority of Greek words are either derivatives or compounds. But the beginner's approach to the use of the group system must be gradual.

The words used in this book, with a few exceptions, occur in Xenophon's Anabasis, and my aim has been to select for use those which occur there the oftenest. In the eleven lessons that follow the four introductory lessons one hundred and sixty-five words are used. One hundred and thirteen are nouns, twenty-six are verbs. These nouns occur in the Anabasis over thirty-five hundred times; on the average each noun occurs over thirty times. The verbs occur more than twenty-two hundred times; if εἰμί is thrown out of the count, each of

the other twenty-five verbs occurs in the Anabasis on the average some forty times.

There are forty special vocabularies in this book. Each of these contains all of the words in the exercises of the lesson of which it is a part that have not occurred in previous lessons or do not occur in the lesson itself in the part that precedes the exercises. No use of the general vocabulary need be made before the fifty-eighth lesson. The words in the forty special vocabularies are collected in five lists for review. The principle of associating Greek words that are related in form and meaning is first applied in the sixteenth lesson. It is gradually made more and more prominent in the following special vocabularies and lists. No stress is laid on the relationship of Greek words to English words in these early lessons. It is silently indicated by the use of different types. Nothing is said about the connexion of Greek words with Latin words until the fifty-seventh lesson. The important thing to do first is to confirm the pupil in the habit of tracing the relationship of Greek words among themselves, so that when a new word is met his first inquiry will be whether it is not related to some other word that has previously occurred.

Forty groups of words follow the special vocabularies. The first of these is a part of the fifty-seventh lesson. Preceding this are two lessons on the formation of words. The words in each group should first be analyzed, and should then be committed to memory. This will now be an interesting, easy, and profitable task.

The number of words used in this book will seem to be large, but the principle has been adopted deliberately. On an average there are twenty words to the lesson in the forty-four lessons covered by the five word-lists. I should not feel justified in making the number so great, if I believed that in acquiring these twenty words the pupil would be obliged to fix in his mind twenty distinct and separate signs of ideas.

Even at this early stage of his study dependence can be placed on the widely applying principle of relationship to make his acquisition of a vocabulary increasingly easier.

The exercises consist of sentences, either in their original form or simplified, that have been taken, with a few exceptions, from Xenophon's Anabasis, chiefly from the first four books. Those who have done these exercises will find it an easy task to read the Anabasis. But a more important consideration in thus basing the exercises on the work of Xenophon is that thereby we secure a more consistent vocabulary, uniformity of style, a single theme whose story can be told the pupil at the begining, and real drill on the forms of the language as actually used by a classical writer. Each sentence illustrates the principles of the lesson in which it occurs. The exercises are copious and are intended to furnish the maximum of practice. Each consists of two parts. The second part contains English sentences to be rendered into Greek. Such constructive drill is of great value in the acquisition of a language, since it fixes forms, constructions, and words securely in the mind. These English sentences are chiefly translations or adaptations from the Anabasis. For the satisfaction of teachers who may care to know the original order and choice of words, Greek renderings have been published in pamphlet form and may be had on application to the publishers. In the prefatory note to this pamphlet I have discussed the difficulties which a beginner meets in rendering English into Greek, and have offered some suggestions which teachers may find to be of service.

Ten passages of continuous narrative are introduced among the first one hundred lessons. These give in simplified form the story that is told in the first eight chapters of the Anabasis. The story is repeated in its original form in twenty reading lessons at the end of the book.[1]

[1] Teachers are referred to the suggestions given on page 302.

In teaching beginners, too little attention, in my opinion, is given to the art of reading. Left to himself, the beginner naturally falls into the pernicious habit, in attempting to translate the exercises into English, of reconstructing the Greek sentence after an English model. He searches first for the subject and then for the predicate, and ignoring the Greek order makes a Chinese puzzle of a simple matter. I have, therefore, early introduced directions for reading.[1] These should be followed in all the reading that is done. They are practically directions for reading at sight; and all reading should be at sight in the sense that no help from any foreign source should be used until every resource that the reader has within himself has been exhausted. The sharpest possible distinction should be drawn between reading and translating. Translation should be made the final test of the accuracy with which the pupil has read, not the means of arriving at the thought contained in the sentence. Each sentence should be read aloud in the original. From supposed lack of time we are disposed to neglect this training of voice and ear in the classroom. But it is an exercise of great importance. To read the sentence aloud, with proper expression, is the only natural way in which to approach its meaning. This process defines sharply the forms of the words, fixes their meanings in the mind, and presents the thought as a whole in the natural order of its development.

I have given the pronunciation of single vowels, consonants, and diphthongs, that was used in presenting the Oedipus Tyrannus of Sophocles in the original Greek at Harvard University in 1881. This differs but little from the general usage in this country, although it attempts to mark the natural quantity of the vowels with more care than is perhaps common. In two important particulars it varies from the current practice. It abandons the sound of α adopted by the Germans, but which,

[1] In Lesson XVII. See also § 148.

with all the vicissitudes through which this combination of vowels has passed, it never had among Greeks, and gives to both αι and ευ the force of a true diphthong.

Whatever may be said in favour of the current pronunciation of Greek on the ground of its simplicity, it cannot be urged that it is the ancient Greek pronunciation. Not to mention other points of difference, we do not and cannot pronounce any one of the rough mutes nor ξ or ψ as did the ancient Greeks; we do not attempt to give the pitch indicated by the written accents, nor should we succeed if we made the attempt. Xenophon would certainly not have been able to understand his own Anabasis, if he had heard it read after the modern fashion. We might nevertheless believe the current pronunciation to be the best for use, if it were uniform and if it were acquired with ease and used with facility, but neither supposition is true. The only alternative to the present practice is the modern Greek pronunciation. If scholars should agree to adopt this, we should at once have an absolute standard and a living pronunciation. The precision and facility with which educated modern Greeks pronounce their ancient language are impressive; no less impressive is the quiet scorn with which they listen to a foreigner who attempts to read it after the fashion prevailing in northern Europe.

I have not introduced colloquia into any of the lessons, although I am of the opinion that they are a profitable exercise. They can easily be added by the teacher. Any sentence will furnish material for questions and answers, and with practice pupils may be taught to manage simple conversation without difficulty. Oral practice may be had in other ways, and it will furnish excellent training for voice and ear. It may be made the means for drill on forms, short Greek and English sentences being pronounced by the teacher and rendered by the pupil into English and Greek. The oral method may be used with good results also in training pupils to follow the Greek order in reading. The sentence should be pro-

nounced aloud, one word at a time, and the class required to show step by step how the thought is evolved. It is good practice also to review the exercises of previous lessons orally. Variety may be secured by substituting from time to time work at the blackboard for oral drill. This use of the blackboard trains the pupil's eye, and soon initiates him into the mysteries of accentuation.

The first year's work is full of difficulties for the beginner. His teacher should smooth the way for him and enliven his task as much as possible. During the first six months the teacher should go over the grammatical parts of each lesson with his class before they undertake it and forestall difficulties. The main object of instruction during this time is to teach the pupil to read. But the teacher may do more than this without in any way interfering with his main purpose. He may give his pupils some knowledge of old Greek civilization. He is dealing with persons whose imaginations are lively and whose sympathies are quick. Let him tell them each day some interesting fact about the people whose language they are learning. The topic will naturally be suggested by some part of the lesson, and will relate to the manners and customs of the ancient Greeks, to their history, to their military system, to their political institutions, to their religious life, or to some other of a dozen themes that might be named. Young persons are quick to respond to such an attempt to lighten and enliven the work of the class-room.

I am greatly indebted to Mr. Francis K. Ball for assistance in collecting materials and in reading the proofs. Mr. Ball's correction of typographical errors has been sharp and accurate and his criticism of details suggestive and valuable. But errors of one sort or another have doubtless escaped both him and me, and I shall be obliged to any teacher who will point them out. I shall be especially grateful to any teacher who after using the book with a class will tell me in what respects he finds it not well suited to his needs.

My special thanks are due to my colleague, Professor William W. Goodwin, who has generously allowed me in writing this book to make unrestricted use of his Greek grammar, a work whose great merits are well known to teachers. I have freely availed myself of his kind permission, especially in the lessons on syntax, and submit my book to the public with greater confidence on that account.

JOHN WILLIAMS WHITE.

HARVARD UNIVERSITY,
August 1, 1892.

CONTENTS.

LESS.	SECT.		PAGE
	1–4.	Introductory: The Greek People and Language	1
I.	5, 6.	The Alphabet. Pronunciation	2, 3
II.	7–14.	Vowels, Consonants, Diphthongs, Pronunciation	4, 5
III.	15–22.	Breathings, Syllables, Elision	5
IV.	23–40.	Accent, Punctuation	6, 7
V.	41–53.	Number, Case, Accent, Declension, Stems, Case-Endings. Feminines of the A-Declension in -ᾱ or -η	8, 9
VI.	54–56.	Feminines of the A-Declension in -ᾱ or -η	10, 11
VII.	57–68.	Person, Voice, Mood, Tense, Accent, Theme. Present Indicative Active	12–14
VIII.	69–72.	Feminines of the A-Declension in -α (short)	14, 15
IX.	73–78.	Imperfect Indicative Active	16, 17
X.	79–88.	O-Declension. Gender, Adjectives, Article	18, 19
XI.	89–92.	Neuter Plural Subject. O-Declension	20, 21
XII.	93–99.	Prepositions	21–23
XIII.	100–106.	Future and First Aorist Indicative, Active	23–25
XIV.	107–111.	Masculines of the A-Declension	26–28
XV.	112–129.	Classification of Consonants. First Perfect and Pluperfect Indicative Active. Reduplication. Compound Verbs	28–31
XVI.	130–137.	Affinity of Words. First Word List. Word-Grouping	32–34
XVII.	138–143.	The Art of Reading. Directions. Life of Cyrus, I.	34–36
XVIII.	144–150.	Adjectives of the Vowel-Declension. Directions for Translating into Greek	37–40
XIX.	151–162.	Theme, Tense-Suffixes, Tense-Stems, Variable Vowel, Personal-Endings. Analysis of Primary Tenses of the Indicative Active	41–43
XX.	163–168.	Analysis of the Secondary Tenses of the Indicative Active	44, 45
XXI.	169–176.	Attic Second Declension. Declension of οὗτος	46–48
XXII.	177–182.	Contract Substantives of the Vowel-Declension	49–51
XXIII.	183–190.	Present and Imperfect Indicative of εἰμί. Enclitics	52–54

LESS.	SECT.		PAGE
XXIV.	191–193.	Contract Adjectives of the Vowel-Declension	54–56
XXV.	194, 195.	Second Word List. Life of Cyrus, II.	57, 58
XXVI.	196–202.	Middle Voice, Personal-Endings. Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Middle	59–61
XXVII.	203–209.	Aorist, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Middle	62–64
XXVIII.	210–220.	Consonant-Declension. Case-Endings. Formation of Cases. Stems in a Labial or Palatal Mute. Accent. Gender	65–68
XXIX.	221–229.	Passive Voice. Indicative Passive	68–71
XXX.	230–240.	Lingual Mute Stems of the Consonant-Declension. Gender	72–74
XXXI.	241–248.	Contraction of Vowels. Contract Verbs in the Indicative	75–78
XXXII.	249–251.	Third Word List. Life of Cyrus, III.	79–81
XXXIII.	252–257.	Tense-Systems. Principal Parts. Vowel Verbs. Deponents	81–84
XXXIV.	258–264.	Adjectives of the Consonant-Declension with stems in -ντ-	85–87
XXXV.	265–275.	Subjunctive Active. Future Indicative and Present Subjunctive of εἰμί	88–91
XXXVI.	276–282.	Subjunctive Middle and Passive	92–95
XXXVII.	283–285.	Contract Verbs in the Subjunctive	95–97
XXXVIII.	286–294.	Liquid Stems of the Consonant-Declension. Gender	98–101
XXXIX.	295–306.	Optative Active. Present Optative of εἰμί	101–105
XL.	307–309.	Optative Middle and Passive	106–108
XLI.	310–312.	Contract Verbs in the Optative	109–111
XLII.	313–315.	Fourth Word List. Life of Cyrus, IV.	111–114
XLIII.	316–320.	Stems in -σ- (-εσ- and -ασ-) of the Consonant-Declension. Gender	114–116
XLIV.	321–329.	Imperative Active. Present Imperative of εἰμί	116–119
XLV.	330–334.	Imperative Middle and Passive	119–121
XLVI.	335–337.	Contract Verbs in the Imperative	121–123
XLVII.	338–344.	Adjective Stems in -ν- and -εσ- of the Consonant-Declension	124–127
XLVIII.	345–357.	Infinitive Active, Middle, and Passive. Present Infinitive of εἰμί and of Contract Verbs. Present and Imperfect Indicative of φημί	127–130

LESS.	SECT.		PAGE
XLIX.	358–362.	Stems in -ι- and -υ- of the Consonant-Declension. Gender	131–133
L.	363–374.	Participles Active. Present Participles of εἰμί and of Contract Verbs in the Active	133–136
LI.	375–381.	Participles Middle and Passive. Present Participles of Contract Verbs in the Middle and Passive	137–140
LII.	382–387.	Adjective Stems in -υ- of the Consonant-Declension. Irregular Adjectives	140–143
LIII.	388–392.	Stems in a Diphthong of the Consonant-Declension. Gender	143–145
LIV.	393–395.	Fifth Word List. Life of Cyrus, V.	146–148
LV.	396–410.	Simple and Compound Words, Primitives and Denominatives, Suffixes. Formation of Substantives	149–151
LVI.	411–430.	Formation of Adjectives. Denominative Verbs. Compound Words: Form and Meaning	151 155
LVII.	431–435.	Word-Grouping	155–157
LVIII.	436–444.	Tense-Systems. Verbs of the First class. Vowel Verbs	158–161
LIX.	445–455.	Comparison of Adjectives. Inflexion of Comparatives	161–165
LX.	456–463.	Future and First Aorist Systems of Mute Verbs. Verbs of the Third Class	165–168
LXI.	464–468.	Future and First Aorist Systems of Mute Verbs. Mute Verbs of the Fourth Class	168–170
LXII.	469–471.	Irregular Comparison of Adjectives	171–173
LXIII.	472–480.	Future Systems of Liquid Verbs. Liquid and Vowel Verbs of the Fourth Class	173–176
LXIV.	481–483.	First Aorist Systems of Liquid Verbs	176–178
LXV.	484–486.	Formation and Comparison of Adverbs	178–180
LXVI.	487, 488.	Review of Groups. Life of Cyrus, VI.	181, 182
LXVII.	489–495.	Second Aorist System. Verbs of the Second Class	183–186
LXVIII.	496–499.	Numerals	186–189
LXIX.	500–509.	First Perfect System	190–192
LXX.	510–518.	Personal and Intensive Pronouns	192–195
LXXI.	519–525.	Second Perfect System	196–198
LXXII.	526–533.	Reflexive, Reciprocal, and Possessive Pronouns	198–201
LXXIII.	534–538.	Perfect Middle System of Vowel Verbs	201–203

LESS.	SECT.		PAGE
LXXIV.	539–544.	Demonstrative Pronouns	204–206
LXXV.	545, 546.	Review of Groups. Life of Cyrus, VII.	207–208
LXXVI.	547–554.	Perfect Middle System of Mute Verbs	209–212
LXXVII.	555–561.	Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns	212–214
LXXVIII.	562–564.	Perfect Middle System of Liquid Verbs	215–217
LXXIX.	565–573.	Relative Pronouns	217–220
LXXX.	574–580.	First Passive System	220–223
LXXXI.	581–586.	Verbal Adjectives	223–225
LXXXII.	587–591.	Second Passive System	226–228
LXXXIII.	592, 593.	Review of Groups. Life of Cyrus, VIII.	229, 230
LXXXIV.	594–602.	Verbs of the Variable-Vowel or First Class	231–234
LXXXV.	603–608.	Verbs of the Variable-Vowel or First Class	234–238
LXXXVI.	609–612.	Verbs of the Strong-Vowel or Second Class	238–241
LXXXVII.	613–615.	Verbs of the Tau or Third Class	241–244
LXXXVIII.	616–622.	Verbs of the Iota or Fourth Class	244–248
LXXXIX.	623–629.	Verbs of the Nasal or Fifth Class	248–251
XC.	630, 631.	Review of Groups. Life of Cyrus, IX.	252, 253
XCI.	632–638.	Regular Verbs in -MI, *τίθημι*	254–257
XCII.	639–641.	Regular Verbs in -MI, *δίδωμι*	257–259
XCIII.	642–644.	Verbs of the Inceptive or Sixth Class	259–262
XCIV.	645–649.	Regular Verbs in -MI, *ἵστημι*. Verbs of the Theme or Seventh Class	262–266
XCV.	650–654.	Regular Verbs in -MI, *δείκνῡμι* and *ἔδῡν*. Verbs of the Fifth Class in *-νῡμι*	266–269
XCVI.	655–658.	Verbs of the Mixed or Eighth Class	269–272
XCVII.	659–663.	Second Perfect System without Tense-Suffix	272–274
XCVIII.	664–666.	Irregular Verbs in -MI, *φημί*, *εἰμί*, *εἶμι*	274–276
XCIX.	667–669.	Irregular Verbs in -MI, *ἵημι*, *κεῖμαι*, *ἧμαι*	277–278
C.	670, 671.	Review of Groups. Life of Cyrus, X.	279, 280
		Alphabetical Index of Paradigms of Verbs	281
	672–677.	Paradigms of the Six Systems of *λύω*	282–285
	678, 679.	Paradigms of the Future and First Aorist Systems of Liquid Verbs	286
	680, 681.	Paradigms of the Second Aorist and Second Perfect Systems	287
	682–687.	Paradigms of the Perfect Middle System	288–290
	688.	Paradigms of the Second Passive System	291

LESS.	SECT.		PAGE
	689–692.	Paradigms of the Present System of τίθημι, δίδωμι, ἵστημι, and δείκνῡμι	292–295
	693–696.	Paradigms of the Second Aorist System of τίθημι, δίδωμι, ἵστημι, and δύω	296, 297
	697.	Paradigms of Second Perfect System without Suffix	297
	698–704.	Paradigms of οἶδα, φημί, εἰμί, εἶμι, ἧμι, κεῖμαι, and κάθημαι	298–301
		Suggestions to Teachers	302
	705.	Introduction to Reading Lessons	303
CI.	706.	Anabasis I. i. 1–6, Text and Notes	304–306
	707–711.	Introduction to Lessons on Syntax	307
CII.	712–721.	Subject and Predicate, Apposition, Adjectives	308–310
CIII.	722.	Anabasis I. i. 7–11, Text and Notes	311–313
CIV.	723–726.	Pronouns	314–316
CV.	727.	Anabasis I. ii. 1–6, Text and Notes	316–319
CVI.	728–740.	Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Cases	319–322
CVII.	741.	Anabasis I. ii. 7–12, Text and Notes	323–326
CVIII.	742–750.	The Genitive Case	326–329
CIX.	751.	Anabasis I. ii. 13–20, Text and Notes	330–332
CX.	752–764.	The Genitive Case	333–336
CXI.	765.	Anabasis I. ii. 21–27, Text and Notes	336–339
CXII.	766–778.	The Dative Case	339–342
CXIII.	779.	Anabasis I. iii. 1–7, Text and Notes	343–345
CXIV.	780–782.	Voices, Tenses, Causal Sentences, Imperative and Subjunctive in Commands, Exhortations, and Prohibitions	346–348
CXV.	783.	Anabasis I. iii. 8–14, Text and Notes	348–351
CXVI.	784–788.	Interrogative Subjunctive, Subjunctive and Future Indicative with οὐ μή, Verbals, Optative in the Expression of a Wish	351–353
CXVII.	789.	Anabasis I. iii. 15–21, Text and Notes	354–357
CXVIII.	790–794.	Final and Object Clauses	357–359
CXIX.	795.	Anabasis I. iv. 1–6, Text and Notes	359–362
CXX.	796–799.	Conditional Sentences: Present and Past Particular Conditions	362–364
CXXI.	800.	Anabasis I. iv. 7–11, Text and Notes	365–367
CXXII.	801–806.	Conditional Sentences: Present and Past General Conditions. Iterative Tenses	368–370
CXXIII.	807.	Anabasis I. iv. 12–19, Text and Notes	370–373
CXXIV.	808, 809.	Conditional Sentences: Future Conditions	373–376
CXXV.	810.	Anabasis I. v. 1–7, Text and Notes	376–379

LESS.	SECT.		PAGE
CXXVI.	811–815.	Relative and Temporal Sentences: Conditional Relative. Table of Conditional Sentences	379–382
CXXVII.	816.	Anabasis I. v. 8–13, Text and Notes	383–386
CXXVIII.	817–825.	Relative and Temporal Sentences: Relative Clauses of Purpose, Result, or Cause, and Temporal Clauses with ἕως, ἔστε, μέχρι, and πρίν. Consecutive Clauses with ὥστε	386–389
CXXIX.	826.	Anabasis I. v. 14–17 and vi. 1–5, Text and Notes	389–392
CXXX.	827–833.	Indirect Discourse: Simple Sentences after ὅτι and ὡς and in Indirect Questions	392–396
CXXXI.	834.	Anabasis I. vi. 6–11, Text and Notes	397–399
CXXXII.	835–841.	Indirect Discourse: Infinitive and Participle in Indirect Quotations	400–403
CXXXIII.	842.	Anabasis I. vii. 1–10, Text and Notes	403–407
CXXXIV.	843–847.	Indirect Discourse: Indirect Quotation of Complex sentences	407–410
CXXXV.	848.	Anabasis I. vii. 11–20 and viii. 1–3, Text and Notes	411–414
CXXXVI.	849–854.	The Infinitive	414–417
CXXXVII.	855.	Anabasis I. viii. 4–16, Text and Notes	417–421
CXXXVIII.	856–861.	The Participle	421–424
CXXXIX.	862.	Anabasis I. viii. 17–29, Text and Notes	425–428

Map of the Route of the Ten Thousand Greeks.

Abbreviations 2
Greek-English Vocabulary 3–55
English-Greek Vocabulary 56–70
Greek Index 71–77
English Index 78–85

THE BEGINNER'S GREEK BOOK.

INTRODUCTORY.

The Greek People and Language.

1. The people of ancient Greece called themselves *Hellenes.* We call them *Greeks,* from the Roman name *Graeci.* The Hellenes, or Greeks, inhabited not only the mainland of ancient Greece, but also the islands and coasts of the Mediterranean Sea, to which they were dispersed by colonization.

2. They were divided into Aeolians, Dorians and Ionians. The Aeolians inhabited Aeolis,[1] Boeotia and Thessaly; the Dorians, Peloponnesus, northwestern Greece, Crete, some cities in Caria, the neighbouring islands, Sicily and southern Italy; the Ionians, Ionia, Attica and most of the Islands in the Aegean Sea.

3. To the Greek language belonged three groups of dialects, the Aeolic, the Doric, and the Ionic.

4. The Attic dialect was the Ionic dialect as spoken in Attica, and was the language of Athens during the period of her literary eminence, the fifth and fourth centuries before Christ. It was the most cultivated form of the language, and is therefore made the basis of Greek grammar.

---

[1] Let the teacher use a wall-map, and point out the situation of the places named.

LESSON I.

The Alphabet.

5. The Greek *alphabet* has twenty-four letters: —

Form.		Name.	Value.	Greek Name.
Α	α	*alpha*	papa, father[2]	ἄλφα
Β	β	*beta*	bed	βῆτα
Γ	γ	*gamma*	go[3]	γάμμα
Δ	δ	*delta*	do	δέλτα
Ε	ε	*epsilon*	met	ἒ ψῑλόν
Ζ	ζ	*zeta*	adze	ζῆτα
Η	η	*eta*	prey	ἦτα
Θ	θ	*theta*	thin	θῆτα
Ι	ι	*iota*	pin, pique[2]	ἰῶτα
Κ	κ	*kappa*	kill	κάππα
Λ	λ	*lambda*	land	λάμβδα
Μ	μ	*mu*	men	μῦ
Ν	ν	*nu*	now	νῦ
Ξ	ξ	*xi*	wax	ξῖ
Ο	ο	*omicron*	obey	ὂ μῑκρόν
Π	π	*pi*	pet	πῖ
Ρ	ρ	*rho*	run	ῥῶ
Σ	σ ς[1]	*sigma*	sit	σίγμα
Τ	τ	*tau*	tell	ταῦ
Υ	υ	*upsilon*	——[4]	ὗ ψῑλόν
Φ	φ	*phi*	graphic	φῖ
Χ	χ	*chi*	——[5]	χῖ
Ψ	ψ	*psi*	hips	ψῖ
Ω	ω	*omega*	tone	ὦ μέγα

[1] ς at the end of a word; elsewhere σ.

[2] The short and long sounds respectively.

[3] Before κ, γ, χ, or ξ, γ is pronounced as *ng* in *sing*, and is called *gamma nasal*.

[4] Like French *u* or German *ü*, short or long.

[5] German *ch* (as in *buch*).

Learn the first three columns in 5.[1] Master the forms of each letter so as to be able to recognize them at sight. Associate the name of each letter closely with its forms.

Give the name of each letter in the following exercise: —

6. **EXERCISE.**

Κῦ-ρος δὲ ψῑ-λὴν ἔ-χων τὴν κε-φα-λὴν εἰς τὴν
Cyrus unhelmeted with head into

μά-χην κα-θῐ́-στα-το. ἰ-δὼν δὲ αὐ-τὸν ἀ-πὸ τοῦ Ἑλ-
battle went seeing him from the Hel-

λη-νι-κοῦ Ξε-νο-φῶν Ἀ-θη-ναῖ-ος ὑ-πε-λά-σᾱς ὡς
lenic-(quarter) Xenophon (the)-Athenian riding-up so-as

συν-αν-τῆ-σαι ἤ-ρε-το εἴ τι πα-ραγ-γέλ-λοι· ὁ δ'
to-meet-(him) asked whether he-had-any-orders he

ἐ-πι-στή-σᾱς εἶ-πε καὶ λέ-γειν ἐ-κέ-λευ-σε πᾶ-σιν
checking-(his-horse) said and to-say-(it) bade-(Xenophon) to-all

ὅ-τι καὶ τὰ ἱ-ε-ρὰ κα-λὰ καὶ τὰ σφά-γι-α κα-λά.
that both the internal-omens (were)-good and the external-omens (were)-good

ταῦ-τα δὲ λέ-γων θο-ρύ-βου ἤ-κου-σε δι-ὰ τῶν τά-ξε-ων
this saying a-murmur he-heard through the ranks

ἰ-όν-τος, καὶ ἤ-ρε-το τίς ὁ θό-ρυ-βος εἴ-η. ὁ δὲ
passing and asked what the murmur meant

Κλέ-αρ-χος εἶ-πεν ὅ-τι τὸ σύν-θη-μα πα-ρέρ-χε-ται
Clearchus replied that the watchword was-passing-along

δεύ-τε-ρον ἤ-δη. καὶ ὃς ἐ-θαύ-μα-σε τίς πα-ραγ-γέλ-λει
for-the-second-time and he wondered who gave-the-order

καὶ ἤ-ρε-το ὅ τι εἴ-η τὸ σύν-θη-μα. ὁ δ' ἀ-πε-κρῐ́-να-το
and asked what was the watchword he answered

ΖΕΥΣ ΣΩ–ΤΗΡ ΚΑΙ ΝῙ–ΚΗ. ὁ δὲ Κῦ-ρος ἀ-κού-σᾱς,
Zeus Saviour and Victory Cyrus on-hearing-(this)

Ἀλ-λὰ δέ-χο-μαι, ἔ-φη, καὶ τοῦ-το ῎-στω. ταῦ-τα δ'
Well I-accept-it replied and this let-it-be this

εἰ-πὼν εἰς τὴν ἑ-αυ-τοῦ χώ-ρᾱν ἀ-πή-λαυ-νε.
having-said to his-own place he-rode-away

---

[1] The proper pronunciation of the name of each letter must be given to the pupil by his teacher. It is best to pronounce the transliterated English name precisely like the Greek name. The name is then the key to the sound of the letter.

LESSON II.

Vowels, Consonants, Diphthongs.

7. Vowels and Consonants. — Of the letters of the alphabet *α, ε η, ι, ο ω, υ* are *vowels*. The remaining letters are *consonants*.

8. As in Latin, vowels may be *short* or *long*.

9. In case of the *e* and *o* sounds there are separate characters for the short and long vowels, *ε* and *ο* for the short sounds, *η* and *ω* for the long sounds. In case of the *a*, *i* and *u* sounds there is in each instance a single character, *α*, *ι*, *υ*, for both sounds. But in this book, *α*, *ι*, *υ*, when long, are marked *ᾱ*, *ῑ*, *ῡ*, except when they have the circumflex accent (23), which can stand only on long syllables.

10. There are then the short vowels *α*, *ε*, *ι*, *ο*, *υ*, and the long vowels *ᾱ*, *η*, *ῑ*, *ω*, *ῡ*.

Learn the phonetic value of each letter in the alphabet as shown in the fourth column in 5.[1]

11. *α ᾱ, ε η, ο ω*, from their pronunciation are called *open* vowels; *ι ῑ, υ ῡ*, *close* vowels.

12. Diphthongs. — The *diphthongs* are *αι, ει, οι*; *ᾳ, ῃ, ῳ*; *αυ, ευ, ου*; *ηυ, υι*. *ᾳ, ῃ, ῳ* are called *improper* diphthongs. Their second vowel is called *iota subscript*. Their first vowel is long.

13. The diphthongs are *double sounds*, formed by uniting an open and a close vowel, except in *υι*, where both vowels are close. Both vowels were originally heard, but closely united. The sound of *ου*, however, early became a simple one, and in *ᾳ, ῃ, ῳ* the *ι* ceased to be pronounced. *υ*, where it occurs in diphthongs, has its earlier short sound, as in '*put*,' equivalent to the sound of *u* short in Latin.

---

[1] The values here given are in some cases only approximate, as, for example, *ε* and *η* are respectively more exactly represented in 'desperate' and the French word 'fête,' *ι* (short) in 'report.'

14. Pronounce *αι*, *ει*, *οι* as in *aisle*, *eight*, *oil*; *ᾳ*, *ῃ*, *ῳ* as *ᾱ*, *η*, *ω*; *αυ* as ou in *our*; *ευ*, *ηυ* (for which there are no exact equivalents in English) as ĕh-oo, ēh-oo rapidly pronounced; *ου* as in gr*ou*p; *υι* as *we*.

Give the phonetic value of each single vowel, consonant and diphthong in the exercise in 6.

LESSON III.

Breathings, Syllables, Elision.

15. Breathings. — A vowel or diphthong at the beginning of a word has either the *rough breathing* (῾) or the *smooth breathing* (᾽).

16. The *rough* breathing shows that the sound of *h* precedes that of the vowel or diphthong; the *smooth* breathing simply shows that the sound of *h* is lacking.

17. The breathing stands *over* the simple vowel when a small letter, but *before* it when a capital. Diphthongs, except *ᾳ*, *ῃ*, *ῳ*, take the breathing over the *second* vowel.

18. Syllables. — Every Greek word has as many *syllables* as it has single vowels or diphthongs.

19. The last syllable is called the *ultima;* the one before it, the *penult;* the one before the penult, the *antepenult.*

20. In dividing a word into syllables in pronouncing it, single consonants in the middle of the word and such combinations of consonants as can begin a word (to be learnt from the lexicon) are connected with the following vowel or diphthong, except that *compounds* formed without elision are treated as if their elements were separate words. Other combinations of consonants are divided.

21. Elision. — *Elision* is the *cutting off* of a short final vowel when the next word begins with a vowel. An apostrophe (᾽) marks the elision. Thus *δ᾽* for *δέ*.

22. The elided word is pronounced as if a part of the following word. Elision is often neglected in the written Greek.

Pronounce each syllable in the exercise in 6.

LESSON IV.

Accent, Punctuation.

23. Accent. — There are three kinds of *accent*, the *acute* (´), the *circumflex* (῀), and the *grave* (`).[1]

24. The accent, like the breathing (17), stands *over* the vowel of the accented syllable when a small letter, but *before* it when an initial capital. In case of a diphthong, except ᾳ, ῃ, ῳ, the accent stands over the second vowel.

25. The acute and grave accents *follow* the breathing when both belong to the same vowel, but the circumflex accent is placed *over* the breathing.

26. The accent can stand only on one of the last three syllables of a word.

27. The antepenult cannot be accented if the ultima is long,[2] or ends in -ξ or -ψ. If accented, it takes the acute.

28. Syllables containing a long vowel or diphthong are long. But final -αι and -οι are considered short in determining the accent, except in the optative mood and in the adverb οἴκοι, *at home*.

29. If the ultima is short, a long penult, if accented, takes the circumflex; a short penult, the acute.

30. If the ultima is long, the penult, if accented, takes the acute.

31. A short ultima, if accented, takes the acute; a long ultima, the acute or circumflex.

---

[1] Greek accent consisted in a change of *pitch*, and so it had three written forms. But to us, in pronouncing Greek, accent amounts simply to *stress*.

[2] The terms *long* and *short* are here used to denote the *natural* quantity of vowel sounds, without regard to position.

32. The place of the accent on words must be learnt in part by observation. But in most words it recedes as far as possible from the end (26, 27). This is, therefore, called *recessive* accent.

33. A word which has the acute on the ultima is called *oxytone;* on the penult, *paroxytone;* on the antepenult, *properispomenon.*

34. An oxytone changes its acute accent to the *grave* accent when followed by another word without intervening mark of punctuation. Except the oxytone forms of the interrogative τίς, τί, *who, what?*

35. A word which has the circumflex on the ultima is called *perispomenon;* on the penult, *properispomenon.*

36. A word which has no accent on the ultima is called *barytone.*

37. *Proclitics* are monosyllables which attach themselves so closely to the *following* word as not to have a separate accent.

38. *Enclitics* are words which attach themselves so closely to the *preceding* word as to lose their own accent.

39. In elision oxytone words generally lose their accent.

40. Punctuation. — The *comma* (,) and the *period* (.) are the same in Greek as in English. The *colon*, a point above the line (·), is equivalent to the English colon and semicolon. The *mark of interrogation* (;) is the same as the English semicolon.

Observe in order the application of the principles stated in 26–31 and 34 to the *accented* words in the exercise in 6.[1]

Pronounce each word in this exercise and name each accented word according to 33 and 35.[2]

Pronounce the exercise entire.

---

[1] τάξεων is an exception to 27.

[2] The proclitics in this exercise are εἰς, ὡς, εἰ, ὁ. The proclitic εἰ receives an accent from the following enclitic τι. In such cases the principle in 34 does not apply.

LESSON V.

First or A-Declension.

41. Number. — Greek distinguishes three *numbers:* the *singular,* which denotes one object, the *dual,* which denotes two objects only, the *plural,* which denotes two or more.

42. Case. — Greek distinguishes five *cases: nominative, genitive, dative, accusative,* and *vocative.* These have in general the same meaning as the corresponding cases in Latin; as nom. *a man* (as subject), gen. *of a man,* dat. *to* or *for a man,* acc. *a man* (as object), voc. *O man.* The chief functions of the Latin ablative are divided between the Greek genitive and dative.

43. In *form* (a) the nominative and vocative singular are often alike; in the plural they are always alike. (b) In the dual, the nominative, accusative, and vocative are always alike, and the genitive and dative are always alike. (c) The nominative, accusative, and vocative of neuter words are always alike in all numbers, and in the plural always end in *-a.*

44. Accent. — The *accent* of a noun remains in all the forms on the same syllable as in the nominative singular, or as near that syllable as the general laws of accent permit.

a. The word *noun* according to ancient usage includes both substantives and adjectives, and is so used in this book.

45. The ultima, if accented, generally takes the acute (see 31). But in the genitive and dative of all numbers a long ultima, if accented, takes the circumflex.

46. Declension. — There are three *declensions* of nouns in Greek, corresponding in general to the first three declensions in Latin, and called *First, Second,* and *Third.*

47. Stems and Case-Endings. — The *stem* of a noun is the common base to which in most of the forms certain endings, called *case-endings,* are added to form the different cases.

48. The stem of nouns in the First Declension ends in -ᾱ-. This declension is, therefore, sometimes called the *A-Declension.*

49. In feminines which keep the vowel of the stem *long*, ᾱ is retained if ε, ι or ρ precedes; otherwise it is changed to η in the singular.

50. The nominative singular of these ends in -ᾱ or -η.[1]

51. PARADIGMS.

	χώρᾱ, *land* (stem χωρᾱ-)	στρατιᾱ́, *army* (stem στρατιᾱ-)	κώμη, *village* (stem κωμᾱ-)	τῑμή, *honour* (stem τῑμᾱ-)
Sing. N. V.	χώρᾱ	στρατιᾱ́	κώμη	τῑμή
Gen.	χώρᾱς	στρατιᾶς	κώμης	τῑμῆς
Dat.	χώρᾳ	στρατιᾷ	κώμῃ	τῑμῇ
Acc.	χώρᾱν	στρατιᾱ́ν	κώμην	τῑμήν
Dual N. A. V.	χώρᾱ	στρατιᾱ́	κώμᾱ	τῑμᾱ́
G. D.	χώραιν	στρατιαῖν	κώμαιν	τῑμαῖν
Plur. N. V.	χῶραι	στρατιαί	κῶμαι	τῑμαί
Gen.	χωρῶν	στρατιῶν	κωμῶν	τῑμῶν
Dat.	χώραις	στρατιαῖς	κώμαις	τῑμαῖς
Acc.	χώρᾱς	στρατιᾱ́ς	κώμᾱς	τῑμᾱ́ς

52. Special Rule of Accent. — The genitive plural of substantives of the A-Declension is always perispomenon (see 44).

Observe in the paradigms the cases that are alike (43).

Observe in the paradigms the application of the laws of accent in 28, 29, 30, 44, 45, 52.

53. Definite Article. — The Greek has the definite article *the*. The forms in the feminine are: Sing. Nom. ἡ, Gen. τῆς, Dat. τῇ, Acc. τήν; Plur. Nom. αἱ, Gen. τῶν, Dat. ταῖς, Acc. τᾱ́ς.

a. The forms ἡ, αἱ, are proclitic (37). The vocative is wanting.

[1] In the First and Second Declensions the final letter of the stem and the case-endings closely unite, giving in each instance a single syllable. The division of these final syllables into their two parts is not here made, because difficult and because not practically necessary. But the change in form of the final syllables should be carefully noted.

LESSON VI.

Feminines of the A-Declension.

54. VOCABULARY.

SUBSTANTIVES.

ἀγορά, *market-place.*
ἡμέρᾱ, *day.*
θύρᾱ, *door.*
κρήνη, *spring.*
μάχη, *battle.*
οἰκίᾱ, *house.*
σκηνή, *tent.*
σφενδόνη, *sling.*

PREPOSITION.

ἐν,[1] with dat., *in.*

ADJECTIVES.[2]

κακή, *bad.*
καλή, *beautiful.*
μακρά, *long.*
μῑκρά, *little, small.*
φοβερά, *terrible, formidable.*

VERBS.

ἦν, (*he, she, it*) *was.*
ἦσαν, (*they*) *were.*
ἔχει, (*he, she, it*) *has.*
ἔχουσι, (*they*) *have.*

55. EXERCISES.

I. 1. οἰκίᾳ μῑκρᾷ.[3] 2. οἰκίαι μῑκραί. 3. οἰκίᾱ μῑκρᾱ́. 4. ἡ[3] μῑκρὰ οἰκίᾱ. 5. τῶν μῑκρῶν οἰκιῶν. 6. ἡμέρᾱς μακρᾶς. 7. ἡμέρᾱν μακρᾱ́ν. 8. ἡμέρᾱς μακρᾱ́ς. 9. ταῖς καλαῖς κώμαις. 10. σκηναῖν καλαῖν.

II. 1. ἡ φοβερὰ στρατιᾱ́. 2. ἡ φοβερὰ μάχη.[4] 3. σκηνῆς καλῆς. 4. οἰκίᾱν καλὴν. 5. τῆς καλῆς χώρᾱς. 6. τῶν κακῶν σφενδονῶν. 7. τὰς μῑκρὰς ἀγορᾱ́ς. 8. σκηνὰ καλά. 9. ἡ ἀγορὰ καλὴ ἦν.[5] 10. ἔχει σκηνὴν καλήν.[6]

Decline together: οἰκίᾱ μῑκρά, ἀγορὰ καλή, ἡ φοβερα μάχη, ἡ κακὴ σκηνή.

---

[1] A proclitic (37).

[2] The masculine and neuter of adjectives will be taken up in connexion with substantives of the Second Declension.

[3] Observe that the adjective (as in Latin) and the article take the case and number of the substantive which they modify.

[4] Observe that the substantive may end in -η in the sing., while the adjective ends in -α (50), and conversely.

[5] Observe that (as in Latin and English) the subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case, and that the verb agrees with it in number.

[6] Observe that (as in Latin) the direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case.

56. EXERCISES.

I. 1. ἡ οἰκίᾱ μῑκρὰ ἦν. 2. αἱ μῑκραὶ οἰκίαι καλαὶ ἦσαν. 3. κακὴ ἦν ἡ σφενδόνη. 4. ἔχουσι σκηνὰς καλάς. 5. αἱ τῆς στρατιᾶς σκηναὶ καλαὶ ἦσαν. 6. αἱ οἰκίαι θύρᾱς ἔχουσι. 7. μῑκραὶ ἦσαν αἱ τῶν οἰκιῶν θύραι. 8. ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ κρῆναι καλαὶ ἦσαν. 9. ἡ στρατιὰ ἐν τῑμῇ ἦν. 10. ἐν ταῖς καλαῖς κώμαις αἱ κρῆναι κακαὶ ἦσαν. 11. ἐν τῇ μῑκρᾷ ἀγορᾷ οἰκίᾱ καλὴ ἦν. 12. ἐν ταῖς σκηναῖς αἱ σφενδόναι τῆς στρατιᾶς ἦσαν. 13. ἡ στρατιὰ σφενδόνᾱς ἔχει ἐν ταῖς σκηναῖς. 14. ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ σκηναὶ ἦσαν καὶ (*and*) οἰκίαι. 15. ἡ οἰκίᾱ μῑκρὰ ἦν καὶ ἡ σκηνὴ κακή.

REM. An adjective, qualifying a substantive, is either *attributive* or *predicate*. An attributive adjective is directly joined with the substantive without the intervention of a verb; a predicate adjective is connected with the substantive by the copula or an equivalent verb.

As to the order of words, observe in the exercises above (1) that an attributive adjective regularly follows its substantive when this is without the article; (2) that, when the substantive has the article, the attributive adjective comes between the article and the substantive, but that the predicate adjective never has this position; (3) that the attributive genitive (a genitive fulfilling the purpose of an attributive adjective), qualifying a substantive, may or may not stand between the article and the substantive.

II. 1. The house was long. 2. The days were long. 3. (He)[1] has a beautiful house. 4. (They) have small slings. 5. The tents of the army were small. 6. The battle was terrible. 7. (There)[2] was a small spring in the village. 8. Armies were in honour. 9. The land was bad. 10. The springs were bad in the land. 11. (He) has a sling in the tent. 12. (There) was a small tent in the market-place. 13. (They) have tents and (*καί*) houses. 14. The tents were small and the houses (were)[3] bad. 15. (There) were houses and tents in the market-place.[4]

---

[1] Omit. *Cf.* 56, I. 4. [2] Omit. *Cf.* 56, I. 8. [3] *Cf.* 56, I. 15. [4] *Cf.* 56, I. 14.

LESSON VII.

Present Indicative Active.

57. Person. — Greek distinguishes three *persons:* the *first,* the *second,* and the *third.*

58. Voice. — The Greek verb has three *voices:* the *active,* the *middle,* and the *passive.*

59. Mood. — Each voice has six *moods: indicative, subjunctive, optative, imperative, infinitive,* and *participle.*

60. Tense. — The indicative mood has seven *tenses: present, imperfect, future, aorist, perfect, pluperfect,* and *future perfect.*

61. The present, future, perfect, and future perfect indicative, which denote present or future time, are called *primary* tenses; the imperfect, aorist, and pluperfect indicative, which denote past time, are called *secondary* tenses.

62. Accent. — Verbs have recessive accent (32).

63. Verb-Theme. — The *theme* of a verb is its fundamental part, corresponding to the stem in nouns (47). The theme of λύω, *loose,* is λῡ- or λυ-.[1]

64. The *Present Indicative* represents an action as *going on* at the time of speaking or writing; as λύω, *I loose,* or *I am loosing.*

65. PARADIGM.

		Singular.	Dual.	Plural.
Pres. Ind. Act.	1	λύω, *I loose*		λύομεν, *we loose*
	2	λύεις, *you loose*	λύετον, *you (two) loose*	λύετε, *you loose*
	3	λύει, *he looses*	λύετον, *they (two) loose*	λύουσι, *they loose*

[1] The consideration of *tense-stems* and *personal-endings* is deferred to Lessons XIX. and XX. It will be sufficient, until these Lessons are reached, for the teacher simply to call the pupil's attention carefully to the change of form in the syllables added to the theme.

a. The first person dual has no form distinct from that of the first person plural.

66. VOCABULARY.

Verbs.	Substantives.
ἄγω, *lead, bring, carry.*	**ἀρετή,** *goodness, courage.*
ἀθροίζω, *collect.*	**ζώνη,** *girdle.*
ἁρπάζω, *seize, capture, plunder.*	**θεά,** *goddess.*
ἔχω, *have.*	**λόγχη,** *spear.*
θαυμάζω, *admire, wonder at.*	**πύλη,** *gate.*
θύω, *sacrifice.*	**στολή,** *robe.*
λύω, *loose, destroy.*	**φυλακή,** *guard, garrison.*
Adjectives.	**ἐξ,**[1] prep. with gen., *out of, from.*
Ἑλληνική, *Greek.*	
Περσική, *Persian.*	**οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ,**[2] adv., *not.*

67. EXERCISES.

I. 1. λύετε. 2. θύομεν. 3. ἔχομεν. 4. ἄγουσι. 5. ἀθροίζετον. 6. θύεις. 7. ἁρπάζει. 8. θαυμάζει. 9. λύετον. 10. ἄγω. 11. ἀθροίζει. 12. ἁρπάζετε. 13. θαυμάζεις. 14. ἔχετε. 15. λύομεν. 16. θαυμάζετε. 17. λύει.

II. 1. You (*sing.*) collect. 2. He looses. 3. I sacrifice. 4. They seize. 5. He has. 6. They admire. 7. You (*plur.*) sacrifice. 8. We collect. 9. They loose. 10. You (*plur.*) lead. 11. We capture. 12. You (*dual*) have. 13. We lead.

68. EXERCISES.

I. 1. ἀθροίζομεν στρατιάν. 2. οὐ θαυμάζεις τὴν χώρᾱν; 3. λόγχην ἔχει. 4. λύει τὴν ζώνην. 5. ἐν τῇ κώμῃ θύομεν. 6. ἔχετε λόγχᾱς μακράς. 7. ἄγω στρατιὰν φοβερᾶν. 8. τὰς καλὰς σκηνὰς λύουσι. 9. ἁρπάζεις τὴν σφενδόνην. 10. τῇ θεᾷ θύει. 11. τὴν ἀρετὴν τῆς Ἑλληνικῆς φυλακῆς θαυμά-

[1] ἐξ before vowels, ἐκ before consonants. The word is proclitic (37). The following οὐ is also proclitic.

[2] οὐ before a consonant, οὐκ before the smooth breathing, οὐχ before the rough breathing.

ζετε. 12. ἐκ τῶν κωμῶν ἄγει τὴν στρατιάν. 13. αἱ κῶμαι πύλᾶς οὐκ ἔχουσι. 14. τὴν Περσικὴν στολὴν λύω.

REM. In a simple sentence, the normal order in Greek is *subject, verb, object;* but exceptions occur constantly.

II. 1. He sacrifices in the market-place. 2. We admire the Persian spears. 3. You have a beautiful girdle. 4. He captures the Persian robes. 5. They sacrifice to the goddess in the small village. 6. He collects a Greek guard. 7. We do not seize the girdles and robes. 8. He destroys the houses in the village. 9. Does he not admire the courage of the army?

LESSON VIII.

Feminine Substantives of the A-Declension in -ᾰ (short).

69. Some feminines of the A-declension shorten ᾱ of the stem to ᾰ in the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular. See 49.

70. PARADIGMS.

	πεῖρα, *experience* (πειρᾱ-)	γεφῦρα, *bridge* (γεφῡρᾱ-)	δόξα, *reputation* (δοξᾱ-)	θαλαττα, *sea* (θαλαττᾰ-)
Sing. N. V.	πεῖρα	γέφῡρα	δόξα	θάλαττα
Gen.	πείρᾱς	γεφύρᾱς	δόξης	θαλάττης
Dat.	πείρᾳ	γεφύρᾳ	δόξῃ	θαλάττῃ
Acc.	πεῖραν	γέφῡραν	δόξαν	θάλατταν
Dual N. A. V.	πείρᾱ	γεφύρᾱ	δόξᾱ	θαλάττᾱ
G. D.	πείραιν	γεφύραιν	δόξαιν	θαλάτταιν
Plur. N. V.	πεῖραι	γέφῡραι	δόξαι	θάλατται
Gen.	πειρῶν	γεφῡρῶν	δοξῶν	θαλαττῶν
Dat.	πείραις	γεφύραις	δόξαις	θαλάτταις
Acc.	πείρᾱς	γεφύρᾱς	δόξᾱς	θαλάττᾱς

a. These nouns have ᾱ in the genitive and dative singular, if ε, ι, or ρ precedes; otherwise, η.

Review the rules for accent in 27–30 and 52.

71. VOCABULARY.

Substantives.	Adjectives.
ἄγκῡρα, *anchor.*	ἀγαθή, *good, brave.*
ἀλήθεια, *truth, sincerity.*	ἱερά, *sacred.*
ἅμαξα, *wagon.*	στενή, *narrow.*
βασίλεια, *queen.*	χαλεπή, *hard, dangerous, severe.*
εὔνοια, *good-will, fidelity.*	
μάχαιρα, *knife, sabre.*	εἰς,[1] prep. with acc., *into, to.*
Μοῦσα, *Muse.*	ἐπί, prep.: with gen., *on, upon;* with dat., *on, by, at;* with acc., *upon, to, against.*
τράπεζα, *table.*	

72. EXERCISES.

I. 1. εἰς τὴν ἀγορᾶν ἄγουσι τὰς ἁμάξᾱς. 2. ἐπὶ τὴν γέφῡραν οὐκ ἄγει τὴν βασίλειαν. 3. τὴν τῆς βασιλείᾱς ἀλήθειαν θαυμάζομεν. 4. ἐπὶ τῇ γεφύρᾳ φυλακὴν ἔχει. 5. τὴν ἱερὰν χώρᾱν ἁρπάζεις ἐκ θαλάττης εἰς θάλατταν. 6. τῇ βασιλείᾳ στρατιὰν Ἑλληνικὴν ἀθροίζει. 7. πεῖραν δ'[2] ἔχεις, ὦ[3] βασίλεια, τῆς εὐνοίᾱς τῆς Ἑλληνικῆς στρατιᾶς. 8. ἡ θάλαττα στενὴ ἦν καὶ χαλεπή. 9. ἀγκύρᾱς καὶ τραπέζᾱς ἐπὶ τῶν ἁμαξῶν ἄγετε. 10. αἱ Μοῦσαι θεαὶ καλαὶ καὶ ἀγαθαὶ ἦσαν. 11. ἁμάξᾱς ἀγαθὰς ἔχομεν καὶ μαχαίρᾱς. 12. ἡ βασίλεια ἔχει οἰκίᾱς ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ. 13. κρήνη ἱερὰ ἦν ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ. 14. δόξαν ἀγαθὴν ἔχει. 15. ἐπὶ τὴν θάλατταν οὐκ ἄγω τὴν φυλακὴν τῆς βασιλείᾱς.

II. 1. We destroy the bridge. 2. There was a bridge by the sacred spring. 3. I sacrifice to the Muses. 4. I have experience of the queen's good-will. 5. They do not capture the Persian wagons. 6. He does not lead the garrison from the villages to the sea. 7. The bridges were long and narrow. 8. He is bringing the robes and girdles on the queen's wagon.

---

[1] Proclitic.

[2] The conjunction δέ, *but, and.* See 21, 22. δέ is *postpositive*, i.e. it is always put after one or more words of the sentence.

[3] The interjection ὦ (O) is usually prefixed to the voc., but sometimes it is lacking (as is generally the case in English).

LESSON IX.

Imperfect Indicative Active.

73. The *Imperfect Indicative* represents an action as *going on* in past time, as ἔλῡον, *I was loosing* or *I loosed*.

74. PARADIGM.[1]

		Singular.	Dual.	Plural.
Imperfect Indicative Active	1	ἔλῡον		ἐλύομεν
	2	ἔλῡες	ἐλύετον	ἐλύετε
	3	ἔλῡε	ἐλῡέτην	ἔλῡον

75. Augment. — The secondary tenses (61) prefix in the indicative an augment (*increase*) to the theme of the verb as the sign of past time.

76. The augment has two forms: *syllabic*, in case of verbs beginning with a consonant, when ε is prefixed: *temporal*, in case of verbs beginning with a vowel, when, if the vowel is short, it is changed to the corresponding long vowel (but α- becomes η-), if it is long, it remains unchanged (but ᾱ- becomes η-). Diphthongs lengthen their *first* vowel.

Augment and conjugate in the imperfect indicative active the verbs given in 66.[2] See 62, and review 26–28 and 30.

Review the meanings of all the words given in the paradigms and vocabularies in Lessons V.–VIII.

77. EXERCISES.

I. 1. ἔλῡον. 2. ἦγον. 3. ἡρπάζετον. 4. ἦγες. 5. ἐθαύμαζε. 6. ἐθέτε. 7. ἠθροιζέτην. 8. ἐθαυμάζετον. 9. ἠθροί-

[1] See p. 12[1].

[2] The imperfect of ἔχω is εἶχον, an exception to the general rule. A few verbs beginning with a vowel take the syllabic augment. This is here contracted with ε- into ει-, as εἶχον for ε-εχον.

ζομεν. 10. εἶχον. 11. εἴχετε. 12. ἔθῡε. 13. ἐλῡέτην. 14. ἥρπαζον. 15. ἐλύετε.

II. 1. He collected. 2. I captured. 3. They sacrificed. 4. They led. 5. We admired. 6. You (*sing.*) loosed. 7. You (*dual*) had. 8. You (*plur.*) collected. 9. They (*dual*) seized. 10. You (*plur.*) led. 11. You (*sing.*) sacrificed. 12. I admired. 13. You (*dual*) loosed. 14. We had. 15. We destroyed.

78. EXERCISES.

I. 1. *ἁμάξᾱς ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ εἶχε.* 2. *ἥρπαζες τὴν Περσικὴν κώμην.* 3. *ἐκ τῆς οἰκίᾱς οὐκ ἦγε τὴν φυλακήν.* 4. *τὴν τῆς στρατιᾶς ἀρετὴν ἐθαυμάζομεν.* 5. *τῇ βασιλείᾳ στρατιὰν μῑκρὰν ἤθροιζε.* 6. *λόγχᾱς, ὦ βασίλεια, καὶ μαχαίρᾱς ἐπὶ τῆς ἁμάξης ἦγον.* 7. *οὐκ ἐθαύμαζον τὴν στολὴν τῆς βασιλείᾱς.* 8. *φυλακὴν φοβερὰν ἦγον εἰς τὴν ἀγοράν.* 9. *ἡ οἰκίᾱ θύρᾱς καλὰς εἶχε.* 10. *ἦγε τὴν φυλακὴν εἰς τὴν κώμην.* 11. *οὐκ ἠθροίζετον στρατιὰν ἐπὶ (against) τὴν βασίλειαν.* 12. *ἔλῡες τὴν ζώνην τῆς βασιλείᾱς.* 13. *ἐπὶ τὴν θάλατταν ἦγον τὴν Ἑλληνικὴν φυλακήν.* 14. *πεῖραν εἴχετε τῆς τῶν Μουσῶν εὐνοίᾱς;* 15. *ἡ βασίλεια στολὰς Περσικὰς εἶχε καὶ ζώνᾱς Ἑλληνικὰς ἐν τῇ σκηνῇ.* 16. *οὐχ ἡρπάζομεν τὰς μῑκρὰς κώμᾱς.*

II. 1. You had beautiful robes. 2. The queen collected a small army. 3. Did he not admire the good queen's garrison? 4. They sacrificed to the good goddess. 5. You led the army from the houses to the sea. 6. They captured the Persian wagons. 7. I destroyed the houses in the queen's villages. 8. He did not capture the tents of the garrison. 9. They wondered at the good-will of the Muses. 10. We plundered the wagons and tents in the queen's country. 11. They did not lead the army from the Persian village. 12. We were not leading the queen's army to the sea.

LESSON X.

Second or O-Declension.

Review 43–46.

79. PARADIGMS.

	ὁ λόγος[1] *word* (λογο-)	ἡ νῆσος *island* (νησο-)	ὁ ἄνθρωπος *man* (ανθρωπο-)	ἡ ὁδός *road* (ὁδο-)	τὸ δῶρον *gift* (δωρο-)
Sing. N.	λόγος	νῆσος	ἄνθρωπος	ὁδός	δῶρον
G.	λόγου	νήσου	ἀνθρώπου	ὁδοῦ	δώρου
D.	λόγῳ	νήσῳ	ἀνθρώπῳ	ὁδῷ	δώρῳ
A.	λόγον	νῆσον	ἄνθρωπον	ὁδόν	δῶρον
V.	λόγε	νῆσε	ἄνθρωπε	ὁδέ	δῶρον
Dual N. A. V.	λόγω	νήσω	ἀνθρώπω	ὁδώ	δώρω
G. D.	λόγοιν	νήσοιν	ἀνθρώποιν	ὁδοῖν	δώροιν
Plur. N. V.	λόγοι	νῆσοι	ἄνθρωποι	ὁδοί	δῶρα
G.	λόγων	νήσων	ἀνθρώπων	ὁδῶν	δώρων
D.	λόγοις	νήσοις	ἀνθρώποις	ὁδοῖς	δώροις
A.	λόγους	νήσους	ἀνθρώπους	ὁδούς	δῶρα

80. The stem of nouns (47) in the second declension ends in *-o-*. This declension is, therefore, sometimes called the *O-Declension*.

81. The first and second declensions together constitute the *Vowel-Declension*, so named because all stems in the first and second declensions end in a vowel (*-ā-* or *-o-*).

82. The nominative singular in the O-declension ends in *-os* (masculine, rarely feminine) or *-on* (neuter).[2]

83. Gender. — Greek distinguishes three *genders*: the *masculine*, the *feminine*, and the *neuter*.

[1] The gender of a substantive is often indicated by prefixing or annexing the corresponding form of the article, ὁ when masculine, ἡ when feminine, τό when neuter.

[2] See p. 91.

84. The gender of substantives in Greek is sometimes determined by the natural gender of the object, as in English. Thus, words which designate males are generally masculine; those which designate females are generally feminine.

85. But in Greek many names of things are not, as in English, neuter, but masculine or feminine. The same general rules hold as in Latin. Names of *rivers*, *winds*, and *months* are masculine; names of *countries*, *towns*, *islands*, and *trees*, and of most *abstract qualities* are feminine.

86. The gender of substantives must often be learnt by observation. It may frequently be known from the form of the word.

87. Adjectives. — The masculine and neuter of adjectives of the Vowel-Declension (81) follow the O-declension, the feminine usually follows the A-declension. The nominative singular, therefore, ends in *-os*, *-η* or *-ā*, *-ον* (Latin *-us*, *-a*, *-um*), as *καλός, καλή, καλόν*; *μῑκρός, μῑκρᾱ́, μῑκρόν.*

Form the nominative singular and plural, masculine, feminine, and neuter, of the adjectives given in Lessons VI.–VIII.

88. Definite Article. — The full declension of the definite article is as follows: —

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
S. N.	ὁ	ἡ	τό	D. N. A.	τώ	τώ	τώ	P. N.	οἱ	αἱ	τά
G.	τοῦ	τῆς	τοῦ	G. D.	τοῖν	τοῖν	τοῖν	G.	τῶν	τῶν	τῶν
D.	τῷ	τῇ	τῷ					D.	τοῖς	ταῖς	τοῖς
A.	τόν	τήν	τό					A.	τούς	τάς	τά

a. The forms ὁ, ἡ, οἱ, αἱ are proclitics (37). The vocative is lacking.

Decline together: *ὁ καλὸς λόγος, ὁ μῑκρὸς ἄνθρωπος, ἡ μακρὰ νῆσος, ἡ στενὴ ὁδός, τὸ κακὸν δῶρον.*

b. Observe that adjectives agree with their substantives in *gender*, as well as in case and number (p 10[3]). The adjective, therefore, may be of the A-declension while the substantive is of the O-declension, as in the third and fourth examples above.

LESSON XI.

Neuter Plural Subject. — O-Declension (continued).

89. Examine the following: —

οὐκ ἦν πλοῖα, *there* WERE *no boats.*
τὰ δῶρα καλὰ ἦν, *the gifts* WERE *beautiful.*

Observe that, although the subject is in the plural, the verb is in the singular (*cf.* p. 10[5]). Hence:

90. Rule of Syntax. — A *neuter plural subject* regularly has its verb in the singular.

91. VOCABULARY.

Substantives.	
ἄγγελος, ὁ,[1] *messenger.*	ποταμός, ὁ, *river.*
βασίλειον, *palace.*[2]	σῖτος, ὁ, *corn, food.*
θεός, ὁ, ἡ,[3] *god.*	στρατηγός, ὁ, *general.*
θηρίον, *wild beast.*	σύμμαχος, ὁ, *ally.*
ἵππος, ὁ, ἡ, *horse, mare.*	χωρίον, *place, spot.*
Κῦρος, ὁ, *Cyrus.*	
οἶνος, ὁ, *wine.*	Adjectives.
ὅπλον, *implement*, plur. *arms.*	διαβατός, -ή, -όν,[4] *passable.*
πεδίον, *plain.*	ἐρυμνός, -ή, -όν, *fortified.*
πλοῖον, *boat.*	ἰσχῡρός, -ά, -όν, *strong.*
πόλεμος, ὁ, *war.*	μεστός, -ή, -όν, *full.*
	φανερός, -ά, -όν, *manifest, visible.*

92. EXERCISES.

I. 1. στενὴ δ' ἦν ἡ ὁδός. 2. οὐ θαυμάζεις, ὦ Κῦρε, τὰ δῶρα; 3. τὸ χωρίον οἰκίας οὐκ εἶχε. 4. εἰς πεδίον ἤθροιζε τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. 5. ἦν βασίλεια ἐρυμνὰ ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. 6. αἱ

---

[1] See p. 18[1].

[2] Commonly used in the plur. Compare Latin *aedēs.*

[3] Substantives which may be either masc. or fem. are said to be of the *common* gender.

[4] That is, διαβατός, διαβατή, διαβατόν.

νῆσοι μεσταὶ ἦσαν σίτου[1] καὶ οἴνου. 7. ἐν ἰσχυροῖς χωρίοις τὸν σῖτον εἶχον. 8. ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐν πολέμῳ κακὸς ἦν. 9. ὁ ποταμὸς οὐκ ἦν διαβατὸς πλοίοις. 10. ἐνταῦθα (*there*) Κύρῳ[2] βασίλεια ἦν. 11. ὅπλα δέ, ὦ Κῦρε, οὐκ ἔχομεν. 12. φανεροὶ ἦσαν καὶ[3] ἵπποι καὶ ἄνθρωποι. 13. σύμμαχοι ἦσαν οἱ θεοὶ τοῖς ἀγαθοῖς ἀγγέλοις. 14. τοὺς Κύρου λόγους ἐθαύμαζον οἱ ἄνθρωποι. 15. ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἦν θηρία.

II. 1. The generals had horses.[4] 2. Did they not admire the generals' arms? 3. You were sacrificing to the gods. 4. The place was narrow. 5. The queen had brave allies. 6. He led the horse into the river. 7. Cyrus was a brave general. 8. The place was full of wine. 9. The horses carried both[3] the generals and the arms. 10. The villages were full of men and horses.

LESSON XII.

Prepositions.

93. Some prepositions are used with the genitive only, as ἐξ (before consonants ἐκ, Latin *ex, ē*), *out of, from* (properly *from* a position *in* something); ἀπό (Latin *ab*), *from, off from, away from* (properly *from* a position *on* something).

94. Other prepositions are used with the dative only, as ἐν (Latin *in* with the ablative), *in.*

95. One is used with the accusative only; namely, εἰς (Latin *in* with the accusative), *into, to* (properly *to* a position *in* something, opposed to ἐξ, *out of*).

---

[1] Adjectives denoting *fulness* take the gen. (as in Latin).

[2] With the verb *to be*, and similar verbs, the *possessor* is expressed by the dat. (as in Latin). This is called the *Dative of the Possessor.* In what other way, by the use of ἔχω, might the sentence be expressed?

[3] καὶ . . . καί, correlative conjunctions, *both . . . and.*

[4] Translate this sentence in two ways.

96. Some prepositions are used with the genitive and accusative.

97. Some other prepositions are used with the genitive, dative, and accusative, as παρά, with genitive *from beside, from*, with dative *by the side of, beside*, with accusative *to a position beside, unto, to*; ἐπί, with genitive *on, upon*, with dative *on, close to, by, at*, with accusative *upon, to, against*.

98. Examine the following: —

ἐκ τῆς κώμης τὴν στρατιὰν ἦγε. *he led his army* OUT OF *the village.*

ἐθήρευε Κῦρος ἀπὸ ἵππου. *Cyrus used to hunt on horseback* (literally FROM *a horse*).

ἐν τῇ κώμῃ θύομεν. *we are offering sacrifice* IN *the village.*

εἰς τὴν κώμην φυλακὴν ἦγον. *I led a guard* IN TO *the village.*

ὁ ἄνθρωπος ἄγγελος ἦν παρὰ Κύρου, *the man was a messenger* FROM *Cyrus.*

παρὰ τῷ Κύρῳ ἦσαν οἱ στρατηγοί. *the generals were* WITH *Cyrus.*

ἄγουσι τὸν ἄνθρωπον παρὰ Κῦρον. *they bring the man* TO *Cyrus.*

τὰ ὅπλα ἐπὶ ἁμαξῶν ἦγον. *they conveyed their arms* ON *wagons.*

ἐπὶ τῇ γεφύρᾳ φυλακὴν ἔχει. *he has a guard* AT *the bridge.*

ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν οὐκ ἦγε τὸν ἵππον. *he did not lead his horse* TO *the river.*

a. Observe that, in general, the genitive is used with prepositions to express *passing from* an object, the dative *being in* it, and the accusative *coming to* it. But there are many exceptions, as, for example, the genitive with ἐπί cannot, in the nature of the meaning of the preposition, express separation (*passing from*). It differs from the dative only in expressing closer relation.

b. The prepositions express many other relations besides those of place (illustrated above), such as *time, cause, etc.* These other relations must be learnt by observation.

c. One use of prepositions has been illustrated above: as *separate* words, connected with particular cases, they show the relations of words in a sentence. Prepositions have another important use: in *composition* with verbs, they define the action of the verb. See 127.

99. EXERCISES.

I. 1. τοῖς θεοῖς ἵππον ἔθῡον ἐν τῇ νήσῳ. 2. οἱ στρατηγοὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἦγον εἰς τὴν σκηνήν. 3. οἱ παρὰ Κύρῳ[1] σύμμαχοι ἀγαθοὶ ἦσαν. 4. τοὺς ἵππους ἄγομεν ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου. 5. ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἦν ὁδὸς στενή. 6. ὁδὸς φανερὰ ἄγει εἰς τὰς τοῦ[2] Κύρου κώμας. 7. ἀθροίζει τοὺς[3] συμμάχους ἐπὶ τὸν Κῦρον. 8. εἰς τὸ πεδίον ὁ στρατηγὸς ἤθροιζε τοὺς συμμάχους. 9. ἐπὶ τῷ ποταμῷ ἦν ὁ στρατηγός. 10. δῶρον αἱ κῶμαι ἦσαν παρὰ Κύρου. 11. ἦσαν ἄγγελοι παρὰ τοῦ ἀγαθοῦ στρατηγοῦ. 12. ἡ ὁδὸς εἰς τὸ πεδίον στενὴ καὶ χαλεπὴ ἦν. 13. ὁ στρατηγὸς τὰ θηρία θηρεύει ἀπὸ ἵππου. 14. ἐν τῑμῇ ἦσαν παρὰ Κύρῳ οἱ στρατηγοί.

II. 1. The road, O Cyrus, leads into a beautiful plain. 2. Cyrus had a fortified palace in the plain.[4] 3. The generals led the man to the queen. 4. He led the messenger from the market place to[5] the tents. 5. The generals of Cyrus collected horses in[6] the plain. 6. The general leads his[3] allies from the Persian villages. 7. Men were visible in the plain. 8. The generals were sacrificing, in the tents, to the gods. 9. He was general of the allies with Cyrus.[1]

LESSON XIII.

Future and First Aorist Indicative Active.

100. The *Future Indicative* denotes that an action is to take place in time to come, as λύσω, *I shall loose* or *I shall be loosing*, sometimes *I will loose*.

101. The *Aorist Indicative* expresses the simple *occurrence* of an action in past time, as ἔλῡσα, *I loosed*.

---

[1] Prepositional phrases and adverbs may be used attributively, like the adj. and the gen. *Cf.* 56, Rem.

[2] Proper names may take the article.

[3] *his.* The article is often used in place of the possessive pronoun.

[4] Translate in two ways.

[5] ἐπί.

[6] *Cf.* I. 8 above.

102. **PARADIGMS.**

		Singular.	Dual.	Plural.
Future Indicative Active	1	λύσω		λύσομεν
	2	λύσεις	λύσετον	λύσετε
	3	λύσει	λύσετον	λύσουσι
First Aorist[1] Indicative Active	1	ἔλῡσα		ἐλύσαμεν
	2	ἔλῡσας	ἐλύσατον	ἐλύσατε
	3	ἔλῡσε	ἐλῡσάτην	ἔλῡσαν

103. In the future and first aorist σ is added to the theme (63).[2] The aorist, as a secondary tense, has augment (75, 76).

Form and conjugate the future and first aorist of θῡ́ω.

104. The theme of many verbs ending in -ζω ends in δ, as ἀθροίζω, theme *ἀθροιδ-*. In forming the future and first aorist of these verbs, δ is dropped before σ, as ἀθροίζω, ἀθροίσω, ἤθροισα.

Form the future and first aorist of ἁρπάζω and θαυμάζω.

a. The future of ἄγω is ἄξω, and of ἔχω, ἕξω. These forms will be explained later. Neither of these verbs has a first aorist.

105. **VOCABULARY.**

Verbs.	Substantives.
ἀναγκάζω, *force, compel.*	ἀργύριον, *silver money, money.*
θηρεύω, *hunt.*	ἄριστον, *breakfast.*
κελεύω, *bid, command.*	βάρβαρος, ὁ, *barbarian, foreigner.*
κολάζω, *punish.*	γνώμη, *understanding, judgment.*
κωλύω, *hinder, prevent.*	μισθός, ὁ, *pay.*
πέμπω,[3] *send.*	πολέμιος, ὁ, *enemy* (in war).
στρατεύω, *make an expedition.*	τάλαντον, *talent* (sum of money).
σῴζω,[4] *save, rescue, preserve.*	ὑποζύγιον, *beast of burden.*
τοξεύω, *shoot.*	φίλος, ὁ, *friend.*

Form the future and first aorist of the verbs given above.

---

[1] Some verbs have a *second* aor. This will be treated later.

[2] See p. 12 [1].

[3] Fut. πέμψω, aor. ἔπεμψα. These forms will be explained later.

[4] Except in the pres. and imperf., the iota-subscript (12) is dropped. Fut. σώσω, aor. ἔσωσα.

106. EXERCISES.

I. 1. ὁ θεὸς ἐκέλευσε τὸν στρατηγὸν τοὺς ἀνθρώπους λῦειν.[1] 2. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἐτόξευσαν ἀπὸ τῶν ἵππων. 3. ὁ στρατηγὸς τὰ θηρία θηρεύσει ἀπὸ ἵππου. 4. τῇ στρατιᾷ[2] τότε (*then*) ἔπεμψε Κῦρος μισθὸν[3] τάλαντον ἀργυρίου. 5. τῷ στρατηγῷ δῶρα πέμψουσι, στολὴν Περσικὴν καὶ ἵππον ἀγαθόν. 6. οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐθαύμασαν ὅτι (*because*) Κῦρος μισθὸν οὐκ ἔπεμψε. 7. τὴν βασίλειαν ἔσωσαν καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια καὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. 8. καὶ παρὰ τὴν γέφῡραν τὸν στρατηγὸν πέμπειν ἐκέλευσε Κῦρος φυλακήν. 9. εἰς τὸ πεδίον ἀθροίσετε τοὺς Ἕλληνικοὺς συμμάχους. 10. ἐν πλοίοις τὰ ὅπλα καὶ τὸν σῖτον σώσουσι τοῖς φίλοις.[4] 11. ὁ στρατηγὸς ἠνάγκασε τοὺς βαρβάρους στρατεύειν ἐπὶ Κῦρον. 12. γνώμῃ[5] δὲ τοὺς κακοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἐκόλασε. 13. τοῖς στρατηγοῖς οἱ σύμμαχοι ἄριστον οὐ πέμψουσι. 14. οὐκ ἐκώλῡσαν οἱ πολέμιοι τὴν Κύρου στρατιὰν θύειν.[6] 15. τοὺς βαρβάρους κωλύσομεν ἐν τῑμῇ εἶναι[7] παρὰ Κύρῳ.

II. The barbarians sent the man. 2. Cyrus will compel the barbarians to send gifts to the generals. 3. The enemy will capture the beasts of burden. 4. He bade the barbarians send breakfast to his friends. 5. The generals sent to the man a talent of silver as[8] pay. 6. He will command the general to make an expedition against[9] the barbarians. 7. Cyrus sent good wine to his friends. 8. The river carried away[10] the men's arms. 9. The general will not punish his allies.

---

[1] Present infinitive active, *to loose.*

[2] Observe that (as in Latin) the indirect object is put in the dat.

[3] *as pay.* Observe that (as in Latin) an appositive is in the same case as the noun which it describes.

[4] *for their friends.* The person to whose advantage or disadvantage anything tends is put in the dat. This is called the *Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage.*

[5] The dat. is used to denote the *manner* (as the ablative in Latin).

[6] Infin. dependent upon ἐκώλῡσαν, *hindered from sacrificing* (literally *to sacrifice*).

[7] Pres. infin. of the verb *to be.*

[8] Omit. *Cf.* I. 4 above.

[9] *Cf.* I. 11 above. [10] Use ἁρπάζω.

LESSON XIV.

Masculine Substantives of the A-Declension.

Review 43–45 and 52.

107. PARADIGMS.

	ὁ νεᾱνίᾱς *young man* (νεᾱνιᾱ-)	ὁ Σεύθης *Seuthes* (Σευθᾱ-)	ὁ πολίτης *citizen* (πολιτᾱ-)	ὁ πελταστής *targeteer* (πελταστᾱ-)	ὁ Πέρσης *Persian* (Περσᾱ-)
Sing. N.	νεᾱνίᾱς	Σεύθης	πολίτης	πελταστής	Πέρσης
G.	νεᾱνίου	Σεύθου	πολίτου	πελταστοῦ	Πέρσου
D.	νεᾱνίᾳ	Σεύθῃ	πολίτῃ	πελταστῇ	Πέρσῃ
A.	νεανίᾶν	Σεύθην	πολίτην	πελταστήν	Πέρσην
V.	νεᾱνίᾱ	Σεύθη	πολῖτα	πελταστά	Πέρσα
Dual N. A. V.	νεᾱνίᾱ		πολίτᾱ	πελταστά	Πέρσᾱ
G. D.	νεᾱνίαιν		πολίταιν	πελταταῖν	Πέρσαιν
Plur. N. V.	νεᾱνίαι		πολῖται	πελτασταί	Πέρσαι
G.	νεᾱνιῶν		πολιτῶν	πελταστῶν	Περσῶν
D.	νεᾱνίαις		πολίταις	πελτασταῖς	Πέρσαις
A.	νεᾱνίᾱς		πολίτᾱς	πελταστάς	Πέρσᾱς

108. The stem (47) ends in *-ᾱ-*. *Cf.* 48.

109. The nominative singular ends in *-ᾱς*, or, by change of *ᾱ* to *η*, as in some feminines of this declension (49), in *-ης*. The change occurs unless *ε*, *ι*, or *ρ* immediately precedes *ᾱ* of the stem.

a. Observe, as to the final syllables in these forms, that masculines in *-ᾱς* or *-ης* differ from feminines in *-ᾱ* or *-η* (51) only in the nom. and gen. sing.; except that those in *-της* and names signifying nationality with nom. sing. in *-ης* have the voc. sing. in *-α*.

Decline together *νεᾱνίᾱς ἀγαθός*, *ὁ κακὸς ὁπλίτης*, *στρατιῶται τριᾱκόσιοι*, and compare 88 b.

110. VOCABULARY.

Ἀβροκόμᾱς, *Abrocomas.*
ἀκοντιστής, *javelin-thrower.*
ἁρμοστής, *governor, harmost.*
Εὐφράτης, *the Euphrates.*
κωμάρχης, *village-chief.*
Ξέρξης, *Xerxes.*
ὁπλίτης, *heavy-armed foot-soldier, hoplite.*
σατράπης, *Persian viceroy, satrap.*
στρατιώτης, *soldier.*
σφενδονήτης, *slinger.*
τοξότης, *bowman.*

σύν, prep. with dat., *with, in company with* (Latin *cum*, with abl.).

βασιλεύω, *be king.*
βοήθεια, *aid, help.*
Βυζάντιον, *Byzantium.*
δεξιός, -ά, -όν, *right.*
ξένος, ὁ, *guest-friend.*
πηγή, *source.*
πλαίσιον, *square* (of troops).
πλευρά, *side, flank.*
τέκνον, *child.*
τριᾱκόσιοι, -αι, -α, *300.*

πρός, prep., properly *confronting:* with gen., *over against;* with dat., *at;* with acc., *to, against, towards.*[1]

111. EXERCISES.

I. 1. ὁ σατράπης βοήθειαν ἔπεμψε τοῖς πολίταις. 2. παρὰ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἔπεμψα τῷ Κύρῳ ἄγγελον. 3. ὁ ἐν Βυζαντίῳ[2] ἁρμοστὴς πλοῖα μακρὰ ἔχει. 4. τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν ἐν δεξιᾷ[3] ἔχει. 5. οἱ στρατιῶται ἐν[4] φυλακῇ ἔξουσι τὸν κωμάρχην καὶ τὰ τέκνα. 6. βοήθειαν δ' ἐπέμπομεν τοῖς Πέρσαις. 7. ὁ δὲ στρατηγὸς τριᾱκοσίους μὲν[5] ὁπλίτᾱς, τριᾱκοσίους δὲ πελταστὰς ἔχει. 8. ἡ κώμη καλὴ ἦν, καὶ βασίλειον[6] εἶχε τῷ σατράπῃ. 9. καὶ τοὺς σὺν τῷ στρατηγῷ σφενδονήτᾱς ἦγον πρὸς Σεύθην. 10. ὁ δὲ στρατηγὸς οὔτε[7] τοξότην εἶχεν[8] οὔτε ἀκοντιστήν. 11. καὶ τῷ Ἀβροκόμᾳ ὁ

[1] The definitions of the prepositions given in the special vocabularies are generally confined to designations of place. Other meanings will be explained in the foot-notes as they occur.

[2] *Cf.* 99, I. 3.

[3] *on (his) right (hand).*

[4] *under.*

[5] When two parts of a sentence are contrasted, they are very commonly correlated by *μέν . . . δέ, indeed . . . but,* or *on the one hand . . . on the other,* but in many cases *μέν* can hardly be rendered in English. The intensive particle *μέν* (Latin *quidem*) is postpositive. *Cf.* p. 15[2].

[6] Here in sing. *Cf.* p. 20[2].

[7] *οὔτε . . . οὔτε, neither . . . nor.*

[8] See p. 42[1].

νεᾱνίᾱς ξένος ἦν. 12. πέρᾱν[1] (*across*) δὲ τοῦ Εὐφράτου ποταμοῦ ἦν χωρίον ἰσχῡρόν. 13. τοῦ Εὐφράτου αἱ πηγαὶ οὐ πρόσω[1] (*far from*) τοῦ χωρίου ἦσαν. 14. ἀπὸ τῆς δεξιᾶς λευρᾶς τοῦ πλαισίου ἄγουσιν[2] ὁπλῖτᾱς πρὸς τὰς πύλᾱς. 15. τότε Ξέρξης ἐβασίλευε.

II. 1. He will send aid to Xerxes. 2. The young man was in honour. 3. The general was not leading the hoplites. 4. Both[3] the slingers and the bowmen were brave. 5. Abrocomas was close to the river[4] Euphrates. 6. He sends a horse to the village-chief. 7. He will send beautiful gifts to the harmosts. 8. The harmost in Byzantium commanded the soldiers to sacrifice the beasts of burden. 9. He leads the Persians into the soldiers' tent. 10. He sends the peltasts and the bowmen.

LESSON XV.

First Perfect and First Pluperfect Indicative Active.

112. Classification of Consonants. — Consonants (7) are divided into *semivowels*, *mutes*, and *double-consonants*.

113. The semivowels are λ, μ, ν, ρ, σ, and γ-nasal (p. 2[3]). λ, μ, ν, ρ are called *liquids*; σ, a *sibilant*; μ, ν, and γ-nasal, *nasals*.

114. The mutes are of three *classes* and of three *orders*: —

Classes.				Orders.			
Labial or π-mutes	π	β	φ	*Smooth* mutes	π	τ	κ
Lingual or τ-mutes	τ	δ	θ	*Middle* mutes	β	δ	γ
Palatal or κ-mutes	κ	γ	χ	*Rough* mutes	φ	θ	χ

a. Mutes of the same class are called *cognate*, since produced by the same organ (lips, tongue, or palate); those of the same order are called *co-ordinate*.

115. The double consonants are ξ (for κς), ψ (for πς), and ζ.

[1] The gen. is used with adverbs of *place*.

[2] See p. 42[1].

[3] *Cf.* p. 21[3].

[4] For the order, *cf.* I. 4, 12 above.

116. The *Perfect Indicative* represents an action as already finished at the *present* time, as λέλυκα, *I have loosed.*

117. The *Pluperfect Indicative* represents an action as already finished at a given *past* time, as ἐλελύκη, *I had loosed.*

118. PARADIGMS.

		Singular.	Dual.	Plural.
First Perfect Indicative Active	1	λέλυκα		λελύκαμεν
	2	λέλυκας	λελύκατον	λελύκατε
	3	λέλυκε	λελύκατον	λελύκᾶσι
First Pluperfect Indicative Active	1	ἐλελύκη		ἐλελύκεμεν
	2	ἐλελύκης	ἐλελύκετον	ἐλελύκετε
	3	ἐλελύκει	ἐλελυκέτην	ἐλελύκεσαν

119. Reduplication. — The perfect and pluperfect have *reduplication* in all of the moods as the sign of completed action.

120. Reduplication consists in the repetition of the initial sound. Verbs beginning with a consonant repeat that consonant with ε, as λύω, λέ-λυκα ; κελεύω, κε-κέλευκα. A rough initial mute is changed to the cognate smooth, as θύω, τέ-θυκα.

121. But in verbs beginning with two consonants (except a mute followed by a liquid), with a double consonant, or with ρ, the reduplication omits the consonant and consists only of ε, as στρατεύω, ἐστράτευκα.

122. Verbs beginning with a vowel lengthen that vowel, so that the reduplication in these verbs has the same form as the temporal augment (76), as ἁρπάζω, ἥρπακα.

123. The pluperfect as a secondary tense has augment (75). This is prefixed to the reduplicated theme; but it is omitted when the reduplication consists of ε (121) or the simple lengthening of the vowel (122), as ἐλελύκη, but ἐστρατεύκη, ἡρπάκη.

124. In the first perfect and first pluperfect **κ** is added to the reduplicated theme.

Form the first perfect and first pluperfect of *θηρεύω, θύω, κελεύω, κωλύω, στρατεύω.*

125. In forming the first perfect and first pluperfect of verbs in **-ζω** with themes ending in **δ** (104), **δ** is dropped before **κ.**

Form the first perfect and first pluperfect of *ἀθροίζω, ἀναγκάζω, ἁρπάζω, θαυμάζω.*[1]

a. The perfect of **ἄγω** is **ἦχα**, of **ἔχω**, **ἔσχηκα**, and of **πέμπω**, **πέπομφα.**[2]

126. VOCABULARY.

ἀτῑμάζω, *dishonour, disgrace.*
βουλεύω, *plan, plot.*
δι-αρπάζω, *plunder, sack.*
δια-σῴζω, *preserve, keep safe.*
δουλεύω, *be a slave.*
ἐπι-βουλεύω, *plot against.*
παίω, *strike.*
πλησιάζω, *approach.*

διά, prep., *through*, originally *between, asunder*, Latin *dī-, dis-*: with gen., *through*; with acc., *on account of.*

ἀδελφός, ὁ, *brother.*
Ἀθήνησι, adv., *at Athens.*
Ἀρταξέρξης, *Artaxerxes.*
δᾰρεικός, ὁ, *daric* (a gold coin).
δικαίως, adv., *justly.*
δίκη, *justice, retribution, deserts.*
εὐταξίᾱ, *good order, discipline.*
Κλέαρχος, ὁ, *Clearchus.*
ὅρκος, ὁ, *oath.*
πρόσθεν, adv., *before, previously.*
σπονδή, *libation*, plur. *truce.*
τρισχίλιοι, -αι, -α, *3000.*
φόβος, ὁ, *fear.*

127. Compound Verbs. — Compound verbs are formed by prefixing a preposition to a simple verb. See 98 c. If the preposition ends in a vowel and the simple verb begins with one, the prep. is generally elided (21),[3] as **δι-αρπάζω.** The force of the preposition is generally apparent in the compound, as **δι-αρπάζω** (Latin *dī-ripiō*), *tear apart, plunder utterly* ('through and through'), *sack*; **δια-σῴζω**, *save through* danger, *preserve, keep safe*; **ἐπι-βουλεύω**, *plot against.*

[1] See 120 end.

[2] These forms will be explained later.

[3] Elision occurs, then, also in forming *compound* words, but in this case without the apostrophe.

128. Compound verbs take the augment and reduplication *after* the preposition. The first of two vowels thus brought together is elided (21), as δι-έσῳζον, δι-έσωσα, but δια-σέσωκα.

Form the imperfect, future, first aorist, first perfect, and first pluperfect of the verbs in 126.

129. **EXERCISES.**

I. 1. ἐπὶ Βυζάντιον ἐστρατεύκαμεν σὺν τῷ στρατηγῷ. 2. ἡ τῶν ὁπλῖτῶν εὐταξίᾱ ἐσεσώκει τὴν στρατιάν. 3. τοὺς τρισχῑλίους δᾱρεικοὺς διεσεσώκης. 4. οὐκ ἐκεκωλύκει Κλέαρχος τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς πλησιάζειν. 5. Κλέαρχος τῷ σατράπῃ κακὸν[1] ἐβεβουλεύκει. 6. Ἀθήνησι δεδούλευκεν[2] ὁ πελταστής. 7. οἱ στρατιῶται τὸν ἄνθρωπον πεπαίκᾱσι. 8. Ἀρταξέρξης δὲ Κῦρον τὸν ἀδελφὸν ἠτῑμάκει. 9. καὶ τᾶς ἁμάξᾱς οἱ βάρβαροι διηρπάκεσαν. 10. Κλέαρχος δὲ πρόσθεν ἐπεβεβουλεύκει τῷ σατράπῃ.[3] 11. ἤθροικας, ὦ Κῦρε, ἐπὶ τοὺς βαρβάρους τοὺς ἀκοντιστᾶς καὶ τοὺς τοξότᾱς. 12. καὶ δικαίως τῷ ἁρμοστῇ ἐπιβεβουλεύκατε· ἔχει γὰρ (*for*)[4] τὰ ὅπλα. 13. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται τᾶς ἁμάξᾱς ἐλελύκεσαν διὰ τὸν τῶν πολεμίων φόβον.[5] 14. Κλέαρχος, ὦ στρατιῶται, ἐπεὶ (*since*) τᾶς σπονδᾶς καὶ τοὺς ὅρκους λέλυκε, τὴν δίκην ἔχει.

II. 1. For we had broken the truce. 2. The soldiers have sacked the villages. 3. The satrap has plotted against Cyrus.[6] 4. I have compelled the village-chief to lead. 5. His brother had ordered Cyrus to send gifts. 6. They have planned to break the truce. 7. And we have ordered the general to bring hoplites. 8. But I have struck the man justly. 9. The hoplites had approached. 10. The generals have broken their oaths; for they have not sacrificed to the gods.

---

[1] *evil*, neut. of the adj. as subst.

[2] See p. 42[1].

[3] Many verbs compounded with ἐν, σύν, ἐπί, take a dat. depending on the preposition.

[4] Postpositive. See p. 15[2].

[5] That is, *their fear of, etc.*

[6] *Cf.* 129, I. 10.

LESSON XVI.

Affinity of Words.

Give the meanings of the following words. All of these words have occurred in the previous lessons.

130. WORD LIST.[1]

Ἀβροκόμᾱς	βοήθεια	ἐρυμνός	κρήνη	ὅρκος
ἀγαθός	βουλεύω	εὔνοια	Κῦρος	ὅτι
ἄγγελος	Βυζάντιον	εὐταξίᾱ	κωλύω	οὐ
ἄγκῡρα	γάρ	Εὐφράτης	κωμάρχης	οὔτε . . . οὔτε
ἀγορά	γέφῡρα	ἔχω	κώμη	παίω
ἄγω	γνώμη	ζώνη	λόγος	παρά
ἀδελφός	δᾱρεικός	ἡμέρᾱ	λόγχη	πεδίον
Ἀθήνησι	δέ	ἦν, ἦσαν	λύω	πεῖρα
ἀθροίζω	δεξιός	θάλαττα	μακρός	πελταστής
ἀκοντιστής	διά	θαυμάζω	μάχαιρα	πέμπω
ἀλήθειᾰ	διαβατός	θεά	μάχη	πέρᾱν
ἅμαξα	διαρπάζω	θεός	μέν . . . δέ	Πέρσης
ἀναγκάζω	διασῴζω	θηρεύω	μεστός	Περσικός
ἄνθρωπος	δικαίως	θηρίον	μῑκρός	πηγή
ἀπό	δίκη	θύρᾱ	μισθός	πλαίσιον
ἀργύριον	δόξα	θύω	Μοῦσα	πλευρά
ἀρετή	δουλεύω	ἱερός	νεᾱνίᾱς	πλησιάζω
ἄριστον	δῶρον	ἵππος	νῆσος	πλοῖον
ἁρμοστής	εἰς	ἰσχῡρός	ξένος	πολέμιος
ἁρπάζω	Ἑλληνικός	καί	Ξέρξης	πόλεμος
Ἀρταξέρξης	ἐν	καί . . . καί	ὁ, ἡ, τό	πολίτης
ἀτῑμάζω	ἐνταῦθα	κακός	ὁδός	ποταμός
βάρβαρος	ἐξ	καλός	οἰκίᾱ	πρός
βασίλεια	ἐπεί	κελεύω	οἶνος	πρόσθεν
βασίλειον	ἐπί	Κλέαρχος	ὁπλίτης	πρόσω
βασιλεύω	ἐπιβουλεύω	κολάζω	ὅπλον	πύλη

[1] These words occur, with an exception or two, in the *Anabasis* of Xenophon, on which the exercises in this book are based. It is important to commit these words thoroughly to memory. The nouns (substantive and adjective) in this list occur more than 3500 times in the Anabasis, the verbs more than 2200 times.

σατράπης	στρατεύω	σφενδονήτης	τότε	φοβερός
Σεύθης	στρατηγός	σῴζω	τράπεζα	φόβος
σῖτος	στρατιᾶ	τάλαντον	τριᾱκόσιοι	φυλακή
σκηνή	στρατιώτης	τέκνον	τρισχίλιοι	χαλεπός
σπονδή	σύμμαχος	τῑμή	ὑποζύγιον	χώρᾱ
στενός	σύν	τοξεύω	φανερός	χωρίον
στολή	σφενδόνη	τοξότης	φίλος	ὦ

131. An inspection of this list shows that these words are not all separate units, but that some of them are related both in *form* and in *meaning*.

For example, ἀ-τῑμάζω, τῑμή; δικαίως, δίκη; θεᾶ, θεός; θηρεύω, θηρίον; κωμ-άρχης (*village-ruler*, ἄρχω, *rule*), κώμη; ὁπλίτης, ὅπλον; Πέρσης, Περσικός; πολέμιος, πόλεμος; πρός, πρόσθεν; σφενδόνη, σφενδονήτης; τοξεύω, τοξότης; φοβερός, φόβος; χώρα, χωρίον; βασίλεια, βασίλειον, βασιλεύω; μάχαιρα, μάχη, σύμ-μαχος; στρατεύω, στρατ-ηγός (*army-leader*), στρατιά, στρατιώτης.

132. Greek words, then, fall naturally into *groups*. The words in any group are related to one another both in *form* and in *meaning*.

133. There is commonly an original element for the entire group called the *root*, the primitive part that remains after all *formative* elements have been removed. Roots are properly of *one* syllable, and may suffer variation of form. Thus, the root of ἀ-τῑμάζω, τῑμή, is τι, *pay*; of στρατεύω, *etc.*, στρα, *spread*, which appears in other words in the forms στερ, στορ.

134. But the root is not always ascertainable. The origin of many Greek words is obscure, and the ultimate ascertainable element may be the *stem*, the body of the word to which the inflexional endings are added. (*Cf.* 47 and 63.) Thus, the stem of βασίλεια, *etc.*, is βασιλεϝ-, but it is uncertain what the root or roots may be which underlie it.

135. That word in the group which best shows the root or ultimate stem may be called the *root-word* or *stem-word*.

136. Two or more roots or stems may appear in one word, which is then said to be *compound*. Thus, κωμ-άρχης, στρατ-ηγός.

The facts stated above are of great *practical* importance, and naturally suggest the following direction: —

137. *In acquiring a Greek vocabulary, do not commit words to memory as separate units, but group those that show affinity in form and meaning about the root-word or stem-word.*

LESSON XVII.

The Art of Reading.

138. In reading an inflected language, such as Greek, the knowledge of three things is absolutely necessary, first, of *words;* secondly, of *forms;* thirdly, of *constructions.*

139. The acquisition of this knowledge is gradual. The meaning of each new word as it occurs should be thoroughly committed to memory, so far as possible, according to the principles stated in the last lesson. In learning the paradigms, the forms of the different cases, tenses, and numbers should be so sharply impressed on the mind the first time the paradigms occur, that these forms will be instantly recognized thereafter at sight. And as the pupil reads, the laws of construction should be carefully noted, especially those which differ from the corresponding constructions in Latin and English.

140. DIRECTIONS FOR READING.

1. *Read each sentence aloud in the original. Pronounce each word distinctly.*

In reading,

a. *Observe sharply the forms of the words, so as to become at once aware of their grammatical relations.*

b. *Make the utmost effort of memory to recall the meanings of words already given.*

c. *Follow the Greek order strictly in arriving at the thought. Observe carefully the order of the words and the marks of punctuation.*

2. *If the thought expressed in the sentence is not perfectly clear, repeat the whole process.*

3. *Translate the sentence into simple, idiomatic English.*

The pupil who has properly mastered the facts presented in the previous lessons should now be able to read the following connected passages. Follow carefully the directions in 140.

141. Κλέαρχος.

1. Κλέαρχος Λακεδαιμόνιος (*a Lacedaemonian*) μὲν ἦν, φίλος δὲ τῷ Κύρῳ. τούτῳ (*to him*) ἔδωκε (*gave*) Κῦρος μῦρίους (*10,000*) δᾱρεικούς. ὁ δὲ (*and he*) ἤθροισεν ἀπὸ τούτων (*these*) ὁπλίτᾱς χῑλίους (*cf.* τρισ-χίλιοι, τρεῖς, *three*) καὶ πελταστὰς ὀκτακοσίους (*cf.* ὀκτώ, *eight*, and τριᾱ-κόσιοι) καὶ τοξότᾱς διᾱκοσίους (*cf.* δύο, *two*).

2. ἐντεῦθεν (*from this place*) ἐξελαύνει (*marches*) Κῦρος εἰς Τυριαῖον. ἐνταῦθα ἐξετάζει (*he reviews*) ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ τὴν στρατιᾶν· εἶχε δὲ τὸ μὲν δεξιὸν (*i.e. wing*) Μένων, τὸ δὲ εὐώνυμον (infer the meaning from the context) Κλέαρχος, τὸ δὲ μέσον (*centre*) οἱ ἄλλοι (*other*) στρατηγοί. τῶν δὲ βαρβάρων φόβος ἦν (*i.e.* they were alarmed at what they saw), καὶ ἡ Κίλισσα (*Cilician queen*) ἔφυγεν (*fled*) ἐπὶ τῆς ἁρμαμάξης (*carriage*) καὶ οἱ (= *those*) ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ ἔφυγον. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες (*Greeks*) ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνὰς ἦλθον (*went*).

3. ἐπεὶ (*when*) δὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ ταῖς τοῦ σατράπου θύραις, οἱ μὲν στρατηγοὶ ἦλθον εἴσω (*within*), Πρόξενος, Μένων, Κλέαρχος, οἱ δὲ λοχᾱγοὶ (*captains*) ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις ἔμενον (*remained*). (The generals are seized. Ariaeus comes to the Greek camp.) ὁ δὲ Ἀριαῖος εἶπε (*said*)· Κλέαρχος μέν, ὦ Ἕλληνες, ἐπεὶ (*since*) τὰς σπουδὰς ἔλῡσεν, ἔχει τὴν δίκην καὶ τέθνηκε (*is dead*), Πρόξενος δὲ καὶ Μένων ἐν τῑμῇ εἰσιν (*are*). ἐπὶ τούτοις (*on this*) Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος εἶπε· Κλέαρχος μὲν τοίνυν (*then*), εἰ (*if*) παρὰ (*contrary to*) τοὺς ὅρκους ἔλῡε τὰς σπουδάς, τὴν δίκην ἔχει· Πρόξενος δὲ καὶ Μένων ἐπεί εἰσιν ὑμέτεροι (*your*) μὲν εὐεργέται (*benefactors*), ἡμέτεροι (*our*) δὲ στρατηγοί, πέμψατε (aorist imperative) αὐτοὺς (*them*) δεῦρο (*hither*).

142. In the following passage, such aid as the student should need is given in notes following the passage. These notes should not be used until each sentence has been read according to 140. 1 and 2. Each sentence makes greater demands on the pupil's knowledge than he can meet unaided. But if, *depending entirely upon himself*, he honestly makes the effort to see what the sentence tells him, he will, first, fix securely in mind facts already acquired, and secondly, define clearly to himself the new facts (whether meanings of words, forms, or constructions) that he must now learn. Such a process cultivates the powers of observation, strengthens the memory, and is the short road to the acquisition of the power to read rapidly and with pleasure.

143. Κῦρος.

I. Κῦρος υἱὸς μὲν Δᾱρείου ἦν, ἀδελφὸς δὲ Ἀρταξέρξου. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὑπ-ώπτευε Δᾱρεῖος τελευτὴν τοῦ βίου, ἐκέλευσεν Ἀρταξέρξην καὶ Κῦρον παρ-εῖναι. ὁ μὲν οὖν Ἀρταξέρξης ἤδη παρ-ἦν· Κῦρος δὲ ὁπλίτᾱς ἔχων τριᾱκοσίους ἀνα-βαίνει ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἧς αὐτὸν σατράπην Δᾱρεῖος ἐποί-ησεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐτελεύτησε Δᾱρεῖος καὶ ἐβασίλευσεν Ἀρταξέρξης, ὁ τῆς Κᾰρίᾱς σατράπης Τισσαφέρνης δια-βάλλει τὸν Κῦρον πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφὸν ὡς ἐπιβουλεύει αὐτῷ. ὁ δὲ συλλαμβάνει Κῦρον· ἡ δὲ μήτηρ σῴζει αὐτὸν καὶ ἀπο-πέμπει πάλιν ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν.

NOTES.

1. **υἱός**, *son.* — 2. **ὑπ-ώπτευε**: imperf. of the compound verb ὑπ-οπτεύω, *suspect, apprehend*, the prep. ὑπό being equal to *sub* in the Latin word that corresponds in meaning, *su-spicor.* — **τελευτήν**: τελευτή, *end.* With this *cf.* the verb τελευτάω, aor. ἐτελεύτησα (6), *come to an end, i.e. die.* — **βίου**: βίος. *Cf.* the word *bio-graphy.* — 3. **παρ-εῖναι**: elicit the meaning from the two elements (*cf.* 106. I. 15). — **οὖν**, *now*, not temporal, but continuative. — 4. **ἤδη**, *already.* — **ἔχων**: pres. part. act. — **ἀναβαίνει**, *goes up* (historical present, as in Latin), *i.e.* from his ἀρχή, or *province*, to Babylon. — 5. **ἧς**: gen. sing. fem. of the relative pronoun ὅς, *which.* — **αὐτόν**, *him*, acc. sing. masc. So αὐτῷ (8), dat. sing. masc. — **ἐποίησεν**: ποιέω, aor. ἐποίησα, *make.* — 6. **ἐβασίλευσεν**: the so-called *inceptive* aor., *became king.* — 7. **δια-βάλλει**: διαβάλλω, *accuse falsely*, followed by ὡς, *that.* — 9. **ὁ δέ**, *but he*, *i.e.* Artaxerxes. — **συλλαμβάνει**: συλλαμβάνω, *arrest.* — **μήτηρ**, *mother*, *cf.* māter. — 10. **πάλιν**: adv., *again.*

LESSON XVIII.

Adjectives of the Vowel-Declension.

Review 87.

144. PARADIGMS.

	ἀγαθός, *good*			δῆλος, *plain, clear*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
S. N.	ἀγαθός	ἀγαθή	ἀγαθόν	δῆλος	δῆλη	δῆλον
G.	ἀγαθοῦ	ἀγαθῆς	ἀγαθοῦ	δήλου	δήλης	δήλου
D.	ἀγαθῷ	ἀγαθῇ	ἀγαθῷ	δήλῳ	δήλῃ	δήλῳ
A.	ἀγαθόν	ἀγαθήν	ἀγαθόν	δῆλον	δήλην	δῆλον
V.	ἀγαθέ	ἀγαθή	ἀγαθόν	δῆλε	δῆλη	δῆλον
D. N. A. V.	ἀγαθώ	ἀγαθά	ἀγαθώ	δήλω	δήλᾱ	δήλω
G. D.	ἀγαθοῖν	ἀγαθαῖν	ἀγαθοῖν	δήλοιν	δήλαιν	δήλοιν
P. N. V.	ἀγαθοί	ἀγαθαί	ἀγαθά	δῆλοι	δῆλαι	δῆλα
G.	ἀγαθῶν	ἀγαθῶν	ἀγαθῶν	δήλων	δήλων	δήλων
D.	ἀγαθοῖς	ἀγαθαῖς	ἀγαθοῖς	δήλοις	δήλαις	δήλοις
A.	ἀγαθούς	ἀγαθάς	ἀγαθά	δήλους	δήλᾱς	δῆλα

	μῑκρός, *small, little*			φίλιος, *friendly*[1]		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
S. N.	μῑκρός	μῑκρά	μῑκρόν	φίλιος	φιλίᾱ	φίλιον
G.	μῑκροῦ	μῑκρᾶς	μῑκροῦ	φιλίου	φιλίᾱς	φιλίου
D.	μῑκρῷ	μῑκρᾷ	μῑκρῷ	φιλίῳ	φιλίᾳ	φιλίῳ
A.	μῑκρόν	μῑκράν	μῑκρόν	φίλιον	φιλίᾱν	φίλιον
V.	μῑκρέ	μῑκρά	μῑκρόν	φίλιε	φιλίᾱ	φίλιον
D. N. A. V.	μῑκρώ	μῑκρά	μῑκρώ	φιλίω	φιλίᾱ	φιλίω
G. D.	μῑκροῖν	μῑκραῖν	μῑκροῖν	φιλίοιν	φιλίαιν	φιλίοιν
P. N. V.	μῑκροί	μῑκραί	μῑκρά	φίλιοι	φίλιαι	φίλια
G.	μῑκρῶν	μῑκρῶν	μῑκρῶν	φιλίων	φιλίων	φιλίων
D.	μῑκροῖς	μῑκραῖς	μῑκροῖς	φιλίοις	φιλίαις	φιλίοις
A.	μῑκρούς	μῑκρᾱ́ς	μῑκρά	φιλίους	φιλίᾱς	φίλια

[1] *Cf.* the related word in 105.

145. If ε, ι, ρ, or ρο precedes the final vowel of the stem, the nominative singular feminine ends in *-ᾱ*, otherwise in *-η*. *Cf.* 49.

146. The nominative and genitive plural feminine follow the accent of the masculine, as δήλων, φίλιαι. φιλίων, not δηλῶν, φιλίαι (from nominative singular φιλιᾱ), φιλιῶν, as in substantives of the A-declension.

Decline ἄγριος,[1] *wild;* ἐλεύθερος, *free;* ἱκανός, *able;* πιστός, *faithful.*

147. Some adjectives of the vowel-declension have only two sets of endings, the masculine form being used for the feminine, as ἄλκιμος, ἄλκιμον,[1] *valiant, warlike;* ἁμαξιτός, *-όν* (*cf.* ἅμαξα), *passable for wagons;* ἄπορος, *-ον*, *impassable, impracticable, without means;* ἄφθονος, *-ον*, *abundant, fertile.*

Decline these adjectives.

Review 138–140.

148. Follow the directions given in 140 in reading single detached sentences also. No inflected *form* occurs in the exercises in this book which has not been given previously in the paradigms or elsewhere. Difficult *constructions* are explained by deduction from examples before their use in the exercises, if peculiarly idiomatic; otherwise, by immediate reference to notes at the foot of the page. New *words* occur, of course, in all of the exercises, and their meanings must be acquired. But it is important, first of all, to recognize clearly in each sentence what words *are* new, as distinguished from words that have already occurred. The meanings of these new words are ultimately to be sought for in the special vocabularies, which from this point follow the exercises. But neither notes nor vocabularies should be consulted until the sentence has been read aloud once or twice *through to the end*, according to the directions in 140. The notes will then frequently simply confirm the pupil in conclusions to which he has come by his own reasoning, and the vocabularies will often simply define to him more clearly meanings at which he has arrived independently either from the context or by word-analysis.

---

[1] All new words thus introduced should be at once thoroughly committed to memory.

149. EXERCISES.

I. 1. *ὄνοι ἄγριοι χίλιοι ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἦσαν.* 2. *ὁ Εὐφράτης ποταμὸς ἄπορος ἦν.* 3. *ἡ Χερρόνησος ἦν χώρᾱ καλὴ καὶ ἄφθονος.* 4. *δικαίως ἐθαυμάζομεν τοὺς πιστοὺς καὶ βεβαίους.*[1] 5. *καὶ δῆλον ἦν ὅτι (that) ἐγγὺς ὁ Ἀρταξέρξης ἦν.* 6. *τὰ δῶρα διασῴζειν*[2] *ἱκανοὶ ἦσαν.* 7. *οἱ ποταμοὶ πρόσω τῶν πηγῶν*[3] *ἄποροι ἦσαν.* 8. *δίκαιον ἦν καὶ*[4] *πρὸς*[5] *θεῶν καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων τὴν χώρᾱν διαρπάζειν.*[6] 9. *ἴσως δὲ καὶ (also) δίκαιον ἦν ἐπιβουλεύειν τῷ σατράπῃ.* 10. *τὰ γὰρ ἐπιτήδεια οὐκ ἦν*[7] *ἔχειν.* 11. *τῷ Ἀρταξέρξῃ πολέμιος ἦν, Κύρῳ δὲ πιστός.* 12. *οὐκ ἄξιον ἦν τῷ ὁπλίτῃ παίειν τοὺς οἰκέτᾱς.* 13. *ἡ δὲ εἰσβολὴ ἦν ὁδὸς ἁμαξιτὸς ὀρθίᾱ ἰσχῡρῶς.* 14. *οἱ Χαλδαῖοι ἐλεύθεροι καὶ ἄλκιμοι ἦσαν· ὅπλα δ' εἶχον γέρρα μακρὰ καὶ λόγχᾱς.* 15. *ἦσαν οἱ τοῦ Κύρου στρατιῶται ἄξιοι ἐλευθερίᾱς.* 16. *διὰ φιλίᾱς χώρᾱς ἄξει ὁ κωμάρχης τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς.* 17. *πῶς τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἕξομεν;*

Rem. The special vocabulary should now be thoroughly committed to memory. No Greek words will be needed in translating the English-Greek exercises in this book that have not already occurred in previous Greek-English exercises.

The sentences which compose these English-Greek exercises are patterned more or less closely after Greek sentences that have occurred in previous exercises. In re-composing these English sentences into Greek, observe the following: —

DIRECTIONS FOR TRANSLATING INTO GREEK.

1. *Compose the entire sentence aloud in Greek before committing any part of it to writing.*

2. *If in doubt about the construction or the order of the Greek words, search for a model.*

---

[1] The masc. of the adj. used substantively. *Cf.* 129, I. 5.

[2] Inf. depending on the adj. *ἱκανοί*, which denotes *ability*.

[3] *Cf.* 111, I. 13.

[4] *Cf.* 92, I. 12.

[5] *in the sight of*. *Cf.* 110.

[6] Subject of the verb *ἦν*.

[7] *it was possible*.

3. *If an English word or phrase occurs which has not been given in the vocabularies as a definition, recall its English equivalents.*

4. *Commit the sentence thus composed in Greek to writing. Observe sharply the form, accent, and spelling of each word.*

II. 1. The hoplites were faithful to Cyrus. 2. The road was impassable. 3. The general was worthy of honour. 4. We justly punish the bad. 5. Cyrus had plundered the fertile land of the barbarians. 6. They will lead the hoplites into a friendly country. 7. The javelin-men were both valiant and faithful. 8. He was not able to hinder the enemy. 9. Cyrus hunted wild asses on horseback. 10. There was abundant food in the villages. 11. The villages were full of provisions.[1] 12. It was right to keep the arms and the horses safe. 13. But perhaps it was right to plunder the villages of the enemy.

150. VOCABULARY.

ἄξιος, -ᾱ, -ον (ἄγω),[2] *equal in weight, worth, worthy, befitting.*
βέβαιος, -ᾱ, -ον, *firm, constant.*
γέρρον, *wicker-shield.*
δίκαιος, -ᾱ, -ον (δίκη), *just, right, reasonable.*
ἐγγύς, adv., *near.*
εἰσβολή, *entrance, pass.*
ἐλευθερία (ἐλεύθερος), *freedom.*
ἐπιτήδειος, -ᾱ, -ον, *suitable, fit.*[3]
ἰσχῡρῶς (ἰσχῡρός), adv., *strongly, vehemently, exceedingly.*
ἴσως, adv., *perhaps.*
οἰκέτης (οἶκος, *a house, home*: *cf.* οἰκίᾱ, *a house, dwelling*), *house-servant, domestic.*
ὄνος, ὁ, ἡ, *ass.*
ὄρθιος, -ᾱ, -ον, *steep.*
πολέμιος, -ᾱ, -ον (πόλεμος), *at war with, hostile.*[4]
πῶς, adv., *how?*
Χαλδαῖοι, οἱ, *the* **Chaldaeans.**[5]
Χερρόνησος, ἡ, *the* **Chersonese.**
χίλιοι, -αι, -α,[6] *1000.*

[1] *Cf.* 92, I. 6.

[2] Related words that have occurred in previous lessons will hereafter be placed, in parentheses, after the words in the vocabularies to which they are related. If two or more such words have occurred, the simpler form will be given. — ἄξιος is related to ἄγω in its sense of *weigh.*

[3] In the neut. plur., τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, *provisions* ('things suited to sustain life').

[4] πολέμιος, given in 105, is the masc. of this adj. used as a subst.

[5] *Borrowed* English words will hereafter be printed in **black-face** letter. See p. 155 [1].

[6] *Cf.* τρισ-χίλιοι, 126 (τρίς, *thrice*).

LESSON XIX.

Analysis of the Primary Tenses of the Indicative Active.

151. Verb-Theme. — The *theme* of a verb is its fundamental part (63).

152. Tense-Suffixes and Tense-Stems. — From the theme are formed, by means of *tense-suffixes*, the different *tense-stems* of the verb.

153. Variable Vowel. — The final vowel of a tense-stem is said to be *variable* when it is -ο- in some of the forms and -ε- in others, indicated by -ο/ε-.

154. Personal-Endings. — From the tense-stems the different forms of the verb are made by adding to them certain endings, which in the finite moods mark the persons and numbers, and are called *personal-endings*.

155. There are two series of these personal-endings, one found in the active voice, the other in the middle. Each of these series includes two sets, one for primary tenses, the other for secondary tenses.

156. The personal-endings of the *primary* tenses in the indicative active are: —

	Singular.	Dual.	Plural.
1	-μι		-μεν
2	-ς or -σι	-τον	-τε
3	-σι or τι	-τον	-νσι

Review the paradigm of the Present Indicative Active in 65.

157. The *present* stem of λῡ́ω is λῡ́-ο/ε-, formed by adding the variable vowel -ο/ε- as tense-suffix to the theme λῡ-. The form is λῡ́ο- before μ or ν in the endings, elsewhere λῡ́ε-.

158. The present indicative active of λύω before change was perhaps, in the singular, λῡ́ο-μι, λῡ́ε-σι, λῡ́ε-τι, and in the third plural, λῡ́ον-σι.

a. In λῡ́ο-μι, -μι is dropped and ο is changed to ω. In λῡ́ε-σι, ι passes over to the preceding vowel, and unites with it by contraction. In λῡ́ε-τι, ι passes over in the same way and τ is dropped. In λῡ́ο-νσι, ν is dropped before σ and ο lengthened to ου.

Review the paradigm of the Future Indicative Active in 102.

159. The *future* stem of λύω is λῡσ°/ε, formed by adding the tense-suffix -σ°/ε to the theme. It is inflected like the present.

Review the paradigm of the First Perfect Indicative Active in 118.

160. The *first perfect* stem of λύω is λε-λυκα-, formed by reduplicating the theme and adding the tense-suffix -κα-.

a. In the first person singular -μι is dropped; in the second the ending is -ς; in the third -σι is dropped and α changed to ε. In the plural -ᾱσι is for α-νσι, ν being dropped before σ and α lengthened to ᾱ.

161. EXERCISES.

I. 1. τὰς ἐπιστολὰς πέμπομεν. 2. ἀληθεύουσιν[1] οἱ ἄγγελοι. 3. τεθύκαμεν τοῖς θεοῖς. 4. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἤδη λελύκᾱσι τὰς γεφύρᾱς. 5. λύσομεν τὰς ἁμάξᾱς ἃς (*which*)[2] ἔχομεν. 6. ὁ οὖν Κλέαρχος πέμπει τὸν ἄγγελον ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον. 7. κελεύσω τοὺς Πέρσᾱς λύειν τὰς γεφύρᾱς. 8. ὁ σατράπης νῦν βασιλεύει. 9. θηρία ἀπὸ ἵππου τεθήρευκα. 10. οἱ στρατηγοὶ τὴν στρατιὰν ἄγουσι. 11. τῶν δὲ Πελοποννησίων ἔχομεν ὁπλίτᾱς ἑκατόν. 12. οἱ σατράπαι τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς θαυμάζουσι. 13. ὁπλίτᾱς ἔχεις χῑλίους καὶ πελταστὰς πεντακοσίους. 14. Κῦρος, ὁ τοῦ Δᾱρείου,[3] βασιλεύσει ἀντὶ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ. 15. ὁπλίτᾱς δισχῑλίους

[1] Some words annex ν when the next word in the sentence begins with a vowel: (1) all words in -σι; (2) all verbs of the third person sing. in -ε; (3) ἐστί, *is*. This is called *ν-movable*. It is sometimes written at the end of a sentence.

[2] Acc. plur. fem. of the relative pronoun ὅς, ἥ, ὅ.

[3] *Sc.* υἱός, *son*.

καὶ πελταστὰς μῦρίους πέμπετε. 16. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι τὰς σπονδὰς καὶ τοὺς ὅρκους λελύκᾱσι. 17. τὰ δὲ χωρία σατραπεύσουσιν οἱ τοῦ Κύρου φίλοι. 18. τοὺς βαρβάρους ἡρπάκαμεν διὰ τὸν ὄλεθρον τῶν στρατιωτῶν. 19. καίτοι ἔχω παιδία τῶν στρατηγῶν ἐν Μιλήτῳ.

Analyze each finite verbal form in the above exercise.

II. 1. We are destroying the bridges. 2. We shall collect allies. 3. He has plotted harm to Clearchus. 4. They will save the men and the horses. 5. He punishes his servants. 6. The queen will dishonour her brother. 7. The satrap will be king. 8. I have commanded the hoplites to sacrifice. 9. The hoplites will sacrifice. 10. You (*sing.*) have hunted wild asses on horseback. 11. You are planning harm to the allies. 12. You are plotting against Cyrus and his allies. 13. The soldiers of the enemy will approach. 14. The soldiers will sack the country of Cyrus's brother. 15. You have commanded the soldiers to plunder the wagons.

162. VOCABULARY.

ἀληθεύω (ἀλήθεια), *speak the truth, tell the truth.*
ἀντί, prep. with gen., *over against, against, instead of, in preference to, in return for.*
Δᾱρεῖος, ὁ (*cf.* δᾱρεικός), **Darius.**
δισ-χίλιοι, -αι, -α (χίλιοι),[1] *2000.*
ἑκατόν, indeclinable, *100.*
ἐπιστολή, *letter*, **epistle.**
ἤδη, adv., *already, forthwith, at length.*
καίτοι, conj., *and yet.*
λόφος, ὁ, *hill, height.*
Μίλητος, ἡ, Miletus.
μῦριοι, -αι, -α, *10,000.*
νῦν, adv., NOW.[2]
ὄλεθρος, ὁ, *destruction, loss.*
οὖν,[3] conj., *therefore, accordingly, consequently.*
παιδίον, *child.*
Πελοποννήσιος, -ᾱ, -ον, Peloponnesian.
πεντακόσιοι, -αι, -α,[4] *500.*
σατραπεύω (σατράπης), *rule as* **satrap**, *rule.*

[1] δίς, *twice.* [2] See p. 155[1].
[3] This inferential conj. is *postpositive, i.e.* it is always put after one or more words of the sentence. See p. 15[2].
[4] πέντε, FIVE. *Cf.* τριᾱ-κόσιοι in 110 (τρεῖς, THREE). The suffix for cardinals to denote hundreds (after ἑκατόν) is **-κοσιοι**, as διᾱ-κόσιοι, *200, etc.*

LESSON XX.

Analysis of the Secondary Tenses of the Indicative Active.

163. The personal-endings of the *secondary* tenses in the indicative active (155) are: —

	Singular.	Dual.	Plural.
1	-ν		-μεν
2	-ς	-τον	-τε
3	none	-την	-ν or -σαν

Review the Imperfect Indicative Active in 74.

164. The imperfect is formed on the *present* stem (157), but it has augment (75, 76).

Review the First Aorist Indicative Active in 102.

165. The *first aorist* stem of λύω is λῡσα-, formed by adding the tense-suffix -σα- to the theme. In the first person singular -ν is dropped, and in the third -α- is changed to -ε. As a secondary tense the aorist has augment in the indicative.

Review the First Pluperfect Indicative Active in 118.

166. The first pluperfect is formed on the *first perfect* stem (160), with -κε- for -κα-. In the sing. ν is dropped in the first person and -κε- appears as -κη, -κη-, κει.

167. EXERCISES.

I. 1. οἱ πολῖται ἔπεμψαν ναύτᾱς δέκα. 2. οἱ λοχᾱγοὶ ἔπεμπον στρατιώτᾱς πέντε εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον. 3. καὶ θεοῖς καὶ θεαῖς ἐτεθύκη. 4. τὴν γέφῡραν, ὦ στρατιῶται, ἐλύσατε. 5. οἰκέτᾱς καὶ ἵππους εἴχομεν. 6. Κῦρος γὰρ ἔπεμπε βίκους οἴνου. 7. οἱ σατράπαι ἐκεκελεύκεσαν τοὺς νεᾱνίᾱς θύειν. 8. εἰς τοὺς Ἀθηναίους τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς ἦγες. 9. ἐπεὶ ἔλῡσαν τὰς σπονδάς, τὰς κώμᾱς διαρπάσομεν.

10. ἀλλὰ τί (*why*)[1] οὐκ ἦγες τοὺς στεφάνους καὶ τὰς φιάλᾱς; 11. ὁ γὰρ σατράπης ἐκεκελεύκει τοὺς ὁπλίτᾱς δασμοὺς πέμπειν. 12. συνεπέμπομεν τῇ βασιλείᾳ[2] τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς οὓς (*whom*)[3] ὁ στρατηγὸς εἶχε. 13. τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ[4] ἔπεμπε τὸν ἄνθρωπον Ἀριαῖος ὁ στρατηγός. 14. στρατιώτᾱς ἐν τῷ τόπῳ εἴχετε ἱκανοὺς τὰς κώμᾱς διαρπάζειν. 15. τὸν κωμάρχην τότε ἦγεν[5] ὁ στρατηγὸς πρὸς τοὺς οἰκέτᾱς. 16. εἰ παρὰ τοὺς ὅρκους ἔλῡες τὰς σπονδάς, τὴν δίκην ἔχεις.

Analyze each finite verbal form in the above exercise.

II. 1. You were striking the peltasts. 2. Both generals and captains had sacrificed. 3. The queen commanded the captains to sacrifice. 4. The hoplites with Cyrus were plundering the wagons. 5. The soldiers had previously plotted against the queen. 6. I had collected hoplites and bowmen. 7. You (*sing.*) hunted on horseback. 8. You had broken the truce. 9. The satrap dishonoured the soldiers. 10. He had commanded the hoplites to plunder the country. 11. And the general made an expedition against the satrap's country. 12. He had sacrificed to the goddess. 13. Cyrus plotted harm to his brother. 14. I had destroyed the boats.

168. VOCABULARY.

Ἀθηναῖος, -ᾱ, -ον,[6] **Athenian.**
ἀλλά, conj., *but, yet.*
Ἀριαῖος, ὁ, Ariaeus.
βῖκος, ὁ, *jar* (for wine).
δασμός, ὁ, *tax, impost, tribute.*
δέκα, indeclinable, TEN.
εἰ, conj., *if,* proclitic.
λοχ-ᾱγός, ὁ (*ἄγω*),[7] *captain.*
ναύτης, *sailor.*
πέντε (*cf.* πεντακόσιοι), indec., FIVE.
στέφανος, ὁ, *crown, wreath.*
στρατό-πεδον (στρατιά),[8] *camp.*
συμ-πέμπω (σύν, πέμπω),[9] *send with.*
τόπος, ὁ, *place, region.*
ὑστεραῖος, -ᾱ, -ον, *following.*
φιάλη, *cup* (broad and shallow).

---

[1] Acc. sing. neut. of the pron. τίς, *who? what?* used adverbially.
[2] See p. 31 [3].
[3] Acc. plur. masc. of the relative pronoun ὅς, ἥ, ὅ.
[4] *Sc.* ἡμέρᾳ. The dat. is used to denote the *time when.*
[5] See p. 42 [1].
[6] *Cf.* Ἀθήνησι (126).
[7] *Cf.* λόχος, *company.*
[8] Literally, *the ground occupied by an army* (πέδον, *ground*).
[9] ν before a labial becomes μ.

LESSON XXI.

Attic Second Declension. — Declension of οὗτος.

169. The O-declension includes a few stems ending in -ω-. This ω appears in all the cases except the neuter nominative, accusative, and vocative plural of adjectives, but takes iota-subscript where the common ending has ι.

170. PARADIGMS.

	ὁ νεώς, *temple* (νεω-)	ἵλεως, *propitious* (ἱλεω-)	
		M. F.	N.
Sing. N. V.	νεώς	ἵλεως	ἵλεων
G.	νεώ	ἵλεω	ἵλεω
D.	νεῴ	ἵλεῳ	ἵλεῳ
A.	νεών	ἵλεων	ἵλεων
Dual N. A. V.	νεώ	ἵλεω	ἵλεω
G. D.	νεῴν	ἵλεῳν	ἵλεῳν
Plur. N. V.	νεῴ	ἵλεῳ	ἵλεα
G.	νεών	ἵλεων	ἵλεων
D.	νεῴς	ἵλεῳς	ἵλεῳς
A.	νεώς	ἵλεως	ἵλεα

a. Observe that the accent of these nouns is peculiar in two respects: first, the genitive and dative, when accented on the ultima, are oxytone (*cf.* 45); secondly, the long ω in the ultima does not exclude the accent from the antepenult (*cf.* 27).

171. Some substantives have -ω or -ων in the accusative singular, as ὁ λαγώς, *hare*, accusative singular λαγώ or λαγών. ἡ ἕως, *dawn*, has only ἕω.

172. The declension of the demonstrative pronoun οὗτος, *this*, is as follows: —

Singular.			Dual.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
οὗτος	αὕτη	τοῦτο	τούτω	τούτω	τούτω	οὗτοι	αὗται	ταῦτα
τούτου	ταύτης	τούτου	τούτοιν	τούτοιν	τούτοιν	τούτων	τούτων	τούτων
τούτῳ	ταύτῃ	τούτῳ				τούτοις	ταύταις	τούτοις
τοῦτον	ταύτην	τοῦτο				τούτους	ταύτᾱς	ταῦτα

173. Examine the following: —

οὗτος ὁ στρατηγὸς ἀγαθὸς ἦν.
τὰ πλοῖα ταῦτα πέμψομεν σίτου μεστά.

It would be impossible to say ὁ οὗτος στρατηγός, τὰ ταῦτα πλοῖα.

174. Rule of Syntax. — Substantives with οὗτος require the article in prose, and the pronoun takes the *predicate* position (*cf.* 56, Rem.).

175. EXERCISES.

I. 1. *οἱ νεῲ ἦσαν οἰκίαι τῶν θεῶν.* 2. *ἐν Ἐφέσῳ παρὰ τῷ̀ τῆς θεᾶς νεῲ δένδρα ἦν.* 3. *ἐν τούτῳ τῷ̀ νεῲ βωμοὶ ἦσαν.* 4. *ἵλεῳ οἱ θεοὶ ἦσαν τῇ βασιλείᾳ.* 5. *τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἐντὸς (within)*[1] *ὀλίγων ἡμερῶν τὸν μισθὸν ἔκπλεων πέμψει.* 6. *ἔκπλεων ἦν τὸ μέσον*[2] *τοῦ πλαισίου.* 7. *Ταμὼς Αἰγύπτιος μὲν ἦν, φίλος δὲ τῷ̀ Κύρῳ.* 8. *ἐπειδὴ (when) δ' ἕως ἦν, ἔλῡσαν τὴν γέφῡραν οἱ ὁπλῖται.* 9. *εἰς τὴν ἕω*[3] *πέμψει ὁ Κῦρος τὸν ἄγγελον τοῦτον.* 10. *ὁ Ταμὼ υἱὸς τοῦ ναυάρχου*[4] *Αἰγύπτιος ἦν.* 11. *ὁ νεᾱνίᾱς τὸν λαγὼν τοῦτον νεφέλῃ*[5] *ἐθήρευσεν.*[6] 12. *ὁ λεὼς τῶν Ἀθηναίων ἀνδρεῖος καὶ πολεμικὸς ἦν.* 13. *ἡ δὲ πρὸς ἕω ὁδὸς εἰς τοὺς βαρβά-*

[1] This adv. governs the gen. both in its temporal sense (as here) and in its local sense. *Cf.* 111, I. 12 and 13, and note.

[2] Neut. of the adj. used substantively.

[3] *at daybreak*, εἰς being used of the time when the dawn shall have been *reached*.

[4] An appositive to Ταμώ. See p. 25 [3].

[5] The dat. is used to denote the *instrument* or *means*, as the ablative in Latin.

[6] See p. 42 [1].

ρους ἦγεν. 14. ἐν τοῖς τῶν θεῶν νεὼς στῆλαι ἦσαν. 15. οὗτοι οἱ στρατιῶται ἔσωσαν τοὺς ἐν τῷ νεῷ θησαυρούς. 16. οὗτος ὁ κωμάρχης λαγὼς ἐθήρευε, καὶ οὐκ ἐν τῇ κώμῃ ἦν. 17. ἐντεῦθεν (*thence*) δὲ τοὺς ὁπλίτας ἦγεν εἰς πεδίον καλὸν καὶ δένδρων[1] σύμπλεων καὶ ἀμπέλων.

II. 1. We shall sacrifice in these temples. 2. These gods were propitious. 3. He sacrificed in this temple. 4. The temple at Ephesus[2] was beautiful. 5. We have five hares and a jar of wine. 6. Tamos has the boats of Cyrus. 7. This village-chief's son will hunt hares. 8. The treasure in these temples was small. 9. This country abounded in[3] tall trees. 10. Cyrus sent to these soldiers their pay in full. 11. The roads to the east lead into the satrap's territory. 12. This people had temples in their market-place. 13. There were three thousand peltasts alongside[4] the temples of the gods. 14. When it was dawn, the generals and the captains were sacrificing.

176. VOCABULARY.

Αἰγύπτιος, -ᾱ, -ον, Egyptian.
ἄμπελος, ἡ, *vine.*
ἀνδρεῖος, -ᾱ, -ον, *manly, brave, valiant.*
βωμός, ὁ, *altar.*
δένδρον, TREE.
ἔκ-πλεως, -ων (*ἐξ*),[5] FULL, *complete, entire.*
Ἔφεσος, ἡ, Ephesus.
θησαυρός, ὁ, treasure.
λεώς, ὁ, *people.*
μέσος, -η, -ον, MIDDLE.
ναύ-αρχος, ὁ,[6] *admiral.*
νεφέλη, *cloud, net.*
ὀλίγος, -η, -ον, *small, little,* plur. *few.*
πολεμικός, -ή, -όν (*πόλεμος*), *of* or *for war, warlike.*
στῆλη, *pillar, post.*
σύμ-πλεως, -ων (*σύν*),[5] FULL, *abounding in.*
Ταμώς, ὁ, Tamos.
υἱός, ὁ, SON.

---

[1] *Cf.* 92, I. 6.

[2] *Cf.* 99, I. 3.

[3] Use *σύμπλεως* with the proper form of *εἰμί*.

[4] See 97.

[5] *Cf.* *πλέως*, FULL. So that *ἔκπλεως* means *filled out, very full,* as *σύμπλεως* below means literally *filled altogether.* For *σύμ-πλεως*, see p. 45[3].

[6] The underlying elements are *ναύς, ship* (*cf.* *ναύτης*), and *ἄρχω, rule.*

LESSON XXII.

Contract Substantives of the Vowel-Declension.

177. Substantives of the A-declension whose stems end in -αᾱ- or -εᾱ- suffer contraction.

178. PARADIGMS.

	ἡ μνᾶ, **mina** (μναᾱ-)		ἡ γῆ, *earth* (γεᾱ-)		ὁ Ἑρμῆς, **Hermes** (Ἑρμεᾱ-)	
S. N.	(μνάᾱ)	μνᾶ	(γέᾱ)	γῆ	(Ἑρμέᾱς)	Ἑρμῆς
G.	(μνάᾱς)	μνᾶς	(γέᾱς)	γῆς	(Ἑρμέου)	Ἑρμοῦ
D.	(μνᾷ)	μνᾷ	(γέᾳ)	γῇ	(Ἑρμέᾳ)	Ἑρμῇ
A.	(μνάᾱν)	μνᾶν	(γέᾱν)	γῆν	(Ἑρμέᾱν)	Ἑρμῆν
V.	(μνάᾱ)	μνᾶ	(γέᾱ)	γῆ	(Ἑρμέᾱ)	Ἑρμῆ
D. N. A. V.	(μνάᾱ)	μνᾶ			(Ἑρμέᾱ)	Ἑρμᾶ
G. D.	(μνάαιν)	μναῖν			(Ἑρμέαιν)	Ἑρμαῖν
P. N. V.	(μνάαι)	μναῖ			(Ἑρμέαι)	Ἑρμαῖ
G.	(μναῶν)	μνῶν			(Ἑρμεῶν)	Ἑρμῶν
D.	(μνάαις)	μναῖς			(Ἑρμέαις)	Ἑρμαῖς
A.	(μνάᾱς)	μνᾶς			(Ἑρμέᾱς)	Ἑρμᾶς

179. Substantives of the O-declension whose stems end in -εο- or -οο- suffer contraction.

180. PARADIGMS.

	ὁ νοῦς, *mind* (νοο-)		τὸ κανοῦν, *basket* (κανεο-)	
S. N.	(νόος)	νοῦς	(κάνεον)	κανοῦν
G.	(νόου)	νοῦ	(κανέου)	κανοῦ
D.	(νόῳ)	νῷ	(κανέῳ)	κανῷ
A.	(νόον)	νοῦν	(κάνεον)	κανοῦν
V.	(νόε)	νοῦ	(κάνεον)	κανοῦν

D. N. A. V.	(νόω)	νώ	(κανέω)	κανώ
G. D.	(νόοιν)	νοῖν	(κανέοιν)	κανοῖν
P. N. V.	(νόοι)	νοῖ	(κάνεα)	κανᾶ
G.	(νόων)	νῶν	(κανέων)	κανῶν
D.	(νόοις)	νοῖς	(κανέοις)	κανοῖς
A.	(νόους)	νοῦς	(κάνεα)	κανᾶ

a. Observe in the contracts inflected in 178 and 180, first, that the short vowel preceding the final vowel of the stem is absorbed by the following α, long vowel, or diphthong, except in the singular of the A-declension, where εᾱ and εᾳ become η and ῃ; and secondly, that in the O-declension οο, οε, εο, are all contracted into ου.

b. Observe that all the contracted forms are perispomenon, except the nom., acc., and voc. dual of the O-declension, which are oxytone.

c. But compounds in -oos keep the accent on the same syllable as in the contracted nom. singular, as (ἀπό-πλοος) ἀπό-πλους, ὁ (πλόος), *voyage home*, genitive (ἀποπλόου) ἀπόπλου, *etc.*

181. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Κῦρος ὁπλίτῃ ἑκάστῳ πέμψει πέντε ἀργυρίου μνᾶς. 2. οἱ γὰρ Πέρσαι ἔθῡον ἡλίῳ καὶ γῇ καὶ σελήνῃ. 3. ἐν τῷ νεῷ ἔθῡε τῷ θεῷ Ἑρμῇ. 4. τί (*what*)[1] ἐν νῷ ἔχετε; 5. ὁ δὲ τοξότης τὸ κανοῦν ἐθαύμαζεν. 6. καλοὶ ἦσαν οἱ πλοῖ εἰς τὴν Ἀσιᾶν. 7. ταύτῃ τῇ ὁδῷ οἱ πολέμιοι προσέχουσι τὸν νοῦν.[2] 8. οἱ θεοὶ ἵλεῳ ἦσαν καὶ τοῖς ναύταις καλὸν πλοῦν παρεῖχον.[3] 9. ὁ πλοῦς ἦν ἄδηλος τοῖς ναύταις. 10. ὅμοιοι ἦσαν οὗτοι θαυμάζειν[4] τί ἐν νῷ ἔχουσιν οἱ στρατιῶται. 11. ἄποροι ἦσαν ἐν τῷ ἀπόπλῳ ἔχειν[5] τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. 12. ὁ περίπλους Σικελιᾶς τῆς νήσου μακρὸς ἦν. 13. τότε ἐν τῇ γῇ πρῶτοι ἦσαν οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι καὶ ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ. 14. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ τῷ τόπῳ ἦν ἡ γῆ πεδίον δένδρων σύμπλεων.

[1] Acc. sing. neut. of the interrogative pronoun τίς, τί, *who? what?*

[2] *apply their mind* in the sense of 'direct their attention,' 'give attention.'

[3] See p. 83[7].

[4] Dependent on ὅμοιοι, *were like to wonder*, that is 'seemed to be wondering.'

[5] Dependent on ἄποροι. See 147.

15. τότε κατεῖχον οἱ ἡμέτεροι πρόγονοι πολέμῳ τοὺς τούτων προγόνους καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν. 16. καὶ τότε δῆλον ἦν τί (*why*) οἱ βάρβαροι τὰς ἀλωπεκᾶς ἐπὶ ταῖς κεφαλαῖς ἔχουσιν. 17. καὶ πλοίῳ μὲν ἦν εἰς ταύτην τὴν χώρᾱν ἐκ Βυζαντίου κώπαις[1] ἡμέρᾱς μάλα μακρᾶς πλοῦς, ἐν δὲ τῷ μέσῳ[2] μόνοι ἦσαν βάρβαροι.

II. 1. The voyage was to Asia. 2. We wonder what the enemy intend. 3. The sailors sacrificed to Hermes on the island. 4. There were trees and vines in this land. 5. The servant had five minas of silver. 6. He sent the gifts in a beautiful basket. 7. The barbarian wears a fox-skin cap on his head. 8. We made an expedition by land against the Peloponnesians. 9. Cyrus sent gifts to this man, a horse and a mina of silver. 10. On their voyage home, the soldiers plundered the islands. 11. Cyrus, the brother of Artaxerxes, sends to the bowmen ten days' pay, five minas of silver.

182. VOCABULARY.

ἄ-δηλος, -ον[3] (δῆλος),[4] *not clear, uncertain, doubtful.*
ἀλωπεκῆ, *fox-skin, fox-skin cap.*
Ἀσίᾱ, **Asia.**
ἕκαστος, -η, -ον, *each, every.*
ἥλιος, **ὁ**, *sun.*
ἡμέτερος, -ᾱ, -ον, *our.*
κατά, prep.: with gen., *down, underneath;* with acc.,[5] *down, down along, by, opposite.*
κατ-έχω[6] (κατά, ἔχω), *hold down, check, control.*
κεφαλή, HEAD.
κώπη, *oar.*
Λακεδαιμόνιος, -ᾱ, -ον, **Lacedaemonian.**
μάλα, adv., *very, very much, greatly, exceedingly.*
μόνος, -η, -ον, *alone, only, sole.*
ὅμοιος, -ᾱ, -ον, *like, similar.*
παρ-έχω[6] (παρά, ἔχω), *hold near, afford.*
περί-πλοος, περί-πλους, **ὁ** (πλόος),[7] *a sailing round, voyage round.*
πλόος, πλοῦς, **ὁ** (*cf.* πλοῖον, and πλέω, *sail*), *voyage.*
πρόγονος, **ὁ**, *ancestor.*
προσ-έχω (πρός, ἔχω), *hold to, apply.*
πρῶτος, -η, -ον, *first.*
σελήνη, *moon.*
Σικελίᾱ, **Sicily.**
τότε, adv., *then.*

[1] Dat. of *instrument.* See p. 47 5.
[2] *Cf.* 175, I. 6. [3] See 147.
[4] The first part of the word is the inseparable prefix α- (called α-*privative*), signifying *negation* (Lat. IN-, English UN-).
[5] See 96. [6] See 127.
[7] *Cf.* περί, prep., *around.* See 180c.

LESSON XXIII.

Present and Imperfect Indicative of the Irregular Verb εἰμί, *be*.

183. PARADIGMS.

	PRESENT.			IMPERFECT.		
	Sing.	Dual.	Plur.	Sing.	Dual.	Plur.
1	εἰμί		ἐσμέν	ἦν or ἦ		ἦμεν
2	εἶ	ἐστόν	ἐστέ	ἦσθα	ἦστον or ἦτον	ἦτε or ἦστε
3	ἐστί	ἐστόν	εἰσί	ἦν	ἤστην or ἤτην	ἦσαν

184. The theme of εἰμί (Latin *sum* for *es-um*) is εσ- (compare Latin *es-se*). The present indicative uses the primary endings (156), the imperfect, the secondary (163). These endings are added directly to the theme.

a. εἰμί is for εσ-μι. σ being dropped before μ and ε lengthened to ει; εἶ for εσι (εσ-σι): εἰσί for ε-ντι. In the imperfect the final σ of the augmented theme is dropped in many of the forms. ἦσθα has the ending -σθα (found also in other verbs) for -ς, and ἦν (third singular) has the ending -ν.

Review 38.

185. All the forms of the present indicative of εἰμί are enclitic except εἶ.

186. The word before an enclitic (a) retains its own accent and never changes an acute to the grave (34); (b) if proparoxytone or properispomenon (33, 35), it adds an acute on the ultima; (c) if a proclitic or an enclitic, it takes an acute.

187. Enclitics retain their accent (a) when the vowel to be affected by the enclitic is elided (21); (b) when there is emphasis on the enclitic; (c) when a dissyllabic enclitic follows a paroxytone; (d) when the enclitic begins a sentence. The last case is relatively of infrequent occurrence.

188. The third singular, *ἐστί* (ordinarily an enclitic), has the regular recessive accent *ἔστι*, (a) when it signifies existence or possibility; (b) at the beginning of a sentence; (c) after *οὐ, μή, εἰ, ὡς, καί, ἀλλά,* and *τοῦτο.*

189. EXERCISES.

I. 1. *μακρὰ δὲ τὰ Περσικὰ τόξα ἐστί.* 2. *αἱ δὲ πηγαὶ τοῦ Μαιάνδρου ποταμοῦ εἰσιν*[1] *ἐκ τῶν βασιλείων.* 3. *ἦν γὰρ ἡ πάροδος στενή.* 4. *ἐμπόριον δ' ἦν τὸ χωρίον.* 5. *αἱ δὲ κῶμαί εἰσι τῆς βασιλείας.* 6. *ἦμεν ἐν τῷ παραδείσῳ.* 7. *ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν κῶμαι.* 8. *ἐν κινδύνοις ἐσμέν.* 9. *εἶ ἐπὶ*[2] *τῷ ἀδελφῷ.* 10. *ἐνταῦθα Κύρῳ βασίλεια ἦν καὶ παράδεισος.* 11. *Αἰγύπτιοι δ' οὗτοί εἰσιν.* 12. *Κύρῳ μᾶλλον φίλοι ἐστὲ ἢ τῷ ἀδελφῷ.* 13. *ἦν τῷ Κύρῳ πόλεμος πρὸς Μῦσούς.* 14. *οὐ δυνατόν ἐστι πλησιάζειν.* 15. *τοῖς δὲ στρατηγοῖς ὑποψία ἐστὶν*[1] *ὅτι ἄγει Κῦρος πρὸς τοὺς βαρβάρους.* 16. *Κύρῳ ἐστέ, ὦ στρατιῶται, καὶ φίλοι καὶ σύμμαχοι.* 17. *ξένοι ἐσμέν, ὦ Κῦρε, τῷ σατράπῃ.* 18. *ἦν δὲ παρὰ τὸν Εὐφράτην πάροδος στενὴ μεταξὺ τοῦ ποταμοῦ*[3] *καὶ τῆς τάφρου.* 19. *ἔστι δὲ Κύρῳ χωρίον ἰσχῦρὸν ἐπὶ ταῖς τοῦ ποταμοῦ πηγαῖς.* 20. *ἔστι δὲ καὶ (also) βασίλεια ἐν Κελαιναῖς ἐρυμνὰ ἐπὶ ταῖς πηγαῖς τοῦ Μαρσύου ποταμοῦ.*

II. 1. He is a soldier. 2. Clearchus, the general, was a Lacedaemonian. 3. The country is hostile to Xerxes. 4. The trees are tall and beautiful. 5. You (*dual*) are brave soldiers. 6. The satrap is in the power of the Lacedaemonians. 7. These friends of Cyrus were soldiers. 8. For there was wine in the villages. 9. The soldiers have arms and horses. 10. In this place there was a beautiful park. 11. There is a wagon-road beyond the river.[4] 12. This is just in the sight of both gods and men. 13. For you are now in a hostile land. 14. It is plain that they will approach. 15. The sailors are apprehensive that the voyage is to Asia.

---

[1] See p. 42[1]. [2] *in the power of.* [3] See p. 28[1]. [4] *Cf.* 111, I. 12.

190. VOCABULARY.

δυνατός, -ή, -όν, *able, possible.*
ἐμπόριον, *place of trade*, emporium.
ἤ, conj., *than* (Lat. *quam*).
Κελαιναί, αἱ, Celaenae.
κίνδῡνος, ὁ, *danger, risk.*
Μαίανδρος, ὁ, Maeander.
μᾶλλον (*μάλα*), adv., *more, rather.*
Μαρσύας, Marsyas.
μεταξύ, adv., *between.*
Μῡσός, ὁ, *a* Mysian.
ὅτι, conj., *that, because.*
παράδεισος, ὁ, *park.*
πάρ-οδος, ἡ (*παρά, ὁδός*), *way by, pass.*
τάφρος, ἡ, *ditch, trench.*
τόξον (*cf.* τοξεύω), *bow.*
ὑποψία, *suspicion, apprehension.*

to learn

LESSON XXIV.

Contract Adjectives of the Vowel-Declension.

Most adjectives in **-εος** and **-οος** suffer contraction.

191. PARADIGMS.

χρῡσοῦς, GOLDEN

S. N.	(χρύσεος)	χρῡσοῦς	(χρῡσέα)	χρῡσῆ	(χρύσεον)	χρῡσοῦν
G.	(χρῡσέου)	χρῡσοῦ	(χρῡσέας)	χρῡσῆς	(χρῡσέου)	χρῡσοῦ
D.	(χρῡσέῳ)	χρῡσῷ	(χρῡσέᾳ)	χρῡσῇ	(χρῡσέῳ)	χρῡσῷ
A.	(χρύσεον)	χρῡσοῦν	(χρῡσέαν)	χρῡσῆν	(χρύσεον)	χρῡσοῦν
D. N. A.	(χρῡσέω)	χρῡσώ	(χρῡσέᾱ)	χρῡσᾶ	(χρῡσέω)	χρῡσώ
G. D.	(χρῡσέοιν)	χρῡσοῖν	(χρῡσέαιν)	χρῡσαῖν	(χρῡσέοιν)	χρῡσοῖν
P. N.	(χρύσεοι)	χρῡσοῖ	(χρύσεαι)	χρῡσαῖ	(χρύσεα)	χρῡσᾶ
G.	(χρῡσέων)	χρῡσῶν	(χρῡσέων)	χρῡσῶν	(χρῡσέων)	χρῡσῶν
D.	(χρῡσέοις)	χρῡσοῖς	(χρῡσέαις)	χρῡσαῖς	(χρῡσέοις)	χρῡσοῖς
A.	(χρῡσέους)	χρῡσοῦς	(χρῡσέᾱς)	χρῡσᾶς	(χρύσεα)	χρῡσᾶ

ἁπλοῦς, *simple, sincere*

S. N.	(ἁπλόος)	ἁπλοῦς	(ἁπλόη)	ἁπλῆ	(ἁπλόον)	ἁπλοῦν
G.	(ἁπλόου)	ἁπλοῦ	(ἁπλόης)	ἁπλῆς	(ἁπλόου)	ἁπλοῦ
D.	(ἁπλόῳ)	ἁπλῷ	(ἁπλόῃ)	ἁπλῇ	(ἁπλόῳ)	ἁπλῷ
A.	(ἁπλόον)	ἁπλοῦν	(ἁπλόην)	ἁπλῆν	(ἁπλόον)	ἁπλοῦν

D. N. A.	(ἁπλόω)	ἁπλώ	(ἁπλόᾱ)	ἁπλᾶ	(ἁπλόω)	ἁπλώ
G. D.	(ἁπλόοιν)	ἁπλοῖν	(ἁπλόαιν)	ἁπλαῖν	(ἁπλόοιν)	ἁπλοῖν
P. N.	(ἁπλόοι)	ἁπλοῖ	(ἁπλόαι)	ἁπλαῖ	(ἁπλόα)	ἁπλᾶ
G.	(ἁπλόων)	ἁπλῶν	(ἁπλόων)	ἁπλῶν	(ἁπλόων)	ἁπλῶν
D.	(ἁπλόοις)	ἁπλοῖς	(ἁπλόαις)	ἁπλαῖς	(ἁπλόοις)	ἁπλοῖς
A.	(ἁπλόους)	ἁπλοῦς	(ἁπλόᾱς)	ἁπλᾶς	(ἁπλόα)	ἁπλᾶ

No distinct vocative forms occur.

So χάλκεος, *of bronze*; διπλόος, *double*: τετραπλόος, *fourfold*.

a. Observe that in contraction and accent these adjectives follow the corresponding substantives (178, 180).

b. But in the feminine singular of adjectives in -ρεος, εᾱ and εᾳ become ᾱ and ᾳ after ρ, the ε being regularly absorbed, as (ἀργύρεος[1]) ἀργυρᾶ, *of silver*, (ἀργυρέᾱ) ἀργυρᾶ, *etc.* So σιδήρεος, *of iron*.

c. Compounds in -οος, however, keep the accent on the same syllable as in the contracted nominative singular (see 180 c), as (εὐ-νοος[2]) εὔ-νους, *well-disposed*, (εὔνοον) εὔνουν, genitive (εὐνόου) εὔνου, *etc.* So κακό-νοος,[3] *evil-minded, ill-disposed*.

d. Compounds of νοῦς are of two terminations (147), and do not contract the nominative and accusative plural neuter, as εὔνοα (not εὔνᾶ).

192. EXERCISES.

I. 1. εὔνους δὲ Κύρῳ ἡ βασίλειά ἐστιν. 2. εἶχον δὲ καὶ λόγχᾱς σιδηρᾶς. 3. ἄλλοι δε τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὅπλα χαλκᾶ ἔχουσιν. 4. ἁπλοῦς ἦν ὁ λύγος. 5. αἱ δὲ πέλται χαλκαῖ ἦσαν. 6. τῶν ὁπλῖτῶν στέφανος ἑκάστῳ χρῡσοῦς ἦν. 7. φίλοις εὔνοις Κῦρος πιστὸς ἦν. 8. τὸ βασίλειον σημεῖον ἀετὸς χρῡσοῦς ἦν. 9. τὰ δὲ ἆθλα ἦσαν στρεπτοὶ χρῡσοῖ. 10. εὔνοί εἰσι τῷ ἁρμοστῇ οἱ στρατιῶται. 11. οἱ καλοὶ κἀγαθοὶ[4] Κύρῳ εὔνοι ἦσαν. 12. εὔνοι ἦσαν τοῖς στρατηγοῖς

[1] Related to ἀργύριον.
[2] εὖ, *well*, and νόος.
[3] κακός and νόος.
[4] A case of *crasis*. Crasis (*mingling*) is the contraction into a single syllable of a vowel or diphthong at the end of a word with one at the beginning of the following word. The *corōnis* or 'hook' (᾽) is placed over the contract syllable, unless the first element has the rough breathing. Thus, κἀγαθοί for καὶ ἀγαθοί.

καὶ προθύμως συνεβούλευον. 13. οὗτοι προδόται καὶ κακόνοι τοῖς στρατιώταις ἦσαν. 14. Κῦρος ἱκανὸς ἦν θεραπεύειν τοὺς πιστοὺς καὶ εὔνους καὶ βεβαίους. 15. Κῦρος δὲ ἔπεμψε τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ στρεπτὸν χρῦσοῦν καὶ ψέλια καὶ ἀκῑνάκην χρῦσοῦν. 16. οὐχ οὕτως, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἀλόγιστοί ἐσμεν, ἀλλὰ τοῖς τοῦ Κῦρου φίλοις εὖνοι. 17. δῶρα δ' ἔπεμψαν, ἵππον καὶ φιάλην ἀργυρᾶν καὶ σκευὴν Περσικὴν καὶ δᾶρεικοὺς δέκα. 18. καὶ δᾶρεικὸν ἕκαστος ἕξει. ὦ στρατιῶται, λοχαγὸς δὲ τὸ διπλοῦν, στρατηγὸς δὲ τὸ τετραπλοῦν.

II. 1. For Cyrus had a short sword of gold. 2. But Cyrus sent the man a silver drinking-cup. 3. The words of good men are sincere. 4. The barbarians' swords are of iron. 5. The prizes are drinking-cups of gold. 6. You are ill-disposed to the noble and good. 7. The brave general is worthy of a golden crown. 8. These soldiers had bronze spears. 9. The soldiers are well-disposed to their general. 10. These barbarians were faithful and well-disposed to Cyrus. 11. The servants have the provisions in baskets of gold and silver. 12. The altar in the temple at Ephesus is of gold. 13. The general is ill-disposed to the satrap. 14. He was faithful to Darius, and is now well-disposed to Cyrus.

193. VOCABULARY.

ἀετός, ὁ, *eagle.*
ἆθλον, *prize.*
ἀκῑνάκης, *a short sword* (Persian).
ἄλλος, ἄλλη, ἄλλο,[1] *other, another.*
ἀ-λόγιστος, -ον (λόγος),[2] *unreasoning, inconsiderate.*
βασίλειος, -ον (βασιλεύω), *royal.*
θεραπεύω, *take care of, court.*
οὕτως[3] (οὗτος), adv., *thus, so.*
πέλτη, *a small wicker shield.*
προδότης, *betrayer, traitor.*
προθύμως, adv., *eagerly, zealously.*
σημεῖον, *signal, standard.*
σκευή, *equipment, dress.*
στρεπτός, ὁ, *necklace.*
συμ-βουλεύω (σύν, βουλεύω),[4] *plan with, advise.*
ψέλιον, *bracelet.*

[1] Neut. nom. and acc. sing. ἄλλο for ἄλλον.
[2] See p. 51[4].
[3] Before consonants οὕτω. *Cf.* ἐξ, ἐκ (p. 13[1]).
[4] See p. 45[9].

LESSON XXV.

Affinity of Words. — Reading Lesson.

Give the meanings of the following words: —

194. WORD LIST.

ἄγριος	Ἀρεῖος*	ἱκανός	νεφέλη	πρῶτος
ἄδηλος*	δασμός	ἵλεως	νεώς	πῶς
ἀετός	δέκα	ἰσχῡρῶς*	νόος*	σατραπεύω*
Ἀθηναῖος*	δένδρον	ἴσως	νῦν	σελήνη
ἄθλον	δῆλος*	καίτοι	οἰκέτης*	σημεῖον
Αἰγύπτιος	δίκαιος*	κακόνοος*	οἶκος*	σιδήρεος
ἀκῑνάκης	διπλόος	κάνεον	ὄλεθρος	Σικελίᾱ
ἀληθεύω*	δισχίλιοι*	κατά	ὀλίγος	σκευή
ἄλκιμος	δυνατός	κατέχω*	ὅμοιος	στέφανος
ἀλλά	ἐγγύς	Κελαιναί	ὄνος	στήλη
ἄλλος	εἰ	κεφαλή	ὄρθιος	στρατόπεδον*
ἀλόγιστος*	εἰμί	κίνδῡνος	οὖν	στρεπτός
ἀλωπεκῆ	εἰσβολή	κώπη	οὗτος*	συμβουλεύω*
ἁμαξιτός*	ἕκαστος	λαγώς	οὕτως*	συμπέμπω*
ἄμπελος	ἑκατόν	Λακεδαιμόνιος	παιδίον	σύμπλεως*
ἀνδρεῖος	ἔκπλεως*	λεώς	παράδεισος	Ταμώς
ἀντί	ἐλευθερίᾱ*	λόφος	παρέχω*	τάφρος
ἄξιος*	ἐλεύθερος*	λοχᾱγός*	πάροδος*	τετραπλόος
ἁπλόος	ἐμπόριον	Μαίανδρος	Πελοποννήσιος	τόξον*
ἀπόπλοος*	ἐπιστολή	μάλα*	πέλτη	τόπος
ἄπορος	ἐπιτήδειος	μᾶλλον*	πεντακόσιοι*	υἱός
ἀργύρεος*	Ἑρμῆς	Μαρσύᾱς	πέντε*	ὑποψίᾱ
Ἀριαῖος	εὔνοος*	μέσος	περίπλοος*	ὑστεραῖος
Ἀσίᾱ	Ἔφεσος	μεταξύ	πιστός	φιάλη
ἄφθονος	ἕως	Μίλητος	πλόος*	φίλιος*
βασίλειος*	ἤ	μνᾶ	πολεμικός*	Χαλδαῖοι
βέβαιος	ἤδη	μόνος	πολέμιος*	χάλκεος
βῖκος	ἥλιος	μύριοι	πρόγονος	Χερρόνησος
βωμός	ἡμέτερος	Μῡσός	προδότης	χίλιοι*
γέρρον	θεραπεύω	ναύαρχος*	προθύμως	χρῡσεος
γῆ	θησαυρός	ναύτης*	προσέχω*	ψέλιον

Review 130–137.

Associate each starred word in 194 with some other word or words of those given in 130 and 194 related to it in *form* and *meaning*.[1]

Review 138–140 and 142.

Read and translate again 143.

Read and translate the following passage: —

195. Κῦρος.

II. οὕτως οὖν τὸν Κῦρον ἠτίμασεν Ἀρταξέρξης. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦκε πάλιν Κῦρος ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν, ἐβούλευε βασιλεῦσαι ἀντὶ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ. Παρύσατις μὲν δὴ ἡ μήτηρ ὑπ-ῆρχε τῷ Κύρῳ· ἐφίλει γὰρ αὐτὸν μᾶλλον ἢ τὸν Ἀρταξέρξην. ὑπ-ῆρχον δὲ Κύρῳ καὶ οἱ παρὰ αὐτῷ βάρβαροι, εἶνοί τε ὄντες καὶ πολεμεῖν ἱκανοί. Ἑλληνικὴν δὲ στρατιὰν ἤθροιζεν ὧδε. φυλακὰς εἶχεν ἐν ταῖς πύλεσι. τούτων δὲ τοὺς φρουράρχους ἑκάστους ἐκέλευσε λαμβάνειν Πελοποννησίους ὡς Μίλητον ἐν νῷ ἔχων πολιορκεῖν. Μιλήτου γὰρ τότε Τισσαφέρνης ὁ τῆς Καρίας σατράπης ἦρχε πολέμιος Κύρῳ ὤν. ὁ δ' ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν. οὕτως οὖν στρατιὰν Ἑλληνικὴν ἤθροιζεν.

NOTES.

2. **ἦκε**, *was come, had returned*, imperf. of ἥκω, *be come*. — **βασιλεῦσαι**, *to become king*, aor. inf., corresponding to the aor. indic. ἐβασίλευσα. — 3. **δή**, *now*. — **ὑπ-ῆρχε**: ὑπ-άρχω, *support*, with the dat. For the accent, see p. 83[2]. — 4. **ἐφίλει**: by contraction for ἐφίλεε, third pers. sing. of the imperf. of φιλέω, *love*. — 6. **ὄντες**, *being*, nom. plur. masc. of ὤν, pres. participle of εἰμί. — **πολεμεῖν**, *to war*, by contraction for πολεμέειν, pres. inf. of πολεμέω. — 7. **ὧδε**: adv., *thus, i.e. as follows*. — **πόλεσι**, *cities*, dat. plur. of πόλις, ἡ. *city*. — 8. **φρουράρχους**: φρούραρχος, ὁ, *commander*. — **λαμβάνειν**, *to take, enlist*. — 9. **ὡς**, *as, as if*. — **πολιορκεῖν**: contracted pres. inf. of πολιορκέω, *besiege*. — **Μιλήτου**: the gen. is used with verbs of *ruling*. — 10. **ἦρχε**: imperf. of ἄρχω, *rule*. — 11. **ὁ δέ**, *but he, i.e.* Cyrus.

[1] The relationship of words should not be traced too elaborately in the first stages of a pupil's acquisition of a language; but etymologizing on simple lines may be begun early, is very profitable, and may be made a stimulating class-room exercise.

LESSON XXVI.

Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Middle.

In the middle voice the subject is represented as acting upon himself or in some manner which concerns himself.

Three uses of the middle may be distinguished: —

196. The *direct middle*, in which the subject is represented as acting *directly on himself.*

Thus χρίω, *anoint*, middle χρίομαι, *anoint oneself*; παύω, *make to cease*, middle *make oneself to cease, cease, stop* (intransitive); ἀπ-έχω, *keep away from* (transitive), middle *keep oneself from, desist from, refrain from*; πορεύω, *make go*, middle *go, proceed, march, advance.*

197. The *indirect middle*, in which the subject is represented as acting *for himself* or on something *belonging to himself.*

Thus ἀγοράζω,[1] *buy*, middle *buy for oneself*; σκευάζω,[2] *equip, prepare, make ready*, middle *prepare for oneself*; παρα-σκευάζω,[3] *prepare, procure*, middle *prepare* or *procure for oneself, make ready*; συ-σκευάζω,[4] *collect baggage*, middle *collect one's own baggage, pack up*; μετα-πέμπω, *send for*, middle *send for one's own* or *to come to oneself, summon*: λύω, LOOSE, middle LOOSE *one's own, ransom*; ἄγω, *lead*, middle *lead one's own.*

a. The indirect middle sometimes has a causative force.

Thus δανείζω, *lend*, middle *have lent to oneself, borrow*; θύω, *sacrifice*, middle *cause to sacrifice, take the auspices, offer sacrifice.*

198. The *subjective middle*, in which the subject is represented as acting with his own means and powers.

Thus παρ-έχω, *furnish*, middle *furnish from one's own property*; στρατεύω, *make war*, middle *make war with one's own resources, take the field*; so συ-στρατεύομαι,[4] *take the field with, join an expedition*; βουλεύω, *plan*, middle *form one's own plan, consider, deliberate, purpose*; so συμ-βουλεύομαι, *consult with.*

---

[1] Related to ἀγορά.

[2] Related to σκευή.

[3] The compound form παρα-σκευάζω is commoner than the simple form σκευάζω, and is to be used in preference to it.

[4] ν before σ is dropped.

199. The personal-endings in the indicative middle (154, 155) are: —

	Primary.			Secondary.		
	Sing.	Dual.	Plur.	Sing.	Dual.	Plur.
1.	-μαι		-μεθα	-μην		-μεθα
2.	-σαι	-σθον	-σθε	-σο	-σθον	-σθε
3.	-ται	-σθον	-νται	-το	-σθην	-ντο

200. PARADIGMS.

		Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
Indicative Middle.	S. 1.	λύ-μαι	ἐ-λῡ́-μην	λύσο-μαι
	2.	λύ-ει	ἐ-λύ-ου	λύσ-ει
	3.	λύ-ε-ται	ἐ-λύ-ε-το	λύσ-ε-ται
	D. 2.	λυ-σθον	ἐ-λύ-σθον	λύσ-σθον
	3.	λύ-σθον	ἐ-λῡ́-σθην	λυσ-σθον
	P. 1.	λῡ́-μεθα	ἐ-λῡ́-μεθα	λῡσό-μεθα
	2.	λύ-σθε	ἐ-λύ-σθε	λύσ-σθε
	3.	λύ-νται	ἐ-λύ-ντο	λύσο-νται

a. For the present stem λῡ °/ε-, found in the present and imperfect (augmented in the latter), see 157 and 164, and for the future stem λῡσ °/ε-, see 159.

b. In the second person singular λύει is for λυε-σαι, ἐλύου for ελῡε-σο, and λύσει for λῡσε-σαι. The σ is dropped, and the last two syllables are then contracted, -ε-αι into -ει, -ε-ο into -ου.

201. EXERCISES.

I. 1. ἄξεται τὰ ὅπλα καὶ τοὺς ἵππους. 2. οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ ἐβουλεύοντο πορεύεσθαι.[1] 3. στερρῶς τῶν ἀγαθῶν[2] ἀπειχόμεθα διὰ τοὺς τῶν θεῶν ὅρκους. 4. ἀργυρίῳ[3] τὰ παιδία λύσονται οἱ πολῖται. 5. εἶτα δ' ἐπορεύοντο ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν. 6. τὸ ἀργύριον δανείζονται οἱ πολῖται. 7. Κῦρος

[1] Pres. inf. middle, depending upon ἐβουλεύοντο.

[2] The gen. is used with verbs of separation. *Cf.* the corresponding use of the ablative in Latin.

[3] *Cf.* 175, I. 11.

δὲ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς[1] καὶ λοχᾱγοῖς συμβουλεύεται. 8. εἰς Κιλικίᾱν τὴν στρατιὰν ἄξεται. 9. ταχέως διὰ τοῦ πεδίου ἐπορευόμεθα εἰς κώμᾱς. 10. σὺν τοῖς στρατηγοῖς βουλεύεται τί[2] δίκαιόν ἐστι. 11. καὶ ἱερεῖα θύσεται τῷ θεῷ. 12. καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἐχρίοντο. 13. μισθὸν ἔκπλεων παρείχετο εἰς[3] τὴν στρατιάν. 14. Κῦρος δὲ μεταπέμπεται τὸν Κλέαρχον. 15. συστρατεύσονται Σεύθῃ.[1] 16. μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο τὴν θυσίᾱν παρεσκευάζοντο. 17. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ Κῦρος ἐπορεύετο ἠμελημένως μᾶλλον. 18. καὶ ὀκνηρῶς συνεσκευάζοντο. 19. πέρᾱν δὲ τοῦ Εὐφράτου ἦν κώμη· ἐκ ταύτης οἱ στρατιῶται ἠγοράζοντο τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. 20. χῖλὸς σπάνιος πάνυ ἐστί, Κῦρος δὲ παρασκευάζεται διὰ τὴν ἐπιμέλειαν.

II. 1. And he was proceeding on the wagon. 2. They will not deliberate carelessly. 3. He took the field against his brother. 4. Cyrus will summon the village-chief. 5. They will bring their horses to the camp. 6. They proceed through this country to the river. 7. The bowmen send for their bows. 8. The generals are offering sacrifice. 9. You did not proceed to Cyrus. 10. And on the following day he offered sacrifice. 11. When it was dawn, the soldiers anointed themselves. 12. We shall ransom our servants. 13. But on the following day they summon the generals and the captains. 14. The targeteers will purchase provisions for themselves.

202. VOCABULARY.

εἶτα, adv., *then, thereupon.*
ἐπιμέλεια, *care, thoughtfulness.*
ἠμελημένως, adv., *carelessly.*
θυσίᾱ (*θύω*), *sacrifice, offering.*
ἱερεῖον (*ἱερός*), *victim* (for sacrifice).
Κιλικίᾱ, **Cilicia.**
μετά, prep.[4] · with gen., *with;* with acc., *after.*
ὀκνηρῶς, adv., *reluctantly.*
πάνυ, adv., *wholly, very, altogether, very much.*
σπάνιος, **-ᾱ**, **-ον**, *scarce.*
στερρῶς, adv., *firmly, resolutely, obstinately.*
ταχέως, adv., *quickly, soon.*
χῖλός, **ὁ**, *fodder.*

[1] See p. 31 [3].
[2] *Cf.* 181, I. 4.
[3] *to, for.*
[4] The literal sense is *amid, among.* μετά implies *participation,* as σύν *accompaniment.*

LESSON XXVII.

Aorist, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Middle.

203. The *Future Perfect Indicative* denotes that an action will be *already finished* at some future time, as λελύσομαι, *I shall have ransomed.* It is a perfect transferred to the future.

204. PARADIGMS.

		First Aor.	Perf.	Plup.	Fut. Perf.
Indicative Middle.	S. 1.	ἐ-λυσά-μην	λέλυ-μαι	ἐ-λελύ-μην	λελύσο-μαι
	2.	ἐ-λύσω	λέλυ-σαι	ἐ-λέλυ-σο	λελύσει
	3.	ἐ-λῦσα-το	λέλυ-ται	ἐ-λέλυ-το	λελύσε-ται
	D. 2.	ἐ-λύσα-σθον	λέλυ-σθον	ἐ-λέλυ-σθον	λελύσε-σθον
	3.	ἐ-λῡσά-σθην	λέλυ-σθον	ἐ-λελύ-σθην	λελύσε-σθον
	P. 1.	ἐ-λῡσά-μεθα	λελύ-μεθα	ἐ-λελύ-μεθα	λελῡσό-μεθα
	2.	ἐ-λύσα-σθε	λέλυ-σθε	ἐ-λέλυ-σθε	λελύσε-σθε
	3.	ἐ-λύσα-ντο	λέλυ-νται	ἐ-λέλυ-ντο	λελύσο-νται

a. The first aorist middle has the same tense-stem as the first aorist active, λῡσα- (165). In the second person singular ἐ-λύσω is for ε-λῡσα-σο. σ is dropped, and the last two syllables are contracted, -α-ο into -ω.

b. The perfect and pluperfect middle use the *perfect middle* stem, formed simply by reduplicating the theme. Thus λελυ-. To this the pluperfect, as a secondary tense, prefixes the augment.

c. The future perfect uses the perfect middle stem with -σ°/ε- added. Thus λελῡσ°/ε-.

d. The perfect and future perfect middle use the middle *primary* personal endings, the aorist and pluperfect, the *secondary* (199).

205. Note also the following: —

	Perf.	Plup.	Perf.	Plup.	Perf.	Plup.
S. 1.	ἐσκεύασ-μαι	ἐσκευάσ-μην	ἧγμαι	ἤγμην	πέπεμμαι	ἐπεπέμμην
2.	ἐσκεύα-σαι	ἐσκεύα-σο	ἧξαι	ἧξο	πέπεμψαι	ἐπέπεμψο
3.	ἐσκεύασ-ται	ἐσκεύασ-το	ἧκται	ἧκτο	πέπεμπται	ἐπέπεμπτο

D. 2.	ἐσκεύα-σθον	ἐσκεύα-σθον	ἤχθον	ἤχθον	πέπεμφθον	ἐπέπεμφθον
3.	ἐσκεύα-σθον	ἐσκευά-σθην	ἤχθον	ἤχθην	πέπεμφθον	ἐπεπέμφθην
P. 1.	ἐσκευάσ-μεθα	ἐσκευάσ-μεθα	ἤγμεθα	ἤγμεθα	πεπέμμεθα	ἐπεπέμμεθα
2.	ἐσκεύα-σθε	ἐσκεύα-σθε	ἦχθε	ἦχθε	πέπεμφθε	ἐπέπεμφθε
3.	ἐσκευασ-μένοι εἰσί	ἐσκευασ-μένοι ἦσαν	ἠγμένοι εἰσί	ἠγμένοι ἦσαν	πεπεμμένοι εἰσί	πεπεμμένοι ἦσαν

206. The perfect and pluperfect middle of such verbs in *-ζω* as have already been introduced are inflected like *ἐσκεύασ-μαι* and *ἐσκευάσ-μην* above. *δ* of the theme (104) is dropped before endings which begin with *σ*; elsewhere it is changed to *σ*.

207. The third person plural is a compound form, consisting of the perfect middle participle and *εἰσί* in the perfect (literally *they are having prepared themselves*, that is *they have prepared themselves*), and of the perfect middle participle and *ἦσαν* in the pluperfect (*they were having prepared themselves*, that is *they had prepared themselves*).

Inflect the perfect and pluperfect middle of *ἀγοράζω* and *δανείζω*.

a. The perfect and pluperfect middle of *ἄγω* and *πέμπω* are inflected as above. The forms will be explained later.

b. The perfect and pluperfect middle of *ἔχω* are *ἔσχη-μαι* and *ἐσχή-μην*. These are inflected like *λέλυ-μαι* and *ἐ-λελύ-μην*.

208. EXERCISES.

I. 1. *οἱ δὲ Μῑλήτου πολῖται ἡδέως ἐπαύσαντο.* 2. *καὶ τὸν στρατηγὸν καὶ τὸν σατράπην ἀπεπέμψατο.* 3. *ἐστράτευτο δὲ Κῦρος εἰς τὴν τῶν πολεμίων χώρᾱν.* 4. *οὗτος τοῦ πρὸς τοὺς βαρβάρους πολέμου*[1] *πεπαύσεται.* 5. *οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἐπεπόρευντο σταθμοὺς*[2] *πέντε.* 6. *καὶ οἱ ὁπλῖται ἐνταῦθα ἀνεπαύσαντο.* 7. *ὀλίγοι τῶν στρατιωτῶν σίτου*[3] *ἐγεύσαντο.* 8. *παρεσκευασμένοι ἦσαν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους.* 9. *οἱ ὁπλῖται ἀδεῶς πεπόρευνται ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον.* 10. *καὶ τῷ Σπαρτιάτᾱ*

[1] *Cf.* 201, I. 3.

[2] The *extent* of time or space is expressed by the acc. (as in Latin).

[3] In Greek the gen. is used with verbs which signify an action of the *senses* or of the *mind*.

ἐλῡσάσθην τὸν ἵππον. 11. συνεστράτευμαι ἐν τῇ Φρυγίᾳ σὺν Κλεάρχῳ. 12. ὁ Ἀθηναῖος οὕτως ἐθύσατο. 13. Ἀρταξέρξης εἰς μάχην παρεσκεύαστο. 14. οἱ τοξόται μάχης πεπαύσονται. 15. ἀλλὰ Πρόξενος τὸν Ἀθηναῖον μετεπέμψατο οἴκοθεν. 16. οἱ πολέμιοι οὐκ ἐπαύσαντο διὰ ὅλης τῆς ἡμέρᾱς. 17. ὁ σατράπης βεβούλευται ὅπως τὰς τῶν πολιτῶν ὑποψίᾱς παύσει. 18. ἐνταῦθα ἅμαξαι μεσταὶ ἀλεύρων ἦσαν καὶ οἴνου, ἃς[1] παρεσκεύασατο Κῦρος. 19. καὶ ὁ ἁρμοστὴς μετεπέμψατο τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχᾱγοὺς τῶν στρατιωτῶν εἰς Βυζάντιον.

II. 1. Cyrus summoned Proxenus. 2. They have proceeded to the sources of the river. 3. The army had advanced ten stages. 4. He has consulted with Cyrus. 5. But he summoned Cyrus from his satrapy.[2] 6. The soldiers will rest in the plain. 7. We have taken the field against the queen's soldiers. 8. He offered sacrifice to the gods. 9. They will have ransomed their children. 10. We have kept our own arms safe. 11. You have ceased from battle. 12. Why[3] did you take the field against the satrap? 13. He summoned the peltasts and the bowmen. 14. Cyrus has considered how he shall be king in place of his brother.

209. VOCABULARY.

ἀδεῶς, adv., *fearlessly.*
ἄκρον, *height, summit.*
ἄλευρον, *flour* (commonly plur.).
ἀνα-παύω,[4] *make to cease, make to halt;* mid. *desist, halt, rest.*
ἀπο-πέμπω, *send off* or *away;* mid. *send away from oneself, dismiss.*
γεύω, *give a taste;* mid. *give oneself a taste, taste.*
ἐνταῦθα (ἐν), adv., *there, thereupon.*
ἡδέως, adv., *gladly.*
οἴκοθεν (οἶκος, οἰκίᾱ), adv., *from home.*
ὅλος, -η, -ον, *whole, entire.*
ὅπως (πῶς), conjunctive adv., *in what way, how.*
Πρόξενος, ὁ, **Proxenus.**
Σπαρτιάτης, *a* **Spartan.**
σταθμός, ὁ, *stopping-place, day's march.*
Φρυγίᾱ, **Phrygia.**

[1] *Cf.* 161, I. 5.
[2] See 143.
[3] *Cf.* 167, I. 10.
[4] The prep. ἀνά, *up*, in composition here merely strengthens the meaning of the simple verb.

LESSON XXVIII.

Third or Consonant-Declension.

210. The third or consonant-declension includes all nouns whose stems end in a consonant or close vowel (*ι*, *υ*).

211. The stem of a noun (47) in the consonant-declension cannot always be determined from the nominative singular, but may generally be found by dropping the case-ending (47) of the genitive singular.

212. The case-endings of the consonant-declension are:—

	Singular.		Dual.		Plural.		
	M. and F.	N.	M. F. N.		M. and F.		N.
N.	-ς or none	none	N.A.V.	-ε	N.V.	-ες	-α
G.	-ος		G.D.	-οιν	G.	-ων	
D.	-ι				D.	-σι	
A.	-α or -ν	none			A.	-ας or -νς	-α
V.	like N. or none	none					

213. Formation of Cases. (*Section 213 for reference only.*)

1. The *Nominative Singular* of masculines and feminines adds -ς to the stem.

a. But stems in -ν-, -ρ-, -σ-, or -οντ-, reject the ending -ς and lengthen a preceding ε to η and ο to ω. Final τ is dropped (232).

2. The *Accusative Singular* of masculines and feminines adds -α to consonant stems, -ν to vowel stems.

b. But barytone (36) stems in -τ-, -δ-, -θ-, after a close vowel, commonly omit the mute and take the case-ending -ν.

3. The *Vocative Singular* of masculines and feminines is regularly the mere stem.

But in the following cases it is like the nominative: (c) oxytone stems ending in a liquid; (d) all participles; (e) stems ending in a mute; (f) but in stems in -ιδ- and barytone (36) stems in -ντ- the vocative singular is the mere stem. Final δ or τ is dropped (232).

4. The *Accusative Plural* of masculines and feminines adds *-ας* to consonant stems, *-νς* to vowel stems.

5. The *Nominative, Accusative,* and *Vocative Singular* of neuters are the simple stem. Final *-τ-* is dropped (232).

Stems ending in a Labial or Palatal Mute (114).

214. PARADIGMS.

	ὁ Χάλυψ (Χαλυβ-) Chalybian	ὁ κλώψ (κλωπ-) *thief*	ὁ φύλαξ[1] (φυλακ-) *guard*	ὁ ἡ αἴξ (αιγ-) *goat*	ἡ διῶρυξ (διωρυχ-) *canal*
S. N. V.	Χάλυψ	κλώψ	φύλαξ	αἴξ	διῶρυξ
G.	Χάλυβ-ος	κλωπ-ός	φύλακ-ος	αἰγ-ός	διώρυχ-ος
D.	Χάλυβ-ι	κλωπ-ί	φύλακ-ι	αἰγ-ί	διώρυχ-ι
A.	Χάλυβ-α	κλῶπ-α	φύλακ-α	αἶγ-α	διώρυχ-α
D. N. A. V.	Χάλυβ-ε	κλῶπ-ε	φύλακ-ε	αἶγ-ε	διώρυχ-ε
G. D.	Χαλύβ-οιν	κλωπ-οῖν	φυλάκ-οιν	αἰγ-οῖν	διωρύχ-οιν
P. N. V.	Χάλυβ-ες	κλῶπ-ες	φύλακ-ες	αἶγ-ες	διώρυχ-ες
G.	Χαλύβ-ων	κλωπ-ῶν	φυλάκ-ων	αἰγ-ῶν	διωρύχ-ων
D.	Χάλυψι	κλωψί	φύλαξι	αἰξί	διώρυξι
A.	Χάλυβ-ας	κλῶπ-ας	φύλακ-ας	αἶγ-ας	διώρυχ-ας

a. Observe the case-endings (212) and apply the principles stated in 213, 1, 2, e, 4.

Review 112–115.

Apply the following laws of euphony to the paradigms: —

215. Mutes before Σ. — (a) A labial mute before *σ* forms with it *ψ* (for *πσ*). (b) A palatal mute before *σ* forms with it *ξ* (for *κσ*).

Review 44, 45.

216. Special Rule of Accent. — Monosyllabic stems of the consonant-declension accent the ultima in the genitive and dative of all numbers.

[1] *Cf.* *φυλακή*, which means a body of *φύλακες*.

217. Gender. — Stems ending in a labial or palatal mute are never neuter, but are either masculine or feminine.

Review 83–86.

218. Like the substantives in 214 are declined: Δόλοψ, Δόλοπ-ος, ὁ, *a* **Dolopian**; σκόλοψ, σκόλοπ-ος, ὁ, *stake, pole,* plur. *palisade;* Θρᾷξ, Θρᾳκ-ός, ὁ, *a* **Thracian**; θώρᾱξ, θώρᾱκ-ος, ὁ, *breastplate;* κῆρυξ, κήρῡκ-ος,[1] ὁ, *herald;* Κίλιξ,[2] Κίλικ-ος, ὁ, *a* **Cilician**; μάστῑξ, μάστῑγ-ος, ἡ, *whip,* πτέρυξ, πτέρυγ-ος, ἡ, *wing, flap;* φάλαγξ, φάλαγγ-ος, ἡ, *line of battle,* **phalanx.**

219. EXERCISES.

I. 1. ἐν δὲ ταῖς οἰκίαις ἦσαν αἶγες. 2. θώρᾱκα ἔχει[3] τὸν ἱππικόν. 3. τότε δὲ κήρῡκας ἔπεμψε περὶ σπονδῶν. 4. ἔνθα αἱ διώρυχές εἰσι, γέφῡραι δ' ἔπεισιν. 5. οἱ βάρβαροι ἐτόξευσαν ὑπὸ μαστίγων.[4] 6. καὶ οὐκέτι πέντε στάδια[5] διειχέτην τὼ φάλαγγε. 7. τοῦτο τὸ χωρίον εἶχον τῶν Κιλίκων φύλακες. 8. τάφρος γὰρ ἦν περὶ τὸ χωρίον καὶ σκόλοπες ἐπὶ τῆς ἀναβολῆς. 9. οἱ γὰρ τοξόται τοὺς κλῶπας ἐκόλασαν. 10. ἔχει μισθοφόρους Χάλυβας καὶ Θρᾷκας. 11. ἀλλ' ἐν μέσῳ[6] ἦμεν τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς διώρυχος. 12. τούτων δὲ τριᾱκόσιοι Θρᾷκες ἦσαν. 13. ὁ στρατηγὸς ὁπλίτᾱς ἔχει χῑλίους, Δόλοπας καὶ Ὀλυνθίους. 14. ἡ δὲ πλησίον[7] χώρᾱ ἐστὶ Χάλυβες.[8] 15. ἐπὶ δὲ τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδίον ὑπερβολῇ ἦσαν φύλακες. 16. εἶχε δὲ ἡ Κίλισσα φύλακας Κίλικας. 17. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο διὰ Χαλύβων σταθμοὺς πέντε· οὗτοι εἶχον θώρᾱκας λινοῦς, ἀντὶ δὲ τῶν πτερύγων σπάρτα πυκνά.

II. 1. The whips are in the house. 2. This thief did not speak the truth. 3. The Thracian has the horses. 4. He will punish the guard with judgment.[9] 5. He sent guards with the

---

[1] The ῡ of the stem κηρῡκ- is shortened in the N. and V. sing.

[2] *Cf.* Κιλικίᾱ.

[3] ἔχω in the sense of *have on.*

[4] *under the lash,* that is, of their leaders. This was a part of Persian discipline.

[5] *Cf.* 208, I. 5.

[6] *in the middle, i.e. between.*

[7] Here equal to *neighbouring.* See p. 23 [1].

[8] In English we should say, "is *that* of the Chalybians."

[9] *Cf.* 106, I. 12.

queen into Cilicia? 6. You were buying goats in the market-place. 7. The heavy-armed men had breastplates. 8. But on the following day he sent heralds. 9. He ordered the whole[1] phalanx to advance.[2] 10. The guards give attention[3] to the words of the herald. 11. The canal is long and narrow, and upon (it) is a bridge. 12. There is a high palisade on the rampart of the camp.

220. VOCABULARY.

ἀναβολή, *bank* (of earth), *rampart*.
δι-έχω, intrans., *be apart*.
ἔνθα (*ἐν*), adv., *there, here, thereupon*.
ἐντεῦθεν (*ἐν*), adv., *thence, thereupon*.
ἔπ-ειμι (*εἶμί*), *be on, be upon, be over*.
ἱππικός, -ή, -όν (*ἵππος*), *for cavalry, cavalry-*.
Κλισσα (*Κλιξ*), **Cilician** *queen*.
λίνεος, -ᾶ, -ον,[4] *of linen*.
μισθο-φόρος, -ον,[5] *receiving pay; μισθοφόροι*, as subst., *mercenaries*.
Ὀλύνθιος, ὁ, *an* **Olynthian**.
οὐκ-έτι,[6] adv., *no longer*.
περί, prep., *around* on all sides: with gen., *about, concerning;* with dat., *around, about;* with acc., *around, about*.
πλησίον (*cf.* πλησιάζω), adv., *near*.
πυκνός, -ή, -όν, *thick, close together*.
σπάρτον, *rope, cord*.
στάδιον, **stade** (measure of length = about 582 feet).
ὑπερβολή, *crossing, mountain-pass*.
ὑπό, prep., *under* (Latin *sub*): with gen., *under, by;* with dat., *under;* with acc., *under*.

LESSON XXIX.

Indicative Passive.

221. In the passive voice the subject is represented as acted on. Thus, λέομαι, *I am loosed*, ἐλῡόμην, *I was loosed*, etc.

222. Examine the following: —

ὁ στρατηγὸς τοὺς ὁπλίτας πέμψει, *the general will send the heavy-armed men*.

οἱ ὁπλῖται ὑπὸ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ πεμφθήσονται, *the heavy-armed men will be sent by the general*.

---

[1] For the order, *cf.* 208, I. 16.
[2] *Cf.* 201, I. 2.
[3] *Cf.* 181, I. 7.
[4] Declined like χρῡσοῦς (191).
[5] *μισθός* and *φέρω, carry, gain*.
[6] *οὐ* and *ἔτι, still, further, longer*.

οἱ πολέμιοι τὰς σπονδὰς λελύκᾶσι, *the enemy have violated the treaty.*

αἱ σπονδαὶ τοῖς πολεμίοις λέλυνται, *the treaty has been violated by the enemy.*

a. Observe that the object of the active becomes the subject of the passive; and that the subject of the active, the *agent*, when the sentence is converted into the passive, is expressed either by ὑπό (*by*) and the genitive, or, when the verb is in the perfect tense, by the dative. Hence: —

223. **Rule of Syntax.** — The agent is usually expressed, in the passive construction, by ὑπό with the genitive.

224. **Rule of Syntax.** — With the perfect and pluperfect passive the agent is sometimes expressed by the dative. This is called the *Dative of the Agent.*

225. The present, imperfect, perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect have the same forms in the passive voice as in the middle. The remaining tenses are the aorist and the future.

226. PARADIGMS.

		First Aorist.	First Future.
Indicative Passive.	S. 1.	ἐ-λύθη-ν	λυθήσο-μαι
	2.	ἐ-λύθη-ς	λυθήσει
	3.	ἐ-λύθ-η	λυθήσε-ται
	D. 2.	ἐ-λύθη-τον	λυθήσε-σθον
	3.	ἐ-λυθή-την	λυθήσε-σθον
	P. 1.	ἐ-λύθη-μεν	λυθησό-μεθα
	2.	ἐ-λύθη-τε	λυθήσε-σθε
	3.	ἐ-λύθη-σαν	λυθήσο-νται

a. The first aorist passive uses the *first passive* stem, formed by adding the tense-suffix -θε- (lengthened to -θη- in the indicative) to the theme. Thus λυ-θε- (λυ-θη-). As a secondary tense, it has augment in the indicative. It uses the *active secondary* endings (163).

b. The first future passive uses the first passive stem with -σ°/ε- added and -θε- lengthened to -θη-. Thus λυ-θησ°/ε-. It uses the *middle primary* endings (199).

c. For the form λυθήσει, see 200 b.

227. In the first aorist and first future passive of such verbs in -ζω as have already been introduced, δ of the theme (104) is changed to σ before the tense-sign -θε- (-θη-).

Form the first aorist and first future passive of ἁρπάζω, θαυμάζω, ἀτῑμάζω.

a. The first aorist and first future passive of ἄγω and πέμπω are ἤχθην, ἀχθήσομαι and ἐπέμφθην, πεμφθήσομαι. These forms will be explained later. The first aorist and first future passive of ἔχω do not occur in Attic Greek.

228. EXERCISES.

I. 1. πῶς λυθησόμεθα ; 2. καὶ οὗτος δὴ ἐλύθη. 3. ἐπιέσθη ὑπὸ τῶν οἴκοι[1] ἀντιστασιωτῶν. 4. ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις ταῖς[2] Δᾱρείου παιδευθήσονται. 5. ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ[3] ἐτοξεύθησαν ὁπλῖται δύο. 6. εἰς Καστωλοῦ πεδίον ἀθροίζονται. 7. οὕτω δ' αὖ ἐσῴζοντο ἐκεῖνοι[4] σὺν[5] τοῖς θεοῖς ἐκ πάνυ[6] δεινῶν. 8. ὥστε ἠναγκάσθη ὁ φρούραρχος πλησιάζειν. 9. ταῦτα σῴζεται διὰ[7] Κῦρον τῇ στρατιᾷ. 10. Κῦρος ἐπαιδεύετο σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις. 11. καὶ εὐθὺς μετεπέμφθησαν φρουροὶ Ἰωνικοί. 12. ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χωρίῳ ὁ οἰκέτης ἐστίν, εἰ λέλυται. 13. μετὰ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἐλύθη ὁ λοχᾱγὸς τόνδε τὸν τρόπον.[8] 14. ὥστε ἠναγκάζοντο σχολῇ[9] πορεύεσθαι. 15. τὼ ἀδελφὼ ὑπὸ τοῦ διδασκάλου πεπαιδευσθον. 16. ἐκ

[1] See p. 23 [1].

[2] Instead of the usual order, article, attributive, substantive (see 56, Rem.), the article with the attributive may follow the substantive, in which case the substantive itself may also have the article *before* it.

[3] *Sc. wing.*

[4] An emphatic *they*.

[5] *by the favour of.*

[6] Adverbial modifier of the following adj., although the latter is here used as a subst.

[7] *through, by.*

[8] *in the following manner.* The acc. is used in many expressions with the force of an adverb.

[9] *Cf.* 106, I. 12.

τῶν κωμῶν διήρπαστο ὑπὸ τῶν βαρβάρων καὶ (*even*) τὰ ἀπὸ τῶν οἰκιῶν ξύλα. 17. οἱ στρατιῶται πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους πορεύεσθαι ἐκεκέλευντο τῷ στρατηγῷ. 18. οὕτως οὖν ἠθροίσθησαν Κύρῳ στρατιῶται ὅτε ἐπὶ τὸν ἀδελφὸν Ἀρταξέρξην ἐστρατεύετο.

II. 1. They are saved by the peltasts. 2. Ten thousand heavy-armed men were sent for. 3. Pay was sent to the soldiers by Cyrus. 4. The bridges will have been destroyed. 5. I have been compelled by the general to stop. 6. They will be collected in the villages. 7. The young men will be educated by good teachers. 8. I was compelled to send pay to the guards. 9. Ten bowmen on the right (wing) are shot. 10. He was shot through the breastplate by the bowman. 11. The villages have been saved by the satrap's army. 12. He sent gifts to the general because he had been saved.

229. VOCABULARY.

ἀντιστασιώτης, *opponent.*
αὖ, adv., *again, in turn.*
δεινός, -ή, -όν, *dreadful, perilous;* δεινόν, as subst., *peril, danger.*
δή, intensive and postpositive particle, *now, indeed, in particular.*
διδάσκαλος, ὁ, TEACHER.
δύο, TWO.
ἐκεῖνος, -η, -ο,[1] *that, that one.*
εὐθύς, adv., *straightway, immediately.*
εὐώνυμος, -ον, *left* (as opposed to δεξιός).
Ἰωνικός, -ή, -όν, **Ionic.**
Καστωλός, ἡ, **Castolus.**
ξύλον, *wood*, plur. *timbers.*
ὅδε, ἥδε, τόδε,[2] *this.*
οἴκοι[3] (οἶκος, οἰκία), adv., *at home.*
ὅτε, conjunctive adv., *when.*
παιδεύω (*cf.* παιδίον), *educate, train.*
πιέζω, *press hard.*
σχολή, *leisure.*
τρόπος, ὁ, *manner, character.*
φρούρ-αρχος,[4] **ὁ**, *commander of a garrison.*
φρουρός, ὁ, *watcher, guard.*
Χειρίσοφος, ὁ, **Chirisophus.**

---

[1] Demonstrative pronoun, referring to something *remote.* Declined like ἄλλος (193). The rule in 174 applies also to ἐκεῖνος.

[2] Demonstrative pronoun, referring to something *near*, declined like the article, with the demonstrative suffix -δε added to the forms. ὅδε is used in referring forward to an object yet to be mentioned, οὗτος in referring back to an object already mentioned. The rule in 174 applies also to ὅδε.

[3] See 28.

[4] φρουρός and ἄρχω, *rule.*

LESSON XXX.

Lingual Mute Stems of the Consonant-Declension.

230. PARADIGMS.

	ἡ νύξ (νυκτ-) NIGHT	ἡ ἐλπίς (ελπιδ-) *hope*	ἡ χάρις (χαριτ-) *favour*	ὁ ἡ ὄρνῑς (ορνῑθ-) *bird*	ὁ γέρων (γεροντ-) *old man*
S. N.	νύξ	ἐλπίς	χάρις	ὄρνῑς	γέρων
G.	νυκτ-ός	ἐλπίδ-ος	χάριτ-ος	ὄρνῑθ-ος	γέροντ-ος
D.	νυκτ-ί	ἐλπίδ-ι	χάριτ-ι	ὄρνῑθ-ι	γέροντ-ι
A.	νύκτ-α	ἐλπίδ-α	χάριν	ὄρνῑν	γέροντ-α
V.	νύξ	ἐλπί	χάρις	ὄρνῑς	γέρον
D. N. A. V.	νύκτ-ε	ἐλπίδ-ε	χάριτ-ε	ὄρνῑθ-ε	γέροντ-ε
G. D.	νυκτ-οῖν	ἐλπίδ-οιν	χαρίτ-οιν	ὀρνῑθ-οιν	γερόντ-οιν
P. N. V.	νύκτ-ες	ἐλπίδ-ες	χάριτ-ες	ὄρνῑθ-ες	γέροντ-ες
G.	νυκτ-ῶν	ἐλπίδ-ων	χαρίτ-ων	ὀρνῑθ-ων	γερόντ-ων
D.	νυξί	ἐλπίσι	χάρισι	ὄρνῑσι	γέρουσι
A.	νύκτ-ας	ἐλπίδ-ας	χάριτ-ας	ὄρνῑθ-ας	γέροντ-ας

a. Observe the case-endings (212) and apply the principles stated in 213, 1, a, 2, b, e, f, 4.

Apply the following laws of euphony to the paradigms: —

231. Mutes before Σ. — A lingual mute before σ is dropped.

232. Final Consonants. — The only consonants which can stand at the end of a word are ν, ρ, and ς. Final ψ (πς) and ξ (κς) are not exceptions. Other final consonants are dropped.

233. N and a Lingual before Σ. — ντ, νδ, νθ are dropped before σ, and preceding α, ι, υ lengthened to ᾱ, ῑ, ῡ, ε to ει, ο to ου.

a. Observe that νύξ is for νυκτ-ς, νυκ-ς (231, 215 b).

Review 44, 45.

234. Gender. — (a) Masculine are all substantives whose stems end in -ντ-. (b) Feminine are all those whose stems end in -δ-, -θ-. (c) Some words of masculine or feminine *form*, denoting persons or animals, are of *common* gender (p. 20[3]).

235. Like the above are declined: ἄρχων, ἄρχοντ-ος (*cf.* φρούραρχος, and for the voc., see 213 d), *leader, commander;* μῦριάς, μῦριάδ-ος[1] (μύριοι), *ten thousand;* παῖς, παιδ-ός,[2] ὁ, ἡ (*cf.* παιδεύω), *child, boy, girl;* στλεγγίς, στλεγγίδ-ος, *a tiara;* φυγάς, φυγάδ-ος,[1] ὁ, ἡ, *fugitive.*

236. PARADIGMS.

	τὸ σῶμα (σωματ-) *body*	τὸ ὄνομα (ονοματ-) NAME	τὸ φρέαρ (φρεᾰτ-) *well*	τὸ τέρας (τερατ-) *portent*
S. N. A. V.	σῶμα	ὄνομα	φρέαρ	τέρας
G.	σώματ-ος	ὀνόματ-ος	φρέᾰτ-ος	τέρατ-ος
D.	σώματ-ι	ὀνόματ-ι	φρέᾰτ-ι	τέρατ-ι
D. N. A. V.	σώματ-ε	ὀνόματ-ε	φρέᾰτ-ε	τέρατ-ε
G. D.	σωμάτ-οιν	ὀνομάτ-οιν	φρεάτ-οιν	τεράτ-οιν
P. N. A. V.	σώματ-α	ὀνόματ-α	φρέᾰτ-α	τέρατ-α
G.	σωμάτ-ων	ὀνομάτ-ων	φρεάτ-ων	τερᾰ́τ-ων
D.	σώμασι	ὀνόμασι	φρέᾰσι	τέρασι

a. Observe the case-endings, and apply the principle stated in 213, 5. φρέαρ and τέρας, and a few others, are exceptions to the rule.

237. Gender. — Neuter are all substantives with stems in -ατ-.

238. Like σῶμα and ὄνομα are declined: κτῆμα, κτήματ-ος, *a possession;* πρᾶγμα, πράγματ-ος, *thing, matter, event,* plur. *affairs, troubles;* στόμα, στόματ-ος, *mouth:* στράτευμα, στρατεύματ-ος (στρατεύω), *army;* σύνθημα, συνθήματ-ος, *watchword;* τόξευμα, τοξεύματ-ος (τόξον), *arrow;* χρῆμα, χρήματ-ος, *a thing that one uses,* plur. *things, wealth, money, property.*

239. EXERCISES.

I. 1. τῷ δ' ἄρχοντι ἐκεῖνοι ἐχθροὶ ἦσαν. 2. τὸ δὲ ἆθλον ἦν στλεγγὶς καλὴ καὶ χρῡσῆ. 3. οὕτως οὖν ἐκινδύνευσαν οἱ ἄρχοντες. 4. καὶ τοῖς τῶν πολεμίων κτήμασιν οὐκ ἐπεβούλευε. 5. ἔστι δὲ στράτευμα βαρβαρικὸν ἐν τῷ πλησίον παραδείσῳ. 6. καὶ παρὰ τὴν γέφῡραν τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ πέμψει φυλακήν. 7. τὴν γέφῡραν ταύτην λέλυκεν ὁ

[1] See 213 e.

[2] Voc. παῖ (213 f). The gen. dual and plur. are irregular in accent παίδοιν, παίδων. See 216.

σατράπης τῆς νυκτός.[1] 8. τὸ τοῦ φρέᾱτος στόμα μῑκρόν ἐστιν. 9. φανερὰ οὐκ ἦν ἡ τῶν φυγάδων ἐπιβουλή. 10. οὗτος γὰρ Δᾱρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδός ἐστι παῖς, ἐμὸς δὲ ἀδελφός. 11. καὶ ἄξω τοὺς φυγάδας εἰς τὴν χώρᾱν ἔνθεν εἰμὶ φυγάς. 12. χρήσιμα γὰρ ἦν τὰ τοξεύματα τοῖς τοξόταις. 13. τί ἐστι τὸ σύνθημα; 14. στρατηγοὶ γὰρ καὶ λοχᾱγοὶ οὐ χρημάτων ἕνεκα σὺν Κύρῳ ἐπορεύοντο. 15. τοῖς οὖν θεοῖς χάριν εἶχον[2] ὅτι οἱ πολέμιοι ὀλίγοι ἦσαν. 16. σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς καλαὶ τῷ στρατεύματι ἐλπίδες εἰσὶ σωτηρίᾱς. 17. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐν τούτοις ἐσμὲν τοῖς πράγμασι, συμβουλευσόμεθά σοι.[3] 18. πελτασταὶ δὲ τετρακισχίλιοι ἦσαν, καὶ τῶν μετὰ Κύρου βαρβάρων δέκα μῡριάδες. 19. ἐνταῦθα, ὦ Ξενία, ἕξει τὸ στράτευμα τροφήν.

II. 1. But they had bows and arrows. 2. Across the river were old men and boys. 3. But in the houses were goats and birds. 4. Clearchus the Lacedaemonian was a fugitive. 5. We have saved our lives[4] and our arms. 6. The boys will be punished by their teacher. 7. We rightly feel grateful to the old man. 8. He has a good name. 9. Thus they rested during the night.[5] 10. The gods send portents to men. 11. The barbarians caused[6] the army trouble. 12. And he ordered the exiles from Miletus to take the field.

240. VOCABULARY.

βαρβαρικός, -ή, -όν (*βάρβαρος*), **barbarian**, *foreign*.
ἐμός, -ή, -όν, *my*.
ἕνεκα, adv., with gen., *on account of*.[7]
ἔνθεν (*ἐν*), *thence, whence*.
ἐπι-βουλή,[8] *a plan against, plot*.
ἐχθρός, -ά, -όν, *hostile*.[9]
κινδῡνεύω (*κίνδῡνος*), *be in peril, run a risk*.
Παρύσατις, -ιδος, Parysatis.
σωτηρίᾱ (*σῴζω*), *safety, deliverance*.
τετρακισ-χίλιοι, αι, α (*τέτταρες* + *χίλιοι*),[10] *4000*.
Τίγρης, -ητος, ὁ, *the* **Tigris**.
τροφή, *nourishment, support*.
χρήσιμος, -η, -ον (*χρῆμα*), *serviceable*.

[1] The gen. denotes the *time within which*. *Cf.* the use of the abl. in Lat.
[2] *χάριν ἔχω*, *feel grateful*.
[3] Dat. sing. of the pronoun *σύ*, *you*. An enclitic form.
[4] *I.e. bodies*.
[5] See p. 63 [2].
[6] Use *παρέχω*.
[7] Often called an *improper preposition*. *ἕνεκα* comm. follows its case.
[8] *Cf.* *ἐπι-βουλεύω*. The underlying word is *βουλή*, *plan*.
[9] Of *personal* hostility, whereas *πολέμιος* carries the idea of *πόλεμος*.
[10] *τετράκις*, *four times*.

LESSON XXXI.

Contract Verbs in the Indicative.

241. Contraction of Vowels. — Two successive vowels, or a vowel and a diphthong, within a word, are often united by *contraction* into a single long vowel or diphthong.

Vowel with Vowel. — a. An open and a close vowel (11), in this order, form a diphthong, as *ὄρε-ϊ, ὄρει; κρέα-ϊ, κρέαι.*

b. Two like vowels form the common long, as *δηλό-ω, δηλῶ; φιλέ-ητον, φιλῆτον.*

c. But *ε-ε* gives *ει*, and *ο-ο* gives *ου*, as *φιλέ-ετον, φιλεῖτον; δηλό-ομεν, δηλοῦμεν.*

d. An *o*-sound (*ο* or *ω*) absorbs *α*, *ε*, or *η*, and forms *ω*, as *τῑμά-ω, τῑμῶ; τῑμά-ομεν, τῑμῶμεν; φιλέ-ω, φιλῶ; δηλό-ητον, δηλῶτον.*

e. But *ε-ο* and *ο-ε* give *ου*, as *φιλέ-ομεν, φιλοῦμεν; δηλό-ετον, δηλοῦτον.*

f. If *α* and *ε* or *η* come together, the first absorbs the second and forms either *ᾱ* or *η*, as *τῑμά-ετον, τῑμᾶτον; τῑμά-ητον, τῑμᾶτον; ὄρε-α, ὄρη.*

Vowel with Diphthong. — g. A simple vowel is absorbed before a diphthong that begins with the same vowel, as *φιλέ-εις, φιλεῖς; δηλό-ουσι, δηλοῦσι; φιλέ-ῃς, φιλῇς; δηλο-οίην, δηλοίην.*

h. Further, *ε* is absorbed before *οι*, as *φιλε-οίην, φιλοίην.*

i. In other cases, a simple vowel before a diphthong is contracted with its first vowel. The second disappears, unless it is *ι*, when it becomes subscript. Thus *τῑμά-εις, τῑμᾷς; τῑμά-ουσι, τῑμῶσι; φιλέ-ουσι, φιλοῦσι; τῑμά-ῃς, τῑμᾷς; τῑμα-οίην, τῑμῴην.*

j. But *ο-ει* and *ο-η* give *οι*, as *δηλό-εις, δηλοῖς; δηλό-ῃς, δηλοῖς.*

242. Accent of Contracted Syllables. — If neither of the contracted syllables had an accent, the contract syllable receives none.

243. If either of the contracted syllables had an accent, the contract syllable receives one.

a. If the contract syllable is a penult or antepenult, the accent is regular (27–29).

b. If the contract syllable is an ultima, it has the circumflex, unless the ultima before contraction had the acute, when it has the acute.

For the application of these principles, *cf.* the examples in 241.

244. Contract Verbs in the Indicative. — Verbs in -αω, -εω, and -οω contract the final α, ε, or ο of the theme with the following variable vowel. The only contracted tenses are the present and imperfect.

τῑμά-ω (τῑμή), *honour*, φιλέ-ω (φίλος), *love*, and δηλό-ω (δῆλος), *manifest*, are thus inflected in the indicative: —

245. PARADIGMS.

	Active.		Middle and Passive.	
	Present.	Imperfect.	Present.	Imperfect.
S. 1.	τῑμ(ά-ω)ῶ	ἐτῑμ(ά-ον)ων	τῑμ(ά-ο)ῶ-μαι	ἐτῑμ(ά-ο)ώ-μην
2.	τῑμ(ά-ει-ς)ᾷς	ἐτῑμ(ά-ε-ς)ᾶς	τῑμ(ά-ει)ᾷ	ἐτῑμ(ά-ου)ῶ
3.	τῑμ(ά-ει)ᾷ	ἐτῑμ(ά-ε)ᾶ	τῑμ(ά-ε)ᾶ-ται	ἐτῑμ(ά-ε)ᾶ-το
D. 2.	τῑμ(ά-η-τον)ᾶ-τον	ἐτῑμ(ά-ε-τον)ᾶ-τον	τῑμ(ά-ε)ᾶ-σθον	ἐτῑμ(ά-ε)ᾶ-σθον
3.	τῑμ(ά-η-τον)ᾶ-τον	ἐτῑμ(ά-ε-την)ά-την	τῑμ(ά-ε)ᾶ-σθον	ἐτῑμ(ά-ε)ά-σθην
P. 1.	τῑμ(ά-ο-μεν)ῶ-μεν	ἐτῑμ(ά-ο-μεν)ῶ μεν	τῑμ(ά-ο)ώ μεθα	ἐτῑμ(ά-ο)ώ-μεθα
2.	τῑμ(ά-ε-τε)ᾶ-τε	ἐτῑμ(ά-ε-τε)ᾶ-τε	τῑμ(ά-ε)ᾶ-σθε	ἐτῑμ(ά-ε)ά-σθε
3.	τῑμ(ά-ου-σι)ῶσι	ἐτῑμ(ά-ο-ν)ων	τῑμ(ά-ο)ῶ νται	ἐτῑμ(ά-ο)ῶ-ντο
S. 1.	φιλ(έ-ω)ῶ	ἐφίλ(ε-ον)ουν	φιλ(έ-ο)οῦ-μαι	ἐφιλ(έ-ο)ού-μην
2.	φιλ(έ-ει-ς)εῖς	ἐφίλ(ε-ε-ς)ει-ς	φιλ(έ-ει)εῖ	ἐφιλ(έ-ου)οῦ
3.	φιλ(έ-ει)εῖ	ἐφίλ(ε-ε)ει	φιλ(έ-ε)εῖ-ται	ἐφιλ(έ-ε)εῖ-το
D. 2.	φιλ(έ-η-τον)εῖ-τον	ἐφιλ(έ-ε-τον)εῖ-τον	φιλ(έ-ε)εῖ-σθον	ἐφιλ(έ-ε)εῖ-σθον
3.	φιλ(έ-η-τον)εῖ-τον	ἐφιλ(έ-ε-την)εί-την	φιλ(έ-ε)εῖ-σθον	ἐφιλ(έ-ε)εί-σθην
P. 1.	φιλ(έ-ο-μεν)οῦ-μεν	ἐφιλ(έ-ο)οῦ-μεν	φιλ(έ-ο)ούμεθα	ἐφιλ(έ-ο)ού-μεθα
2.	φιλ(έ-ε-τε)εῖ-τε	ἐφιλ(έ-ε)εῖ τε	φιλ(έ-ε)εῖ-σθε	ἐφιλ(έ-ε)εῖ-σθε
3.	φιλ(έ-ου-σι)οῦσι	ἐφίλ(ε-ο-ν)ουν	φιλ(έ-ο)οῦ-νται	ἐφιλ(έ-ο)οῦ-ντο

S. 1.	δηλ(όω)ῶ	ἐδήλ(οον)ουν	δηλ(όο)οῦ-μαι	ἐδηλ(οό)ού-μην
2.	δηλ(όεις)οῖς	ἐδήλ(οες)ους	δηλ(όει)οῖ	ἐδηλ(όου)οῦ
3.	δηλ(όει)οῖ	ἐδήλ(οε)ου	δηλ(όε)οῦ-ται	ἐδηλ(όε)οῦ-το
D. 2.	δηλ(όε)οῦ-τον	ἐδηλ(όε)οῦ-τον	δηλ(όε)οῦ-σθον	ἐδηλ(όε)οῦ-σθον
3.	δηλ(όε)οῦ-τον	ἐδηλ(οέ)ού-την	δηλ(όε)οῦ-σθον	ἐδηλ(οέ)ού-σθην
P. 1.	δηλ(όο)οῦ-μεν	ἐδηλ(όο)οῦ-μεν	δηλ(οό)ού-μεθα	ἐδηλ(οό)ού-μεθα
2.	δηλ(όε)οῦ-τε	ἐδηλ(όε)οῦ-τε	δηλ(όε)οῦ-σθε	ἐδηλ(όε)οῦ-σθε
3.	δηλ(όου)οῦσι	ἐδήλ(οον)ουν	δηλ(όο)οῦ-νται	ἐδηλ(όο)οῦ-ντο

a. To obtain the *uncontracted* form, omit the syllable next after the parenthesis; to obtain the *contracted* form, omit the letters in the parenthesis.

246. In the same manner are inflected *βοάω, call out, shout*: ἐρωτάω, *ask, inquire*; νῑκάω, *conquer*; ἀδικέω (δίκη), *do wrong, wrong*; καλέω, *call*; ποιέω, *do, make*; θανατόω, *condemn to death*.

247. EXERCISES.

I. 1. ὧδε οὖν ἐποιεῖτο τὴν συλλογήν. 2. ᾤκουν[1] δὲ τοῦτον τὸν τόπον Μῆδοι. 3. νῑκᾶτε τοὺς σὺν Κύρῳ ὁπλίτᾱς. 4. ἐρωτᾷ εἰ[2] καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις στρατιώταις σπονδαί εἰσιν. 5. τούτους γὰρ οἱ πολῖται μάλιστα ἐφίλουν. 6. καλεῖ Ξενοφῶντα ἀπὸ τῆς οὐρᾶς. 7. ὁ δὲ τόπος οὗτος Καστωλοῦ πεδίον ἐκαλεῖτο. 8. ἐδήλου δὲ τοῦτο τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ. 9. καὶ ἐμελέτων τοξεύειν οἱ Θρᾷκες. 10. ὁ δ' ἄρχων ὡρμᾶτο ἀπὸ τῆς κώμης. 11. τοὺς Κύρου φίλους κακῶς ποιεῖν[3] πειρᾶται. 12. Κῦρος ἐτίμᾱ τοῦτον τὸν Πέρσην δι' εὔνοιαν. 13. εἰ τοῦτον θανατοῦσιν, ἀδικοῦσιν. 14. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον. 15. τί τοῦτο πρῶτον ἠρώτᾱς; 16. πάλιν δὲ ὁ Κῦρος ἠρώτᾱ, Οὐκοῦν[4] ὕστερον,[5] ὡς αὐτὸς[6] σὺ ὁμολογεῖς,

[1] See 76 end. αι- and ει- become η- when augmented; οι- becomes ω-. ου is never augmented.

[2] *whether*. The conjunctive particle εἰ (see 168) is used not only in *conditions*, in the sense of *if*, but also, as here, to introduce an *indirect question*.

[3] Contract form for ποιέειν. κακῶς ποιέω, *do harm to*.

[4] *Not then?* Equivalent to *nōnne* in Latin.

[5] *afterwards*, acc. sing. neut. used adverbially.

[6] *yourself*, Latin *ipse*, to be taken with the following σύ, *you*.

κακῶς ἐποίεις τὴν ἐμὴν χώρᾱν; 17. *ἐρωτῶμεν εἰ τὰ σώματα διεσώσασθε καὶ τὰ ὅπλα.* 18. *καὶ εὐθὺς τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐβόᾱ καὶ βαρβαρικῶς καὶ Ἑλληνικῶς.* 19. *τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἐβόᾱ ἄγειν τὸ στράτευμα ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους.* 20. *θήρᾱν ἐποιοῦντο οἵ τε*[1] *Ξενοφῶντος παῖδες καὶ οἱ*[2] *τῶν ἄλλων πολῖτῶν.*

II. 1. What are the other soldiers doing? 2. The river is called Marsyas. 3. The barbarians were wronging the guard. 4. He conquers the enemy. 5. For they were occupying strongholds. 6. You love these especially. 7. This (man) asks, What are you doing? 8. The Thracians wrong the exiles. 9. And he honoured the commanders with other gifts.[3] 10. But Xenophon was asking, Why do you call? 11. But the soldiers were shouting to the guards to stop. 12. They ask why you are not calling the bowmen. 13. But when[4] Cyrus called the generals, I proceeded to Asia.

248. VOCABULARY.

βαρβαρικῶς (*βαρβαρικός*), adv., *in the* **barbarian** *tongue.*
Ἑλληνικῶς (*Ἑλληνικός*), adv., *in Greek.*
θήρᾱ (*θηρεύω*), *a hunt* or *chase.*
κακῶς (*κακός*), adv., *badly, ill.*
μάλιστα (*μάλα*), adv., *most, especially.*
μελετάω, *practise.*
Μῆδος, ὁ, *a* **Mede.**
Ξενοφῶν, -ῶντος, **Xenophon.**
οἰκέω[5] (*οἶκος*), *inhabit, dwell, occupy.*
ὁμολογέω, *agree, confess.*
ὁρμάω, *set in motion*, often intrans. *hasten;* mid. *start, set forth.*
οὐρά, *tail, rear* (of an army).
πάλιν, adv., *again, back.*
πειράω (*πεῖρα*), *try, prove;* mid.[6] *try.*
πολιορκέω, *besiege.*
συλλογή, *a levying, levy.*
ὕστερος, -ᾱ, -ον (*cf. ὑστεραῖος*), *later.*
ὧδε (*ὅδε*),[7] adv., *thus.*
ὡς, conjunctive adv., *as, how*, proclitic.

---

[1] *τὲ . . . καί, both . . . and.* τε is enclitic. For the accent of the preceding *οἱ* (proclitic), see 186 c.
[2] *I.e.* *παῖδες.*
[3] See p. 47 [5].
[4] *Cf.* 175, I. 8.
[5] See p. 77 [1].
[6] *Subjective* middle (198).
[7] See p. 71 [2]. The same distinction holds for the advs. *οὕτως*, which refers to what precedes, and *ὧδε*, which refers to what follows.

LESSON XXXII.

Affinity of Words. — Reading Lesson.

Give the meaning of the following words: —

249.

WORD LIST.

ἀγοράζω*
ἁδεῶς
ἀδικέω*
αἴξ
ἄκρον
ἄλευρον
ἀναβολή
ἀναπαύω*
ἀντιστασιώτης
ἀπέχω*
ἀποπέμπω*
ἄρχων*
αὖ
βαρβαρικός*
βαρβαρικῶς*
βοάω
γέρων
γεύω
δανείζω
δεινός
δή
δηλόω*
διδάσκαλος
διέχω*
διῶρυξ
Δόλοψ
δύο
εἶτα
ἐκεῖνος
Ἑλληνικῶς*
ἐλπίς
ἐμός
ἕνεκα
ἔνθα*
ἔνθεν*
ἐνταῦθα*
ἐντεῦθεν*
ἔπειμι*
ἐπιβουλή*
ἐπιμέλεια
ἐρωτάω
εὐθύς
εὐώνυμος
ἐχθρός
ἡδέως
ἠμελημένως
θανατόω
θήρᾱ*
Θρᾷξ
θυσίᾱ*
θώρᾱξ
ἱερεῖον*
ἱππικός*
Ἰωνικός
κακῶς*
καλέω
Καστωλός
κῆρυξ
Κιλικίᾱ*
Κίλιξ*
Κίλισσα*
κινδῡνεύω*
κλώψ
κτῆμα
λίνεος
μάλιστα*
μάστῑξ
μελετάω
μετά
μεταπέμπω*
Μῆδος
μισθοφόρος*
μῡριάς*
νῑκάω
νύξ
Ξενοφῶν
ξύλον
Πρόξενος
πτέρυξ
πυκνός
σκευάζω*
σκόλοψ
σπάνιος
Σπαρτιάτης
σπάρτον
στάδιον
σταθμός
στερρῶς
στλεγγίς
στόμα
στράτευμα*
συλλογή
σύνθημα
συσκευάζω*
συστρατεύομαι*
πάνυ
παρασκευάζω*
Παρύσατις
παύω*
πειράω*
περί
πιέζω
πλησίον*
ποιέω
πολιορκέω
πορεύω
πρᾶγμα
πρόξενος
πτέρυξ
πυκνός
σκευάζω*
σκόλοψ
σπάνιος
Σπαρτιάτης
σπάρτον
στάδιον
σταθμός
στερρῶς
στλεγγίς
στόμα
στράτευμα*
συλλογή
σύνθημα
συσκευάζω*
συστρατεύομαι*
σχολή
σῶμα
σωτηρίᾱ*
ταχέως
τέρας
τετρακισχίλιοι*
Τίγρης
τῑμάω*
τόξευμα*
τρόπος
τροφή
ὑπερβολή
ὑπό
ὕστερος*
φάλαγξ
φιλέω*
φρέαρ
φρούραρχος*
φρουρός*
Φρυγίᾱ
φυγάς
φύλαξ*
Χάλυψ
χάρις
Χειρίσοφος
χῖλός
χρῆμα*
χρήσιμος*
χρίω
ὧδε
ὡς

Review 194.

Associate each starred word in 249 with some other word or words of those given in 130, 194, and 249, related to it in form and meaning.

Review 140 and 142.

Read and translate again 143 and 195.

Read and translate the following passage: —

250. Κῦρος.

III. ἄλλο δὲ στράτευμα τῷ Κύρῳ ἠθροίζετο ἐν Χερρονήσῳ τόνδε τὸν τρόπον. Κλέαρχος Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς μὲν ἦν, φίλος δὲ τῷ Κύρῳ. τούτῳ Κῦρος ἐδωκε μῦριους δᾶρεικούς. ὁ δὲ στράτευμα ἤθροισεν ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων, καὶ ἐπολέμει ἐκ Χερρονήσου ὁρμώμενος τοῖς Θραξί, καὶ ὠφέλει τοὺς Ἕλληνας· ὥστε καὶ χρήματα ἔδωκαν αὐτῷ εἰς τὴν τροφὴν τῶν στρατιωτῶν αἱ ἐν Χερρονήσῳ πόλεις. τοῦτο δ' αὖ οὕτως ἐτρέφετο αὐτῷ τὸ στράτευμα. Ἀρίστιππος δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς ξένος ἦν αὐτῷ, καὶ πιεζόμενος ὑπὸ τῶν οἴκοι ἀντιστασιωτῶν αἰτεῖ Κῦρον εἰς δισχιλίους ξένους μισθόν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἐδωκεν αὐτῷ εἰς τετρακισχιλίους μισθόν. οὕτω δὲ αὖ τὸ ἐν Θετταλίᾳ αὐτῷ ἐτρέφετο στράτευμα. Πρόξενον δὲ καὶ Σοφαίνετον καὶ Σωκράτην ξένους ὄντας καὶ τούτους ἐκέλευσε στρατιώτας λαμβάνειν· καὶ ἐποίουν οὕτως οὗτοι.

NOTES.

5. **ἐπολέμει**: this verb is followed by the dat. — **ὁρμώμενος**: contracted from *ορμαομενος*, pres. part. mid. — 6. **ὠφέλει**, *assisted*, (*was useful*). — **Ἕλληνας**: acc. plur. of Ἕλλην, Ἕλληνος, ὁ, *a Greek*. — **ὥστε**, *so that*, conj., compounded of ὡς (proclitic) and the enclitic particle τε. See 186 c. — 8. **πόλεις**: nom. plur. of πόλις. — **ἐτρέφετο**: *τρ-φω, s t y ort, maintain*. — 9. **Θετταλός**, ὁ, *a* **Thessalian**. See below Θετταλία, **Thessaly**. — 10. **πιεζόμενος**: here the passive participle. — **αἰτεῖ**, *asks* (*αἰτεω*). Such verbs take two accs., as here Κῦρον and μισθόν. — 11. **εἰς**, *for*. — **ξένους**: ξένος here in the sense of *foreign soldier, mercenary*. — 14. **ὄντας**: acc. plur. masc. of ὤν.

Note in the previous passages (I., II., III.) that each new sentence begins by the rule with a conjunction.

Review the directions for translating into Greek in 149.
Translate the following passage into Greek: —

251. Cyrus, the son of Darius and Parysatis, was satrap of Phrygia. When Darius died, Artaxerxes, Cyrus's brother, became king, and dishonoured Cyrus. But his mother loved him and rescued (him). When he had been sent back again to his province, he immediately collected an army, both Greek and barbarian. For he planned to become king instead of Artaxerxes. He collected his army in the following manner. He gave money to Clearchus and Aristippus and bade them to enlist soldiers with this. And they did so.

LESSON XXXIII.

Tense-Systems. — Principal Parts. — Vowel Verbs. — Deponents.

Review the indicative of λῡ́ω as given in 672–677.

252. The tense-stems (152) so far presented may be grouped in the following *Tense-Systems:* —

a. *Present* system, including the pres. and impf. tenses in all the voices. Tense-suffix -ᵒ/ₑ-, tense-stem λῡ́ᵒ/ₑ-. Thus λῡ́ω, ἔ-λῡ-ν, λῡ́-μαι, ἐ-λῡ́-μην.

b. *Future* system, including the fut. act. and mid. Tense-suffix **-σᵒ/ₑ-**, tense-stem **λῡσᵒ/ₑ-**. Thus **λῡ́σω, λῡ́σο-μαι.**

c. *First aorist* system, including the first aor. act. and mid. Tense-suffix **-σα-**, tense-stem **λῡσα-**. Thus **ἔ-λῡσα, ἐ-λῡσά-μην.**

d. *First perfect* system, including the first perf. and first plup. act. Tense-suffix -κα- (first plup. -κε-), tense-stem λελυκα- (first plup. **λελυκε-**). Thus **λέλυκα, ἐ-λελύκη** (166).

e. *Perfect middle* system, including the perf., plup., and fut. perf. mid. and pass. Tense-suffix none (in the fut. perf. -σᵒ/ₑ-), tense-stem λελυ- (fut. perf. λελῡσᵒ/ₑ-). Thus λέλυ-μαι, ἐ-λελύ-μην, λελύ-σο-μαι.

f. *First passive* system, including the first aor and first fut. pass. Tense-suffix -θε-, lengthened to -θη- in indic. (first fut. pass. -θησᵒ/ₑ-), tense-stem λυθε-, λυθη- (first fut. pass. λυθησᵒ/ₑ-). Thus ἐ-λύθη-ν, λυθήσο-μαι.

Observe that the tense-suffixes and reduplication *form* the tense-stems, the personal-endings and augment (found only in the secondary tenses of the *indicative*) *inflect* them.

253. The *Principal Parts* of a verb are the first person singular indicative of the first tense named in each of the six systems above, namely, present active, future active, aorist active, perfect active, perfect middle, aorist passive, as λύω, **λύσω, ἔλῡσα, λέλυκα, λέλυμαι, ἐλύθην.**

a. Not all verbs have all the principal parts: that is, some verbs are *defective*.

254. Verbs are called *Vowel Verbs*, *Mute Verbs*, *Liquid Verbs*, according as their themes end in a vowel, a mute, or a liquid.

a. In forming the different tense-stems, the theme of vowel verbs is sometimes modified.

b. Most themes ending in a short vowel lengthen this vowel in all the systems except the present, α to η, ε to η, ο to ω; but when α follows ε, ι, or ρ, it becomes ᾱ. Thus: —

τῑμάω,	τῑμήσω,	ἐτίμησα,	τετίμηκα,	τετίμημαι,	ἐτῑμήθην.
φιλέω,	φιλήσω,	ἐφίλησα,	πεφίληκα,[1]	πεφίλημαι,	ἐφιλήθην.
δηλόω,	δηλώσω,	ἐδήλωσα,	δεδήλωκα,	δεδήλωμαι,	ἐδηλώθην.
πειράω,	πειράσω,	ἐπείρᾱσα,	πεπείρᾱκα,	πεπείρᾱμαι,	ἐπειράθην.

Give the principal parts of the following vowel verbs, all of which are regular and complete: —

ἀδικέω, *wrong*; λοιδορέω, *abuse*; μισθόω (μισθόω), *let for hire, let*; νικάω, *conquer*; οἰκέω,[2] *inhabit*; ὁμολογέω, *agree*; ὁρμάω, *set in motion*; ποιέω, *do, make*.

255. Many verbs, called *Deponent Verbs*, are never used in the active voice, but only in the middle, or in the middle and passive.

---

[1] See 120.

[2] See p. 77[1].

a. In most deponent verbs the principal parts are the pres., fut., aor., and perf., of the indicative middle. These are called *middle* deponents. Thus : —

αἰτιάομαι, *blame, accuse,*	αἰτιάσομαι,	ᾐτιᾱσάμην,[1]	ᾐτίᾱμαι.
ἡγέομαι (ἄγω), *lead, conduct,*	ἡγήσομαι,	ἡγησάμην,	ἧγημαι.
χράομαι (χρῆμα), *use, employ,*	χρήσομαι.[2]	ἐχρησάμην,	κέχρημαι.

b. A few deponent verbs have the aor. pass. instead of the aor. mid. These are called *passive* deponents.

256. EXERCISES.

I. 1. τοῦ στρατεύματος[3] ἡγεῖτο εἰς τὸ πεδίον. 2. οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται ἔπαισαν καὶ ἐλοιδόρησαν τὸν ἄνθρωπον. 3. ἤδη ἐκκλησίᾱν ἐπεποιήκει τῶν στρατιωτῶν. 4. χρησόμεθα, ὦ ναῦται, τοῖς πλοίοις.[4] 5. Κῦρος γὰρ τοῦτον ἐτετῑμήκει δι' εὔνοιαν. 6. ἐμεμισθώμεθα[5] τὴν οἰκίᾱν. 7. οἶνον ἐκ τῆς τοῦ φοίνῑκος βαλάνου πεποιήκᾱσι. 8. ὡς Κῦρος ἐτελεύτησεν ἐν τῷ ἔμπροσθεν[6] λόγῳ δεδήλωται. 9. εἶτα δὲ ἐξῆγον[7] τὸν ἄρχοντα. 10. πόρεύεσθαι εἴᾱσε[8] τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς. 11. ὁ δὲ στρατηγὸς ἐπειράσατο τὰς κώμᾱς περιέχειν. 12. πολεμήσει σὺν τοῖς τῶν Μῑλησίων φυγάσι. 13. καὶ τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν[9] ὑπάγειν παρεκελεύετο. 14. Ξενοφῶν ἠσπάσατο τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς. 15. ᾐτιῶντο δὲ τὸν ἁρμοστήν. 16. ἠκολούθησαν δὲ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς[10] εἰς ἀγορὰν τῶν ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν ὡς[11] διᾱκόσιοι. 17. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι ἐπιωρκήκᾱσί τε[12] καὶ τὰς σπονδὰς

---

[1] See p. 77 [1].

[2] Against the rule (254 b), α is lengthened to η.

[3] The gen. is used with verbs of *ruling* and *leading*. But ἄγω is an exception.

[4] χράομαι takes the dat., as *ūtor* in Latin the ablative.

[5] Causative mid. (197 a), in the sense, *have let to oneself, hire.*

[6] *Cf.* 228, I. 3. So ὁ ἔμπροσθεν λόγος, *the previous book.*

[7] The accent in compound verbs cannot pass back beyond the augment or reduplication.

[8] A few verbs beginning with a vowel take the syllabic augment (76). With ε- this augment is contracted into ει-. See p. 16 [2].

[9] *those in front.* A substantive denoting *men* or *things* is often omitted after the article and an attributive. — The dat. here follows παρεκελεύετο as *indirect object.* See p. 25 [2].

[10] The dat. is used with words expressing *association* or *opposition.*

[11] With words of *number* and *measure*, ὡς signifies *about.*

[12] *Cf.* 247, I. 20, and see 186 b.

καὶ τοὺς ὅρκους λελύκᾶσιν. 18. τῷ σατράπῃ[1] οὐ τοῦ μισθοῦ ἕνεκα μόνον[2] ὑπηρετήσομεν ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς χάριτος.[3] 19. ἐτετίμησο γὰρ ὑπὸ Ἀρταξέρξου ἐπ' εὐνοιάν τε καὶ πιστότητα.

II. 1. He was loved by the barbarians. 2. They have been hired by the general.[4] 3. The army was besieged by the enemy. 4. Miletus was besieged both by land and by sea. 5. I made war against the Thracians. 6. Cyrus will besiege Miletus both by land and by sea. 7. Cyrus has honoured this (man) on account of his valour. 8. For the soldiers were not loved by the citizens. 9. He has been made satrap of this country by Darius. 10. But when Darius died, messengers were sent to Artaxerxes by Cyrus. 11. Since Clearchus has soldiers and boats, he will besiege the stronghold of the enemy.

257. VOCABULARY.

ἀκολουθέω, *follow, accompany.*
ἀσπάζομαι, *welcome, greet.*
βάλανος, ἡ, *acorn, date.*
διᾱ-κόσιοι,[6] **-αι, -α,** *200.*
ἐάω, *permit, allow.*
ἐκ-κλησία (καλέω), *a meeting, an assembly.*
ἔμ-προσθεν (ἐν, πρόσθεν), adv., *in front, before.*
ἐξ-άγω, *lead forth.*
ἐπι-ορκέω[7] (ὅρκος), *swear falsely, commit perjury, forswear* or *perjure oneself.*
Μῑλήσιος, -ᾱ, -ον (Μίλητος), **Milesian.**
παρα-κελεύομαι, *urge along, exhort.*
περι-έχω,[8] *surround, encompass.*
πιστότης, -ητος, ἡ (πιστός), *fidelity.*
πολεμέω (πόλεμος), *make* or *carry on war.*
τελευτάω, *end, finish, die.*
ὑπ-άγω, *lead on slowly,* intrans. *advance slowly;* mid. *suggest craftily.*
ὑπηρετέω, *serve.*
φοῖνιξ, -ῑκος,[9] **ὁ,** *the date-palm.*

[1] The dat. of the *indirect object* (see p. 25[2]) is used with many intransitive verbs, some of which in English take a direct object without *to.*

[2] Used adverbially. οὐ μόνον . . . ἀλλὰ καί, *not only . . . but also.*

[3] In the same construction with μισθοῦ.

[4] See 224.

[5] See 181, I. 15.

[6] See p. 43[4].

[7] The prep. does not suffer elision in any of the forms of ἐπιορκέω. See 127.

[8] In compound verbs whose first part is περί, the prep. always retains its final vowel. See 127.

[9] The ῑ of the stem φοινῑκ- is shortened in the N. and V. sing. *Cf.* κῆρυξ, p. 67[1].

LESSON XXXIV.

Adjectives of the Consonant-Declension.

258. The feminine of adjectives of the consonant-declension, when it differs from the masculine, follows the A-declension. Its nominative singular ends in *α* (short).

259. Stems in *-ντ-*. — In these the feminine has *-σα* with the preceding vowel lengthened. But stems in *-εντ-* have the feminine in *-εσσα*.[1] In accent it follows substantives (52). *Cf.* 146.

260. PARADIGMS.

	χαρίεις (χαριεντ-),[2] *pleasing*			πᾶς (παντ-),[3] *all*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
S. N.	χαρίεις	χαρίεσσα	χαρίεν	πᾶς	πᾶσα	πᾶν
G.	χαρίεντος	χαριέσσης	χαρίεντος	παντός	πάσης	παντός
D.	χαρίεντι	χαριέσσῃ	χαρίεντι	παντί	πάσῃ	παντί
A.	χαρίεντα	χαρίεσσαν	χαρίεν	πάντα	πᾶσαν	πᾶν
V.	χαρίεν	χαρίεσσα	χαρίεν	πᾶν	πᾶσα	πᾶν
D. N. A. V.	χαρίεντε	χαριέσσᾱ	χαρίεντε	πάντε	πάσᾱ	πάντε
G. D.	χαριέντοιν	χαριέσσαιν	χαριέντοιν	πάντοιν	πάσαιν	πάντοιν
P. N. V.	χαρίεντες	χαρίεσσαι	χαρίεντα	πάντες	πᾶσαι	πάντα
G.	χαριέντων	χαριεσσῶν	χαριέντων	πάντων	πᾶσῶν	πάντων
D.	χαρίεσι	χαριέσσαις	χαρίεσι	πᾶσι	πάσαις	πᾶσι
A.	χαρίεντας	χαριέσσᾱς	χαρίεντα	πάντας	πάσᾱς	πάντα

a. For the endings and formation of the cases in the masc. and neut., see 212, 213, 1, 2, f, 4, 5, 233. But note that *χαρίεσι* in the dat. plur. is formed on a shorter stem *χαριετ-* (231), and that the stem *παντ-*, although not barytone, forms the voc. *πᾶν* (213 f).

b. In the form *πᾶν* the vowel is long by exception; the compounds have it short, as *ἅπαν*, *σύμπαν*. The gen. and dat. sing. of *πᾶς* conform in accent to 216, but not the gen. and dat. dual and plur.

[1] Any further analysis of the feminine forms is here impracticable.

[2] *Cf.* *χάρις* (230), *grace, favour.*

[3] *Cf.* *πάνυ* (202), *wholly, altogether.*

261. There are two other important adjectives with stems in *-ντ-*, **ἑκών**, *willing*, and its compound **ἄκων**, **ἄκουσα**, **ἄκον**,[1] *unwilling*, declined in the masculine like **γέρων** (230), except that the vocative singular is like the nominative. Present active participles are declined in the same manner.

262. PARADIGMS.

	ἑκών (ἑκοντ-), *willing*			λῦων (λῡοντ-), *loosing*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
S. N. V.	ἑκών	ἑκοῦσα	ἑκόν	λῦων	λῦουσα	λῦον
G.	ἑκόντος	ἑκούσης	ἑκόντος	λῦοντος	λῡούσης	λυοντος
D.	ἑκόντι	ἑκούσῃ	ἑκόντι	λυοντι	λῡούσῃ	λύοντι
A.	ἑκόντα	ἑκοῦσαν	ἑκόν	λῦοντα	λῦουσαν	λῦον
D. N. A. V.	ἑκόντε	ἑκούσᾱ	ἑκόντε	λυοντε	λυούσᾱ	λύοντε
G. D.	ἑκόντοιν	ἑκούσαιν	ἑκόντοιν	λῡόντοιν	λῡούσαιν	λῡόντοιν
P. N. V.	ἑκόντες	ἑκοῦσαι	ἑκόντα	λυοντες	λυουσαι	λύοντα
G.	ἑκόντων	ἑκουσῶν	ἑκόντων	λῡόντων	λῡουσῶν	λῡόντων
D.	ἑκοῦσι	ἑκούσαις	ἑκοῦσι	λυουσι	λῡούσαις	λυουσι
A.	ἑκόντας	ἑκούσᾱς	ἑκόντα	λυοντας	λῡούσᾱς	λυοντα

263. EXERCISES.

I. 1. *πάντες οὗτοι οἱ σύμμαχοι ἀπεχώρουν.* 2. *οἱ λῃσταὶ διαρπάζουσιν ἅπαντα.* 3. *ἐν ταύτῳ δὲ τῷ τόπῳ ἦν ἡ γῆ πεδίον ἅπαν.*[2] 4. *ἀλλὰ ψιλὴ ἦν ἅπᾶσα ἡ χωρᾱ.* 5. *ἐνταῦθα ἦν παράδεισος πάνυ καλός, ἔχων πάντα ὅσα*[3] *ὡραι φύουσι.* 6. *πάντες γὰρ οἱ τούτων τῶν Περσῶν παῖδες ἐπὶ ταῖς Ἀρταξέρξου θύραις παιδεύονται.* 7. *πάντα δὲ ταῦτα σατραπεύουσιν οἱ τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ φίλοι.* 8. *τοῖς ἄλλοις πᾶσι παρακελεύεται ὁμολογεῖν.* 9. *αἱ σπονδαί εἰσι καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἅπᾶσι.* 10. *ὥστε χρήματα ἔπεμψεν εἰς τὴν τροφὴν πάντων τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἡ βασίλεια.* 11. *ταύτην τὴν χωρᾱν διήρ-*

[1] Compounded of *α-* (*ἀ-*) *without* (p. 514) and *ἑκών*. *Cf.* English (*a*)*-willing*, Latin, (*in*)*-vitus*.

[2] *I.e. wholly a plain.*

[3] *So many as, i.e. which*, acc. plur. neut. of the relative of quantity or number, ὅσος, -η, -ον. So ὅσοι, nom. plur. masc., in 15 below.

πασαν ὡς πολεμίᾱν οὖσαν.[1] 12. *οἱ σύμπαντες ὁπλῖται ἦσαν μύριοι καὶ χίλιοι.* 13. *τὸ μὲν ἐνθύμημα χαρίεν ἦν, τὸ δ' ἔργον ἀδύνατον.* 14. *διαρπάζοντες τὰ χωρία τῶν ἐν ταῖς οἰκίαις θησαυρῶν*[2] *οὐκ ἀπειχόμεθα.* 15. *στρατηγὸν δὲ Κῦρον ἐποίησε πάντων ὅσοι εἰς Καστωλοῦ πεδίον ἀθροίζονται.* 16. *καὶ εὐθὺς πᾶσιν ἐβόᾱ καὶ βαρβαρικῶς καὶ Ἑλληνικῶς ὅτι Ἀρταξέρξης εἰς μάχην παρασκευάζεται.* 17. *κινδῡνεύοντες καὶ ἄκοντες, ὅμως οἱ στρατιῶται δι' αἰσχύνην Κύρῳ συνηκολούθησαν.*

II. 1. The gifts of the satrap were pleasing. 2. All had bronze armour. 3. All these barbarians are hostile to Cyrus. 4. He will withdraw with[3] all his army. 5. Everything[4] has been done by the generals. 6. All the soldiers proceeded willingly.[5] 7. The entire army proceeded through the plain. 8. The soldiers all had shields. 9. All exhorted Xenophon[6] to do this. 10. Clearchus commanded the entire army to proceed. 11. The Cilician queen, being in peril, withdrew from[7] the country. 12. You put the man to death because he was plotting against[8] Cyrus.

264. VOCABULARY.

ἀ-δύνατος, -ον[9] (*δυνατός*), *impossible, unable, powerless.*
αἰσχύνη, *shame, disgrace.*
ἅ-πᾶς, -ᾶσα, -αν (*πᾶς*),[10] *all together, all.*
ἀπο-χωρέω,[11] *withdraw, retreat.*
ἐνθύμημα, -ατος, *thought, device, plan.*
ἔργον, WORK, *deed, execution.*
λῃστής, *plunderer, robber.*
ὅμως, conj., *nevertheless.*
σύμ-πᾶς, -ᾶσα, -αν (*σύν, πᾶς*),[12] *all together, all.*
συν-ακολουθέω, *follow with, accompany.*
φύω, *produce.*
ψῑλός, -ή, -όν, *bare.*
ὥρᾱ, *period, time, season.*

---

[1] *ὤν, οὖσα, ὄν,* pres. part. of *εἰμί.*
[2] *Cf.* 201, I. 3.
[3] *I.e. having.*
[4] Use the plur.
[5] In Greek, *willing,* the adj., not the adv.
[6] *Cf.* 256, I. 13, and I. 8 above.
[7] *ἐξ.*
[8] In Greek, *as plotting against. Cf.* I. 11 above.
[9] See 147.
[10] Strengthened by the prefix *ἀ-*. *Cf. σύμ-πᾶς.*
[11] *χωρέω* (*cf. χώρᾱ, χωρίον*), *give place, withdraw.*
[12] See p. 45[9].

LESSON XXXV.

Subjunctive Active.

265. The distinctions of *time* which mark the various tenses in the indicative disappear in the subjunctive and imperative and generally in the optative and infinitive.

266. When these distinctions disappear, the tenses differ only in denoting the *continuance*, the *completion*, or simply the *occurrence* of an action. The present tense denotes an action as *continued* or *repeated*, the perfect as *completed*, the aorist as simply *brought to pass*.

267. Only these three tenses occur in the subjunctive, and the perfect is rare. The *time* of the present and aorist is precisely the same, and is generally future. But the present expresses the action as *going on* or *repeated* in the future, while the aorist expresses simply its *occurrence*. Thus ἐὰν κωλύῃ means, *if he shall be hindering* or *if he shall hinder* (habitually), but ἐὰν κωλύσῃ means simply, *if he shall hinder*. See further the examples in 270, 272.

268. PARADIGMS.

	Present.	First Aorist.	First Perfect.
S. 1	λύω	λύσω	λελύκω
2	λύῃς	λύσῃς	λελύκῃς
3	λύῃ	λύσῃ	λελύκῃ
D. 2	λύη-τον	λύσῃ-τον	λελύκῃ-τον
3	λύη τον	λύσῃ-τον	λελύκῃ-τον
P. 1	λύω-μεν	λύσω-μεν	λελύκω-μεν
2	λύη-τε	λύσῃ-τε	λελύκῃ-τε
3	λύωσι	λύσωσι	λελύκωσι

a. The subjv. has the long variable vowel -ω/η-, even in the aor. and perf., in place of the final vowel (-ο/ε-, -α-, -α-) of the tense-suffix. The form is -ω- before μ or ν in the endings, elsewhere -η-.

b. The subjv. uses the endings of the primary tenses (156). For the forms λύω, λύῃς, λύῃ, λύωσι (for λῡω-μι, λῡη-σι, λῡη-τι, λῡω-νσι), and the corresponding forms in the aor. and perf., see 158 a.

269. Future Indicative and Present Subjunctive of εἰμί.

	Future Indicative.			Present Subjunctive.		
1	ἔσο-μαι		ἐσό-μεθα	ὦ		ὦ-μεν
2	ἔσει	ἔσε-σθον	ἔσ-εσθε	ᾖς	ἦ-τον	ἦ-τε
3	ἔσ-ται	ἔσε-σθον	ἔσο-νται	ᾖ	ἦ-τον	ὦσι

a. The fut. has the mid. form. *Cf.* the paradigm in 200. In ἔσται (for ἔσε-ται) the variable vowel is dropped. ὦ is for ἔω from εσ-ω (184), *etc.*

270. First Person of Subjunctive as Imperative.

Examine the following: —

γνώμῃ ἀεὶ κολάζωμεν, *let us always inflict punishment with judgment.*

τὰ Λύκαια θύσωμεν, *let us offer the Lycaean sacrifices.*

μὴ λύσωμεν τὴν γέφῡραν, *let us not destroy the bridge.*

a. Observe that these sentences all express exhortation; that the verb is in the first pers. plur. of the subjv.; and that, if the exhortation is neg., μή, *not*, is used. Hence: —

271. Rule of Syntax. — The first person of the subjunctive (generally plural) is used in exhortations. Its negative is μή.

272. Subjunctive in Protasis.

In conditional sentences the clause containing the condition is called the *protasis*, and that containing the conclusion is called the *apodosis*.

Examine the following: —

ἢν παρέχωμεν ἀγοράν, ἕξετε τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, *if we provide a market, you will have supplies.*

ἐὰν μὴ ταῦτα ποιήσῃ, ἀποχωρήσομεν, *if he does not do this, we shall withdraw.*

ἐὰν νῑκήσωμεν, τὴν χώρᾱν οὐ διαρπάσει, *if we conquer, he will not plunder the country.*

a. Observe that these sentences state a supposed future case *vividly*: that the protasis is expressed by the particle ἐάν,[1] *if*, with the subjv., and the apodosis by the fut. indic.: and that when the protasis is negative it takes μή, but when the apodosis is negative it takes οὐ. Hence: —

273. Rule of Syntax. — When a supposed future case is stated distinctly and vividly (as *if I shall go* or *if I go* in English), the protasis generally takes the subjunctive with ἐάν, the apodosis the future indicative (or some other form expressing future time). The negative adverb of the protasis is regularly μή, that of the apodosis is οὐ.

For the force of the tenses of the subjunctive in the examples above, see 267.

274. EXERCISES.

I. 1. ἐξορμήσωμεν καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρετήν. 2. ἐὰν μὴ ταῦτα ἀσκήσῃ, ἀδικήσει. 3. τοῦτον οὐ τῑμήσομεν, ἐὰν ταῦτα πεποιήκῃ.[2] 4. ἢν δέ τις[3] ἡμᾶς[4] τῆς ὁδοῦ[5] ἀποκωλύῃ, διαπολεμησομεν τουτῳ.[6] 5. ἢν δ' ἡμεῖς νῑκήσωμεν, οἱ ἡμέτεροι φίλοι ἐν τῑμῇ ἐσονται. 6. ἢν οὕτω προσαγωμεν, περιττεύσουσιν ἡμῶν[7] οἱ πολέμιοι. 7. παρῶμεν οὖν ὥσπερ Κῦρος κελεύει. 8. ἐὰν τούτους τοὺς παῖδας καλῶς παιδεύσῃς, τῑμήσουσιν. 9. μὴ τοῦτο ποιήσωμεν. 10. ἐὰν φίλον ποιήσῃς[8] τοῦτον, ὠφελήσει. 11. ἀνδρείως πολεμήσομεν, ἢν τὰ ὅπλα ἔχωμεν. 12. ἢν Ἀβρονόμας ᾖ ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ, πειράσομαι αὐτὸν κατέχειν. 13. ἢν δὲ ἀπῇ, ἐκεῖ

[1] ἐάν by contraction becomes ἤν or ἄν, and often appears in these forms. κἄν results from crasis (p. 55[4]) of καὶ ἄν, *and if* or *even if*.

[2] *shall have done, i.e. shall prove to have done.*

[3] *anybody*, nom. sing. masc. of the indefinite pron. τις, τι, an enclitic.

[4] The declension of the personal pron. ἐγώ, *I*, in the sing. and plur. is as follows: N. ἐγώ, G. ἐμοῦ or μοῦ, D. ἐμοί or μοί, A. ἐμέ or μέ; N. ἡμεῖς, *we*, G. ἡμῶν, D. ἡμῖν, A. ἡμᾶς. The monosyllabic forms are enclitic. With ἐμοῦ, *etc.*, *cf.* ἐμός, *my*, with ἡμεῖς, *etc.*, *cf.* ἡμέτερος, *our*.

[5] *Cf.* 263, I. 14. [6] See p. 83[10].

[7] Verbs of *superiority* and *inferiority* take the gen.

[8] Verbs signifying to *name*, *call*, *appoint*, *make*, may take a predicate acc. (here φίλον) besides the object acc.

πρὸς[1] ταῦτα βουλευσόμεθα. 14. οὐδ' ἂν γέφῡραι ὦσι, ταῦτα σωσόμεθα. 15. ἐὰν ἡμῖν φίλος ᾖ ὁ Κῦρος, τῑμῆς[2] ἄξιον φίλον ἕξομεν. 16. ἢν τὸ ἐνθύμημα ᾖ παραπλήσιον, ταῦτα ποιήσομεν. 17. ἢν δὲ μὴ Χειρίσοφος πλοῖα ἄγῃ ἱκανά, τοῖς ἐνθάδε[3] χρησόμεθα. 18. φίλος μοί ἐστιν, ὦ στρατιῶται, ὁ βάρβαρος· ἢν οὖν πέμψητέ με, πλοῖα ἕξετε.

II. 1. Let us, Cyrus, honour[4] our guest. 2. If he does not collect an army, his brother will be king. 3. The messenger shall have ten talents, if he does[4] this. 4. Let us besiege[4] the emporium both by land and by sea. 5. If you are brave, you will be honoured by Cyrus. 6. If he does[4] this, he will be punished. 7. Let us immediately convoke[4] a meeting of the soldiers. 8. What[5] will the soldiers have, if they conquer[4]? 9. And let us send with Xenophon[6] the peltasts from the van.[7] 10. If he does not send the money, I will borrow (it). 11. The soldiers will not approach, unless[8] the general ends their suspicions.

275. VOCABULARY.

ἀεί, adv., *always*, EVER.
ἀνδρείως (*ἀνδρεῖος*), adv., *bravely, courageously.*
ἄπ-ειμι (*εἰμί*), *be away* or *absent.*
ἀπο-κωλύω, *hinder* or *prevent from.*
ἀσκέω, *practise, observe.*
δια-πολεμέω, *carry the war through, fight it out.*
ἐκεῖ (*cf. ἐκεῖνος*), adv., *there.*
ἐνθάδε (*ἔνθα*), adv., *there, here.*
ἐξ-ορμάω, *urge out, incite, arouse.*
καλῶς (*καλός*), adv., *beautifully, honourably, well.*
Λύκαιος, -ᾱ, -ον, Lycaean.
οὐδέ (*οὐ, δέ*), as conj., *and not, nor*; as adv., *not even.*
παρα-πλήσιος, -ᾱ, -ον, or **-ος, -ον** (*πλησίον*), *near by, similar, like.*
πάρ-ειμι (*εἰμί*), *be near* or *present.*
περιττεύω (*περί*), *be over and above, reach beyond, out-flank.*
προσ-άγω, *lead to* or *against*, intrans. *advance.*
ὥσ-περ,[9] conjunctive adv., *just as.*
ὠφελέω, *be of service to, help, benefit, assist.*

---

[1] *in respect to.*
[2] The gen. is used with adjs. and advs. of *value.*
[3] *Sc.* πλοίοις. *Cf.* 256, I. 4, and 228, I. 3.
[4] Use the aor.
[5] *Cf.* 181, I. 4.
[6] See p. 31 [3].
[7] *στόμα.*
[8] *I.e. if not.*
[9] *ὡς* strengthened by the intensive particle *πέρ*, which is enclitic. For the accent, see 186 c.

LESSON XXXVI.

Subjunctive Middle and Passive.

276. PARADIGMS.

	Present M. and P.	First Aorist Middle.	Perfect M. and P.		First Aorist Passive.
S. 1	λύω-μαι	λύσω-μαι	λελυ-μένος (-η, -ον)	ὦ	λυθῶ
2	λύῃ	λύσῃ	"	ᾖς	λυθῇς
3	λύῃ-ται	λύσῃ-ται	"	ᾖ	λυθῇ
D. 2	λύη-σθον	λύσῃ-σθον	λελυ-μένω (-ᾱ, -ω)	ἦτον	λυθῆ-τον
3	λύη-σθον	λυσῃ-σθον	"	ἦτον	λυθῆ-τον
P. 1	λῡώ-μεθα	λῡσώ-μεθα	λελυ-μένοι (-αι, -α	ὦμεν	λυθῶ-μεν
2	λύῃ-σθε	λύσῃ-σθε	"	ἦτε	λυθῆ-τε
3	λύω-νται	λύσω-νται	"	ὦσι	λυθῶσι

a. The aor. has distinct forms for the middle and passive (225).

b. The long variable vowel is used also in the passive (268 a). But in the aor. pass. this is *added* to the tense-stem (252 f), as λυθέ-ω, λυθῶ (by contraction).

c. The subjv. uses the endings of the primary tenses (199), but in the aor. pass. the *active* endings occur (156).

d. The form λύῃ is for λύῃ-σαι. The σ is dropped and the remaining final syllables are contracted (241 i, f). So λύσῃ arises from λῡσῃ-σαι.

e. The perf. is a compound form, consisting of the perf. mid. and pass. participle and the subjv. of εἰμί. The participle is declined like an adjective of the vowel-declension (144).

f. For the forms λυθῶ, λυθῇς, λυθῇ, λυθῶσι, see 268 b. For contraction in the forms of the aor. pass. (from λυθέω, λυθέῃς, λυθέῃ, *etc.*), see 241 d, g, b.

277. Subjunctive in Clauses which denote Purpose.

Examine the following: —

ζητοῦμεν τοὺς ἄρχοντας, ἵνα ἡμῖν συμβουλεύσωσι, we are seeking the commanders, that they may give us their counsel.

τὴν γέφῡραν λύσομεν, ἵνα μὴ οἱ πολέμιοι πλησιάσωσι, *we will destroy the bridge, that the enemy may not approach.*

τοῦτον ἄγομεν δεῦρο, μὴ κακῶς ἡμᾶς ποιήσῃ, *we are bringing him here, that he may not do us harm.*

a. Observe that the clause which denotes the purpose takes the subjv.; that the particle which introduces it is ἵνα, *that, in order that;* that the verb which precedes is in a primary tense (61); that the neg. of the clause of purpose is μή, *not*, and follows the particle ἵνα; but that sometimes in a neg. clause of purpose μή alone is used in the sense, *that not, in order that not.*

Two other particles, ὡς and ὅπως, will occur in the following exercises, used in the same way and in the same sense as ἵνα. Hence: —

278. Rule of Syntax. — Clauses which denote purpose are introduced by ἵνα, ὡς, ὅπως, *that, in order that*, and ἵνα μή, ὡς μή, ὅπως μή, μή, *that not, in order that not*, and take the subjunctive if the leading verb is in a primary tense.

279. Subjunctive in Object Clauses after Verbs of Fearing.

Examine the following: —

δέδοικα[1] μὴ τὰς γεφύρᾱς λύωσι, *I fear that they will destroy the bridges.*

δεδοίκαμεν μὴ οὐ πιστοὶ ἦτε, *we fear that you will not be faithful.*

a. Observe that the clause which expresses the thing feared is the *object* of the leading verb; that this object clause takes the subjv.; that the particle which introduces it is μή, *that, lest;* that the verb which denotes fear is in a primary tense; that the neg. of the object clause is οὐ.

In the following exercises an equivalent phrase will sometimes occur in place of the verb which denotes fear. Hence: —

280. Rule of Syntax. — After a verb or phrase which denotes *fear*, the object of the fear is expressed by μή, *that, lest*, or μὴ οὐ, *that not*, with the subjunctive, if the leading verb is in a primary tense.

For the force of the tenses of the subjunctives in the examples in 277 and 279, see 267.

[1] A perf. with the force of the pres., inflected like λέλυκα.

281. EXERCISES.

I. 1. *καὶ δέδοικα μὴ τὴν χώρᾱν κακόν τι*[1] *ἐργάσωνται*[2] *οἱ πολέμιοι.* 2. *τοῦτον δὲ στρατηγὸν ποιήσομεν,*[3] *ὡς εἰς τὴν Ἀσίᾱν σωθῶμεν.* 3. *ἀναπαυσώμεθα, ὦ φίλοι, τούτου τοῦ πολέμου.*[4] 4. *ἢν δὲ τὴν εἰρήνην ποιησώμεθα, ἀσφαλῶς τὴν χώρᾱν οἰκήσομεν.* 5. *σχολῇ*[5] *πορεύονται, ἵνα μὴ ἡ φάλαγξ διασπασθῇ.* 6. *συνδείπνους μὴ ποιησώμεθα τοὺς ἄρχοντας τῶν κωμῶν.* 7. *βοῶσι πάντες, ἵνα οἱ πολέμιοι ἐξαπατηθῶσι.* 8. *ἢν δὲ ἡ γέφῡρα λελυμένη ᾖ, οἱ πολέμιοι ἀποχωρήσουσι.* 9. *φοβεῖται μὴ τὸ στράτευμα ἐπὶ τὴν ἐμὴν ἀρχὴν στρατεύηται.* 10. *πορευώμεθα, ἵνα ἀποσπασθῶμεν τοῦ βασιλικοῦ στρατεύματος.* 11. *φόβος τοὺς πολίτᾱς ἔχει μὴ αἱ συνθῆκαι ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων λυθῶσιν.* 12. *ἦν δὲ δὴ καὶ σωθῶμεν ἐπὶ θάλατταν, πῶς πλοῖα ἕξομεν;* 13. *τοῦτον, ὦ στρατιῶται, παίσωμεν καὶ βιασώμεθα πορεύεσθαι.* 14. *ἐάν τις πιέζηται, ὁ πλησίον*[6] *βοηθήσει.* 15. *ἐγὼ γὰρ δέδοικα μὴ οὐ τοῦ πολέμου πεπαυμένοι ὦσιν.* 16. *ἡ δὲ χώρᾱ πολεμίᾱ ἐστίν· ἐπικίνδῡνον οὖν ἔσται, ἢν ἀμελῶς τε καὶ ἀφυλάκτως πορεύησθε ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.*

II. 1. I fear that the satrap will be sent. 2. Let us there deliberate about[7] this. 3. They are proceeding quickly, that they may not be separated[8] from the other soldiers. 4. I do not fear that this (man) will be made satrap.[5] 5. Let us deliberate about[9] the safety of the soldiers. 6. He will send a messenger, if he arrives safely in Asia. 7. I fear that the bridges will be destroyed. 8. Let us halt, soldiers, and deliberate. 9. For the exiles will not follow with us, if we proceed to Miletus. 10. We will destroy the bridge, that the enemy may not send for the peltasts.

---

[1] Acc. sing. neut. of the indefinite pron. *τις, τι, some, any*, an enclitic.

[2] Verbs signifying to *do anything to* a person or thing may take two accusatives.

[3] *Cf.* 274, I. 10.

[4] *Cf.* 201, I. 3.

[5] *Cf.* 228, I. 14.

[6] *Cf.* 256, I. 13.

[7] *Cf.* 274, I. 13.

[8] Use the aor.

[9] *περί* with gen.

282. VOCABULARY.

ἀμελῶς, adv., *carelessly, incautiously.*
ἀπο-σπάω,[1] *draw off, separate.*
ἀρχή (*cf.* ἄρχων), *government, province.*
ἀσφαλῶς, adv., *safely, securely.*
ἀ-φυλάκτως (φύλαξ), adv., *unguardedly.*
βασιλικός, -ή, -όν (βασιλεύω), *royal, the king's.*
βιάζομαι, *force, compel.*
βοηθέω (βοήθεια), *give assistance, bring aid, help, assist.*
δεῦρο, adv., *here, hither.*
δια-σπάω,[1] *draw apart, scatter.*
εἰρήνη, *peace.*
ἐξ-απατάω,[2] *deceive grossly, mislead.*
ἐπι-κίνδῡνος, -ον (κίνδῡνος), *dangerous, perilous.*
ἐργάζομαι (ἔργον), WORK, *do.*
ζητέω, *seek.*
σύνδειπνος, ὁ, *table-companion.*
συνθήκη, *compact, agreement.*
φοβέω (φόβος), *frighten; φοβέομαι* as pass. dep.,[3] *be frightened, be terrified, fear.*

LESSON XXXVII.

Contract Verbs in the Subjunctive.

Review 241–243 entire.

283. PARADIGMS.

	PRESENT ACTIVE.	PRESENT MIDDLE and PASSIVE.
S. 1	τῑμ(άω)ῶ	τῑμ(άω)ῶ-μαι
2	τῑμ(άῃς)ᾷς	τῑμ(άῃ)ᾷ
3	τῑμ(άῃ)ᾷ	τῑμ(άη)ᾶ-ται
D. 2	τῑμ(άη)ᾶ-τον	τῑμ(άη)ᾶ-σθον
3	τῑμ(άη)ᾶ-τον	τῑμ(άη)ᾶ-σθον
P. 1	τῑμ(άω)ῶ-μεν	τῑμ(αώ)ώ-μεθα
2	τῑμ(άη)ᾶ-τε	τῑμ(άη)ᾶ-σθε
3	τῑμ(άω)ῶσι	τῑμ(άω)ῶ-νται

[1] *σπάω, σπάσω*, aor. pass. *ἐσπάσθην*, *draw.* The short vowel of the theme is retained by exception (see 254 b), and *σ* is added to the theme in the aor. pass.

[2] *ἀπατάω, deceive*, related to *ἀπάτη*, *deceit.*

[3] The first aor., therefore, is *ἐφοβήθην.* See 255 b.

S. 1	φιλ(έω)ῶ	φιλ(έω)ῶ-μαι
2	φιλ(έῃς)ῇς	φιλ(έῃ)ῇ
3	φιλ(έῃ)ῇ	φιλ(έῃ)ῆ-ται
D. 2	φιλ(έῃ)ῆ-τον	φιλ(έῃ)ῆ-σθον
3	φιλ(έῃ)ῆ-τον	φιλ(εῃ)ῆ-σθον
P. 1	φιλ(έω)ῶ-μεν	φιλ(εώ)ώ-μεθα
2	φιλ(έῃ)ῆ-τε	φιλ(έῃ)ῆ-σθε
3	φιλ(έω)ῶσι	φιλ(έω)ῶ-νται

S. 1	δηλ(όω)ῶ	δηλ(όω)ῶ-μαι
2	δηλ(όῃς)οῖς	δηλ(όῃ)οῖ
3	δηλ(όῃ)οῖ	δηλ(όῃ)ῶ-ται
D. 2	δηλ(όῃ)ῶ-τον	δηλ(όῃ)ῶ-σθον
3	δηλ(όῃ)ῶ-τον	δηλ(όῃ)ῶ-σθον
P. 1	δηλ(όω)ῶ-μεν	δηλ(οώ)ώ-μεθα
2	δηλ(όῃ)ῶ-τε	δηλ(όῃ)ῶ-σθε
3	δηλ(όω)ῶσι	δηλ(όω)ῶ-νται

See 245 a.

284. EXERCISES.

1. 1. *κραυγὴν ποιῶμεν.* 2. *πειρώμεθα συνεργοὶ τοῖς φίλοις εἶναι.* 3. *ἐὰν δὲ τοὺς στρατιώτας ἀδικῇ, οὐ πορευσόμεθα.* 4. *ἐὰν δὲ τούτους νῑκῶμεν, πάντα ἡμῖν πεποίηται.* 5. *τὰς ἁμάξᾱς λύσωμεν, ἵνα μὴ τὰ ὑποζύγια ἡμῶν*[1] *στρατηγῇ.* 6. *δεδοίκᾱσι μὴ τοὺς Κύρου φίλους κακῶς ποιεῖν*[2] *πειρᾶσθε.* 7. *ἢν δὲ νῑκῶμεν, οἱ πολέμιοι ἔσονται σκευοφόροι ἡμέτεροι.* 8. *ἀλλὰ ἤδη δηῶμεν τὴν τῶν βαρβάρων γῆν.* 9. *ἐὰν δὲ ἡττώμεθα, τίς*[3] *ἡμῶν σωθήσεται;* 10. *κοινῇ δὴ ἐρωτῶμεν τὸν κωμάρχην τίς ἐστιν ἡ χώρᾱ.* 11. *τοῦτον δέ, ἢν σωφρονῆτε, τὴν νύκτα*[4] *δήσετε.* 12. *φοβεῖται μὴ πειρῶνται οἱ πολῖται κατάγειν τοὺς φυγάδας.* 13. *εὐθὺς πορευώμεθα, ὡς μὴ τοῦτο ἐννοῶνται οἱ στρατιῶται.* 14. *ἐὰν ἡ φάλαγξ διασπᾶται, τοῦτο εὐθὺς ἀθῡμίᾱν ποιήσει.* 15. *ἐὰν οὖν*

[1] *Cf.* 256, I. 1.
[2] *Cf.* 247, I. 11.
[3] *who?* See p. 50[1].
[4] *Cf.* 239, II. 9.

νῑκῶσιν οἱ πολέμιοι, πῶς λῦσομεν τὴν γέφῡραν ; 16. ἡδέως πονῶμεν καὶ θαρραλέως κτώμεθα. 17. ἢν τοὺς ἄλλους στρατιώτᾱς παρακαλῆτε, πειράσονται πάντες ἀγαθοὶ εἶναι. 18. ἐὰν νῦν ὀλίγον[1] πονῶμεν, ἀμαχεὶ τὴν λοιπὴν ὁδὸν πορευσόμεθα. 19. ἢν δὲ Κῦρος ἐᾷ τὸν Κλέαρχον τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς ἔχειν, οὐ στρατεύσουσιν οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοί. 20. τοὺς μὲν φίλους ἐλευθερῶμεν, τοὺς δ' ἐχθροὺς χειρώμεθα.

II. 1. Let us free the servants. 2. We shall be honoured, if we conquer. 3. Soldiers, let us follow with[2] Xenophon. 4. With the help of[3] the gods, let us conquer the enemy. 5. You will have supplies, if you conquer. 6. Let us set forth, soldiers, against the enemy courageously. 7. I fear that the soldiers will wrong these citizens. 8. I am frightened lest he may try to do this. 9. Let us, then, make the levy in the following manner. 10. You are fearful[4] that the exiles will not accompany[5] us, if we proceed to Asia. 11. Let us call out to the general[6] to lead the targeteers against the stronghold. 12. If we free these men, I fear that the commander of the Medes will not withdraw.

285. VOCABULARY.

ἀθῡμίᾱ, *despondency, dejection.*
ἀ-μαχεί (μάχη), adv., *without fighting.*
δέω, *bind, fasten, tie.*
δῃόω, *lay waste, ravage.*
ἐλευθερόω (ἐλεύθερος), *free, liberate.*
ἐν-νοέομαι (νόος), pass. dep., *have in mind, consider, be apprehensive.*
ἡττάομαι, pass. dep., *be inferior, be defeated.*
θαρραλέως, adv., *courageously, boldly.*
κατ-άγω, *lead down* or *back, restore.*
κοινῇ, adv., *in common, jointly.*
κραυγή, *outcry, clamour.*
κτάομαι (*cf.* κτῆμα), *acquire, gain.*
λοιπός, -ή, -όν, *remaining, the rest of.*
παρα-καλέω, *call forth, call to, urge.*
πονέω, *toil, labour.*
σκευο-φόρος, ὁ (σκευή, φέρω, *carry*), *baggage-carrier.*
στρατηγέω (στρατηγός), *be general, command, lead.*
συν-εργός, ὁ (ἔργον), *helper, assistant.*
σωφρονέω, *be prudent, be wise.*
χειρόω, *handle, subdue.*

[1] *Cf.* the use of ὕστερον, 247, I. 16.
[2] Use σύν.
[3] *with the help of*, σύν.
[4] Use φοβερός.
[5] *Cf.* 263, I. 17.
[6] *Cf.* 247, I. 19.

LESSON XXXVIII.

Liquid Stems of the Consonant-Declension.

For the liquids, see 113.

286. PARADIGMS.

	ὁ λιμήν (λιμεν-) *harbour*	ὁ μήν (μην-) MONTH	ὁ ἀγών[1] (αγων-) *contest*	ὁ δαίμων (δαιμον-) *divinity*	ὁ ῥήτωρ (ῥητορ-) *orator*
S. N.	λιμήν	μήν	ἀγών	δαίμων	ῥήτωρ
G.	λιμέν-ος	μην-ός	ἀγῶν-ος	δαίμον-ος	ῥήτορ-ος
D.	λιμέν-ι	μην-ί	ἀγῶν-ι	δαίμον-ι	ῥήτορ-ι
A.	λιμέν-α	μῆν-α	ἀγῶν-α	δαίμον-α	ῥήτορ-α
V.	λιμήν	μήν	ἀγών	δαῖμον	ῥῆτορ
D. N. A. V.	λιμέν-ε	μῆν-ε	ἀγῶν-ε	δαίμον-ε	ῥήτορ-ε
G. D.	λιμέν οιν	μην οῖν	αγών-οιν	δαιμόν-οιν	ῥητόρ-οιν
P. N. V.	λιμέν-ες	μῆν-ες	ἀγῶν-ες	δαίμον-ες	ῥήτορ-ες
G.	λιμέν-ων	μην-ῶν	ἀγών-ων	δαιμόν-ων	ῥητόρ-ων
D.	λιμέσι	μησί	ἀγῶσι	δαίμοσι	ῥήτορ-σι
A.	λιμέν-ας	μῆν-ας	ἀγῶν-ας	δαίμον-ας	ῥήτορ-ας

a. Observe the application of the principles stated in 213 a. 2, 3, c, 4, and 216.

Apply the following law of euphony in forming the dat. plur.: —

287. N before Σ. — ν before σ is dropped, and the preceding vowel is lengthened (see 233). But before σι of the dative plural the vowel remains unchanged.

288. Like the above are declined Ἕλλη, Ἕλλη-ος (*cf.* Ἑλληνικός), *a Greek*: ἡγεμών, ἡγεμόν-ος (ἡγέομαι), *leader*: κρᾱτήρ, κρᾱτῆρ-ος, *mixing-bowl*.

[1] Related to ἀγω, in the sense of *a bringing together*, especially to witness a contest, and so *a contest, games*.

For the gender of these words, see 292.

289. Syncopated Stems in -ερ-. — Four substantives with stems in *-ερ-*, *πατήρ, μήτηρ, θυγάτηρ, γαστήρ,* drop ε of the stem in the genitive and dative singular and accent the ultima. In the other cases they retain ε and accent it, except in the vocative singular, where they all have recessive accent. The vocative singular of all of these substantives is the mere stem. In the dative plural *-ερ-* is changed to *-ρα-*.

290. A fifth substantive, *ἀνήρ* (*cf.* *ἀνδρεῖος*), follows the analogy of *πατήρ,* but syncopates *all* of the cases in which *-ερ-* comes before a vowel and inserts δ between *ν* and *ρ*. In these cases the accent is thrown back on the previous syllable, except in the genitive and dative singular and dual and in the genitive plural, which accent the ultima.

291. PARADIGMS.

	ὁ πατήρ (*πατερ-*) FATHER	*ἡ μήτηρ* (*μητερ-*) MOTHER	*ἡ θυγάτηρ* (*θυγατερ-*) DAUGHTER	*ὁ ἀνήρ* (*ανερ-*) *man*
S. N.	πατήρ	μήτηρ	θυγάτηρ	ἀνήρ
G.	πατρ-ός	μητρ-ός	θυγατρ-ός	ἀνδρ-ός
D.	πατρ-ί	μητρ-ί	θυγατρ-ί	ἀνδρ-ί
A.	πατέρ-α	μητέρ-α	θυγατέρ-α	ἄνδρ-α
V.	πάτερ	μῆτερ	θύγατερ	ἄνερ
D. N. A. V.	πατέρ-ε	μητέρ-ε	θυγατέρ-ε	ἄνδρ-ε
G. D.	πατέρ-οιν	μητέρ-οιν	θυγατέρ-οιν	ἀνδρ-οῖν
P. N. V.	πατέρ-ες	μητέρ-ες	θυγατέρ ες	ἄνδρ-ες
G.	πατέρ-ων	μητέρ-ων	θυγατέρ-ων	ἀνδρ-ῶν
D.	πατρά-σι	μητρά-σι	θυγατρά-σι	ἀνδρά-σι
A.	πατέρ-ας	μητέρ-ας	θυγατέρ-ας	ἄνδρ-ας

292. Gender. — (a) Masculine are most substantives whose stems end in *-ν-*. (b) Masculine are most of those whose stems end in *-ρ-*, except *ἡ γαστήρ, belly,* and *ἡ μήτηρ, ἡ θυγάτηρ,* for which see 84.

293. EXERCISES.

I. 1. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ ἄνευ ἡγεμόνος ἐπορεύοντο. 2. ἐθεώρει δὲ τὸν ἀγῶνα καὶ Κῦρος. 3. ὁ ἀνὴρ οὗτος καινοῖς δαίμοσιν ἔθυεν. 4. Ἀβροκόμᾱς ἐχθρὸς ἀνὴρ ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ ἐστι. 5. συμβουλεύω ἐγὼ τὸν ἄνδρα τοῦτον ἐκποδὼν ποιεῖσθαι. 6. τῶν δὲ Ἑλλήνων ἔχει ὁπλίτᾱς τριᾱκοσίους. 7. καὶ ἀριθμὸν τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐποίησεν ἐν τῷ παραδείσῳ. 8. ἦγε δὲ καὶ τὴν Ἀρταξέρξου θυγατέρα ἐπὶ[1] γάμῳ. 9. καὶ αἰτεῖ[2] Κῦρον ἓξ μηνῶν μισθόν. 10. ἀλλὰ καὶ πατέρα ἐμὲ ἐκαλεῖτε.[3] 11. ἐποίησαν δὲ καὶ ἀγῶνα γυμνικὸν ἐν τούτῳ τῷ τόπῳ. 12. ἐν δὲ τῇ βουλῇ εἶχον ῥήτορας ἐπιτηδείους οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι. 13. ἦσαν δὲ καὶ πῦροὶ καὶ κρῖθαὶ καὶ οἶνος κρίθινος ἐν κρᾱτῆρσιν. 14. ἔσεσθε ἄνδρες ἄξιοι ἐλευθερίᾱς.[4] 15. ὧν[5] μάλιστα ἄνθρωποι ἐπιθῡμοῦσιν, ὁ δαίμων ἡμῖν ταῦτα παρεσκεύακεν. 16. τοῦ δὲ στρατεύματος ἦσαν ἄρχοντες καὶ στρατηγοὶ καὶ ἡγεμόνες τέτταρες. 17. ταύτην οὖν τὴν ἡμέρᾱν ηὐλίζοντο[6] πρὸς τῷ λιμένι. 18. καὶ τότε μὲν περὶ τῆς Κύρου βασιλεί̈ᾱς ἄνδρες ἦτε ἀγαθοί· νῦν δὲ περὶ τῆς ὑμετέρᾱς σωτηριᾱς ὁ ἀγών ἐστιν.

II. 1. I have two men. 2. He asks Cyrus for a leader. 3. His father summoned Cyrus. 4. They send men with Clearchus. 5. Cyrus was made satrap of Phrygia by his father. 6. Cyrus sent six months' pay to the general. 7. You were calling Xenophon father. 8. And Cyrus summoned the generals of the Greeks. 9. Each man shall have five minas of silver. 10. His mother sends Cyrus back again to his province. 11. He carried on war with the Thracians[7] and was of service to[8] the Greeks. 12. Thence they proceeded to the villages of Parysatis, the mother of Cyrus.

---

[1] *upon terms of*, i.e. *in*.

[2] Verbs signifying to *ask, demand*, may take two object accs., one of the person, the other of the thing.

[3] See p. 90[8]. [4] *Cf.* 274, l. 15.

[5] *what*, gen. plur. neut. of the relative ὅς, ἥ, ὅ. For the case, see p. 63[3].

[6] For the augment, see 76 end.

[7] Use the simple dat. (p. 83[1c]).

[8] Use ὠφελέω (275) with the acc.

294. VOCABULARY.

αἰτέω, *ask, demand.*
ἄνευ, adv., with gen., *without.*[1]
ἀριθμός, ὁ, *number, enumeration.*
αὐλίζομαι, pass. dep., *lodge, be quartered, bivouac.*
βασιλεῖᾱ (*βασιλεύω*), *kingdom.*
βουλή (*cf. βουλεύω*), WILL, *plan, senate.*
γάμος, ὁ, *marriage.*
γυμνικός, **-ή**, **-όν**, **gymnastic.**
ἐκποδών, adv., *out of the way.*
ἑξ, indec., SIX.
ἐπι-θῡμέω,[2] *desire, long for.*
θεωρέω, *view, witness, inspect.*
καινός, **-ή**, **-όν**, *new, strange.*
κρῖθή, *barley*, commonly plur.
κρίθινος, **-η**, **-ον** (*κρῖθή*), *of barley.*
πῡρός, ὁ, *wheat*, commonly plur.
τέτταρες (*cf. τετρακισ-χίλιοι*), FOUR.
ὑμέτερος, **-ᾱ**, **-ον** (*cf. ὑμεῖς*), YOUR.

LESSON XXXIX.

Optative Active.

295. Besides the present, aorist, and perfect, two other tenses occur in the optative, the future and future perfect.

296. The distinction between the present and aorist is generally precisely that found in the subjunctive (267). Thus *εἰ κωλῡοι* means, *if he should be hindering* or *if he should hinder* (habitually), but *εἰ κωλῡσειε* means simply, *if he should hinder.* See further the examples in 299, 301, 303.

297. PARADIGMS.

	PRESENT.	FUTURE.	FIRST AORIST.	FIRST PERFECT.
S. 1	λῡοι-μι	λῡσοι-μι	λῡσαι-μι	λελῡκοι-μι
2	λῡοι-ς	λῡσοι-ς	λῡσειᾰ-ς, λῡσαι-ς	λελῡκοι-ς
3	λῡοι	λῡσοι	λῡσειε, λῡσαι	λελῡκοι
D. 1	λῡοι-τον	λῡσοι-τον	λῡσαι-τον	λελῡκοι-τον
2	λῡοί-την	λῡσοί-την	λῡσαί-την	λελυκοί-την
P. 1	λῡοι-μεν	λῡσοι-μεν	λῡσαι-μεν	λελῡκοι-μεν
2	λῡοι-τε	λῡσοι-τε	λῡσαι-τε	λελῡκοι-τε
3	λῡοιε-ν	λῡσοιε-ν	λῡσειᾰ-ν, λῡσαιε-ν	λελῡκοιε-ν

[1] Often, like *ἕνεκα* (240), called an *improper preposition.*

[2] The underlying word is *θῡμός*, ὁ, *soul, heart*, especially as the seat of desire. Here belong also *προ-θῡμως*, *ἐν-θῡμημα*, and *ἀ-θῡμίᾱ*.

a. The opt. adds the mood-suffix *-ι-* (in the third pers. plur. *-ιε-*) to the tense-stem (which has the form in *-ο-* when it ends in the variable vowel, 153), as λῦ-ο-ι-μι, λῦσα-ι-μι. In the perf. the *-α-* of the stem is changed to *-ο-*.

b. The opt. uses the endings of the secondary tenses (163), but the first pers. sing. act. takes *-μι*.

c. The forms λῦσεια-ς, λῦσειε, λῦσεια-ν in the aor. are irregular. But they occur more frequently than the regular forms λῦσαι-ς, λῦσαι, λῦσαιε-ν.

d. For the accent of the forms ending in *-οι* and *-αι*, see 28.

298. Present Optative of εἰμί.

1	εἴη-ν		εἶ-μεν or εἴη-μεν
2	εἴη-ς	εἶ-τον or εἴη-τον	εἶ-τε or εἴη-τε
3	εἴη	εἴ-την or εἰή-την	εἶε-ν or εἴη-σαν

a. εἴην is for εσ-ιη-ν (184), the mood-suffix being *-ιη-*, *etc.*

299. Optative in Protasis.

Examine the following: —

εἰ παρέχοιμεν ἀγοράν, ἔχοιτε ἂν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. *if we should provide a market, you would have supplies.*

εἰ μὴ ταῦτα ποιήσειεν, ἀποχωρήσαιμεν ἄν. *if he should not do this, we should withdraw.*

εἰ νῑκήσαιμεν, τὴν χώρᾱν οὐκ ἂν διαρπάσειε. *if we should conquer, he would not plunder the country.*

a. Observe that these sentences state a supposed future case less vividly than the subjv. (see 272); that the protasis is expressed by the particle εἰ, *if*, with the opt., and the apodosis by the opt. with the particle ἄν[1]; and that when the protasis is neg. it takes μή, but when the apodosis is neg. it takes οὐ. Hence: —

300. Rule of Syntax. — When a supposed future case is stated less distinctly and vividly than the subjunctive would state it (as *if I should go* in English), the protasis takes the optative with εἰ, the apodosis the optative with ἄν. The negative adverb of the protasis is regularly μή, that of the apodosis is οὐ.

[1] This particle ἄν, which is used only in apodosis, must be carefully distinguished from the conditional particle ἄν, a contracted form of ἐάν.

301. Optative in Clauses which denote Purpose.

Examine the following: —

ἐζητοῦμεν τοὺς ἄρχοντας, ἵνα ἡμῖν συμβουλεύοιεν, *we sought the commanders, that they might give us their counsel.*

τὴν γέφῡραν ἐλύσαμεν, ἵνα μὴ οἱ πολέμιοι πλησιάσειαν, *we destroyed the bridge, that the enemy might not approach.*

τοῦτον ἤγομεν δεῦρο, μὴ κακῶς ἡμᾶς ποιήσειε, *we brought him here, that he might not do us harm.*

a. Observe that the clause which denotes the purpose takes the opt.; that the particle which introduces it is ἵνα; that the preceding verb is in a secondary tense (61); that the neg. of the clause of purpose is μή, and follows ἵνα; but that sometimes in a neg. clause of purpose μή alone is used in the sense, *that not, in order that not.* ὡς and ὅπως may occur in place of ἵνα. Hence: —

302. Rule of Syntax. — Clauses which denote purpose are introduced by ἵνα, ὡς, ὅπως, *that, in order that,* and ἵνα μή, ὡς μή, ὅπως μή, μή, *that not, in order that not,* and take the optative if the leading verb is in a secondary tense.

303. Optative in Object Clauses after Verbs of Fearing.

Examine the following: —

ἔδεισα[1] μὴ τὰς γεφύρᾱς λύοιεν, *I feared that they would destroy the bridges.*

ἐδείσαμεν μὴ οὐ πιστοὶ εἶτε, *we feared that you would not be faithful.*

a. Observe that the clause which expresses the thing feared is the *object* of the leading verb; that this object clause takes the opt.; that the particle which introduces it is μή, *that, lest*; that the verb which denotes fear is in a secondary tense; that the neg. of the object clause is οὐ. Sometimes an equivalent phrase is used in place of the verb which denotes fear. Hence: —

304. Rule of Syntax. — After a verb or phrase which denotes *fear*, the object of the fear is expressed by μή, *that, lest*, or μὴ οὐ, *that not*, with the optative, if the leading verb is in a secondary tense.

a. For the force of the tenses of the opts. in 299, 301, 303, see 296.

[1] Aor., corresponding to the perf. δέδοικα, and inflected like ἔλυσα.

305. **EXERCISES.**

I. 1. *ἐπαύσατο, ἵνα μὴ πλησιάσειε τοῖς πολεμίοις.*[1] 2. *ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ταῦτα ὑπήγετο,*[2] *ὅπως εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχοιεν*[3] *αὐτῷ*[4] *οἱ Ἕλληνες.* 3. *οὐκ ἐφοβεῖτο μὴ δόξαν πονηρίας ἔχοι.* 4. *τούτους δὲ φίλους ἐποιεῖτο, ὡς συνεργοὺς ἔχοι.* 5. *ἐδεισαν οἱ Ἕλληνες μὴ ταύτῃ*[5] *προσάγοιεν οἱ πολέμιοι.* 6. *τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἐπεβούλευε Μένων, ὅπως φίλος εἴη τῷ σατράπῃ.* 7. *ἄξιοι ἂν εἶμεν φίλοι, εἰ ἔχοιμεν τὰ ὅπλα.* 8. *εἰ ἀποσωσαιμι ὑμᾶς*[6] *εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, οὐκ ἂν ἀχαρίστως ἔχοι.* 9. *εἰ τὰς πύλας κλείσειαν, πολιορκήσαιμεν ἂν τὸ χωρίον.* 10. *ὁ τῆς χώρας ἄρχων τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἡγεμόνα ἔπεμψεν, ὅπως διὰ τῆς πολεμίας χώρας ἄγοι αὐτούς.*[7] 11. *τῶν δὲ βαρβάρων*[8] *ἐπεμελεῖτο, ὡς πολεμεῖν τε ἱκανοὶ εἶησαν καὶ εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχοιεν αὐτῷ.* 12. *τὸν στρατιώτην οὗτος ἀπῆγεν, ἵνα διασώσειε τοῖς λῃσταῖς τὰ χρήματα.* 13. *συνεβούλευσα ἐγὼ τοῦτον ἐκποδὼν ποιεῖσθαι, ὡς σχολὴ εἴη ἡμῖν τοὺς φίλους εὖ ποιεῖν.*[9] 14. *καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν*[10] *μὲν εἴην ἂν τίμιος, ὑμῶν*[11] *δὲ εἰ ἔρημος εἴην, ἀδύνατος ἂν εἴην.* 15. *Ξενοφῶν δὲ τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας ἦγε πρὸς τοῦτο τὸ χωρίον, ὅπως τούτῳ οἱ πολέμιοι προσέχοιεν τὸν νοῦν.* 16. *ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐπιέζοντο ὑπὸ τῶν τοξευμάτων καὶ σφενδονῶν, ἐπορεύοντο κύκλῳ,*[12] *ὅπως τὰ ὅπλα ἔχοιεν πρὸ*[13] *τῶν τοξευμάτων.* 17. *πάλιν ἠρώτησεν ὁ Κῦρος, Ἔτι οἶν ἂν εἴης*[14] *τῷ ἐμῷ ἀδελφῷ πολέμιος, ἐμοὶ δὲ φίλος καὶ πιστός;*

---

[1] See p. 83 [10].

[2] See 257.

[3] *be well-disposed.* ἔχω is used with an adv. in the sense of εἰμί with an adj., as καλῶς ἔχει, *it is well.*

[4] *to him*, dat. sing. masc.

[5] Dat. sing. fem. of οὗτος as adv., *in this way* or *direction.*

[6] The declension of the personal pron. σύ, THOU, YOU, in the sing. and plur. is as follows: N. σύ, G. σοῦ, D. σοί, A. σέ; N. ὑμεῖς, YOU, G. ὑμῶν, D. ὑμῖν, A. ὑμᾶς. The forms σοῦ, σοί, σέ, are enclitic, unless there is special emphasis on them. With ὑμεῖς, *etc.*, *cf.* ὑμέτερος, YOUR.

[7] *them*, acc. plur. masc.

[8] See p. 63 [3].

[9] *benefit. Cf.* κακῶς ποιέω, p. 77 [3].

[10] The protasis is sometimes not expressed in the regular form with εἰ, but is contained in a participle, or implied in an adv. or some other part of the sentence, as here in σὺν ὑμῖν.

[11] The gen. is used with adjs. of *plenty* or *want.*

[12] See p. 25 [5].

[13] *I.e. as a defence against.*

[14] The protasis is often altogether omitted, leaving the opt. with ἄν alone as an apodosis.

18. *οὐδ'*[1] *εἰ φίλος καὶ πιστός σοι εἴην, ὦ Κῦρε, ἐμοί*[2] *γ' ἄν ποτε ἔτι πιστεύοις.*

II. 1. He feared that he would not have friends. 2. He
pers. 3. If
ful to you.[3]
ell-disposed.
uld be evil-
nemy would
the Greeks[6]
ight lead us
neral would
reeks were

v., *with good*

', *rear-guard.*
rely upon.
' *state, wick-*

, *ever*, en-

prep. with
e, FOR, *in*
alf of.
valued, hon-

-ι.

-o

[6] *I.e. the other Greeks.*
[7] *εἰs.* [8] Use the aor.
[12] A word of four syllables, as the two dots (*diaeresis*) show.
[13] *ὄπισθεν*, adv., *behind.*

LESSON XL.

Optative Middle and Passive.

307. PARADIGMS.

	PRESENT M. and P.	FUTURE MIDDLE.	FIRST AOR. MIDDLE.	PERFECT M. and P.	
S. 1	λῡοί-μην	λῡσοί-μην	λῡσαί-μην	λελυ-μένος (-η, -ον)	εἴην
2	λύοι-ο	λύσοι-ο	λύσαι-ο	"	εἴης
3	λύοι-το	λύσοι-το	λύσαι-το	"	εἴη
D. 2	λυοι-σθον	λυσοι-σθον	λυσαι-σθον	λελυ-μένω (-ᾱ, -ω)	εἶτον or εἴητον
3	λῡοί-σθην	λῡσοί-σθην	λῡσαί-σθην	"	εἴτην εἰήτην
P. 1	λῡοί-μεθα	λῡσοί-μεθα	λῡσαί-μεθα	λελυ-μένοι (-αι, -α)	εἶμεν εἴημεν
2	λύοι-σθε	λυσοι-σθε	λυσαι-σθε	"	εἶτε εἴητε
3	λύοι-ντο	λύσοι-ντο	λύσαι-ντο	"	εἶεν εἴησαν

	FUTURE PERFECT M. and P.	FIRST AORIST PASSIVE.		FIRST FUTURE PASSIVE.
S. 1	λελῡσοί-μην	λυθείη-ν		λυθησοί-μην
2	λελύσοι-ο	λυθείη-ς		λυθήσοι-ο
3	λελύσοι-το	λυθείη		λυθήσοι-το
D. 2	λελυσοι-σθον	λυθεῖ-τον or	λυθείη-τον	λυθησοί-σθον
3	λελῡσοί σθην	λυθεί-την	λυθειή-την	λυθησοί-σθην
P. 1	λελυσοί-μεθα	λυθεῖ-μεν	λυθείη-μεν	λυθησοί-μεθα
2	λελυσοι-σθε	λυθεῖ τε	λυθείη-τε	λυθήσοι-σθε
3	λελυσοι ντο	λυθεῖε-ν	λυθείησαν	λυθήσοι-ντο

a. The fut. and aor. have distinct forms for the mid. and pass.

b. The same mood sufix is used as in the act. (297 a), except in the aor. pass.: here it is *-ο-* in the sing. and sometimes in the dual and plur., but the shorter forms *λυθεῖ-τον, λυθεί-την, etc.*, occur more frequently. In these forms the accent cannot go back of the mood-sufix.

c. The opt. uses the endings of the secondary tenses (199), but in

the aor. pass. the *active* endings occur (163). The mid. ending -σο in the second pers. sing. drops σ between the vowels.

d. The perf. is a compound form, as in the subjv. (276 e), consisting of the perf. mid. and pass. participle and the opt. of εἰμί.

308. EXERCISES.

I. 1. ἐνενοήθη μὴ οἱ ἐχθροὶ τῑμηθεῖεν. 2. εἰ ἅμα ἐλεύθερος εἴης καὶ πλούσιος, τίνος[1] ἂν ἔτι δέοιο[2]; 3. οἱ στρατιῶται εἰς τὴν πολεμίᾱν γῆν ἐπορεύθησαν,[3] ἵνα διαρπάζοιντο. 4. τῶν στρατηγῶν[4] κατηγόρησεν, ἵνα αὐτὸς[5] σωθείη. 5. Κύρῳ φίλοι εἶναι περὶ παντὸς[6] ἂν ποιησαίμεθα. 6. εἰ τούτους συμμάχους[7] ἔχοιτε, τοὺς Αἰγυπτίους ῥᾳδίως ἂν κολάσαισθε. 7. εἰ νῑκήσαιμεν, καὶ σῳζοίμεθα ἂν καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔχοιμεν. 8. Δέξιππον ἄρχοντα ἐποιησάμεθα, ὡς σῳζοίμεθα. 9. πορευοίμεθα δ' ἂν οἵκαδε, εἰ Ἀρταξέρξης μὴ κωλύοι. 10. οὕτω[8] γὰρ ἂν ὑμεῖς ἀπολελυμένοι τῆς αἰτίᾱς εἶτε. 11. εἰ ὅπλα μὴ ἔχοιμεν, καὶ τῶν σωμάτων[9] στερηθεῖμεν ἄν. 12. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι ἔδεισαν μὴ ἀποκλεισθεῖεν.[10] 13. εἰ σωθεῖμεν ὑπὸ σοῦ, σοὶ χάριν ἂν ἔχοιμεν δικαίως. 14. ἀλλ' ὅμως ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐφοβήθη μὴ κυκλωθείη ἑκατέρωθεν. 15. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἐφοβεῖτο μὴ ἡ γέφῡρα λύοιτο ὑπὸ τοῦ σατράπου τῆς νυκτός.[11] 16. ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοί,[12] παρεκαλούμεθα,

---

[1] Gen. sing. neut. of the interrogative τίς, *who? what?* Observe that the gen. is used with verbs of *plenty* and *want*.

[2] Verbs in -εω of two syllables admit only the contraction into ει. Other combinations than those that would result in ει remain uncontracted.

[3] Aor. with the force of the mid., so that πορεύομαι (196) is practically a pass. dep.

[4] The gen. often depends on a prep. included in a compound verb. Many compounds of κατά, especially, which involve the idea of feeling or acting *against* take the gen. of the person.

[5] *himself*, Lat. *ipse*. *Cf.* 247, I. 16.

[6] *surpassing* (περί) *everything, i.e. all important.*

[7] *as allies*. See p. 25 [3].

[8] See p. 104 [10].

[9] Verbs of *depriving* sometimes take the gen. This is, in fact, the gen. of *separation* (see p. 60 [2]).

[10] The aor. pass. of κλείω is ἐκλείσθην. *Cf.* the aor. pass. of σπάω (p. 95 [1]).

[11] *Cf.* 239, I. 7.

[12] Words denoting station or condition are often connected as appositives with ἄνδρες, which then implies respect.

ὅπως πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευοίμεθα. 17. τὸν κωλύοντα[1] τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας πορεύεσθαι ἔπαισα πύξ, ὅπως μὴ λόγχῃ[2] ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων παίοιτο. 18. παρεκάλουν ὑμᾶς, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, ὅπως σὺν ὑμῖν βουλευοίμην τί[3] δίκαιόν ἐστι καὶ πρὸς θεῶν καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων.

II. 1. I feared that the bridge would be destroyed. 2. The general would do wrong,[4] if he should send for the boats. 3. I struck this (man), fellow-soldiers, with my fist, that I might force[5] him to desist. 4. How, then, could *I*[6] force you to proceed with me? 5. He was terrified lest the enemy should not cease from war. 6. We rested in the plain to deliberate[7] about a truce. 7. How, then, should we proceed in safety, if it should be proper to proceed? 8. I would not take part in the expedition, unless[8] Xenophon were present. 9. We made Xenophon our commander, that we might be brought safely[9] to Greece. 10. There was danger that the enemy would try[4] to withdraw within the night.

309. VOCABULARY.

αἰτίᾱ (*cf.* αἰτιάομαι), *blame, censure.*
ἅμα, adv., *at the same time.*
ἀπο-κλείω, *shut off, intercept.*
ἀπο-λύω, LOOSE *from, acquit.*
Δέξιππος, ὁ, Dexippus.
δέω,[10] *want, need;* mid., as pass. dep., *want, beg, request.*
ἑκατέρωθεν (*cf.* ἕκαστος), adv., *on both sides.*
κατ-ηγορέω,[11] *speak against, charge, accuse.*
κυκλόω (κύκλος), *surround, encircle, hem in.*
οἴκαδε (οἶκος), adv., *homeward.*
πλούσιος, -ᾱ, -ον, *rich, wealthy.*
πύξ (*cf.* πυκνός), adv., *with the* FIST.
ῥᾳδίως, adv., *easily, readily.*
στερέω, *deprive, rob.*

---

[1] *the one hindering* (see p. 83[9]), *i.e. him who hindered.*
[2] *Cf.* 175, I. 11.
[3] *Cf.* 201, I. 10.
[4] Use the aor.
[5] *Cf.* 281, I. 13.
[6] To be expressed in Greek, as emphatic.
[7] Use the finite mood in Greek, and *cf.* I. 16 above.
[8] *I.e. if not.*
[9] *Cf.* 305, I. 8.
[10] δέω, δεήσω, *etc.* The theme, except in the pres., is δεε-. The act. is used commonly only in the impersonal form δεῖ, fut. δεήσει (subjv. δέῃ, opt. δέοι), *it is necessary* or *proper, it behooves, one must* or *ought* or *should.*
[11] *Cf.* ἀγορεύω (ἀγορά), *speak publicly, harangue.*

LESSON XLI.

Contract Verbs in the Optative.

Review 241–243 entire.

310. PARADIGMS.

	Present Active.		Present Mid. and Pass.
S. 1	τῑμ(αοί)ῴη-ν or	τῑμ(άοι)ῷ-μι	τῑμ(αοί)ῴ-μην
2	τῑμ(αοί)ῴη-ς	τῑμ(άοις)ῷ-ς	τῑμ(άοι)ῷ-ο
3	τῑμ(αοί)ῴη	τῑμ(άοι)ῷ	τῑμ(άοι)ῷ-το
D. 2	τῑμ(άοι)ῷ-τον		τῑμ(άοι)ῷ-σθον
3	τῑμ(αοί)ῴ-την		τῑμ(αοί)ῴ-σθην
P. 1	τῑμ(άοι)ῷ-μεν		τῑμ(αοί)ῴ-μεθα
2	τῑμ(άοι)ῷ-τε		τῑμ(άοι)ῷ-σθε
3	τῑμ(άοι)ῷε-ν		τῑμ(άοι)ῷ-ντο
S. 1	φιλ(εοί)οίη-ν or	φιλ(έοι)οῖ-μι	φιλ(εοί)οί-μην
2	φιλ(εοί)οίη-ς	φιλ(έοις)οῖ-ς	φιλ(έοι)οῖ-ο
3	φιλ(εοί)οίη	φιλ(έοι)οῖ	φιλ(έοι)οῖ-το
D. 2	φιλ(έοι)οῖ-τον		φιλ(έοι)οῖ-σθον
3	φιλ(εοί)οί-την		φιλ(εοί)οί-σθην
P. 1	φιλ(έοι)οῖ-μεν		φιλ(εοί)οί-μεθα
2	φιλ(έοι)οῖ-τε		φιλ(έοι)οῖ-σθε
3	φιλ(έοι)οῖε-ν		φιλ(έοι)οῖ-ντο
S. 1	δηλ(οοί)οίη-ν or	δηλ(όοι)οῖ-μι	δηλ(οοί)οί-μην
2	δηλ(οοί)οίη-ς	δηλ(όοις)οῖ-ς	δηλ(όοι)οῖ-ο
3	δηλ(οοί)οίη	δηλ(όοι)οῖ	δηλ(όοι)οῖ-το
D. 2	δηλ(όοι)οῖ-τον		δηλ(όοι)οῖ-σθον
3	δηλ(οοί)οί-την		δηλ(οοί)οί-σθην
P. 1	δηλ(όοι)οῖ-μεν		δηλ(οοί)οί-μεθα
2	δηλ(όοι)οῖ-τε		δηλ(όοι)οῖ-σθε
3	δηλ(όοι)οῖε-ν		δηλ(όοι)οῖ-ντο

a. In the act. these verbs generally have *-ιη-* as mood-suffix in the sing., but *-ι-* in the dual and plur., as also in all the numbers of the mid. and pass.

b. Observe that when the mood-sign is *-ιη-* the first pers. sing. act. has the regular ending *-ν* (163), but when it is *-ι-* the ending is *-μι* (297 b). For the mood-suffix *-ιη-*, see 297 a and 307 b.

311. EXERCISES.

I. 1. *πῶς ἂν τὴν μάχην ποιοίμην;* 2. *εἰ δὲ ἡττῷντο, οὐκ ἂν σωθεῖεν.* 3. *ἐπλησίαζον, ἵνα τοὺς αἰχμαλώτους*[1] *ἐλευθεροῖεν.* 4. *οὐκέτι ἐφοβεῖτο μὴ οἱ ὁπλῖται ἀθῦμοῖεν.* 5. *εἰ οἱ Ἕλληνες νῑκῷεν τοὺς βαρβάρους, καλῶς ἂν ἔχοι.* 6. *οὐκ ἂν οὖν θαυμάζοιμι εἰ οἱ πολέμιοι ἡμῖν*[2] *ἐπακολουθοῖεν.* 7. *κίνδῡνος ἦν μὴ οἱ πολέμιοι σφενδονῷεν καὶ τοξεύοιεν.* 8. *εἰ Ξενοφῶν ἡμῶν στρατηγοίη, εὐπετῶς ἂν σωθεῖμεν.* 9. *εἰ ἔχοιμεν χρήματα, φίλους ῥᾳδίως ἂν ποιοίμεθα.* 10. *εἶτα δὲ τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς ἀπῆγον, ἵνα τῶν κακῶν ἔργων*[3] *ζημιοῖντο.* 11. *πάντες ἐφοβοῦντο μὴ ὁ Κλέαρχος τῑμωροῖτο τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς.* 12. *εἰ ὅπλα ἔχοιμεν, καὶ τῇ ἀρετῇ ἂν χρῴμεθα.* 13. *ἐφοβοῦντο μὴ οὐκέτι τῷ στρατεύματι*[4] *ἡγοῖτο.* 14. *τούτους τοὺς μισθοφόρους τάχ᾽ ἂν μισθοῖτο, εἰ πορεύοιντο εἰς τὴν ἀρχήν.* 15. *ἐφοβεῖτο μὴ ἐξ ὑποψιᾶς ποιοῖεν ἀνήκεστα κακὰ*[5] *τοὺς Ἕλληνας.* 16. *ἀλλ᾽ εἰ τούτοις προσφιλῶς χρῴμεθα, ἡμῖν εὖνοι ἂν εἶεν.* 17. *εἰ δέ τίς*[6] *σε λῡποίη, ὡς δεσπότης ἂν κολάσειας, ἔχων*[7] *ἡμᾶς ὑπηρέτᾱς.* 18. *σοὶ οὐκ ἂν τοῦ μισθοῦ ἕνεκα μόνον ὑπηρετοῖμεν*[8] *ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς χάριτος, ἥν*[9] *σοι ἂν ἔχοιμεν δικαίως.*

II. 1. I feared that they would depart to[10] the boats. 2. If we should ravage their land, the enemy would be frightened. 3. They feared that the citizens would be discouraged. 4. They sent a thousand soldiers, that the enemy might not give assist-

---

[1] *the captives.* See p. 83[2].

[2] *Cf.* 256, I. 16.

[3] Verbs of judicial action take a gen. expressing the *crime.*

[4] *Cf.* 106, I. 10.

[5] See p. 31[2] and p. 94[2].

[6] *Cf.* 274, I. 4. For the accent, see 186 c.

[7] See p. 104[10].

[8] *Cf.* 256, I. 18.

[9] *which*, acc. sing. fem. of the relative pron. *ὅς, ἥ, ὅ.*

[10] *πρός* with acc.

ance. γ5. But if we should be worsted, we should depart. 6. We should proceed homeward, unless somebody[1] molested us. 7. The barbarians feared that they would be besieged. 8. If we should be of service to the citizens, they would feel grateful to us. 9. But when Cyrus called (me), I proceeded, that I might be of service to him.[2] 10. If we should try to be co-workers with these men, they would always love us.

312. VOCABULARY.

ἀ-θῡμέω (θῡμός), *be discouraged, be dejected.*
αἰχμάλωτος, -ον, *taken in war, captured.*
ἀνήκεστος, -ον, *incurable, irreparable.*
δεσπότης, *master, lord.*
ἐπ-ακολουθέω, *follow upon* or *after, pursue.*
εὐπετῶς, adv., *easily.*
ζημιόω, *do damage to, punish.*
λῡπέω, *grieve, distress, annoy, molest.*
προσ-φιλῶς (φίλος), adv., *in a friendly way toward, kindly.*
σφενδονάω (σφενδόνη), *use the sling, throw with a sling.*
τάχα (ταχέως), adv., *quickly, forthwith;* in apodosis with **ἄν**, *perhaps.*
τῑμωρέω, *avenge;* mid. *avenge oneself on, take vengeance on.*
ὑπηρέτης (*cf.* ὑπηρετέω), *assistant, attendant.*

LESSON XLII.

Affinity of Words. — Reading Lesson.

Give the meanings of the following words: —

313. WORD LIST.

ἀγών*	αἰχμάλωτος	ἀνήκεστος	ἀποσῴζω*	ἀχάριστος*
ἀδύνατος*	ἀκολουθέω*	ἀνήρ*	ἀποχωρέω*	βάλανος
ἀεί	ἄκων*	ἀπάγω*	ἀριθμός	βασιλεῖα*
ἀθῡμέω*	ἅμα	ἅπᾶς*	ἀρχή*	βασιλικός*
ἀθῡμία*	ἀμαχεί*	ἄπειμι*	ἀσκέω	βιάζομαι
αἰσχύνη	ἀμελῶς*	ἀποκλείω*	ἀσπάζομαι	βοηθέω*
αἰτέω	ἄν	ἀποκωλύω*	ἀσφαλῶς	βουλή*
αἰτία*	ἀνδρείως*	ἀπολύω*	αὐλίζομαι	γάμος
αἰτιάομαι*	ἄνευ	ἀποσπάω*	ἀφυλάκτως*	γαστήρ

[1] *Cf.* I. 17 above.

[2] αὐτόν, acc. sing. masc.

γέ	ἕξ	κατάγω *	οὐδέ *	στρατηγέω *
γυμνικός	ἐξάγω *	κατηγορέω *	παρακαλέω *	σύμπᾶς *
δαίμων	ἐξαπατάω	κλείω *	παρακελεύομαι *	συνακολουθέω *
Δέξιππος	ἐξορμάω *	κοινῇ	παραπλήσιος *	σύνδειπνος
δεσπότης	ἐπακολουθέω *	κρᾰτήρ	πάρειμι *	συνεργός *
δεῦρο	ἐπιθῡμέω *	κραυγή	πάρειμι *	συνθήκη
δέω (*bind*)	ἐπικίνδῡνος *	κρίθή *	πᾶς *	σφενδονάω *
δέω (*need*)	ἐπιμελέομαι *	κρίθινος *	πατήρ	σωφρονέω *
δηόω	ἐπιορκέω *	κτάομαι *	περιέχω *	τάχα *
διᾱκόσιοι *	ἐργάζομαι *	κύκλος *	περιττεύω *	τελευτάω
διαπολεμέω *	ἔργον *	κυκλόω *	πιστεύω *	τέτταρες *
διασπάω *	ἔρημος	λῃστής	πιστόω *	τῑμιος *
ἐάν (ἄν, ἤν)	ἔτι *	λιμήν	πιστότης *	τῑμωρέω
ἐάω	εὖ *	λοιδορέω	πλούσιος	ὑμέτερος *
εἰρήνη	εὐνοϊκῶς *	λοιπός	πολεμέω *	ὑπάγω *
ἑκατέρωθεν *	εὐπετῶς	Λύκαιος	πονέω *	ὑπηρετέω *
ἐκεῖ *	ζημιόω	λῡπέω	πονηρίᾱ *	ὑπηρέτης *
ἐκκλησίᾱ *	ζητέω	Μένων	ποτέ	φοβέω
ἐκποδών	ἡγεμών *	μή	πρό *	φοῖνιξ
ἑκών *	ἡγέομαι *	μήν	προσάγω *	φύω
ἐλευθερόω *	ἥττάομαι	μήτηρ	προσφιλῶς *	χαίρεις *
Ἕλλᾰς *	θαρραλέως	Μιλήσιος *	πύξ *	χειρόω
Ἕλλην *	θεωρέω	μισθόω *	πῡρός	χράομαι *
ἔμπροσθεν *	θυγάτηρ	οἰκαδε *	ῥᾳδίως	ψῑλός
ἐνθάδε *	ἵνα	ὅμως	ῥήτωρ	ὥρᾱ
ἐνθύμημα *	καινός	ὀπισθοφύλαξ *	σκευοφόρος *	ὥσπερ *
ἐννοέομαι *	καλῶς *		στερέω	ὠφελέω

Review 249.

Associate each starred word in 313 with some other word or words of those given in 130, 191, 249, and 313, related to it in form and meaning.

Review 140, 142.

Read and translate again 143, 195, 250.

Read and translate the following passage: —

314. Κῦρος.

IV. *ἐπεὶ δὲ ἕτοιμος ἦν Κῦρος πορεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τὸν ἀδελφόν, ἐκέλευσε τοὺς στρατηγοὺς παρεῖναι. καλεῖ δὲ καὶ τοὺς Μίλητον πολιορκοῦντας, καὶ τοὺς φυγάδας*

κελεύει σὺν αὐτῷ στρατεύεσθαι. οἱ δὲ ἡδέως ἠκολούθουν· ἐπίστευον γὰρ αὐτῷ. Τισσαφέρνης δὲ ἐπεὶ ταῦτα κατενόησε, πορεύεται πρὸς τὸν Ἀρταξέρξην. ὁ δὲ οὕτω τὴν ἐπιβουλὴν ᾐσθάνετο καὶ ἀντιπαρεσκευάζετο.

Κῦρος δὲ ἔχων τούτους τοὺς στρατιώτας ὥρμᾶτο ἀπὸ Σάρδεων· καὶ ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λῡδίας σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγᾱς εἴκοσι καὶ δύο ἐπὶ τὸν Μαίανδρον ποταμόν. ἐπὶ δὲ τούτῳ γέφῡρα ἐπῆν. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγᾱς εἴκοσι καὶ ὀκτὼ εἰς Κελαινάς, τῆς Φρυγίας πόλιν. ἐνταῦθα Κύρῳ βασίλεια ἦν καὶ παράδεισος ἀγρίων θηρίων πλήρης, ἃ ἐκεῖνος ἐθήρευεν ἀπὸ ἵππου. διὰ μέσου δὲ τοῦ παραδείσου ῥεῖ ὁ Μαίανδρος ποταμός· αἱ δὲ πηγαὶ αὐτοῦ εἰσιν ἐκ τῶν βασιλείων· ῥεῖ δὲ καὶ διὰ τῆς Κελαινῶν πόλεως. ἔστι δὲ καὶ Ἀρταξέρξου βασίλεια ἐν Κελαιναῖς ἐρυμνὰ ἐπὶ ταῖς πηγαῖς τοῦ Μαρσύου ποταμοῦ· ῥεῖ δὲ καὶ οὗτος διὰ τῆς πόλεως καὶ ἐμβάλλει εἰς τὸν Μαίανδρον. ἐνταῦθα Ξέρξης, ὅτε ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἀπεχώρει, ᾠκοδόμησε ταῦτα τὰ βασίλεια. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε Κῦρος ἡμέρᾱς τριάκοντα, καὶ ἀριθμὸν τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐποίησεν ἐν τῷ παραδείσῳ, καὶ ἦσαν οἱ ὁπλῖται μὲν μύριοι καὶ χίλιοι, πελτασταὶ δὲ δισχίλιοι.

NOTES.

1. **ἕτοιμος**, *ready, prepared.* — 3. **πολιορκοῦντας**: pres. part., contracted from πολιορκέοντας. — 4. **οἱ δέ**, *and they. Cf. ὁ δέ, and he.* — 6. **κατενόησε**: aor. of *κατα-νοέω, observe.* — 7. **ᾐσθάνετο**: imperf. of *αἰσθάνομαι, perceive.* — **ἀντι-παρεσκευάζετο**: note the force, in composition, of the first prep. — 9. **Σάρδεων**: gen. of Σάρδεις, **Sardis**. — **ἐξελαύνει**, *marches.* — **Λῡδίας**: Λυδία, **Lydia**. — **τρεῖς**, THREE. — 10. **παρασάγγᾱς**: *παρασάγγης, a* **parasang**, a Persian road-measure, equal to about three and one-third miles. — **εἴκοσι**, *twenty.* — 12. **τέτταρας**: acc. plur. masc. of *τέτταρες.* — **ὀκτώ**, EIGHT. — 13. **πόλιν**: acc. sing. of *πόλις.* — 14. **πλήρης**, FULL. See p. 21[1]. — **ἅ**: acc. plur. neut. of the rel. prom. *ὅς, ἥ, ὅ, which*, referring to *θηρίων.* — 15. **ῥεῖ**: *ῥέω, flow.* — 16. **αὐτοῦ**, *of it*, gen. sing. masc. — 17. **πόλεως**: gen. sing. of *πόλις.* — 19. **ἐμβάλλει**, *empties.* — 21. **ᾠκοδόμησε**: aor. of *οἰκοδομέω, build.* — **ἔμεινε**: ἔμεινα, aor. of *μένω, remain.* — 22. **τριακοντα**, *thirty.*

Translate the following passage into Greek: —

315. Thus, then, Cyrus collected an army both Greek and barbarian. Of the Greeks there were 11,000 heavy-armed men and 2000 targeteers. With these he marches through Lydia and Phrygia to Celaenae. There he had a beautiful park, abounding in trees and vines. Through Celaenae flows the river Marsyas, and empties into the river Maeander. There Xerxes built a fortified palace at the sources of the Marsyas. Cyrus remained a month at Celaenae and made an enumeration of his Greek soldiers in the park.

LESSON XLIII.

Stems in -σ- (-εσ- and -ασ-) of the Consonant-Declension.

316. PARADIGMS.

	τὸ ὄρος (ορεσ-) *mountain*		ὁ Σωκράτης (Σωκρατεσ-) Socrates		τὸ κρέας (κρεασ-) *meat*	
S. N.	ὄρος		Σωκράτης		κρέας	
G.	(ὀρε-ος)	ὄρους	(Σωκρατε-ος)	Σωκράτους	(κρεα-ος)	κρέως
D.	(ὄρε-ῐ)	ὄρει	(Σωκράτε-ῐ)	Σωκράτει	(κρέα-ῐ)	κρέᾳ
A.	ὄρος		(Σωκράτε-α)	Σωκράτη	κρέας	
V.	ὄρος		Σώκρατες		κρέας	
D. N. A. V.	(ὄρε-ε)	ὄρει			(κρέα-ε)	κρέᾱ
G. D.	(ὀρέ-οιν)	ὀροῖν			(κρεά-οιν)	κρεῷν
P. N. A. V.	(ὄρε-α)	ὄρη			(κρέα-α)	κρέα
G.	ὀρέ-ων	ὀρῶν			(κρεά-ων)	κρεῶν
D.	ὄρε-σι				κρέα-σι	

Observe the application of the principles stated in 213 a. 2, 3, 5. But note (a) that neut. stems in -εσ- have -ος for -ες in the nom., acc., and voc. sing.; (b) that final -σ- of the stem falls away before all case-endings, and that vowels thus brought together are contracted (see 241, -ε-ε giving -ει, but -α-α giving -ᾱ, not -ᾶ); and (c) that such substantives as Σωκράτης have recessive accent in the voc.

317. Gender. — Neuter are all substantives whose stems end in **-εσ-, -ασ-**, except names of males.

318. Like ὄρος are declined: *βάθος, depth; βέλος, missile; ἔθνος, nation, tribe; εὖρος, breadth, width; κράνος, helmet; μέγεθος, greatness, magnitude; τεῖχος, wall; τέλος, fulfilment, end*, plur. *magistrates; ὕψος, height. κέρας, horn*, is declined both like κράας and like τέρας (236).

319. EXERCISES.

I. 1. ταύτης τῆς ἡμέρᾱς τοῦτο τὸ τέλος ἦν. 2. τούτου τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὸ εὖρός ἐστι δύο πλέθρα. 3. εἶχον δὲ κράνη χαλκᾶ. 4. καὶ ὁ Τισσαφέρνης μάλα ταχέως ἔξω τῶν βελῶν[1] ἀπεχώρει. 5. πάντες δ' οὗτοι κατὰ[2] ἔθνη ἐπορεύοντο. 6. καὶ ἐκέλευε Κλέαρχον τοῦ δεξιοῦ κέρως[3] ἡγεῖσθαι. 7. ἦσαν κατὰ[2] τὸ εὐώνυμον τῶν Ἑλλήνων κέρας. 8. τὰ δὲ κρέα τῶν ἀγρίων ὄνων ἦν παραπλήσια[4] τοῖς ἐλαφείοις.[5] 9. τὸ Μένωνος στράτευμα ἤδη ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ἦν εἴσω τῶν ὀρέων.[1] 10. ἔνθεν μὲν[6] γὰρ ὄρη ἦν ὑψηλά, ἔνθεν δὲ ὁ ποταμός. 11. τέλος[7] δὲ καὶ πάντες ἀπεχώρησαν. 12. ἐνταῦθα ἦν πῦραμίς, τὸ μὲν εὖρος[8] πλέθρου,[9] τὸ δὲ ὕψος δύο πλέθρων. 13. ἡ τοῦ ὄρους κορυφὴ ὑπὲρ τοῦ στρατεύματος ἦν, καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης ἔφοδος ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον ἔνθα[10] ἦσαν οἱ πολέμιοι. 14. ἐθανατώθη ὑπὸ τῶν ἐν τῇ Σπάρτῃ τελῶν οὗτος ὁ ἄνθρωπος. 15. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις ταῖς[11] Τισσαφέρνους, οἱ στρατηγοὶ παρεκλήθησαν εἴσω. 16. ἔνθα ὁ μὲν Τίγρης ποταμὸς ἄπορος ἦν διὰ τὸ βάθος καὶ μέγεθος. 17. ἦν δὲ παρὰ τὸν Εὐφράτην πάροδος στενὴ μεταξὺ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς τάφρου ὡς[12] εἴκοσι ποδῶν τὸ εὖρος. 18. ἦν δὲ ἡ μὲν κρηπὶς τὸ εὖρος πεντήκοντα ποδῶν, καὶ τὸ ὕψος πεντήκοντα. ἐπὶ δὲ ταύτῃ

[1] *Cf.* 111, I. 12.
[2] See 182.
[3] *Cf.* 256, I. 1.
[4] Words of *likeness* or *unlikeness* take the dat.
[5] *Sc.* κρέασι.
[6] ἔνθεν μὲν . . . ἔνθεν δέ, *on the one side . . . and on the other.*
[7] *finally*, neut. acc. used as adv.
[8] The acc. is joined with verbs, adjectives, and substantives, to denote that *in respect to* which the expression is used. This is called the *accusative of specification.*
[9] Gen. of *measure.*
[10] Here in the sense of *where.*
[11] *Cf.* 228, I. 4.
[12] *Cf.* 256, I. 16.

ἦν τεῖχος, τὸ μὲν εὖρος πεντήκοντα ποδῶν, τὸ δὲ ὕψος ἑκατόν.

II. 1. The generals proceeded through the mountains. 2. But Menon had the left wing. 3. And Socrates advises[1] Xenophon. 4. But the breadth of this wall is twenty feet.[2] 5. The tables were laden with[3] meat. 6. They lead peltasts to the mountain. 7. On the table is venison. 8. Thence he sent the messenger upon the mountains. 9. But a lofty mountain surrounds this plain from sea to sea. 10. But this wall was twenty feet[2] in breadth and one hundred in height.

320. VOCABULARY.

εἴκοσι, indec., *twenty.*
εἴσω (*εἰς*), adv., *within, inside of.*
ἐλάφειος, -ον, *of a deer.*
ἔξω (*ἐξ*), adv., *without, outside of, beyond the reach of.*
ἔφ-οδος,[4] ἡ (*ἐπί, ὁδός*), *way to, approach.*
κέρας, -ᾶτος and -ως, *horn, wing.*
κορυφή, *top, summit.*
κρηπίς, -ῖδος, *foundation, base.*
πεντήκοντα (*πεντε*), indec., *fifty.*
πλέθρον, *a* plethrum (100 Greek feet).
πούς, ποδός, ὁ,[5] FOOT.
πυραμίς, -ίδος, pyramid.
Σπάρτη (*cf.* Σπαρτιάτης), Sparta.
Τισσαφέρνης, -εος, -ους,[6] Tissaphernes.
ὑπέρ, prep., *over* (Latin *super*): with gen., *over, above, for, in behalf of;* with acc., *over, beyond.*
ὑψηλός, -ή, -όν (*ὕψος*), *high, lofty.*

LESSON XLIV.

Imperative Active.

Review 265, 266.

321. The only tenses found in the imperative *active* are the present and aorist.[7] The distinction between these is precisely that found in the subjunctive (267). Thus τοῖς θεοῖς θύε means *offer sacrifice to the gods* (habitually), but θῦσον means simply, *sacrifice.* See further the examples in 324, 326.

[1] Use ἀναβαίνω, and see p. 318.
[2] Use the gen. (of *measure*).
[3] Use μετά, and *cf.* 92. I. 6.
[4] A smooth mute before a rough vowel is made rough.
[5] An exception to 234 b.
[6] The acc. is Τισσαφέρνην, the voc. Τισσαφέρνη, formed on the analogy of masc. substantives of the A-declension (see 107).
[7] Only a few *perfect active* forms occur, and these are rare.

322. The personal-endings, which are peculiar to the imperative, in the active are: —

	Singular.	Dual.	Plural.
2	-θι	-τον	-τε
3	-τω	-των	-ντων

323. PARADIGMS.

	Present.	First Aorist.	Pres. Imv. of εἰμί.
S. 2	λῦε	λῦσον	ἴσ-θι
3	λῡέ-τω	λῦσά-τω	ἔσ-τω
D. 2	λύε-τον	λύσα-τον	ἔσ-τον
3	λῡέ-των	λῦσά-των	ἔσ-των
P. 2	λύε-τε	λύσα-τε	ἔσ-τε
3	λῡό-ντων	λῦσά-ντων	ἔσ-των

a. In the second pers. sing. of the pres. the ending -θι is omitted. The form λῦσον in the aor. is irregular.

b. In the imv. of εἰμί, ἴσ-θι is for ἐσ-θι, and ἔσ-των (third plur.) for ἐσ-ντων. For ἔστων the forms ἔστωσαν and ὄντων also occur.

324. Imperative in Commands, Exhortations, and Entreaties.

Examine the following: —

παῖε, εἰ κελεύει ὁ παῖς, *strike, if the lad commands it.*

ἀγόντων τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς, *let them bring the soldiers.*

σὺ οὖν πρὸς θεῶν συμβούλευσον ἡμῖν, *do you, then, in Heaven's name, advise us.*

325. Rule of Syntax. — The imperative expresses a command, exhortation, or entreaty.

326. Imperative and Subjunctive in Prohibitions.

Examine the following: —

μὴ παιδεύετε τοὺς παῖδας ἀδικεῖν, *do not train the boys to do wrong.*

τοῦτον τὸν παῖδα μὴ κολάσῃς, *do not punish this boy.*

327. Rule of Syntax. — In negative commands, or prohibitions, *μή* is used with the present imperative if the act is continued, but with the aorist subjunctive if the simple occurrence of the act is to be expressed.

328. EXERCISES.

I. 1. *διάσωσον ἡμῖν τὰ πρόβατα.* 2. *τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους πάραγε.* 3. *μὴ ἄγε, ὦ Κλέαρχε, τὸ στράτευμα δεῦρο.* 4. *μὴ ποιήσῃς ταῦτα, ὦ Κλέαρχε.* 5. *μὴ λῦπήσῃς τὸν πατέρα.* 6. *Κύρῳ μᾶλλον φίλοι ἔστε ἢ τῷ ἀδελφῷ.* 7. *ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τὸν σκοπὸν πεμψάντων ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη.* 8. *ἐᾶσάτω με εἶναι καλόν τε καὶ ἀγαθόν.* 9. *μὴ καταφρονήσῃς τοῦ ἀγγέλου.*[1] 10. *ἡμᾶς κακῶς μὴ ποιήσῃς, τοὺς Κίρου φίλους.* 11. *μὴ καταλύσῃς πρὸς τοὺς ἀντιστασιώτας.* 12. *πέμψατε πρὸς τὸν ἁρμοστὴν στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς καὶ τῶν ἄλλων τοὺς ἐπιτηδείους.* 13. *Ξενοφῶντα προπέμψατε τοῖς ἵπποις*[2] *ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα.* 14. *σὺ δέ, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, ἀνακοίνωσον τῷ θεῷ*[3] *περὶ τῆς πορείας.* 15. *καὶ παρὰ τὴν γέφυραν τοῦ Τιγρητος ποταμοῦ πέμψατε φυλακήν.* 16. *ἐὰν δὲ οὗτος οὕτω κελεύσῃ, πάρεστε εἰς τὴν ἀγοράν.* 17. *ἄγετε, ὦ ἄνδρες λοχαγοί, τοὺς λόχους ὀρθίους,*[4] *τοὺς μὲν*[5] *ἐν ἀριστερᾷ,*[6] *τοὺς δ'*[5] *ἐν δεξιᾷ.*[6] 18. *καὶ εἰς τὸ μέσον*[7] *τοῦ στρατοπέδου τοὺς ἄρχοντας ἄγετε· παρέστω δ' ἡμῖν*[8] *καὶ Τολμιδης ὁ κῆρυξ.* 19. *Πρόξενος δὲ καὶ Μένων ἐπείπερ εἰσὶν ὑμέτεροι μὲν εὐεργέται, ἡμέτεροι δὲ στρατηγοί, πέμψατε αὐτοὺς δεῦρο.*

II. 1. Send Xenophon with me. 2. Be well-disposed to the Greeks. 3. Send the messengers here. 4. Do not destroy the bridge. 5. Send men with me from the van.[9] 6. But do you,

---

[1] See p. 107 [4].
[2] *on horseback.* See p. 25 [5].
[3] See p. 83 [10].
[4] *in column.*
[5] *οἱ μὲν . . . οἱ δέ, some . . . others.*
[6] So we say *on the left, on the right.* The dat. of *χείρ, χειρός, ἡ, hand,* is understood.
[7] *Cf.* 175, I. 6.
[8] Some verbs compounded with *πρός, παρά, περί, ὑπό,* take a dat. depending on the prep. See p. 31 [3].
[9] Use *στόμα.*

fellow-soldiers, bring hoplites. 7. Do not make us foes[1] to the Greeks. 8. And let this be the watchword. 9. But send others upon the mountain. 10. Be friends and allies, soldiers, to Cyrus. 11. But do you, Xenophon, call the (two) Lacedaemonians. 12. Fellow[2]-soldiers, do not wonder that[3] I am grieved.

329. VOCABULARY.

ἀνα-κοινόω,[4] *consult with, confer with.*
ἀριστερός, -ά, -όν, *left.*
ἐπεί-περ,[5] conj., *since indeed.*
εὐ-εργέτης, -ου (*εὖ, ἔργον*), *well-doer, benefactor.*
κατα-λύω, LOOSE OR *put down, unyoke, make peace.*
κατα-φρονέω,[6] *despise.*
λόχος, ὁ (*cf.* λοχ-ἀγός), *company.*
παρ-άγω, *lead along, lead on.*
πορεία (*cf.* πορεύω), *journey, march.*
πρόβατον, com. plur., *sheep, cattle.*
προ-πέμπω, *send forward, escort.*
σκοπός, ὁ, *scout, sentinel.*
Τολμίδης, -ου, Tolmides.

LESSON XLV.

Imperative Middle and Passive.

330. The tenses occurring in the imperative *middle* and *passive* are the present, aorist, and perfect. The aorist has distinct forms for the middle and passive.

331. The personal endings in the imperative middle and passive are: —

	Singular.	Dual.	Plural.
2	-σο	-σθον	-σθε
3	-σθω	-σθων	-σθων

[1] Use ἐχθρός (240).
[2] *Cf.* I. 17 above.
[3] Use ὅτι.
[4] For the force of ἀνά, see p. 64[4]. κοινόω means *make common* (κοινός, -ή, -όν, *common, joint*; *cf.* κοινῇ in 285), *consult.*
[5] ἐπεί, *since*, and πέρ, *very, just, even*, postpositive and enclitic particle.
[6] See p. 124[4].

332. PARADIGMS.

	Present M. and P.	First Aorist M.	Perfect M. and P.	First Aorist P.
S. 2	λύου	λῦσαι	λέλυ-σο	λύθη-τι
3	λῡέ-σθω	λῡσά-σθω	λελύ-σθω	λυθή-τω
D. 2	λύε-σθον	λύσα-σθον	λέλυ-σθον	λύθη-τον
3	λῡέ-σθων	λῡσά-σθων	λελύ-σθων	λυθή-των
P. 2	λύε-σθε	λύσα-σθε	λέλυ-σθε	λύθη-τε
3	λῡέ-σθων	λῡσά-σθων	λελύ-σθων	λυθέ-ντων

a. λύου is for λῡε-σο (see 200 b). λῦσαι is irregular.

b. In the aor. pass., which always uses *active* endings (see 226 a. 276 c, 307 c), λύθη-τι is for λυθη-θι, to avoid the occurrence of the rough mute (114) at the beginning of successive syllables. Observe that the aor. pass. lengthens the tense-suffix, before a single consonant.

333. EXERCISES.

I. 1. εἰς τὸ πεδίον ἀθροισθέντων οἱ Ἕλληνες. 2. ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, τοῖς θεοῖς θύσασθε. 3. ἤγησαι, ὦ Κλέαρχε, τοῦ στρατεύματος εἰς Βυζάντιον. 4. σύνδειπνον μὴ ποιήσῃ[1] τὸν κωμάρχην. 5. εὐθὺς οὖν πορεύεσθε, ἵνα ἡμῖν[2] παρασκηνῆτε. 6. τῑμηθήτω οὗτος ὁ ἀνὴρ διαφερόντως. 7. εἰ δὲ χρήζεις, πορεύου ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος. 8. εἰς Χερρόνησον βίᾳ[3] διὰ τοῦ ἱεροῦ ὄρους πορεύεσθε. 9. συστρατεύεσθε ἡμῖν ἐπὶ τοὺς βαρβάρους. 10. σῳζέσθων ὅπῃ δυνατὸν ἐστιν. 11. κολασθέντων δὲ νῦν ἀξίως τῆς ἀδικίας.[4] 12. αἰσχρῶν οὖν ἔργων[5] ἀπέχου. 13. τὰ πλοῖα μὴ μεταπέμψησθε. 14. λελύσθω[6] ἡ γέφῡρα. 15. μὴ αἰτιάσησθε τὸν ἄρχοντα. 16. τοῦτον, ὦ ἄνδρες, παίετε καὶ βιάσασθε πορεύεσθαι. 17. ἐνθῡμήθητε ὅτι ἄδηλα παντὶ ἀνθρώπῳ ταῦτά ἐστιν. 18. τὰ δ' ἐπιτήδει' ἀγοράζεσθε, καὶ συσκευάζεσθε. 19. εἰς τὴν ἕω[7] ὁρμησάσθων ἀπὸ τῶν

[1] See 327 and 276.
[2] *Cf.* 328, I. 18.
[3] See p. 25[5].
[4] See p. 91[2].
[5] *Cf.* 263, I. 14.
[6] The perf. imv. expresses finality, *let it be destroyed once for all*; literally, *let it have been destroyed.*
[7] *Cf.* 175, I. 9.

τῆς Παρυσάτιδος κωμῶν. 20. παραιτησάσθων οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ λοχᾱγοὶ περὶ τοῖν ἀνδροῖν.

II. 1. Rest in the plain. 2. Put[1] this man out of the way. 3. Call a meeting,[2] Cyrus, of the citizens. 4. Desist,[3] therefore, from this war. 5. Proceed slowly,[4] soldiers, through the plain. 6. Summon, Cyrus, the general and the peltasts. 7. Welcome the soldiers, Xenophon. 8. Summon the generals and the captains of the Greeks. 9. Let the citizens ransom their children with money.[5] 10. Let the boys be well educated. 11. Proceed with me, fellow-soldiers, against Miletus. 12. Let the citizens be collected in the market-place.

334. VOCABULARY.

αἰσχρός, -ά, -όν (*cf.* αἰσχύνη), *shameful, disgraceful, base.*
ἀξίως (ἄξιος), adv., *worthily, fitly.*
βίᾱ (*cf.* βιάζομαι), *force, violence.*
διαφερόντως, adv., *pre-eminently.*
ἐν-θῡμέομαι,[6] pass. dep., *have in mind, reflect.*
ὅπῃ (*cf.* ὅπως), conjunctive adv., *wherever, in whatever way.*
παρ-αιτέομαι (αἰτέω), *beg, intercede.*
παρα-σκηνέω (σκηνή), *encamp near* or *by.*
χρῄζω, *want, need, desire.*

LESSON XLVI.

Contract Verbs in the Imperative.

Review 241–243.

335. PARADIGMS.

	PRESENT ACTIVE.	PRESENT MIDDLE and PASSIVE.
S. 2	τίμ(αε)ᾶ	τῑμ(άου)ῶ
3	τῑμ(αέ)ά-τω	τῑμ(αέ)ά-σθω
D. 2	τῑμ(άε)ᾶ-τον	τῑμ(άε)ᾶ-σθον
3	τῑμ(αέ)ά-των	τῑμ(αέ)ά-σθων
P. 2	τῑμ(άε)ᾶ-τε	τῑμ(άε)ᾶ-σθε
3	τῑμ(αά)ώ-ντων	τῑμ(αέ)ά-σθων

[1] Use the aor. mid. of ποιέω.
[2] *Cf.* 256, I. 3. Use the aor. mid.
[3] Use ἀναπαύομαι.
[4] *Cf.* 228, I. 14.
[5] See p. 47 [5].
[6] See p. 101 [2].

S. 2	φίλ(εε)ει	φιλ(έε)οῦ
3	φιλ(εε)εί-τω	φιλ(εε)εί-σθω
D. 2	φιλ(έε)εῖ-τον	φιλ(έε)εῖ-σθον
3	φιλ(εέ)εί-των	φιλ(εέ)εί-σθων
P. 2	φιλ(έε)εῖ-τε	φιλ(έε)εῖ-σθε
3	φιλ(εό)ού-ντων	φιλ(εέ)εί-σθων
S. 2	δηλ(οε)ου	δηλ(όου)οῦ
3	δηλ(οέ)ού-τω	δηλ(οέ)ού-σθω
D. 2	δηλ(όε)οῦ-τον	δηλ(όε)οῦ-σθον
3	δηλ(οέ)ού-των	δηλ(οέ)ού-σθων
P. 2	δηλ(όε οῦ-τε	δηλ(ε)οῦ-σθε
3	δηλ(οό)ού-ντων	δηλ(οέ)ού-σθων

336. EXERCISES.

I. 1. *μὴ πολεμεῖτε ἄδικον πόλεμον.*[1] 2. *τολμάτω καὶ ὁ ἰδιώτης πορεύεσθαι.* 3. *εὐθὺς ἡγοῦ πρὸς τἀπιτήδεια.*[2] 4. *οὕτω ποιεῖτε, καὶ συσκευάσασθε.* 5. *θαρρούντων οἱ ὁπλῖται.* 6. *ἁμιλλᾶσθε, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον.* 7. *κάλει τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους δεῦρο.* 8. *σφενδονᾶτε, ὦ ἄνδρες, καὶ τοξεύετε.* 9. *τοὺς ἀργοὺς μήποτε μισθοῦσθε.* 10. *ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖτε, ὅστις*[3] *διὰ φιλιᾶς τῆς χωρᾶς ἀπάξει.* 11. *ἐρώτᾱ δὲ αὐτοὺς τίνος*[4] *ἕνεκα ἐστράτευσαν ἐπ' ἐμέ.* 12. *ἡγοῦ, ὦ Δρακόντιε, ὅπου τὸν δρόμον πεποίηκας.* 13. *τοὺς δὲ γέροντας, ὦ Σεύθη, οἴκοι ἔᾱ.* 14. *μηκέτι ἀπαιτεῖτε τὸν μισθόν.* 15. *κράτει τῶν αἰσχρῶν ἐπιθῡμιῶν.*[5] 16. *τῷ λοχᾱγῷ βοᾶτε ἄγειν τοὺς ὁπλίτᾱς ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους.* 17. *ἡμᾶς ἐκ τῆς χώρᾱς ἐᾶτε τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔχειν.* 18. *χρήματα μὴ κτᾶσθων οἱ παῖδες.* 19. *ἡμᾶς τοὺς Κύρου φίλους κακῶς ποιεῖν μὴ πειράσθω.* 20. *εἰς τὴν ἕω ὁρμᾶσθε ἐκ Χερρονήσου.* 21. *μηκέτι φοβοῦ, ὦ Κλέαρχε, μὴ κυκλωθῇς ἑκατέρωθεν.* 22. *ἀλλ'*

[1] An acc. may repeat the idea already contained in the verb. This is called the *cognate accusative*, and may follow intransitive as well as transitive verbs.

[2] See p. 55[4].

[3] *who*, nom. sing. masc. of the general relative pron., *ὅστις, ἥτις, ὅ τι*.

[4] *Cf.* 308, I. 2.

[5] See p. 90[7].

ὑμεῖς μέν, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοί, τούτων[1] ἐπιμελεῖσθε, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι πορευέσθων. 23. μὴ ἀθῡμεῖτε, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, ὅτι[2] ἡμῖν μὲν οὐκ εἰσὶ[3] τοξόται, τοῖς δὲ πολεμίοις πάρεισιν. 24. ὅστις[4] ζῆν[5] ἐπιθῡμεῖ, πειράσθω νῑκᾶν· καὶ[6] εἴ τις[7] δὲ χρημάτων[8] ἐπιθῡμεῖ, κρατεῖν πειράσθω.

II. 1. Ask Cyrus for boats.[9] 2. Do not do this, Clearchus. 3. Always fear the gods. 4. Thus, therefore, Cyrus, make your levy. 5. Call the general from[10] the rear. 6. Conquer the hoplites with Clearchus. 7. Try to do well by[11] your friends. 8. Besiege the stronghold by land and by sea. 9. Let the general be honoured by the citizens. 10. Let Clearchus lead the right wing[12] and Menon the left. 11. Let him lead the heavy-armed men slowly to the camp. 12. Call out to the general to bring the army here. 13. Try, Seuthes, to be a helper to your friends. 14. Fellow-soldiers, do not give assistance to the satrap. 15. Confer, Xenophon, with Socrates, the Athenian, about your journey.

337. VOCABULARY.

ἄ-δικος, -ον (δίκη), *unjust, wicked.*
ἁμιλλάομαι, pass. dep., *race, struggle.*
ἀπ-αιτέω, *ask from, demand.*
ἀργός, -όν,[13] *not working, idle.*
Δρακόντιος, ὁ, Dracontius.
δρόμος, ὁ, *run, race, race-course.*
ἐπι-θῡμίᾱ,[14] *desire.*
ζάω, *live.*
θαρρέω (*cf.* θαρραλέως), *be bold* or *courageous, take heart.*
ἰδιώτης, -ου, *an ordinary* or *private person* or *soldier, private.*
κρατέω, *control, be superior, master, overcome.*
μηκέτι (μή, ἔτι), *no longer.*
μήποτε (μή, ποτέ), *not ever, never.*
ὅπου (*cf.* ὅπῃ, ὅπως), conjunctive adv., *wherever, where.*
τολμάω, *venture, dare, have the courage.*

---

[1] *Cf.* 305, I. 11.
[2] *because.*
[3] After οὐ the enclitic εἰσί retains its accent. See also 188 c.
[4] *whoever. Cf.* I. 10 above.
[5] Contracted form of ζάειν.
[6] *also, further.*
[7] See p. 90[3].
[8] *Cf.* 293, I. 15.
[9] *Cf.* 293, I. 9.
[10] *Cf.* 247, I. 6.
[11] εὖ ποιέω, *do well by. Cf.* 247, I. 11.
[12] *Cf.* 256, I. 1.
[13] Contracted from ἀ-εργός (ἔργον).
[14] See p. 101[2].

LESSON XLVII.

Adjective Stems in *-ν-* and *-εσ-* of the Consonant-Declension.

Review 258.

338. PARADIGMS.

	μέλᾱς (μελαν-) *black*			εὐδαίμων (εὐδαιμον-)[1] *fortunate*	
	M.	F.	N.	M. F.	N.
S. N.	μέλᾱς	μέλαινα	μέλαν	εὐδαίμων	εὔδαιμον
G.	μέλανος	μελαίνης	μέλανος	εὐδαίμονος	
D.	μέλανι	μελαίνῃ	μέλανι	εὐδαίμονι	
A.	μέλανα	μέλαιναν	μέλαν	εὐδαίμονα	εὔδαιμον
V.	μέλαν	μέλαινα	μέλαν	εὔδαιμον	
D. N. A. V.	μέλανε	μελαίνᾱ	μέλανε	εὐδαίμονε	
G. D.	μελάνοιν	μελαίναιν	μελάνοιν	εὐδαιμόνοιν	
P. N. V.	μέλανες	μέλαιναι	μέλανα	εὐδαίμονες	εὐδαίμονα
G.	μελάνων	μελαινῶν	μελάνων	εὐδαιμόνων	
D.	μέλασι	μελαίναις	μέλασι	εὐδαίμοσι	
A.	μέλανας	μελαίνᾱς	μέλανα	εὐδαίμονας	εὐδαίμονα

a. Observe the application of the principles stated in 213 a, 2, 3, 4, 5, and 287.

b. But stems in *-αν-* add *-ς* to form the nom. sing. masc., against the rule (213 a). The fem. ends in *-αινα*.[2]

c. Most other stems in *-ν-* are of two endings (147), and form the nom. sing. masc. and fem. regularly (213 a). The accent is recessive (32). *Cf.* the declension of δαίμων in 286.

339. Like εὐδαίμων are declined: ἀ-γνώμων,[3] *ignorant, thoughtless;* ἄ-φρων,[4] *senseless, foolish;* μνήμων, *mindful;* σώ-φρων,[4] *of sound mind, discreet:* ὑπέρ-φρων,[4] *high-minded, haughty, arrogant.*

[1] εὐ-δαίμων (δαίμων), *of good fate* or *fortune.*

[2] See p. 85 [1].

[3] Root *γνω, γνο,* KNOW. *Cf.* γνώμη, *νόος* (where *γ* is lost, as in Lat. *nōscō*), ἐν-νοέω, εὔ-νοος, εὔ-νοια, εὐ-νοϊκῶς, κακό-νοος, ὄνομα, 'that by which one is known' (*cf.* Lat. *nōmen*).

[4] Related to φρήν, φρεν-ός, ἡ, *midriff, heart, mind.* So σώ-φρων (σῴζω), σωφρονέω, ὑπέρ-φρων, and κατα-φρονέω, which means literally, *set one's mind against.*

340. Adjectives with stems in -εσ- are of two endings.

341. PARADIGMS.

ἀληθής (αληθεσ-),[1] *true*		πλήρης (πληρεσ-), *full*	
M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
ἀληθής	ἀληθές	πλήρης	πλῆρες
(ἀληθέ-os) ἀληθοῦς		(πλήρε-os) πλήρους	
(ἀληθέ-ῐ) ἀληθεῖ		(πλήρε-ῐ) πλήρει	
(ἀληθέ-α) ἀληθῆ	ἀληθές	(πλήρε-α) πλήρη	πλῆρες
ἀληθές		πλῆρες	
(ἀληθέ-ε) ἀληθεῖ		(πλήρε-ε) πλήρει	
(ἀληθέ-οιν) ἀληθοῖν		(πληρέ-οιν) πληροῖν	
(ἀληθέ-ες) ἀληθεῖς (ἀληθέ-α) ἀληθῆ		(πλήρε-ες) πλήρεις (πλήρε-α) πλήρη	
(ἀληθέ-ων) ἀληθῶν		(πληρέ-ων) πληρῶν	
ἀληθέσι		πλήρεσι	
ἀληθεῖς (ἀληθέ-α) ἀληθῆ		πλήρεις (πλήρε-α) πλήρη	

a. Observe the application of the principles stated in 213 a, 2, 3, 5. The masc. and fem. acc. plur. in -εις irregularly follows the nom.

b. Review 316 b, and compare the first two paradigms in 316.

342. Like the above are declined: *ἀσθενής, weak, feeble; ἀσφαλής* (*cf.* *ἀσφαλῶς*), *safe, sure, secure; ἀφανής, unseen, out of sight; ἐγκρατής,*[2] *in possession of, master of; εὐώδης, sweet-smelling, fragrant; ἡμιδεής, half full; καταφανής, clearly seen, in plain sight, visible; ὁμαλής, level; σαφής, clear, manifest.*

343. EXERCISES.

I. 1. *μέλαν τὸ χωρίον ἦν.* 2. *οὔπω πᾶσιν ἐξὴν εὐδαίμοσιν εἶναι.* 3. *οὗτοι δὲ πάντες ὅπλα μέλανα εἶχον.* 4. *καὶ κῖνεῖν τὸ στρατόπεδον νυκτὸς*[3] *οὐκ ἀσφαλὲς ἦν.* 5. *Κῦρος γὰρ ἔπεμπε βίκους οἴνου ἡμιδεεῖς.* 6. *εὐδαίμονές εἰσιν οἱ ἄνθρωποι οἳ*[4] *ἵλεως ἔχουσι τοὺς θεούς.* 7. *ἔστι τις οὕτως ἄφρων;* 8. *ἦν γὰρ οὕτω σωτηρίᾱ ἀσφαλής, ἄλλως δὲ πάνυ*

[1] *Cf.* ἀλήθεια, ἀληθεύω.
[2] *in control of* (*cf.* κρατέω).
[3] *Cf.* 308, I. 15.
[4] *who*, nom. plur. masc. (p. 45[8]).

χαλεπὸν ἦν ἀποχωρεῖν. 9. οὕτως οὖν ἐκόλασαν οἱ θεοὶ τοὺς ὑπέρφρονας τούτους. 10. ἐπίστευον δὲ αὐτῷ οἱ στρατιῶται ὡς στρατηγῷ σώφρονι ὄντι.[1] 11. οἱ ἡμέτεροι φίλοι τῆς ἀρχῆς[2] τῆς πατρῴᾶς ἐγκρατεῖς ἔσονται. 12. μνήμονες τῶν τοῦ διδασκάλου λόγων[3] ἦσαν οἱ τῶν Περσῶν παῖδες. 13. παντάπᾶσιν ἀγνώμονές ἐστε. 14. ἐρωτᾷ τὸν Θρᾷκα εἰ ἀληθῆ ταῦτ' ἐστί.[4] 15. σαφὲς πᾶσιν ἤδη ἐστὶν ὅτι ὁ στόλος ἐστὶν ἐπὶ Ἀρταξέρξην. 16. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ τῷ τόπῳ ἦν μὲν ἡ γῆ πεδίον ἅπαν ὁμαλὲς ὥσπερ θάλαττα, ἀψινθίου δὲ πλῆρες. 17. μέλαν τι[5] ἔχων ὡς ἐπικούρημα τῆς χιόνος[6] πρὸ τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν ἐπορεύετο. 18. ἡ τοῦ Ἀρταξέρξου ἀρχὴ πλήθει[7] μὲν χώρᾶς καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἰσχῡρὰ ἦν, τοῖς δὲ μήκεσι τῶν ὁδῶν ἀσθενής. 19. ἐνταῦθα εἶχον πάντα τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὅσα[8] ἐστὶν ἀγαθά, ἱερεῖα, σῖτον, οἴνους παλαιοὺς εὐώδεις.

II. 1. But the birds were black. 2. All were senseless. 3. But this[9] was true. 4. These are not ignorant. 5. The people[10] in this country were all blacks. 6. The Chersonese was a fair and flourishing[11] country. 7. Thence the Greeks proceeded to prosperous[11] villages. 8. The soldiers were not yet out of sight. 9. For it was not safe to be among[12] the trees. 10. It was already mid-day,[13] and the enemy were not yet visible. 11. There Cyrus had a palace, and a park full of wild beasts, which he used to hunt on horseback. 12. But there were also other villages in this plain, full of supplies,[14] along the river[15] Tigris.

---

[1] *Cf.* 263, I. 11.

[2] The gen. is used with adjs. expressing *power*, as with verbs of ruling and leading (see p. 83[2]).

[3] The gen. is used with adjs. expressing *sensation* or *mental* action, as with the corresponding verbs (see p. 63[3]).

[4] See 187 a.

[5] *something*. *Cf.* 281, I. 1.

[6] *protection against the snow*. The attributive gen. here expresses the *object* of the action. This is called the *objective genitive*.

[7] *Dative of respect*, a species of the dat. of manner (see p. 25[5]).

[8] *Cf.* 263, I. 5.

[9] Use the neut. plur.

[10] Use the plur. of ἄνθρωπος.

[11] Use εὐδαίμων.

[12] ἐν.

[13] μέσον ἡμέρᾶς.

[14] ἀγαθά ('*good things*').

[15] Use the acc.

344. VOCABULARY.

ἄλλως (ἄλλος), adv., *otherwise.*
ἀψίνθιον, *wormwood.*
ἔξ-εστι (εἰμί), impersonal, *it is allowed* or *possible.*
ἐπικούρημα, -ατος, *protection, relief.*
κῑνέω, *move, remove.*
μῆκος, -εος (*cf.* μακρός), *length.*
οὔ-πω,[1] adv., *not yet.*
ὀφθαλμός, ὁ, *eye.*
παλαιός, -ά, -όν, *ancient, old.*
παντά-πᾶσι (πᾶς), adv., *all in all, altogether, wholly.*
πατρῷος, -ᾱ, -ον (πατήρ), *ancestral, hereditary.*
πλῆθος, -εος (*cf.* πλήρης), *fulness, extent, number, multitude.*
στόλος, ὁ, *armed force, expedition.*
χιών, -όνος, ἡ,[2] *snow.*

LESSON XLVIII.

Infinitive Active, Middle, and Passive.

345. The forms of the infinitive are as follows: —

	PRESENT.	FUTURE.	FIRST AOR.	FIRST PERF.	FUT. PERF.
Active.	**λύειν**	**λῡ́σειν**	**λῦσαι**	**λελυκέ-ναι**	
Middle.	**λύε-σθαι**	**λῡ́σε-σθαι**	**λύσα-σθαι**	**λελύ-σθαι**	**λελύσε-σθαι**
Passive.	**λύε-σθαι**	**λυθήσε-σθαι**	**λυθῆ-ναι**	**λελύ-σθαι**	**λελύσε-σθαι**

a. The inf. endings are: *active*, **-εν** (contracted with a preceding **ε** to **-ειν**, as **λῡ́ε-εν**, **λύειν**) or **-ναι**; *middle* and *passive*, **-σθαι**.

b. The perf. act. and aor. pass. (which always uses *active* endings) add **-ναι**, but the perf. changes **α** of the stem to **ε**, and the aor. lengthens the tense-suffix as in the indic. (226 a). The aor. act. is irregular in form.

c. Observe, as exceptions to the principle of recessive accent in verbs (62), that all infs. in **-ναι**, the aor. act. inf., and the perf. mid. and pass. inf. accent the penult.

346. The present infinitive of εἰμί is **εἶναι** (for **εσ-ναι**).

347. The present infinitive of contract verbs is as follows: —

τῑμ(άειν)ᾶν	**φιλ(έειν)εῖν**	**δηλ(όειν)οῦν**
τῑμ(άε)ᾶ-σθαι	**φιλ(έε)εῖ-σθαι**	**δηλ(όε)οῦ-σθαι**

[1] *οὐ* and *πώ*, indefinite enclitic adv., *yet, up to this time.*

[2] An exception to 292 a.

a. Observe that *-α-ειν* and *-ο-ειν* are here contracted into *-ᾶν*, *-οῦν* (not into *-ᾰ́ν*, *-οῐ́ν*), against the rule (241 i, j).

348. Present and Imperfect Indicative of *φημί*, *say*.

	PRESENT.			IMPERFECT.		
1	φη-μί		φα-μέν	ἔφη-ν		ἔφα-μεν
2	φῄς	φα-τόν	φα-τέ	ἔφη-σθα or ἔφη-ς	ἔφα-τον	ἔφα-τε
3	φη-σί	φα-τόν	φᾶσί	ἔφη	ἐφά-την	ἔφα-σαν

a. The theme is *φα-* (Latin *fā-ri*), which is lengthened to *φη-* in the sing. All the forms of the pres. indic. are enclitic, except *φῄς*.

Review 186, 187.

349. Subject of the Infinitive.

Examine the following: —

φησὶ Κλέαρχον *ἡγεῖσθαι*, *he says that Clearchus is leading the way.*
Μένων *ἐπιθῡμεῖ πλουτεῖν*, *Menon desires to be rich.*
συμβουλεύω σοι θύεσθαι, *I advise you to offer sacrifice.*

350. Rule of Syntax. — The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative. But the subject of the infinitive is not expressed when it is the same as the subject or the object of the leading verb.

351. Infinitive as Subject.

Examine the following: —

δεῖ[1] *τοὺς λοχᾱγοὺς ἀποχωρεῖν*, *the captains must withdraw.*
ἀδύνατόν ἐστι ταῦτα ποιῆσαι, *it is impossible to do this.*
ἐξὴν[2] *ἡμῖν πορεύεσθαι*, *it was permitted us to proceed.*

352. Rule of Syntax. — As subject nominative the infinitive is used chiefly with impersonal verbs or *ἐστί*.

353. Infinitive in Indirect Discourse and as Simple Object.

Examine the following: —

φησὶ Κλέαρχον *ἡγεῖσθαι*, *he says that Clearchus is leading the way.*
φησὶ Κῦρον *θηρεῦσαι*, *he says that Cyrus hunted.*

[1] See p. 108[10].

[2] See p. 83[7].

κελεύει Κλέαρχον ἡγεῖσθαι, *he orders Clearchus to lead the way.*
τί οὖν κελεύω ὑμᾶς ποιῆσαι, *what, then, do I bid you do?*

a. Observe that in all of the last four examples the inf. is the *object* of the principal verb, but that in the first two it represents the words of an original speaker and its tense corresponds in time to the same tense of the indic. (the speaker said: Κλέαρχος ἡγεῖται, Κῦρος ἐθήρευσε), whereas in the last two examples, where the inf. is the obj. of a simple verb of commanding, this distinction of tense does not exist, but both ἡγεῖσθαι and ποιῆσαι refer to the future. This is the use of the pres. and aor. also in the subj., opt., and imv. See 267, 296, 321. Hence: —

354. Rule of Syntax. — The infinitive *in indirect discourse* is used as the object of verbs of *saying* or *thinking*, or equivalent expressions. Each tense of the infinitive represents the corresponding tense of a finite mood.

355. Rule of Syntax. — The infinitive, *when not in indirect discourse*, may be used as the object of any verb whose action directly implies another action or state as its object. The present infinitive when thus used expresses *continuance* or *repetition*, the aorist *the simple occurrence of the action.*

Observe sharply the force of the tenses of the infs. in the following exercises.

356. EXERCISES.

I. 1. τὰ γὰρ ἐπιτήδεια οὐκ ἔστιν[1] ἔχειν. 2. Μίδᾶν τὸν Σάτυρον θηρεῦσαί[2] φᾶσιν. 3. ἀλλ' ἀνάγκη ἐστὶν ἤδη πορεύεσθαι. 4. ἔφη χρήματα κτήσασθαι.[3] 5. οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι ἔφασαν βουλεύσεσθαι. 6. κακῶς ἔφατε τούτους βεβουλεῦσθαι πρὸ ὑμῶν. 7. ἡμεῖς χρήζομεν διασωθῆναι πρὸς τὴν Ἑλλάδα πεζῇ. 8. ἆρ' οὐχὶ[4] καὶ ἁρπάσαι ἄξιόν ἐστι; 9. οἱ θεῶν ὅρκοι ἡμᾶς κωλύουσι πολεμίους εἶναι. 10. καὶ τοὺς φυγά-

[1] See 188 a and c.
[2] They say, Μίδᾶς τὸν Σάτυρον ἐθήρευσε.
[3] He said, χρήματα ἐκτησάμην.
[4] Strengthened form of οὐ.

δας ἐκέλευσε σὺν αὐτῷ στρατεύεσθαι. 11. ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες, δέομαι[1] ὑμῶν[2] στρατεύεσθαι σὺν ἐμοί. 12. καὶ ἐκέλευε Κλέαρχον τοῦ δεξιοῦ κέρως ἡγεῖσθαι. 13. ἢ νῖκᾶν δεήσει[1] ἢ ἡττᾶσθαι. 14. ἐπιθῡμεῖ μὲν πλουτεῖν ἰσχῡρῶς, ἐπιθῡμεῖ δὲ τῑμᾶσθαι. 15. τῑμᾶσθαι δὲ καὶ θεραπεύεσθαι ἠξίου. 16. τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς εἰς πόλεμον ἔφασαν τὸν Κῦρον διαφερόντως τῑμᾶν. 17. πέμψαι κελεύσουσι φυλακήν, ὡς διανοεῖται τὴν γέφῡραν λῦσαι Τισσαφέρνης τῆς νυκτός. 18. Ξενοφῶντος δὲ κατηγόρησαν φάσκοντες[3] ἀδικεῖσθαι ὑπ' αὐτοῦ. 19. ἠρώτησεν ὁ Κῦρος αὐτόν, Ὁμολογεῖς[4] οὖν ἐμὲ ἀδικεῖν;

II. 1. They said that Cyrus was loved[5] by the Greeks. 2. He said a Greek had been shot.[6] 3. Try, Cyrus, to make use of these.[7] 4. We, fellow-soldiers, must do this. 5. And they bid him keep the sheep safe. 6. Why should[8] we destroy the bridge? 7. I advise you to put this man out of the way. 8. They were trying to conquer the enemy. 9. But the general compelled the Greeks to proceed slowly. 10. I not only[9] struck the man, but also forced him to proceed. 11. He said that the Lacedaemonians were taking the field against Tissaphernes.

357. VOCABULARY.

ἀνάγκη (*cf.* ἀναγκάζω), *necessity, constraint.*

ἀξιόω (ἄξιος), *deem worthy, deem proper, demand.*

ἆρα, interrogative particle; joined with οὐ (ἆρ' οὐ) it implies the answer *yes*.

δια-νοέομαι,[10] pass. dep., *be minded, intend, purpose.*

Μίδᾶς, Midas.

πεζός, -ή, -όν (πούς), *on foot*; dat. sing. fem. πεζῇ as adv., *on foot.*

πλουτέω (*cf.* πλούσιος), *be rich.*

Σάτυρος, ὁ, *the* **Satyr** *Silenus.*

[1] See 309.

[2] For the const. after verbs of *plenty* and *want*, see p. 107[1]. When δέομαι means *request*, it may take a gen. of the person and an acc. of the thing (here the inf.).

[3] Pres. part. of φάσκω, *say, allege*, φημί having no part. in Attic prose.

[4] This verb takes the inf. in indirect discourse.

[5] They said, Κῦρος φιλεῖται.

[6] He said, Ἕλλην ἐτοξεύθη.

[7] *Cf.* 256, I. 4.

[8] See p. 108[10].

[9] *not only . . . but also*, καὶ . . . καί (*both . . . and*).

[10] See p. 124[3].

LESSON XLIX.

Stems in -ι- and -υ- of the Consonant-Declension.

358. PARADIGMS.

	ἡ πόλις *city* (πολι-)	ὁ πῆχυς *fore-arm* (πηχυ-)	τὸ ἄστυ *town* (αστυ-)	ὁ ἰχθῦς *fish* (ιχθυ-)
S. N.	πόλι-ς	πῆχυ-ς	ἄστυ	ἰχθῦ-ς
G.	πόλε-ως	πήχε-ως	ἄστε-ως	ἰχθύ-ος
D.	(πόλε-ϊ) πόλει	(πήχε-ϊ) πήχει	(ἄστε-ϊ) ἄστει	ἰχθύ-ϊ
A.	πόλι-ν	πῆχυ-ν	ἄστυ	ἰχθῦ-ν
V.	πόλι	πῆχυ	ἄστυ	ἰχθῦ
D. N. A. V.	(πόλε-ε) πόλει	(πήχε-ε) πήχει	(ἄστε-ε) ἄστει	ἰχθύ-ε
G. D.	πολέ-οιν	πηχέ-οιν	ἀστέ-οιν	ἰχθύ-οιν
P. N. V.	(πόλε-ες) πόλεις	(πήχε-ες) πήχεις	(ἄστε-α) ἄστη	ἰχθύ-ες
G.	πόλε-ων	πήχε-ων	ἄστε-ων	ἰχθύ-ων
D.	πόλε-σι	πήχε-σι	ἄστε-σι	ἰχθύ-σι
A.	πόλεις	πήχεις	(ἄστε-α) ἄστη	ἰχθῦς

a. Apply the principles stated in 213, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5. In the acc. plur. πόλεις, πήχεις irregularly conform to the nom. plur., but ἰχθῦς is for ἰχθυ-νς (213, 4).

b. Except in the nom. acc. and voc. sing., most stems in -ι- and some in -υ- insert an ε before the -ι- or -υ-, and the latter is dropped. Contraction then occurs, except in the gen. sing. and gen. and dat. dual and plur. See 241 a, c, f. The gen. sing. has -ως instead of -ος, but this does not affect the accent. The gen. plur. follows the accent of the gen. sing.

c. Most substantives in -υς retain -υ- and are regular, like ἰχθῦς.

d. Oxytones and perispomena with stems in -υ- have ῡ in the nom. acc. and voc. sing.

359. Gender. — Feminine are all substantives with stems in -ι- with nominative in -ις. Neuter are all those with stems in -ι-, -υ-, with nominative in -ι, -υ.

360. Like πόλις are declined: ἀκρό-πολις (*cf.* ἄκρον), *citadel*, **acropolis**; ἀνά-βασις,[1] *ascent, march inland*: διά-βασις,[1] *crossing, ford*: δύναμις (*cf.* δυνατός), *ability, force*: ἐξέτασις, *inspection, review*; κατά-βασις,[1] *descent, march to the coast*; τάξις, *order, rank*.

361. EXERCISES.

I. 1. καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις θεοῖς θύσομεν κατὰ[2] δύναμιν. 2. ὁ ποταμός ἐστι τὸ εὖρος[3] πλέθρου, πλήρης δ' ἰχθύων. 3. ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ θαλάττῃ παντοῖοι ἰχθύες ἦσαν. 4. ἐν τῷ τῶν Ἀθηναίων ἄστει νεὼ καλοὶ ἦσαν. 5. ἦσαν αἱ Ἰωνικαὶ πόλεις Τισσαφέρνους.[4] 6. ἡ δὲ Κίλισσα τὴν τάξιν τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐθαύμασεν. 7. οὗτος ἐπολέμησεν ἐμοὶ[5] ἔχων τὴν ἐν Σάρδεσιν ἀκρόπολιν. 8. ἔχει δὲ δύναμιν καὶ πεζὴν καὶ ἱππικήν. 9. εἶχον[6] δὲ οἱ Χάλυβες καὶ δόρυ ὡς[7] πεντεκαίδεκα πήχεων,[8] λόγχην[9] ἔχον. 10. ἡ κατάβασις ἦν εἰς τὸ πεδίον. 11. ἐν δὲ τῷ τρίτῳ σταθμῷ Κῦρος ἐξέτασιν ποιεῖται τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ περὶ μέσας νύκτας. 12. χρόνου πλῆθος τῆς ἀναβάσεως καὶ καταβάσεως ἐνιαυτὸς ἦν καὶ τρεῖς μῆνες. 13. Αἰγυπτίους δέ, εἰ τῇ δυνάμει[10] τῇ νῦν σὺν ἐμοὶ[11] χρήσαισθε, κολάσαισθε ἄν. 14. ἔστι[12] δὲ καὶ βασίλεια ἐν Κελαιναῖς ἐρυμνὰ ἐπὶ ταῖς πηγαῖς τοῦ Μαρσύου ποταμοῦ ὑπὸ τῇ ἀκροπόλει. 15. Ξέρξης ᾠκοδόμησε ταῦτά τε τὰ βασίλεια καὶ τὴν Κελαινῶν ἀκρόπολιν. 16. οἱ δὲ Μάκρωνες ἔχοντες γέρρα καὶ λόγχας καταντιπέρας τῆς διαβάσεως[13] ἦσαν. 17. σὺ δέ, ὦ σατράπη, τήν τε Κύρου δύναμιν καὶ χώρᾶν ἔχεις καὶ τὴν σαυτοῦ[14] ἀρχὴν σῴζεις, ἡ δὲ Ἀρταξέρξου δύναμίς σοι σύμμαχός[15] ἐστιν.

---

[1] Compounded of the prep. ἀνά, *up*, and the root βα which appears in βαίνω, *go*. So διά-βασις and κατά-βασις.

[2] *according to*.

[3] *Cf.* 319, I. 12.

[4] Predicate gen. of *possession*.

[5] *Cf.* 274, I. 4.

[6] *carried*.

[7] *Cf.* 319, I. 17.

[8] *cubits*, a cubit being about the length of the fore-arm.

[9] Here, *point* or *spike*.

[10] *Cf.* 256, I. 4. [11] See p. 70[2].

[12] See 188 b. [13] See p. 28[1].

[14] *of yourself*, gen. of the reflexive pron.

[15] Here the adj. σύμ-μαχος, -ον. The word given in 91 is the masc. of this, used as a subst.

II. 1. Tissaphernes plots against the cities. 2. There are fish in these rivers. 3. For Cyrus sent the tributes from the cities. 4. You have a city, you have money, you have men. 5. There was a road to the ford. 6. There Cyrus made a review and enumeration of the Greeks. 7. The spears and the ranks of the soldiers were in sight. 8. He collected his Greek force in the following manner. 9. The soldiers of Tissaphernes were withdrawing from the towns. 10. If you make use of the Greek force, you will easily conquer these barbarians.

362. VOCABULARY.

δόρυ, δόρατ-ος, τό, *spear.*
ἐνιαυτός, ὁ, *a year.*
καταντιπέρᾱς, adv., *over against, opposite.*
Μάκρων, -ωνος, *a* **Macronian.**
οἰκο-δομέω (*οἶκος*),[1] *build, construct.*
παντοῖος, -ᾱ, -ον (*πᾶς*), *of all sorts.*
πεντε-καί-δεκα, indec., *15.*
Σάρδεις, -εων, plur., **Sardis.**
τρεῖς, THREE.
τρίτος, -η, -ον (*τρεῖς*), THIRD.
χρόνος, ὁ, *time.*

LESSON L.

Participles Active.

363. The forms of the participles in the active are: —

PRESENT.	FUTURE.	FIRST AORIST.	FIRST PERFECT.
λῡ́ων	λῡ́σων	λῡ́σᾱς	λελυκώς

a. For the declension of *λῡ́ων*, see 262. *λῡ́σων, about to loose,* is declined in the same manner.

364. PARADIGMS.

	λῡ́σᾱς (λῡσαντ-), having loosed			*λελυκώς (λελυκοτ-), having loosed*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
S. N. V.	λῡ́σᾱς	λῡ́σᾶσα	λῦσαν	λελυκώς	λελυκυῖα	λελυκός
G.	λύσαντος	λῡσάσης	λύσαντος	λελυκότος	λελυκυίᾶς	λελυκότος
D.	λύσαντι	λῡσάσῃ	λύσαντι	λελυκότι	λελυκυίᾳ	λελυκότι
A.	λύσαντα	λῡ́σᾶσαν	λῦσαν	λελυκότα	λελυκυῖαν	λελυκός

[1] The second part is related to *δέμω, build* (*cf.* Latin *domus*).

D. N. A. V.	λύσαντε	λῡσάσᾱ	λύσαντε	λελυκότε	λελυκυίᾱ	λελυκότε
G. D.	λῡσάντοιν	λῡσάσαιν	λῡσάντοιν	λελυκότοιν	λελυκυίαιν	λελυκότοιν
P. N. V.	λύσαντες	λύσᾱσαι	λύσαντα	λελυκότες	λελυκυῖαι	λελυκότα
G.	λῡσάντων	λῡσᾱσῶν	λῡσάντων	λελυκότων	λελυκυιῶν	λελυκότων
D.	λύσᾱσι	λύσᾱσαις	λύσᾱσι	λελυκόσι	λελυκυίαις	λελυκόσι
A.	λύσαντας	λῡσάσᾱς	λύσαντα	λελυκότας	λελυκυίᾱς	λελυκότα

a. The participles form their stems by a special suffix added to the tense-stems. In the *active* this is *-ντ-* (but for the perf. *-οτ-*). Thus, pres. λῡο-*ντ-*, fut. λῡσο-*ντ-*, aor. λῡσα-*ντ-*, perf. λελυκ-*οτ-*. The α of the perf. stem (160) disappears before the suffix *-οτ-*.

b. For the formation of the cases in the masc. and neut. from these stems, see 213, 1, 2, d, 4, 5. The forms λελυκώς and λελυκός are irregular. The fem. of the aor. ends in *-ᾱσα*, of the perf. in *-υῖα*.

c. Observe, as to accent, that the perf. act. participle is oxytone (33).

365. The present participle of εἰμί is ὤν, οὖσα, ὄν, genitive, *ὄντος, οὔσης, ὄντος, etc.* (for ἐών from εσ-ων, *etc.*).

366. Participles in *-άων, -έων, -όων* are contracted: —

τῑμάων, τῑμάουσα, τῑμάον, contracted τῑμῶν, τῑμῶσα τῑμῶν: φιλέων, φιλέουσα, φιλέον, contracted φιλῶν, φιλοῦσα, φιλοῦν; δηλόων, δηλόουσα, δηλόον, contracted δηλῶν, δηλοῦσα, δηλοῦν.

Review 241, 242, 243.

367. The contracted forms are declined as follows: —

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
S. N. V.	τῑμῶν	τῑμῶσα	τῑμῶν	φιλῶν	φιλοῦσα	φιλοῦν
G.	τῑμῶντος	τῑμώσης	τῑμῶντος	φιλοῦντος	φιλούσης	φιλοῦντος
D.	τῑμῶντι	τῑμώσῃ	τῑμῶντι	φιλοῦντι	φιλούσῃ	φιλοῦντι
A.	τῑμῶντα	τῑμῶσαν	τῑμῶν	φιλοῦντα	φιλοῦσαν	φιλουν
D. N. A. V.	τῑμῶντε	τῑμώσᾱ	τῑμῶντε	φιλοῦντε	φιλούσᾱ	φιλοῦντε
G. D.	τῑμώντοιν	τῑμώσαιν	τῑμώντοιν	φιλούντοιν	φιλούσαιν	φιλούντοιν
P. N. V.	τῑμῶντες	τῑμῶσαι	τῑμῶντα	φιλοῦντες	φιλοῦσαι	φιλοῦντα
G.	τῑμώντων	τῑμωσῶν	τῑμώντων	φιλούντων	φιλουσῶν	φιλούντων
D.	τῑμῶσι	τῑμώσαις	τῑμῶσι	φιλοῦσι	φιλούσαις	φιλοῦσι
A.	τῑμῶντας	τῑμώσᾱς	τῑμῶντα	φιλοῦντας	φιλούσας	φιλοῦντα

a. δηλῶν (contracted from δηλόων) is declined like φιλῶν.

368. The Attributive Participle used Adjectively.

Examine the following: —

οὐκ ἐφίλει τὸν βασιλεύοντα Ἀρταξέρξην, *she did not love Artaxerxes, who was king.*

ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν πορεύονται, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου, *they proceed to the river, which is a hundred feet wide.*

a. Observe that the participle is here used as an attributive adj., to modify a subst. Hence: —

369. Rule of Syntax. — The participle, like any adjective, may qualify a substantive as an attributive.

370. The Attributive Participle used Substantively.

Examine the following: —

τὸν τοὺς ἵππους λύσαντα ἐκόλασε, *he punished him who had loosed the horses.*

οὗτοί εἰσιν οἱ ὑμᾶς πάντας ἀδικήσοντες, *these are the men who will wrong you all.*

a. Observe that in these examples the subst. is omitted. Hence: —

371. Rule of Syntax. — The attributive participle with the article may be used substantively.

a. Observe, in the examples given above, the *time* of the participle in relation to that of the principal verb. Hence: —

372. Rule of Syntax. — Participles denote time present, past, or future, relatively to the time of the leading verb.

373. **EXERCISES.**

I. 1. οἱ πρόσθεν ἡμῖν βοηθήσαντες τοὺς ὅρκους λελύκασιν. 2. ἦσαν γὰρ οἱ κωλύσοντες πέραν[1] τοῦ ποταμοῦ. 3. ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, χαλεπά ἐστι τὰ παρόντα.[2] 4. παύειν ἐπειρᾶτο τοὺς κωλύοντας τὴν πάροδον.[3] 5. τριήρεις γὰρ ἔχει ἡμᾶς ὁ κωλύσων. 6. Ξενοφῶν ἐρωτᾷ τί τὸ κωλῦόν[4] ἐστι πορεύεσθαι. 7. ὁ δ' αὐτοὺς κελεύει τὸν ἁρπάζοντα ἄγειν

[1] *Cf.* 111, I. 12.

[2] *The* (things) *that are at hand* (275), *i.e. the present situation.*

[3] Here *passage* in the sense of the *act of passing.*

[4] *I.e. the obstacle.*

πρὸς αὐτόν. 8. τῶν γὰρ νῑκώντων ἐστὶ καὶ τὰ ἑαυτῶν[1] σῴζειν. 9. καὶ τὸν πρῶτον βοηθήσαντα μακαριστὸν ἐποίησεν. 10. ἄλλον δὲ κωλύοντα καὶ ὑμᾶς καὶ ἡμᾶς πορεύεσθαι ἔπαισα πύξ. 11. πρὸς τῷ ποταμῷ κώμη ἦν, ἀπέχουσα[2] τοῦ ποταμοῦ παρασάγγην.[3] 12. μετὰ ταῦτα ἐπορεύοντο ἐπὶ τὸν Χάλον ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου, πλήρη δ' ἰχθύων. 13. ὑμᾶς, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, ἐπαινοῦμεν, ὅτι νῑκᾶτε Ἕλληνες ὄντες βαρβάρους. 14. ἀλλ' οὔτε τούτοις[4] ἐπικουρεῖτε οὔτε σὺν ἐμοὶ τὸν ἀτακτοῦντα παίετε. 15. Ἀβροκόμᾱς ἐχθρὸς ἀνὴρ ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ ἐστιν, ἀπέχων δώδεκα σταθμούς.[3] 16. ἔφη τὸν μὲν καλῶς ποιοῦντα ἐπαινεῖν, τὸν δὲ ἀδικοῦντα οὐκ ἐπαινεῖν.

II. 1. Parysatis loved Cyrus more than Artaxerxes, who was king. 2. He sent those who would rescue[5] the queen. 3. He courted those who were rich. 4. With the help of[6] the gods we will try to punish the wrong-doer.[7] 5. But he called those also who were besieging Miletus. 6. Those who dwelt along[8] the sea were brave. 7. For *I.* Clearchus, am the one who bade the soldiers strike Dexippus. 8. Aristippus, the Thessalian, who was[9] guest-friend to Cyrus, asked (him) for pay.[10] 9. Here there was a prosperous city, twenty parasangs distant from the sea. 10. He says that this commander always punishes wrong-doers.

374. VOCABULARY.

Ἀρίστιππος, ὁ, **Aristippus.**
ἀ-τακτέω (*cf.* τάξις),[11] *be out of order.*
δώ δεκα (δύο, δεκα), TWELVE.
ἐπαινέω, *approve, commend, praise.*
ἐπικουρέω, *lend assistance.*
Θετταλός, ὁ, *a* **Thessalian.**
μακαριστός, -ή, -όν, *deemed happy, enviable.*
παρασάγγης, -ου, **parasang,** Persian road-measure = about a league.
τριήρης, -εος, ἡ, *war-vessel, trireme.*
Χάλος, ὁ, *the river* **Chalus.**

[1] *of themselves*, gen. plur. of the reflexive pron. See p. 83[9].
[2] Here intransitively, *be distant.*
[3] See p. 63[2].
[4] See p. 25[2].
[5] See p. 24[4].
[6] σύν.
[7] See 246, and *cf.* I. 16 above.
[8] παρά with acc.
[9] *I.e. being.*
[10] See p. 100[2].
[11] See p. 51[4].

LESSON LI.

Participles Middle and Passive.

375. The forms of the participles in the mid. and pass. are: —

	Present.	Future.	First Aor.	First Perf.	Fut. Perf.
Middle	λῡ́-μενο-ς	λῡσό-μενο-ς	λῦσά-μενο-ς	λελυ-μένο-ς	λελῡσό-μενο-ς
Passive	λῡ́-μενο-ς	λυθησό-μενο-ς	λυθείς	λελυ-μένο-ς	λελῡσό-μενο-ς

a. All participles in -ος are declined like *ἀγαθός* (144).

b. The special suffix (364 a) added to the tense-stem in the mid. and pass. to form the participles is *-μενο-*.

c. But the aor. pass. uses the *active* ending *-ντ-* (364 a). Thus, *λυθε-ντ-*.

376. PARADIGM.

λυθείς (λυθεντ-), loosed

	M.	F.	N.
S. N. V.	λυθείς	λυθεῖσα	λυθέν
G.	λυθέντος	λυθείσης	λυθέντος
D.	λυθέντι	λυθείσῃ	λυθέντι
A.	λυθέντα	λυθεῖσαν	λυθέν
D. N. A. V.	λυθέντε	λυθείσᾱ	λυθέντε
G. D.	λυθέντοιν	λυθείσαιν	λυθέντοιν
P. N. V.	λυθέντες	λυθεῖσαι	λυθέντα
G.	λυθέντων	λυθεισῶν	λυθέντων
D.	λυθεῖσι	λυθείσαις	λυθεῖσι
A.	λυθέντας	λυθείσᾱς	λυθέντα

a. See 213, 1, 2, d, 4, 5. The fem. ends in *-εῖσα*.

b. The aor. pass. part. is oxytone; the pf. mid. and pass., paroxytone.

377. The present participle of contract verbs in the middle and passive is as follows: —

τῑμ(αό)ώ-μενο-ς, -η, -ον; φιλ(εό)ού-μενο-ς, -η, -ον; δηλ(οό)ού-μενο-ς, -η, -ον.

378. Uses of the Circumstantial Participle.

Examine the following: —

τοὺς βαρβάρους νῑκήσαντες οἴκαδε ἐπορεύοντο. *when they had conquered the barbarians, they proceeded home.*

ἀδικηθεὶς αὐτὸν ἔπαισα, *I struck him because I had been wronged.*

ἐπορεύοντο τὴν χώρᾱν ἁρπάζοντες, *they advanced ravaging the country.*

λῃζόμενοι ζῶσι, *they live by plundering.*

ἐπορεύετο ἐπὶ τὴν πόλιν τὰς σπονδὰς ποιησόμενος. *he proceeded to the city to make the truce.*

σωθέντες χάριν ἂν ὑμῖν ἔχοιμεν. *if we should be saved, we should feel grateful to you.*

προσεκύνησαν αὐτὸν ἐπὶ θάνατον ἀγόμενον, *they saluted him, although he was being led to execution.*

παρῆν ἔχων ὁπλῑτᾱς τριᾱκοσίους. *he was there with 300 hoplites.*

a. Observe that these participles are adverbial in their nature, that they define the *circumstances* of the action of the principal verb, and that they express respectively relations of *time, cause, manner, means, purpose, condition, concession,* and *attendant circumstance*. Hence: —

379. Rule of Syntax. — The circumstantial participle, which is predicate in its nature, defines the circumstances of an action, and expresses relations of *time, cause, manner, means, purpose, condition, concession,* or *attendant circumstance.*

a. The rule in 372 applies also to the circumstantial participle.

380. EXERCISES.

I. 1. ἦν δὲ οὗτος τῶν ἀμφὶ Μίλητον στρατευομένων.[1] 2. ἐμοί, ὦ ἄνδρες, θῡομένῳ τὰ ἱερὰ[2] καλὰ ἦν. 3. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡμέρᾱ ἦν, Χειρίσοφος θῡσάμενος ἦγε κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν. 4. ἠγεῖτο δὲ ὁ κωμάρχης λελυμένος διὰ χιόνος. 5. ἐστρατεύετο δὴ οὕτως ἐξαπατηθείς. 6. νῦν ἔξεστιν αὐτοῖς σωθεῖσι πορεύεσθαι. 7. ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἡττηθεὶς τῇ μάχῃ[3] ἀπεχώρει.

[1] Predicate *partitive* gen., *was (one) of those who, etc.*

[2] *the sacrifices* (p. 83[9]).

[3] See p. 25[5].

8. *φοβούμενοι δὲ τὴν ὁδὸν ὅμως συνηκολούθησαν.* 9. *ἐγγύς εἰσιν οἱ πολέμιοι εἰς*[1] *μάχην παρεσκευασμένοι.* 10. *διὰ δεινῶν πρᾱγμάτων, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, σεσωμένοι πάρεστε.* 11. *καὶ ἐπολέμει ἐκ Χερρονήσου ὁρμώμενος τοῖς Θρᾳξὶ τοῖς ὑπὲρ Ἑλλήσποντον οἰκοῦσι.* 12. *τῑμώμενος μάλιστα ὑπὸ Κύρου ζῶντος, νῦν ἡμᾶς τοὺς Κύρου φίλους κακῶς ποιεῖν πειρᾶται.* 13. *ἡ δὲ μήτηρ ἐξαιτησαμένη αὐτὸν ἀποπέμπει πάλιν ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν.* 14. *οἱ Ἕλληνες κοιμῶνται οἰόμενοι τὰ πάντα νῑκᾶν*[2] *καὶ Κῦρον ζῆν.*[3] 15. *στρατευόμενος οὖν εἰς ταύτᾱς τὰς χώρᾱς τούτους ἄρχοντας*[4] *ἐποίει, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ ἄλλοις δώροις*[5] *ἐτίμᾱ.* 16. *τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ θύσαντες καὶ ἀριστήσαντες ἐπορεύοντο τοὺς τοξότᾱς μεταξὺ τῶν λόχων*[6] *ἔχοντες.* 17. *τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ θῡσάμενος ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐξάγει νύκτωρ πᾶν τὸ στράτευμα.* 18. *Τί οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἀδικηθεὶς ὑπ' ἐμοῦ νῦν ἐπιβουλεύεις μοι;*

II. 1. He sent wine that had been made from dates.[7] 2. If we make a truce, we shall not be wronged by our opponents at home.[8] 3. When they had packed up, they at once advanced through the snow. 4. Aristippus, the Thessalian, since he was hard pressed by his opponents at home, asked Cyrus for pay.[9] 5. Those who took the field against Artaxerxes were Greeks. 6. But Xenophon, when he had thus offered sacrifice, proceeded to Asia. 7. But Cyrus, since he had been in peril and had been dishonoured, deliberated[10] how he should be king in place of his brother. 8. Phalinus, although he had been sent to bid[11] the Greeks proceed, advised them[12] as follows.[13] 9. He did not withdraw his right wing from the river, since he was afraid that he might be hemmed in on both flanks.[14]

---

[1] *for.*
[2] See 354.
[3] *ζάω* takes *η* instead of *ᾱ* in the contract forms (see 347).
[4] *Cf.* 274, I. 10.
[5] See p. 47 [5].
[6] See p. 28 [1].
[7] *from the date.*
[8] *Cf.* 228, I. 3.
[9] *Cf.* 293, I. 9.
[10] Use the historical pres., and say, *deliberates how he shall, etc.*
[11] *Cf.* 378, fifth example.
[12] *αὐτοῖς* (p. 31 [3]). Use *συμβουλεύω* for *advise.*
[13] *τάδε*, a cognate acc. (p. 122 [1]). For the declension of *ὅδε*, see p. 71 [2].
[14] *Cf.* 308, I. 14.

381. VOCABULARY.

ἀμφί, prep., *on both sides of:* with gen., *about, concerning;* with acc., *about.*

ἄριστάω (ἄριστον), *breakfast.*

Ἑλλήσποντος, ὁ, *the* **Hellespont.**

ἐξ-αιτέω (αἰτέω), *ask from, demand;* mid. *beg off, save by entreaty.*

ἔπ-ειτα (ἐπί, εἶτα), adv., *there-upon, there-after, moreover.*

θάνατος, ὁ (*cf.* θανατόω), *death.*

κοιμάω, *put to sleep;* mid. *go to sleep, sleep.*

λῄζομαι (*cf.* λῃστής), *plunder, pillage.*

νύκτωρ (νύξ), adv., *by night.*

οἴομαι,[1] pass. dep., *think, believe.*

προσ-κυνέω,[2] *make obeisance to, salute.*

LESSON LII.

Adjective Stems in -υ- of the Consonant-Declension. — Irregular Adjectives.

Review 258.

382. PARADIGM.

ἡδύς (ἡδυ-),[3] SWEET

S. N.	ἡδύς	ἡδεῖα	ἡδύ
G.	ἡδέος	ἡδείᾱς	ἡδέος
D.	(ἡδέϊ) ἡδεῖ	ἡδείᾳ	(ἡδέϊ) ἡδεῖ
A.	ἡδύν	ἡδεῖαν	ἡδύ
V.	ἡδύ	ἡδεῖα	ἡδύ
D. N. A. V.	(ἡδέ-ε) ἡδεῖ	ἡδείᾱ	(ἡδέ-ε) ἡδεῖ
G. D.	ἡδέοιν	ἡδείαιν	ἡδέοιν
P. N. V.	(ἡδέες) ἡδεῖς	ἡδεῖαι	ἡδέα
G.	ἡδέων	ἡδειῶν	ἡδέων
D.	ἡδέσι	ἡδείαις	ἡδέσι
A.	ἡδεῖς	ἡδείᾱς	ἡδέα

a. Observe the application of the principles stated in 213. 1. 2. 3. 5.

b. The masc. is declined like πῆχυς and the neut. like ἄστυ (358). But the gen. sing. masc. and neut. has the regular ending -ος (not -ως), and the nom., acc., and voc. plur. neut. remain uncontracted.

c. The fem. ends in -εια.[4]

[1] The fut. and aor. are formed on the theme οιε-, οἰήσομαι, ᾠήθην.

[2] *Cf.* κυνέω, *kiss.*

[3] *Cf.* ἡδέως.

[4] See p. 85 [1].

383. Like ἡδύς are declined: βαθύς (βάθος), *deep;* δασύς, *thick, dense;* ἥμισυς,[1] *half;* παχύς, *thick, stout;* τρᾱχύς, *harsh, rough.*

384. Irregular Adjectives. — Two adjectives are *irregular*, their forms being derived from different stems.

385. PARADIGMS.

	μέγας[2] (μεγα-, μεγαλο-) *great*			πολύς (πολυ-, πολλο-) *much, many*		
S. N.	μέγας	μεγάλη	μέγα	πολύς	πολλή	πολύ
G.	μεγάλου	μεγάλης	μεγάλου	πολλοῦ	πολλῆς	πολλοῦ
D.	μεγάλῳ	μεγάλῃ	μεγάλῳ	πολλῷ	πολλῇ	πολλῷ
A.	μέγαν	μεγάλην	μέγα	πολύν	πολλήν	πολύ
V.	μεγάλε	μεγάλη	μέγα			
D. N. A. V.	μεγάλω	μεγάλᾱ	μεγάλω			
G. D.	μεγάλοιν	μεγάλαιν	μεγάλοιν			
P. N. V.	μεγάλοι	μεγάλαι	μεγάλα	πολλοί	πολλαί	πολλά
G.	μεγάλων	μεγάλων	μεγάλων	πολλῶν	πολλῶν	πολλῶν
D.	μεγάλοις	μεγάλαις	μεγάλοις	πολλοῖς	πολλαῖς	πολλοῖς
A.	μεγάλους	μεγάλᾱς	μεγάλα	πολλούς	πολλάς	πολλά

386. EXERCISES.

I. 1. καὶ πάνυ ἡδὺ τὸ πῶμα ἦν. 2. τρᾱχὺς γὰρ ἦν τῇ φωνῇ[3] Κλέαρχος, καὶ ἐκόλαζεν ἀεὶ ἰσχῡρῶς. 3. ἐνταῦθα ἦν παράδεισος πάνυ μέγας καὶ καλός. 4. καὶ πόλις αὐτόθι ᾠκεῖτο μεγάλη καὶ εὐδαίμων. 5. ὁ δ' ἀνὴρ πολλοῦ[4] ἄξιος φίλος ἐστί. 6. τῶν δὲ βαρβάρων φόβος πολὺς ἦν. 7. Κύρῳ ἔπεμπεν ἡ Κίλισσα χρήματα πολλὰ εἰς τὴν στρατιάν. 8. κατὰ γὰρ μέσον[5] τὸν σταθμὸν τοῦτον τάφρος ἦν ὀρυκτὴ βαθεῖα. 9. καὶ τρᾱχὺς ἦν ὁ ποταμὸς μεγάλοις λίθοις.[6] 10. τῶν δὲ ὀπισθοφυλάκων τοὺς ἡμίσεις ὄπισθεν τῶν ὑποζυ-

[1] ἡμι-, inseparable prefix, *half-*, *cf.* Lat. *sēmi-*.

[2] *Cf.* μέγεθος.

[3] *Cf.* 343, I. 18.

[4] *worth much, valuable.* See p. 91[2].

[5] μέσος in the predicate position refers to a *part* of the subject. Thus μέση ἡ χώρα, *the middle of the country*, but ἡ μέση χώρᾱ, *the middle country.*

[6] The dat. is used to denote the *cause.* See p. 47[5].

γίων[1] εἶχεν. 11. πολλάκις δὲ χῆνας ἡμιβρώτους ἔπεμπε καὶ ἄρτων ἡμίσεα.[2] 12. ἐνταῦθά ἐστι κρήνη ἡδέος ὕδατος καὶ ἄφθονος. 13. ἦν δὲ οὗτος ὁ ποταμὸς δασὺς δένδροις, παχέσι μὲν οὔ,[3] πυκνοῖς δέ. 14. ἐν τούτῳ τῷ πεδίῳ εἰσὶ τέτταρες διώρυχες, τὸ μὲν εὖρος πλεθριαῖαι, βαθεῖαι δὲ ἰσχυρῶς. 15. μετὰ ταῦτα Κῦρος ἐπορεύετο ἐπὶ τὸν Χάλον ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου, πλήρη δ' ἰχθύων μεγάλων. 16. ἐσκήνησαν ἐγγὺς παραδείσου[1] μεγάλου καὶ καλοῦ καὶ δασέος παντοίων δένδρων.[4] 17. Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἡγεῖτο, ἔχων τὸ ἥμισυ τοῦ στρατεύματος, τὸ δ' ἥμισυ ἔτι ἦν σὺν Ξενοφῶντι. 18. ἐντεῦθεν πορεύονται εἰς Κολοσσάς, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, εὐδαίμονα καὶ μεγάλην. 19. ἐμπόριον δ' ἦν τὸ χωρίον καὶ ὥρμουν αὐτόθι ὁλκάδες πολλαί.

II. 1. The soldiers were in great hopes. 2. The wine was both fragrant and sweet. 3. There Cyrus had a palace and a great park. 4. We have plundered much property of the Cilicians. 5. Xenophon proceeded to the place with[5] the half of the rear guard. 6. But the place was thickly grown[6] with large trees. 7. Thence they proceeded into a large[7] and beautiful plain. 8. There were many villages in this plain, full of food and wine. 9. Abrocomas will do this, since he has[8] a large[7] army. 10. At about the middle of this day's march there was a deep river, a plethrum in width.

387. VOCABULARY.

ἄρτος, ὁ, *a loaf of bread.*
αὐτόθι, adv., *here, there.*
ἡμί-βρωτος, **-ον**,[9] *half-eaten.*
Κολοσσαί, **Colossae.**
λίθος, ὁ, *a stone.*
ὁλκάς, **-άδος**, *merchantman.*
ὄπισθεν (*cf.* ὀπισθο-φύλαξ), adv., *behind, in the rear.*

[1] *Cf.* 319, I. 4.
[2] *halves.* Observe that the neut. *plur.* is here used. See p. 31[2].
[3] The proclitic οὐ takes an accent at the end of a sentence or clause.
[4] The subst. in the gen. limits παραδείσου. If it stood with δασέος it would be in the dat. *Cf.* 13 above.
[5] *I.e. having* (378).
[6] *thickly grown, i.e. thick, dense.*
[7] Use μέγας when the idea is *largeness in extent*, πολύς when it is *largeness in amount* or *number.*
[8] *since he has, i.e. having* (378).
[9] ἡμι- and βρωτός, *to be eaten*, verbal adj. from βιβρώσκω, *eat. Cf.* ἡμι-δεής (342), *wanting-half* (309).

ὁρμέω, *lie at anchor, be moored.*
ὀρυκτός, -ή, -όν, *dug, artificial.*
πλεθριαῖος, -ᾱ, -ον (*πλέθρον*), *of a* plethrum, *a hundred feet.*
πολλάκις (*πολύς*), adv., *many times, often, frequently.*
πῶμα, -ατος, *drink.*
σκηνέω (*σκηνή*), *encamp, be encamped.*
ὕδωρ,[1] **-ατος, τό**, *water.*
φωνή (*cf. φημί*), *voice, speech.*
χήν, -νός, ὁ, ἡ, GOOSE.

LESSON LIII.

Stems in a Diphthong of the Consonant-Declension.

388. PARADIGMS.

	ὁ βασιλεύς[2] (*βασιλευ-*) *king*	*ὁ ἡ βοῦς* (*βου-*) *ox*, COW	*ἡ γραῦς*[3] (*γραυ-*) *old woman*	*ἡ ναῦς*[4] (*ναυ-*) *ship*
S. N.	**βασιλεύ-ς**	**βοῦ-ς**	**γραῦ-ς**	**ναῦ-ς**
G.	**βασιλέ-ως**	**βο-ός**	**γρᾱ-ός**	**νε-ώς**
D.	(*βασιλέ-ῐ*) **βασιλεῖ**	**βο-ΐ**	**γρᾱ-ΐ**	**νη-ΐ**
A.	**βασιλέ-ᾱ**	**βοῦ-ν**	**γραῦ-ν**	**ναῦ-ν**
V.	**βασιλεῦ**	**βοῦ**	**γραῦ**	**ναῦ**
D. N. A. V.	**βασιλέ-ε**	**βό-ε**	**γρᾱ-ε**	**νῆ-ε**
G. D.	**βασιλέ-οιν**	**βο-οῖν**	**γρᾱ-οῖν**	**νε-οῖν**
P. N. V.	(*βασιλέ-ες*) **βασιλεῖς**	**βό-ες**	**γρᾱ-ες**	**νῆ-ες**
G.	**βασιλέ-ων**	**βο-ῶν**	**γρᾱ-ῶν**	**νε-ῶν**
D.	**βασιλεῦ-σι**	**βου-σί**	**γραυ-σί**	**ναυ-σί**
A.	**βασιλέ-ᾱς**	**βοῦ-ς**	**γραῦ-ς**	**ναῦ-ς**

a. Observe the application of the principles stated in 213, 1, 2, 3, 4. But (a) substs. in **-ευς** add **-ᾱ** and **-ᾱς** (with the vowel lengthened) in the acc. sing. and plur.; (b) in the acc. plur. *βοῖς, γραῦς, ναῦς* are for *βου-νς, γραυ-νς, ναυ-νς*, *ν* being dropped (287); (c) final *υ* of the diphthong is dropped before all vowels in the endings, and in *ναῦς* the resulting *να-* becomes *νε-* before a long vowel and *νη-* before a short vowel; (d) the gen. sing. may end in **-ως** instead of **-ος**.

[1] See 236 a.
[2] *Cf. βασιλεύω.*
[3] *Cf. γέρων.*
[4] *Cf. ναύτης.*

389. Gender. — Masculine are all substantives whose stems end in **-ευ-**.

390. Like βασιλεύς are declined: ἑρμηνεύς (*cf.* Ἑρμῆς),[1] *interpreter*, and ἱππεύς (ἵππος), *horseman, knight*, plur. *cavalry*.

391. EXERCISES.

I. 1. ἕτοιμοί εἰσι τῷ Κύρῳ οἱ ἱππεῖς. 2. εἶχε ναῦς, αἷς[2] ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον. 3. ἱππέας χιλίους μετεπέμψατο. 4. καὶ βασιλεὺς[3] δὴ ἀντιπαρεσκευάζετο. 5. ἐν δὲ ταῖς οἰκίαις ἦσαν αἶγες, βύες, ὄρνιθες, καὶ τὰ ἔκγονα τούτων. 6. εἰ βασιλεὺς ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ στρατοπεδεύοιτο, ὁπλίσαιντο ἂν οἱ ὁπλῖται. 7. τέλος δὲ πάντες οἱ ἱππεῖς ἀπεχώρησαν. 8. καὶ Κύρῳ[4] παρῆσαν αἱ ἐκ Πελοποννήσου νῆες τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε. 9. πρὸς δὲ βασιλέᾱ ἔπεμπεν ἀγγέλους. 10. τὸ δὲ στράτευμα ἐπορίζετο σῖτον ἐκ τῶν βοῶν καὶ ὄνων. 11. πορεύεται ὡς[5] βασιλέᾱ ἱππέας ἔχων ὡς[6] πεντακοσίους. 12. ταύτης ἕνεκα τῆς παρόδου Κῦρος τὰς ναῦς μετεπέμψατο. 13. ἦσαν δ' αὐτοῖς ἱκανοὶ βύες ἀποθῦσαι τῷ Διὶ τῷ σωτῆρι. 14. καὶ παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως παρῆν Τισσαφέρνης καὶ ὁ τῆς βασιλέως γυναικὸς ἀδελφὸς[7] καὶ ἄλλοι Πέρσαι τρεῖς. 15. ἡγεῖτο δὲ Ταμὼς Αἰγύπτιος ἐξ Ἐφέσου, ἔχων ναῦς Κύρου πέντε καὶ εἴκοσιν. 16. κοινῇ δὴ ἀνερωτῶσι τὸν κωμάρχην διὰ τοῦ περσίζοντος ἑρμηνέως τίς ἐστιν ἡ χώρᾱ. 17. ὁ δ' ἑρμηνεὺς εἶπε[8] περσιστί, ὅτι παρὰ βασιλέως πορεύονται πρὸς τὸν σατράπην. 18. ὁ δὲ τῶν

---

[1] Hermes (or Mercury) was herald of Zeus and the god of persuasive speech.

[2] *with which*, dat. plur. fem. of the relative pron. ὅς, ἥ, ὅ. For the case, *cf.* 175, I. 11.

[3] *the king.* When the reference is to the great king of Persia, the article is commonly omitted.

[4] *Cf.* 106, I. 10.

[5] *to.* ὡς, in its use as an improper prep. (see p. 74[7]), takes the acc. of the person.

[6] *Cf.* 319, I. 17.

[7] *I.e.* ὁ ἀδελφὸς τῆς γυναικὸς βασιλέως.

[8] *said*, third sing. of the second aor. εἶπον, *I said*, inflected like the impf.

Ἑλλήνων ἑρμηνεὺς ἔφη τὸν Τισσαφέρνους ἀδελφὸν σὺν τοῖς Πέρσαις εἶναι. 19. ἐνταῦθα ὁ Θρᾷξ ἔχων ἱππέας ὡς τριάκοντα ηὐτομόλησε πρὸς βασιλέᾱ. 20. εἰ δέ τις ὑμῶν ἀθῡμεῖ ὅτι ἡμῖν μὲν οὐκ εἰσὶν ἱππεῖς, τοῖς δὲ πολεμίοις πολλοὶ πάρεισιν, ἐνθῡμήθητε ὅτι οἱ μύριοι ἱππεῖς οὐδὲν[1] *ἄλλο ἢ μύριοί εἰσιν ἄνθρωποι.*

II. 1. The ships lay at anchor by[2] the tent of Cyrus. 2. It was evident that the[3] king was near. 3. He sent the interpreter to[2] the generals of the Greeks. 4. The expedition[4] will be against the great king. 5. Chirisophus also, a Lacedaemonian, was on board[5] the ships. 6. Let us plunder the king's country. 7. The horsemen often hunted these wild animals. 8. For Cyrus sent to the king the tributes from the cities. 9. They asked the village-chief[6] for sheep and goats and cattle and asses. 10. And Xenophon through an interpreter demanded back the horses. 11. There is a fortified palace of the great king in Celaenae at the sources of the river Marsyas.

392. VOCABULARY.

ἀν-ερωτάω,[7] *ask, inquire of, question.*
ἀντι-παρα-σκευάζομαι, *prepare oneself in turn.*
ἀπο-θύω, *sacrifice* in payment of a vow, *offer a votive sacrifice.*
αὐτομολέω, *desert.*
γυνή, ἡ,[8] *woman, wife.*
ἔκγονος, -ον, *born* or *sprung from*; **ἔκγονον**, as subst., *offspring.*
ἕτοιμος, -ον, or **-η, -ον**, *ready, prepared.*
Ζεύς, ὁ,[9] **Zeus**, highest of the gods.
ὁπλίζω (*ὅπλον*), *arm.*
Πελοπόννησος, ἡ (*cf.* **Πελοποννήσιος**) **Peloponnesus.**
περσίζω (**Πέρσης**), *speak* Persian.
περσιστί (**περσίζω**), adv., *in* Persian.
πορίζω, *furnish, provide.*
στρατοπεδεύω (*στρατόπεδον*), *encamp.*
σωτήρ, -ῆρος (*σῴζω*), *saviour.*
τριάκοντα (*τρεῖς*), indec., THIRTY.

---

[1] Neut. of *οὐδείς, οὐδεμία, οὐδέν, nobody, nothing.*
[2] *παρά* with acc.
[3] *Cf.* I. 4 above.
[4] Use *ὁδός.*
[5] Use *πάρειμι ἐπί* with gen.
[6] *Cf.* 293, I. 9.
[7] See p. 64[4].
[8] Irregularly declined: sing., *γυνή, γυναικός, γυναικί, γυναῖκα, γύναι*; dual, *γυναῖκε, γυναικοῖν*; plur., *γυναῖκες, γυναικῶν, γυναιξί, γυναῖκας.*
[9] Irregularly declined: *Ζεύς, Διός, Διί, Δία, Ζεῦ.*

LESSON LIV.

Affinity of Words. — Reading Lesson.

Give the meaning of the following words: —

393.

WORD LIST.

ἀγνώμων *
ἄδικος *
αἰσχρός *
ἀκρόπολις *
ἀληθής *
ἄλλως *
ἀμιλλάομαι
ἀμφί
ἀνάβασις *
ἀνάγκη *
ἀνακοινόω *
ἀνερωτάω *
ἀντιπαρασκευάζομαι *
ἀξιόω *
ἄξιως *
ἀπαιτέω *
ἀποθύω *
ἆρα
ἄργός *
ἀριστάω *
ἀριστερός
Ἀρίστιππος
ἄρτος
ἀσθενής
ἄστυ
ἀσφαλής *
ἀτακτέω *
αὐτόθι
αὐτομολέω
ἀφανής
ἄφρων *
ἀψίνθιον
βάθος *
βαθύς *
βασιλεύς *
βέλος
βίᾱ *
βοῦς
γραῦς *
γυνή
δασύς
διάβασις *
διανοέομαι *
διαφέροντως
δόρυ
Δρακόντιος
δρόμος
δύναμις *
δώδεκα *
ἐγκρατής *
ἔθνος
εἴκοσι
εἴσω *
ἔκγονος
ἐλάφειος
Ἑλλήσποντος
ἐνθῡμέομαι *
ἐνιαυτός
ἐξαιτέω *
ἔξεστι *
ἐξέτασις
ἔξω *
ἐπαινέω
ἐπείπερ *
ἔπειτα *
ἐπιθῡμίᾱ *
ἐπικουρέω *
ἐπικούρημα *
ἑρμηνεύς *
ἕτοιμος
εὐδαίμων *
εὐεργέτης *
εὖρος
εὐώδης
ἔφοδος *
ζάω
Ζεύς
ἡδύς *
ἡμίβρωτος *
ἡμιδής *
ἥμισυς *
θάνατος *
θαρρέω *
Θέτταλος
ἰδιώτης
ἱππεύς *
ἰχθύς
κατάβασις *
καταλύω *
καταντιπέρᾱς
καταφανής
καταφρονέω *
κέρας
κῑνέω
κοιμάω
Κολοσσαί
κορυφή
κράνος
κρατέω *
κρέας
κρηπίς
λῄζομαι *
λίθος
λόχος *
μακαριστός
Μάκρων
μέγας *
μέγεθος *
μέλᾱς
μηκέτι *
μῆκος *
μήποτε *
Μίδας
μνήμων
ναῦς *
νύκτωρ *
οἰκοδομέω *
οἴομαι
ὁλκάς
ὁμαλής
ὅπη *
ὄπισθεν *
ὁπλίζω *
ὅπου *
ὁρμέω
ὄρος
ὀρυκτός
οὔπω *
ὀφθαλμός
παλαιός
παντάπᾱσι *
παντοῖος *
παράγω *
παραιτέομαι *
παρασάγγης
παρασκηνέω *
πατρῷος *
παχύς
πεζός *
Πελοπόννησος *
πεντεκαίδεκα *
πεντήκοντα *
περσίζω *
περσιστί *
πῆχυς
πλεθριαῖος *
πλέθρον *
πλῆθος *
πλήρης *
πλουτέω *
πόλις *
πολλάκις *
πολύς *
πορείᾱ *
πορίζω
πούς *
πρόβατον
προπέμπω *
προσκυνέω
πῦραμίς

πῶμα	στόλος	τέλος	τριήρης	φημί*
Σάρδεις	στρατοπεδεύω*	Τισσαφέρνης	τρίτος*	φωνή*
Σάτυρος	Σωκράτης	τολμάω	ὕδωρ	Χάλος
σαφής	σωτήρ*	Τολμίδης	ὑπέρ	χήν
σκηνέω*	σώφρων*	τραχύς	ὑπέρφρων*	Χιών
σκοπός	τάξις*	τρεῖς*	ὑψηλός*	χρῡ́ζω
Σπάρτη*	τεῖχος	τριάκοντα*	ὕψος*	χρόνος

Review 313.

Associate each starred word in 393 with some other word or words of those given in 130, 194, 249, 313, and 393, related to it in form and meaning.

Review 140, 142.

Read and translate again 143, 195, 250, 314.

Read and translate the following passage: —

394. Κῦρος.

V. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς ἑπτὰ παρασάγγᾱς πεντήκοντα καὶ δύο εἰς πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθα ἀφικνεῖται παρὰ Κῦρον ἡ τοῦ Κιλίκων βασιλέως γυνή, καὶ αὐτῷ ἔδωκε χρήματα πολλά. τῇ δὲ στρατιᾷ τότε ἀπέδωκε Κῦρος μισθὸν τεττάρων μηνῶν. εἶχε δὲ ἡ Κίλισσα καὶ φύλακας περὶ αὑτὴν Κίλικας καὶ Ἀσπενδίους.

ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγᾱς εἴκοσιν εἰς Τυριαῖον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρᾱς τρεῖς. καὶ ἐδεῖτο ἡ Κίλισσα Κύρου ἐξετάζειν τὸ στράτευμα. ἐξέτασιν οὖν ποιεῖται ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων. εἶχε δὲ τὸ μὲν δεξιὸν τῶν Ἑλλήνων Μένων καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, τὸ δὲ εὐώνυμον Κλέαρχος καὶ οἱ ἐκείνου, τὸ δὲ μέσον οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοί. ἐθεώρει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος πρῶτον μὲν τοὺς βαρβάρους, εἶτα δὲ τοὺς Ἕλληνας. εἶχον δὲ πάντες κράνη χαλκᾶ καὶ ἀσπίδας. ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντας ἐθεώρησε, πέμψᾱς ἑρμηνέᾱ παρὰ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐκέλευσεν ἐπιχωρῆσαι ὅλην τὴν φάλαγγα. τῶν δὲ βαρβάρων φόβος πολὺς ἦν καὶ ἥ τε Κίλισσα ἔφυγεν ἐπὶ τῆς ἁρμαμάξης

καὶ οἱ ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ ἔφυγον· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες σὺν γέλωτι ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνὰς ἦλθον. ἡ δὲ Κίλισσα τὴν λαμπρότητα καὶ τὴν τάξιν τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐθαύμασεν.

ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Φρυγίας καὶ τῆς Λυκαονίας σταθμοὺς ὀκτὼ παρασάγγας πεντήκοντα. τὴν δὲ Λυκαονίαν διήρπασαν οἱ Ἕλληνες ὡς πολεμίαν οὖσαν. ἐντεῦθεν Κῦρος τὴν Κίλισσαν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν ἀποπέμπει· καὶ συνέπεμψεν αὐτῇ Μένωνα καὶ τοὺς ἐκείνου. Κῦρος δὲ μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων ἐξελαύνει διὰ Καππαδοκίας σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε πρὸς Δάνα, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα.

NOTES.

1. **ἑπτά**, SEVEN. — 2. **ἀφικνεῖται**: ἀφικνέομαι, *arrive*. — 4. **ἀπ-έδωκε**: ἀπό in composition often signifies *what is due*. — 5. **τεττάρων**: gen. plur. masc. — 6. **αὑτήν**, *herself*, acc. sing. fem. of the reflexive pron. — **Ἀσπενδίους, Aspendians**. — 7. Review 141, 2. — 9. **Κύρου**: *cf.* 356, l. 11. — 12. **οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ**, *those with him*. See p. 83[9] and *cf.* οἱ ἐκείνου, οἱ ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ, in lines 13 and 20. — 14. **πρῶτον**: acc. sing. neut. used adverbially. — 16. **ἀσπίδας**: ἀσπίς, -ίδος, *a shield*. — 17. **ἐπιχωρῆσαι**: ἐπι-χωρεω, *advance*. — 20. **γέλωτι**: γέλως, -ωτος, *laughter*. — 21. **λαμπρότητα**: λαμπροτης, -ητος, *splendour*. — 27. **αὐτῇ**, *her*, dat. sing. fem.

Translate the following passage into Greek: —

395. When he had made this enumeration of his soldiers in the park, Cyrus set out from Celaenae, and marched through Phrygia 7 stages, 52 parasangs, to an inhabited city. Here he remained five days; for his soldiers were demanding their pay. At this point the Cilician queen arrived (on a visit) to Cyrus, accompanied by Cilicians and Aspendians, and made him a large gift of money. With this Cyrus paid his troops. Thence he marches to Thymbrium (Θύμβριον), a city of Phrygia. Here by the side of the road is the spring of Midas, king of Phrygia. At this spring they say that Midas caught the Satyr. Thence Cyrus marches many stages through Phrygia, Lycaonia, and Cappadocia to Dana, a populous city, large and flourishing.

LESSON LV.

Formation of Words.

NOTE. — Lessons LV. and LVI. should be read carefully (the teacher explaining difficulties), and should then be used for reference. A careful reading of these two Lessons, with proper inspection of the examples, will make it easy for the pupil to understand the formation of the words subsequently to be introduced, especially in the groups which are to be a part of the following Lessons.

396. Simple and Compound Words. — A *simple* word contains a single stem, as κακό-ς, *evil;* νόο-ς, *mind.* A *compound* word contains two or more stems, as κακό-νοο-ς, *evil-minded.*

397. Primitives and Denominatives. — A word formed directly from a root (133) or the theme of a verb (151) is called a *primitive,* as ἀρχ-ή, *beginning, rule,* from αρχ, root and also theme of ἄρχ-ω, *begin, rule.* A word formed directly from the stem of a noun (substantive or adjective) is called a *denominative,* as ἀρχα-ῖο-ς, *original, ancient,* from αρχᾱ-, stem of ἀρχ-ή.

398. Suffixes. — Most substantives and adjectives are formed by means of certain endings called *suffixes.* Thus λόγ-ο-ς (stem λογο-) from the root λεγ (*cf.* λέγ-ω, *say*), by means of the suffix -ο-; ἀρχα-ῖο-ς (stem αρχαιο-) from the stem αρχᾱ-, by means of the suffix -ιο-.

399. A root may suffer change of form in the process of word-formation. In particular, the vowel of the root is often changed.

400. A root is sometimes *increased* by the addition of a consonant at the end. The consonants most commonly added are θ, ν, σ.

401. The addition of suffixes gives rise to many sound-changes. For example: —

a. The final consonant of a root, theme, or stem, is subject to the usual euphonic change before a consonant in the suffix, as λέξις, *speaking,* for λεγ-σι-ς (215 b); δικαστής, *judge,* for δικαδ-τη-ς (p. 150[1]).

b. Vowels brought together are often contracted, as ἀρχαῖος, *ancient*, for αρχα-ιο-ς; δίκαιος, *just*, for δικα-ιο-ς.

c. The final vowel or diphthong of a noun-stem is often dropped before a suffix that begins with a vowel, as ἄγρ-ιος, *wild*, from ἀγρό-ς, *field*; βασιλ-ικός, *royal*, from βασιλεύ-ς, *king*.

d. The final vowel of a noun-stem is sometimes changed to another vowel, as οἰκέ-της, *servant*, from οἶκο-ς, *house*; φοβε-ρός, *fearful*, from φόβο-ς, *fear*.

e. The final vowel of a verb-theme may be lengthened before a consonant, as ἀξίω-μα, *dignity*, from ἀξιό-ω, *think worthy*: ποίη-σις, *composition*, from ποιέ-ω, *make*.

Formation of Substantives.

402. A few substantives are formed from roots or verb-themes without suffix. Thus: —

κλώψ (stem κλωπ-), *thief*, from the root κλεπ (390), *steal*; φύλαξ (φυλακ-), *guard*, from the theme φυλακ- of φυλάττω, *guard*.

403. Many substantives are formed with the suffixes: —

-ο- (nom. -ο-ς, masc. or fem., or -ο-ν, neut.) and -ᾱ- (nom. -ᾱ or -η, fem.). Thus: —

λόγ-ο-ς, *word*, root λεγ (399), *speak*. φορ-ά, *tribute*, root φερ (399), *bring*.
πέδ-ο-ν, *ground*, root πεδ, *tread*. πέδ-η, *fetter*, root πεδ, *tread*.

404. The following suffixes denote the *agent* in primitives (397), the *person who has to do with* an object in denominatives: —

-ευ- (nom. -ευ-ς, masc.), as γραφ-ευ-ς, *writer*, root γραφ (γράφ-ω, *write*); ἱππ-εύ-ς (401 c), *horseman*, stem ἱππο- (ἵππο-ς, *horse*).

-τηρ- (nom. -τηρ, masc.), as σω-τήρ, *saviour*, theme σω- (σῴζω, *save*).

-τωρ (nom. -τωρ, masc.), as ῥη-τωρ (399), *orator*, theme ερ-, ῥε- (ἐρ-ῶ, *I shall say*).

-τα- (nom. -τη-ς, masc.), as λῃσ-τή-ς (401 a),[1] *robber*, theme λῃδ- (λῄζομαι, *plunder*); τοξό-τη-ς, *bowman*, stem τοξο- (τόξο-ν, *bow*).

405. The *action* is expressed (in primitives only) by the suffixes: —

-τι- (nom. -τι-ς, fem.), as πίσ-τι-ς (401 a),[1] *faith*, root πιθ (πείθ-ω, *persuade*).

-σι- (nom. -σι-ς, fem.), as τάξι-ς (for ταγ-σι-ς, 401 a, 215 b), *arrangement*, theme ταγ (τάττω, *arrange*).

-σιᾰ- (nom. -σιᾰ, fem.), as θυ-σία, *offering*, root θυ (θύ-ω, *sacrifice*).

[1] A lingual mute (114) before another lingual mute is changed to σ.

-μο- (nom. **-μο-ς**, masc.), as **σπασ-μό-ς** (400), *spasm*, root **σπα** (**σπά-ω**, *draw*).

-μᾱ- (nom. **-μη**, fem.), as **τῑ-μή**, *honour*, root **τι** (**τί-ω**, *honour*).

-ειᾱ- (nom. **-ειᾱ**, for **-ευ-ιᾱ**, from verbs in **-ευ-ω**), as **στρατ-είᾱ**, *campaign*, (**στρατεύ-ω**, *march*).

406. The *result* of an action is expressed (in primitives only) by the suffixes: —

-ματ- (nom. **-μα**, neut.), as **ῥῆ-μα** (401 e), *word*, theme **ερ-**, **ῥε-** (**ἐρ-ῶ**, *I shall say*).

-εσ- (nom. **-ος**, neut.), as **γέν-ος**, *race*, root **γεν**, *produce*.

407. The *means* or *instrument* is expressed by the suffix: —

-τρο- (nom. **-τρο-ν**, neut.) as **λύ-τρο-ν**, *ransom*, theme **λυ-** (**λύ-ω**, *loose*); **ἄρο-τρο-ν**, *plough*, theme **αρο-** (**ἀρό-ω**, *plough*).

408. Substantives expressing *quality* are formed from adjective-stems by the suffixes: —

-τητ- (nom. **-τη-ς**, fem.), as **πιστό-τη-ς**, *fidelity*, stem **πιστο-** (**πιστό-ς**, *faithful*).

-συνᾱ- (nom. **-συνη**, fem.), as **δικαιο-σύνη**, *justice*, stem **δικαιο-** (**δίκαιο-ς**, *just*).

-ιᾱ- (nom. **-ιᾱ**, fem.), as **ἐλευθερ-ίᾱ** (401 c), *freedom*, stem **ελευθερο-** (**ἐλεύθερο-ς**, *free*).

-εσ- (nom. **-ος**, neut.), as **βάθ-ος** (401 c), *depth*, stem **βαθυ-** (**βαθύ-ς**, *deep*).

409. *Diminutives* are formed from substantive-stems by the suffix: —

-ιο- (nom. **-ιο-ν**, neut.), as **παιδ-ίο-ν**, *little child*, stem **παιδ-** (**παῖ-ς**, *child*).

410. The *place* is expressed by the suffix: —

-τηριο- (nom. **-τηριο-ν**, neut.), as **δικασ-τήριο-ν** (401 a),[1] *court-house*, theme **δικαδ-** (**δικάζω**, *judge*).

LESSON LVI.

Formation of Words (continued).

Formation of Adjectives.

411. The following are the commonest suffixes forming primitives: —

-υ- (nom. **-υ-ς**, **-εια**, **-υ**), as **ἡδ-ύ-ς**, *sweet*, root **ἁδ** (399), *sweet*.

-εσ- (nom. **-ης**, **-ες**) as **ψευδ-ής**, *false*, theme **ψευδ-** (**ψεύδ-ω**, *deceive*).

[1] See p. 150[1].

-μον- (nom. **-μων, -μον**), as **μνή-μων** (401 e), *mindful*, theme **μνα-** (**μι-μνή-σκω**, *remind*).

412. The idea of *belonging* or *pertaining to* is expressed in denominatives by the suffix: —

-ιο- (nom. **-ιο-ς, -ιᾱ, -ιο-ν**, or **-ιο-ς, -ιο-ν**), as **πολέμ-ιο-ς** (401 c), *hostile*, stem **πολεμο-** (**πόλεμο-ς**, *war*).

413. The idea of *pertaining*, often with the notion of *fitness* or *ability*, is expressed by the suffixes: —

-ικο- (nom. **-ικο-ς, -ικη, -ικο-ν**), as **πολεμ-ικό-ς** (401 c), *skilled in war*, stem **πολεμο-** (**πόλεμο-ς**, *war*); **γραφ-ικό-ς**, *able to write*, root **γραφ** (**γράφ-ω**, *write*).

-τικο- (nom. **-τικο-ς, -τικη, -τικο-ν**), as **βουλευ-τικό-ς**, *able to advise*, theme **βουλευ-** (**βουλεύ-ω**, *advise*).

414. The idea of *material* is expressed by the suffixes: —

-εο- (nom. **-εο-ς, -εᾶ, -εο-ν**), as **χρύσ-εο-ς** (401 c), *golden*, stem **χρῡσο-** (**χρῡσ-ό-ς**, *gold*).

-ινο- (nom. **-ινο-ς, -ινη, -ινο-ν**), as **κρῖθ-ινο-ς** (401 c), *of barley*, stem **κρῑθᾱ-** (**κρῑθή**, *barley*).

415. The idea of *fulness* or *abundance* is expressed by the suffix: —

-εντ- (nom. **-εις, -εσσα, -εν**), as **χαρι-εις**, *graceful*, stem **χαριτ-, χαρι-** (**χάρι-ς**, *grace*).

416. The following suffixes cannot be so distinctly classified as those given above: —

-ο- (nom. **-ο-ς, -ᾱ** or **-η, -ο-ν**, or **-ο-ς, -ο-ν**), as **λοιπ-ό-ς** (399), *remaining*, root **λιπ**, *leave*.

-ιμο- (nom. **-ιμο-ς**, *etc.*), as **ἄλκ-ιμο-ς** (401 c), *valiant*, stem **αλκᾱ-** (**ἀλκή**, *prowess*).

-σιμο- (nom. **-σιμο-ς**, *etc.*), as **χρή-σιμο-ς** (401 c), *useful*, theme **χρα-** (**χρά-ομαι**, *use*).

-νο- (nom. **-νο-ς**, *etc.*), as **δει-νό-ς**, *fearful*, root **δει** (**δείδω**, *fear*).

-ρο (nom. **-ρο-ς**, *etc.*), as **φοβε-ρό-ς** (401 d), *frightful*, stem **φοβο-** (**φόβο-ς**, *fear*).

-λο- (nom. **-λο-ς**, *etc.*), as **δει-λό-ς**, *timid*, root **δει**, *fear*.

Denominative Verbs (397).

417. The most important endings, as seen in the present indicative, are the following: —

-α-ω, as **τῑμά-ω**, *honour*, stem **τῑμᾱ-** (**τῑμή**, *honour*); **αἰτιά-ομαι**, *accuse*, stem **αἰτιᾱ-** (**αἰτίᾱ**, *blame*).

-ε-ω, as φοβέ-ω, *frighten*, stem φοβο- (φόβο-s, *fear*); κρατέ-ω, *be master of*, stem κρατεσ- (κράτος, *power*).

-ο-ω, as δουλό-ω, *enslave*, stem δουλο- (δοῦλο-s, *slave*); ἐλευθερό-ω, *free*, stem ελευθερο- (ἐλεύθερο-s, *free*).

-ευ-ω, as βασιλεύ-ω, *be king*, stem βασιλευ- (βασιλεύ-s, *king*); βουλεύ-ω, *plan*, stem βουλᾱ- (βουλή, *plan*).

-αζω (for -αδ-ιω), as ἀναγκάζω, *compel*, stem αναγκᾱ- (ἀνάγκη, *necessity*); ἐργάζομαι, *work*, stem εργο- (ἔργο-ν, *work*).

-ιζω (for -ιδ-ιω), as περσίζω, *speak Persian*, stem Περσᾱ- (Πέρση-s, *Persian*); ἐλπίζω, *hope*, stem ελπιδ- (ἐλπί-s, *hope*).

-αινω (for -αν-ιω), as σημαίνω, *signify*, stem σηματ- (σῆμα, *sign*); χαλεπαίνω, *be angry*, stem χαλεπο- (χαλεπό-s, *severe*).

-ῡνω (for -υν-ιω), as ἡδύνω, *sweeten*, stem ἡδυ- (ἡδύ-s, *sweet*); λαμπρύνω, *brighten*, stem λαμπρο- (λαμπρό-s, *bright*).

a. Denominative verbs are formed from the stems of a great variety of nouns. The endings here given displace, by the rule, the last vowel or diphthong, or vowel and consonant, of the stem to which they are added. But they are sometimes added to a stem without change.

Compound Words. — I. Form.

418. When a noun stands as the first part of a compound word, only its stem is used, as **κακό-νοος**, *evil-minded*.

419. In the case just mentioned, the following changes of stem may occur: —

a. In stems of the A-declension, ᾱ may change to ο, as λυρο-ποιός, *lyre-maker* (λύρᾱ, *lyre*, stem λυρᾱ-, and ποιέω, *make*).

b. Stems of the vowel-declension may drop the final vowel before a following vowel, as κωμ-άρχης, *village-chief* (κώμη, *village*, stem κωμᾱ-, and ἄρχω, *rule*); στρατ-ηγός, *general* (στρατός, *army*, stem στρατο-, and ἀγός, *leader*).

c. Stems of the consonant-declension generally add ο before a consonant, as ἀνδριαντ-ο-ποιός, *image-maker* (ἀνδριάς, *image*, stem ανδριαντ-, and ποιέω, *make*).

d. But stems in -σ- may change to ο-stems, as σκευο-φόρος, *baggage-carrier* (σκεῦος, *baggage*, stem σκευεσ-, and φέρω, *carry*).

420. An adverb may be the first part of a compound word, as **εὖ-νοος**, *well-disposed*; ἀει-λογίᾱ, *continual talking*.

421. A preposition may be the first part of a compound word, as **ἐπι-βουλή**, *plot*; **ἐγ-κρατής**, *master of* (ἐν, *in*, and κράτος, *power*).

422. For compound verbs, see 127, 128. Compound verbs, properly so called, can be formed only by prefixing a preposition to a verb. When formed, as denominatives, from the stem of a compound noun, they are called *indirect compounds*, as στρατηγέω, *be general* (στρατηγό-ς, *general*, stem στρατηγο-).

423. Compounds of which the first part is a verb are chiefly poetic, but on the stem of such compounds other words are formed which occur in prose, as πείθ-αρχο-ς (πείθ-ομαι, *obey*, and ἀρχός, *leader*), *obedient to authority*; πειθαρχέ-ω, *obey*.

a. The first part is either the theme of the verb (sometimes with a vowel added, sometimes with -σι- added, which becomes -σ- before a vowel) or the present stem.

424. The following inseparable particles are used only as prefixes: —

a. ἀ- *negative*, originally ἀια-, afterwards ἀι- (which is its usual form before vowels, whereas ἀ- is used before consonants), with negative force, Lat. *in-*, Eng. UN-, as ἄ-δικος, *unjust*; ἀν-ήκεστος, *incurable*.

b. ἀ- *copulative* (older form ἀ-), expressing union, Eng. *together*, as ἄ-λοχος, *bed-fellow* (λέχος, *bed*); ᾱ̆-πᾶς, *all together*.

c. δυσ-, *ill* (opposed to εὖ, *well*), as δύσ-οδος, *hard to pass*.

d. ἡμι-, *half-*, Lat. *sēmi-*, as ἡμί-θεος, *demigod*.

425. The last part of a compound is often a word not in use as a separate noun, as λιθο-ποιός, *ligre-maker* (-ποιος, *maker*, is not used separately).

426. The initial vowel of the last part of a compound noun may be lengthened, *e.g.* α, ε, or ο may respectively become η or ᾱ, η, or ω, as στρατ-ηγός, *general* (ἀγός, *leader*): λοχ-ᾱγός, *captain* (λόχος, *company*); κατ-ήγορος, *accuser* (κατά, *against*, and ἀγορεύω, *speak*); ἐπ-ώνυμος, *named for* (ὄνομα, *name*).

427. When a noun stands as the last part of a compound, its final syllable is often changed, as φιλό-τῑμος, *honour-loving* (τῑμή): συν-τράπεζος, *table-companion* (τράπεζα, *table*).

Compound Words. — II. Meaning.

In respect to their meaning, compound nouns (substantive and adjective) are of three classes: —

428. *Objective* compounds, one part of which is a substantive and stands to the other part in the relation expressed by an oblique case, as λυρο-ποιός, *lyre-maker*, στρατ-ηγός, *army-leader*, στρατό-πεδον, *camp* ('ground for an army').

429. *Determinative* compounds, in which the first part defines the second in the sense of an adjective or adverb, as ἀκρό-πολις, *citadel* (= ἀκρὰ πόλις), ἀ̆ει-λογίᾱ, *continual talking*.

430. *Possessive* compounds, adjectives in which the first part defines the second (as in determinatives), and the whole describes the possessor, as ἀργυρό-πους, *with silver feet*; κακο-δαίμων, *evil-fated*.

LESSON LVII.

Word-Grouping.

Review 132–137.

431. The Greek language is very closely connected with *Latin* as a *sister* language. Both belong to the family of languages called Indo-European, and contain many words that had a common origin.

For example, ἄγω and **agō** (R. **ag**); ἀργύριον and **argentum** (R. **arg**); ἁρπάζω and **rapiō** (R. **rap**); δῶρον and **dōnum** (R. **do**), *etc.*

432. Again, many *English* words are more or less directly *borrowed* from Greek.

For example, **barbarous**; **demon**; **Hellenic**; **metropolis**; **myriad**; **philanthropy**; **phonetic**; **theism**; **zone**, *etc.*, English words obviously connected with Greek words in the preceding lists.

433. Some important English words are not borrowed from Greek, but are nevertheless related to Greek words, since they are derived from the same original source. Such English words are called *cognate*.[1] Their relationship to the Greek words is

[1] *Borrowed* English words have been printed in the vocabularies and occasionally elsewhere in **black-face** letter, *cognate* words, in SMALL CAPITALS. This practice will be continued in the English division of the groups to be given hereafter and in the general vocabulary.

generally obscured by changes in form,[1] and sometimes in meaning. There is generally a corresponding Latin word.

For example, **πατήρ**, FATHER, *pater*; **φέρω**, BEAR, *ferō*; **καλέω**, HAUL, *calō*; **γένος** (*race*), KIN, *genus*; **χήν**, GOOSE, *ānser*; **μήτηρ**, MOTHER, *māter*; **δέκα**, TEN, *decem*; **θύρᾱ**, DOOR, *foris, etc.*

We thus discover a second important guiding principle, to be added to the direction given in 137: —

434. *In acquiring a Greek vocabulary, associate with the Greek words that belong together in a group the related Latin and English words.*

The bearing and importance of the directions given in 137 and 434 will be made clearer by an inspection of the following typical group.

Analyze the Greek words in the group, referring to Lessons LV. and LVI., and point out the case-ending (47, 212) or personal-ending (154), the suffix, the stem, and the preceding stem, theme, or root on which it is formed, noting carefully changes of form (399, 400, 401). In denominative verbs (417) it will be sufficient to point out the ending and the preceding stem. In compounds, name first the parts that compose the word.

Many suffixes will occur in the groups in the following Lessons which are not given in Lessons LV. and LVI. The number of suffixes both in Greek and in Latin is very great, and the brief lists in Lessons LV. and LVI. give only the most important. The meaning of suffixes, moreover, sometimes shifts; and the distinction of suffixes as forming primitives or denominatives (397) is often not applicable. The facts, however, stated in Lessons LV. and LVI. generally hold good, and these Lessons exemplify the proper method of analysis.

Simple (396) Greek words printed in black-face letter are generally formed on a stem derived directly from a root or from an ultimate theme. But simple words which are formed on a stem derived from a stem that either appears in some preceding word or may easily be assumed, and *compounds*, are generally printed in light-face letter. This distinction is not made in case of the Latin words.[2]

[1] The following law holds for mutes: π and ϕ will generally appear in English respectively as *f* and *b*; κ, γ, and χ, as *h*, *k*, and *g*; and τ, δ, and θ, as *th*, *t*, and *d*, but there are many exceptions.

[2] Only the most important Latin words are given. For a more ex-

Compound verbs are omitted, unless important for the development of the group. Many other words are omitted, because their connexion with the group in each case is obvious.

Matters of especial difficulty are explained in the note that follows the group.

435. R. **αγ, ag,** *drive, lead, weigh.*

ἄγ-ω, *drive, lead, bring, carry, weigh;* **ἀγ-ών,** *-ῶν-os,* ὁ, *a bringing together,* esp. to witness a contest, hence, *contest, games;* **ἀγωνίζο-μαι,** *contend;* **ἀγ-ρό-s,** ὁ, *field* (place where flocks are driven); **ἄγρ-ιο-s, -ᾱ, -ο-ν,** *ranging the fields, wild;* **ἀγ-ό-s,** ὁ, *leader;* **στρατ-ηγό-s,** ὁ, *general;* **συ-στράτηγο-s,** ὁ (*σύν,* p. 594), *fellow-general;* **στρατηγέ-ω,** *be general;* **στρατηγί-ᾱ, -ᾱs,** *generalship;* **λοχ-ᾱγό-s,** ὁ (*λόχο-s,* ὁ, *company*), *captain;* **λοχᾱγέ-ω,** *be captain;* **λοχᾱγ-ί-ᾱ, -ᾱs,** *captaincy;* **οὐρ-ᾱγό-s,** ὁ (*οὐρᾱ́, -ᾶs, rear*), *rear-leader;* **ἡγέ-ο-μαι,** *lead, command, consider, think;* **ἡγε-μών, -όν-os,** ὁ, *leader;* **ἡγεμονί-ᾱ, -ᾱs,** *leadership;* **ἡγεμό-συνα,** neut. plur. (p. 594), *thank-offerings for safe guidance.* — **ἀγωγ-ή, -ῆs,** *a carrying away;* **ἀπ-αγωγή, -ῆs,** *removal;* **παρ-αγωγή, -ῆs,** *transport;* **ἀγωγ-ό-s,** ὁ, *guide;* **δημ-αγωγό-s,** ὁ (*δῆμο-s,* ὁ, *people*), *leader of the people;* **δημαγωγέ-ω,** *play the demagogue;* **σῖτ-αγωγό-s, -ό-ν** (*σῖτο-s,* ὁ, *grain*), *grain-carrying.* — **ἄξ-ων,** *-ον-os,* ὁ, *axle;* **ἅμ-αξα, -ης** (*ἅμα,* adv., *together*), *wagon* with two *connected axles,* prop., therefore, *four-wheeled wagon;* **ἁμαξ-ιτό-s, -ό-ν,** *passable by wagons;* **ἁμαξ-ιαῖο-s, -ᾱ, -ο-ν,** *big enough to fill a wagon;* **ἄξ-ιο-s, -ᾱ, -ο-ν,** *equal in weight, worth, worthy;* **ἀξί-ᾱ, -ᾱs,** *value;* **ἀξιό-ω,** *think worthy;* **ἀξίω-μα, -ατ-os,** τό, *dignity;* **ἀξιο-στράτηγο-s, -ο-ν,** *worthy to command.*

ag-ō, *move, lead, drive;* **cōgō** (*co-ig-ō*), *drive together,* part. *co-āc-tu-s;* **rēm-ex,** *-ig-is,* m., *rower* ('oar-driver'); **āc-tu-s,** *-ūs,* m., *impulse, act;* **āg-men,** *-in-is,* n., *train, army on the march;* **ag-er,** *-grī,* m., *field;* **ag-ili-s, -e,** *adj., easily movable, quick;* **ax-i-s,** *-is,* m., *axis.*

ACRE, ACORN, AXLE; **agony,** *out-***agonist,** *strat-***agem,** *ex-***egesis,** *par-***agogic,** *dem-***agogue,** *ped-***agogue,** *syn-***agogue, axiom.**

NOTE. — *ἡγέ-ο-μαι* shows the same lengthening of the stem *αγο-* that appears in *στρατ-ηγό-s, etc.* The rough breathing is irregular. — The root appears reduplicated (399) in *ἀγωγ-ή, etc.,* and increased (400) in *ἄξ-ων, etc.* (*αγ + σ = αξ*). So also in *ax-i-s.* — *ἀξιο-στράτηγο-s* is a note-worthy formation, as showing the same root in different forms.

---

tended treatment of these, teachers are referred to the Table of Roots at the end of Lewis's Latin Dictionary for Schools or of his Elementary Latin Dictionary, and for the history of the English words, to Skeat's Etymological Dictionary of the English Language.

LESSON LVIII.

Present System of Verbs. — Verbs of the First Class.

436. Six tense-systems have now been completely presented for vowel verbs in all of the moods.

Review 252 entire.

437. Three other tense-systems remain, the *second aorist* system, including the second aorist active and middle; the *second perfect* system, including the second perfect and second pluperfect active; and the *second passive* system, including the second aorist and second future passive.

438. The *second* tenses differ from the corresponding *first* tenses in *form*, but have like *meaning*.

439. The verbs that have already occurred have been almost exclusively vowel verbs. In addition to these, a few mute verbs have been used with themes ending in -δ- (104). In forming the different tense-stems of mute and liquid verbs (254) various euphonic modifications occur.

440. The present system of the vowel verbs so far presented has been formed by adding the variable-vowel ᵒ/ₑ (153) as tense-suffix directly to the theme. Verbs that form the present stem in this manner are said to belong to the *Variable Vowel* or *First* Class. This class includes some mute and some liquid verbs.

a. There are six other ways in which the present stem is formed from the theme, giving six other *classes* of verbs.

b. In the previous lessons the verb has been developed by *moods*. Hereafter the development will be by tense-systems, and the conjugation of λύω, already given, will be repeated.

Review 254 a and b.

441. In some vowel verbs the final vowel of the theme remains short in all of the systems in which the verb occurs. Thus: —

γελάω, *laugh*,[1]	γελάσομαι[2]	ἐγέλασα			ἐγελάσθην
σπάω, *draw*,		ἔσπασα	ἔσπακα	ἔσπασμαι	ἐσπάσθην
τελέω, *complete*,	τελέσω, τελῶ,[3]	ἐτέλεσα	τετέλεκα	τετέλεσμαι	ἐτελέσθην

a. These verbs add σ to the theme in the perfect and pluperfect middle and passive, and in the first passive system.

b. The same enlargement of the theme may occur in other vowel verbs. Thus: —

κλείω, *shut*,	κλείσω	ἔκλεισα	κέκλειμαι or	κέκλεισμαι	ἐκλείσθην
κελεύω, *order*,	κελεύσω	ἐκέλευσα	κεκέλευκα	κεκέλευσμαι	ἐκελεύσθην

442. In other vowel verbs the final vowel of the theme remains short in some of the forms, but is lengthened in the others. Thus: —

δέω, *bind*,	δήσω	ἔδησα	δέδεκα	δέδεμαι	ἐδέθην
θύω, *sacrifice*,	θύσω	ἔθῡσα	τέθυκα	τέθυμαι	ἐτύθην
λύω, LOOSE,	λύσω	ἔλῡσα	λέλυκα	λέλυμαι	ἐλύθην
αἰνέω, *praise*,[4]	αἰνέσω	ᾔνεσα	ᾔνεκα	ᾔνημαι	ᾐνέθην
καλέω, *call*,	καλῶ[3]	ἐκάλεσα	κέκληκα[5]	κέκλημαι	ἐκλήθην

Review the present, future, and first aorist systems of λύω in 672–674.[6]

Read again 148.

No special vocabularies will be given hereafter. For information in regard to the forms of words, their etymology, and their meanings, consult the general vocabulary at the end of the book. But do not do this until the sentence has been read aloud once or twice *through to the end*, according to the directions in 140. Endeavour to ascertain the meaning of new words by analysis, determining their parts, if they are compound, their stems, and their roots, and comparing them with any word or words of like derivation that may have previously occurred. If this fails, endeavour to infer their meaning from the context.[7] In all cases of doubt, the general vocabulary should be finally consulted.

[1] It will be remembered that many verbs are *defective* (253 a).

[2] In many verbs the fut. act. is lacking, the fut. mid. being used instead.

[3] Some verbs in -εω drop σ in the fut. and contract. Thus τελέσω, τελέ-ω, τελῶ. The fut. has thus the same form as the present.

[4] Used mostly in compounds, esp. ἐπ-αινέω, *bestow praise on, applaud.*

[5] The theme καλε- appears as κλη- in the last three principal parts.

[6] In each system, give first the forms of the active in each mood, *passing down the column*, then of the middle and passive, or of the middle.

[7] Assistance in determining the meaning of new words in this Lesson and in the two Lessons that follow will be given in the notes.

443. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ξενίᾱς τὰ Λύκαια ἔθῡσε. 2. θύσομεν δὲ βοῦς. 3. καλέσᾱς παρεκελεύετο τοῖς Ἕλλησι[1] πορεύεσθαι. 4. Κῦρος δὲ συγκαλέσᾱς[2] τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς λέγει ὧδε. 5. τῶν δὲ συνόντων[3] πάντων ἀεὶ κατεγέλᾱ. 6. καὶ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς παρεκάλεσεν εἴσω. 7. τοὺς ἵππους ἔδησαν. 8. τῶν δ' ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν πολλοὶ οὐ διετέλεσαν[4] τὴν ὁδόν. 9. καὶ πλησίον ἐστὶν ὁ σταθμὸς ἔνθα[5] καταλῡσόμεν.[6] 10. ἐγὼ μέν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἤδη ὑμᾶς ἐπαινῶ. 11. καὶ καλεσάμενος τοὺς στρατηγοὺς λέγει ὧδε. 12. τοὺς κακούργους[7] καὶ ἀδίκους οὐκ ἐᾶ[8] καταγελᾶν, ἀλλ' ἐτῑμωρεῖτο. 13. καὶ δεῖται Ἀριστίππου μὴ καταλῡσαι πρὸς τοὺς ἀντιστασιώτᾱς. 14. νῦν δὲ καὶ ἐπαινῶ σε ἐπὶ τοῖς λόγοις. 15. ἀλλὰ κλείσαντες τὰς πύλᾱς οὔτε εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἐδέχοντο[9] τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς οὔτε ἔξω ἀγορὰν ἔπεμπον. 16. ἢν δὲ ὑμεῖς τοὺς ἄλλους παρακαλῆτε, ἀκολουθήσουσιν ὑμῖν. 17. Φαλῖνος δὲ ἐγέλασε καὶ εἶπεν,[10] Ἀλλὰ λέγεις, ὦ νεᾱνίσκε,[11] οὐκ ἀχάριστα.[12] 18. ἡμεῖς ἐνῑκῶμεν βασιλέᾱ ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις αὐτοῦ καὶ καταγελάσαντες ἀπῐλθομεν.[13] 19. ἀλλ' ὅμως ὁ Κλέαρχος οὐκ ἀπέσπασεν ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὸ δεξιὸν κέρας. 20. τὸν μὲν καλῶς ποιοῦντα ἐπαινοῦμεν, τὸν δ' ἀδικοῦντα οὐκ ἐπαινοῦμεν.

II. 1. He drew his[14] sword. 2. And they bound the guide. 3. *You* will applaud me. 4. But his[15] father called Cyrus.

---

[1] For the case, *cf.* 256, I. 13.

[2] Before a palatal (114), ν becomes γ nasal (p. 2 [3]). For the force of the prep. in composition, *cf.* σύμπᾶς (264).

[3] ὄντων is gen. plur. of the participle ὤν. συνόντων is, therefore, the gen. plur. of the compound verb σύν-ειμι, and οἱ συνόντες must mean *those who are with one* (370), *one's associates*. For the case, *cf.* 308, I. 4.

[4] For the force of the prep. in composition, *cf.* διαπράζω.

[5] *where.*

[6] Note the two parts of the word. So arise the meanings, 1) *unyoke* the baggage-cattle, *i.e. halt*, and 2) *make peace*, in sentence 13 below.

[7] κακός and ἔργον. *Cf.* σύν-εργος (285).

[8] See p. 83 [8].

[9] The meaning of δέχομαι can be inferred from the context.

[10] εἶπον, *said*, a second aor.

[11] *Cf.* νεᾱνίσκος with νεᾱνίᾱς.

[12] ἀ-χάριστος, -ον, *cf.* χάρις, ἀχαρίστως.

[13] ἦλθον, *went*, a second aor.

[14] See 197.

[15] See p. 23 [3].

5. The army halted for[1] breakfast. 6. We shall call the soldiers together there. 7. And he ordered the exiles to take the field with Clearchus. 8. And they completed their journey and halted. 9. The other soldiers applauded Clearchus. 10. Xenophon will intercept the cavalry. 11. This man will laugh at his opponents. 12. When he had offered sacrifice, he called the soldiers together.

From this point groups of related words are substituted for the special vocabularies. Make a careful study of these groups, analyzing the words according to the principles stated in Lesson LVII. Then commit all the Greek words to memory.

444. R. **τι**, *pay.*

τί-ω, *pay, value, honour;* **τί-ν-ω**, *pay for,* mid. *make pay for* (197 a), *punish;* **ἀπο-τίν-ω**, *pay back,* mid. *make pay back, punish;* **τῑ-μή**, **ῆς**, *value, worth, price, honour, esteem;* **ἄ-τῑμο-ς**, **-ο-ν**, *without honour, dishoured;* **ἀτῑμάζω**, *dishonour;* **ἔν-τῑμο-ς**, **-ο-ν**, *in honour, honoured;* **ἐντῑ́μως**, adv., *in honour;* **φιλό-τῑμο-ς**, **-ο-ν** (**φίλο-ς**, *loving, dear*), *loving honour, ambitious, emulous;* **φιλοτῑμέ-ο-μαι**, *be ambitious* or *jealous;* **τῑ́μ-ιο-ς**, **-ᾱ**, **-ον**, *valuable, honoured;* **τῑμά-ω**, *value, esteem, honour;* **τῑμωρό-ς**, **-ό-ν**, *watching over* or *upholding honour, avenging;* **τῑμωρ-ίᾱ**, **-ᾱς**, *help, vengeance;* **τῑμωρέ-ω**, *help, avenge,* mid. *avenge oneself on, take vengeance on.*

timo-*cracy.*

NOTE. — The meaning of the root, *pay,* branches in two directions: 1) *set a price on, value, honour;* 2) *pay a price for, pay a penalty.* — **τῑμωρό-ς** is for **τῑμᾱ-ϝορο-ς**,[2] the stem **ϝορο-** carrying the idea of *watchful. Cf.* **ὁρά-ω**, *see.*

LESSON LIX.

Comparison of Adjectives.

445. There are three degrees of comparison of adjectives in Greek, as in Latin and in English.

---

[1] **πρός** with acc.

[2] The oldest Greek alphabet had a letter **ϝ**, called *digamma*, **δίγαμμα** (*double gamma*), from its form, equal to Latin *u* consonantal, English *w*. This letter was lost, but traces of it appear in many Greek words.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
δίκαιος (δικαιο-), *just,*	δικαιό-τερος	δικαιό-τατος
ἰσχῠρός (ισχῡρο-), *strong,*	ἰσχῠρό-τερος	ἰσχῠρό-τατος
πιστός (πιστο-), *faithful,*	πιστό-τερος	πιστό-τατος
πολέμιος (πολεμιο-), *hostile,*	πολεμιώ-τερος	πολεμιώ-τατος
ἀσφαλής (ασφαλεσ-), *secure,*	ἀσφαλέσ-τερος	ἀσφαλέσ-τατος

446. The comparative is generally formed, as above, by adding -τερος, -τερᾱ, -τερον (stem -τερο-), and the superlative by adding -τατος, -τατη, -τατον (stem -τατο-), to the masculine stem of the positive.

a. Adjectives in -ος keep the stem unchanged in the comparative and superlative when the penult is long or the vowel of the penult is followed by two consonants. Otherwise the final vowel of the stem is lengthened to -ω-.

b. The comparative and superlative in -τερος and -τατος are declined like adjectives of the vowel-declension (141).

447. Some adjectives take the irregular endings -εστερος, -εστατος.

a. Stems in -ον-. Thus εὐδαίμων (ευδαιμον-), *fortunate*, εὐδαιμον-έστερος, εὐδαιμον-έστατος.

b. Some contract adjectives in (-οος) -ους. Thus (εὔνοος) εὔνους (ευνοο-), εὐνούστερος, εὐνούστατος (by contraction for εὐνοέστερος, εὐνοέστατος).

448. A less common ending of the comparative is -ῑων, -ῑον (stem -ῑον-), of the superlative -ιστος, -ιστη, -ιστον (stem -ιστο-).

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
ἡδύς (stem ἡδυ-), *pleasant,*	ἡδ-ῑων	ἥδ-ιστος
ταχύς (stem ταχυ-), *swift,*	θάττων (for ταχ-ῑων)[1]	τάχ-ιστος
κακός (stem κακο-), *bad,*	κακ-ῑων	κάκ-ιστος
αἰσχρός (stem αισχρο-), *shameful,*	αἰσχ-ῑων	αἴσχ-ιστος

a. These endings are added to the masculine stem of the positive denuded of its suffix. Adjectives thus compared generally end in -υς or -ρος. These syllables disappear in the comparative and superlative.

[1] When, for any reason, the rough sound is lost at the end of a root which begins with τ and ends with φ or χ, it appears at the beginning. This is called *transfer of aspiration.*

449. Comparatives in *-ῑων* are declined like *εὐδαίμων* (338), but in some of the cases shorter forms may occur.

PARADIGM.

	M. and F.		N.
S. N.	ἡδῐων		ἥδῐον
G.		ἡδῐον-ος	
D.		ἡδῐον-ι	
A.	ἡδῐον-α, ἡδῖω		ἥδῐον
V.		ἥδῐον	
D. N. A. V.		ἡδῐον-ε	
G. D.		ἡδῐόν-οιν	
P. N. V.	ἡδῐον-ες, ἡδῖους		ἡδῐον-α, ἡδῖω
G.		ἡδῐόν-ων	
D.		ἡδῐοσι	
A.	ἡδῐον-ας, ἡδῖους		ἡδῐον-α, ἡδῖω

450. The Comparative Degree.

Examine the following: —

οὗτοι κακίονές εἰσι τῶν ἄλλων, these are greater cowards than the others.

ἐπορεύοντο μακροτέρᾱν ὁδόν, they proceeded by a longer road.

451. Rule of Syntax. — Adjectives in the comparative degree take the genitive. The genitive is sometimes not expressed, but merely implied.

452. The Superlative Degree.

Examine the following: —

πέμπει τῶν πελταστῶν τοὺς ἰσχῡροτάτους, he sends the strongest of the light infantry.

ἀποπέμπει τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν, he sends her back by the quickest route.

πολεμιώτατος ἦν βασιλεὺς τοῖς Ἕλλησι, the king was very hostile to the Greeks.

453. Rule of Syntax. — Adjectives in the superlative degree may be followed by the partitive genitive. The genitive is

sometimes implied. The superlative may express simply a *very high degree* of the quality. In this sense it never has the article.

454. EXERCISES.

I. 1. *βασιλεῖ πιστότατοί εἰσιν.* 2. *ὁ δ' ἀνὴρ χαλεπώτατος ἐχθρὸς τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐστίν.* 3. *τούτους ἔφασαν οἱ στρατευσάμενοι πολεμικωτάτους εἶναι.* 4. *παρῆν ὁ Κῦρος σὺν τοῖς εὐδαιμονεστάτοις τῶν φίλων.* 5. *τὰ δὲ κρέα τούτων τῶν ὀρνίθων ἥδιστα ἦν.* 6. *οὔπω δὴ πολλοῦ χρόνου*[1] *ἡδίονος οἴνου*[2] *γέγευμαι.* 7. *οὗτος τάχιστος θανατός ἐστιν.* 8. *μὴ κακίους ὦμεν τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων.* 9. *τὸ*[3] *δὲ ἄλλους παρεῖναι καὶ τοῖς κακίοσι θάρρος*[4] *ἐμποιεῖ.*[5] 10. *ἐντεῦθεν Κῦρος τὴν Κίλισσαν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίᾶν ἀποπέμπει τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν.* 11. *οὗτοί εἰσι κάκιστοί τε καὶ αἴσχιστοι ἄνδρες καὶ πρὸς θεῶν καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων.* 12. *καὶ παραπέμπων τῶν πελταστῶν τοὺς ἰσχῡροτάτους κελεύει ἐρωτῆσαι τί ἐστι τὸ κωλῦον.* 13. *πάντες οὗτοι οἱ βάρβαροι πολεμιώτεροι ἡμῖν ἔσονται τῶν παρὰ βασιλεῖ ὄντων.* 14. *Κῦρος οὕτως ἐτελεύτησεν, ἀνὴρ ὢν βασιλικώτατός τε καὶ ἄρχειν ἀξιώτατος.* 15. *Σεύθης ἱκανώτατος ἔσται ὑμᾶς καὶ εὖ καὶ κακῶς ποιεῖν.* 16. *οἱ μὲν ἀγαθοὶ εὐδαιμονέστατοι ἦσαν, οἱ δὲ κακοὶ δοῦλοι*[6] *τούτων εἶναι ἠξιοῦντο.* 17. *ἴσως οὖν ἀσφαλέστερον ἔσται ἡμῖν πορεύεσθαι πλαίσιον ποιησαμένους*[7] *τῶν ὁπλῖτῶν, ἵνα τὰ σκευοφόρα ἐν ἀσφαλεστέρῳ*[8] *ᾖ.*

II. 1. This road is narrower. 2. All were most faithful to the king. 3. Basest of men, why do you do this? 4. Now we will proceed by a longer road. 5. The cavalrymen were

---

[1] *Cf.* 308, I. 15.

[2] *Cf.* 208, I. 7.

[3] The inf., as a neuter verbal subst., may take the art.

[4] *θάρρος, -εος* (316). Determine the meaning by comparison with *θαρρέω, θαρραλέως.*

[5] *ἐν* and *ποιέω* (p. 45[9]). For the case of *κακίοσι*, see p. 31[3].

[6] *δοῦλος, ὁ.* For the meaning, *cf.* *δουλεύω.*

[7] A modifier of the subj. of *πορεύεσθαι*, *ἡμᾶς* understood.

[8] *I.e. in greater security.*

more eager. 6. He has the most valiant of the soldiers. 7. The citizens will be more courageous. 8. They called forth the most faithful of the men. 9. The satrap was a very unjust man. 10. These will be better disposed to us than the others. 11. Of all the Persians Cyrus was the ablest to benefit[1] his friends. 12. He was led[2] into the tent of a man who was[3] very faithful to Cyrus.

455. R. **μακ** (399), **mac**, *be great, have power.*

μακ-ρό-s, *-ά, -ό-ν, long;* **μάκ-αρ**, *-αρ-os, powerful, rich, blessed;* *μακαρίζω, account happy;* *μακαρισ-τό-s,*[4] *-ή, -ό-ν, accounted happy, enviable;* **μῆκ-os** (399), *-εος, τό, length;* **μήκ-ιστο-s**, *-η, -ο-ν,* sup., *longest.* — **μηχ-ανή**, *-ῆs, means* for doing, *device;* *μηχανά-ο-μαι, devise;* *ἀ-μήχανο-s, -ο-ν, without means, impracticable.* — **μέγ-α-s** (stem *μεγα-* and *μεγα-λο-*), *great;* *μεγάλως,* adv., *greatly;* *μεγαλο-πρεπήs, -és (πρέπω, befit), befitting a great man, magnificent;* *μεγαλο-πρεπῶs,* adv., *magnificently;* **μείζων**, *-ον* (for *μεγ-ῖων*), comp., *greater;* **μέγ-ιστο-s**, *-η, -ο-ν,* sup., *greatest;* *μέγε-θος, -εος, τό, greatness.*

māc-tu-s, *adj., glorified, worshipped;* **māc-tō**, *magnify, glorify;* **māg-nu-s**, *adj., great;* **māior** (for *mag-ior*), *greater;* **māximu-s** (for *mag-simu-s*), *greatest;* **mag-is**, *adv.* (for *mag-ius*), *more;* **mag-ister**, *-trī, m., master.*

MAKE, MAY, MIGHT, MUCH, MORE, MOST, MANY, MAIN (*strength*), MAID; **macro-***cosm*, **mechanic**, *o-***mega**, **mega-***therium*, **megalo-***saurus*.

LESSON LX.

Future and First Aorist Systems of Mute Verbs. — Verbs of the Third Class.

456. Verbs whose themes end in a mute are called *mute* verbs (254).

457. A labial mute (*π, β, φ*) at the end of the theme unites with *σ* of the tense-suffix (*-σ°/ε-* in the future, *-σα-* in the first aorist) and forms *ψ* (215 a). Thus: —

πέμπω (theme *πεμπ-*), *send, πέμψω, ἔπεμψα; τρίβω* (*τριβ-, τριβ-*), *rub, τρίψω, ἔτρῑψα; γράφω* (*γραφ-*), *write, γράψω, ἔγραψα.*

---

[1] *Cf.* 305, I. 13.
[2] See 227 a.
[3] See 369.
[4] Formed on the theme *μακαριδ-* of *μακαρίζω*. See p. 150[1].

458. A palatal mute (κ, γ, χ) with σ forms ξ (215 b). Thus: —

λέγω (λεγ-), *gather*,[1] *speak*, λέξω, ἔλεξα; διώκω (διωκ-), *pursue*, διώξω ἐδίωξα; ἄρχω (αρχ-), *begin, rule*, ἄρξω, ἦρξα.

459. A lingual mute (τ, δ, θ) before σ is dropped (231). Thus: —

σπεύδω (σπευδ-), *hasten*, σπεύσω, ἔσπευσα; πέρθω (περθ-), *destroy*, πέρσω, ἔπερσα.

All of the verbs cited above belong to the *first* class (440).

Conjugate the fut. and first aor. systems of any one of these verbs.

460. Some *labial* mute verbs form the present stem by adding -τ°/ε- as tense-suffix to the theme.

	Theme.	Pres. Stem.	Fut.	First Aor.
κλέπτω, *steal*,	κλεπ-	κλεπτ°/ε-	κλέψω	ἔκλεψα
κόπτω, *cut*,	κοπ-	κοπτ°/ε-	κόψω	ἔκοψα
σκέπτομαι, *view*,	σκεπ-	σκεπτ°/ε-	σκέψομαι	ἐσκεψάμην
βλάπτω, *injure*,	βλαβ-	βλαπτ°/ε-	βλάψω	ἔβλαψα
καλύπτω, *cover*,	καλυβ-	καλυπτ°/ε-	καλύψω	ἐκάλυψα
θάπτω, *bury*,	ταφ-	θαπτ°/ε-	θάψω	ἔθαψα
κρύπτω, *hide*,	κρυφ-	κρυπτ°/ε-	κρύψω	ἔκρυψα
ῥῖπτω, *throw*,	ῥῖφ-	ῥῖπτ°/ε-	ῥῖψω	ἔρριψα[2]

a. The final labial of the theme becomes coördinate (114 a), β and φ changing to π before τ of the tense-suffix -τ°/ε-, as βλάπ-τω for βλαβ-τω, καλύπ-τω for καλυβ-τω, θάπ-τω for ταφ-τω.[3] κρύπ-τω for κρυβ-τω, ῥῖπ-τω for ῥῖφ-τω.

461. These verbs belong to the *Tau* or *Third* Class.

462. EXERCISES.

I. 1. ἤρξατο[4] τὸ στράτευμα πορεύεσθαι. 2. τοὺς ἵππους πάντας ἐκλέξομεν. 3. οἱ δὲ διώξαντες ταχὺ[5] ἐπαύοντο. 4. ἔπεμψέ με Ἀριαῖος, πιστὸς ὢν Κύρῳ καὶ ὑμῖν εὔνους. 5. τοὺς δὲ ἄνδρας ἐκέλευον θάψαι. 6. ἥλιον δὲ νεφέλη ἐκάλυψεν. 7. τούτους τοὺς ἄνδρας φησὶ κλέψαι[6] τὰ χρή-

[1] In the sense of *gather*, used by Attic writers only in compounds, as ἐκ-λέγω, *pick out, select*.

[2] Initial ρ is doubled when, by inflexion or composition, a simple vowel is brought before it.

[3] Transfer of aspiration. See p. 162[1].

[4] See 198.

[5] Neut. of the adj. used adverbially.

[6] *Cf.* 356, I. 2.

ματα. 8. *οἱ* Ἕλληνες *ταῖς μαχαίραις*[1] *ἔκοψαν τὰ γέρρα.* 9. *τὰ δὲ ἄλλα εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν ῥίψωμεν.* 10. Κῦρος *ἔσπευσε πᾶσαν τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ οὐ διέτρῑψεν.*[2] 11. *συλλέξᾱς*[3] *στράτευμα ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν.* 12. *οὗτοι οὐ βλάψουσιν ἡμᾶς πορευομένους.* 13. *τὰ χρήματα, ὦ νεᾱνίσκε, μὴ κλέψῃς.*[4] 14. *καὶ οὐκ ἔστι*[5] *πορεύεσθαι, εἰ μὴ τούτους ἀποκόψομεν.*[6] 15. *διακόψαι δὲ οὐ ῥᾴδιον*[7] *ἔσται τοὺς λόχους.* 16. *ἡ χιὼν ἀπέκρυψε καὶ τὰ ὅπλα καὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους.* 17. *ἔνθα δὴ* Κῦρος *ἔδεισε μὴ βασιλεὺς κατακόψῃ τὸ* Ἑλληνικόν. 18. *ἀλλὰ διατρίψω, ἵνα φοβῶνται οἱ ἄγγελοι μὴ οὐ*[8] *τᾶς σπονδᾶς ποιησώμεθα.* 19. *πέμψᾱς τὸν ἑρμηνέᾱ παρὰ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ἐκέλευσε πορεύεσθαι.* 20. *καὶ παρὰ τὴν γέφῡραν τοῦ* Τίγρητος *ποταμοῦ πέμψαι κελεύουσι φυλακήν.* 21. *ἐδίωκε μὲν* Ξενοφῶν *ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος, τοὺς δὲ πολεμίους οὐκ ἔβλαψεν.* 22. *ἔδεισαν οἱ* Ἕλληνες *μὴ προσάγοιεν πρὸς τὸ κέρας καὶ αὐτοὺς κατακόψειαν.* 23. *σκέψασθε εἰ τοῦτο πεποιήκᾱσιν οἱ βάρβαροι.* 24. *ἐν δὲ τούτῳ*[9] Χειρίσοφος *πέμπει κωμήτᾱς*[10] *σκεψομένους*[11] *πῶς ἔχουσιν οἱ τελευταῖοι.*[12]

II. 1. You stole the horses. 2. Cyrus cut down[13] the park. 3. They throw stones into the river. 4. He wrote a letter to[14] the king. 5. *I* will not pursue these men. 6. We will bury the (two) men. 7. He will make haste to proceed to Greece. 8. Cyrus sent jars of wine to his friends. 9. He said that the

---

[1] *Cf.* 175, I. 11.

[2] *δια-τρῑ́βω, sc. χρόνον.* So *tempus terō* in Lat.

[3] *συλ-λέγω* for *συν-λεγω.* Before *λ, μ,* or *ρ, ν* becomes *λ, μ,* or *ρ.*

[4] See 327.

[5] See 188 c.

[6] For the force of the prep. in composition, *cf. ἀπο-σπάω, ἀπο-κλείω, etc.*

[7] *ῥᾴδιο-ς, -ᾱ, -ο-ν.* For the meaning of this adj., *cf.* the adv. *ῥᾳδίως* (309).

[8] See 280.

[9] *Sc. τῷ χρόνῳ.*

[10] *κωμή-τη-ς* (404), *cf. κώμη.*

[11] See 379, and *cf.* the fifth example in 378.

[12] *τελευτα-ῖο-ς, -ᾱ, -ο-ν,* from the stem of the subst. *τελευτή.* For the meaning, *cf. τέλος* (318), *τελευτά-ω* (257).

[13] *ἐκ-κόπτω.*

[14] *παρά* with acc.

boy hid[1] this. 10. He orders them to find out[2] what the hindrance[3] is. 11. To beat off[4] the enemy was a necessity. 12. The army will slaughter[5] the oxen and asses. 13. He collected an army by means of[6] the money.

463. R. **αρχ**, *be first.*

ἄρχ-ω, *be first*, — in point of time, *begin*, in point of station, *rule*; part. as subst., ἄρχων, -οντ-ος, ὁ, *ruler*; ὑπ-άρχ-ω, *be a foundation or beginning*; **ἀρχ-ή**, -ῆς, *beginning, rule*; ἀρχα-ῖο-ς, -ᾱ, -ο-ν, *from the beginning, ancient, old*; ἀρχ-ικό-ς, -ή, -ό-ν, *fit for rule*; **ἀρχ-ό-ς**, ὁ, *leader*; ὑπ-αρχο-ς, ὁ, *subordinate commander, lieutenant*; ἀν-αρχο-ς, -ο-ν, *without leaders*; ἀναρχ-ί-ᾱ, -ᾱς, *lack of leaders, anarchy*; ἵππ-αρχο-ς, ὁ (ἵππο-ς, ὁ, ἡ, *horse*), *commander of the horse*; μόν-αρχο-ς, ὁ (μόνο-ς, *alone*), *one who rules alone*; μοναρχ-ί-ᾱ, -ᾱς, *monarchy*; ναύ-αρχο-ς, ὁ (ναῦ-ς, ἡ, *ship*), *admiral*; ναυαρχ-έ-ω, *be admiral*; πείθ-αρχο-ς, -ο-ν (πείθ-ο-μαι, *obey*), *obedient to authority*; πειθαρχ-έ-ω, *obey*; πολυ-αρχ-ί-ᾱ, -ᾱς (πολύ-ς, *much, many*), *government of many*; φρούρ-αρχο-ς, ὁ (φρουρό-ς, ὁ, *garrison-soldier*), *commander of a garrison*; κωμ-άρχη-ς, -ου (κώμ-η, *village*), *village-chief.*

archaic, **archaeo**-*logy*, **archives**, **arch**-*angel*, **arch**-*bishop*, **archi**-*episcopal*, **arche**-*type*, *an*-**archy**, *hier*-**archy**, *tetr*-**archy**, *etc.*

LESSON LXI.

Future and First Aorist Systems of Mute Verbs (continued). — Mute Verbs of the Fourth Class.

464. Many *palatal* mute verbs form the present stem by adding -ι°/ε. to the theme. κ or χ unites with the ι of this present tense-suffix, forming with it ττ. γ unites with the ι, forming generally ττ, sometimes ζ. Thus: —

	Theme.	Pres. Stem.	Fut.	First Aor.
κηρύττω, *proclaim*,	κηρῡκ-	κηρῡττ°/ε-	κηρύξω	ἐκήρῡξα
φυλάττω, *guard*,	φυλακ-	φυλαττ°/ε-	φυλάξω	ἐφύλαξα
ταράττω, *disturb*,	ταραχ-	ταραττ°/ε-	ταράξω	ἐτάραξα
ἀλλάττω, *change*,	ἀλλαγ-	αλλαττ°/ε-	ἀλλάξω	ἤλλαξα
πρᾶττω, *do*,	πρᾱγ-	πρᾱττ°/ε-	πράξω	ἔπρᾱξα
τάττω, *arrange*,	ταγ-	ταττ°/ε-	τάξω	ἔταξα
ἀλαλάζω, *raise the war-cry*,	αλαλαγ-	αλαλαζ°/ε-	ἀλαλάξομαι[7]	ἠλάλαξα

[1] *Cf.* 356, I. 2. [2] σκέπτομαι. [3] *Cf.* 373, I. 6. [4] ἀπο-κόπτω. [5] κόπτω. [6] ἀπό. [7] See p. 159 [2].

465. Many *lingual* mute verbs with themes ending in δ form the present stem by adding, as above, -ι°/ε- to the theme. δ unites with the ι, forming with it ζ. Thus: —

	THEME.	PRES. STEM.	FUT.	FIRST AOR.
ἀθροίζω, collect,	αθροιδ-	αθροιζ°/ε-	ἀθροίσω	ἤθροισα
ἐργάζομαι, work,	εργαδ-	εργαζ°/ε-	ἐργάσομαι	εἰργασάμην[1]
θαυμάζω, admire,	θαυμαδ-	θαυμαζ°/ε-	θαυμάσω	ἐθαύμασα
νομίζω, think,	νομιδ-	νομιζ°/ε-	νομιῶ[2]	ἐνόμισα

a. Some of these verbs with themes in δ have been introduced in the previous lessons.

466. The verbs described in 464, 465 belong to the *Iota* or *Fourth* Class.

467. EXERCISES.

I. 1. τῶν δὲ σκευῶν τὰ περιττὰ ἀπαλλάξωμεν. 2. ἐκήρυ-ξαν οἱ στρατηγοὶ τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς οὕτω ποιεῖν. 3. συνέλεξε τὸ στράτευμα χωρὶς τῶν ἄλλων καὶ ἔλεξε τάδε.[3] 4. ἀγαθόν τι[4] ὑμῖν παρὰ βασιλέως διαπράξομαι. 5. καὶ ἔταξε Πίγρητα συνεκβιβάζειν τὰς ἁμάξᾱς. 6. Κῦρος νομιεῖ ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἠδικῆ-σθαι.[5] 7. βασιλεὺς δὲ τὰ ἄλλα διαρπάσει. 8. ταῦτα δεῖ παρασκευάσασθαι. 9. Μένωνι δὲ δῶρα Κῦρος ἐλέγετο πέμψαι[5] μεγαλοπρεπῶς. 10. τὸ δὲ ἔξω[6] τεῖχος βασιλέως φυλακὴ φυλάξει. 11. τίνι[7] ἂν θεῶν θύων[8] καὶ εὐχόμενος[8] καλῶς πράξᾱς σωθείην; 12. ἐκέλευσε δὲ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς συντάξαι τοὺς Ἕλληνας. 13. ἠλάλαξαν οἱ Ἕλληνες πελ-τασταί. 14. ἐγὼ θέλω, ὦ ἄνδρες, διαβιβάσαι ὑμᾶς, ἂν ἐμοὶ τάλαντον μισθὸν πορίσητε. 15. ὁ δ' Ὀρόντᾱς, νομίσᾱς ἑτοί-μους εἶναι[5] τοὺς ἱππέᾱς, γράφει ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ βασιλέᾱ. 16. πῶς ἂν οὖν ἐγὼ βιασαίμην[9] ὑμᾶς σὺν ἐμοὶ ἑπακολου-

[1] See p. 83[8].

[2] Verbs in -ιζω with themes in -ιδ- make their fut. in -ιεω instead of -ισω, and contract. So νομι-έω, νομιῶ. This is called the *Attic Future.*

[3] See p. 71[2].

[4] *Cf.* 343, I. 17.

[5] See 354.

[6] *Cf.* 228, I. 3.

[7] Dat. sing. masc. of the interrogative τίς. *Cf.* 308, I. 2.

[8] See p. 104[10] and 379.

[9] See p. 104[14].

θεῖν; 17. *κελεύει δὲ αὐτὸν τῷ στρατηγῷ συμπέμψαι ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος ἄνδρας.* 18. *ἀντιταξάμενοι τούτοις*[1] *ἐνῑκᾶτε σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς.* 19. *ἀλλ' ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων συλλέξᾶς στράτευμα ἐπολέμει τοῖς Θρᾳξί.* 20. *ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος διεπράξατο πέντε μὲν στρατηγοὺς παρεῖναι, εἴκοσι δὲ λοχᾱγούς.* 21. *ἐκέλευσεν αὐτοὺς συσκευασαμένους καὶ ἐξοπλισαμένους πορεύεσθαι εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν.* 22. *νῦν ἢ εὐκλεῶς τελευτήσομεν ἢ καλὸν ἔργον ἐργασόμεθα τοὺς Ἕλληνας σώσαντες.*

II. 1. We will guard the acropolis. 2. And after this they raised the war-cry. 3. Let us plunder the city and the palace. 4. He sent heralds to arrange[2] a truce. 5. Cyrus will pursue them with triremes.[3] 6. He took his post behind the soldiers. 7. But this disturbed Clearchus exceedingly. 8. For I thought you were[4] both friends and allies. 9. Those with[5] Xenophon packed up their baggage[6] and proceeded. 10. For if we shall delay, the enemy will be more courageous. 11. He made proclamation to the Greeks that they were to pack up their baggage.[7] 12. These, then, were the exploits of the Greeks[8] in their march inland with Cyrus.

468. R. **Fεργ**, *work.*

ἔργ-ο-ν, *τό*, *work, deed*; **ἀργ-ό-ς**, **-ό-ν** (contracted from **ἀ-εργ-ό-ς**), *without work, idle*; **εὐ-εργέ-τη-ς**, **-ου**, *well-doer, benefactor*; **εὐεργετέ-ω**, *do a kindness*; **εὐεργε-σία**, **-ας**, *kindness*; **κακοῠργ-ο-ς**, *ὁ* (contracted from **κακό-εργ-ο-ς**, **κακό-ς**, *bad*), *wrong-doer*; **κακουργε-ω**, *do harm to*; **συν-εργ-ό-ς**, **-ό-ν**, *working with*; **ἐργάζο-μαι**, *do work, labour*; **παν-οῠργ-ο-ς**, **-ο-ν** (for **παν-ε-εργ-ο-ς**, **πᾶς**, *all*), *that will do anything, villainous*; **πανουργί-α**, **-ας**, *knavishness*; **ὑπ-ουργ-ό-ς**, **-ό-ν**, *serviceable, conducive to.*

WORK, WRIGHT, WROUGHT; *en*-**ergy**, **organ**, *ge*-**orgic**, *chir*-**urgeon**, *s*-**urgeon**, *lit*-**urgy**, *metall*-**urgy**.

NOTE. — For the digamma in the root, see p. 161[2]. In **πανοῦργος** and **ὑπουργός**, an **ε** is prefixed to the root.

---

[1] See p. 83[1b] and *cf.* 274, I. 4.
[2] *to arrange*, **περί** with the gen.
[3] *Cf.* 308, I. 17.
[4] The original thought was, *They are, etc. Cf.* I. 6 above.
[5] *Those with, οἱ ἀμφί* with the acc.
[6] Use the aor. participle.
[7] *that they were, etc.* Use the infin.
[8] Say, *This, then* (**ταῦτα δή**), *the Greeks did, etc.*

LESSON LXII.

Irregular Comparison of Adjectives.

469. The following are the most important cases of irregular comparison: —

	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
1.	ἀγαθός, *good*,[1]	ἀμείνων	ἄριστος
		βελτίων	βέλτιστος
		κρείττων (for κρετ-ιων)	κράτιστος
		λῴων	λῷστος
2.	κακός,[2] *bad*,	χείρων	χείριστος
		ἥττων (for ἡκ-ιων)	ἥκιστα[3]
3.	καλός, *beautiful*,	καλλίων	κάλλιστος
4.	μέγας, *great*,	μείζων (for μεγ-ιων)	μέγιστος
5.	μικρός,[4] *small*,	μείων	
6.	ὀλίγος, *little*, plur. *few*,	ἐλάττων (for ελαχ-ιων)	ἐλάχιστος
7.	πολύς, *much*, plur. *many*,	πλείων or πλέων	πλεῖστος
8.	ῥᾴδιος, *easy*,	ῥᾴων	ῥᾷστος

470. EXERCISES.

I. 1. ὥστε ἄδειπνοι ἦσαν οἱ πλεῖστοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων. 2. μέγιστον, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἔχετε καιρόν. 3. οὐχ ἡμῶν βελτίους εἰσὶν οἱ Μῦσοί. 4. Ἀρίσταρχος δὲ ἱππέας οὐκ ἐλάττους τετρακοσίων εἶχεν. 5. ἔχομεν τὰ τῶν ἡττόνων χρήματα. 6. καὶ ἐπειρᾶτο συνεργὸς τοῖς φίλοις κράτιστος εἶναι. 7. λῷον καὶ ἄμεινόν ἐστι στρατεύεσθαι ἢ ἀπαλλάττεσθαι. 8. οὗτοι ἀξιοῦσι τῶν λοχᾱγῶν μὴ χείρους εἶναι. 9. τὰ δὲ τῶν φίλων ῥᾷστόν ἐστιν ἀφύλακτα διαρπάσαι. 10. πολλῷ[5]

[1] For the distinctions of meaning among different comparative and superlative forms of the same positive, see the general vocabulary.

[2] κακός has also regular forms. See 448.

[3] A neut. plur. used as an adv.

[4] Also compared regularly, μικρότερος, μικρότατος.

[5] The dat. is used with comparatives to denote *the degree of difference*. So here, *greater by much, i.e. much greater.*

μείζων ἦν ἡ βοή. 11. *πειράσονται καὶ ὑμῖν καὶ ἡμῖν τὰ βέλτιστα*[1] *συμβουλεῦσαι.* 12. *βέλτιον εἶναι ἔφη ὁ στρατηγὸς ἀπαλλάττεσθαι.* 13. *ἔχομεν δὲ καὶ ψῡχὰς σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ἀμείνονας τῶν βαρβάρων.* 14. *τοιγαροῦν κράτιστοι δὴ ὑπηρέται παντὸς ἔργου Κύρῳ ἦσαν.* 15. *ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο δὲ ἑκάστοτε ἀπέχοντες ἀλλήλων παρασάγγην καὶ μεῖον.* 16. *ἦσαν δ' οἱ ταύτῃ ἵπποι μείονες μὲν τῶν Περσικῶν,*[2] *θῡμοειδέστεροι δὲ πολύ.*[3] 17. *οὐ νομίζω ἀνδρὶ κάλλιον εἶναι κτῆμα οὐδὲ λαμπρότερον ἀρετῆς καὶ δικαιοσύνης καὶ γενναιότητος.* 18. *στρατιῶται πλείους ἢ δισχίλιοι ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο παρὰ Κλεάρχῳ.* 19. *φίλους δὲ καλῶς κεκοσμημένους μέγιστον κόσμον ἀνδρὶ ἐνόμιζεν.* 20. *ἦσαν Κλεάρχῳ ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι ἱππεῖς πλείους ἢ τετταράκοντα, τούτων δὲ οἱ πλεῖστοι Θρᾷκες.* 21. *ταῦτα ἀπαλλάξωμεν, ἵνα ὡς πλεῖστοι*[4] *μὲν ἡμῶν ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις ὦσιν, ὡς ἐλάχιστοι δὲ σκευοφορῶσι.* 22. *οὔποτε γὰρ μεῖον ἀπεστρατοπεδεύοντο οἱ βάρβαροι τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ ἑξήκοντα σταδίων.*

II. 1. These are the[5] bravest of the captains. 2. There are many Persians nobler than Ariaeus. 3. The barbarians were very expert bowmen. 4. For it is much[6] easier to withdraw. 5. What do you think to be fairest and fittest? 6. We should be more serviceable,[7] if we should have our arms. 7. There were very many wild asses in the plain. 8. The freedom of the cities is the[5] greatest proof of this. 9. It is best for us, Chirisophus, to proceed at once to the height. 10. They were not less[8] than ten thousand stades distant from Greece. 11. But I think you are better and braver than many barbarians. 12. Xenophon thought that thus the honour would be greater. 13. For all the sons of the noblest Persians are educated at the king's court.

---

[1] See p. 122[1].
[2] *Sc.* ἵππων.
[3] See p. 179[1].
[4] *quam plurimi.* ὡς or ὅτι may be prefixed to the superlative to strengthen it.
[5] Omit.
[6] *Cf.* I. 16 above.
[7] *worth more* (see p. 91[2]).
[8] *Cf.* I. 22 above.

471. R. **κρα, cer,** *do, make.*

αὐτο-κρά-τωρ, *-ορ-ος, ὁ, ἡ* (*αὐτός, self*), *being one's own master;* **κράτ-ος,** *-ε-ος, τό* (*κρα + τ*), *strength, might;* *κρατέ-ω, be strong, be master;* **κρείττων,** *-ον* (for *κρετ-ἰων*), comp., *stronger, better;* **κράτ-ιστο-ς,** *-η, -ο-ν,* sup., *strongest, best;* *ἐγ-κρατής, -ές, possessed of power;* *ἐπι-κρατής, -ές, master of;* *ἐπικράτε-ια, -ᾶς, mastery;* *παγ-κράτ-ιο-ν, τό* (*πᾶς, all*), *complete contest, the pancratium.*

Cer-ēs, *-er-is, f., Ceres* ('goddess of creation'); **cor-p-us,** *-or-is, n., body;* **cre-ō,** *produce, create;* **crē-sc-ō,** *come into being;* **in-crē-mentu-m,** *-ī, n., growth.*

HARD, *auto-***crat**, *aristo-***cracy**, *demo-***cracy**, *demo-***crat**, *etc.*

LESSON LXIII.

Future System of Liquid Verbs. — Liquid and Vowel Verbs of the Fourth Class.

472. Verbs whose themes end in a liquid are called *liquid* verbs.

473. The future of liquid verbs is formed by adding the tense-suffix *-ε°/ε-* instead of *-σ°/ε-* (159) to the theme; ε is contracted with the following vowel, as in the present of *φιλέω* (245). Thus: —

μένω (theme *μεν-*), *remain,* fut. *μενῶ, μενεῖς, μενεῖ, etc.;* *νέμω* (theme *νεμ-*), *distribute,* fut. *νεμῶ, νεμεῖς, νεμεῖ, etc.*

These two verbs belong to the First Class.

474. Many liquid verbs belong to the Fourth Class (466).

475. λ of the theme unites with ι of the present tense-suffix *-ι°/ε-*, forming with it λλ. Thus: —

	Theme.	Pres. Stem.	Future.
ἀγγέλλω, announce,	*αγγελ-*	*αγγελλ°/ε-*	*ἀγγελῶ*
βάλλω, throw,	*βαλ-*	*βαλλ°/ε-*	*βαλῶ*
στέλλω, send,	*στελ-*	*στελλ°/ε-*	*στελῶ*

476. When the theme ends in ν or ρ, ι is transferred and unites with the vowel of the theme to form a diphthong. Thus: —

	Theme.	Pres. Stem.	Future.
κτείνω, kill,	κτεν-	κτεινº/ε-	κτενῶ
περαίνω, accomplish,	περαν-	περαινº/ε-	περανῶ
σημαίνω, show by a sign,	σημαν-	σημαινº/ε-	σημανῶ
τείνω, stretch,	τεν-	τεινº/ε-	τενῶ
φαίνω, show,	φαν-	φαινº/ε-	φανῶ
φθείρω, destroy,	φθερ-	φθειρº/ε-	φθερῶ
χαλεπαίνω, be angry,	χαλεπαν-	χαλεπαινº/ε-	χαλεπανῶ

477. But if the vowel of the theme is ι or υ it becomes long when ι of the suffix -ιº/ε- is transferred. Thus: —

	Theme.	Pres. Stem.	Future.
κλίνω, cause to lean,	κλιν-	κλῖνº/ε-	κλινῶ
κρίνω, distinguish,	κριν-	κρῖνº/ε-	κρινῶ
αἰσχύνω, shame,	αισχυν-	αισχῦνº/ε-	αἰσχυνῶ

478. To the Fourth Class belong not only mute (466) and liquid (474) verbs, but also two verbs with themes in -αυ-.

	Theme.	Pres. Stem.	Future.
καίω, burn,	καυ-	καιº/ε- (for καυ-ιº/ε-)	καύσω
κλαίω, weep,	κλαυ-	κλαιº/ε- (for κλαυ-ιº/ε-)	κλαύσομαι or κλαυσοῦμαι[1]

a. υ is dropped between the two vowels. Attic prose uses κᾶω instead of καίω, κλᾶω instead of κλαίω.

Conjugate the future system of φαίνω in 678[2].

Conjugate also the future system of any other of the liquid verbs given above.

479. EXERCISES.

I. 1. τὴν ἀξίαν ἑκάστῳ νεμοῦμεν. 2. ἐνταῦθα μενῶ ἡμέρας ἑπτά. 3. παραγγελεῖ ὑπομένειν. 4. πότερον ταῦτα ἀπαγγελῶ ἢ μενεῖτε; 5. ὅ τι[3] δὲ ποιήσει, οὐ διασημανεῖ.

---

[1] Some verbs have, in addition to or instead of a fut. in -σομαι, one in -σέομαι, contracted -σοῦμαι, formed with the tense-suffix -σεº/ε-. This formation is found only in the fut. mid., and only when it has an active meaning. It is called the *Doric Future.*

[2] Follow the direction given on p. 159[6].

[3] *What,* neut. sing. acc. of ὅστις. See p. 122[8].

6. ταῦτα δὲ ἀγγελοῦσι πρὸς τὸν στρατηγόν. 7. τούτους ἀναστελοῦσιν οἱ τοξόται καὶ πελτασταί. 8. τί οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες ἀποκρινοῦνται Κύρῳ; 9. ὁ δὲ Φαλῖνος εἶπε,[1] Ταῦτα ἀπαγγελοῦμεν. 10. αἰσχυνούμεθα[2] καὶ θεοὺς καὶ ἀνθρώπους ταῦτα ποιεῖν. 11. πάλιν ἠρώτησε, Σπονδὰς ἢ πόλεμον ἀπαγγελῶ; 12. τοὺς μὲν[3] αὐτῶν ἀποκτενεῖ, τοὺς δ'[3] ἐκβαλεῖ. 13. ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τῇ σάλπιγγι[4] σημανεῖ. 14. περανῶ τὰ δέοντα.[5] 15. Τισσαφέρνης καύσει τὰς κώμας. 16. κρινεῖς δ' αὐτὸν φιλομαθέστατον εἶναι. 17. τοῖς ἵπποις ἐμβαλεῖτε τοῦτον τὸν χιλόν. 18. οὐ μέντοι ταχύ γε ἀπαγγελῶ, ἀλλὰ διατρίψω. 19. πολλοὺς τῶν ἁρπαζόντων οὕτως ἀποκτενεῖτε. 20. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται χαλεπανοῦσι τοῖς στρατηγοῖς.[6] 21. τενοῦσιν ἄνω πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. 22. διαφθεροῦσι τοὺς στρατιώτας. 23. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται αὐτόν τε βαλοῦσι καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια. 24. οὗτος γὰρ καὶ τὴν πατρίδα οὕτω καταισχυνεῖ καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν Ἑλλάδα. 25. Κῦρος οὔτε ἄλλον πέμπει σημανοῦντα[7] ὅ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν οὔτε αὐτὸς[8] φαίνεται.[9]

II. 1. I shall answer you. 2. I will report this to the soldiers. 3. They will remain there seven days. 4. All will weep. 5. And he will burn down the palace. 6. He will kill all. 7. I shall lay the country waste. 8. He will put his brother to death. 9. They say the enemy will give way. 10. The gods will show us the way. 11. You will send back the messengers. 12. And on account of this I will not wait for you. 13. He says that he will answer the soldiers. 14. I will give the signal to the Greeks with the trumpet. 15. I will give orders to all to use their slings and bows.[10]

---

[1] *Cf.* 443, I. 17.

[2] Used in the mid. as a pass. deponent (255 b), *feel ashamed before*, with direct obj. in acc.

[3] *Cf.* 328, I. 17.

[4] See p. 47[5].

[5] See 371.

[6] Dat. of indirect obj. See p. 84[1].

[7] Circumstantial partic. expressing purpose (379).

[8] *Cf.* 308, I. 4.

[9] In the mid. and pass., *show oneself, be shown, i.e. appear.*

[10] *and to use their bows* (τοξεύω).

480. R. **βαλ**, *throw.*

βάλλω (for *βαλ-ιω*), *throw, throw at, hit;* **δια-βάλλω**, *throw across at* with words, *slander;* **βέλ-ος**, *-ε-ος, τό, thing thrown, missile;* **βολ-ή**, *-ῆς, a throw;* *ἀνα-βολή, -ῆς, that which is thrown up, earthwork;* *δια-βολή, -ῆς, slander;* *εἰσ-βολή, -ῆς, invasion, entrance, pass;* *ἐκ-βολή, -ῆς, invasion;* *προ-βολή, -ῆς, a throwing forward;* *προσ-βολή, -ῆς, assault, charge;* *συμ-βολή, -ῆς, a hurtling together, encounter;* *ὑπερ-βολή, -ῆς, a throwing over, crossing;* *πετρο-βολ-ία, -ᾶς (πέτρο-ς, ὁ, stone), stone-throwing;* *ἀκρο-βολίζο-μαι (ἄκρος, topmost, outermost), throw from a height or distance;* *ἀκροβόλι-σι-ς, -ε-ως, ἡ, throwing from a distance, skirmish.*

*em-***blem**, *pro-***blem**, *dia-***bolic**, *de-***vil**, *para-***ble**, *sym-***bol**.

LESSON LXIV.

First Aorist System of Liquid Verbs.

481. The first aorist of liquid verbs rejects σ of the tense-suffix *-σα-* (165) and lengthens the theme-vowel in compensation, α to η (but to ᾱ after ι or ρ), ε to ει, ι to ῑ, υ to ῡ. Thus: —

περαίνω (περαν-), accomplish, aor. *ἐπέρᾱνα;*
φαίνω (φαν-), show, aor. *ἔφηνα;*

σημαίνω (σημαν-), show by a sign, aor. *ἐσήμηνα;*
χαλεπαίνω (χαλεπαν-), be angry, aor. *ἐχαλέπηνα.*

ἀγγέλλω (αγγελ-), announce, aor. *ἤγγειλα;*
μένω (μεν-), remain, aor. *ἔμεινα;*
στέλλω (στελ-), send, aor. *ἔστειλα;*
φθείρω (φθερ-), destroy, aor. *ἔφθειρα.*

κτείνω (κτεν-), kill, aor. *ἔκτεινα;*
νέμω (νεμ-), distribute, aor. *ἔνειμα;*
τείνω (τεν-), stretch, aor. *ἔτεινα;*

κλίνω (κλιν-), cause to lean, aor. *ἔκλῑνα;*
κρίνω (κριν-), distinguish, aor. *ἔκρῑνα.*

αἰσχύνω (αισχυν-), shame, aor. *ᾔσχῡνα.*

a. *βάλλω* (475) forms a second aor. (137). This will be explained later.

b. The aor. of *κάω* (178) is *ἔκαυσα*; of *κλάω*, *ἔκλασα*.

Conjugate the first aorist system of *φαίνω* in 679.

Conjugate also the first aorist system of any other of the liquid verbs given above.

482. EXERCISES.

I. 1. διὸ ἔμειναν ἡμέρᾱν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. 2. βασιλεῖ πρῶτος ἤγγειλα ταῦτα. 3. ῥᾳδίως ταῦτα πάντα ἐπεράναμεν. 4. διέφθειραν γὰρ τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς. 5. καὶ τοὺς ὁπλίτᾱς ἐκέλευσε μεῖναι. 6. σὺ δὲ πρῶτος ἀπόφηναι[1] γνώμην. 7. στρατιώτᾱς ἔστειλε τὸν χόρτον καύσοντας. 8. καὶ θαμινὰ παρήγγειλεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν τοὺς Ἕλληνας ὑπομένειν. 9. ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶν ἐστείλατο ἐπὶ πόλεμον. 10. ἐὰν δὲ σημήνῃ[2] τῷ κέρᾱτι, συσκευάζεσθε. 11. κατακαύσωμεν τὰς ἁμάξᾱς ἃς ἔχομεν. 12. καὶ εἰ παραγγείλειαν, τὸ στράτευμα πλησιάζοι ἄν. 13. ἔμειναν δὲ καὶ οἱ παρὰ τὴν θάλατταν οἰκοῦντες ἐν Σόλοις καὶ ἐν Ἰσσοῖς. 14. ἱκανοὶ ἔσονται τά τε παρὰ βασιλέως[3] τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἀπαγγεῖλαι καὶ τὰ παρὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων βασιλεῖ. 15. Κῦρος δ' ἀπεκρίνατο, Ἀκούω Ἀμβροκόμᾱν ἐχθρὸν ἄνδρα ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφρᾱτῃ ποταμῷ εἶναι.[4] 16. καὶ Κῦρος ἀποκτεῖναι λέγεται αὐτὸς τῇ ἑαυτοῦ[5] χειρὶ τὸν ἄρχοντα. 17. Κλέαρχος κρίνᾱς ἀδικεῖν τὸν τοῦ Μένωνος στρατιώτην πληγᾱ̃ς ἐμβάλλει. 18. τούτοις ἀποκρίνασθε ὅ τι[6] κάλλιστόν τε καὶ ἄριστον ἔχετε. 19. καὶ ὅτῳ[7] δοκεῖ τοῦτ', ἔφη, ἀνατεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα· καὶ ἀνέτειναν ἅπαντες. 20. εὐθὺς οὖν ὁ Ξενοφῶν αὐτοὺς ἐκέλευεν εὔχεσθαι τοῖς φήνᾱσι θεοῖς τά τε ὀνείρατα καὶ τὸν πόρον καὶ[8] τὰ λοιπὰ ἀγαθὰ ἐπιτελέσαι.[9]

II. 1. He accomplished this easily. 2. The soldiers remained there five days. 3. He reported the decision to his friends. 4. They did not wait for the hoplites. 5. The Greeks made answer to this. 6. You disgraced your ancestors. 7. The

---

[1] See 197. If this were the first aor. inf. act., and not the imperative mid., the accent would be on the penult (345 c), *i.e.* the form would be properispomenon (35).

[2] *Sc.* ὁ σαλπιγκτής.

[3] See p. 83[9].

[4] See 354.

[5] *of himself*, gen. sing. masc. of the reflexive pron. *Cf.* 373, I. 8.

[6] *whatever*. *Cf.* 179, I. 5.

[7] *to whomever*, dat. sing. masc. of ὅστις. *Cf.* 336, I. 24.

[8] *also*.

[9] Dependent on εὔχεσθαι. See also 441 and 345 c.

barbarians are said to have given way at once. 8. Cyrus and the army remained there twenty days. 9. The generals reported this to Cyrus. 10. Cyrus put a Persian man to death. 11. Hereon the trumpeter gave the signal. 12. Abrocomas at that time burned the boats. 13. You corrupted our generals and captains. 14. Equip yourselves for war immediately.

483. R. **φα, fa,** *shine, show.*

φημί, *show* by words, *say*; **φά-σκ-ω,** *say, allege*: **φά-σι-ς,** *-ε-ως, ἡ, assertion*; *πρό-φασι-ς, -ε-ως, ἡ, allegation, pretext*: *προ-φασίζο-μαι, set up as a pretext*; *ἀ-προφάσισ-το-ς, -ο-ν, not offering excuses*; *ἀπροφασίστως,* adv., *without offering excuses, without evasion*; **φω-νή,** *-ῆς, sound, voice, language.* — **φαίνω** (φα + ν), *cause to shine, bring to light, show*: **φαν-ερό-ς,** *-ά, -ό-ν, in plain sight, clear*; *φανερῶς,* adv., *evidently*; *ἀ-φαν-ής, -ές, invisible, hidden*; *ἀφανίζω, make hidden, blot out*; *δια-φαν-ής, -ές, seen through, transparent*; *δια-φανῶς,* adv., *clearly, distinctly*; *ἐμ-φαν-ής, -ές, in plain sight, visible*; *ἐμφανῶς,* adv., *visibly*; *κατα-φαν-ής, -ές, in sight*; *περι-φαν-ής, -ές, visible from every point*; *περιφανῶς,* adv., *manifestly, notably*; **φά-ος,** *-ε-ος, τό* (φω + ϝ), *light*; **φῶς,** *φωτ-ός, τό* (φω + τ), *light.*

fā-rī, *say*; **fa-t-e-o-r,** *confess*; **īn-fi-ti-ae,** *-ārum, f., denial*; **fā-bula,** *-ae, f., story*; **fā-ma,** *-ae, f., report*; **fās,** *n., divine law.*

BAN, BANNS; *eu*-phemism, *pro*-phesy, *pro*-phet, phase, *em*-phasis, phenomenon, *dia*-phanous, *epi*-phany, *hiero*-phant, phantasm, phos*phorus*, photo*-graphy.*

NOTE. — For *φημί,* see 348. *φάος,* is for *φαϝ-ος.*

LESSON LXV.

Formation and Comparison of Adverbs.

484. Most adverbs are formed from adjectives and end in **-ως.**

Examine the following: —

ADJECTIVE.	STEM.	GEN. PLUR.	ADVERB.
δίκαιος, just,	δικαιο-	δικαίων	δικαίως
κακός, bad,	κακο-	κακῶν	κακῶς
εὐδαίμων, fortunate,	ευδαιμον-	εὐδαιμόνων	εὐδαιμόνως
ἀσφαλής, secure,	ασφαλεσ-	ἀσφαλῶν	ἀσφαλῶς
ἡδύς, pleasant,	ἡδυ-	ἡδέων	ἡδέως

a. Observe that adverbs formed from adjectives of the vowel-declension add -ς to the stem, the last vowel of which is lengthened, and have the accent of the gen. plur. neut.

b. Observe that adverbs formed from adjectives of the consonant-declension add -ως to the stem, which takes the same form as before -ων in the gen. plur. neut. The adverb is contracted when the gen. plur. is contracted and has its accent.

Examine the following: —

ἄμεινον ἂν πολεμοῖμεν ἔχοντες τὰ ὅπλα, we should fight better, if we had our arms.

κράτιστα μάχονται, they fight very bravely.

c. Observe that the acc. neut. of the comparative and superlative of the adj. is used for the comparative and superlative of the adverb, in the sing. for the comparative, in the plur. for the superlative.

485. EXERCISES.

I. 1. *στερρῶς πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν ἀπειχόμεθα.* 2. *οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες βαρέως ταῦτ' ἤκουσαν.* 3. *εὐδαιμονέστερον τῶν ἀλλῶν*[1] *διῆγον.* 4. *ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἰσχῡρῶς κατέτεινεν.* 5. *τούτους κακῶς ποιεῖ καὶ τὰ χρήματα ἀποσῡλᾷ.* 6. *ἡ δὲ τύχη ἐστρατήγησε κάλλῑον.* 7. *οἱ δὲ διώξαντες τῶν ἱππέων ταχὺ*[2] *ἐπαύοντο.* 8. *κακῶς γὰρ τὰ ἡμέτερα ἔχει.* 9. *εἰ ἀνάγκη ἐστὶ μάχεσθαι, ὡς*[3] *κράτιστα μαχώμεθα.* 10. *ἔλεγον δὲ τῷ βασιλεῖ ὅτι δικαίως*[4] *ἄν μοι*[5] *χαρίζοιτο.* 11. *χάριν σωθέντες ὑπὸ σοῦ σοὶ ἂν ἔχοιμεν δικαίως.* 12. *Μένων δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς ἐπεθύμει πλουτεῖν ἰσχῡρῶς.* 13. *τί*[6] *ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἀδικούμενος κακῶς ἐποίεις τὴν ἐμὴν χώρᾱν;* 14. *οὔτε κινδῡνεύσαντες οὔτε πονήσαντες τῶν ἄλλων πλέον τῑμήσεσθε*[7] *στρατιωτῶν ὑπὸ Κύρου.* 15. *οἱ δ' Ἕλληνες ἀσφαλῶς ἐπορεύοντο τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρᾱς.* 16. *καὶ βοᾷ καὶ βαρβαρικῶς καὶ Ἑλληνικῶς ὅτι βασιλεὺς σὺν στρατεύ-*

[1] Adverbs in the comp. degree, like adjectives (451), may take the gen.

[2] The neut. acc. of the positive of an adj., either sing. or plur., may be used as an adv. *Cf.* 247, I. 16, 284, I. 18, 470, I. 16.

[3] *Cf.* 470, I. 21.

[4] See p. 104[10].

[5] *Cf.* 256, I. 18.

[6] See p. 50[1]. The acc. is cognate (p. 122[1]) with ἀδικούμενος.

[7] Fut. mid. in pass. sense.

ματι πολλῷ ἐγγύς ἐστιν. 17. *ἀκούοντες τὴν Κύρου ἀρετὴν ἥδιον καὶ προθῡμότερον συνεπορεύοντο.* 18. *ὥστε καὶ ἡδέως ἐπόνουν καὶ θαρραλέως ἐκτῶντο, καὶ τὰ κτήματα ἥκιστα Κῦρον*[1] *ἔκρυπτον.* 19. *ἔνθα δὲ τέτταρές εἰσι διώρυχες τὸ μὲν εὖρος πλεθριαῖαι, βαθεῖαι δὲ ἰσχῡρῶς.* 20. *μακρότερον γὰρ οἱ Ῥόδιοι τῶν τε Περσῶν ἐσφενδόνων καὶ τῶν πλείστων τοξοτῶν.* 21. *τοῦτο δὴ δεῖ λέγειν, πῶς ἂν πορευοίμεθά τε ὡς ἀσφαλέστατα, καὶ εἰ μάχεσθαι δέοι, ὡς κράτιστα μαχοίμεθα.*

II. 1. They were greatly deceived. 2. He sent gifts in a princely manner. 3. Most gladly would I hear[2] the name. 4. For they were well enough armed.[3] 5. We withdrew with great difficulty. 6. If we must proceed, let us proceed with all possible speed. 7. The Persians were paying less attention to the Greeks. 8. How shall we remain here in the greatest safety? 9. And they are justly laying plans against us. 10. And they were exceedingly angry with Clearchus. 11. He always inflicted punishment with severity. 12. Why should we do damage to the king's territory? 13. They did not undergo greater hardships[4] than the rest of the soldiers.

486. R. 1 **δακ**, **dac**, *show, teach.*

δι-δαχ-ή, *-ῆς, teaching, instruction*; **δι-δά-σκ ω**, fut. *διδάξω, teach*; *διδάσκ-αλο-ς, ὁ, teacher.* — **δίκ-η**, *-ης, way pointed out, custom, right, justice*; **ἄ-δικο-ς**, *-ο-ν, unjust*; *ἀδίκως*, adv., *unjustly*; *ἀδικέ ω, be unjust*; *ἀδικ-ία, -ας, injustice*; **δίκα-ιο-ς**, *-α, -ο-ν, right, lawful*; *δικαίως*, adv., *with justice*; *δικαιό-τη-ς, -ητ-ος, ἡ, justice*; *δικαιο σύνη, -ης, justice*; *δικαίω, give judgment*; *δικασ-τή-ς, -οῦ, one who gives judgment, dicast.* — **δείκ-νῡ-μι**, fut. *δείξω, show, point out*; **δεῖγ-μα**, *-ατ-ος, τό, something to show with, sample.*

doc-e-ō, *teach*; **di sc-ō**, *learn*; **in-dex**, *-ic-is, m.* and *f., one who points out*; **iūdex**, *-ic-is, m.* and *f., judge, juror*; **causi-dic-u-s**, *-ī, m., pleader, advocate*; **dic-ō**, *dedicate*; **dīc-ō**, *say, speak.*

TEACH, TOKEN; **didactic**, *syn-***dic**, *para-***digm.**

NOTE. — *δι-δά-σκ-ω* is for *δι-δαχ-σκ-ω*, theme *διδαχ-*. The theme of *δείκ-νυ-μι* is *δεικ-*. The forms of these verbs will be explained later.

[1] Verbs signifying to *conceal*, like those signifying to *ask, demand* (p. 100 [2]), may take two object accs.

[2] See p. 104 [14].

[3] Use the pert. pass. partic.

[4] *toil more.*

LESSON LXVI.

Review of Groups. — Reading Lesson.

Review the groups of related words in 435, 444, 455, 463, 468, 471, 480, 483, 486.

Review 140, 142.

Read and translate again 394.

Read and translate the following passage: —

487. Κῦρος.

VI. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Κιλικίᾱς καὶ τῆς Συρίᾱς ἐπὶ τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος τεττάρων σταδίων· ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρᾱς πέντε· καὶ Κῦρος μεταπεμψάμενος τοὺς στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων λέγει ὅτι ἡ ὁδὸς ἔσται πρὸς βασιλέᾱ μέγαν εἰς Βαβυλῶνα· καὶ κελεύει αὐτοὺς λέγειν ταῦτα τοῖς στρατιώταις καὶ ἀναπείθειν ἕπεσθαι. οἱ δὲ ποιήσαντες ἐκκλησίᾱν ἀπήγγελλον ταῦτα· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἐχαλέπαινον τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ ἔφασαν αὐτοὺς πάλαι ταῦτα κρύπτειν, καὶ οὐκ ἔφασαν πορεύσεσθαι ἐὰν μὴ Κῦρος αὐτοῖς χρήματα ὑπισχνῆται. ταῦτα οἱ στρατηγοὶ Κύρῳ ἀπήγγελλον. ὁ δ' ὑπισχνεῖται ἀνδρὶ ἑκάστῳ πέντε ἀργυρίου μνᾶς. τὸ μὲν δὴ πολὺ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ οὕτως ἐπείσθη. Μένων δέ, πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι τί ποιήσουσιν οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται, πότερον ἕψονται Κύρῳ ἢ οὔ, συνέλεξε τὸ αὑτοῦ στράτευμα χωρὶς τῶν ἄλλων καὶ ἔλεξε τάδε. Ἄνδρες, ἐάν μοι πεισθῆτε, οὔτε κινδῡνεύσαντες οὔτε πονήσαντες τῶν ἄλλων πλέον τῑμήσεσθε στρατιωτῶν ὑπὸ Κύρου. τί οὖν κελεύω ποιῆσαι; νῦν δεῖται Κῦρος ἕπεσθαι τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἐπὶ βασιλέᾱ· ἐγὼ οὖν φημι ὑμᾶς χρῆναι πορεύεσθαι πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι ὅ τι οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες ἀποκρινοῦνται Κύρῳ. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα πείθονται καὶ διαβαίνουσι τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν πρὶν τοὺς ἄλλους ἀποκρίνασθαι. Κῦρος δὲ αὐτοῖς πέμ-

ψᾶς Γλοῦν εἶπεν, Ἐγὼ μέν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἤδη ὑμᾶς ἐπαινῶ· ὅπως δὲ καὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμὲ ἐπαινέσετε ἐμοὶ μελήσει, ἢ μηκέτι με Κῦρον νομίζετε. οἱ μὲν δὴ στρατιῶται ἐν ἐλπίσι μεγάλαις ὄντες ηὔχοντο αὐτὸν εὐτυχῆσαι, Μένωνι δὲ καὶ δῶρα ἐλέγετο πέμψαι μεγαλοπρεπῶς. ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσᾶς διέβαινε· συνείπετο δὲ καὶ τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα αὐτῷ ἅπαν.

NOTES.

9. **αὐτοὺς πάλαι ταῦτα κρύπτειν**: the soldiers said, *πάλαι ταῦτα κρύπτετε, you have long been concealing this.* Sec 354. — **οὐκ ἔφασαν . . . ὑπισχνῆται**: the soldiers said, *οὐ παρευσώσεθα, ἐὰν μὴ Κῦρος ἡμῖν χρήματα ὑπισχνῆται, unless Cyrus promises us, etc.* — 13. **ἐπείσθη**: first aor. pass. of *πείθω, persuade.* So below *ἐάν μοι πεισθῆτε, if you will obey me*, first aor. pass. in the sense of the mid., *persuade oneself, obey.* — **πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι**, *before it was manifest.* After an affirmative sentence, *πρίν, before, before that*, takes the infin. — 15. **οὔ**: the proclitic *οὐ* (37) takes the acute accent at the end of a sent. — 20. **χρῆναι**: pres. inf. of the impers. verb *χρή, it is needful, one must.* **ὑμᾶς** is the subj. of *πορεύεσθαι.* — 25. **ἐμοὶ μελήσει**, *I shall see to it*, third pers. sing. fut. indic. of the impers. verb *μέλει, it is a care.* — 29. **συνείπετο**: see p. 83 [8].

Translate the following passage into Greek: —

488. Proceeding through Syria the Greeks arrive at the sources of the river Dardas. Here was the palace of the ruler of Syria, and a very large and beautiful park, with trees of every description. Cyrus cut the park down and burned the palace. He marched thence three stages, fifteen parasangs, to the river Euphrates. Here was situated a large and prosperous city named Thapsacus. There they remained five days; for the soldiers suspected that they were proceeding against the king. And when their generals brought back word from Cyrus that their expedition would be to Babylon, they were angry, and said they had been deceived, and refused to proceed unless Cyrus promised them money in addition to their pay. He made this promise gladly, and all crossed the river. Thence he marched nine stages, fifty parasangs, through Syria; and they arrived at the river Araxes. They remained here three days, and collected supplies.

LESSON LXVII.

Second Aorist System. — Verbs of the Second Class.

Review 437, 438.

489. Few verbs have both the first and second form of the same tense. When this happens, the two forms often differ in meaning.

490. The stem of the *second aorist* system is formed by adding $-^{o}/_{\epsilon}-$ (153) as tense-suffix to the theme. As a secondary tense the second aorist has augment in the indicative. It has the inflexion of the present system (672), being inflected in the indicative like the imperfect and in the other moods like the present.

Conjugate the second aorist system of λείπω in 680.

a. Note the exceptions to the principle of recessive accent (32), λιποῦ, λιπεῖν, λιπέσθαι, λιπών.

Conjugate also the second aorist system of any other of the verbs given below.

491. The following verbs of the first and the fourth classes form second aorists : —

	Theme.	Future.	2d Aor. Stem.	2d Aor.
ἄγω, *lead*,	αγ-	ἄξω	αγαγ$^{o}/_{\epsilon}$-	ἤγαγον
γίγνομαι, *become*,	γεν-	γενήσομαι	γεν$^{o}/_{\epsilon}$-	ἐγενόμην
ἔχω, *have, hold*,	σεχ-	ἕξω and σχήσω	σχ$^{o}/_{\epsilon}$-	ἔσχον
πίπτω, *fall*,	πετ-	πεσοῦμαι	πεσ$^{o}/_{\epsilon}$-	ἔπεσον
βάλλω, *throw*,	βαλ-	βαλῶ	βαλ$^{o}/_{\epsilon}$-	ἔβαλον
κράζω, *cry out*,	κραγ-		κραγ$^{o}/_{\epsilon}$-	ἔκραγον

a. The theme is *reduplicated* in ἤγαγον (αγ-αγ-).

b. The pres. has reduplication (the first letter of the theme being repeated with ι) and the theme-vowel is dropped in γίγνομαι (for γι-γεν-ο-μαι). In the fut. the theme assumes ε (γενε-).

c. The theme-vowel is dropped in ἔσχον (for ε-σεχ ον). ἕξω is for σεξω, and in σχήσω the theme σεχ- becomes σχε-.

d. *πίπτω* (for *πι-πετ-ω*) is formed like *γίγνομαι*. *ἔπεσον* is for an original *ἔπετον* (found also in Doric). For *πεσοῦμαι* (for *πετ-σεομαι*), see p. 174[1].

492. Some verbs with short themes ending in a mute or *ν* form the present stem by adding the variable vowel *ο/ε* to the theme and lengthening its short vowel (*α* to *η*, *ι* to *ει*, *υ* to *ευ*). Thus: —

	THEME.	PRES. STEM.	FUT.	AOR.
τήκω, melt,	*τακ-*	*τηκ°/ε-*	*τήξω*	*ἔτηξα*
λείπω, leave,	*λιπ-*	*λειπ°/ε-*	*λείψω*	*ἔλιπον*
πείθω, persuade,	*πιθ-*	*πειθ°/ε-*	*πείσω*	*ἔπεισα*
φεύγω, flee,	*φυγ-*	*φευγ°/ε-*	*φεύξομαι* or *φευξοῦμαι* (p. 174[1])	*ἔφυγον*
θέω, run,	*θυ-*	*θε°/ε-* (for *θευ-°/ε-*)	*θεύσομαι*	
πλέω, sail,	*πλυ-*	*πλε°/ε-* (for *πλευ-°/ε-*)	*πλεύσομαι* or *πλευσοῦμαι*	*ἔπλευσα*
ῥέω, flow,	*ῥυ-*	*ῥε°/ε-* (for *ῥευ-°/ε-*)	*ῥεύσομαι*	

a. *ν* is dropped between two vowels.

b. The lengthened form of the theme is kept in the fut. and *first* aor.

493. These verbs belong to the *Strong-Vowel* or *Second* Class.

494. **EXERCISES.**

I. 1. *ποῖ φυγόντες σωθησόμεθα ;* 2. *δρόμος ἐγένετο τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς.* 3. *τὴν χιόνα τήκει ὁ ἥλιος.* 4. *καὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ σύμπαντες ὁπλῖται μύριοι καὶ χίλιοι.* 5. *ἐξ ἀπροσδοκήτου[1] γὰρ αὐτοῖς ἐνέπεσε τὸ Ἑλληνικόν.* 6. *καὶ τί δεῖ σὲ λιπεῖν τὴν ὀπισθοφυλακίαν ;* 7. *ἔφυγον γοῦν πρὸς ἐκείνους καταλιπόντες ἡμᾶς.* 8. *καὶ τὰ πλείστου[2] ἄξια[3] ἔχοντες ἀπέπλευσαν.* 9. *ταῦτα λέξας ἔπεισε τοὺς ἄνδρας.* 10. *ἔνθα αἱ διώρυχές εἰσιν, ἀπὸ τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ ῥέουσαι.* 11. *καὶ ἐμβαλὼν σὺν τοῖς ἑξακοσίοις ἱππεῦσι τοὺς βαρβάρους.* 12. *ἔφασαν καὶ ἐμβαλεῖν[4] ποτε εἰς*

[1] *Sc. τρόπου.* [2] *Cf.* 274, I. 15. [3] *Cf.* 380, I. 2. [4] Aor. See 354.

αὐτοὺς βασιλικὴν στρατιάν. 13. ἀλλὰ πολλὰς προφάσεις Κῦρος εἶχεν, ἵνα ὑμᾶς ἐνθάδε ἀναγάγοι. 14. ἐκλιπόντες τὰς οἰκίας ἔφυγον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη. 15. ὁ γὰρ Τισσαφέρνης ἐν τῇ πρώτῃ συνόδῳ οὐκ ἔφυγεν. 16. τὸ δὲ στράτευμα ὁ σῖτος ἐπέλιπεν. 17. οἱ πελτασταὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων δρόμῳ[1] ἔθεον πρὸς τοὺς βαρβάρους. 18. τὰς δὲ τάξεις εἰς τὰ πλάγια παραγαγὼν ἐμβαλεῖν οὐκ ἐτόλμησεν. 19. τοὺς Μῦσοὺς σὺν τῇ παρούσῃ δυνάμει ταπεινοὺς ὑμῖν παράσχοιμι ἄν. 20. οὐκ ἔμειναν τοὺς ὁπλίτας, ἀλλ' ἀνακραγόντες ἔθεον ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. 21. Ξενοφῶντα δὲ ὁ ὑπασπιστὴς ἔχων τὴν ἀσπίδα ἀπέλιπεν. 22. ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ σκηπτὸς πεσεῖν[2] εἰς τὴν πατρῴαν οἰκίαν. 23. καὶ τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοὺς ἐκέλευσεν ὁπλίτας ἀγαγεῖν· οἱ δὲ ταῦτα ἐποίησαν ἀγαγόντες ὡς[3] τρισχιλίους ὁπλίτας. 24. καὶ ἡ Κίλισσα ἔφυγεν ἐπὶ τῆς ἁρμαμάξης, καὶ οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς[4] καταλιπόντες τὰ ὤνια ἔφυγον.

II. 1. For Cyrus became my[5] friend.[6] 2. And provisions failed. 3. He fled with all his host. 4. He led a multitude of men against you. 5. When they heard[7] this, they were persuaded. 6. Within the night[8] fear fell also on the Greeks. 7. Thereupon truly a great tumult arose. 8. But all left[7] the road and fled. 9. This he did that he might inspire all men with fear.[9] 10. He led the Greeks into the country of the barbarians and fled. 11. The inhabitants[10] abandoned this city. 12. But I fear that he will lead us into the country of the barbarians. 13. But Menon had the left wing of the Greek (force). 14. They raised a shout and struck their shields against their spears.

---

[1] *Cf.* 228, I. 14.

[2] His thought was, σκηπτὸς ἔπεσεν (354). δοκέω is here used personally, *a thunder-bolt seemed to him, etc.*

[3] *Cf.* 361, I. 9.

[4] See p. 83 [9].

[5] *to me.*

[6] ξένος.

[7] Aor. partic.

[8] *Cf.* 308, I. 15.

[9] *inspire* (παρέχω) *fear in all men* (simple dat.).

[10] See 371.

495. R. **πιθ**, **fid**, *bind.*

πείθ-ω (theme πιθ-), *bind to oneself, persuade*, mid., *let oneself be bound, obey;* verbal πεισ-τέο-ν, *one must obey;* ἀ-πειθ-ής, -ες, *disobedient;* ἀπειθέ-ω, *disobey;* πείθ-αρχο-ς, -ο-ν (R. **αρχ**, 463), *obedient;* πειθαρχέ-ω, *obey authority, defer to;* **πισ-τό-ς**, -ή, -ό-ν, *that does obey, trusty, faithful;* πιστό-τη-ς, -ητ-ος, ἡ, *faithfulness;* ἄ-πιστο-ς, -ο-ν, *not to be trusted, faithless;* ἀπιστέ-ω, *distrust, suspect;* ἀπιστ-ία, -ᾱς, *suspicion;* **πίσ-τι-ς**, -ε-ως, ἡ, *trust, confidence;* πιστεύ-ω, *have confidence in, believe.*

fid-ē-s, *f., trust, faith;* **fīd-u-s**, *adj., trusty;* **fīd-ō**, *trust;* **foed-u-s**, *-er-is, n., league.*

BIND, BOND, BAND, BUNDLE, BODY, BED.

LESSON LXVIII.

Numerals.

496. The *cardinals*, *ordinals*, and *numeral adverbs* which occur are the following: —

	CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	ADVERB.
1	εἷς, μία, ἕν, *one*	πρῶτος, *first*	ἅπαξ, *once*
2	δύο, *two*	δεύτερος, *second*	δίς, *twice*
3	τρεῖς, τρία	τρίτος	τρίς
4	τέτταρες, τέτταρα	τέταρτος	τετράκις
5	πέντε	πέμπτος	πεντάκις
6	ἕξ	ἕκτος	ἑξάκις
7	ἑπτά	ἕβδομος	ἑπτάκις
8	ὀκτώ	ὄγδοος	ὀκτάκις
9	ἐννέα	ἔνατος	ἐνάκις
10	δέκα	δέκατος	δεκάκις
11	ἕνδεκα	ἑνδέκατος	ἑνδεκάκις
12	δώδεκα	δωδέκατος	δωδεκάκις
13	τρισκαίδεκα	τρίτος καὶ δέκατος	
14	τετταρεσκαίδεκα	τέτταρτος καὶ δέκατος	
15	πεντεκαίδεκα	πέμπτος καὶ δέκατος	
16	ἑκκαίδεκα	ἕκτος καὶ δέκατος	
17	ἑπτακαίδεκα	ἕβδομος καὶ δέκατος	
18	ὀκτωκαίδεκα	ὄγδοος καὶ δέκατος	
19	ἐννεακαίδεκα	ἔνατος καὶ δέκατος	

20	εἴκοσι(ν)	εἰκοστός	εἰκοσάκις
30	τριάκοντα	τριᾱκοστός	τριᾱκοντάκις
40	τετταράκοντα	τετταρακοστός	τετταρακοντάκις
50	πεντήκοντα	πεντηκοστός	πεντηκοντάκις
60	ἑξήκοντα	ἑξηκοστός	ἑξηκοντάκις
70	ἑβδομήκοντα	ἑβδομηκοστός	ἑβδομηκοντάκις
80	ὀγδοήκοντα	ὀγδοηκοστός	ὀγδοηκοντάκις
90	ἐνενήκοντα	ἐνενηκοστός	ἐνενηκοντάκις
100	ἑκατόν	ἑκατοστός	ἑκατοντάκις
200	διᾱκόσιοι, -αι, -α	διᾱκοσιοστός	διᾱκοσιάκις
300	τριᾱκόσιοι, -αι, -α	τριᾱκοσιοστός	
400	τετρακόσιοι, -αι, -α	τετρακοσιοστός	
500	πεντακόσιοι, -αι, -α	πεντακοσιοστός	
600	ἑξακόσιοι, -αι, -α	ἑξακοσιοστός	
700	ἑπτακόσιοι, -αι, -α	ἑπτακοσιοστός	
800	ὀκτακόσιοι, -αι, -α	ὀκτακοσιοστός	
900	ἐνακόσιοι, -αι, -α	ἐνακοσιοστός	
1,000	χίλιοι, -αι, -α	χῑλιοστός	χῑλιάκις
2,000	δισχίλιοι, -αι, -α	δισχῑλιοστός	
3,000	τρισχίλιοι, -αι, -α	τρισχῑλιοστός	
10,000	μύριοι, -αι, -α	μῡριοστός	μῡριάκις

a. In compound numbers such as 21, 22, *etc.*, the numbers can be connected by *καί* in either way, but if *καί* is omitted, the larger number comes first, as in English. Thus, εἷς *καὶ* εἴκοσι or εἴκοσι *καὶ* εἷς, but without *καί* always εἴκοσιν εἷς, *etc.*

497. The first four cardinal numbers are thus declined: —

PARADIGMS.

	Singular.			Dual.	Plural.		Plural.	
N.	εἷς	μία	ἕν	N. A. δύο	τρεῖς	τρία	τέτταρες	τέτταρα
G.	ἑνός	μιᾶς	ἑνός	G. D. δυοῖν	τριῶν		τεττάρων	
D.	ἑνί	μιᾷ	ἑνί		τρισί		τέτταρσι	
A.	ἕνα	μίαν	ἕν		τρεῖς	τρία	τέτταρας	τέτταρα

a. With a plural substantive δύο is often used indeclinably.

b. The cardinal numbers from 5 to 100 inclusive are indeclinable. The higher cardinal numbers in *-οι* and all ordinals are declined like adjectives of the vowel-declension.

c. The compounds οὐδείς (οὐδέ and εἷς), μηδείς (μηδέ and εἷς), *none, no, nobody, nothing*, are declined like εἷς, as οὐδείς, οὐδεμία, οὐδέν: οὐδενός, οὐδεμιᾶς, οὐδενός, *etc.* They are found also in the plural, οὐδένες, οὐδεμίαι, οὐδένα, *etc.*

498. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Δᾱρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος[1] γίγνονται παῖδες δύο. 2. ἦσαν δ' οὖν οὗτοι ἑκατὸν ὁπλῖται. 3. οἱ δὲ Καρδοῦχοι φιλικὸν οὐδὲν ἐποίουν. 4. ἢν γὰρ ἅπαξ δύο ἢ τριῶν ἡμερῶν ὁδὸν[2] ἀπόσχωμεν, οὐκέτι οἱ πολέμιοι ἡμῖν ἐπακολουθήσουσιν. 5. ἡ τοῦ παντὸς ἀρχὴ Χειρισόφῳ[3] ἐνταῦθα κατελύθη ἡμέρᾳ[4] ἕκτῃ ἢ ἑβδόμῃ. 6. ὑπάρχει γὰρ νῦν ἡμῖν οὐδὲν τῶν ἐπιτηδείων. 7. τοῦ δὲ Μαρσύου τὸ εὖρος ἐστιν εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε ποδῶν.[5] 8. καὶ τὸν πρῶτον μέντοι βοηθήσαντα πολλοῖς[6] μακαριστὸν ἐποίησεν. 9. καὶ τοῖς στρατιώταις ὠφείλετο μισθὸς πλέον[7] ἢ τριῶν μηνῶν. 10. Τί οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἀδικηθεὶς ὑπ' ἐμοῦ νῦν τὸ τρίτον[8] ἐπιβουλεύεις μοι; 11. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους τρισκαίδεκα παρασάγγᾱς ἐνενήκοντα, τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχων. 12. ἐγένοντο μὲν λόχοι τῶν ὁπλιτῶν ἀμφὶ[9] τοὺς ὀγδοήκοντα, ὁ δὲ λόχος ἕκαστος σχεδὸν εἰς[10] τοὺς ἑκατόν. 13. ἐπεὶ δ' ἡμέρᾱ ἦν ὀγδόη, τοὺς οἰκέτᾱς καταλείπει τῷ κωμάρχῃ πλὴν τοῦ υἱοῦ. 14. τῶν δὲ πολεμίων ἐλέγοντο εἶναι ἑκατὸν καὶ εἴκοσι

---

[1] Gen. of the source after *γίγνονται, are born.*

[2] *Cf.* 219, I. 6.

[3] *Cf.* 129, I. 5.

[4] See p. 45[4].

[5] Predicate gen. of measure. *Cf.* 319, I. 18.

[6] *in the eyes of many.* The dat. may denote the person *in whose view* something is true.

[7] Used indeclinably for πλεόνων.

[8] *the third time*, acc. neut. of the adj. with the article, used adverbially.

[9] *about*, governing the following acc. The whole phrase qualifies λόχοι. In such phrases the numeral often takes the article in Greek.

[10] *to the number of.*

μῡριάδες καὶ ἅρματα δρεπανηφόρα διᾱκόσια· ἄλλοι[1] *δὲ ἦσαν ἑξακισχίλιοι ἱππεῖς, ὧν Ἀρταγέρσης ἦρχεν.* 15. *καὶ ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λῡδίᾱς σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγᾱς εἴκοσι καὶ δύο ἐπὶ τὸν Μαίανδρον ποταμόν· τούτου τὸ εὖρος δύο πλέθρα.* 16. *καὶ ἦκε Κλέαρχος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς ἔχων ὁπλίτᾱς χῑλίους καὶ πελταστὰς Θρᾳκας ὀκτακοσίους καὶ τοξότᾱς Κρῆτας διᾱκοσίους.* 17. *ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρᾱς δέκα καὶ ἐξέτασις ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις ἐγίγνετο καὶ ἀριθμός, καὶ ἐγένοντο ὀκτακισχίλιοι καὶ ἑξακόσιοι.*

II. 1. The army asked Cyrus for four months' pay. 2. But on the fourth day they fled to the stronghold. 3. He had more than forty cavalry men in his force. 4. But Chirisophus also, a Lacedaemonian, was then on board the ships with seven hundred heavy-armed men. 5. He marched thence three stages, fifteen parasangs, to the river Euphrates, which is[2] four stades in width. 6. He marched thence two stages, ten parasangs, to an inhabited city. There he remained three days. 7. He marched thence through Phrygia one stage, eight parasangs, to Colossae, a prosperous and large city. 8. But of these nine hundred thousand[3] were present in the battle, and one hundred and fifty scythe-bearing chariots.

499. **δύο**, *two.*

δύο (for δϝο), *two*; *σύν-δυο, two by two*; δώ-δεκα (δέκα, *ten*), *twelve*; **δεύ-τερο-ς**, -ᾱ, -ο-ν, *second*; **δι-ά**, prep., orig. *between, asunder*, then *through*; **δί-χα**, adv., *in two parts*; διχάζω, *divide in two*; **δί-ς**, adv., *twice*, in composition also **δι-**; δισ-χίλιοι, -αι, -α (χίλιοι, *thousand*), *two thousand*; δι-μοιρία, -ᾱς (μοῖρα, -ᾱς, *lot, portion*), *double share*; δί-πηχυ-ς, -υ (πῆχυς, -εως, ὁ, *cubit*), *of two cubits*; δί-πλεθρο-ς, -ο-ν (πλέθρον, τό, *plethrum*), *of two plethra*; δι-πλόο-ς, -η, -ο-ν (R. **πλα** in πίμπλημι, *fill*), *filled twice, two-fold, double*; δι-πλάσιο-ς, -ᾱ, -ο-ν (R. **πλα** in πίμπλημι, *fill*), *two-fold*; δί-φρο-ς, ὁ (φέρω, *bear*), *that which holds two, chariot-board*; ἐνδίφρ-ιο-ς, -ο-ν, *on the same seat* with one; διᾱ-κόσιοι, -αι, -α (ἑκατόν, *hundred*), *two hundred.*

---

[1] *besides.* [2] *being.* [3] *ninety myriads.*

LESSON LXIX.

First Perfect System.

Review the first perfect system of λύω in 675.

500. The first perfect and first pluperfect are found in *vowel* verbs, in many *lingual mute* verbs, in many *liquid* verbs.

501. For modifications of the theme in vowel verbs, see 254 a and b, 441, 442.

502. A lingual mute is dropped before -κα. Thus: —

ἁρπάζω (ἁρπαδ-), *plunder*, ἥρπακα; νομίζω (νομιδ-), *think*, νενόμικα; πορίζω (ποριδ-), *furnish*, πεπόρικα.

503. Verbs of the second class (492, 493) have the strong form of the theme. Thus: —

πείθω (πιθ-), *persuade*, πέπεικα; πλέω (πλυ-), *sail*, πέπλευκα.

504. Some liquid themes suffer no change before the tense suffix. Thus: —

ἀγγέλλω (αγγελ-), *announce*, ἤγγελκα.

505. Monosyllabic liquid themes change ε to α. Thus: —

στέλλω (στελ-), *send*, ἔσταλκα; φθείρω (φθερ-), *destroy*, ἔφθαρκα.

506. ν is dropped in a few liquid themes; if not dropped it is changed to γ nasal. Thus: —

κρίνω (κρι-), *distinguish*, κέκρικα; τείνω (τει-), *stretch*, τέτακα (505); φαίνω (φαν-), *show*, πέφαγκα.

507. Some liquid themes suffer transposition and become vowel themes. Thus: —

βάλλω (βαλ-), *throw*, βέβληκα.

508. EXERCISES.

I. 1. παρ' ἡμῶν δὲ ἀπήγγελκε τάδε. 2. τὸ πολὺ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ οὕτως ἐπεπείκη. 3. οὗτοι δὲ τὰ πλοῖα ἔχοντες ἀπεπεπλεύκεσαν. 4. ὁ ἀνὴρ τοιαῦτα[1] μὲν πεποίηκε, τοιαῦτα

[1] Neut. pl. acc. of τοιοῦτος.

δὲ λέγει. 5. ἆρ'[1] αὐτὸν κεκέλευκας σῖγὴν κατακηρῦττειν; 6. ὀκτὼ γὰρ ἡμέρᾱς μαχόμενοι διετετελέκετε. 7. τοὺς γὰρ ἵππους δεδέκαμεν. 8. ἐγὼ μέν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἤδη ὑμᾶς ἐπήνεκα. 9. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι τὸ στρατόπεδον διηρπάκεσαν. 10. τὰ σκευοφόρα σεσώκαμεν. 11. τὸν παράδεισον Κῦρος κατακέκαυκεν. 12. βασιλεὺς ἡμῖν πεπόρικεν ἄριστον. 13. ὁ δὲ πάλιν ἠρώτηκε, Σπονδὰς ἢ πόλεμον ἀπαγγελῶ; 14. ἀπηγγέλκαμεν τοίνυν αὐτῷ ὅτι μάχης[2] δεῖ πρῶτον. 15. καὶ ἐκεκρίκει ὀρθῶς τοὺς πιστοὺς καὶ εὔνους. 16. ἔφη δ' αὐτὸ[3] τὸ ἔργον αὐτοῖς μεμαρτυρηκέναι.[4] 17. μάχεσθαί φησι τὴν βασίλειαν πεπεικέναι τὸν ἄνδρα. 18. ἥκοντες αὐτόμολοι παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως ἀπηγγέλκᾶσι περὶ τῆς βασιλέως στρατιᾶς. 19. Τισσαφέρνης διεβεβλήκει τὸν Κῦρον πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφόν. 20. πέπεικε τοὺς ἄρχοντας καὶ ἐκπέπλευκεν ὡς[5] πολεμήσων τοῖς Θρᾳξίν. 21. εἰ τὰς σπονδὰς λελύκᾶσιν οἱ βάρβαροι, ὑπὲρ ἡμῶν μαχοῦνται[6] οἱ θεοί. 22. ἀπέσταλκα τοὺς ἀγγέλους καὶ σὺν αὐτοῖς ὁπλίτᾶς διᾱκοσίους. 23. ἐπεὶ δὲ τετελεύτηκεν ὁ Κῦρος, ἀπαγγέλλετε Ἀριαίῳ ὅτι ἡμεῖς νῑκῶμέν τε βασιλέᾱ καὶ οὐδεὶς ἔτι ἡμῖν μάχεται.

II. 1. His[7] wife has persuaded him. 2. But Clearchus has strongly insisted. 3. He has provided the army with supplies.[8] 4. They had corrupted the heavy-armed troops. 5. The Greeks have laid waste the country of the barbarians. 6. We had thought the bowmen[9] were[10] ready. 7. He has not withdrawn the right wing from the river. 8. We had repulsed the bowmen and peltasts. 9. I have judged these men[9] to be in the wrong.[10] 10. He was alleging that he had been a slave at

---

[1] ἆρα, equivalent to the Lat. interrogative enclitic particle *-ne*.

[2] *Cf.* 308, I. 2. δεῖ is impersonal, *there is need*.

[3] *itself*, Lat. *ipsum*, to be taken with the following subst. *Cf.* 247, I 16.

[4] See 354.

[5] With πολεμήσων, *as if intending to war, with the avowed intention of warring*.

[6] Future of μάχομαι, formed like that of τελέω. See p. 159, 3.

[7] Use the article (p. 23[3]).

[8] Rephrase the sent., *furnished supplies to the army*, using both a direct and indirect object.

[9] See 350.

[10] See 354.

Athens. 11. I had passed the order along to all to arm themselves. 12. But the rest of the soldiers have thrown stones[1] at the man. 13. We had made an invasion into the country of the Carduchi through the mountains.

509. R. **νεμ, nem,** *allot.*

νέμ-ω, *distribute, portion out, pasture;* **νόμ-ο-ς,** *ὁ, that which has been allotted, custom, law;* *νόμ-ιμο-ς, -η, -ο-ν, customary, lawful;* *ἀγορά-νομο-ς, ὁ (ἀγείρω, collect, ἀγορᾶ, meeting-place), one who makes rules for the market, market-master;* *ἀ-νομο-ς, -ο-ν, without law, lawless;* *ἀνομ-ία, -ας, lawlessness;* *αὐτό-νομο-ς, -ο-ν (αὐτός, self), under one's own laws, independent;* *οἰκο-νόμο-ς, ὁ (οἶκος, house, home), one who controls a household, housekeeper;* *νομίζω, regard as a custom, believe, think;* **νομ-ή,** *-ῆς, distribution, esp. of food, pasturage,* hence, *herd;* *προ-νομ-η, -ῆς, a going forth for food, foraging.*

nem-us, *-or-is, n., woodland;* **num-e-ru-s,** *-ī, m., number.*

NIMBLE, NUMB; **nemesis,** *anti-*nomian, *astro-*nomy, *auto-*nomy, *eco-*nomy, **nomad, numismatic.**

LESSON LXX.

Personal and Intensive Pronouns.

510. The *personal* pronouns are *ἐγώ, I,* *σύ, thou,* and *οὗ* (genitive), *of him, of her, of it.* The pronoun *αὐτός, self* (Lat. *ipse*), is properly *intensive.*

511. PARADIGMS.

S. N.	ἐγώ	σύ		αὐτός	αὐτή	αὐτό
G.	ἐμοῦ, μοῦ	σοῦ	οὗ	αὐτοῦ	αὐτῆς	αὐτοῦ
D.	ἐμοί, μοί	σοί	οἱ	αὐτῷ	αὐτῇ	αὐτῷ
A.	ἐμέ, μέ	σέ	ἕ	αὐτόν	αὐτήν	αὐτό
D. N. A.	νώ	σφώ		αὐτώ	αὐτά	αὐτώ
G. D.	νῷν	σφῷν		αὐτοῖν	αὐταῖν	αὐτοῖν
P. N.	ἡμεῖς	ὑμεῖς	σφεῖς	αὐτοί	αὐταί	αὐτά
G.	ἡμῶν	ὑμῶν	σφῶν	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν
D.	ἡμῖν	ὑμῖν	σφίσι	αὐτοῖς	αὐταῖς	αὐτοῖς
A.	ἡμᾶς	ὑμᾶς	σφᾶς	αὐτούς	αὐτάς	αὐτά

[1] Rephrase the sent., *have thrown at the man with stones,* and see p. 47[5].

512. The following forms of the personal pronouns are enclitic (38): — μοῦ, μοί, μέ; σοῦ, σοί, σέ; οὗ, οἱ, ἕ.

Review 186, 187.

Examine the following: —

οὗτος ἐπολέμησεν ἐμοί, *this man made war on me.*
ἐμοὶ οὐ σοὶ τοῦτο ἀρέσκει, *this pleases me, not you.*
ἐπὶ σοὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ ἄνδρες, *the men came into your power.*

513. If the pronoun is emphatic (187 b), and in general after prepositions, the enclitic forms of the pronoun retain their accent, and in the first person the longer forms ἐμοῦ, ἐμοί, ἐμέ, are then used.

Examine the following: —

τὰ δὲ σκεύη ἀπαλλάξωμεν, *let us abandon the baggage.*
σύ τε γὰρ Ἕλλην εἶ καὶ ἡμεῖς, *for you are a Greek and so are we Greeks.*

514. Rule of Syntax. — The nominative forms of the personal pronouns are omitted unless *emphatic.* If emphatic, they are expressed.

Examine the following: —

φοβοῦνται μὴ οἱ βάρβαροι σφίσιν ἐπακολουθῶσι, *they fear that the barbarians will follow them.*
ἐποίησεν αὐτὸν σατράπην, *he made him satrap.*

515. Rule of Syntax. — The forms οὗ, οἱ, ἕ, *etc.*, of the pronoun of the third person are generally indirect reflexives in Attic prose, *i.e.* they are used in a dependent clause to refer to the subject of the principal verb. To supply the place of a pronoun of the third person the *oblique* cases of αὐτός are used.

Examine the following: —

ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ χωρίῳ μένει, *he remains in the same place.*
ὡς αὐτὸς σὺ ὁμολογεῖς, διήρπαζες τὴν χώρᾱν, *you plundered the country, as you yourself confess.*
αἱ πέτραι καθήκουσιν ἐπ᾽ αὐτὸν τὸν ποταμόν, *the crags reach down to the very river.*

516. Rule of Syntax. — αὐτός preceded by the article means *the same*. It may be, in all of its cases, an intensive pronoun, *self, very* (Lat. *ipse*). When intensive, if the substantive to which it belongs has the article, αὐτός must take the predicate position (56 Rem.).

517. EXERCISES.

I. 1. ἀλλ' εἰς ὑμᾶς τοὺς δᾶρεικοὺς ἐδαπάνων. 2. ὁ αὐτὸς στόλος ἐστὶν ὑμῖν τε καὶ ἡμῖν. 3. νομίζω γὰρ ὑμᾶς ἐμοὶ εἶναι φίλους. 4. ὑμεῖς τὴν ἡμετέρᾱν χώρᾱν κακῶς ἐποιεῖτε. 5. ἡμᾶς δ' ἀποπέμπουσιν. 6. θαυμαστή ἐστιν ἡ ἀρετή σου.[1] 7. Ἀρίστιππος δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς ξένος ἦν αὐτῷ. 8. καὶ μετὰ τὴν μάχην ταὐτὰ[2] ἤγγελλον. 9. ἐμοὶ γὰρ ξένος Κῦρος ἐγένετο. 10. ἐμοὶ οὖν δοκεῖ οὐχ ὥρᾱ εἶναι[3] ἡμῖν καθεύδειν. 11. ἀλλὰ μὰ τοὺς θεοὺς[4] οὐκ ἔγωγε[5] αὐτοὺς διωξω. 12. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν αὐτὸν κελεύει οἱ συμπέμψαι ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος ἄνδρας. 13. τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔχων ὁπλίτᾱς ἀναβαίνει τριᾱκοσίους, ἄρχοντα δὲ αὐτῶν Ξενίᾱν Παρράσιον. 14. καὶ αὕτη αὖ ἄλλη προφασις ἦν αὐτῷ τοῦ ἀθροίζειν[6] στράτευμα. 15. οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ αὐτὸν ἐρωτῶσι τί σφίσιν ἔσται ἐὰν κρατήσωσιν. 16. νομίζω γὰρ ὑμᾶς ἐμοὶ εἶναι καὶ πατρίδα καὶ φίλους καὶ συμμάχους. 17. ἐγὼ οὖν φημι ὑμᾶς δεῖν[7] πορεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν. 18. ὥστε ἔγωγε οὐδένα κρίνω ὑπὸ πλειόνων πεφιλῆσθαι.[7] 19. ἐνταῦθα λέγεται Ἀπόλλων ἐκδεῖραι[8] Μαρσύᾱν, νῑκήσᾱς[9] ἐριζοντά[10] οἱ

---

[1] A dependent gen. of the personal pron. always has the predicate position (56 Rem.).

[2] By *crasis* (p. 55[4]) for τὰ αὐτά.

[3] *It seems to me not to be.* δοκέω in the sense of *seem* takes the inf. in indir. discourse (354).

[4] The acc. follows the intensive particle μά, *by*, in oaths. The oath introduced by μά is negative.

[5] Lat. *equidem*.

[6] Inf. with the art. used as a subst. in the gen., dependent on πρόφασις.

[7] See 354.

[8] ἐκδέρω, *flay*, aor. inf. See 481.

[9] *Sc.* αὐτόν, *him* (*i.e.* Marsyas), with which ἐρίζοντα agrees.

[10] For the accent, see 186 b.

περὶ σοφίᾱς. 20. ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμοὶ[1] οὐκ ἐθέλετε πείθεσθαι οὐδὲ ἕπεσθαι, ἐγὼ σὺν ὑμῖν ἕψομαι.

II. 1. I myself summoned you. 2. He has been wronged by us.[2] 3. But their[3] general spoke to them as follows. 4. They conduct him to the same general. 5. This man, fellow-soldiers, is a friend of mine.[4] 6. He feared that his brother would plot against him.[5] 7. But Menon and those with[6] him had the left (wing). 8. You are plotting against me and the army with me. 9. He was himself designing to slander me to you. 10. But if I conquer, my friends will be in honour. 11. But since they were in difficulties, they consulted with you. 12. He accuses the commanders, that he may himself escape. 13. On the same day the generals themselves proceeded with the cavalry through the plain to the river Euphrates.

518. **αὐτός**, *self, same.*

αὐτό-ς, *αὐτή, αὐτό, self, same*, in derivatives and compounds, *self, same, very*; *αὐτοῦ*, adv., *in the very place, here, there*; *αὐτό-θεν*, adv., *from the very spot, hence, thence*; *αὐτό-θι*, adv., *in this or that very place*; *αὐτό-σε*, adv., *to the place itself, thither*; *αὕτως*, adv., *in the very manner*; *ὡσ-αύτως* (*ὥς, thus*), *in this same way, likewise, just so*; *αὐθ-ήμερον* (*ἡμέρᾱ, day*), adv., *on the same day*; *αὐθ-αίρετο-ς, -ο-ν* (*αἱρέω, take*), *self-appointed*; *αὐτο-κέλευστο-ς, -ο-ν* (*κελεύω, direct*), *self-directed, of one's own accord*; *αὐτο-κράτωρ, -ορ-ος, ὁ, ἡ* (R. **κρα**, 471), *being one's own master, absolute*; *αὐτό-ματο-ς, -η, -ο-ν* (Epic pf. *μέ-μα-α, think upon, desire*), *self-impelled, spontaneous*; *αὐτό-μολο-ς, ὁ* (*βλώσκω, go*, R. **μολ**), *deserter*; *αὐτομολέ-ω, desert*; *αὐτό-νομο-ς, -ο-ν* (R. **νεμ**, 509), *under one's own laws, independent*; *ἑ-αυτοῦ*, contr. *αὑτοῦ, etc.* (*οὗ, of him*), reflexive pron., *of himself, etc.*; *ἐμ-αυτοῦ, etc.*, reflexive pron., *of myself, etc.*; *σε-αυτοῦ*, contr. *σαυτοῦ, etc.*, reflexive pron., *of yourself, etc.*

auth-*entic*, **auto**-*biography*, **auto**-*crat*, **auto**-*graph*, **auto**-*maton*, **auto**-*nomous*, **aut**-*opsy*, *t*-**auto**-*logy*.

---

[1] The dat. of the indirect obj. (p. 25[2]) follows *πείθομαι, obey*, although the corresponding English verb is transitive.

[2] See 224.

[3] *Cf.* 508, II. 1.

[4] *Cf.* I. 7 above.

[5] See 515.

[6] *those with*, use *οἱ σύν*, and *cf.* 467, II. 9.

LESSON LXXI.

Second Perfect System.

Review 437, 438, 489.

519. The stem of the *second perfect* system is formed by adding the tense-suffix -α- (plup. -ε-) to the reduplicated theme, as γράφω, *write*, theme γραφ-, second perfect γέγραφα. It has the inflexion of the first perfect system.

Conjugate the second perfect system of λείπω (521 c) in 681.

a. Note the exceptions to the principle of recessive accent (32), λελοιπέναι, λελοιπώς.

Conjugate also the second perfect system of any other of the verbs given below.

520. The second perfect rarely occurs in vowel verbs.

521. The following changes of the vowel of the theme occur: —

a. ε becomes ο.

b. α is sometimes lengthened to ᾱ or η.

c. Verbs of the second class (492, 493) have the strong form of the theme, but with οι for ει.

522. Some verbs aspirate a final labial or palatal mute of the theme, changing π or β to φ and κ or γ to χ.

523. The changes just named are illustrated in the following verbs, which are arranged according to classes: —

ἄγω (αγ-), *lead*, ἦχα;
πέμπω (πεμπ-), *send*, πέπομφα;
τρῑ́βω (τρῑβ-, τριβ-), *rub*, τέτριφα.

διώκω (διωκ-), *pursue*, δεδίωχα;
τρέπω (τρεπ-), *turn*, τέτροφα;

λείπω (λιπ-), *leave*, λέλοιπα;
φεύγω (φυγ-), *flee*, πέφευγα.

τήκω (τακ-), *melt*, τέτηκα[1];

[1] Used intrans., *have melted, am melted.*

βλάπτω (βλαβ-), *injure*, βέβλαφα; κλέπτω (κλέπ-), *steal*, κέκλοφα;
κόπτω (κοπ-), *cut*, κέκοφα; ῥῖπτω (ῥῖφ-, ῥιφ-), *throw*, ἔρριφα.

κτείνω (κτεν-), *kill*, ἔκτονα; τάττω (ταγ-), *arrange*, τέταχα;
φαίνω (φαν-), *show*, πέφηνα.[1]

524. EXERCISES.

I. 1. καὶ Κῦρον ἀπέκτονε βασιλεύς. 2. τὰ δ' ἄλλα εἰς τὸ πῦρ ἐρρίφαμεν. 3. ἐλελοίπει Συέννεσις τὰ ἄκρα. 4. ἀπαγγέλλει ὅτι πεφεύγᾶσιν οἱ πολέμιοι. 5. φυγῇ ἔφη αὐτοὺς λελοιπέναι τὸ χωρίον. 6. πολλὰς βίβλους γέγραφεν οὗτος ὁ ἀνήρ. 7. ἐν δὲ τῇ πολεμίᾳ[2] διατέτριφεν ἡμέρᾶς πολλάς. 8. λάθρᾳ δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἐπεπόμφει Κύρῳ ἄγγελον. 9. τοὺς δὲ βαρβάρους ἱππέᾶς ἐδεδιώχεσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες. 10. τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἦχη εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους. 11. ταῦτα δὲ τὰ θηρία οἱ ἱππεῖς δεδιώχᾶσιν. 12. ἀλλ' αὐτὸς κέκλοφας τὸν ἵππον. 13. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἐκεκύφεσαν τὰς πύλᾶς. 14. βασιλεὺς δὲ καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ ἐδεδιώχεσαν τοὺς Ἕλληνας. 15. ταύτᾶς τὰς κώμᾶς Τισσαφέρνης διαρπάσαι[3] τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἐπιτέτροφε πλὴν ἀνδραπόδων. 16. τοὺς πεζοὺς ἐπὶ ταῖς ὄχθαις παρατέταχεν ἄνω τῶν ἱππέων.[4] 17. πεπόμφᾶσί με ἄνδρες πιστοὶ ὄντες Κύρῳ καὶ ὑμῖν εὖνοι. 18. τοῖς οὖν θεοῖς χάρις ἔστω ὅτι ἡμᾶς οὐ βεβλάφᾶσιν οἱ πολέμιοι. 19. μέλαν ἦν τὸ χωρίον διὰ τὸ ἐκλελοιπέναι[5] αὐτόθι τὴν χιόνα. 20. ταύτην τὴν χώρᾶν ἐπετετρόφει διαρπάσαι τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ὡς πολεμίᾶν οὖσαν. 21. Κῦρος οὔτε ἄλλον πέπομφε σημανοῦντα[6] ὅ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν οὔτε αὐτὸς πέφηνεν. 22. εἴκαζον τὴν χιόνα τετηκέναι· καὶ ἐτετήκει διὰ κρήνην ἥ πλησίον ἦν ἀτμίζουσα ἐν νάπῃ.

---

[1] Used intrans., *have appeared*, whereas πέφαγκα (506) is trans., *have shown*. See 489.

[2] *Sc.* χώρᾳ.

[3] The infin. here expresses *purpose*.

[4] *Cf.* 111, I. 12.

[5] The infin. with the art. is here used as a subst. in the acc. *Cf.* 517, I. 14.

[6] The fut. partic. here expresses *purpose*. See 379.

II. 1. The enemy have not escaped. 2. You have slain my brother. 3. He has sent gifts to Menon in a princely manner. 4. But Chirisophus has not pursued the cavalry. 5. But the barbarians had left the place. 6. But the satrap has written a letter to the king. 7. He said that he had sent[1] a guide to the army. 8. We had pursued the barbarian (troops) with Cyrus. 9. He has put six thousand horsemen to flight. 10. He says that the guide has stolen the money. 11. We have sent the interpreter to the general of the Greeks. 12. The generals of the Greeks have brought three thousand heavy-armed men.

525. R. **φυγ, fug,** *bend, flee.*

φεύγ-ω, *flee, be banished*; **φυγ-ή**, **-ῆς**, *flight, banishment*; **φυγ-ά-s, -άδ-os, ὁ**, *one who has fled, exile, refugee.*

fug-a, *-ae, f., flight*; **fug-i-ō**, *flee*; **fugi-t-īuu-s**, *adj., fugitive.*

BOW (*bend*), BOW (*the weapon*), BIGHT, BOUT, BUXOM.

LESSON LXXII.

Reflexive, Reciprocal, and Possessive Pronouns.

526. The *reflexive* pronouns are **ἐμαυτοῦ, ἐμαυτῆς**, *of myself*; **σεαυτοῦ, σεαυτῆς** (contracted **σαυτοῦ, σαυτῆς**), *of yourself*; **ἑαυτοῦ, ἑαυτῆς, ἑαυτοῦ** (contracted **αὑτοῦ, αὑτῆς, αὑτοῦ**), *of himself, herself, itself.*

527. PARADIGM.

S. G.	**ἐμαυτοῦ, -ῆς**	**σεαυτοῦ, -ῆς**	**ἑαυτοῦ, -ῆς, -οῦ**
D.	**ἐμαυτῷ, -ῇ**	**σεαυτῷ, -ῇ**	**ἑαυτῷ, -ῇ, -ῷ**
A.	**ἐμαυτόν, -ήν**	**σεαυτόν, -ήν**	**ἑαυτόν, -ήν, -ό**
P. G.	**ἡμῶν αὐτῶν, -ῶν**	**ὑμῶν αὐτῶν, -ῶν**	**ἑαυτῶν, -ῶν, -ῶν**
D.	**ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς, -αῖς**	**ὑμῖν αὐτοῖς, -αῖς**	**ἑαυτοῖς, -αῖς, -οῖς**
A.	**ἡμᾶς αὐτούς, -άς**	**ὑμᾶς αὐτούς, -άς**	**ἑαυτούς, -άς, -ά**

[1] The speaker said, **πέπομφα**. See 354.

a. The reflexive pronouns are formed from the stems of the personal pronouns (511) compounded with αὐτός. But in the plural of the first and second persons the forms are not compounded, but both of the pronouns are inflected. In the plural of the third person also, separate forms sometimes occur, σφῶν αὐτῶν, σφίσιν αὐτοῖς, -αῖς, σφᾶς αὐτούς, -ᾶς, for ἑαυτῶν, *etc.*

Examine the following: —

ἀφιππεύει ἐπὶ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνήν, *he rides away to his own quarters.*
παραγγέλλει Κῦρος Ἀριστίππῳ ἀποπέμψαι πρὸς ἑαυτὸν τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς, *Cyrus orders Aristippus to send the soldiers to him.*

528. Rule of Syntax. — The reflexive pronouns refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand. But in a dependent clause they sometimes refer to the subject of the principal clause. They are then called *indirect* reflexives. See 515.

529. The *reciprocal* pronoun is ἀλλήλων, *of one another, of each other.* It occurs only in the oblique cases of the dual and plural.

530. PARADIGM.

	Dual			Plural		
G.	ἀλλήλοιν	ἀλλήλαιν	ἀλλήλοιν	ἀλλήλων	ἀλλήλων	ἀλλήλων
D.	ἀλλήλοιν	ἀλλήλαιν	ἀλλήλοιν	ἀλλήλοις	ἀλλήλαις	ἀλλήλοις
A.	ἀλλήλω	ἀλλήλᾱ	ἀλλήλω	ἀλλήλους	ἀλλήλᾱς	ἄλληλα

531. The *possessive* pronouns are ἐμός, *my, mine*, σός, *your*, ἡμέτερος, *our*, ὑμέτερος, *your.* They are inflected like adjectives of the vowel-declension (144).

a. These pronouns are formed from the stems of the personal pronouns (511).

b. To express the simple idea of *his, her, its, their*, the genitive of αὐτός (515) is used in Attic prose, in the predicate position.[1]

[1] *Cf.* 517, I. 13.

c. In like manner the genitives of the personal pronouns (especially in the singular) are sometimes used, in the predicate position, instead of the possessives ἐμός, σός, ἡμέτερος, ὑμέτερος.[1]

d. The article is often used where in English we use an unemphatic possessive pronoun.[2]

532. EXERCISES.

I. 1. πληγὰς ἐνέτεινον ἀλλήλοις. 2. ἐπὶ τὴν ἐμαυτοῦ[3] ἀρχὴν πορεύσομαι αὐτός. 3. εἶχε δὲ ἡ Κίλισσα καὶ φύλακας περὶ αὐτήν. 4. Κῦρος δὲ μετεπέμπετο τὸν Συέννεσιν πρὸς ἑαυτόν. 5. μὴ ἀμελῶμεν ἡμῶν αὐτῶν.[4] 6. αὐτὸς ἀποκτείνει αὐτὸν τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χειρί. 7. ταῦτα τὰ χωρία πάντα σατραπεύουσιν οἱ τοῦ ἐμοῦ[5] ἀδελφοῦ φίλοι. 8. ἔφη δὲ τοὺς Ἕλληνας νῑκᾶν τὸ καθ' αὑτούς.[6] 9. ὁ ἐμὸς ἔρως τούτου[7] αἴτιός ἐστιν. 10. ἐβόων δὲ ἀλλήλοις μὴ θεῖν δρόμῳ ἀλλ' ἐν τάξει ἕπεσθαι. 11. ἐκέλευσε δὲ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς συντάξαι ἕκαστον τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ.[8] 12. τοῦτον γὰρ ὁ ἐμὸς πατὴρ ἐκέλευσεν ὑπήκοον εἶναι ἐμοί. 13. καὶ τοῖς ἡμετέροις στρατιώταις ὁ αὐτὸς φόβος παρέσται. 14. πολλῶν ἂν ἐλπίδων[9] ἐμαυτὸν στερήσαιμι, εἰ σέ τι[10] κακὸν ἐπιχειρήσαιμι ποιεῖν. 15. καὶ οὐκέτι τρία ἢ τέτταρα στάδια διειχέτην τῷ φάλαγγε ἀπ' ἀλλήλων. 16. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἐπεὶ συνεγένοντο ἀλλήλοις, Συέννεσις ἔδωκε Κύρῳ χρήματα πολλά. 17. ἀλλὰ σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις καὶ περὶ τῶν ὑμετέρων ἀγαθῶν μαχούμεθα.[11] 18. ἐνταῦθα διέσχον ἀλλήλων[12] βασιλεύς τε καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ὡς τριάκοντα στάδια. 19. ἢν δ' ἡμεῖς νῑκήσωμεν, ἡμᾶς δεῖ τοὺς ἡμετέρους φίλους τούτων[13] ἐγκρατεῖς ποιῆσαι. 20. σὺ δὲ νῦν τήν τε Κύρου δύναμιν καὶ χωρᾶν ἔχεις καὶ τὴν σεαυτοῦ ἀρχὴν σῴζεις.

---

[1] *Cf.* 517, I. 6. [2] *Cf.* 99, I. 7.

[3] Genitives of reflexive pronouns take the *attributive* position.

[4] See p. 63[3].

[5] The possessive pronouns take the art. when a particular person or thing is referred to.

[6] *Se.* στράτευμα (p. 83[3]), and see p. 23[1]. [7] Construe with αἴτιος.

[8] *Cf.* 373, I. 8. [9] *Cf.* 308, I. 11.

[10] *Cf.* 281, I. 1, and see 186 c.

[11] *Cf.* 508, I. 21.

[12] Gen. of separation. See p. 60[2].

[13] *Cf.* 343. I. 11.

II. 1. You have your own force. 2. They carried on war with one another.[1] 3. He gets his own soldiers together. 4. They feared that you would neglect yourselves. 5. They proceeded to their own country. 6. It is time for us to deliberate in our own behalf.[2] 7. Cyrus and the king became hostile to one another. 8. Your valour would be superior to the king's troops.[3] 9. My[4] father commanded this (man) to send the servants to him. 10. And they made a great[5] uproar, calling one another. 11. If we should war with one another, the king would destroy us.

533. **ἄλλος**, *other.*

ἄλλο-ς, *-η, -ο, other, another;* **ἀλλά**, conj. (neut. plur. with changed accent), *but* ('in another way'); **ἄλλῃ**, adv., *in another way, elsewhere;* **ἄλλως**, adv., *in another way, otherwise;* **ἄλλο-σε**, adv., *to another place;* **ἄλλο-τε**, adv., *at another time;* **ἄλλο-θεν**, adv., *from another place;* **ἀλλο-ῖο-ς**, *-ᾱ, -ο-ν, of another kind;* **ἀλλήλ-ων** (reduplicated stem αλλ-ηλο-), *of one another;* **παρ-άλληλο-ς**, *-ο-ν, beside one another, parallel;* **ἀλλάττω** (theme αλλαγ-), *make other, alter;* **ἀλλό-τριο-ς**, *-ᾱ, -ο-ν, another's, strange, foreign.*

aliu-s, *adj., other;* **ali-bī**, *adv., elsewhere;* **ali-quis**, *pron. indef., somebody;* **ali-ēnu-s**, *adj., another's, strange, foreign;* **al-ter**, *adj., the other;* **ad-ulter**, *adj., adulterous;* **alter-nu-s**, *adj., one after the other, in turn.*

ELSE; **allo-***pathy*, **all-***egory*, *par-***allel**, *par-***allax**.

LESSON LXXIII.

Perfect Middle System of Vowel Verbs.

Review the perfect middle system of λύω in 676.
Review 254 a b, 441 with a b, 442.

534. Vowel verbs which add σ to the theme in the perfect and pluperfect middle and passive (441 a b) drop this σ before endings which begin with σ.

---

[1] Use the simple dat. (p. 83[10]).
[2] *in behalf of ourselves*, **ὑπέρ** with gen.
[3] Use **δύναμις**, and see p. 90[7].
[4] *Cf.* I. 7 above.
[5] See p. 142[7].

Conjugate the perfect and pluperfect mid. and pass. of τελέω in 682.

Review 207. Compound forms are used when the tense stem ends in a consonant, since here the regular forms in **-νται, -ντο** could not be pronounced.

535. In the future perfect, the final vowel of the reduplicated theme is always long before the tense-suffix **-σ°/ε.**, even if short in the perfect middle (441, 442). Thus: —

δέω, *bind*, pf. mid. δέδε-μαι, but fut. pf. δεδή-σομαι; λύω, *loose*, pf. mid. λέλυ-μαι, but fut. pf. λελύ-σομαι.

536. **EXERCISES.**

I. 1. τούτους δ' ἔφη ἐγγὺς ἀλλήλων ἑστρατοπεδεῦσθαι. 2. χρήματα πολλὰ κέκτησθε. 3. οὕτω γὰρ διέσπαστο τὰ στρατεύματα. 4. ἡμεῖς Βυζαντίου[1] ἀποκεκλεισόμεθα. 5. ὑπὸ τοῦ λῃστοῦ δεδῆσεται ὁ ἀνήρ. 6. περὶ τούτων σὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ βεβούλευνται. 7. καὶ νῦν τέθυμαι περὶ αὐτοῦ τούτου. 8. ἐβεβούλευτο Κῦρος πῶς ἂν τὴν μάχην ποιοῖτο. 9. ἐγγύς που ἑστρατοπέδευτο βασιλεύς. 10. κατέσπασμαι ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου. 11. οὐδὲν ἐτετέλεστο οὔτε[2] ἐμοὶ[3] οὔτε[2] ἄλλῳ οὐδενί.[2] 12. ὑποδεδεμένοι ἐκοιμῶντο οἱ στρατιῶται. 13. οἱ δὲ διώξαντες τῶν ἱππέων ταχὺ πεπαύσονται. 14. πολλάκις γὰρ νύκτωρ πορευόμενος ἀπέσπασμαι ἀπὸ τῶν πεζῶν. 15. καὶ αἱ πύλαι ἐκέκλειντο καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν τειχῶν ὅπλα ἐφαίνετο. 16. ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς Λακωνικὸς Κλεώνυμος τετύξευται διὰ τῆς ἀσπίδος. 17. καὶ οἱ τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοὶ κεκελευσμένοι εἰσὶν ὑπλίτας ἀγαγεῖν. 18. παρακεκελεύσμεθα τοῖς Ἕλλησι τὴν κραυγὴν τῶν βαρβάρων ἀνέχεσθαι. 19. οἱ γὰρ Κρῆτες βραχύτερα τῶν Περσῶν ἐτόξευον καὶ ἅμα ψιλοὶ ὄντες εἴσω

[1] The gen. depends on the preposition ἀπό in composition with the verb. See p. 107[4].

[2] When a negative is followed by a *compound* negative, or by several compound negatives, in the same clause, the negation is strengthened. This idiom is not allowed in English, in which all the negatives except the first must be rendered affirmatively. So here, *either . . . or . . . anybody.*

[3] Dat. of the indirect obj. after τελέω in the sense of *pay.*

τῶν ὁπλιτῶν κατεκέκλειντο. 20. παύσαντες τὴν φάλαγγα λόχους ὀρθίους ποιήσωμεν· ἡ γὰρ φάλαγξ διέσπασται.

II. 1. I had been shot through my corslet. 2. The forces had been separated. 3. We had deliberated in our own behalf. 4. He says that the Greeks have encamped in the villages. 5. All had urged Cyrus not to fight. 6. He said that he possessed many houses. 7. The Greeks and Ariaeus have encamped near one another. 8. In this way the cavalry along the river will have been shut off. 9. The enemy have been shut up again within the citadel. 10. Cyrus had taken the field against Artaxerxes, his brother. 11. On this account[1] we have resolved to do damage to the king's territory. 12. I am of the opinion that nobody has been loved[2] by a greater number.[3]

537. R. 1 **θυ**, *rush.*

θύ-ω, *rush, rage;* **θῡ-μό-s**, *ὁ, the animating principle* in man, *heart, wrath;* θῡμό-ο-μαι, *be angry;* θῡμο-ειδής, *-ές* (εἶδος, *τό, look, shape*), *high-spirited;* ἄ-θῡμο-s, *-ο-ν, without heart, dispirited;* ἀθύμως, adv., *faintheartedly;* ἀθῡμί-ᾱ, *-ᾱs, faintheartedness;* ἀθυμέ-ω, *be despondent;* ἐν-θυμέ-ο-μαι, *lay to heart, consider;* ἐνθύμη-μα, *-ατ-ος, τό, thought, idea;* ἐπι-θυμέ-ω, *have one's heart on, desire;* ἐπιθῡμί-ᾱ, *-ᾱs, desire, longing;* εὔ-θῡμο-s, *-ο-ν, of good heart, cheerful;* εὐθυμέ-ο-μαι, *be cheerful;* πρό-θυμο-s, *-ο-ν, with mind intent, ready, willing;* προθύμως, adv., *willingly;* ἀ-πρόθῡμο-s, *-ο-ν, not eager;* προθῡμί-ᾱ, *-ᾱs, readiness, eagerness;* προθυμέ-ο-μαι, *be eager;* ῥᾳ-θῡμο-s, *-ο-ν* (ῥᾴ-διο-s, *easy*), *with mind at ease, indifferent, lazy;* ῥᾳθυμί-ᾱ, *-ᾱs, laziness;* ῥᾳθῡμέ-ω, *live in idleness.*

538. R. 2 **θυ**, **fu**, *smoke, sacrifice.*

θύ-ω, *offer, sacrifice;* **θυ-τήρ**, *-ῆρ-os, ὁ, sacrificer;* **θυ-σίᾱ**, *-ᾱs, sacrifice;* **θῦ-μα**, *-ατ-os, τό, victim, sacrifice;* θυ-μ-έλη, *-ης, place for sacrifice, altar;* θῡμ-ιά-ω, *burn incense;* θῡμίᾱ-μα, *-ατ-os, τό, incense;* θυ-ώδης, *-es* (ὄζω, *smell*), *sweet-smelling;* **θύ-μο-ν**, *τό, thyme.*

fū-mu-s, *-ī, m., smoke;* fū-n-us, *-er-is, n., funeral rites;* fū-lī-gō, *-in-is, f., soot;* **fi-mu-s**, *-ī, m., filth;* **foe-du-s** (for *foni-du-s*), *adj., filthy.*

DUST; **thyme.**

---

[1] *on account of this*, use ἕνεκα to translate *on account of.*

[2] See 354.

[3] *by more (persons).*

LESSON LXXIV.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

539. The principal *demonstrative* pronouns are οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο, *this*, ὅδε, ἥδε, τόδε, *this*, and ἐκεῖνος, ἐκείνη, ἐκεῖνο, *that*.

Review 172.

a. ὅδε is inflected like the article (88) with the enclitic demonstrative suffix -δε added to the forms.

b. ἐκεῖνος is inflected like αὐτός (511).

Review 173, 174. The rule in 174 applies also to ὅδε and ἐκεῖνος.

Examine the following: —

Κῦρος βουλεύεται ὅπως μήποτε ἔτι ἔσται ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ. ἀλλὰ βασιλεύσει αὐτ' ἐκείνου. *Cyrus plans that he may never in future be in the power of his brother, but may be king in his stead.*

καὶ τοὺς σὺν Κύρῳ βαρβάρους ἐδίωξα σὺν τοῖσδε τοῖς παροῦσι νῦν μετ' ἐμοῦ. *I pursued the barbarian troops of Cyrus with the aid of these who are now here with me.*

540. Rule of Syntax. — ἐκεῖνος, *that* (yonder), is used of something *remote*, ὅδε, *this* (here), of something *near* or *present*.

Examine the following: —

οὐδένα κρίνω ὑπὸ πλειόνων πεφιλῆσθαι· τεκμήριον δὲ τοῦτον καὶ τόδε. *I am of the opinion that nobody has ever been loved by a greater number. The proof of this is the following.*

541. Rule of Syntax. — οὗτος is used in referring back to an object already mentioned; ὅδε, in referring forward to an object about to be mentioned.

542. Besides the above, there occur frequently in Attic prose the demonstratives of *quality*, τοιοῦτος, τοιαύτη, τοιοῦτον, and τοιόσδε, τοιάδε, τοιόνδε, *such*, and of *quantity*, τοσοῦτος, τοσαύτη, τοσοῦτον, and τοσόσδε, τοσήδε, τοσόνδε, *so much, so many*.

a. The distinction in 541 is true also for τοιοῦτος (used in referring back) and τοιόσδε (used in referring forward), but not for τοσοῦτος and τοσόσδε.

543. EXERCISES.

I. 1. καὶ ἐποίουν οὕτως οὗτοι. 2. εἶτα δὲ ἔλεξε τοιάδε.[1] 3. τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα[1] βουλεύονται. 4. καὶ κελεύει αὐτοὺς λέγειν ταῦτα. 5. καὶ Κῦρος αὐτὸς παρῄνει τοῖς στρατηγοῖς,[2] θαρρύνων τοιάδε. 6. οὗτος δὲ ὁ αὐτὸς κελεύει ἡμᾶς πορεύεσθαι. 7. ταῦτα εἶπε Κλέαρχος· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται οἵ[3] τε αὐτοῦ ἐκείνου καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπῄνεσαν. 8. Κλέαρχος δὲ πρὸς ταῦτα εἶπεν, Ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν δὴ σὺ λέγεις· παρ' ἡμῶν δὲ ἀπάγγελλε τάδε. 9. μετὰ ταῦτα συγκαλέσᾶς τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχᾶγοὺς ἔλεξε τοιάδε. 10. οὔτε γὰρ ἡμεῖς ἐκείνου ἔτι στρατιῶται ἐσμεν, ἐπεί γε οὐ συνεπόμεθα αὐτῷ, οὔτε ἐκεῖνος ἔτι ἡμῖν μισθοδότης.[4] 11. οὗτος μὲν τοιαῦτα εἶπε· μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον Κλέαρχος εἶπε τοσοῦτον. 12. ἡμεῖς τοσοίδε[5] ὄντες ἐνῑκῶμεν βασιλέᾶ ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις αὐτοῦ. 13. πολλάκις δὲ χῆνας ἡμιβρώτους ἔπεμπε καὶ ἄρτων ἡμίσεα καὶ ἄλλα τοιαῦτα. 14. Κλέαρχος τοὺς αὑτοῦ στρατιώτᾶς ἐβιάζετο[6] πορεύεσθαι· οἱ δὲ αὐτόν τε ἔβαλλον καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια τὰ ἐκείνου. 15. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἐπεὶ συνεγένοντο ἀλλήλοις, Ξενίας μὲν ἔδωκε Κύρῳ χρήματα πολλὰ εἰς τὴν στρατιάν, Κῦρος δὲ ἐκείνῳ δῶρα ἃ νομίζεται παρὰ βασιλεῖ τίμια. 16. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος συλλέξᾶς στράτευμα ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον· καὶ αὕτη αὖ ἄλλη πρόφασις ἦν αὐτῷ τοῦ ἀθροίζειν στράτευμα. 17. πρὸς ταῦτα Κῦρος εἶπε τοῖς παροῦσιν, Ὁ μὲν ἀνὴρ τοιαῦτα μὲν πεποίηκε, τοιαῦτα δὲ λέγει· ὑμῶν δὲ σὺ πρῶτος, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἀπόφηναι[7] τὴν γνώμην. Κλέαρ-

---

[1] See p. 122[1].
[2] See p. 84[1].
[3] *Cf.* 228, I. 4.
[4] *Sc.* ἐστίν from the preceding ἐσμέν.
[5] The context shows that the meaning here is, *so few*.
[6] Impf. of attempted action, *was trying to force*.
[7] *Cf.* 482, I. 6.

χος δὲ εἶπε τάδε· Συμβουλεύω ἐγὼ τὸν ἄνδρα τοῦτον ἐκποδὼν ποιεῖσθαι ὡς τάχιστα.[1]

II. 1. You yourselves did[2] this. 2. These men lived in idleness. 3. Hereupon Xenophon spoke as follows. 4. These[3] remained, but the rest proceeded. 5. But another contingent was collected for him in the following manner.[4] 6. He counselled the Greeks, when they consulted him,[5] as follows. 7. Tissaphernes spoke first,[6] by means of an interpreter, in the following terms:[7] 8. But Menon collected his own division apart from the rest, and spoke as follows. 9. But after this, when he had brought his own soldiers together,[5] he thus addressed (them). 10. He wishes to expel the Pisidians from the territory; and against these he collects both his[8] barbarian and his Greek (force).

544. πᾶς, *all.*

πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν (stem παντ-), *all*; **πάντ-ῃ**, adv., *in every way*; **πάντως**, adv., *anyhow*; **παντα-χῇ**, **παντα-χοῦ**, adv., *everywhere*; **παντο-θεν**, adv., *from every side*; **παντ-οτε**, adv., *at every time*; **παντο-δαπός**, **-ή**, **-όν**, *of every sort, manifold*; **παντο-ῖος**, **-α**, **-ον**, *of all sorts*; **παντα-πᾶσι(ν)**, adv., *altogether, entirely*; **παν-συ**, adv., *altogether, very*; **παγ-κράτιο-ν**, **τό** (R. **κρα**, 171), *all-round contest, pancratium*; **παγ-χάλεπο-ς**, **-ον** (**χαλεπός**, *hard*), *very hard*; **παγχαλεπως**, adv., *very hardly*; **παν-πληθεί**, **-ες** (**πλῆθος**, **τό**, *number*), *in full numbers, with all one's forces*; **πάν πολι-ς**, **-πόλλη**, **-πολυ** (**πολύς**, *much, many*), *very numerous*; **παν-πόνηρο-ς**, **-ο-ν** (**πονηρός**, *bad*), *wholly bad*; **παν-ουργο-ς**, **-ο-ν** (R. **Fεργ**, 408), *that will do anything, villainous*; **παυσῃ-ία**, **-ας**, *lawlessness*; **παν-τελής**, **-ες** (**τέλος**, **τό**, *end*), *all complete, perfect*; **παντελως**, adv., *perfectly, wholly, utterly*; **ἅ-παξ**, **ἅ-παξ**, *all together*; **συμ-πας**, **-σα**, **-αν**, *all taken collectively, all together.*

*dia*pason. pan-*acea*. pan*demonium*. pan*oply*. pan-*orama*. pan*theism*, pan-*theon*, panto-*mime*.

---

[1] *Cf.* 485, I. 9.
[2] Use the middle.
[3] See p. 275.
[4] *Cf.* 228, I. 13.
[5] See 379.
[6] *Cf.* I. 17 above.
[7] *Cf.* I. 2 above.
[8] See 531 d.

LESSON LXXV.

Review of Groups. — Reading Lesson.

Review the groups of related words in 495, 499, 509, 518, 525, 533, 537, 538, 544.

Review 140, 142.

Read and translate again 487.

Read and translate the following passage: —

545. Κῦρος.

VII. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Συρίας καὶ τῆς Ἀραβίας, τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχων, καὶ ἀφικνεῖται ἐπὶ Πύλας. ἐντεῦθεν πορευομένοις αὐτοῖς ἐφαίνετο ἵππων. οὗτοι προκατέκῡον καὶ χίλιοι καὶ εἴ τι ἄλλο χρήσιμον ἦν. Ὀρόντας δὲ Πέρσης ἀνήρ, γένει προσήκων βασιλεῖ, ἐπιβουλεύει Κύρῳ, καὶ πρόσθεν πολεμήσας. οὗτος Κῦρον ἱππέας χιλίους αἰτεῖ, ὑπισχνούμενος τοὺς πολεμίους κωλύσειν τοῦ κάειν τὸν χῖλόν. ὁ δ' ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὸν λαμβάνειν μέρος παρ' ἑκάστου τῶν ἡγεμόνων. ὁ δ' Ὀρόντας, νομίσας ἑτοίμους εἶναι αὐτῷ τοὺς ἱππέας, γράφει ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ βασιλέα λέγων ὅτι ἥξει ἔχων ἱππέας πολλούς. ταύτην τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἔδωκε πιστῷ ἀνδρί, ὡς ᾤετο· ὁ δὲ λαβὼν Κύρῳ ἔδωκε. συλλαμβάνει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος τὸν Ὀρόντην, καὶ συγκαλεῖ εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν Πέρσας τοὺς ἀρίστους τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν ἑπτά, καὶ τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοὺς ἐκέλευεν ὁπλίτας ἀγαγεῖν. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα ἐποίησαν, ἀγαγόντες ὡς τρισχιλίους ὁπλίτας. Κλέαρχον δὲ καὶ εἴσω παρεκάλεσε σύμβουλον. ὁ δὲ ὕστερον ἐξήγγειλε τοῖς φίλοις τὴν κρίσιν τοῦ Ὀρόντου ὡς ἐγένετο. ἔφη δὲ Κῦρον λέξαι τάδε.

Παρεκάλεσα ὑμᾶς, ἄνδρες φίλοι, ὅπως σὺν ὑμῖν βουλευόμενος, ὅ τι δίκαιόν ἐστι καὶ πρὸς θεῶν καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων, τοῦτο πράξω περὶ Ὀρόντου. τοῦτον γὰρ ὁ

ἐμὸς πατήρ ἔδωκεν ὑπήκοον εἶναι ἐμοί· ἐπεὶ δὲ ταχθείς,
ὡς ἔφη αὐτός, ὑπὸ τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ οὗτος ἐπολέμησεν
ἐμοὶ ἔχων τὴν ἐν Σάρδεσιν ἀκρόπολιν, ἐγὼ αὐτὸν προσπο-
λεμῶν ἐποίησα τοῦ πρὸς ἐμὲ πολέμου παύσασθαι, καὶ
δεξιὰν ἔλαβον καὶ ἔδωκα.

NOTES.

4. **οὗτοι**: to be referred to the *ἱππεῖς* 'the enemy's *cavalry*' implied in *ἵππων*. — 5. **εἴ τι ἄλλο**, *if anything else*, i.e., *whatever else*. — 6. **γένει**, *in race*, a dat. of *respect*. — **καὶ πρόσθεν**, *previously also*. — 8. **τοῦ κᾶειν**: infin. with the art. used as a subst. For the case, *cf.* 274. I. 4. — 13. **ᾤετο**: imp. of *οἴομαι*, *think*. — **λαβών**: second aor. act. partic. of *λαμβάνω*. — 20. **Κῦρον λέξαι**: Clearchus said, *Κῦρος ἔλεξε*. See 354. — 22. **ὅ τι δίκαιόν ἐστι**: the relative clause is repeated in the following *τοῦτο*, *whatever is right, etc., this I may do, etc.* — 23. **πραξω**: aor. subjv. For the mood, see 278. — 24. **εἶναι**: the infin. expresses *purpose*. — **ταχθείς**: first aor. pass. partic. of *τάττω*. — 27. **τοῦ πρὸς ἐμὲ πολέμου**: *cf.* the same in l. 8. — 28. **ἔλαβον**: *cf.* **λαβών** in l. 13.

Translate the following passage into Greek: —

546. He marches thence through Arabia. In this region the land was a level plain, full of wild creatures of all sorts, wild asses, ostriches and gazelles. The horsemen sometimes chased these wild animals. The asses it was not easy to catch; for they ran much more swiftly than the horses. The flesh of those that were captured was like deer-meat, but more tender. An ostrich nobody caught, and those of the horsemen that had given chase quickly gave up; for the creature easily escaped, using both its feet and its wings. Proceeding through this land they arrive at the river Masœas, of a plethrum in width. Here there was a great uninhabited city, the name of which was Corsote. They remained here three days, and procured supplies. Thence Cyrus marched thirteen stages through a desert, ninety parasangs, with the river Euphrates on his right. But across the Euphrates, before the army reached Pylae, there was a large and prosperous city, Charmande by name. From this the soldiers purchased their provisions, crossing over on rafts.

LESSON LXXVI.

Perfect Middle System of Mute Verbs.

Conjugate the perfect middle system of λείπω, ἄγω, and πείθω in 683–685.

547. The concurrence of consonants in the stem and endings gives occasion to many euphonic changes. These take place according to the following principles: —

548. A *labial* mute before μ changes to μ; with σ forms ψ (215 a); before a lingual is made co-ordinate (114 a).

a. When μμμ would thus result, one μ is dropped, as πέμπω, *send*, pf. πέπεμμαι (for πεπεμπ-μαι). See 205.

549. σ between two consonants is dropped.

550. A *palatal* mute before μ remains or becomes γ; with σ forms ξ (215 b); before a lingual is made co-ordinate (114 a).

a. When γγμ would thus result, one γ is dropped, as ἐλέγχω, *confute*, pf. ἐλήλεγμαι[1] (for ελελεγχ-μαι).

551. A *lingual* mute before μ becomes σ; before σ is dropped (231); before another lingual becomes σ.

552. Verbs of the second class (492, 493) have the strong form of the theme in the perfect middle system. Thus: —

λείπω (λιπ-), *leave*, λέλειμμαι; πείθω (πιθ-), *persuade*, πέπεισμαι.

a. Three verbs of the first class, στρέφω, *turn, twist*, τρέπω, *turn, divert*, and τρέφω, *support*, change ε to α in the perfect middle, ἔστραμμαι, τέτραμμαι, and τέθραμμαι.

553. EXERCISES.

I. 1. τεθαμμένοι ἦσαν οἱ τῶν Ἑλλήνων νεκροί. 2. οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐγγύς τέ[2] εἰσι καὶ παρατεταγμένοι. 3. πόσοι τῶν

[1] Some verbs beginning with α, ε, or ο, followed by a single consonant, form their reduplication by prefixing the first two letters of the theme and lengthening its initial vowel. This is called the *Attic Reduplication*.

[2] See 186 c.

στρατιωτῶν ὑπολελειμμένοι εἰσίν; 4. σφενδόνη καλὴ τῷ στρατηγῷ πέπλεκται. 5. τέταχθε κατὰ φάλαγγα. 6. κατακεκόψονται ὑπὸ τῶν Κιλίκων. 7. τούτῳ ἐπετέτακτο ταῦτα πράττειν.[1] 8. τούτους ὡς εὖ ὡπλισμένους ἐφοβεῖτο. 9. ἐπέπεμψο, ὦ Λύκιε, τῷ Κλεάρχῳ[2] ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον. 10. ἦκται τὸ στράτευμα κατὰ μέσον τὸ τῶν πολεμίων, ὅτι ἐκεῖ βασιλεύς ἐστιν. 11. πάνυ ὀλίγοι ἀμφ' αὐτὸν καταλελείψονται. 12. τῷ δὲ ἀνδρὶ[3] τούτῳ ἡδέως πέπεισμαι. 13. ποῖ ποτε τετραμμένοι εἰσὶν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ τί ἐν νῷ ἔχουσιν; 14. οὗτος δὲ ἐτέτακτο ἐπὶ τῷ εἰωνύμῳ τοῦ ἱππικοῦ[4] ἄρχων. 15. καὶ τῶν ὅπλων τοῖς στρατιώταις πολλὰ ἐπὶ ἁμαξῶν ἦκτο καὶ ὑποζυγίων. 16. ἔσκεμμαι εἰ[5] κρεῖττόν ἐστι Τισσαφέρνην ἡγεμόνα ἔχειν. 17. ἐκ ταύτης τῆς πύλεως τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἡγεμὼν ἐπέπεμπτο, ὅπως διὰ τῆς πολεμίας χώρας ἄγοι αὐτούς. 18. συνηκολούθουν δὲ καὶ ἄλλοι Περσῶν τεθωρᾱκισμένοι εἰς[6] τριᾱκοσίους. 19. ἤλαυνεν ἐπὶ τοὺς Μένωνος στρατιώτᾱς, ὥστ' ἐκείνους ἐκπεπλῆχθαι[7] καὶ τρέχειν ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα. 20. εἶχον δὲ πάντες κράνη χαλκᾶ καὶ χιτῶνας φοινικοῖς καὶ κνημῖδας καὶ τὰς ἀσπίδας ἐκκεκαλυμμένᾱς. 21. ὑπὲρ γὰρ τῆς κώμης γήλοφός ἐστιν ἐφ' οὗ[8] ἀνεστραμμένοι εἰσὶν οἱ ἀμφὶ βασιλέᾱ. 22. νομίζετε ἐν τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἐμέ τε κατακεκόψεσθαι καὶ ὑμᾶς οὐ πολὺ ἐμοῦ[9] ὕστερον. 23. ἡ δὲ διὰ τῶν ὀρέων ὁδὸς καὶ πρὸς ἄρκτον τετραμμένη εἰς Καρδούχους ἄγει. 24. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ Κῦρος ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἕνα παρασάγγᾱς τρεῖς συντεταγμένῳ τῷ στρατεύματι.

---

[1] Subj. of ἐπετέτακτο, *the execution of this.* See 352.

[2] *by Clearchus*, dat. of the agent with ἐπέπεμψο. See 224.

[3] *Cf.* 517, I. 20.

[4] Depends on ἄρχων, which is an appositive to οὗτος, *as commander of the horse.*

[5] *Cf.* 247, I. 4.

[6] *Cf.* 498, I. 12.

[7] The infin. after ὥστε, *so that, so as*, expresses a *result.* The perf. infin. is here simply more emphatic than the present would be, *were thoroughly frightened.*

[8] Gen. sing. masc. of the rel. ὅς, ἥ, ὅ, *on which, etc.*

[9] The adv. implies comparison (*later than*) and takes the gen. See p. 179[1].

II. 1. The fellow has been led to Clearchus. 2. For on the previous[1] day[2] messengers had been sent. 3. The army will have been cut to pieces. 4. They had been left behind alone. 5. But we had obeyed Xenophon. 6. We have obeyed our commanders in all particulars.[3] 7. The letter will have been written. 8. He said the soldiers had made[4] slings for themselves. 9. They have been cut off from the hill. 10. These had been drawn up in line on the banks of the river. 11. The horses and the beasts of burden had been led through the snow. 12. A messenger has been sent to bid[5] them remain at the river. 13. But Cyrus and his cavalry had been armed with corselets. 14. No friend will have been left to us, but even those who before were[6] friends will be hostile to us.

554. R. **τακ, tec**, *beget, hit, prepare.*

τέκ-νο-ν, τό, *child*; **τέκ-μαρ**, τό, *fixed goal, mark, sign, proof*; τεκμαίρομαι (for τεκμαρ-ιο-μαι), *settle by a mark, infer*; τεκμήρ-ιο-ν, τό, *sign, proof*; **τέχ-νη**, -ης, *workmanship, art, ways and means*; τεχν-ικό-ς, -ή, -ό-ν, *artistic, artful*; τεχνικῶς, adv., *artfully*; τεχνάζω, *use art, employ cunning*. — **τάττω**, (for τακ-ιω), *arrange, form*; τακ-τό-ς, -ή, -όν, *arranged, set in order*; ἄ-τακτο-ς, -ο-ν, *in disorder, undisciplined*; ἀτακτέ-ω, *be disorderly*; εὔ-τακτο-ς, -ο-ν, *well arranged, well disciplined*; εὐτάκτως, adv., *with good discipline*; **τάξι-ς**, -ε-ως, ἡ, *arrangement, rank*; ἀ-ταξί-ᾱ, -ᾱς, *disorder, insubordination*; εὐ-ταξί-ᾱ, -ᾱς, *discipline*; παρά-ταξι-ς, -ε-ως, ἡ, *order of battle*; ταξί-αρχο-ς, ὁ (R. αρχ, 463), *commander of a τάξις, taxiarch*. — **τεύχ-ω**, *make ready, make*; **τεῦχ-ος**, -ε-ος, τό, *tool, jar, chest*; **τυ-γ-χ ἀν-ω**, *hit, hit upon, reach, get*; **τύχ-η**, -ης, *that which touches man, luck, fortune*; εὐ-τυχ-ί-ᾱ, -ᾱς, *good fortune, success*; εὐ-τυχ-ής, -ές, *well off, lucky*; εὐτυχέ-ω, *be well off*; εὐτύχη-μα, -ατ-ος, τό, *piece of good fortune, success*. — **τόξ-ο-ν**, τό (τοκ + σ), *bow*; τοξ-ικό-ς, -ή, -ό-ν, *belonging to the bow*; τοξότ-η-ς, -ου, *bowman*; τοξεύ-ω, *shoot with a bow*; τόξευ-μα, -ατ-ος, τό, *arrow*.

tīg-nu-m, -ī, *n.*, *building stuff*; **tex-ō**, *weave*; **tē-la**, -ae, *f.*, *web*; **sub-tī-li-s**, *adj.*, *woven fine*; **sub-tē-men**, -*in-is*, *n.*, *woof*; **tē-lu m**, -*i*, *n.*, *missile*.

---

[1] πρόσθεν. See p. 231.
[2] Dat. of *the time when*. See p. 454.
[3] Simply πάντα. See p. 1158.
[4] He said, *The soldiers have made slings for themselves* (use πλέκω). See 354.
[5] See 379.
[6] *those who were*, οἱ ὄντες. See 371.

THING, *hus*-TINGS; **tactics**. **taxi**-*dermy*. *syn*-**tax**. *archi*-**tect**, **technical**, *penta*-**teuch**. **toxico**-*logy*. *in*-**toxic**-*ate*.

NOTE. — The root shows the forms τεκ, τακ, τυχ, τοκ (399).

LESSON LXXVII.

Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns.

555. The principal *interrogative* pronoun is τίς, τίς, τί, *who? which? what?* This always has the acute accent on the first syllable.

556. The *indefinite* pronoun is τις, τις, τι, *some, any* (Lat. *aliquis*), or, used substantively, *somebody, anything* (Lat. *quīdam*). This pronoun is enclitic.

557. PARADIGMS.

	INTERROGATIVE		INDEFINITE	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
S. N.	τίς	τί	τις	τι
G.	τίνος, τοῦ		τινός, τοῦ	
D.	τίνι, τῷ		τινί, τῷ	
A.	τίνα	τί	τινά	τι
D. N. A. V.	τίνε		τινέ	
G. D.	τίνοιν		τινοῖν	
P. N.	τίνες	τίνα	τινές	τινά
G.	τίνων		τινῶν	
D.	τίσι		τισί	
A.	τίνας	τίνα	τινάς	τινά

Review 186, 187.

Examine the following: —

τί βούλεσθε; what do you want?
ἐρωτᾷ τί βουλόμεθα, he asks what we want.

558. **Rule of Syntax.** — The interrogative τίς is used both in direct and in indirect questions.

559. Besides the interrogative τίς, there occur frequently the interrogatives of *quality*, ποῖος, ποία, ποῖον, *of what sort?* (Lat. *quālis*), and of *quantity*, πόσος, πόση, πόσον, *how much?* (Lat. *quantus*). See 542.

a. The principle in 558 applies also to ποῖος and πόσος.

560. EXERCISES.

I. 1. τίς τοῦτο λέγει; 2. τοῦτο λέγει τις. 3. λέγουσι δέ τινες τάδε. 4. ποία ἐστὶν ἡ ἀπορία ἄνευ τῆς Κύρου γνώμης μένειν[1]; 5. τί οὖν κελεύω ὑμᾶς ποιῆσαι; 6. Τί οὖν ταῦτά ἐστιν; ἔφη ὁ Φαλῖνος. 7. ὥστε νικῶντες τίνα ἂν ἀποκτείναιμεν; 8. καὶ ἐρωτᾷ τὸν Ξενοφῶντα πόσον χρῡσίον ἔχει. 9. ἦν δέ τις ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος. 10. ἀπὸ ποίου ἂν[2] τάχους φεύγων[3] τις ἀποφύγοι; 11. ἐρωτῶμεν[4] ἐκεῖνον τί[5] βούλεται ἡμῖν[6] χρῆσθαι.[7] 12. τίς παραγγέλλει καὶ τί ἐστι τὸ σύνθημα; 13. τί[8] δεῖ βασιλέα αἰτεῖν ἡμᾶς τὰ ὅπλα; 14. συμβεβουλεύμεθά σοι τί χρὴ ποιεῖν. 15. ἐὰν νικῶσι, τί δεῖ αὐτοὺς λύειν τὴν γέφῡραν; 16. ἐν ποίοις πράγμασιν ἦσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες; 17. Κῦρον ἀκοντίζει τις παλτῷ ὑπὸ τὸν ὀφθαλμὸν βιαίως. 18. Κῦρος ἀπέκτεινεν ἄνδρα Πέρσην καὶ ἕτερόν τινα τῶν ὑπάρχων δυνάστην. 19. ἔνθα δὴ μέρος τι τῆς τῶν Περσῶν εὐταξίας ἦν θεάσασθαι. 20. τί κωλύει καὶ τὰ ἄκρα ἡμῖν[9] κελεύειν Κῦρον προκαταλαμβάνειν; 21. ποίᾳ δυνάμει συμμάχῳ χρησάμενοι[3] μᾶλλον ἂν κολάσαισθε τοὺς Λῑγυπτίους τῆς νῦν σὺν ἐμοὶ οὔσης;[10] 22. ἐρωτᾷ τὸν ἄγγελον πόση τίς[11] ἐστι χώρᾱ ἡ ἐν μέσῳ τοῦ Τίγρητος καὶ τῆς διώρυχος.

---

[1] The infin. is dependent on the verbal subst. ἀπορία, *difficulty in remaining*.

[2] With ἀποφύγοι. See 300.

[3] See p. 104[10].

[4] See 271.

[5] Cognate acc. (p. 122[1]) with χρῆσθαι.

[6] *Cf.* 361, I. 13.

[7] The irregularly contracted form of χράεσθαι. *Cf.* ζῆν, 380, I. 14.

[8] *Cf.* 167, I. 10.

[9] See p. 25[4].

[10] *Sc.* δυνάμεως, and see p. 179[1].

[11] See 186 c. τίς is here equivalent to the art., *how great a land*.

II. 1. What does he say to this? 2. Why do we remain? 3. Let us inquire who said this. 4. Somebody was near with a great force. 5. Of what sort were the men in this land? 6. What will the rest of the soldiers do? 7. What shall we have, if we conquer? 8. And he asks what the disturbance is? 9. What opinion have you about the march? 10. How many soldiers have you in your division? 11. Who ordered the generals to bring heavy-armed men? 12. And for what reason should you abandon the servants? 13. He will ask how many days I stayed in Byzantium. 14. How many did the companies of the heavy-armed men amount to?

561. R. **περ, per,** *press through.*

πείρω (for περ-ιω), *pierce*; **περ-όνη**, *-ης*, *tongue of a brooch, pin*; **περονά-ω**, *pierce*; **δι-αυ-περ-ες**, adv., *through and through*; **περά-ω**, *pass through, cross*; **πεῖρα**, *-ας* (for περ-ια), *trial, proof* (*'probing'*); **πειρά-ο-μαι**, *try, attempt*; **ἄ-πειρ-ος**, *-ο-ν*, *not having tried, without experience, unskilled*; **ἔμ-πειρο-ς**, *-ο-ν*, *acquainted with*; **ἐμπείρως**, adv., *by experience*; **πόρ-ο-ς**, ὁ, *means of passing, ford, means, way*; **ἔμ-πορο-ς**, ὁ, *one who travels, merchant*; **ἐμπορ-ε-ν**, τὸ, *trading-place, market*; **ὁδοι-πορο-ς**, *-ο-ν* (ὁδός, *way, road*), *going by land*; **ὁδοιπορ-έω**, *go by land*; **ἀντι-πορο-ς**, *-ο-ν*, *on the other side of the way, opposite*; **ἀ-πορο-ς**, *-ο-ν*, *without ways and means*; **ἀπορ-έω**, *be without ways and means, be perplexed*; **ἀπορ-ία**, *-ας*, *lack of means, embarrassment*; **δυσ-πόρ-ος**, *-ο-ν* (δυς-, *ill, evil*, *-ος*, *piercing*); **δύσ-πορο-ς**, *-ο-ν*, *hard to travel*; **δυσπορ-ία**, *-ας*, *difficulty of passing*; **εὔ-πορο-ς**, *-ο-ν*, *easy to travel through*; **εὐπορ-ία**, *-ας*, *facility of obtaining*; **ναυτί-πορο-ς**, *-ο-ν* (ναῦς, *ship*), *that can be traversed in ships, navigable*; **πορεί-ω**, *make a way for, make go*; **πορευ-τέ-ο-ς**, *-ν*, *-ό-ν*, *passable*; **δυσπόρευτο-ς**, *-ο-ν*, *hard to get through*; **πορευ-τέ-ο-ς**, *-ᾱ*, *-ο-ν*, *that must be traversed*; **πορε-ᾱ**, *-ας*, *a going, journey, march*; **πορ-ίζω**, *cause to go, carry, bring, supply*; **πέρ ᾱ**, adv., *through, beyond*; **περᾶ-ν** (prep. acc.), *on the further side*; **ἀντ. περαι** or **ἀντι-περας**, **κατ-αντ.περαν** or **κατ-αντιπέρας**, adv., *over against*; **περαῖο-ς**, *-ᾱ*, *-ο-ν*, *on the other side, opposite*; **περαί-ω**, *carry to the other side, transport*; **περαίνω** (for περαν-ιω), *bring to the other side, bring to an end, accomplish.*

perī tu-s, *adj., experienced*; **perī-culu-m**, *-ī*, *n., trial, risk, danger*; **por-ta**, *-ae*, *f., gate*; **por tu-s**, *-ūs*, *m., harbour*; **porti-cu-s**, *-ūs*, *f., covered walk*; **par ō**, *make ready*; **pār**, *adj., equal*; **peren-diē**, *adv., on the day after to-morrow.*

FARE, FAR, FERRY, FRITH, FEAR, FRESH, FRISK; *em*-**pirical**, **pirate**, **pore**, *em*-**porium**.

LESSON LXXVIII.

Perfect Middle System of Liquid Verbs.

562. Liquid verbs suffer in the main the same changes in the perfect middle system as in the first perfect system (504–507). But if ν is not dropped (506), it is changed to σ before μ. Thus: —

ἀγγέλλω (αγγελ-), *announce*, ἤγγελμαι. See 504.

σπείρω (σπερ-), *sow*, ἔσπαρμαι; στέλλω (στελ-), *send*, ἔσταλμαι; φθείρω (φθερ-), *destroy*, ἔφθαρμαι. See 505.

κρίνω (κριν-), *distinguish*, κέκριμαι; τείνω (τεν-), *stretch*, τέταμαι (505); φαίνω (φαν-), *show*, πέφασμαι. See 506.

βάλλω (βαλ-), *throw*, βέβλημαι. See 507.

Learn the paradigms of στέλλω and φαίνω in 686, 687.

Observe that σ between two consonants is dropped (519).

563. EXERCISES.

I. 1. θαυμάζω ὅτι οὐδαμοῦ Κῦρος πέφανται. 2. ἐπὶ τοὺς βαρβάρους ναῦς ἀπέσταλτο. 3. καὶ καπνὸς ἐπέφαντο ἐν κώμαις οὐ πρόσω. 4. ἡμεῖς δὲ ταὐτὰ[1] πάλιν ἀποκεκρίμεθα. 5. ἡγεμὼν οὐδεὶς ἡμῖν ἐπέφαντο. 6. καὶ ἐρωτᾷ εἰ[2] ἤδη ἀποκέκριναι.[3] 7. φανερὰ δὲ οὐδεμία πέφανται ἐπιβουλή. 8. πρὸς ταῦτα ἀποκέκριναι οἱ Ἕλληνες. 9. κέκριται ὡς ἀδικῶν ὁ τὸ στράτευμα ἀπολιπών.[4] 10. παρήγγελτο δὲ τοῖς ἱππεῦσι θαρροῦσι[5] διώκειν.[6] 11. συνήθροικε τῶν διεσπαρμένων τοὺς πλείστους. 12. Κλέαρχος δὲ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἡγεῖτο κατὰ τὰ παρηγγελμένα, οἱ δ' εἵποντο. 13. περὶ σωτηρίᾱς ἡμῖν θῡομένοις οἰωνὸς τοῦ Διὸς τοῦ σωτῆρος πέφανται. 14. ἀπεσταλμένοι εἰσὶν οἱ ἄγγελοι καὶ σὺν αὐ-

[1] *Cf.* 517, I. 8, and see p. 122[1].

[2] *Cf.* 553, I. 16.

[3] When in the pf. mid. system a liquid verb drops the final ν of its theme, it is inflected like a vowel verb. So here ἀποκέκριναι, and not ἀποκεκριμένοι εἰσίν.

[4] See 371.

[5] The partic. expresses *manner* (379).

[6] *Cf.* 553, I. 7.

τοῖς Χειρίσοφος ὁ Λάκων. 15. ἡμᾶς ὑπάγεται μένειν διὰ τὸ διεσπάρθαι[1] αὐτῷ τὸ στράτευμα. 16. καὶ τὸ βασίλειον σημεῖον ἦν ἀετός τις χρῡσοῦς ἐπὶ ξύλου ἀνατεταμένος. 17. ἐλείποντο δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν οἱ διεφθαρμένοι ὑπὸ τῆς χιόνος τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς.[2] 18. ἐπιστέλλουσι δὲ ταῦτα καὶ ἄλλοι πολλοὶ τῷ Ξενοφῶντι ὡς[3] διαβέβληται καὶ φυλάττεσθαι δεῖ.

II. 1. Tracks of horses have appeared. 2. Boats had been despatched to the army. 3. But the cavalry have been dispersed. 4. The army has been corrupted. 5. None have appeared able to aid us. 6. But orders had been given[4] the peltasts to follow. 7. The left wing had already been scattered. 8. For Tissaphernes and all his army had already appeared. 9. But this had been announced to the king. 10. And this has been reported to Xenophon and to his troops. 11. We have been traduced by those who were[5] formerly our friends. 12. I have answered with moderation, in order that he may not be angry with us.

564. R. **ακ, ac**, *sharp, pointed, swift.*

ἄκ-ων, -οντ-ος, ὁ, *javelin, dart*; **ἀκόντ-ιο-ν**, τό, *javelin, dart*; **ἀκοντίζω**, *hurl the javelin*; **ἀκόντι-σι-ς**, -ε-ως, ἡ, *javelin-throwing*; **ἀκοντιστ-ῆ-ς**, -οῦ, *javelin-thrower*; **ἀκ-μή**, -ῆς, *point, edge, highest point*; **ἀκμοῖ-ν**, adv. (acc. of ἀκμή), *on the point, just*; **ἀκμάζω**, *be at the highest point*; **αἰχμή**, -ῆς (for ακ-ιμη), *spear-point*; **αἰχμ-άλωτο-ς**, -ο-ν (ἁλίσκομαι, *be taken*), *captured by the spear*; **ἄκ-ρο-ς**, -ᾱ, -ο-ν, *at the point, highest*; **ἄκρο-ν**, τό, *height*; **ἀκρο-βολίζο-μαι** (R. βαλ, 480), *throw from a distance* or *height*; **ἀκροβόλι-σι-ς**, -ε ως, ἡ, *skirmish*; **ἀκρό-πολι-ς**, -ε-ως, ἡ (πολις, *city*), *upper city, citadel*; **ἀκρ-ωνυχί-α**, -ᾱς (ὄνυξ, *nail*), *nail-tip, spur, crest*; **ἄκρᾱ**, -ᾱς, *height, citadel*. — **ὠκ-ύ-ς**, -εῖα, -ύ, *swift*. — **ἵππο-ς**, ὁ, ἡ (stem ικ-ϝο), *horse* ('the swift one'); **ἱππ-αρχο-ς**, ὁ (R. αρχ, 463), *cavalry commander*; **ἱππό-δρομο-ς**, ὁ (δρόμος, *a running*), *race-course*; **φίλ-ιππο-ς**, -ο-ν (φίλος, *fond*), *fond of*

---

[1] See p. 164[3].

[2] The const. in the act. is διαφθείρειν τινὶ τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς, *to blind* ('destroy') *one's eyes*. In the pass. the dat. of the person (τινί) becomes the subj., διαφθείρεται τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς, *he has his eyes blinded*.

[3] *that*.

[4] *Cf.* I. 10 above.

[5] *Cf.* 553, II. 14, and see 224.

horses; ἱππ-ικό-ς, *-ή, -ό-ν, of a horse* or *of cavalry;* ἱππάζο-μαι, *drive* or *ride a horse;* ἱππα-σίᾱ, *-ᾱς, a riding;* ἱππ-εύ-ς, *-έ-ως,* ὁ, *horseman;* ἱππεύ-ω, *ride;* ἱππείᾱ, *-ᾱς* (for ἱππερ-ια), *cavalry;* τέθρ-ιππο-ν, τό (τέτταρες, *four*), *team of four horses abreast, chariot and four.* — ὀξ-ύ-ς, *-εῖα, -ύ* (οκ + σ = οξ), *sharp, sour;* ὄξ-ος, *-ε-ος,* τό, *sour wine.*

ac-iē-s, *-ēi, f., sharp edge* or *point;* **acu-s**, *-ūs, f., needle;* **acu-ō**, *sharpen;* **āc-er**, *adj., sharp, pungent;* **ōc-ior**, *adj., swifter;* **equ-u-s**, *-ī, m., horse.*

EDGE, EGG ('egg on'); **acme**, **acro-***bat*, **acro-***polis*, **acro-***stic*, *etc.*

LESSON LXXIX.

Relative Pronouns.

565. The *relative* pronouns are ὅς, ἥ, ὅ, *who, which,* and ὅστις, ἥτις, ὅ τι, *whoever, whichever.* The latter is called the *indefinite* relative.

566. PARADIGM.

S. N.	ὅς	ἥ	ὅ	D. N. A.	ὥ	ὥ	ὥ	P. N.	οἵ	αἵ	ἅ
G.	οὗ	ἧς	οὗ	G. D.	οἷν	οἷν	οἷν	G.	ὧν	ὧν	ὧν
D.	ᾧ	ᾗ	ᾧ					D.	οἷς	αἷς	οἷς
A.	ὅν	ἥν	ὅ					A.	οὕς	ἅς	ἅ

567. PARADIGM.

S. N.	ὅστις	ἥτις	ὅ τι
G.	οὑτινος, ὅτου	ἡστινος	οὑτινος, ὅτου
D.	ὡτινι, ὅτῳ	ᾗτινι	ὡτινι, ὅτῳ
A.	ὅντινα	ἥντινα	ὅ τι
D. N. A.	ὥτινε	ὥτινε	ὥτινε
G. D.	οἱντινοιν	οἱντινοιν	οἱντινοιν
P. N.	οἵτινες	αἵτινες	ἅτινα, ἄττα
G.	ὧντινων, ὅτων	ὧντινων	ὧντινων, ὅτων
D.	οἱστισι, ὅτοις	αἱστισι	οἱστισι, ὅτοις
A.	οὕστινας	ἅστινας	ἅτινα, ἄττα

a. ὅστις is compounded of the simple relative ὅς and the indefinite τὶς, each part being separately declined.

b. ὅ τι is so written to distinguish it from ὅτι, *that, because*.

Examine the following: —

λύσομεν τὰς ἁμάξᾱς ἃς ἔχομεν. *we will destroy the wagons which we have.*

ὑμεῖς δέ, οἳ ταῦτα ἐποιεῖτε, ἀποκρίνασθε. *do you, who managed this, make answer.*

ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖτε, ὅστις ὑμᾶς ἀπάξει. *ask for a guide to conduct you (who will conduct you).*

568. Rule of Syntax. — The relative agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, and follows its person: but the case of the relative is determined by the construction of the clause in which it stands.

Examine the following: —

ἔχουσι δὲ ἃ βούλονται. *they have what they want* (*i.e.* ταῦτα ἃ βούλονται).

οὐκ ἀπεκρύπτετο ἣν εἶχε γνώμην. *he did not conceal his opinion* (*i.e.* τὴν γνώμην ἣν εἶχε).

569. Rule of Syntax. — The antecedent of the relative may be omitted, when it is implied in the context. Sometimes it is incorporated into the relative clause.

Examine the following: —

ἐρωτᾷ ὅ τι βουλόμεθα, *he asks what we want.*

ἡμῖν δὲ λέγετε ὅ τι ἔλεγεν, *tell us what he said.*

570. Rule of Syntax. — The indefinite relative ὅστις is often used to introduce an indirect question. See 558.

571. Besides the above, there occur frequently in Attic prose the relatives of *quality*, οἷος, οἵᾱ, οἷον, and ὁποῖος, ὁποίᾱ, ὁποῖον, *of which kind*, (*such*) *as* (Lat. *quālis*), answering to the demonstrative τοιοῦτος (542), and of *quantity*, ὅσος, ὅση, ὅσον, and ὁπόσος, ὁπόση, ὁπόσον, *how much, how many*, (*as much* or *as many*) *as* (Lat. *quantus*), answering to τοσοῦτος (542). For the corresponding interrogatives, see 559.

a. The rules in 568, 569, and 570, apply also to οἷος, ὁποῖος, ὅσος, ὁπόσος, but in indirect questions οἷος and ὅσος may be used as well as the general or indefinite relatives ὁποῖος and ὁπόσος.

572. EXERCISES.

I. 1. *σὺ οὖν συμβούλευσον ἡμῖν ὅ τι σοι δοκεῖ ἄριστον εἶναι.* 2. *ἐὰν καλῶς καταπράξωσιν ἐφ' ἃ στρατεύομαι, κατάξω αὐτοὺς οἴκαδε.* 3. *ἐνταῦθα Κύρῳ βασίλεια ἦν καὶ παράδεισος μέγας ἀγρίων θηρίων πλήρης, ἃ ἐκεῖνος ἐθήρευεν ἀπὸ ἵππου.* 4. *ἐνταῦθα καὶ παραγγέλλει τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἔχοντι ἥκειν ὅσον ἦν αὐτῷ στράτευμα.* 5. *ὥρᾱ ἐστὶν ἡμῖν βουλεύεσθαι ὅ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν ἐκ τούτων.* 6. *ὑμῖν λέξω οἷός ἐστὶν ὁ περὶ τῆς ὑμετέρᾱς σωτηρίᾱς ἀγὼν οὗτος.* 7. *ὁποίοις δὲ λόγοις Κλέαρχος ἔπεισε Κῦρον ἄλλῃ γέγραπται.* 8. *καὶ Ξενίᾳ ἄγειν παρήγγειλε τοὺς ἄνδρας πλὴν ὁπόσοι ἱκανοὶ ἦσαν τὰς ἀκροπόλεις φυλάττειν.*[1] 9. *τίς οὕτω μαίνεται ὅστις οὐ βούλεταί σοι φίλος εἶναι;* 10. *λέξουσι δὲ οἱ στρατηγοὶ οἵᾱ ἐστὶν ἡ ἀπορίᾱ ἄνευ τῆς Κύρου γνώμης μένειν.*[1] 11. *Μετὰ ταῦτα, ἔφη, ὦ Ὀρόντᾱ, ἔστιν ὅ τι σε ἠδίκησα*[2]*;* 12. *Κλέαρχος μόνος ἐφρόνει οἷα δεῖ τὸν ἄρχοντα,*[3] *οἱ δ' ἄλλοι ἄπειροι ἦσαν.* 13. *δηλώσουσιν οἵους νομίζουσιν εἶναι τοὺς ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ὄντας ἀνθρώπους.* 14. *καὶ ἀρχικὸς ἐλέγετο εἶναι Κλέαρχος ὡς δυνατὸν*[4] *ἐκ τοῦ τοιούτου τρόπου οἷον κἀκεῖνος εἶχε· χαλεπὸς γὰρ ἦν.* 15. *ὅσων δὲ δὴ καὶ οἵων ἂν ἐλπίδων ἐμαυτὸν στερήσαιμι, εἰ σέ τι κακὸν ἐπιχειρήσαιμι ποιεῖν, ταῦτα*[5] *λέξω.* 16. *διαθεώμεθα ὅσην μὲν χώρᾱν καὶ οἵᾱν ἔχουσιν, ὅσους δὲ θεράποντας, ὅσα δὲ κτήνη, χρῡσὸν δέ, ἐσθῆτα δέ.*

---

[1] The inf. may depend on adjectives or substantives, especially on those which denote ability or fitness or the contrary. *Cf.* 560, I. 4.

[2] *Is there any wrong that I have done you?* For the accent of ἔστιν, see 188 a. ὅ τι is a cognate acc. *Cf.* 485, I. 13.

[3] *Sc.* φρονεῖν, subj. of δεῖ (352).

[4] *(so far) as (it was) possible.*

[5] ταῦτα repeats the preceding indirect question.

II. 1. Xenophon asks what we are doing. 2. And with her he sent soldiers whom Menon had. 3. And they ask him how large the army is. 4. But I will tell how many and what sort of ships he has. 5. But tell us what you were doing. 6. He orders the general to bring whatever force he has. 7. It is time to say what you think to be best. 8. Ask what he says to this. 9. There, alongside the road, was a spring at[1] which Midas is said to have caught[2] the satyr. 10. And to him Cyrus sent gifts that are regarded precious at court.[3] 11. Here was a very large and beautiful park that had[4] (in it) all that[5] the seasons produce.

573. **πρό, pro,** *before.*

πρό, prep., *before, in front of, in behalf of*; φρουρό-ς, ὁ (for προ-ϝορ-ο-ς, *cf.* ὁράω, *watch over, see*), *one who watches in front of, guard*; φρουρ-α, *watch, guard*; φρουρ-αρχο-ς, ὁ (R. αρχ. 163), *commander of a watch*; φρούρ-ιο-ν, τό, *guarded post, garrison*; πρό-τερο-ς, -ά, -ον, comp., *former, previous*; πρῐ-έρα-ῐ, -ᾱ, -ω, *on the preceding day*; πρ-ίν (for προ-ιν), conj., *before, until*; πρῐ-σα, by metathesis and assimilation πάρ-ρα, adv., *forwards, in advance, far off*; πρᾱΐ, contr. πρᾷ, adv., *early*; πρῶ-το-ς, -η, -ο-ν, *first*; πρωτεῦ-ω, *be first*; πρωΐ-ος, -ᾱ, -ον (for πρα-ϝα-ῐ-ος), *bent forward, headlong*; πρῶ-ρα, -ας, *prow*; πρωϊ-σῐ-ν, -ως, ὁ, *watch of the hour, lookout.*

prō, *prep., before*; **prae**, *prep., before*; **prior**, *adj., former*; **prīs-cu-s**, *adj., of old*; **prīs-tinu-s**, *adj., primitive*; **prī-mu-s**, *adj., first*; **por-rō**, *adv., forward*; **prō-nu-s**, *adj., bent forward*; **prī-uu-s**, *adj., individual, peculiar.*

FOR, FORE.

LESSON LXXX.

First Passive System.

Review the first passive system of λύω in 677.

574. For modifications of the theme in vowel verbs, see 254 a b, 441 with a b, and 442.

[1] ἐπί with dat.
[2] Aor. inf. *Cf.* 356, I. 2.
[3] παρὰ βασιλεῖ.
[4] Partic. of ἔχω.
[5] πάντα ὅσα.

575. Before *-θε-* a labial or palatal mute becomes or remains co-ordinate (114 a), a lingual mute becomes σ. Thus: —

κρύπτω (κρυφ-), *hide*, ἐκρύφθην; πέμπω (πεμπ-), *send*, ἐπέμφθην; τρέπω (τρεπ-), *turn*, ἐτρέφθην; βίπτω (βιφ-, ῥιφ-), *throw*, ἐρρῐ́φθην.

ἄγω (αγ-), *lead*, ἤχθην; ἐλέγχω (ἐλεγχ-), *convict*, ἠλέγχθην; λέγω (λεγ-), *say*, ἐλέχθην; πρᾱ́ττω (πρᾱγ-), *do*, ἐπρᾱ́χθην; ταράττω (ταραχ-), *disturb*, ἐταράχθην; τάττω (ταγ-), *arrange*, ἐτάχθην.

ἀναγκάζω (αναγκαδ-), *compel*, ἠναγκάσθην; βιάζομαι (βιαδ-), *force*, ἐβιάσθην; ἥδομαι (ἡδ-), *be glad*, ἥσθην; νομίζω (νομιδ-), *think*, ἐνομίσθην; πορίζω (ποριδ-), *furnish*, ἐπορίσθην.

576. Verbs of the second class (492, 493) have the strong form of the theme. Thus: —

λείπω (λιπ-), *leave*, ἐλείφθην; πείθω (πιθ-), *persuade*, ἐπείσθην.

577. Liquid verbs suffer in the main the same changes in the first passive system as in the first perfect system (504–507). Thus: —

ἀγγέλλω (αγγελ-), *announce*, ἠγγέλθην; τείνω (τεν-), *stretch*, ἐτάθην; κρῑ́νω (κριν-), *distinguish*, ἐκρίθην; βάλλω (βαλ-), *throw*, ἐβλήθην.

578. If *ν* is not dropped, it remains unchanged. Thus: —

αἰσχῡ́νω (αισχυν-), *shame*, ᾐσχύνθην; περαίνω (περαν-), *accomplish*, ἐπεράνθην; φαίνω (φαν-), *show*, ἐφάνθην; χαλεπαίνω (χαλεπαν-), *be angry*, ἐχαλεπάνθην.

579. **EXERCISES.**

I. 1. τούτοις[1] ἥσθη Κῦρος. 2. ἐπορεύθημεν πρὸς τὸν ποταμόν. 3. ὀλίγοι ἀμφ' αὐτὸν κατελείφθησαν. 4. καὶ πεισθέντες εὐθὺς ἐπορεύοντο. 5. ἀπεκρύφθησαν καὶ οἱ ἄνθρωποι καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια τῷ καπνῷ.[2] 6. οὕτω γὰρ ἥκιστα διασπασθήσεται τὰ στρατεύματα. 7. ἡγεμόνες δὲ ἄριστοι Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἐνομίσθησαν εἶναι. 8. ἐν ᾧ[3] δὲ ὡπλίζοντο, ἦκον οἱ προπεμφθέντες[4] σκοποί. 9. ἀλλ' ἡμεῖς Κερασουν-

[1] The dat. is used to denote the *cause*, especially with verbs of *feeling*.

[2] See p. 175.

[3] ἐν ᾧ (*sc.* χρόνῳ), *while*.

[4] See 369.

τίων[1] θάψαι αὐτοὺς ἐδεήθημεν. 10. χρή, ἐὰν ἐλεγχθῶσι, τούτους τῑμωρηθῆναι. 11. ἆρ' ἡσθήσεται βασιλεύς, ἐὰν οἴκαδε πορευώμεθα; 12. βασιλεὺς δὲ ἐπείσθη τε καὶ τοὺς σατράπᾱς μετεπέμψατο πρὸς αὑτόν. 13. καὶ ὅσα ἐν τῇ ἀνόδῳ ἐπράχθη, ἐν τῷ ἔμπροσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται. 14. ὡμολογήθη Κῦρος πρὸς πάντων κράτιστος δὴ γίγνεσθαι θεραπεύειν[2] τοὺς φίλους. 15. καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν ἐν τῷ τρίτῳ σταθμῷ, καὶ Χειρίσοφος αὐτῷ ἐχαλεπάνθη, ὅτι οὐκ εἰς κώμᾱς ἤγαγεν. 16. καὶ ἀντιταχθέντες πολλοὺς τῶν ἁρπαζόντων ἀπέκτειναν οἱ Ἕλληνες. 17. συνταξάμενοι ἀμφὶ μέσον ἡμέρᾱς ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῆς Ἀρμενίᾱς οὐ μεῖον ἢ πέντε παρασάγγᾱς. 18. τοιγαροῦν κράτιστοι δὴ ὑπηρέται παντὸς ἔργου Κύρῳ ἐλέχθησαν γενέσθαι.[3] 19. οὐδ' ὡς Κῦρος ἐξήχθη διώκειν, ἀλλ' ἐπεμελεῖτο ὅ τι ποιήσει βασιλεύς. 20. ἐκέλευσε δὲ τοὺς Ἕλληνας, ὡς νόμος[4] αὐτοῖς εἰς μάχην, οὕτω ταχθῆναι· ἐτάχθησαν οὖν ἐπὶ τεττάρων.

II. 1. I was compelled to pursue. 2. And corselets will be furnished them. 3. But the soldiers were sent to[5] the king. 4. The Greek cavalry were routed. 5. And Clearchus was excessively troubled. 6. But the baggage was thrown into the river. 7. How should we best make an advance? 8. They advanced four stages in this manner.[6] 9. We felt ashamed before both gods and men[7] to abandon them. 10. The soldiers were drawn up[8] and forced to proceed. 11. But the commanders were persuaded by the general to send the captives away. 12. But the enemy fled in fear[9] that they would be shut off. 13. If these should be worsted, nobody would be left. 14. And he enjoins on these to send him[10] the money, if he himself safely escapes.

---

[1] *Cf.* 356, I. 11.
[2] *Cf.* 572, I. 8.
[3] See 354.
[4] *Sc.* ἐστίν.
[5] ὡς. See the Greek-Eng. Vocab.
[6] Dat. of τρίπος. *Cf.* 305, I. 16.
[7] *Cf.* 479, I. 10.
[8] Aor. partic.
[9] Aor. partic. of δείδω. See 379.
[10] See 528.

580. R. **σπα, spa**, *draw, stretch.*

σπά-ω, *draw;* **ἀ-σπάζο-μαι**, *draw to oneself, embrace;* **στά-δ-ιο-ν, τό** (for σπα-δ-ιο-ν), *extended space, stadium;* **σπά-ν-ι-ς**, -ε-ως, ἡ, *scarceness, lack* ('straining'); **σπάν-ιο-ς**, -ᾱ, -ο-ν, *scanty;* **σπανίζω**, *lack, need;* **πέν-ο-μαι** (for σπε-ν-ο-μαι), *strain* or *exert oneself, toil, be poor;* **πεν-ίᾱ**, -ἀς, *poverty;* **πέν-η-ς**, -ητ-ος, ὁ, *day-labourer, poor man;* **πεῖνα**, -ης (for πεν-ια), *hunger, famine;* **πεινά-ω**, *be hungry;* **πόν-ο-ς**, ὁ, *labour;* **ἐπί-πονο-ς**, -ο-ν, *laborious, painful;* **πονέ-ω**, *work hard;* **πονη-ρό-ς**, -ά, -ό-ν, *troublesome, bad;* **πονηρῶς**, adv., *with difficulty;* **παμ-πόνηρο-ς**, -ο-ν (**πᾶς**, 544), *wholly bad;* **πά-σχ-ω** (for πα-θ-σκ-ω), *be drawn tight, experience, suffer;* **πάθ-ος**, -ε-ος, τό, *experience, accident;* **ἀ-παθής**, -ές, *without experience of, free from;* **ἡδυ-παθής**, -ές (**ἡδύς**, *pleasant*), *experiencing pleasure;* **ἡδυπαθέ-ω**, *live pleasantly, be luxurious;* **πάθη-μα**, -ατ-ος, τό, *anything that is experienced, misfortune.*

spa-t-iu-m, -ī, *n., space, room;* **pa-ti-o-r**, *bear, suffer;* **spē-s**, *spēī, f., hope;* **prō-spe-r-u-s**, *adj., according to hope, favourable;* **pēn-ūr-ia**, -*ae, f., destitution;* **pann-u-s**, -ī, *m., piece of cloth;* **pal-la**, -*ae, f., mantle.*

SPAN, SPIN, SPINDLE, SPIDER, SPEED, SPADE, **spasm**, **pathos**, *allo-***pathy**, *homoeo-***pathy**, *anti-***pathy**, *a-***pathy**, *sym-***pathy**.

LESSON LXXXI.

Verbal Adjectives.

581. Verbal adjectives are derived from the themes of verbs and are generally equivalent to passive participles in meaning. Their stems are formed by adding the suffixes **-το-** and **-τεο-** to the theme. Thus **λυ-τό-ς**, **λυ-τή**, **λυ-τό-ν**, *loosed, capable of being loosed*, **λυ-τέο-ς**, **λυ-τέᾱ**, **λυ-τέο-ν**, *to be loosed.*

582. The theme has the same form as in the first aorist passive, but a final rough mute is made smooth before **-τος** and and **-τεος**, *i.e.* it becomes co-ordinate (114 a). Thus: —

ποιέω, *do*, first aor. pass. **ἐποιήθην**, verbal **ποιητέος**; **πορεύομαι**, *advance*, **ἐπορεύθην**, **πορευτέος**; **πέμπω**, *send*, **ἐπέμφθην**, **πεμπτέος**; **θαυμάζω**, *wonder at*, **ἐθαυμάσθην**, **θαυμαστός**; **πείθω**, *persuade*, mid. *obey*, **ἐπείσθην**, **πειστέος**; **διώκω**, *pursue*, **ἐδιώχθην**, **διωκτέος**; **ἀλλάττω**, *change*, **ἠλλάχθην**, **ἀλλακτέος**; **λέγω**, *say*, **ἐλέχθην**, **λεκτέος**; **ὀρύττω**, *dig*, **ὠρύχθην**, **ὀρυκτός.**

Examine the following: —

ἄλλαι νῆες μεταπεμπτέαι εἰσίν, *other ships must be sent for.*
ὠφελητέᾱ σοι ἡ πόλις ἐστίν, *the city must be succoured by you.*

583. Rule of Syntax. — The verbal in *-τεος*, when used in the personal construction, is always passive in sense, and expresses *necessity*, like the Latin participle in *-dus*. The *agent* is expressed by the dative.

Examine the following: —

τὴν πορείαν ὑμῖν πεζῇ ποιητέον. you must make the journey on foot.
ταῦτα ἡμῖν ποιητέον ἐστίν. we must do this.
πειστέον ἐστὶ τῷ στρατηγῷ ὑμῖν. you must obey your general.

584. Rule of Syntax. — The verbal in *-τεος*, when used in the impersonal construction (which is the more common), is in the nominative singular neuter, with *ἐστί* expressed or understood. It is practically active in sense, and like its verb may have an object. The *agent* is expressed by the dative.

585. EXERCISES.

I. 1. *ὡς*[1] *βασιλέᾶ σοι πορευτέον*[2] *τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν.* 2. *δῆλόν ἐστιν ὅτι ὑπόπεμπτος ἦν ὁ ἀνήρ.* 3. *ἐπεὶ δὲ πλοῖα ἱκανὰ οὐκ ἦν, τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐδόκει ἀποπορευτέον εἶναι*[3] *πεζῇ.* 4. *ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, τὴν πορείᾱν πεζῇ ποιητέον· οὐ γάρ ἐστι πλοῖα.* 5. *πορευτέον δ' ἡμῖν τοὺς πρώτους σταθμοὺς ὡς*[4] *μακροτάτους.* 6. *διασκηνητέον τοῖς στρατιώταις εἰς τὰς κώμᾱς εἰς στέγᾱς.* 7. *σκεπτέον μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι ὅπως τὰ ἐπιτηδεια ἕξομεν.* 8. *ἡμῖν δὲ πάντα ποιητέα ὡς μήποτ' ἐπὶ τοῖς βαρβάροις*[5] *γενώμεθα.* 9. *παρῆν δὲ καὶ Χειρίσοφος Λακεδαιμόνιος ἐπὶ τῶν νεῶν, μετάπεμπτος ὑπὸ Κύρου.* 10. *ἔτι δὲ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων σκευῶν ἀπαλλακτέον, πλὴν ὅσα πολέμου ἕνεκεν ἢ σίτων ἢ ποτῶν ἔχομεν.* 11. *ἐγὼ δὲ ὑμῶν τοὺς οἴκαδε βουλομένους ἀποπορεύεσθαι τοῖς οἴκοι*[6]

---

[1] *Cf.* 391, I. 11.

[2] The copula *ἐστί* is frequently omitted, especially with verbals in *-τεος* (584).

[3] Inf. in indirect discourse (354) after *ἐδόκει*, *it seemed to the soldiers, etc., i.e. they thought.* *Cf.* 517, I. 10.

[4] *Cf.* 470, I. 21.

[5] *Cf.* 189, I. 9.

[6] *Cf.* 498, I. 8. For the accent, see 28.

ζηλωτοὺς ποιήσω. 12. σκεπτέον δέ, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, ὅπως πλοῖα ἱκανὰ ἡμῖν ἔσται. 13. οὐκ ἂν εἴη θαυμαστὸν εἰ κυκλωθείη τὸ δεξιὸν κέρας. 14. ὅμως δὲ λεκτέον ἐμοὶ τὸ τοῦ ἀνθρώπου ὄνομα. 15. τοσαῦτα δὲ ὄρη ὑμῖν ἐστι πορευτέα, ἃ ἡμῖν ἔξεστιν ἄπορα ὑμῖν παρέχειν. 16. ἐπειδὴ δὲ Ξενοφῶν παρῆν σὺν τοῖς πελτασταῖς, ἐνταῦθα δὴ λέγει Χειρίσοφος· Εἰς καλὸν[1] ἥκετε· ἐπὶ γὰρ τὸ ὄρος πορευτέον. 17. αἱ δ' οἰκίαι ἦσαν κατάγειοι· αἱ δὲ εἴσοδοι τοῖς μὲν ὑποζυγίοις ὀρυκταί, οἱ δὲ ἄνθρωποι κατέβαινον ἐπὶ κλίμακος.

II. 1. The boys must obey their teacher. 2. On the following day the generals thought that they must advance. 3. We must not lose courage. 4. This it seems to me must be considered. 5. For there are many[2] (reasons) why[3] I must not do this. 6. Nevertheless this[2] must be said, for I am acquainted with the country. 7. Now[4] the generals thought that they ought to advance through the mountains. 8. Xenophon thought that pursuit was necessary. 9. Every measure must be taken[5] that we may not fall into his hands.[6] 10. It would not be surprising if Cyrus should think that he must be rid of the beasts of burden. 11. Chirisophus says that the generals ought to consider what the hindrance[7] is.

586. R. **δοκ, dec,** *beseem.*

δοκ-έ-ω, *seem, seem best, think;* **δόγ-μα,** *-ατ-os, τά, that which seems to one, principle;* **δόξα,** *-ης* (for *δοκ-σα*), *opinion, renown;* **ἐυ-δοξ-ος,** *-ο-ν, in renown;* **δοξάζω,** *think, believe;* **δόκ-ιμο-ς,** *-ο-ν, approved;* **δοκιμάζω,** *test, examine;* **δοκιμα-σία,** *-ᾱς, test, examination.*

dec-et, impers., *it is seemly, it behooves;* **dec-us,** *-or-is, n., grace, glory;* **dec-or,** *-ōr-is, m., comeliness;* **decōr-u-s,** *adj., seemly;* **dīg-nu-s,** *adj., worthy.*

dogma, doxo-*logy*, *hetero-***dox,** *ortho-***dox,** *para-***dox.**

---

[1] *in the nick of time. Sc.* χρόνον.
[2] Use the neut. plur.
[3] δι' ἅ.
[4] δή.
[5] *Every measure must be taken, i.e. we must do everything.*
[6] *Cf.* I. 8 above.
[7] *Cf.* 373, I. 6.

LESSON LXXXII.

Second Passive System.

Review 437, 438, 489.

587. The stem of the *second aorist passive* is formed by adding the tense-suffix -ε- to the theme. This suffix is lengthened to -η- throughout the indicative, and in the other moods before a single consonant in the ending. As a secondary tense the second aorist passive has augment in the indicative. It has the inflexion of the first aorist passive.

588. The *second future passive* adds -σ°/ε- to the stem of the second aorist passive, with the tense-suffix -ε- lengthened to -η-. It has the inflexion of the first future passive.

Conjugate the second passive system of στέλλω in 688.

a. An ε in the theme generally becomes α.

Conjugate also the second passive system of any of the verbs given below.

589. The following verbs of the first four classes occur in the second passive system.

γράφω (γραφ-), *write*, ἐγράφην ;
λέγω (λεγ-), *gather*,[1] ἐλέγην ;
στρέφω (στρεφ-), *turn, twist*, ἐστράφην ;
τρίβω (τρῑβ-, τριβ-), *rub*, ἐτρίβην.

δέρω (δερ-), *flay*, ἐδάρην ;
πλέκω (πλεκ-), *weave*, ἐπλάκην ;
τρέπω (τρεπ-), *turn, bend*, ἐτράπην ;[2]

τήκω (τακ-), *melt*, ἐτάκην.

βλάπτω (βλαβ-), *injure*, ἐβλάβην ;
κλέπτω (κλεπ-), *steal*, ἐκλάπην ;
ῥίπτω (ῥῑφ-, ῥιφ-) *throw*, ἐρρίφην ;[4]

θάπτω[3] (ταφ-), *bury*, ἐτάφην ;
κόπτω (κοπ-), *cut*, ἐκόπην ;
σκάπτω (σκαφ-), *dig*, ἐσκάφην.

[1] λέγω in the sense of *gather, count*, is used only in compounds in Attic prose. In the sense of *say* ('tell off' one's words, *tell*) it has the first aor. pass.

[2] Usually in the sense of the mid., *turn oneself, turn*, with intrans. meaning.

[3] See p. 166[3].

[4] See p. 166[2].

ἀλλάττω (αλλαγ-), *change*, ἠλλάγην; πλήττω (πληγ-), *smite*, ἐπλήγην;[1]
σπείρω (σπερ-), *sow*, ἐσπάρην; σφάλλω (σφαλ-), *trip up*, ἐσφάλην;
σφάττω (σφαγ-), *slay*, ἐσφάγην; φαίνω (φαν-), *show*, ἐφάνην;[2]
φθείρω (φθερ-), *destroy*, ἐφθάρην.

590. EXERCISES.

I. 1. ὁ Γλοῦς αὐτοῖς ἐπεφάνη μετ' ἄλλων. 2. καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες στραφέντες εἰς μάχην παρεσκευάζοντο. 3. καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων κατεκόπησάν τινες ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. 4. εἰ πορευθείη ἐπὶ τοὺς στρατιώτας, ἐκπλαγεῖεν ἄν. 5. ὑπὲρ γὰρ τῆς κώμης γήλοφος ἦν, ἐφ' οὗ ἀνεστράφησαν οἱ ἀμφὶ Βασιλέᾶ. 6. ἐπλήγη ὑπὸ τὸν ὀφθαλμὸν βιαίως. 7. Ὅμως δὲ καὶ λέξον, ἔφη, ἐκ τίνος[3] ἐπλήγης. 8. οὐκ ἂν εἴη θαυμαστὸν εἰ διακοπείη ἡμῶν ἡ φάλαγξ. 9. ἐφάνη κονιορτὸς ὥσπερ νεφέλη λευκή. 10. ἐὰν δέ τι[4] σφαλῇ, οὐ σπανίσει τῶν βοηθησόντων.[5] 11. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ οὐκ ἐφάνησαν οἱ πολέμιοι, οὐδὲ τῇ τρίτῃ. 12. οὐ πολλῷ[6] δὲ ὕστερον οἱ λοχᾶγοὶ κατακοπήσονται. 13. ἐπιβουλεύει Κύρῳ, καὶ πρόσθεν πολεμήσᾶς καταλλαγεὶς δέ. 14. καὶ ἐβουλευόμεθα σὺν τούτοις ὅπως ἄν ταφείησαν[7] οἱ τῶν Ἑλλήνων νεκροί. 15. ἐνταῦθα οἱ πελτασταὶ ἐδίωκον μέχρι τὸ δεξιὸν αὖ διεσπάρη. 16. πρὶν γὰρ δὴ καταλῦσαι[8] τὸ στράτευμα πρὸς ἄριστον, βασιλεὺς ἐφάνη. 17. ὡς δ' ἡ τροπὴ ἐγένετο, διεσπάρησαν καὶ οἱ Κύρου ἑξακόσιοι εἰς τὸ διώκειν[9] ὁρμήσαντες. 18. εἰ μέντοι πλείους συλλεγεῖεν, κινδῡνεύσειεν ἂν διαφθαρῆναι πολὺ τοῦ στρατεύματος. 19. πολλὰ δὲ πρόβατα καὶ αἶγες καὶ βόες

---

[1] In compounds, the form of the second aor. is ἐπλάγην, as ἐκπλήττω, *strike out* of one's senses, *astound*, second aor. ἐξεπλάγην.

[2] In the sense of the mid., *show oneself*, *appear*, whereas the first aor. pass. (578) has its regular pass. force, *be shown*.

[3] *in consequence of what, i. e. why.*

[4] Cognate acc. with σφαλῇ. *Cf.* 485, I. 13.

[5] *Cf.* 308, I. 2.

[6] *Cf.* 470, I. 10.

[7] The direct form of the question was, πῶς ἂν ταφείησαν. See p. 104[14].

[8] *Cf.* 487, line 13, and note.

[9] *Cf.* 563, I. 15.

καὶ ὅνοι ἀπεδάρησαν. 20. ἡνίκα δ' ἦν δείλη, ἐξαπίνης οἱ πολέμιοι ἐπεφάνησαν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ.

II. 1. And those outside[1] were cut down. 2. If they should be reconciled, the war would come to an end. 3. Mithridates again appeared with a thousand horsemen. 4. You were not hurt at all.[2] 5. How[3] he persuaded Cyrus will be described elsewhere. 6. The barbarians turned[4] and fled. 7. And the snow had melted[5] on account of the spring. 8. In the afternoon[6] a cloud of dust was seen. 9. The soldiers came together[4] and deliberated. 10. Show yourselves[5] the bravest of the captains. 11. They said that the companies had been cut down[7] by the Cilicians. 12. If the army should be scattered, it would be destroyed by the enemy.[8]

591. R. **λεγ, leg,** *gather.*

λέγ-ω, *gather, count, tell, say*; **λεκ-τό-s, -ή, -ό-ν**, *selected*; **ἀπό-λεκτο-s, -ο-ν**, *selected, picked*; **ἐπί-λεκτο-s, -ο-ν**, *selected*; **λεκ-τέο-s, -ᾱ, -ο-ν**, *to be said*; **λόγ ο-s**, *ὁ, word, saying, reason*; **ἀπο-λογέ-ομαι**, *say in defence*; **σπουδάω λογε-ω** (**σπουδᾰσ-ω**, *see* 583), *carry on a serious conversation*; **ὁμό-λογο-s, -ο-ν** (**ομος**, *one and the same*), *saying the same, agreeing*; **ὁμολογέ-ω**, *agree, confess*; **ὁμολογουμένως**, *adv., confessedly, by common consent*; **συλ-λογο-s**, *ὁ, a gathering, meeting*; **συ-λλογ-ή, -ῆς**, *a gathering, levy*; **λογίζο-μαι**, *take into account, consider*; **ἀ-λογί-στο-s, -ο-ν**, *void of reason, foolish.*

leg-ō, *collect, read*; **leg-iō**, *-ōn-is, f., body of soldiers, legion*; **leg-ūmen**, *-in-is, n., pulse*; **supel-lex**, *-lect-is, f., furniture*; **ē legā-n-s**, *adj., accustomed to select, fastidious, choice*; **līg nu m**, *-i, n., gathered wood, fire wood.*

RAKE, RECKON: *dia*-lect, lexicon, *cata*-logy, *apo*-logy, *bio*-logy, *chromo*-logy, *philo*-logy, *apo*-logue, *cata*-logue, *dia*-logue, *epi*-logue, *homo*-logous, log-*arithm*, logic, *syl*-logism.

---

[1] *Cf.* 256, I. 13.

[2] **οὐδέν**, cognate acc. For the negatives, *cf.* 536, I. 11.

[3] *By what arguments.*

[4] Use the aor. partic.

[5] Use the aor. pass.

[6] *Cf.* I. 20 above.

[7] They said, **κατεκόπησαν**. See 354.

[8] See 223.

LESSON LXXXIII.

Review of Groups. — Reading Lesson.

Review the groups of related words in 551, 561, 561, 573, 580, 586, 591.

Review 140, 142.

Read and translate again 545.

Read and translate the following passage: —

592. Κῦρος.

VIII. Μετὰ ταῦτα, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ὦ Ὀρόντᾱ, τί σε ἠδίκησα; ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐδέν. πάλιν δὲ ὁ Κῦρος ἠρώτᾱ, Οὐκοῦν ὕστερον, ὡς αὐτὸς σὺ ὁμολογεῖς οὐδὲν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἀδικούμενος, κακῶς ἐποίεις τὴν ἐμὴν χώρᾱν; ἔφη ὁ Ὀρόντᾱς. Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἐπὶ τῷ τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος βωμῷ πείσᾱς ἐμὲ πιστὰ πάλιν ἔδωκάς μοι καὶ ἔλαβες παρ' ἐμοῦ; καὶ ταῦθ' ὡμολόγει ὁ Ὀρόντᾱς. Τί οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἀδικηθεὶς ὑπ' ἐμοῦ νῦν τὸ τρίτον ἐπιβουλεύεις μοι; ἐπεὶ δ' εἶπεν ὁ Ὀρόντᾱς ὅτι οὐδὲν ἀδικηθείς, ἠρώτησεν ὁ Κῦρος αὐτόν, Ὁμολογεῖς οὖν περὶ ἐμὲ ἄδικος γεγενῆσθαι; Ὁμολογῶ, ἔφη ὁ Ὀρόντᾱς, ἀνάγκη γάρ ἐστιν. ἐκ τούτου πάλιν ἠρώτησεν ὁ Κῦρος, Ἔτι οὖν ἂν γένοιο τῷ ἐμῷ ἀδελφῷ πολέμιος, ἐμοὶ δὲ φίλος καὶ πιστός; ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο, Οὐδ' εἰ γενοίμην, ὦ Κῦρε, σοί γ' ἄν ποτε ἔτι δόξαιμι.

πρὸς ταῦτα Κῦρος εἶπε τοῖς παροῦσιν, Ὁ μὲν ἀνὴρ τοιαῦτα μὲν πεποίηκε, τοιαῦτα δὲ λέγει· ὑμῶν δὲ σὺ πρῶτος, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἀπόφηναι τὴν γνώμην. Κλέαρχος δὲ εἶπε τάδε· Συμβουλεύω ἐγὼ τὸν ἄνδρα τοῦτον ἐκποδὼν ποιεῖσθαι ὡς τάχιστα, ὡς μηκέτι δέῃ τοῦτον φυλάττεσθαι, ἀλλὰ σχολὴ ᾖ ἡμῖν τοὺς φίλους εὖ ποιεῖν. ταὐτὰ δ' ἔλεγον καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι. μετὰ ταῦτα ἔλαβον τῆς ζώνης τὸν Ὀρόντᾱν ἐπὶ θανάτῳ ἅπαντες· εἶτα δὲ ἐξῆγον αὐτὸν

οἱ τεταγμένοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὴν Ἀρταπάτου σκηνὴν εἰσήχθη τοῦ πιστοτάτου τῶν Κύρου σκηπτούχων, μετὰ ταῦτα οὔτε ζῶντα Ὀρόντᾱν οὔτε τεθνηκότα οὐδεὶς εἶδε πώποτε· τάφος δὲ οὐδεὶς πώποτε αὐτοῦ ἐφάνη.

NOTES.

1. **τί**: cognate acc. — 2. **ὅτι οὐδέν**: *sc.* **ἠδίκησε** from the preceding question. Orontas said, Οὐδὲν ἠδίκησας, *you did me no wrong*. Like *τί* above, *οὐδέν* is a cognate acc. — 4. **ἀδικούμενος**: the participle expresses *concession* (379). — **ἔφη**, *said* "*Yes.*" — 7. **καὶ ταῦτα**, *this also*. — 9. **ὅτι οὐδὲν ἀδικηθείς**: *sc.* **ἐπιβουλεύει αὐτῷ** from the preceding question, and compare **ὅτι οὐδέν** above. — 14. **οὐδέ**, *not even*. — **σοί γε**: the enclitic **γε** emphasizes **σοί**. — 20. **δέῃ**: for the mood, see 278. So **ᾖ** following. — 22. **τῆς ζώνης**, *by the girdle*, gen. of the part laid hold of. — 23. **ἐπὶ θανάτῳ**, *for death, i.e. as a sign that he was condemned*. — 26. **τεθνηκότα**: perf. partic. of *θνῄσκω, die*. — **οὐδείς**: see p. 202 ². — **εἶδε**: third sing. of the second aor. indic. **εἶδον**, *saw*.

Translate the following passage into Greek: —

593. There was in the army a certain Orontas, a Persian, who had already twice warred against Cyrus, but had been reconciled. First, at the orders of the king, he warred with him, holding the acropolis in Sardis; and afterwards he brought the Mysians together and ravaged his territory. Now he plotted against him the third time. Cyrus gave him 1,000 horse, and bade him check the enemy who were burning the forage before them. Orontas, thinking everything is ready for himself, writes a letter to Artaxerxes, saying that he will desert. By chance Cyrus got possession of this letter and arrested Orontas, and summoning some of the Persians and the Greek generals brought him to trial. He at once confessed that he had wronged Cyrus. On this Cyrus asked him, "Are you willing then again to become my friend?" He answered, "Not even if I should become (so), Cyrus, should I ever again seem to you (to be that)." Then those present expressed each his opinion, and all advised Cyrus to put the man out of the way, as a traitor. After that he was led into the tent of Artapates, and nobody ever again saw him alive.

LESSON LXXXIV.

Verbs of the Variable-Vowel or First Class.

594. The present stems of verbs are formed from their themes in seven different ways. We therefore distinguish seven *classes* of verbs.

595. Variable-Vowel or First Class. — Verbs of the First Class form the present stem by adding the variable vowel -ο/ε- to the theme. See 440.

596. This is the most numerous of all the classes. The most of the verbs in this class are *regular*, *i.e.* they present no peculiarities of formation, but they may at the same time be *defective*, *i.e.* they may lack some of the principal parts. See 253 a.

Review 254 with a b, 255 with a b.

597. Give the principal parts of the following vowel verbs of the First Class, all of which are regular and complete: —

βουλεύω, *plan*; θεραπεύω, *serve*; θηρεύω, *hunt*; κινδῡνεύω, *run a risk, dare*; παιδεύω, *educate*; παύω, *make cease*; κωλύω, *hinder*.

ἀπατάω, *deceive*; ἐάω,[1] *permit*; ἐρωτάω, *ask* a question; τολμάω, *venture*.

αἰτέω, *ask for*; ἀκολουθέω, *follow*; ζητέω,[2] *seek*; κατηγορέω,[3] *accuse*; κῑνέω, *move*; λῡπέω, *grieve*; νοέω, *observe*; πολεμέω, *fight*; πονέω, *toil*; στερέω,[2] *rob*; τῑμωρέω, *help, avenge*; χωρέω, *withdraw*; ὠφελέω, *help*.

ἀξιόω, *think fit*; ζημιόω,[2] *fine, punish*.

598. The following are *middle* deponents (255 a): —

δωρέομαι, *present*,	δωρήσομαι,	ἐδωρησάμην,	δεδώρημαι.
θεάομαι, *gaze at, behold*,	θεάσομαι,	ἐθεᾱσάμην,	τεθέᾱμαι.
κτάομαι, *acquire, get*,	κτήσομαι,	ἐκτησάμην,	κέκτημαι.[4]

[1] See p. 83[8]. So ἐάω, ἐάσω, εἴᾱσα, εἴᾱκα, εἴᾱμαι, εἰάθην.

[2] See 121.

[3] Augmented and reduplicated as if a compound verb. See 128.

[4] An exception to 121.

599. The following are *passive* deponents (255 b):—

ἁμιλλάομαι, *contend*,	ἁμιλλήσομαι,	ἠμίλλημαι.	ἠμιλλήθην.
ἐνθῡμέομαι, *reflect*,	ἐνθῡμήσομαι,	ἐντεθῡμημαι,	ἐνεθῡμήθην.
ἡττάομαι, *be inferior*,	ἡττήσομαι,	ἥττημαι,	ἡττήθην.

Review 441 with a b, 442.

600. There are some mute verbs of the First Class which present no peculiarities of formation, *i.e.* are regular. Thus:—

1. ἄρχω, *be first, begin, rule,* mid. *begin*,			
ἄρξω	ἦρξα	ἦργμαι	ἤρχθην
2. βρέχω, *wet*, pass. *get wet*,			
	ἔβρεξα	βέβρεγμαι	ἐβρέχθην
3. ἐλέγχω, *examine, convict, confute*,			
ἐλέγξω	ἤλεγξα	ἐλήλεγμαι [1]	ἠλέγχθην
4. λέγω, *say, speak, tell, relate*,			
λέξω	ἔλεξα	λέλεγμαι [2]	ἐλέχθην
5. σπεύδω, *hasten*,			
σπεύσω	ἔσπευσα		
6. δέχομαι, *receive*,			
δέξομαι	ἐδεξάμην	δέδεγμαι	ἐδέχθην [3]
7. εὔχομαι, *pray*,			
εὔξομαι	εὐξάμην [4]		
8. φθέγγομαι, *make a sound, shout*,			
φθέγξομαι	ἐφθεγξάμην	ἔφθεγμαι [5]	

601. EXERCISES.

I. 1. καὶ οὐδεὶς ἔτι οὐδαμοῦ [6] ἐφθέγξατο. 2. τὰ δένδρα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔκοπτον, σπεύδοντες ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου ὡς τάχιστα πορευθῆναι. 3. ἦν [7] δὲ καὶ οὗτος καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης τῶν ἀμφὶ

[1] See p. 209 [1] and 550 a.

[2] But the compound διαλέγομαι, *converse*, has the perf. διείλεγμαι. See p. 235 [4].

[3] With *passive* meaning, *was received*.

[4] In some verbs which begin with εὐ the augment may be omitted. See 76 end.

[5] See 550 a.

[6] *Cf.* 536, I. 11.

[7] With several subjects connected by *and*, the verb is regularly in the plur. But it may agree with one of these subjects, generally the nearest or most important, and be understood with the rest.

Μίλητον στρατευομένων. 4. καὶ συνεκάλεσεν εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν τῶν ἀρίστων Περσῶν ἑπτὰ καὶ Κλέαρχον. 5. ἀλλ' εὖ γε λέγεις, ὦ νεᾱνίσκε, καὶ ποιήσω ταῦτα. 6. ἐκτήσατο ἱκανὰ ὥστε καὶ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ οἰκείους ὠφελῆσαι.[1] 7. Ξενοφῶν δὲ τοῖς στρατιώταις παρεκελεύετο· Ἄνδρες, νῦν ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα νομίζετε ἁμιλλᾶσθαι. 8. Πρόξενον καλέσᾱς ἐρωτᾷ εἰ πάντες ἐπορεύθησαν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. 9. καὶ Σεύθῃ ἐδωρήσατο φιάλην τε ἀργυρᾶν καὶ τάπιδα ἀξίᾱν δέκα μνῶν.[2] 10. θεᾶσασθε οἵᾱ ἡ κατάστασις ἡμῖν ἔσται τῆς στρατιᾶς. 11. κτήσομαι ἐκ τούτων ὄνομα μέγα καὶ δύναμιν μεγάλην καὶ χρήματα πολλά. 12. τῶν μὲν γὰρ νῑκώντων τὸ ἄρχειν,[3] τῶν δὲ ἡττωμένων τὸ δουλεύειν ἐστίν. 13. ἀγορὰν δὲ παρεῖχον τῷ στρατεύματι, καὶ ἐδέξαντο τοὺς Ἕλληνας. 14. μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο τὴν θυσίᾱν ἣν εὔξαντο παρεσκευάζοντο. 15. ἦν δὲ Λακεδαιμονίους τε τοὺς παρόντας τῆς ἐξαπάτης[4] τῑμωρησώμεθα[5] καὶ τὴν πόλιν διαρπάσωμεν, ἐνθῡμεῖσθε ἃ ἔσται ἐντεῦθεν. 16. καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτατοι τῶν στρατηγῶν Ξενοφῶντα ᾑτιῶντο, ὅτι ἐδίωκεν ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος καὶ αὐτός τε ἐκινδύνευε καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους οὐδὲν[6] ἔβλαπτεν.

II. 1. But Clearchus hastened all the more.[7] 2. Cyrus took care of his friends. 3. He received the gifts with pleasure. 4. Another presented a horse to Seuthes. 5. And the enemy began to use their bows. 6. The soldiers being in high[8] hopes prayed that Cyrus might have success.[9] 7. Reflect that we are now in great difficulties. 8. The enemy were contending for the height. 9. Nobody got wet to[10] the knee. 10. Let him say what the soldiers[11] shall have. 11. They were urgent to

---

[1] *Cf.* 553, I. 19.
[2] *Cf.* 274, I. 15.
[3] *Cf.* 454, I. 9.
[4] *Cf.* 311, I. 10.
[5] The mid. of τῑμωρέω means *take vengeance on, punish.*
[6] See p. 122 [1].
[7] *much* (πολύ) *more.*
[8] Use *μέγας.*
[9] Use the aor. inf.
[10] πρός with acc.
[11] *Cf.* 92, I. 10.

proceed to Greece with all speed.[1] 12. If they are convicted, they shall be punished[2] as[3] being ill-disposed to the Greeks.

602. R. 2 **δακ, dac,** *take.*

δάκ-τ-υλο-ς, *ὁ* (formed on a stem **δακ-τ-ο-**), *that which grasps, finger, toe;* **δακτύλ-ιο-ς,** *ὁ, finger-ring;* **δέχ-ο-μαι,** Ionic **δέκ-ο-μαι,** *take, receive;* **δοκ-ό-ς,** *ὁ, sustaining beam, joist;* **δωρο-δόκο-ς, -ο-ν** (**δῶρον,** *gift*), *taking presents* or *bribes;* **δωροδοκέ-ω,** *take bribes;* **δοχ-ή, -ῆς,** *receptacle;* **διά-δοχο-ς,** *ὁ, one who takes in turn, successor.* — **δεξ-ιό-ς, -ά, -ό-ν** (**δεκ** + **σ**), *on the right hand, right* (since the *right* hand was often not used in *taking*); **δεξιᾶ, -ᾶς** (*sc.* **χείρ**), *right hand;* **δεξιό-ο-μαι,** *take by the right hand, welcome;* **ὑπερ-δέξιο-ς, -ᾱ, -ο-ν,** *above on the right, above.*

dig-itu s, *-ī, m., finger;* **dex-ter,** *adj., on the right, handy, skilful.*

TOE, TONGS; **dactyl, date** (*the fruit*), *pan*-**dect. dock**-*yard. sync*-**doche.**

LESSON LXXXV.

Verbs of the First Class (continued).

603. In stating the principal parts of a verb (253) the second tenses, if they occur, are given either in place of the corresponding first tenses, or in addition to them if both occur.[4]

604. Some verbs of the First Class, chiefly mute verbs, form second tenses. Thus: —

1. **ἄγω,** *lead, bring,*				
ἄξω	**ἤγαγον**[5]	**ἦχα**	**ἦγμαι**	**ἤχθην**
2. **ἀκούω,** *hear,*				
ἀκούσομαι[6]	**ἤκουσα**	**ἀκήκοα**[7]		**ἠκούσθην**[8]
3. **γράφω,** *write,*				
γράψω	**ἔγραψα**	**γέγραφα**	**γέγραμμαι**	**ἐγράφην**

[1] *Cf.* I. 2 above.
[2] Use **τῑμωρέω.**
[3] **ὡς.**
[4] The meanings and principal parts of all the verbs that follow should be committed to memory.
[5] See 491 a.
[6] See p. 159[2].
[7] See p. 209[1]. The full form would be **ακηκοα,** but **α** is dropped between two vowels. See 492 a.
[8] See 441 b.

4. διώκω, *pursue, give chase,*				
διώξω	ἐδίωξα	δεδίωχα		ἐδιώχθην
5. ἕπομαι, *follow, accompany,*				
ἕψομαι	ἑσπόμην [1]			
6. ἔχω, *have, hold,*				
ἕξω and σχήσω [2]	ἔσχον	ἔσχηκα	ἔσχημαι	
7. λέγω,[3] *gather,*				
	ἔλεξα	εἴλοχα [4]	εἴλεγμαι	ἐλέγην and ἐλέχθην
8. οἴγω,[5] *open,*				
οἴξω	ἔῳξα [6]	ἔῳγα and ἔῳχα	ἔῳγμαι	ἐῴχθην
9. πέμπω, *send,*				
πέμψω	ἔπεμψα	πέπομφα	πέπεμμαι	ἐπέμφθην
10. στρέφω, *turn, twist,*				
στρέψω	ἔστρεψα	ἔστροφα	ἔστραμμαι [7]	ἐστράφην and ἐστρέφθην [8]
11. τρέπω, *turn, bend, divert,*				
τρέψω	ἔτρεψα and ἔτραπον [9]	τέτροφα	τέτραμμαι [7]	ἐτράπην [10] and ἐτρέφθην
12. τρέφω, *nourish, support,*				
θρέψω [11]	ἔθρεψα		τέθραμμαι [7]	ἐτράφην and ἐθρέφθην [8]
13. τρίβω,[12] *rub,*				
τρίψω	ἔτρῑψα	τέτριφα	τέτρῑμμαι	ἐτρίβην and ἐτρίφθην [13]

[1] The root of the word is *σεπ.* *ἕπομαι* is for *σεπομαι*; *ἑσπόμην* for *εσεπομην*, the rough breathing coming in irregularly from the present. For the imperf. *εἱπόμην*, see p. 83 [8].

[2] See 491 c.

[3] Used only in compounds in Attic.

[4] In some verbs whose theme begins with a liquid the reduplication is irregularly *ει-*.

[5] Used only in compounds in Attic prose, *ἀνοίγω*, being the common form.

[6] *οἴγω* irregularly has both the syllabic and the temporal augment (76). The reduplication assumes the same form (122).

[7] See 552 a.

[8] Rare in Attic prose.

[9] Used in Attic prose only in the mid., in the intrans. sense, *turn oneself, turn.*

[10] See p. 226 [2].

[11] See p. 162 [1].

[12] The theme is *τρῑβ-* in some of the tenses, in others *τριβ-*.

[13] Less frequent than *ἐτρίβην*.

605. Some verbs of the First Class add ε to the theme in some of the tenses. Thus: —

1. **βούλομαι**, *wish, will*,				
βουλήσομαι			**βεβούλημαι**	**ἐβουλήθην**
2. **δέω**, *need*, mid. *need, desire, request*,				
δεήσω	**ἐδέησα**	**δεδέηκα**	**δεδέημαι**	**ἐδεήθην**
3. **δοκέω**, *seem, seem best, think*,				
δόξω	**ἔδοξα**		**δέδογμαι**	**ἐδόχθην**
4. **ἐθέλω**, *wish, desire*,				
ἐθελήσω	**ἠθέλησα**	**ἠθέληκα**		
5. **μάχομαι**, *fight*,				
μαχοῦμαι[1]	**ἐμαχεσάμην**		**μεμάχημαι**	
6. **μένω**, *remain*,				
μενῶ	**ἔμεινα**	**μεμένηκα**		
7. **νέμω**, *distribute*,				
νεμῶ	**ἔνειμα**	**νενέμηκα**	**νενέμημαι**	**ἐνεμήθην**
8. **οἶομαι**, *think, believe*,				
οἰήσομαι				**ᾠήθην**
9. **ὠθέω**, *push*,				
ὤσω	**ἔωσα**[2]		**ἔωσμαι**	**ἐώσθην**

606. Two important verbs of the First Class reduplicate the theme in the present by prefixing the initial consonant with ι. Thus: —

1. **γίγνομαι**,[3] *become*,			
γενήσομαι	**ἐγενόμην**	**γέγονα**	**γεγένημαι**
2. **πίπτω**,[4] *fall*,			
πεσοῦμαι	**ἔπεσον**	**πέπτωκα**	

607. EXERCISES.

I. 1. *ἀκούσᾶς ταῦτα ὁ Κλέαρχος ἐν ἑαυτῷ ἐγένετο.*[5] 2. *Ξενοφῶν μέντοι ἐβούλετο κοινῇ μετ' αὐτῶν τὴν πορείᾶν ποιεῖσθαι, νομίζων οὕτως ἀσφαλέστερον εἶναι.*[6] 3. *ταῦτ'*

[1] See p. 191[6].
[2] *ὠθέω* takes the syllabic augment. See p. 83[8].
[3] See 491 b.
[4] See 491 d. In *πέπτωκα* the theme *πετ-* (*πτε-*) has the form *πτο-*.
[5] *I.e. came to his senses.*
[6] See 354.

ἀκούσαντες οἱ στρατιῶται ὠργίζοντο ἰσχῡρῶς τῷ Κλεάρχῳ. 4. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνεγένοντο ἀλλήλοις, ἔδοξε κατὰ τὰς κώμας ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι[1] τὰς τάξεις σκηνοῦν. 5. κἀγὼ[2] δέ, εἰ ὑμεῖς ἐθέλετε ἐξορμᾶν ἐπὶ ταῦτα, ἕπεσθαι ὑμῖν βούλομαι. 6. ὁ δὲ Σῑλᾶνὸς δέδοικε μὴ γένηται[3] ταῦτα καὶ καταμείνῃ ἡ στρατιά. 7. ἐφείποντο δὲ τῶν πολεμίων συνειλεγμένοι τινές. 8. κατασχίσομεν τὰς πύλᾱς, εἰ μὴ ἑκόντες ἀνοίξετε. 9. ἐγὼ δ' ἐξετράφην ὀρφανὸς παρὰ Μηδόκῳ τῷ νῦν βασιλεῖ. 10. ἐνταῦθα ἔδοξε κράτιστον εἶναι τοὺς ἑπομένους πολεμίους φοβῆσαι. 11. ἐπίστευον μὲν Κύρῳ αἱ πόλεις ἐπιτρεπόμεναι, ἐπίστευον δ' οἱ ἄνδρες. 12. ὁ δὲ οὐκ ἐπὶ ῥᾳθῡμίᾳ ἐτράπετο, ἀλλ' ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων συλλέξᾱς στράτευμα ἐπολέμει τοῖς Θρᾳξί. 13. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται συλλεγέντες βουλεύονται εἰ κατὰ γῆν χρὴ πορευθῆναι. 14. σὺ οὖν πρὸς θεῶν συμβούλευσον ἡμῖν ὅ τι σοι δοκεῖ κάλλιστον καὶ ἄριστον εἶναι. 15. καὶ γὰρ δὴ ἕως πόλεμος ἦν τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις πρὸς τοὺς Ἀθηναίους, παρέμενεν. 16. ἢν γὰρ ψηφίσωνται ἕπεσθαι, ὑμεῖς δόξετε αἴτιοι εἶναι. 17. διαπέμπων ἐκέλευε τοὺς φίλους τοῖς τὰ ἑαυτῶν σώματα ἄγουσιν[4] ἵπποις ἐμβάλλειν τοῦτον τὸν χῑλόν. 18. καὶ ἔδει τοὺς ἱππέᾱς ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ τοὺς ἵππους ἀναστρέψαντας πάλιν ἄνω πρὸς τὸν βωμὸν ἄγειν. 19. ἀκούσᾱς ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν, καταπηδήσᾱς ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου, ὠθεῖται[5] Σωτηρίδᾱν ἐκ τῆς τάξεως.

II. 1. Cyrus thinks Abrocomas will do[6] this. 2. And he endeavoured to restore the exiles.[7] 3. Proxenus arrived[8] with fifteen hundred hoplites. 4. The other (things) he has divided up among the generals and captains. 5. Many days were wasted here. 6. Well,[10] if you like, stay in command of[11] the army. 7. It seemed best, therefore, to Clearchus to meet

---

[1] See 354.
[2] *I.e.* καὶ ἐγώ. See p. 55[4].
[3] *Cf.* 281, I. 1.
[4] See 369.
[5] Middle. See 197.
[6] See 354, 350.
[7] *those that had been exiled* (371). Use the perf.
[8] *Cf.* 454, I. 4.
[9] See p. 25[2].
[10] ἀλλά.
[11] *in command of*, ἐπί with dat.

Tissaphernes. 8. The Greeks pursued with might and main.[1] 9. To me, then, it did not seem best to bring the soldiers together. 10. They encamped each time a parasang[2] apart.[3] 11. But the soldiers did not open the gates. 12. And he inscribed upon[4] the offering both his own name and that of Proxenus. 13. But they were supported by the cattle which they had.

608. R. **σεχ**, *hold, have.*

ἔχ-ω (for σεχ-ω), *have, hold*; **ἴ-σχ-ω** (for σ.-σεχ-ω), *hold, hold fast*; **ὑπ-ισχ-νέ-ο-μαι**, *hold oneself under, engage, promise*; **πλεο-νε-τη-ς**, **-ου** (πλέων, *more*), *one who has or claims more than he ought*; **πλεωτεκτέ-ω**, *claim too large a part, get the better*; **ἐχ-υρό-ς**, **-ά**, **-ό-ν**, *tenable, strong*; **ἐν-έχυρο-ν**, **τό**, *that which holds one fast, pledge*; **ὀχ-ή**, **-ῆς**, *that which supports, nourishment*; **εὐ-ωχε-ω**, *nourish well, entertain*; **εὐωχ-ί-ᾱ**, **-ᾱς**, *feast*; **ὀχ-υρό-ς**, **-ά**, **-ό-ν**, *tenable, strong*; **ἡνι-οχ-ο-ς**, **ὁ** (**ἡνία**, *reins*), *one who holds the reins, driver*; **σκηπτοῦχο-ς**, **ὁ** (**σκῆπτο-ν**, **σκῆπ-τρο-ν**, *staff, sceptre*), *sceptre-bearer*; **ὑπ-οχο-ς**, **-ο-ν**, *under control, subject to*; **σχε-δό-ν**, adv., *holding on, nearly*; **σχέ-τλ-ιο-ς**, **-α**, **-ο-ν**, *holding out, unflinching, cruel*; **σχῆ-μα**, **-ατ-ος**, **τό**, *way of holding oneself, form*; **σχο-λή**, **-ῆς**, *a holding up, leisure*; **σχολα-ῖο-ς**, **-ά**, **-ό-ν**, *leisurely, slow*; **σχολαίως**, adv., *slowly*; **σχολάζω**, *be at leisure*; **ἀ-σχολο-ς**, **-ο-ν**, *without leisure, busy*; **ἀσχολ-ί-ᾱ**, **-ᾱς**, *lack of leisure, business.*

SAN.; *ep-*och, *cun-*uch, hectic, hector, scheme, school, scholastic, scholiast.

LESSON LXXXVI.

Verbs of the Strong-Vowel or Second Class.

Review 492, 493, 503, 521 c, 552, 576.

609. The following verbs of the Second Class have themes ending in a mute: —

1. **λείπω** (λιπ-), *leave,*

λείψω	**ἔλιπον**	**λέλοιπα**	**λέλειμμαι**	**ἐλείφθην**

[1] *with might and main*, κατὰ κράτος.

[2] *Cf.* 373, I. 11.

[3] *being distant from* (ἀπέχω) *one another.*

[4] **ἐπί** with dat.

2. **πείθω** (πιθ-), *persuade*, mid. *obey*,

πείσω	**ἔπεισα**	**πέπεικα** and **πέποιθα**[1]	**πέπεισμαι**	**ἐπείσθην**

3. **τήκω** (τακ-), *melt*,

τήξω	**ἔτηξα**	**τέτηκα**[2]	**ἐτάκην** and **ἐτήχθην**[3]

4. **φείδομαι** (φιδ-), *spare*,

φείσομαι	**ἐφεισάμην**

5. **φεύγω** (φυγ-), *flee*,

φεύξομαι and **φευξοῦμαι**[4]	**ἔφυγον**	**πέφευγα**

610. The following verbs of the Second Class have themes ending in υ: —

1. **θέω** (θυ-), *run*,

θεύσομαι[5]

2. **νέω** (νυ-), *swim*,

νευσοῦμαι[4]	**ἔνευσα**	**νένευκα**

3. **πλέω** (πλυ-), *sail*,

πλεύσομαι and **πλευσοῦμαι**[4]	**ἔπλευσα**	**πέπλευκα**	**πέπλευσμαι**[6]

4. **πνέω** (πνυ-), *breathe*,

πνευσοῦμαι[4]	**ἔπνευσα**	**πέπνευκα**

5. **ῥέω** (ῥυ-), *flow*,

ῥεύσομαι[5]	**ἐρρύηκα**[7]	**ἐρρύην**[8]

6. **χέω** (χυ-), *pour*,

χέω[9]	**ἔχεα**	**κέχυκα**[10]	**κέχυμαι**	**ἐχύθην**

[1] Intrans., with the force of a pres., *trust*.

[2] See p. 196[1].

[3] Rare in Attic prose.

[4] See p. 174[1] and p. 159[2].

[5] See p. 159[2].

[6] See 441 b.

[7] The short form of the theme is used against the rule (503), but is increased by ε, as in some verbs of the first class (605).

[8] Used in the act. sense, *flowed*.

[9] For χευσω. σ is irregularly dropped, and υ is then omitted between the two vowels (492 a). The fut., therefore, has the same form as the pres. In the same manner the aor. ἔχεα stands for εχευσα.

[10] In the last three principal parts the short form of the theme is used against the rule (503, 552, 576).

611. EXERCISES.

I. 1. ἀλλ' ἔφευγον διὰ τοῦ αὐτῶν στρατοπέδου εἰς τὸν σταθμὸν ἔνθεν ὥρμηντο. 2. καὶ πλοῖα πλεῖ ἐν ταύταις ταῖς διώρυξι σῖταγωγά. 3. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἄβατα ἦν τὰ χωρία, καταλιπὼν τὸν ἵππον ἔσπευδε πεζῇ. 4. οὐδὲ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἐδίωκον, ὑποφειδόμενοι. 5. οἱ δ' Ἕλληνες στρέψαντες ἔφευγον διὰ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ὅτι τάχιστα. 6. καὶ πάνυ ἄκρᾶτος ἔσται ὁ οἶνος, ἐὰν μή τις ὕδωρ ἐπιχέῃ.[1] 7. διὰ τὰς τοιαύτας οὖν ἀνάγκᾶς ὑπελείποντό τινες τῶν στρατιωτῶν. 8. ἡμῖν[2] δὲ ὡς μόνοις πειθομένοις χρήσεται καὶ εἰς φρούρια καὶ εἰς λοχᾱγίᾱς. 9. αὐτοὶ δὲ λιπόντες τὰς τάξεις προθέοντες[1] ἁρπάζειν ἤθελον. 10. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤρξαντο ἀποχωρεῖν, ἐπεξέθεον ἔνδοθεν πολλοὶ γέρρα καὶ λόγχᾱς ἔχοντες. 11. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι ἀντιπαραθέοντες οἱ μὲν[3] ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιόν, οἱ δὲ ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον, διεσπάσθησαν. 12. ταύτην τὴν πόλιν ἐκλιπόντες οἱ ἐνοικοῦντες φεύξονται εἰς χωρίον ὀχυρὸν ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη. 13. ἂν δὲ πλέητε,[1] ἔστιν[4] ἐνθένδε εἰς Σινώπην παραπλεῦσαι. 14. εὐθὺς οὖν ὁ Ξενοφῶν αὐτός τε ἔσπενδε καὶ τοῖς νεᾱνίσκοις[5] ἐγχεῖν οἶνον ἐκέλευεν. 15. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν διαπλεύσᾱς ἀφικνεῖται ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα. 16. ἀλλ' ἐάν που οἱ πολέμιοι καταλίπωσιν αὐτοῖς τὰ ἐπιτηδεια, καὶ ἡμεῖς ἐνταῦθα πορευσόμεθα. 17. μόνοι δὲ καταλελειμμένοι ἦσαν, οὐδὲ[6] ἱππέᾱ οὐδένα[6] σύμμαχον ἔχοντες. 18. ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἡμῖν πράγματα παρεῖχον, ἐνηδρεύσαμεν, ὅπερ[7] ἡμᾶς καὶ ἀναπνεῦσαι ἐποίησεν. 19. ἔχοντες τὰ ἐγχειρίδια γυμνοὶ ὡς νευσόμενοι[8] τὸν ποταμὸν διεβαινομεν.

II. 1. The barbarians will abandon the hill without fighting. 2. The horsemen ran down into the plain. 3. But Aristonymus will run past them. 4. Many of the barbarians have

[1] See p. 107 [2].
[2] *Cf.* 256, I. 4.
[3] *Cf.* 328, I. 17. *οἱ μέν* and *οἱ δέ* are in apposition with *πολεμιοι*.
[4] See 188 a.
[5] *Cf.* 106, I. 10. The subj. of *ἐγχεῖν*, *αὐτούς*, is to be supplied.
[6] *Cf.* 536, I. 11.
[7] *which*, *i.e.* the making of an ambush.
[8] See 379.

escaped from the neighbouring villages. 5. The horsemen have abandoned the hill. 6. Many forsook him. 7. Through the middle of the city flowed a river, Cydnus by name. 8. Anaxibius sailed round to the acropolis. 9. Xenias and Pasion have deserted us. 10. The third day's march proved hard, and a north wind blew in their faces. 11. They will abandon[1] their houses and will flee with (their) wives and children to the mountains.

612. R. **γεν, gen,** *beget.*

γί-γν-ο-μαι (for *γι-γεν-ο-μαι*), *be born, become;* **γέν-να, -ης,** *descent;* *γεννα-ῖο-ς, -ᾶ, -ο-ν, befitting one's birth, noble;* *γενναιό-τη-ς, -ητ-ος, ἡ, nobility;* **γέν-ος, -ε-ος.** *τό, family, race;* *συγ-γενής, -ές, of the same race;* *συγ-γένε-ια, -ᾶς, kinship;* *γενε-ά, -ᾶς, birth;* **γόν-ο-ς,** *ὁ, that which is begotten, offspring;* *ἔκ-γονο-ς, -ο-ν, born of;* *πρό-γονο-ς, ὁ, forefather;* **γον-εύ-ς,** *-έ-ως, ὁ, begetter,* plur. *parents;* **γυν-ή,** *γυν-αικ-ός, ἡ, woman* (originally 'mother').

gī-gn-ō, *produce, bear;* **gen-iu-s,** *-ī, m., tutelar deity;* **in-gen-uu-s,** *adj., freeborn, noble;* **gēn-s,** *gen-ti-s, f., race, nation;* **gon-e-r,** *-erī, m., son-in-law;* **gen-us,** *-er-is, n., birth, origin, kind;* **gnā-sc-o-r, nā-sc-o-r,** *be born;* **nā-tūra,** *-ae, f., birth, nature.*

CHICK, CHILD, CHIT, COLT, KID, KITH, KIN, KIND, KING; *endo-***gen,** *hydro-***gen, genesis,** *hetero-***geneous, genea-***logy*, *cosmo-***gony,** *theo-***gony,** *miso-***gynist.**

LESSON LXXXVII.

Verbs of the Tau or Third Class.

Review 460, 461.

613. The following are important verbs of the Third Class: —

ἅπτω (*ἁφ-*), *fasten, kindle,* mid. *touch,*				
ἅψω	**ἧψα**		**ἧμμαι**	**ἥφθην**
βάπτω (*βαφ-*), *dip, dip in,*				
βάψω	**ἔβαψα**		**βέβαμμαι**	**ἐβάφην**
βλάπτω (*βλαβ-*), *injure,*				
βλάψω	**ἔβλαψα**	**βέβλαφα**	**βέβλαμμαι**	**ἐβλάφθην** and **ἐβλάβην**

[1] Use the aor. partic.

4. **θάπτω** (ταφ-),[1] *bury*,				
θάψω	**ἔθαψα**		**τέθαμμαι**	**ἐτάφην**
5. **καλύπτω** (καλυβ-), *cover*,				
καλύψω	**ἐκάλυψα**		**κεκάλυμμαι**	**ἐκαλύφθην**
6. **κλέπτω** (κλεπ-), *steal*,				
κλέψω	**ἔκλεψα**	**κέκλοφα**	**κέκλεμμαι**	**ἐκλάπην**
7. **κόπτω** (κοπ-), *cut*,				
κόψω	**ἔκοψα**	**κέκοφα**	**κέκομμαι**	**ἐκόπην**
8. **κρύπτω** (κρυφ-), *hide*,				
κρύψω	**ἔκρυψα**		**κέκρυμμαι**	**ἐκρύφθην**
9. **ῥίπτω** (ῥιφ-),[2] *throw*,				
ῥίψω	**ἔρρῑψα**	**ἔρρῑφα**	**ἔρρῑμμαι**	**ἐρρῑφθην** and **ἐρρίφην**
10. **σκάπτω** (σκαφ-), *dig*,				
σκάψω	**ἔσκαψα**	**ἔσκαφα**	**ἔσκαμμαι**	**ἐσκάφην**
11. **σκέπτομαι** (σκεπ-), *view, consider*,				
σκέψομαι	**ἐσκεψάμην**		**ἔσκεμμαι**	

614. EXERCISES.

I. 1. *ἐπεὶ δὲ συνέλεξαν ξύλα ἱκανά, ἐνῆψαν.* 2. *οἱ μὲν Ἕλληνες ἔβαψαν ξίφος, οἱ δὲ Βάρβαροι λόγχην.* 3. *ἀνεπαύοντο ἐπὶ τῆς χιόνος οἱ στρατιῶται ἐγκεκαλυμμένοι.* 4. *ἥλιον δὲ νεφέλη προκαλύψασα ἠφάνισε, μέχρι ἐξέλιπον τὴν πόλιν οἱ ἄνθρωποι.* 5. *ἀλλ' ἐπειρᾶτο χρῆσθαι τοῖς τῶν ἀποκρυπτομένων*[3] *χρήμασιν.* 6. *ἐνταῦθ' ἐπιπίπτει χιὼν ἄπλετος, ὥστε ἀπέκρυψε καὶ τὰ ὅπλα καὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους.* 7. *ἀλλ' ἐποιοῦντο γεφύρᾱς ἐκ τῶν φοινίκων οἳ ἦσαν ἐκπεπτωκότες, τοὺς δὲ καὶ ἐξέκοπτον.* 8. *αἱ γὰρ γυναῖκες, ῥίπτουσαι κατὰ τῶν πετρῶν τὰ παιδία, εἶτα καὶ ἑαυτὰς ἐπικατέρριπτον, καὶ οἱ ἄνδρες ὡσαύτως.* 9. *ἐξαπίνης γὰρ ἀνέλαμψεν οἰκίᾱ ἐνημμένη τῶν ἐν δεξιᾷ.*[4] 10. *ὑμᾶς γὰρ ἔγωγε, ὦ Χειρίσοφε, ἀκούω τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους*[5] *εὐθὺς ἐκ παίδων*[6]

[1] See p. 166[3].

[2] The theme is lengthened to *ῥιφ-* in all of the systems except the second pass. *Cf.* *τρίβω*, 604, 13.

[3] Middle (197).

[4] *Sc.* *οἰκιῶν.*

[5] In apposition (p. 25[3]) with *ὑμᾶς.*

[6] *from boyhood.*

κλέπτειν[1] μελετᾶν.[2] 11. καὶ τῶν νεκρῶν τοὺς πλείστους ἔνθαπερ ἔπεσον ἑκάστους ἔθαψαν. 12. σκέψασθε δ' εἰ οὐ τοῦτο καὶ μωρότατόν ἐστιν. 13. κἀγὼ ὑμᾶς τοὺς Ἀθηναίους[3] ἀκούω δεινοὺς εἶναι[2] κλέπτειν[4] τὰ δημόσια. 14. ἄγετε δὴ πρὸς θεῶν τὰ ἐμὰ[5] σκέψασθε ὡς ἔχει.[6] 15. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ Χειρίσοφος πέμπει τῶν ἐκ τῆς κώμης,[7] σκεψομένους πῶς ἔχουσιν οἱ τελευταῖοι. 16. τὰ δὲ γέρρα οἱ Ἕλληνες ταῖς μαχαίραις κόπτοντες ἀχρεῖα ἐποίουν. 17. καὶ ἐκεῖ κατασκεψάμενος τὴν ἀγορὰν ἀφιππεύει ἐπὶ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν διὰ τοῦ Μένωνος στρατεύματος. 18. εἰ γάρ τινα ἀλλήλοις μάχην συνάψετε, νομίζετε ἐν τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἐμέ τε κατακεκόψεσθαι καὶ ὑμᾶς οὐ πολὺ ἐμοῦ ὕστερον. 19. ἢν οὖν αὐτῶν ἐπισκεψώμεθα τίνες πέπᾶνται σφενδόνᾶς, ἴσως τινὲς φανοῦνται ἱκανοὶ ἡμᾶς ὠφελεῖν.

II. 1. But the soldiers will slaughter the oxen. 2. *I* will consider what we must answer. 3. The Greeks had cut down all the trees. 4. He purposed to bury the dead. 5. The water did not touch the hay.[8] 6. He gave orders to set on fire the houses on the left also. 7. But he himself stole the property that we earned by hard work. 8. They told us what had happened,[9] and bade (us) bury the dead. 9. We must[10] either beat off the enemy or be separated[11] from the other Greeks. 10. For they hurled great timbers from above, so that it was difficult to remain. 11. After the (exchange of) pledges, straightway the Macrones helped in cutting down the trees. 12. They kept throwing[12] stones into the river, but[13] did the Greeks no[14] harm.

---

[1] See 355.
[2] See 354.
[3] *Cf.* 10 above.
[4] *Cf.* 572, I. 8.
[5] *Cf.* 482, I. 14.
[6] *how (i.e. in what state) they are. Cf.* 305, I. 2.
[7] *Sc.* τινάς.
[8] Verbs signifying to *touch* are followed by the gen.
[9] *what had happened,* τὰ γενόμενα.
[10] Use ἀνάγκη.
[11] Use the *pf.* infin., and *cf.* 553, I. 19.
[12] *kept throwing,* use the impf., to express continuance, and *cf.* I. 3 above.
[13] Use οὐδέ.
[14] *Cf.* 601, I. 16.

615. R. **βολ**, **uol**, *will, wish.*

βούλ-ο-μαι, *will, wish;* **βουλ-ή**, **-ῆς**, *will, plan, consultation;* **ἐπι-βουλή**, **-ῆς**, *a planning against, plot;* **συμ-βουλή**, **-ῆς**, *a planning together, advice;* **σύμ-βουλ-ο-ς**, **ὁ**, *adviser;* **βουλεύ-ω**, *plan;* **βελ-τ-ίων**, **-ον**, gen. **-ον-ος** (stem **βελ-τ-ο-**), comp., *better* ('more desired'); **βέλ-τ-ιστο-ς**, **-η**, **-ο-ν**, sup., *best.*

uol-ō, *will, wish;* **uol-un-tā-s**, *-ātis, f., will, choice;* **nōlō** (*nōn uolō*), *be unwilling;* **mālō** (*magis uolō*), *prefer.*

WILL, WELL, WEAL, WEALTH, WILD.

LESSON LXXXVIII.

Verbs of the Iota or Fourth Class.

Review 464, 465, 466, 474, 475, 476, 477, 478.

616. The verbs of this class are very numerous.

617. The following verbs have themes ending in a palatal: —

1. **ἀλλάττω** (*αλλαγ-*), *change,*				
ἀλλάξω	**ἤλλαξα**	**ἤλλαχα**	**ἤλλαγμαι**	**ἠλλάχθην** and **ἠλλάγην**
2. **κηρύττω** (*κηρῦκ-*), *proclaim,*				
κηρύξω	**ἐκήρῡξα**	**κεκήρῡχα**	**κεκήρῡγμαι**	**ἐκηρυχθην**
3. **κράζω** (*κραγ-*), *cry out,*				
	ἔκραγον	**κέκρᾱγα**[1]		
4. **ὀρύττω** (*ορυχ-*), *dig,*				
ὀρύξω	**ὤρυξα**	**ὀρώρυχα**[2]	**ὀρώρυγμαι**	**ὠρύχθην**
5. **πλήττω** (*πληγ-*), *smite,*				
πλήξω	**ἔπληξα**	**πέπληγα**	**πέπληγμαι**	**ἐπλήγην**[3]
6. **πράττω** (*πρᾱγ-*), *do, act,*				
πράξω	**ἔπρᾱξα**	**πέπρᾱγα**[4] and **πέπρᾱχα**	**πέπρᾱγμαι**	**ἐπράχθην**
7. **ταράττω** (*ταραχ-*), *disturb,*				
ταράξω	**ἐτάραξα**		**τετάραγμαι**	**ἐταράχθην**
8. **τάττω** (*ταγ-*), *arrange,*				
τάξω	**ἔταξα**	**τέταχα**	**τέταγμαι**	**ἐτάχθην**
9. **φυλάττω** (*φυλακ-*), *guard,*				
φυλάξω	**ἐφύλαξα**	**πεφύλαχα**	**πεφύλαγμαι**	**ἐφυλάχθην**

[1] With the force of the present.
[2] See p. 209[1].
[3] See p. 227[1].
[4] Generally intrans., *have fared.*

618. The following verbs have themes ending in a lingual:—

1. ἀθροίζω (*αθροιδ-*), *collect*,

ἀθροίσω	ἤθροισα	ἤθροικα	ἤθροισμαι	ἠθροίσθην

2. ἁρπάζω (*ἁρπαδ-*), *plunder*,

ἁρπάσω	ἥρπασα	ἥρπακα	ἥρπασμαι	ἡρπάσθην

3. βιάζομαι (*βιαδ-*), *force*,

βιάσομαι	ἐβιασάμην		βεβίασμαι	

4. ἐργάζομαι (*εργαδ-*), *work*,

ἐργάσομαι	εἰργασάμην[1]		εἴργασμαι	

5. θαυμάζω (*θαυμαδ-*), *admire*,

θαυμάσομαι[2]	ἐθαύμασα	τεθαύμακα		ἐθαυμάσθην

6. νομίζω (*νομιδ-*), *think*,

νομιῶ[3]	ἐνόμισα	νενόμικα	νενόμισμαι	ἐνομίσθην

7. πορίζω (*ποριδ-*), *furnish*,

ποριῶ[3]	ἐπόρισα	πεπόρικα	πεπόρισμαι	ἐπορίσθην

8. σῴζω[4] (*σωδ-*), *save*,

σώσω	ἔσωσα	σέσωκα	σέσωμαι[5] and σέσωσμαι	ἐσώθην

619. The following verbs have themes ending in a liquid:—

1. ἀγγέλλω (*αγγελ-*), *announce*,

ἀγγελῶ	ἤγγειλα	ἤγγελκα	ἤγγελμαι	ἠγγέλθην

2. αἰσχύνω (*αισχυν-*), *shame*,

αἰσχυνῶ	ᾔσχῡνα			ᾐσχύνθην

3. βάλλω (*βαλ-*), *throw*,

βαλῶ	ἔβαλον	βέβληκα	βέβλημαι	ἐβλήθην

4. κλίνω (*κλιν-*), *cause to lean, bend*,

κλινῶ	ἔκλῑνα		κέκλιμαι	ἐκλίθην and ἐκλίνην

5. κρίνω (*κριν-*), *distinguish*,

κρινῶ	ἔκρῑνα	κέκρικα	κέκριμαι	ἐκρίθην

6. κτείνω (*κτεν-*), *kill*,

κτενῶ	ἔκτεινα	ἔκτονα		

---

[1] See p. 83[8].
[2] See p. 159[2].
[3] See p. 169[2].
[4] See p. 24[4].
[5] *σέσωμαι* and *ἐσώθην* are formed on a theme *σω-*.

7. **περαίνω** (περαν-), *accomplish*,

περανῶ	ἐπέρᾱνα		πεπέρασμαι	ἐπεράνθην

8. **σημαίνω** (σημαν-), *show by a sign*,

σημανῶ	ἐσήμηνα		σεσήμασμαι	ἐσημάνθην

9. **στέλλω** (στελ-), *put in order, equip, send*,

στελῶ	ἔστειλα	ἔσταλκα	ἔσταλμαι	ἐστάλην

10. **τείνω** (τεν-), *stretch*,

τενῶ	ἔτεινα	τέτακα	τέταμαι	ἐτάθην

11. **φαίνω** (φαν-), *show*,

φανῶ	ἔφηνα	πέφαγκα and πέφηνα[1]	πέφασμαι	ἐφάνθην and ἐφάνην[2]

12. **φθείρω** (φθερ-), *destroy*,

φθερῶ	ἔφθειρα	ἔφθαρκα	ἔφθαρμαι	ἐφθάρην

13. **χαλεπαίνω** (χαλεπαν-), *be angry*,

χαλεπανῶ	ἐχαλέπηνα			ἐχαλεπάνθην[3]

620. The following verbs have themes ending in a vowel: —

1. **κάω** (καυ-), *burn*,

καύσω	ἔκαυσα	κέκαυκα	κέκαυμαι	ἐκαύθην

2. **κλάω** (κλαυ-), *weep*,

κλαύσομαι and **κλαυσοῦμαι**

621. EXERCISES.

I. 1. *καὶ πολλὰ χρήματα ἀνηρπάκαμεν.* 2. *κλάειν ἐποιρώμεθά σε ποιεῖν.* 3. *ταῦτα λεξᾶς ἀπέστειλε τοὺς ἀγγέλους καὶ σὺν αὐτοῖς Χειρισοφον τὸν Λάκωνα.* 4. *ἀπηγγέλκᾶσιν Ἀριαίῳ ὅτι ἡμεῖς νῑκῶμεν.* 5. *ἀλλ' ᾐσχύνετο*[4] *μᾶλλον τοὺς στρατιώτᾶς ἢ οἱ ἀρχόμενοι*[5] *ἐκεῖνον.* 6. *προσεβάλομεν πρὸς τὸν λόφον ὀρθιοις τοῖς λόχοις, οὐ κύκλῳ.* 7. *καὶ ἐπὶ τούτου τοῦ ὄρους οἱ Κόλχοι παρατεταγμένοι ἦσαν· καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀντιπαρεταξαντο κατὰ φάλαγγα.* 8. *φυλάττει*[6] *δὲ σὺ ὡς*

[1] See p. 197[1].
[2] See p. 227[2].
[3] In the sense of the active.
[4] *Cf.* 479, I. 10.
[5] Equivalent to *οἱ στρατιῶται.* See 371.
[6] Mid., *be on one's guard against*, with acc.

πολεμίους ἡμᾶς, καὶ ἡμεῖς ἀντιφυλαττόμεθα. 9. ἐκκλίνουσιν οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ φεύγουσιν. 10. ἥ τε σάλπιγξ ἐφθέγξατο, καὶ ἀλαλάξαντες ἔθεον ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. 11. οἱ δὲ Καρδοῦχοι πυρὰ πολλὰ ἔκαον κύκλῳ ἐπὶ τῶν ὀρέων. 12. ὁ δὲ κατέφυγεν εἰς τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στράτευμα, καὶ εὐθὺς παρήγγειλεν εἰς τὰ ὅπλα. 13. Ἀλλ', ἔφη, ὑμεῖς, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοί, τούτοις ἀποκρίνασθε ὅ τι κάλλιστόν τε καὶ ἄριστον ἔχετε. 14. ὡς οὖν ἠθροίσθη Κύρῳ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ὅτε ἐπὶ τὸν ἀδελφὸν Ἀρταξέρξην ἐστρατεύετο καὶ ὅσα ἐν τῇ ἀνόδῳ ἐπράχθη, ἐν τῷ ἔμπροσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται. 15. ὁ δὲ ἐχαλέπαινεν ὅτι πρᾴως ἔλεγε τὸ αὑτοῦ πάθος. 16. ὦ ἄνδρες, ἡμεῖς βουλόμεθα διασωθῆναι πρὸς τὴν Ἑλλάδα πεζῇ. 17. Κλέαρχος δὲ Τολμίδην Ἠλεῖον ἐκέλευσε σῖγὴν κατακηρῦξαι. 18. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὑπερέβαλλον τὰ ὄρη, οἱ πελτασταὶ οὐκ ἔμειναν τοὺς ὁπλίτας, ἀλλ' ἀνακραγόντες ἔθεον ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. 19. ὡς οὖν ἀπηλλαγμένοι τούτων τῶν κακῶν ἡδέως ἐκοιμήθησαν. 20. ἐνίοτε δὲ καὶ ξυλιζόμενοι καὶ χόρτον καὶ ἄλλα τοιαῦτα συλλέγοντες πληγὰς ἐνέτεινον ἀλλήλοις.

II. 1. They attempted to dig through the tower. 2. You accomplished what[1] you wished. 3. The king believes that he is victorious,[2] since he has killed Cyrus. 4. We overpowered the enemy. 5. Clearchus was exceedingly disturbed when he heard[3] this. 6. They corrupted one captain at least, Nicarchus an Arcadian. 7. And they burnt the wagons and the tents. 8. The enemy were signalling to one another. 9. The Greeks all ran to their arms in great consternation.[4] 10. The generals do not try to furnish us provision-money. 11. Those who are by[5] cry out that[6] the man is alive. 12. But the enemy, fearing that they would be cut off, pushed on to the mountain.

---

[1] See 569.
[2] See 354.
[3] *when he heard*, *cf.* I. 3 above.
[4] Use the pf. pass. partic. of ἐκπλήττω.
[5] See 371.
[6] ὅτι.

622. R. **καλ, cal**, *call.*

καλ-έ-ω, *call;* **κλή-σι-s**, **-ε-ως**, *ἡ, a calling;* **ἐκ-κλη-σία**, **-ᾱς**, *duly summoned assembly;* **ἐκκλησιάζω**, *hold an assembly.* — **κῆρυ-ξ**, **-υκ-ος**, *ὁ* (formed on a stem **κηρ-υ-**), *herald, crier;* **κηρύττω**, *be a herald, proclaim;* **ἀ-κήρυκ-το-s**, **-ο-ν**, *unproclaimed;* **κηρύκ-ειο-s**, **-ο-ι**, *of a herald:* **κηρύκειον**, *τό, herald's staff.* — **κράζω** (for **κρα-γ-ιω**), *cry out, call aloud;* **κραυγ-ή**, **-ῆs**, *outcry.*

cal-ō, *call together;* **Kale-ndae**, **-ārum**, *f., day of proclamation, Calends;* **con-cil-iu-m**, **-ī**, *n., meeting;* **nōmen-clā tor**, **-ōr-is**, *m., one who calls by name;* **clā-mō**, *cry out;* **clā-ru-s**, *adj., clear;* **clas-si-s**, **-is**, *f., class.*

HALE, HAUL, HAL-*yard;* ***ec*-clesiastic.**

LESSON LXXXIX.

Verbs of the Nasal or Fifth Class.

623. Some verbs form the present stem by adding a suffix containing **ν** to the theme. These verbs belong to the *Nasal* or *Fifth* Class.

624. This suffix may be **-νᵒ/ₑ**. Thus: —

1. **δάκνω** (**δακ-**),[1] *bite,*

δήξομαι[2]	**ἔδακον**		**δέδηγμαι**	**ἐδήχθην**

2. **ἐλαύνω**[3] (**ελα-**), *drive, set in motion;* intrans. *ride, drive, march,*

ἐλῶ[4]	**ἤλασα**	**ἐλήλακα**[5]	**ἐλήλαμαι**	**ἠλάθην**

3. **κάμνω** (**καμ-**), *labour, be sick* or *weary,*

καμοῦμαι[2]	**ἔκαμον**	**κέκμηκα**[6]

4. **πίνω** (**πι-**), *drink,*

πίομαι[7]	**ἔπιον**	**πέπωκα**[8]	**πέπομαι**	**ἐπόθην**

[1] Some verbs of this class lengthen a short vowel in the theme, on the principle of verbs of the second class (492, 493), in other systems than the pres. and second aor.

[2] See p. 159[2].

[3] **ἐλαύνω** is probably for **ελα-νυ-ω**, by transposition of **ν** and **υ**.

[4] Formed similarly to the fut. of **τελέω** (p. 159[3]). Thus **ἐλάσω, ἐλάω, ἐλῶ**.

[5] See p. 209[1].

[6] See 507.

[7] **σ** is dropped. *Cf.* the fut. of **χέω** (610, 6). See also p. 159[2].

[8] The last three principal parts are formed on a theme **πο-**, as if there were a pres. **ποω** (*cf.* Lat. *potō*). The quantity of the final vowel of the themes (**πι-**, **πο-**) of this verb is variable.

5. **τέμνω** (τεμ-), *cut*,

τεμῶ	**ἔτεμον** and **ἔταμον**	**τέτμηκα**[1]	**τέτμημαι**	**ἐτμήθην**[2]

6. **τίνω** (τι-), *pay back*, *expiate*, mid. *make pay*, *punish*,

τίσω[3]	**ἔτῑσα**	**τέτῑκα**	**τέτισμαι**[4]	**ἐτίσθην**

625. The suffix may be -αν°/ε-. Thus: —

1. **αἰσθάνομαι** (αισθ-), *perceive*,

αἰσθήσομαι[5]	**ἠσθόμην**		**ἤσθημαι**

2. **ἁμαρτάνω** (ἁμαρτ-), *miss*, *err*, *do wrong*,

ἁμαρτήσομαι[5]	**ἥμαρτον**	**ἡμάρτηκα**	**ἡμάρτημαι**	**ἡμαρτήθην**

3. **ἀπ-εχθάνομαι** (εχθ-), *be hated* or *hateful*, *incur hatred*,

ἀπ-εχθήσομαι[5]	**ἀπ-ηχθόμην**		**ἀπ-ήχθημαι**

626. Some verbs which add the suffix -αν°/ε- insert a nasal within the theme. Thus: —

1. **λαγχάνω** (λαχ-),[6] *obtain by lot*, *get*, *obtain*,

λήξομαι	**ἔλαχον**	**εἴληχα**[7]	**εἴληγμαι**	**ἐλήχθην**

2. **λαμβάνω** (λαβ-),[6] *take*,

λήψομαι	**ἔλαβον**	**εἴληφα**[7]	**εἴλημμαι**	**ἐλήφθην**

3. **λανθάνω** (λαθ-),[6] *escape the notice of*, mid. *forget*,

λήσω	**ἔλαθον**	**λέληθα**	**λέλησμαι**

4. **μανθάνω** (μαθ-), *learn*,

μαθήσομαι[5]	**ἔμαθον**	**μεμάθηκα**

5. **πυνθάνομαι** (πυθ-), *inquire*, *learn by inquiry*,

πεύσομαι[8]	**ἐπυθόμην**	**πέπυσμαι**

6. **τυγχάνω** (τυχ-), *hit*, *attain*, intrans. *happen*,

τεύξομαι[8]	**ἔτυχον**	**τετύχηκα**[9] and **τέτευχα**[8]	

a. The nasal is inserted within the theme when the vowel of the theme is short and is followed by a single consonant. The inserted nasal is μ before a labial, γ before a palatal, and ν before a lingual.

---

[1] See 507.
[2] See 577.
[3] See 442.
[4] See 441 b.
[5] The theme assumes ε, as in some verbs of the first class (605), in all the systems which occur except the pres. and second aor.
[6] See p. 248[1]. [7] See p. 235[4].
[8] The theme is lengthened as in verbs of the second class (492, 493).
[9] The theme assumes ε.

627. The suffix may be **-νε°/ε-**. Thus: —

1. **ἱκνέομαι** (*ἱκ-*) *come*,

ἵξομαι	**ἱκόμην**[1]	**ἷγμαι**[1]

2. **ὑπ-ισχνέομαι** (*σεχ-*),[2] *hold oneself under, promise*.

ὑπο-σχήσομαι	**ὑπ-εσχόμην**	**ὑπ-έσχημαι**

There are other important verbs of this class which will be considered later.

628. EXERCISES.

I. 1. *ἐγὼ δὲ χαλεπῶς κάμνω. τὴν ἀσπίδα ἔχων.* 2. *οἱ γὰρ ἰᾶτροὶ κάουσι καὶ τέμνουσιν ἐπ' ἀγαθῷ.* 3. *οὗτος δὲ τεταγμένος ἐτύγχανεν*[3] *ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ τοῦ ἱππικοῦ ἄρχων.* 4. *ἡμῖν ἔξεστι τὰ ὄρη προκαταλαβοῦσιν ἄπορα ἡμῖν παρέχειν.* 5. *ἀποτεμὼν τὴν τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ κεφαλὴν καὶ τὴν χεῖρα ἀνεσταύρωσεν.* 6. *ὑπὸ γὰρ ἵππου οὐδεὶς ἐν τῇ μάχῃ οὔτ' ἐδήχθη οὔτ' ἐλακτίσθη.* 7. *ἀλλὰ τούτους μὲν οἱ θεοὶ ἀποτίσονται· ἡμᾶς δὲ δεῖ μήποτε ἐξαπατηθῆναι ἔτι ὑπὸ τούτων.* 8. *καὶ ἐφοβεῖτο τὸ ἀπεχθάνεσθαι*[4] *τοῖς στρατιώταις.* 9. *οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ διαλαχόντες τὰς κώμας ἐπορεύοντο ἕκαστοι τοὺς ἑαυτῶν ἔχοντες.* 10. *οὗτοι εἰς Σάρδεις ἀφίκοντο.* 11. *ταύτην δὲ τὴν τάφρον βασιλεὺς ἐποίει, ἐπειδὴ ἐπυνθάνετο Κῦρον προσελαύνοντα.*[5] 12. *ἐτύγχανον*[3] *λέγων ὅτι πολλαὶ καὶ καλαὶ ἐλπίδες ἡμῖν εἰσι σωτηρίας.* 13. *καὶ περὶ τούτων ὑπέσχετό μοι βουλεύσεσθαι.*[6] 14. *ἀλλ' εἴκαζον ἢ διώκοντα*[7] *οἴχεσθαι ἢ καταληψόμενόν τι προεληλακέ-*

[1] The *ι* is due to the augment (76).

[2] *ισχ* of the pres. stem is for *ἰσχ* and that for *σι-σεχ*, the reduplicated (606) theme of *ἔχω* (604, 6).

[3] With *λανθάνω* and *τυγχάνω*, an accompanying partic. contains the leading idea of the expression, and is usually translated by a finite verb in English, but sometimes by an infin. or adv. So here, *had been posted as it happened*, lit. *happened to have been posted*.

[4] See p. 164[3].

[5] Many verbs take the partic. in indirect discourse instead of the infin. (354). The rule for the tenses of the infin. holds good for those of the partic. also.

[6] Verbs meaning to *promise* may take the infin. in indirect discourse, like verbs of saying or thinking (354).

[7] *Sc.* *αὐτόν* as subj. of *οἴχεσθαι* and *προεληλακέναι*. For the construction of the infinitives, see 354.

ναι.[1] 15. *ἠσπάζοντο πρῶτον ἀλλήλους καὶ κατὰ τὸν Θράκιον νόμον κέρατα οἴνου προύπῖνον.*[1] 16. *ἔνθα πολλὴν μὲν σωφροσύνην καταμάθοι ἄν τις, αἰσχρὸν δ' οὐδὲν ἀκοῦσαι ἔστιν.*[2] 17. *ἤν τι*[3] *περὶ ἡμᾶς ἁμαρτάνωσι, περὶ τὰς ἑαυτῶν ψῡχὰς καὶ σώματα ἁμαρτήσονται.* 18. *καὶ προελαύνοντες ἐλάνθανον αὑτοὺς ἐπὶ τῷ λόφῳ γενόμενοι*[4] *ἔνθα ἐπολιορκοῦντο οἱ Ἕλληνες.* 19. *δέδοικα γὰρ μή, ἂν ἅπαξ μάθωμεν ἀργοὶ ζῆν, ἐπιλαθώμεθα τῆς οἴκαδε ὁδοῦ.*[5]

II. 1. I got a little[6] sleep. 2. A division of the hoplites happened to accompany[7] him. 3. And they will arrive at their tents about supper-time. 4. I learn that[8] the mountain is not impassable. 5. The king did not perceive the design against himself. 6. He marched through this plain four stages. 7. The envoys rode away when they had heard[9] this. 8. He himself rode up[9] and asked, Why do you summon (me)? 9. There Cyrus's head and right hand are cut off. 10. I have promised you ten talents. 11. When he had ridden past[10] all, he ordered them to present arms. 12. When the general had learnt[10] this by inquiry, he took[9] the cavalry and rode forward.

629. R. **πο, po**, *drink.*

πό-το-ς, *ὁ, a drinking, drinking-party;* **πο-τό-ν**, *τό, that which is drunk, drink;* **πό-σι-ς, -ε-ως**, *ἡ, a drinking, drink;* **συμ-πόσι-ο-ν**, *τό, drinking-party, symposium;* **συμποσί-αρχο-ς**, *ὁ* (R. **αρχ**, 463), *president of a drinking-party;* **φαρμακο-ποσ-ία, -ᾶς** (**φάρμακο-ν**, *drug, poison*), *a taking of physic or poison;* **πο-τήρ, -ῆρ-ος**, *ὁ, drinking-vessel;* **ποτήρ-ιο-ν**, *τό, cup;* **πῶ-μα, -ατ-ος**, *τό, drink;* **ἔκ-πωμα, -ατ-ος**, *τό, drinking-cup;* **πί-ν-ω**, *drink.*

pō-tu-s, *adj., drunk;* **pōtō**, *drink;* **pō-culu-m**, *-ī, n., cup;* **im-bu-ō**, *moisten* ('cause to drink'); **bi-bō**, *drink.*

*sym-***posium**.

---

[1] In compound verbs whose first part is *πρό*, the preposition always retains its final vowel. See 127 and p. 84[8]. But the vowel may be contracted with a following ε into *ου*.

[2] See 188 a.

[3] *make any mistake. Cf.* 560, I. 11.

[4] See p. 250[3]. So here, *got upon the hill before they were aware of it.*

[5] The gen. follows verbs signifying to *remember* and to *forget*. See p. 63[8].

[6] *a little* (*μῑκρόν*) *of sleep.* See p. 47[2].

[7] *Cf.* I. 12 above.

[8] *ὅτι*.

[9] Use the aor. partic. (379).

[10] Use the aor. indic. after *ἐπειδή*.

LESSON XC.

Review of Groups. — Reading Lesson.

Review the groups of related words in 602, 608, 612, 615, 622, 629
Review 140, 142.
Read and translate again 592.
Read and translate the following passage: —

630. Κῦρος.

IX. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Βαβυλωνίας σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα, καὶ ἐπιτυγχάνει τάφρῳ ὀρυκτῇ βαθείᾳ. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ ταύτῃ οὐκ ἐκώλυε βασιλεὺς τὸ Κύρου στράτευμα διαβαίνειν, ᾤετο Κῦρος οὐ μαχεῖσθαι βασιλέᾱ· ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐπορεύετο ἠμελημένως μᾶλλον.

τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ ἐπὶ τοῦ ἅρματος τὴν πορείᾱν ἐποιεῖτο, ὀλίγους ἐν τάξει ἔχων πρὸ αὑτοῦ. καὶ ἤδη πλησίον ἦν ὁ σταθμὸς ἔνθα ἔμελλε καταλύειν, ἡνίκα Πατηγύᾱς ἀνὴρ Πέρσης προφαίνεται ἐλαύνων ἀνὰ κράτος, καὶ εὐθὺς πᾶσι βοᾷ καὶ βαρβαρικῶς καὶ Ἑλληνικῶς ὅτι βασιλεὺς σὺν στρατεύματι πολλῷ προσέρχεται ὡς εἰς μάχην παρεσκευασμένος. ἔνθα δὴ πολὺς τάραχος ἐγένετο· αὐτίκα γὰρ ἐδόκουν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ πάντες δὲ ἀτάκτοις σφίσιν ἐπιπεσεῖσθαι. Κῦρος δὲ καταπηδήσᾱς ἀπὸ τοῦ ἅρματος πᾶσι παρήγγελλεν ἐξοπλίζεσθαι. ἔνθα δὴ σὺν πολλῇ σπουδῇ συνετάττοντο. Κλέαρχος μὲν τὸ δεξιὸν κέρας τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ ἔχων πρὸς τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ. Μένων δὲ τὸ εὐώνυμον.

καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν μέσον ἡμέρᾱς καὶ οὔπω καταφανεῖς ἦσαν οἱ πολέμιοι· ἡνίκα δὲ δείλη ἐγίγνετο, ἐφάνη κονιορτὸς ὥσπερ νεφέλη λευκὴ ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. ὅτε δὲ ἐγγύτερον

ἐγίγνοντο οἱ πολέμιοι, τάχα δὴ καὶ χαλκός τις ἤστραπτε καὶ αἱ λόγχαι καὶ αἱ τάξεις καταφανεῖς ἐγίγνοντο. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ Κῦρος παρελαύνων αὐτὸς σὺν τῷ ἑρμηνεῖ καὶ ἄλλοις τρισὶν ἢ τέτταρσι τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἐβόᾱ, Ἄγε τὸ στράτευμα κατὰ μέσον τὸ τῶν πολεμίων, ὅτι ἐκεῖ βασιλεύς ἐστι· κἂν τοῦτ', ἔφη, νῑκῶμεν, πάνθ' ἡμῖν πεποίηται. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος οὐκ ἤθελεν ἀποσπάσαι ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὸ δεξιὸν κέρας, φοβούμενος μὴ κυκλωθείη ἑκατέρωθεν.

NOTES.

4. **οὐ μαχεῖσθαι βασιλέᾱ**: Cyrus's thought was *οὐ μαχεῖται* (fut.) *βασιλεύς*. See 354. *ἐπιπεσεῖσθαι* in line 14 is in parallel construction. — 14. **καὶ πάντες δέ**, *and all too* (*καί*), *i.e.* Persians as well as Greeks. — 23. **χαλκός τις ἤστραπτε**, *here and there* (*τις*) *their bronze armour began to flash.*

Translate the following passage into Greek: —

631. Cyrus marched thence through Babylonia, with the river Euphrates on his right. About midnight on the third day's march he held a review of the Greeks and barbarians in the plain. There the number of the Greeks under arms was found to be 10,400 heavy-armed men and 2500 peltasts, and of the barbarians, 100,000 and 20 chariots. After the review, Cyrus called the Greek generals and captains together at daybreak and consulted with them how he should make the fight. Thence he proceeded one day's march, three parasangs, with his entire force, both Greek and barbarian, in battle array. For he thought that the enemy would give battle immediately. But the king did not fight on this day, nor on the next. But about the time of full market on the third day, a certain Persian rides into their midst at full speed and cries out that the enemy are at hand in great numbers. When Cyrus heard this, he leapt from his chariot and at once put on his cuirass and took his javelins into his hands. And all the rest also armed themselves and fell into battle line as quickly as possible.

LESSON XCI.

Regular Verbs in -MI, τίθημι.

632. Some verbs form the present and second aorist systems by adding the personal-endings directly to the theme, omitting the variable vowel (except in the subjunctive). In these verbs, therefore, the present and second aorist stems are the simple theme, which is, however, often reduplicated with ι in the present system.

a. Compare the following forms of τί-θη-μι (θε-), *place, put*, with those of λύ́ω (λυ-), *loose* (156, 157, 158) : —

		Sing.	Dual.	Plur.	Sing.	Dual.	Plur.
Pres.	1	τί-θη-μι		τί-θε-μεν	λύ́ω		λύ́ο-μεν
Ind.	2	τί-θη-ς	τί-θε-τον	τί-θε-τε	λύ́εις	λύ́ε-τον	λύ́ε-τε
Act.	3	τί-θη-σι	τί-θε-τον	τι-θέ-ᾱσι	λύ́ει	λύ́ε-τον	λύ́ουσι

633. Such verbs are called *Verbs in -μι*, because they retain the personal ending -μι in the first person singular of the present indicative active.

634. Verbs like λύ́ω, on the other hand, are called *Verbs in -ω*. See 158 a.

635. The following peculiarities of inflexion of verbs in -μι are to be noted[1] : —

a. The endings -μι, -ς, -σι (156) are used in the sing. of the pres. indic. act., and its third pers. plur. ends in -ᾱ́σι.

b. The third pers. plur. of the secondary tenses in the act. has -σαν (163).

c. The mid. endings -σαι and -σο (199) retain σ in the pres. and impf. indic. σο retains σ in the pres. imv. also (331).

[1] Section 635 is to be used for reference.

d. The ending *-θι* (322) is sometimes retained in the second aor. imv. act.

e. The infin. act. has the ending *-ναι* (345 a).

f. Participles with stems in *-ο-ντ-* (364 a) have the nom. sing. masc. in *-ους*.

g. The subjv. has the long variable vowel, as in verbs in *-ω* (268 a, 276 b), but this contracts with a final *ε*, *ο*, or *α* of the theme.

h. The opt. has the mood-suffix *-ι-* or *-ιη-* (297 a, 307 b), but the latter only before act. endings. The mood-suffix is added directly to the theme, if the theme ends in *ε*, *ο*, or *α*, and contracts with it. In these forms the accent cannot pass back of the mood-suffix.

i. In the pres. and impf. indic. act., the final vowel of the theme is lengthened in the sing.

j. In some verbs the final vowel of the theme is lengthened in the second aor. indic. and imv. act., in all forms where the final vowel comes before a single consonant in the ending or where the ending is lacking.

Commit to memory the present and second aorist systems of *τίθημι* (*θε-*), *place, put*, in 689, 693.

Review the endings and suffixes given in 156, 163, 199, 322, 331, 345 a, 364 a, 375 b.

636. In explanation of the forms in the paradigms, see 635 a b c e g h i. But note the following: —

a. In the impf. indic. act., *ἐτίθεις*, *ἐτίθει* (instead of *ετιθης*, *ετιθη*) are formed as if from a contract verb in *-εω* (*τιθεω* for *τίθημι*). *Cf.* *ἐφίλεις*, *ἐφίλει* (245).

b. For the contract forms of the subjv., see 241 b d.

c. In the pres. imv. act., *τίθει* (instead of *τιθεθι*) is formed as if from a contract verb in *-εω*. *Cf.* *φίλει* (335).

d. The act. participles *τιθείς* (for *τιθεντς*) and *θείς* (for *θεντς*) are inflected like *λυθείς* (376).

e. The sing. of the second aor. indic. act. is lacking. It is supplied by the first aor. forms *ἔθηκα*, *ἔθηκας*, *ἔθηκε*, formed with the tense-suffix *-κα-* for *-σα-* (165).

f. In the second aor. imv. act., *θές* is irregular (for *θεθι*).

g. In the second aor. infin. act., *θεῖναι* (for *θε-εναι*) is formed with the ending *-εναι*.

637. EXERCISES.

I. 1. ἐπιθήσεται ἡμῖν. 2. καὶ κελεύουσι φυλάττεσθαι, μὴ ὑμῖν ἐπιθῶνται τῆς νυκτὸς[1] οἱ βάρβαροι. 3. τὴν δίκην χρῄζω ἐπιθεῖναι αὐτῷ. 4. τούτους δὲ ἐκέλευε θέσθαι τὰ ὅπλα περὶ τὴν αὑτοῦ σκηνήν. 5. ἐνταῦθα ἀνετίθεσαν βακτηρίας καὶ τὰ αἰχμάλωτα γέρρα. 6. παρὰ τοὺς θεοὺς ἡμεῖς τὴν φιλίαν συνθέμενοι κατεθέμεθα. 7. καὶ οἰκίαν οὐδεμίαν ἔλιπεν, ὅπως φόβον ἐνθείη τοῖς ἄλλοις. 8. οὐκέτι ἐπετίθεντο οἱ πολέμιοι τοῖς Ἕλλησι, δεδοικότες μὴ ἀποτμηθείησαν. 9. καὶ ἐν τάξει θέμενοι τὰ ὅπλα ἀνέμενον οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχᾱγοί. 10. τοὺς μὲν ὁπλίτας αὐτοῦ ἐκέλευσε μεῖναι, τὰς ἀσπίδας πρὸς τὰ γόνατα θέντας. 11. τοὺς γὰρ κύνας τοὺς χαλεποὺς τὰς ἡμέρᾱς διδέᾱσιν.[2] 12. τὰς δὲ βαλάνους τῶν φοινίκων ξηραίνοντες τραγήματα ἀπετίθεσαν. 13. τοῖς τελευταίοις ἐπέθεντο, καὶ ἀπέκτειναν τινας. 14. ταῦτα συνθέμενοι ἥρίστων οἱ Ἕλληνες. 15. ἀκούσαντες δὲ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ᾠήθησαν ἔμπροσθεν ἄλλους ἐπιτίθεσθαι[3] πολεμίους. 16. καὶ παυσάμενοι ἀμφότεροι κατὰ χώρᾱν ἔθεντο τὰ ὅπλα. 17. καὶ συντιθέμεθα τὴν νύκτα,[4] ἣν λάβωμεν τὸ ἄκρον, τὸ χωρίον φυλάττειν. 18. ἅμα δὲ ὄρθρῳ παρήγγειλεν ὁ Κλεάρχος εἰς τάξιν τὰ ὅπλα τίθεσθαι τοὺς Ἕλληνας. 19. πάντας οὕτω διατιθεὶς ἀπεπέμπετο ὥστε αὐτῷ μᾶλλον φίλους εἶναι[5] ἢ βασιλεῖ.

II. 1. The hoplites grounded arms. 2. They feared that the Greeks would attack them during the night. 3. He will inflict punishment on them. 4. We will attack the enemy's cavalry. 5. We ordered arms near the general's tent. 6. They grounded arms beside the river. 7. I fear that he may take[6] me and inflict punishment on (me). 8. They set before them,

[1] *Cf.* 308, I. 15.
[2] From δίδημι, a collateral form of δέω, *bind*.
[3] See 354.
[4] Construe with φυλάττειν, and *cf.* 11 above.
[5] *Cf.* 553, I. 19.
[6] Use the aor. partic.

on the same table, meats of all kinds. 9. The army will attack the enemy vigorously. 10. They grounded arms[1] and rested. 11. Put[2] the baggage on the beasts of burden. 12. And when they had made this[3] agreement, they proceeded to the ford of the river.

638. **θε, da, fa,** *place, put, make.*

τί-θη-μι, *place, put, do*; *ἐπι-τίθημι, lay upon,* mid. *attack*; **ἐπίθε-σι-s, -ε-ως, ἡ,** *a setting on, attack*; **εὐ-επίθε-το-s, -ο-ν,** *easily attacked* or *assailable*; **ἀγων-ο-θέ-τη-s, -ου** (R. **αγ**, 435), *judge of a contest*; **θέ μι-s, -ι-τος, ἡ,** *that which is laid down, law, right*; **θε-σ-μό-s,** *ὁ, law, ordinance*; **παρα-κατα-θή-κη, -ης,** *that which is put down beside one, deposit*; **ἀνά-θη-μα, -ατ-ος,** *τό, thing set up, votive offering*; **σύν-θη-μα, -ατ-ος,** *τό, thing agreed upon, agreement, watchword*; **θη-σ-αυρό-s,** *ὁ, something put away, treasure.*

-dō, only in compounds, as **ab-dō,** *put away,* **crē-dō,** *put faith in, believe,* **per-dō,** *make away with, destroy*; **fa-c-i-ō,** *make, do*; **fī-ō,** *be done, become*; **pro-fic-ī-sc-o-r,** *set oneself forward, set out*; **fac-in-us, -or-is,** *n., deed, misdeed*; **fac-ili-s,** *adj., easy to do.*

DO, DEED, DEEM, DOOM, *king*-DOM; **thesis,** *anti*-**thesis,** *paren*-**thesis,** *syn*-**thesis, theme,** *ana*-**thema, thesaurus, treasure.**

LESSON XCII.

Regular Verbs in -MI, *δίδωμι*.

Review 632, 633, 634.

Commit to memory the present and second aorist systems of *δίδωμι* (*δο-*), *give*, in 690, 694.

Review the endings and suffixes given in 156, 163, 199, 322, 331, 345 a, 364 a, 375 b.

639. In explanation of the forms in the paradigms, see 635 a b c e f g h i. But note the following: —

a. In the impf. indic. act., *ἐδίδουν, ἐδίδους, ἐδίδου* (instead of *εδιδων, εδιδως, εδιδω*) are formed as if from a contract verb in *-οω* (*διδοω* for *δίδωμι*). *Cf.* *ἐδήλουν, ἐδήλους, ἐδήλου* (245).

b. For the contract forms of the subjv., see 241 d.

c. In the pres. imv. act., *δίδου* (instead of *διδοθι*) is formed as if from a contract verb in *-οω*. *Cf.* *δῆλου* (335).

[1] Use the aor. partic. [2] Use the mid. [3] *Cf.* I. 14 above.

d. The act. participles διδούς (for διδοντς) and δούς (for δοντς) are inflected like λῦων (262), except in the nom. sing. masc.

e. The sing. of the second aor. indic. act. is lacking. It is supplied by the first aor. forms ἔδωκα, ἔδωκας, ἔδωκε, formed with the tense-suffix -κα- for -σα- (165).

f. In the second aor. imv. act., δός is irregular (for δοθι).

g. In the second aor. infin. act., δοῦναι (for δο-εναι) is formed with the ending -εναι.

640. EXERCISES.

I. 1. δίδωσι δὲ αὐτῷ Κῦρος μῑρίους δᾶρεικούς. 2. μετὰ ταῦτα ἐδίδου λέγειν τῷ βουλομένῳ. 3. ἐνταῦθα δὲ μενοῦσιν, ἐὰν μὴ αὐτοῖς χρήματα διδῶτε. 4. ἠρώτων ἐκεῖνοι εἰ δοίεν[1] ἂν τούτων τὰ πιστά. 5. καὶ δοῦναι καὶ λαβεῖν πιστὰ ἐθέλομεν. 6. δέδοικα μὴ ἐκδῶτέ με. 7. παραδόντες[2] δ' ἂν τὰ ὅπλα καὶ τῶν σωμάτων[3] στερηθείημεν. 8. οὐ γὰρ ἔγωγ' ἔτι πρεσβύτερος ἔσομαι, ἐὰν τήμερον προδῶ ἐμαυτὸν τοῖς πολεμίοις. 9. ταῦτα καὶ σέσωσται δι' ὑμᾶς τῇ στρατιᾷ καὶ παραδίδωμι αὐτὰ ἐγὼ ὑμῖν, ὑμεῖς δὲ διαθέμενοι διάδοτε τῇ στρατιᾷ. 10. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα, καὶ δεξιὰς δόντες καὶ λαβόντες, ἀπήλαυνον. 11. τῇ γὰρ πρόσθεν ἡμέρᾳ πέμπων τὰ ὅπλα παραδιδόναι ἐκέλευεν. 12. ἠσχύνθημεν[4] καὶ θεοὺς καὶ ἀνθρώπους προδοῦναι αὐτόν. 13. ἀνάγκη[5] δή μοι ὑμᾶς προδόντα[6] τῇ Κύρου φιλίᾳ χρῆσθαι. 14. ἐπεὶ δ' ἡμέρᾳ ἦν ὀγδόη, τὸν ἡγεμόνα παραδιδωσι Χειρισόφῳ. 15. ὅμως δὲ Κλέαρχος τοσοῦτον λέγει, ὅτι οὐ τῶν νῑκώντων[7] ἐστὶ τὰ ὅπλα παραδιδόναι. 16. ταύτην τὴν ἐπιστολὴν δίδωσι πιστῷ ἀνδρί, ὡς ᾤετο. 17. ὥστε λαβόντες τοὺς νεκροὺς ἀπέδοσαν τὸν ἡγεμόνα. 18. τοὺς ἀσθενοῦντας τούτοις παρεδοσαν κομίζειν[8] ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. 19. οὐ γὰρ ἦν πρὸς[9] τοῦ Κύρου τρόπου ἔχοντα μὴ ἀποδιδόναι.

---

[1] See p. 104[14].
[2] *Cf.* 560, I. 10.
[3] *Cf.* 532, I. 14.
[4] *Cf.* 479, I. 10.
[5] See p. 224[2].
[6] In agreement with *μέ* to be supplied as subj. of *χρῆσθαι*, not with *μοί* expressed.
[7] *Cf.* 361, I. 5.
[8] *Cf.* 524, I. 15.
[9] *from, i.e. consistent with.*

II. 1. And they gave the village-chief (liberty[1]) to take this. 2. And he did not give them pay. 3. They bound the guide and gave (him) over to them. 4. They gave the Greeks a barbarian spear. 5. And when the sacrifice had been made,[2] they gave over the hides to the Spartan. 6. They say that it is time to pass along the watchword. 7. She was said to have given[3] much money to Cyrus. 8. He took the letter and gave it to Cyrus. 9. He handed the son of the village-chief over to Episthenes to guard.[4] 10. These things he was distributing among his friends. 11. I advise you to give up your arms. 12. Cyrus provided wagons full of flour and wine, that he might distribute them to the Greeks.

641. R. **δο, δα, δο,** *give.*

δί-δω-μι, *give;* προ-δίδω-μι, *give over, surrender, betray;* προδό-τη-ς, -ου, *betrayer, traitor;* μισθο-δό-τη-ς, -ου (μισθό-ς, *wages*), *one who pays wages;* μισθοδοτέ-ω, *pay wages, employ;* μισθοδο-σία, -ᾱς, *giving of pay;* **δώ-ρο-ν,** τό, *present, gift;* δωρέ-ο-μαι, *give a present;* δωρο-δόκος, -ο-ν (R. 2 **δακ,** 602), *taking presents* or *bribes;* δωροδοκέ-ω, *take bribes.* — **δά-ν-ος,** -ε-ος, τό (δα + ν), *money lent;* δανείζω, *lend money,* mid. *have money lent to one, borrow.*

dō, *da-re, give;* **dō-s,** *dō-ti-s, f., dowry;* **dō-nu-m,** *-i, n., gift.*

dose, *anec-***dote,** *anti-***dote.**

LESSON XCIII.

Verbs of the Inceptive or Sixth Class.

642. Some verbs form the present stem by adding the tense-suffix -σκ°/ε- or -ισκ°/ε- to the theme. These verbs belong to the *Inceptive* or *Sixth* Class. A final vowel in the theme is generally lengthened. Some verbs of this class reduplicate the present stem by prefixing the initial consonant of the theme with ι. Some form second aorists after the analogy of verbs in -μι. Thus: —

[1] *Cf.* I. 2 above.
[2] Use the aor. indic. after ἐπειδή.
[3] Use the aor. infin.
[4] *Cf.* I. 18 above.

1. **ἁλίσκομαι** (ἁλ-),[1] *be captured,*

ἁλώσομαι	**ἑάλων**[2] and **ἥλων**	**ἑάλωκα** and **ἥλωκα**		

2. **γιγνώσκω** (γνο-), *perceive, know,*

γνώσομαι	**ἔγνων**[3]	**ἔγνωκα**	**ἔγνωσμαι**[4]	**ἐγνώσθην**[4]

3. **διδάσκω**[5] (διδαχ-), *teach,*

διδάξω	**ἐδίδαξα**	**δεδίδαχα**	**δεδίδαγμαι**	**ἐδιδάχθην**

4. **εὑρίσκω** (εὑρ-), *find, discover,*

εὑρήσω[6]	**ηὗρον**	**ηὕρηκα**	**ηὕρημαι**	**ηὑρέθην**

5. **θνῄσκω**[7] (θαν-), *die, be slain,*

θανοῦμαι	**ἔθανον**	**τέθνηκα**[8]	

6. **μιμνῄσκω**[7] (μνα-), *remind,* mid. *remember, mention,*

μνήσω	**ἔμνησα**		**μέμνημαι**[9]	**ἐμνήσθην**[4]

7. **πάσχω**[10] (παθ-), *experience, suffer*

πείσομαι[11]	**ἔπαθον**	**πέπονθα**	

8. **τιτρώσκω** (τρο-), *wound,*

τρώσω	**ἔτρωσα**		**τέτρωμαι**	**ἐτρώθην**

a. Verbs of this class are called *inceptive* from their ending **-σκω**, although few of them have any inceptive meaning.

643. EXERCISES.

I. 1. *ἀναγνοὺς τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἀνακοινοῦται Σωκράτει.*[12] 2. *καὶ ἵπποι ἥλωσαν εἰς*[13] *εἴκοσι. καὶ ἡ σκηνὴ ἑάλω.* 3. *καὶ τούτῳ ἀπεθανέτην.* 4. *σύ γε οὔτε γιγνώσκεις οὔτε μέμνησαι.*

---

[1] The theme ἁλ- has the form ἁλο- in all systems except the present.

[2] See p. 83[8]. **α** is lengthened to **ᾱ** in the indic. **ἑάλων** and **ἥλων** are of the **-μι** form.

[3] Ind. **ἔγνων, ἔγνως, ἔγνω,** *etc.;* imv. **γνῶθι, γνώτω,** *etc.;* 3d pl. **γνόντων**; inf. **γνῶναι**. Other moods acc. to 694.

[4] See 441 b.

[5] For διδαχ-σκω, **χ** being dropped before **σκ**.

[6] The theme assumes **ε**, as in some verbs of the first class (605), in all the systems except the present and second aor.

[7] As in the case of **σφίζω** (618, 8), the iota-subscript occurs only in the present system.

[8] See 507.

[9] With pres. force, *remember,* Lat. *meminī*. The aor. pass. **ἐμνήσθην** has the force of the mid.

[10] For **παθ-σκω, θ** being dropped before **σκ**. *Cf.* **διδάσκω** above.

[11] For **πένθ-σομαι** (233), the theme assuming the form **πενθ-** (for **πανθ-**) by the insertion of the nasal, as in some verbs of the fifth class (626 a).

[12] *Cf.* 328, I. 14.

[13] *Cf.* 498, I. 12.

5. Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη, ἄξιοί εἰσι τὰ ἔσχατα παθεῖν[1]; 6. Κλέαρχος, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, ἔχει τὴν δίκην καὶ τέθνηκεν. 7. καὶ πολλοὺς ἐτίτρωσκον καὶ ἐκράτησαν τῶν Ἑλλήνων γυμνήτων.[2] 8. τῶν πελταστῶν τις ἀνὴρ Ἀθήνησι φάσκει δεδουλευκέναι. 9. πάντες οἱ φίλοι καὶ συντράπεζοι ἀπέθανον μαχόμενοι ὑπὲρ Κύρου. 10. Ξενοφῶντος[3] δὲ κατηγόρησάν τινες φάσκοντες παίεσθαι ὑπ' αὐτοῦ. 11. καὶ εὐθὺς ἔγνωσαν πάντες ὅτι ἐγγύς που ἐστρατοπεδεύετο βασιλεύς. 12. εἰ δέ τι ἄλλο βέλτιον,[4] τολμάτω καὶ ὁ ἰδιώτης διδάσκειν. 13. ἔνθα δὴ ἀπεκρίνατο Κλεάνωρ ὅτι πρόσθεν ἂν ἀποθάνοιεν ἢ τὰ ὅπλα παραδοῖεν. 14. οὐδ' ἄλλος δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ ἔπαθεν οὐδεὶς[5] οὐδέν. 15. μετὰ δὲ τὸν τῶν ἄλλων θάνατον στρατηγῶν τῑμωρηθεὶς ὑπὸ βασιλέως ἀπέθανεν. 16. καὶ παίει βασιλεῖ κατὰ τὸ στέρνον καὶ τιτρώσκει διὰ τοῦ θώρᾱκος. 17. ἐκ τούτου πειρᾶται Μιθριδάτης διδάσκειν ὡς ἄπορόν ἐστι σωθῆναι. 18. καὶ συναγαγόντες τοὺς ἑαλωκότας ἤλεγχον τὴν κύκλῳ πᾶσαν χώρᾱν. 19. ἀλλὰ πολλὰς προφάσεις Κῦρος εὗρισκεν,[6] ἵνα ὑμᾶς τε ἀπαρασκεύους λάβοι καὶ ἡμᾶς ἐνθάδε ἀναγάγοι. 20. ἐάν τις ἄλῳ ἔνδον τῶν στρατιωτῶν, τῑμωρηθήσεται.

II. 1. But the soldiers knew this. 2. And thus the city was taken. 3. Necessity taught them to camp. 4. He soon found him more friendly to Cyrus than to himself. 5. These say that Cyrus is dead. 6. Lead, too, was found in the villages. 7. When he died, he was nearly thirty years old.[7] 8. Ctesias states how many were killed of those about the king. 9. They said that not even this (man) suffered any hurt.[8] 10. I wish to show[9] you that you wrongfully[10] mistrust us. 11. They proceeded with the captured man (as) guide.

[1] *Cf.* 579, I. 14.
[2] *Cf.* 336, I. 15.
[3] *Cf.* 308, I. 4.
[4] See p. 224[2].
[5] *Cf.* 536, I. 11.
[6] See p. 232[4].
[7] *of about* (*ὡς*) *thirty years.*
[8] *Cf.* I. 14 above.
[9] Use διδάσκω.
[10] *not rightly.*

644. R. **γνω**, gna, gno, *know.*

γι-γνώ-σκ-ω, *know, think*; **γνώ-μη**, **-ης**, *thought, opinion*; **γνώ-μων**, **-ον-ος**, **ὁ**, *one that knows*; **ἀ-γνώμων**, **-ον**, gen. **-ον-ος**, *without knowledge, senseless*; **ἀγνωμο-σύνη**, **-ης**, *ignorance*; **ὄ-νο-μα**, **-ατ-ος**, **τό** (for **ο-γνο-μα**, with prothetic **ο-**), *that by which one is known, name*; **ὀνωμάζω**, *call by name*; **ὀνομασ-τί**, adv., *by name*; **ἀν-ώνυμ-ο-ς**, **-ο-ν**, *without name, nameless*; **εὐ-ώνυμο-ς**, **-ο-ν**, *of good name or omen*; **νό-ο-ς**, contr. **νοῦς**, **ὁ** (for **γνο-ϝο-ς**), *power of thought, mind*; **νοέ-ω**, *observe, think out*; **ἀ-νόη-τ-ο-ς**, **-ο-ν**, *not understanding, foolish*; **ἄ-γνω-ια**, **-ᾶς**, *ignorance*; **ἀγνοε-ω**, *not know, not recognize*; **ἀμφι-γνοέ-ω**, *think on both sides, be in doubt*; **εὐ-νοϝ-ο-ς**, **-οο-ν**, *kindly disposed*; **εὔνοια**, **-ᾱς**, *good-will*; **εὐνοϊκό-ς**, **-ν**, **-ῶ-ν**, *well-disposed*; **εὐνοϊκῶς**, adv., *with good-will or affection*; **κακό-νοο-ς**, **-ω-ι** (**κακός**, *bad*), *ill-disposed*; **κακό-νο-ια**, **-ᾱς**, *ill-will*; **διά-νοια**, **-ᾱς**, *way of thinking, purpose*; **ἔν-νοια**, **-ᾱς**, *thought, inspiration*; **πρό-νοια**, **-ᾱς**, *forethought.*

gnā-ru-s, *adj., knowing, skilled*; **nār-ī-ō**, *make known, tell*; **nā-uu-s** (**gnā-uu-s**), *adj., diligent*; **nō-sc-ō**, *learn*; **nō-bili-s**, *adj., well-known*; **nō-men**, **-inis**, *n., name*; **ī-gnōrō**, *not know*; **no-ta**, **-ae**, *f., mark, sign.*

CAN, CUNNING, KEN, KEEN, KNOW, NAME, and OTH.: **dia-gnosis**, **gnome**, **gnostic**, *a-***gnostic**, *physio-***gnomy**, **onomato-***poeia*, *a-***onymous**, *met-***onymy**, *patr-***onymic**, *pseud-***onym**, *syn-***onym.**

LESSON XCIV.

Regular Verbs in -MI. **ἵστημι.** —Verbs of the Theme or Seventh Class.

Review 632, 633, 634.

Commit to memory the present and second aorist systems of **ἵστημι** (**στα-**), *set, make stand*, in 691, 695.

Review the endings and suffixes given in 156, 163, 199, 322, 331, 345 a, 364 a, 375 b.

645. In explanation of the forms in the paradigms, see 635 a b c d e g h i j. But note the following:—

a. **ἵστημι** is for **σι-στη-μι**, the rough breathing representing the **σ** of the reduplicating syllable.

b. In the pres. indic. act., **ἱστᾶσι** arises from **ἱστα-ᾱσι** by contraction.

c. In the impf. indic., **ῑ** is due to the augment (76).

d. The contract forms of the subjv. arise as if from a stem in **ε** (**ἱστε-**, **στε-**, for **ἱστα-**, **στα-**), and the contracted syllables are therefore identical with those of **τίθημι.**

e. In the pres. imv. act., ἵστη (instead of ἵστα-θι) omits -θι and lengthens the vowel of the stem.

f. The act. participles ἱστάς (for ἱσταντς) and στάς (for σταντς) are inflected like λύσᾱς (364).

g. The second aor. middle of ἵστημι is lacking. But the second aor. mid. of other -μι verbs with themes in α occurs. See 647, 8.

646. Some verbs of the classes previously introduced have second aorists of the -μι form, on the analogy of ἵστημι. Thus: —

1. **βαίνω** (βα-),[1] *go*,

βήσομαι	**ἔβην**	**βέβηκα**	**βέβαμαι**[2]	**ἐβάθην**

2. **διδράσκω** (δρα-),[3] *run*,

δράσομαι[4]	**ἔδρᾱν**	**δέδρᾱκα**

3. **φθάνω** (φθα-),[5] *get the start of, anticipate*,

φθήσομαι and **φθάσω**[6]	**ἔφθην** and **ἔφθασα**	

647. Verbs that form the present and second aorist systems by adding the personal endings directly to the theme (632) belong to the *Theme* or *Seventh* Class. The tense stems of these verbs, other than the present and the second aorist, are formed like those of verbs in -ω. Thus: —

1. **τίθημι** (θε-), *put, set, place*,

θήσω	**ἔθηκα**[7]	**τέθεικα**[8]	**τέθειμαι**	**ἐτέθην**[9]

2. **δίδωμι** (δο-), *give*,

δώσω	**ἔδωκα**[10]	**δέδωκα**	**δέδομαι**[2]	**ἐδόθην**

3. **ἄγαμαι** (αγα-), *admire*,

	ἠγασάμην			**ἠγάσθην**[11]

[1] βαίνω belongs both to the fifth class (623) and to the fourth class (619), but the liquid form of the theme is found only in the present system.

[2] See 442.

[3] See 642.

[4] See 254 b.

[5] See 623.

[6] This form is rare.

[7] See 636 e.

[8] The vowel of the theme is irregularly (254 b) lengthened to ει in the first pf. and pf. mid. systems.

[9] For ἐθέθην, to avoid the occurrence of the rough mute at the beginning of successive syllables. See also 442.

[10] See 639 c.

[11] ἄγαμαι is properly a pass. deponent (255 b), but the aor. mid. ἠγασάμην sometimes occurs. See also 441 and 441 b.

4. **δύναμαι** (*δυνα-*), *be able, can,*

δυνήσομαι[1]			**δεδύνημαι**	**ἐδυνήθην**

5. **ἐπίσταμαι** (*επιστα-*), *understand, know how,*

ἐπιστήσομαι				**ἠπιστήθην**

6. **ἵστημι** (*στα-*), *set, make stand,* intrans. *stand, stop.*[2]

στήσω	**ἔστησα** and **ἔστην**	**ἕστηκα**[3]	**ἕσταμαι**[4]	**ἐστάθην**

7. **κρέμαμαι** (*κρεμα-*), *hang* (intrans.),

κρεμήσομαι				

8. **ὀνίνημι**[5] (*ονα-*), *benefit, assist,*

ὀνήσω	**ὤνησα** and **ὠνήμην**[6]			**ὠνήθην**

9. **πίμπλημι**[7] (*πλα-*), *fill,*

πλήσω	**ἔπλησα**	**πέπληκα**	**πέπλημαι** and **πέπλησμαι**[8]	**ἐπλήσθην**

10. **πίμπρημι**[7] (*πρα-*), *set on fire, burn,*

πρήσω	**ἔπρησα**		**πέπρημαι**	**ἐπρήσθην**[8]

648. EXERCISES.

I. 1. *οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι οὐκέτι ἔστησαν.* 2. *οἱ μετὰ Ἀριαίου οὐκέτι ἵστανται, ἀλλὰ φεύγουσιν.* 3. *ἐάν τι δύνωμαι,*[9] *ταῦτα ποιήσω.* 4. *οὐ γὰρ ἂν δύναιντο*[10] *πορευθῆναι.* 5. *στάντων οἱ ὁπλῖται.* 6. *ἡμεῖς γὰρ οὐκ ἂν ἀποδραίημεν ἐνθένδε.* 7. *ὡς δ' ἀνέβησαν, θέμενοι καὶ τρόπαιον στησάμενοι κατέβησαν εἰς τὸ πεδίον.* 8. *ἀνέστησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ εἶπον ὅτι ὥρᾳ νυκτοφύλακας καθιστάναι.* 9. *καὶ ἔφθασαν ἐπὶ τῷ*

---

[1] *δύναμαι, ἐπίσταμαι, κρέμαμαι* accent the subjv. and opt. as if there were no contraction, *δύνωμαι, δυναίμην, δύναιο, etc. Cf.* 691.

[2] The intrans. forms are *ἔστην* and *ἕστηκα*. All of the middle forms also, except those of the first aor., may have the same intrans. force.

[3] For an irregular (121) *σε-στηκα*, the rough breathing representing the first *σ*, as in the pres. (645 a). Plpf. *εἱστήκη* for *ε-σε-στηκη*.

[4] See 442.

[5] For *ον-ονημι* by irregular reduplication.

[6] Lengthened as in the second aor. act. of *ἵστημι* (635 j). See, further, 645 g.

[7] The reduplication is strengthened by the nasal *μ*.

[8] See 441 b.

[9] With recessive accent (32), disregarding the contraction. *Cf. ἱστῶμαι* (691), and see 635 g.

[10] With recessive accent (32). *Cf. ἱσταῖντο* (691), and see 635 h end.

ἄκρῳ γενόμενοι[1] τοὺς πολεμίους. 10. ἀλλὰ τὰ ὄρη ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐκρέματο. 11. ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ τοῦτό γε ἐπίστασθε. 12. Κῦρος δέ, ψῑλὴν ἔχων τὴν κεφαλήν, εἰς τὴν μάχην καθίστατο. 13. ἀεὶ ἔγωγε ἡγάμην τὴν σὴν φύσιν. 14. ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶν ἀνίσταται ἐσταλμένος[2] ἐπὶ πόλεμον ὡς ἐδύνατο κάλλιστα. 15. ἀλλ' εὖ ἐπιστάσθων ὅτι οὐκ ἀποδεδρᾰκᾶσιν. 16. ἐβουλεύοντο ὅπως ἂν κάλλιστα διαβαῖεν. 17. καὶ οὔτε ἀνελέσθαι οὔτε θάψαι αὐτὼ ἐδυνάμεθα. 18. ἐκ δὲ τούτου καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀναστάντες πῦρ ἔκᾶον καὶ ἐχρί-ουντο. 19. ὁ δὲ ἐμπιμπλὰς ἁπάντων τὴν γνώμην ἀπέπεμπεν. 20. ἐπέστη ὁ Κῦρος σὺν τοῖς περὶ αὐτὸν ἀρίστοις καὶ εὐδαιμονεστάτοις.

II. 1. And accordingly Cyrus went up on the mountains. 2. Chirisophus, the Lacedaemonian, rose and spoke as follows. 3. He halted the soldiers. 4. He advanced, halting now and then. 5. They kept filling the leathern bags with grass.[3] 6. He mounted his horse and rode away. 7. They set the houses on fire. 8. He was not able to sleep. 9. You must cross the river. 10. He collected an army that he might be able to defeat the king. 11. And they raised them up. 12. But at that time these cities had revolted to Cyrus.

649. R. στα, sta, *set, stand.*

ἵ-στη-μι, *set, make stand*; **στά-σι-ς**, **-ε-ως**, ἡ, *a standing, band, faction*; **ἐπί-στασι-ς**, **-ε-ως**, ἡ, *a stopping, halt*; **κατά-στασι-ς**, **-ε-ως**, ἡ, *an establishing, state, condition*; **στασιάζω**, *stand against, form a faction, revolt*; **ἀντι-στασιάζω**, *form a faction against*; **ἀντιστασιώ-τη-ς**, **-ου**, *one of the opposite faction*; **ἐπι-στά-τη-ς**, **-ου**, *one who stands over* or *has charge of*; **ἐπιστατέ-ω**, *exercise command*; **προ-στά-τη-ς**, **-ου**, *one who stands before, leader*; **προστατέ-ω**, *be leader* or *manager of*; **προστατεύ-ω**, *be at the head, take charge*; **στέ-αρ**, **-ατ-ος**, τό, *stiff fat, suet*; **ἵ-στό-ς**, ὁ (for **σι-στο-ς**), *mast*; **ἱστ-ίο-ν**, τό, *sail*; **σταυ-ρό-ς**, ὁ, *stake, palisade*; **σταυρό-ω**, *fence with pales*; **σταύρω-μα**, **-ατ-ος**, τό, *stockade*; **στα-θ-μό-ς**, ὁ, *standing-place, stall, station, stage.*

---

[1] With **φθάνω**, as with **λανθάνω** and **τυγχάνω** (p. 250[3]), the accompanying partic. contains the leading idea of the expression. *Cf.* 628, I. 18.

[2] *equipped.*

[3] Verbs signifying to *fill* take the acc. of the thing filled and the gen. of the material.

si-stō, *set, make stand;* **sta-tu-s**, *adj., fixed;* **sta-ti-m**, *adv., on the spot, immediately;* **sta-ti-ō**, *-ōn-is, f., a standing;* **sta-bulu-m**, *-ī, n., stall;* **īn-stau-r-ō**, *establish;* **stō**, *stā-re, stand;* **stā-men**, *-in-is, n., warp, thread.*

STAND, STEAD, STEED, STOW; *apo-***stasy**, *apo-***state**, *ec-***stasy**, **histo-***logy*, *hydro-***statics**, *sy-***stem**, **stoic.**

LESSON XCV.

Regular Verbs in -MI. δείκνῡμι and ἔδῡν. — Verbs of the Nasal or Fifth Class in *-νῡμι.*

Review 632, 633, 634.

Commit to memory the present system of δείκνῡμι and the second aorist system of δύω in 692, 696. No second aorist of δείκνῡμι occurs.

Review the endings and suffixes given in 156, 163, 199, 322, 331, 345 a, 364 a, 375 b.

650. In explanation of the forms in the paradigms, see 635 a b c d e i j. But note the following: —

a. In the pres. system of δείκνῡμι, the personal endings are not added directly to the theme δεικ- (632), but to the theme increased by *-νυ-*, as explained below (651).

b. The subjv. and opt. are formed as in verbs in *-ω*. *Cf.* λύω, λύωμαι, and λῦοιμι, λῡοίμην in 672.

c. In the pres. imv. act., δείκνῡ (instead of δεικνυ-θι) omits *-θι* and lengthens the final vowel of the stem.

d. The act. participles δεικνύς (for δεικνυντς) and δύς (for δυντς) are inflected δεικνύς, δεικνῦσα, δεικνύν, gen. δεικνύντος, δεικνύσης, δεικνύντος, *etc.* Compare the paradigm of λύσᾱς in 364.

e. The second aorist middle does not occur.

651. Verbs that form the present stem by adding *-νυ-* to the theme belong to the Nasal or Fifth Class (623). If the theme ends in a vowel, the suffix is *-νυ-*. Thus: —

1. δείκνῡμι (δεικ-), *point out, show,*

δείξω	ἔδειξα	δέδειχα	δέδειγμαι	ἐδείχθην

	2. ζεύγνῡμι (ζυγ-),[1] *join, yoke,*			
ζεύξω	ἔζευξα		ἔζευγμαι	ἐζύγην and ἐζεύχθην[2]
	3. μίγνῡμι (μιγ-),[3] *mix, mingle,*			
μίξω	ἔμῑξα		μέμῖγμαι	ἐμίχθην and ἐμίγην[2]
	4. ὄλλῡμι[4] (ολ-), *destroy, lose,*			
ὀλῶ	ὤλεσα[5] and ὠλόμην[6]	ὀλώλεκα[7]		
	5. ὄμνῡμι (ομ-), *swear,*			
ὀμοῦμαι[8]	ὤμοσα[9]	ὀμώμοκα[7]	ὀμώμομαι and ὀμώμοσμαι[10]	ὠμόθην and ὠμόσθην
	6. πήγνῡμι (παγ-),[1] *fix, freeze,*			
	ἔπηξα	πέπηγα[11]		ἐπάγην
	7. σκεδάννῡμι (σκεδα-), *scatter,*			
σκεδῶ[12]	ἐσκέδασα[13]		ἐσκέδασμαι	ἐσκεδάσθην

652. Note also the following verbs of the First Class, which have second aorists of the *-μι* form: —

	1. δύω, *make enter,* intrans. *enter,*			
δύσω	ἔδῡσα[14] and ἔδῡν	δέδῡκα	δέδυμαι[15]	ἐδύθην
	2. φύω, *bring forth, bear, produce,*			
φύσω	ἔφῡσα and ἔφῡν[16]	πέφῡκα[17]		

[1] The theme is lengthened, as in verbs of the second class (492), in other systems than the second pass.

[2] Rare in Attic prose.

[3] The theme is lengthened in other systems than the second pass. *Cf.* τρῑβω of the first class (604, 13), which has the theme lengthened in all of the systems except the second pf. and second pass.

[4] For ολ-νῡμι, by assimilation.

[5] The theme assumes ε in the first aor. and first pf. systems, as in some verbs of the first class (605), but without lengthening (441).

[6] In the mid. and in the second pf., the verb has the intrans. meaning, *perish, be lost.*

[7] See p. 209[1].

[8] See p. 159[2].

[9] The theme assumes ο in all of the systems except the pres. and fut. (*cf.* ἁλίσκομαι, 642, 1), but without lengthening (441).

[10] See 441 b.

[11] Intrans., *be fixed, be frozen.*

[12] Formed like the fut. of ἐλαύνω (624, 2).

[13] For the last three principal parts, see 441, 441 a.

[14] The first aor. is trans., the second aor., intrans.

[15] See 442.

[16] Intrans., *was born.*

[17] Intrans., *be born, be by nature.*

653. EXERCISES.

I. 1. *συμμῑγνύᾱσιν ἀλλήλοις, καὶ νῑκῶσιν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ διώκουσιν.* 2. *ἐκ δὲ τούτου ἄλλοι ἀνίστανται, ἐπιδεικνύντες οἵᾱ ἐστὶν ἡ ἀπορίᾱ.* 3. *καὶ ἄνεμος ἐναντίος ἔπνει πηγνῦς τοὺς ἀνθρώπους.* 4. *ἀποδείκνυνται οἱ μάντεις πάντες γνώμην ὅτι οὐδαμῇ μάχη ἔσται.* 5. *τοὺς ἄνδρας αὐτοὺς οἷς ὤμνυτε ἀπολωλέκατε.* 6. *πολλὰ τῶν ὑποζυγίων ἀπώλετο ὑπὸ λῑμοῦ.* 7. *δίκαιον*[1] *γὰρ ἀπόλλυσθαι τοὺς ἐπιορκοῦντας.* 8. *καὶ ἀποτεμόντες τὰς κεφαλὰς τῶν νεκρῶν, ἐπεδείκνυσαν τοῖς ἑαυτῶν πολεμίοις.* 9. *τὸ ὕδωρ ὃ ἐφέροντο ἐπὶ δεῖπνον ἐπήγνυτο.* 10. *τούτοις τοῖς δεσμοῖς ἐζεύγνῡν τοὺς ἀσκοὺς πρὸς ἀλλήλους.* 11. *ἔφῡτε ἐν τῇ αὐτῇ χώρᾳ καὶ ἐτράφητε.* 12. *τῶν στρατιωτῶν οἱ συνεπόμενοι τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἀπώλοντο.* 13. *ὥστε ὥρᾱ*[1] *καὶ σοὶ ἐπιδείκνυσθαι τὴν παιδείᾱν.* 14. *φιλοτῑμότατος δὲ πεφῡκὼς*[2] *οὐχ ἡττηθήσεται.* 15. *καὶ οὗτοι πρῶτοι συμμῑγνύᾱσι τοῖς προκαταλαβοῦσι τὸ χωρίον.* 16. *ταῦτα δ' ὤμνυμεν, σφάξαντες ταῦρον καὶ λύκον καὶ κάπρον καὶ κρῑόν.* 17. *καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων κατέκοψάν τινας τῶν ἀποσκεδαννυμένων ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατοπέδου.* 18. *Κῦρος καταπηδήσᾱς ἀπὸ τοῦ ἅρματος τὸν θώρᾱκα ἐνέδῡ.* 19. *οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι προσομνύᾱσι καὶ ἡγήσεσθαι*[3] *ἀδόλως.*

II. 1. They point out the tracks of the horses to the soldiers. 2. Hereupon he expresses his opinion. 3. They disclosed their plan to the soldiers. 4. He wishes to show his justice. 5. I joined the king in your camp. 6. The wind is freezing the beasts of burden. 7. Let somebody express his opinion. 8. When he heard this, he sank down in[4] shame. 9. After him another stood up, pointing out the folly of the man. 10. For the seers declare that there will be a battle. 11. The peltasts are straggling from camp.

---

[1] See p. 224 [2].
[2] Causal. See 379.
[3] Their oath is, *ἡγησόμεθα*. See 354.
[4] *ὑπό* with gen.

654. R. **ζυγ, iug,** *bind.*

ζυγ-ό-ν, *τό, yoke;* **ὑπο-ζύγ-ιο-ν,** *τό, beast under the yoke, beast of burden;* **ζεύγ-νῡ-μι,** *yoke, join, fasten;* **ζεῦγ-ος,** *-ε-ος, τό, yoke* of oxen, *etc., team;* **ζευγ-ηλά-τη-ς,** *-ου* (ἐλαύνω, *drive*), *one who drives a yoke* of oxen, *teamster;* **ζευγηλατέ-ω,** *drive a yoke* of oxen.

iug-u-m, *-ī, n., yoke;* **iū-mentu-m,** *-ī, n., beast of burden;* **con-iūnx** or **con-iux,** *-iug-is, m.* and *f., husband, wife;* **bīgae,** *-ārum, f., span of horses;* **iūxtā,** *adv., adjoining, near;* **iung-ō,** *join.*

YOKE; *sy-***zygy.**

LESSON XCVI.

Verbs of the Mixed or Eighth Class.

655. A few verbs form the tense stems of their various systems (see 252, 490, 519, 587, 603) from essentially different themes. Thus: —

1. **αἱρέω** (*αἱρε-, ἑλ-*), *take, seize,* mid. *take for oneself, choose,*				
αἱρήσω	**εἷλον** [1]	**ᾕρηκα**	**ᾕρημαι**	**ᾑρέθην** [2]
2. **εἶπον** (*ἐπ-, ερ-*), *said,* [3]				
ἐρῶ	**εἶπον** [4]	**εἴρηκα** [5]	**εἴρημαι**	**ἐρρήθην** [6]
3. **ἔρχομαι** (*ερχ-, ελυθ-*), *go, come,*				
	ἦλθον [7]	**ἐλήλυθα** [8]		
4. **ἐσθίω** (*εσθι-, εδ-,* [9] *φαγ-*), *eat,*				
ἔδομαι [10]	**ἔφαγον**	**ἐδήδοκα**	**ἐδήδεσμαι** [11]	**ἠδέσθην**
5. **ὁράω** (*ὁρα-, ιδ-, οπ-*), *see,*				
ὄψομαι	**εἶδον** [12]	**ἑόρᾱκα** [13] and **ἑώρᾱκα**	**ἑώρᾱμαι** and **ὦμμαι**	**ὤφθην**

---

[1] See p. 83 [8].

[2] See 442.

[3] The pres. and impf. are supplied by **λέγω** (600, 4), **φημί** (348), and other verbs.

[4] For **ε-fε-fεπο-ν.** The theme **επ-** is for an original **fεπ-** (p. 161 [2]). This is reduplicated (*cf.* 491 a) in forming the tense stem of the second aor. (490), **fε-fεπο-, ε-επο-,** by contraction **ειπο-.**

[5] See p. 235 [4]. The theme **ερ-** becomes **ῥε-** by shift of the letters in the last three principal parts.

[6] See p. 166 [2].

[7] **ἦλθον** is for **ηλυθον.**

[8] See p. 209 [1].

[9] The theme **εδ-** assumes also the forms **εδε-** and **εδο-.**

[10] A fut. formed irregularly without **σ.**

[11] See 441 a.

[12] For **ε-fιδο-ν.** The theme **ιδ-** stands for an original **fιδ-.**

[13] See p. 83 [8]. **ἑώρᾱκα** and **ἑώρᾱμαι** have also the temporal augment. This occurs also in the impf. **ἑώρων.**

6. **τρέχω** (*τρεχ-, δραμ-*), *run*,				
δραμοῦμαι	ἔδραμον	δεδράμηκα[1]	δεδράμημαι	
7. **φέρω** (*φερ-, οι-, ενεκ-*[2]), *bear, bring, carry*,				
οἴσω	ἤνεγκα[3] and ἤνεγκον	ἐνήνοχα[4]	ἐνήνεγμαι	ἠνέχθην
8. **ὠνέομαι** (*ωνε-, πρια-*), *buy*,				
ὠνήσομαι	ἐπριάμην[5]		ἐώνημαι[6]	ἐωνήθην

656. For convenience these verbs may be designated as belonging to the *Mixed* or *Eighth* Class.

657. EXERCISES.

I. 1. *οὐ πολὺ δὲ προεληλύθᾶσιν*[7] *οὗτοι.* 2. *κρέα ἕψοντες ἤσθιον ἐκείνην τὴν ἡμέρᾶν.*[8] 3. *ἐὰν μὴ πριώμεθα, τὰ ἐπιτήδεια οὐχ ἕξομεν.* 4. Κλέαρχος δὲ εἶπε τάδε. 5. *τούτους δὲ κελεύει κατιδόντας τὰ ὑπὲρ τοῦ λόφου*[9] *τί ἐστιν*[10] *ἀπαγγεῖλαι.* 6. *τούτους, ἢν πως δυνώμεθα, καὶ ὠμοὺς δεῖ καταφαγεῖν.* 7. *τὰ δὲ ἐπιτήδεια ὠνεῖσθαι κρεῖττον*[11] *ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς.* 8. *καὶ οἱ ὄνοι προέδραμον.* 9. *διελθόντες δὲ τρεῖς σταθμοὺς ἀφίκοντο πρὸς τὸ Μηδίᾶς καλούμενον*[12] *τεῖχος.* 10. *πολλοὺς δὲ πῡροὺς καὶ κρῑθᾶς φέρει τὸ πεδίον.* 11. *ταύτην δὴ τὴν πάροδον Κῦρός τε καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ παρῆλθεν.* 12. *ταῦτα δ' εἰπὼν εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ χώρᾶν ἀπῆλαυνεν.* 13. *κρέα οὖν ἐσθίοντες οἱ στρατιῶται διεγίγνοντο.* 14. *πρὸς τοῦτον οὖν ἔφη βουλεσθαι*[13] *ἐλθεῖν.* 15. *ἐνταῦθα καὶ τὸν ἐγκέφαλον τοῦ φοίνῑκος πρῶτον ἔφαγον οἱ στρατιῶται.* 16. *οὐκ ἀποπεφεύγᾶσιν· ἔχω γὰρ τριήρεις ὥστε*[14] *ἑλεῖν τὸ ἐκείνων πλοῖον.* 17. *οἱ δ' ἐκέλευον αὐτοὺς ἐμφαγόντας πορεύεσθαι.* 18. *τὰ*

[1] The theme assumes *ε* (*cf.* 605).
[2] Sometimes in the form *ενεγκ-*, with inserted nasal, as in verbs of the fifth class (626 a).
[3] A first aor. formed irregularly without *σ*.
[4] See p. 209[1].
[5] A second aor. of the *-μι* form. See 646.
[6] See p. 83[8].
[7] See p. 251[1].
[8] *Cf.* 284, I. 11.
[9] *Cf.* 482, I. 14.
[10] The subj. of *ἐστίν* refers to *τὰ ὑπὲρ τοῦ λόφου*.
[11] See p. 224[2].
[12] (*so*) *called*.
[13] He said, *βούλομαι*. See 354.
[14] *Cf.* 601, I. 6.

δ' ἅρματα ἐφέροντο δι' αὐτῶν τῶν πολεμίων. 19. Κῦρος δὲ ἔχων οὓς[1] εἴρηκα ὡρμᾶτο ἀπὸ Σάρδεων. 20. δείσᾱς μὴ οὐ πρῶτος παραδράμοι εἰς τὸ χωρίον, χωρεῖ αὐτὸς καὶ παρέρχεται πάντας. 21. καὶ προσελθὼν ἄνθρωπος ἠρώτησε τοὺς προφύλακας ποῦ ἂν ἴδοι Πρόξενον ἢ Κλέαρχον. 22. αἱρήσομαι δ' οὖν ὑμᾶς καὶ οὔποτε ἐρεῖ οὐδείς[2] ὡς ἐγὼ προδοὺς τοὺς Ἕλληνας τὴν τῶν βαρβάρων φιλίᾱν εἱλόμην.

II. 1. For they ran much[3] faster than the horses.[4] 2. He captured many of them alive. 3. Many deserted[5] from the king to Cyrus. 4. And they chose men and sent (them) with Clearchus. 5. But when they had come together,[6] Clearchus spoke as follows. 6. They ran back to the river. 7. When he had said this,[7] he dismissed the messengers. 8. He saw the tents where the Cilicians had been on guard.[8] 9. The Greeks went to their tents with a roar of laughter. 10. But these have eaten a little. 11. And instructions have been given[9] the cavalry to go in pursuit. 12. He ran forward from the tree two or three strides.[10]

658. R. **φερ, fer,** *bear.*

φέρ-ω, *bear, bring;* δια-φέρω, *bear apart, differ,* part. διαφέρων, -ουσα, -ον, *differing;* διαφερόντως, adv., *differently* from others, *peculiarly, surpassingly;* **φορ-ά,** -ᾶς, *a carrying or taking;* μισθο-φορά, -ᾶς (μισθό-ς, *wages*), *wages received, pay;* **φόρ-ο-ς,** ὁ, *what is brought in, tribute;* φορέ-ω, *keep bringing, carry habitually, wear;* γερρο-φόρο-ς, -ο-ν (γέρρο-ν, *wicker-shield*), *carrying wicker-shields;* διά-φορο-ς, -ο-ν, *bearing apart, different;* δορυ-φόρο-ς, ὁ (δόρυ, *spear*), *one who carries a spear;* δρεπανη-φόρο-ς, -ο-ν (δρέπανο-ν, *scythe*), *scythe-bearing;* μισθο-φόρο-ς, -ο-ν (μισθό-ς, *wages*), *receiving pay, mercenary;* σκευο-φόρο-ς, -ο-ν (σκεύος, *gear*, plur. *baggage*), *baggage-carrying;* σκευοφορέ-ω, *carry baggage;* σύμ-φορο-ς, -ο-ν, *bearing together, i.e. fitting, useful, advantageous;* ὑδρο-φόρο-ς, -ο-ν (ὕδωρ, *water*), *carrying water;* ὑδροφορέ-ω, *carry water;* **φόρ-το-ς,** ὁ, *what is carried, load;* φορτ-ίο-ν, τό, *burden, load;* **φορ-εύ-ς,** -έ-ως, ὁ, *bearer, carrier;* ἀμφορεύ-ς, -έ-ως, ὁ (for ἀμφι-φορεύς, in Homer), *vessel with handles on both sides;*

---

[1] See 569.
[2] *Cf.* 611, I. 17.
[3] *Cf.* 470, I. 16.
[4] *Cf.* 485, I. 3.
[5] Use ἀπέρχομαι.
[6] Use the aor. indic. after ἐπειδή.
[7] *Cf.* I. 12 above.
[8] Use the impf.
[9] *instructions have been given,* εἴρηται.
[10] *Cf.* 219, I. 6.

δί-φρ-ο-ς, ὁ (δύο, 499), *that which holds two, chariot-board*; ἐν-δίφρ-ιο-ς, -ο-ν, *on the same seat* with one; ὀσ-φρ-αί-ο-μαι, 2 aor. ὠσ-φρ-ό-μην (stem οσ-φρο- for οδ-φρο-, ὄζω, *smell, cf.* εὐώδης, *fragrant*), *have an odour brought to one, smell.*

fer-ō, *bear*; **fer-ti-li-s**, *adj., fruitful*; **lūci-fer**, *adj., light-bringing*; **fōr-s**, *fōr-ti-s, f., chance*; **fōr-t-ūna**, *-ae, f., chance*; **fūr**, *fūr-is, m., thief.*

BEAR, BURDEN, BIER. *wheel*-BARROW. BIRTH. BAIRN: *para*-**phern**-*alia*. *Christo*-**pher**, *dia*-**phoretic**. *meta*-**phor**. *phos*-**phorus**.

LESSON XCVII.

Second Perfect System without Tense-Suffix.

659. A few verbs have second perfects and pluperfects formed without tense-suffix, after the analogy of verbs in **-μι**, the personal endings being added directly to the reduplicated theme. Thus, ἕσταμεν, *we stand*, τεθνᾶσι, *they are dead*.

Commit to memory the second perfect system without tense suffix of ἵστημι in 697.

a. The indicative singular is lacking.

b. The participle ἑστώς (for ἑ-στα-ώς) is inflected ἑστώς, ἑστῶσα, ἑστός, gen. ἑστῶτος, ἑστώσης, ἑστῶτος, *etc.*

660. Other verbs have forms in the second perfect system without suffix. Thus: —

1. **βαίνω** (βα-), *go* (646, 1), indic. βεβᾶσι, subjv. βεβῶσι, inf. βεβάναι, partic. βεβώς.

2. **θνῄσκω** (θαν-), *die* (642, 5), indic. τεθνᾶτον, τεθνᾶμεν, τεθνᾶσι, ἐτεθνᾶσαν, opt. τεθναίην, imv. τέθναθι, inf. τεθνάναι, partic. τεθνεώς (with ε for α, and uncontracted).

3. **δέδια** (δι-), *fear*,[1] δεδμεν, δεδτε, δεδιᾶσι, ἐδεδιεν, ἐδεδισαν, subjv. δεδίῃ, δεδίωσι, opt. δεδιείη, imv. δέδιθι, inf. δεδιέναι, partic. δεδιώς.

661. Here belongs also the irregular verb in **-μι**, οἶδα (ιδ-, ειδ-), *know*, a second perfect with present force, formed without reduplication, the pluperfect (as impf.) being ᾔδη or ᾔδειν, fut. εἴσομαι.

Commit to memory the paradigm of οἶδα in 698.

[1] This second pf. with pres. force is related to δείδω, *fear*, first aor. ἔδεισα, first pf. δέδοικα (with pres. force).

662. EXERCISES.

I. 1. οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι ἔστασαν ἀποροῦντες τῷ πράγματι.[1] 2. τεθνεῶτας πολλοὺς εὑρήσω. 3. οὐκ ἴστε ὅ τι ποιεῖτε. 4. ἐδέδισαν τὴν στρατιὰν οἱ τὴν μισθοφορὰν ὑπεσχημένοι. 5. καὶ νῦν δύο καλώ τε κἀγαθὼ ἄνδρε τέθνατον. 6. οἱ πολέμιοι οὐκ ἴσᾶσί πω τὴν ἡμετέρᾶν συμμαχίᾶν. 7. οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι ἐφέστασαν ἔξω τῶν δένδρων· οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἀσφαλὲς ἐν τοῖς δένδροις ἑστάναι πλεῖον[2] ἢ τὸν ἕνα λόχον. 8. ὁ δὲ τοὺς προδιαβεβῶτας λαβὼν ᾤχετο. 9. καὶ ταῦτα ποιεῖ δεδιὼς μὴ ἀποθάνῃ ὁ ἵππος. 10. εἰ ὑπὸ Λακεδαιμονίοις γένοιντο οἱ στρατιῶται, παντὸς ἂν προεσταίην[3] τοῦ στρατεύματος.[4] 11. ὅπως δὲ εἰδῆτε εἰς οἷον ἔρχεσθε ἀγῶνα, ἐγὼ ὑμᾶς εἰδὼς διδάξω. 12. πάρεστι δὲ ὁ σατράπης βουλόμενος εἰδέναι τί πρᾶχθήσεται. 13. τῷ δὲ ἀνδρὶ πείσομαι,[5] ἵνα εἰδῆτε ὅτι καὶ ἄρχεσθαι ἐπίσταμαι. 14. ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, τῶν Ἀρκάδων οἱ μὲν τεθνᾶσιν, οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ ἐπὶ λόφου τινὸς πολιορκοῦνται. 15. καὶ ὡς προθῡμοτάτοις οὖσιν ὑμῖν χάριν οἶδε Κῦρος. 16. καὶ ζῶντάς τινας αὐτῶν προυθῡμήθημεν[3] λαβεῖν αὐτοῦ τούτου ἕνεκα, ὅπως ἡγεμόσιν[6] εἰδόσι τὴν χώρᾶν χρησαίμεθα. 17. ἐλθὼν δ' ἐκεῖνος λέγει ὅτι ἄξει αὐτοὺς πέντε ἡμερῶν[7] εἰς χωρίον ὅθεν ὄψονται θάλατταν· εἰ δὲ μή, τεθνάναι ἐπηγγείλατο. 18. ὁ δὲ μάντις δεδιὼς μὴ γένηται ταῦτα ἐκφέρει εἰς τὸ στράτευμα τόνδε τὸν λόγον. 19. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ ἦλθεν Ἀρχαγόρᾶς ὁ Ἀργεῖος πεφευγώς, καὶ λέγει ὅτι τεθνᾶσιν οἱ ἄνθρωποι.

II. 1. For we know where[8] they are gone. 2. I wish to know how many are dead. 3. He wept a long[9] time standing. 4. But he at once drives away those standing round. 5. Cyrus kept finding[10] many pretexts, as *you* also well know. 6. For

---

[1] *Cf.* 579, I. 1.
[2] *a greater number*, the subj. of ἑστάναι.
[3] See p. 251[1].
[4] See p. 83[3].
[5] See 609, 2.
[6] *Cf.* 611, I. 8.
[7] *Cf.* 637, I. 2.
[8] ὅπη.
[9] Use πολύς.
[10] *Cf.* 614, II. 12.

know well that I should prefer freedom. 7. Know well that they will follow you and will try to imitate (you). 8. For he knew this. 9. Whether, then, I shall do what is just.[1] I do not know. 10. I am not willing to go, fearing that he may take me and inflict punishment on (me). 11. For you know that Xerxes has the middle of the Persian army. 12. They said that the generals knew this.

663. R. **Fιδ, uid,** *see, know.*

εἶδ-ο-ν (ιδ-), *saw*; **ἰδ-έᾱ, -ᾶς,** *look, form*; **εἶδ-ος, -ε-ος, τό,** *look, shape*; **εὐ-ειδής, -ες,** *good looking*; **θεο-ειδής, -ες** [R. 1 **θυ,** 537], *high-spirited*; **μηνο-ειδής, -ες** (**μήνη,** *moon*), *crescent-shaped*; **σφαιρ-ειδής, -ες** (**σφαῖρα,** *ball*), *ball-like, spherical*; **τιαρο-ειδής, -ες** (**τιάρα,** *tiara*), *tiara-shaped*; **ἀντρώδης, -ες** (for **ἀντρο-ειδης, ἀντρο-, cave**), *cave-like, cavernous*; **γε-ώδης, -ες** (**γῆ,** *earth*), *earthy, deep-soiled*; **εἴδ-ωλο-ν,** *τό, form, likeness, image*; **οἶδ-α,** *know*; **ἴσ-τωρ, -ορ-ος,** *ὁ, one who knows, wise man, judge*; **ἱστορ-ω,** *seek to know, learn*; **ἱστορ-ία, -ᾶς,** *knowledge got by inquiry.*

uid-e-ō, *see*; **uī-su-s,** *-ūs, m., look, vision*; **ē-uid-ēn-s,** *adj., looking out, obvious*; **prūdēn-s,** *adj., foreseeing, prudent*; **uī-tru-m,** *-ī, n., glass*; **uīs-ō,** *look at attentively.*

WISE, WISE-*acre*, WIT, WICKED, WITCH; **idea,** *sphere*-**oid,** *typh*-**oid, idol, history.**

LESSON XCVIII.

Irregular Verbs in -MI, *φημί, εἰμί, εἶμι.*

664. Certain important verbs follow the analogy of regular verbs in *-μι* in the present and second aorist systems, but are more or less irregular in formation. Some of them lack the second aorist system entirely. In their other systems, so far as these occur, they follow verbs in *-ω*. Thus: —

1. **φημί** (**φα-**), *say*, fut. **φήσω**, aor. **ἔφησα** (*Cf.* Lat. *fā-rī*.
2. **εἰμί** (**ἐσ-**), *be*, fut. **ἔσομαι**.[3] *Cf.* Lat. *es-se*.
3. **εἶμι** (**ι-**), *go*.[4] *Cf.* Lat. *ī-re*.

[1] *just (things)*.
[2] See 483.
[3] See 269.
[4] **εἶμι** has the force of a fut., especially in the pres. indic., *am going, i.e. shall go.*

Commit to memory the paradigms of *φημί*,[1] *εἰμί*, and *εἶμι* in 699, 700, 701.

Review 348 a, 184, 185, 186, 187, 188.

665. EXERCISES.

I. 1. *ἀλλ' ἐγώ φημι ταῦτα φλυᾱρίᾱς εἶναι.*[2] 2. *καὶ λέγεται ὡς καλοὶ πλοῖ εἰσιν εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα.* 3. *ἡμεῖς, ἢν σωφρονῶμεν, ἄπιμεν ἐντεῦθεν.* 4. *φησὶ δέ, ἂν πρὸς ἐκεῖνον ἴητε, εὖ ποίησειν*[3] *ὑμᾶς.* 5. *ἐδόκει Κῦρος εἰς τὴν ἐπιοῦσαν ἕως ἥξειν βασιλέᾱ.* 6. *οὕτω γὰρ ἀπιόντες*[4] *ἀσφαλῶς ἂν ἀπίοιμεν.* 7. *παρὰ Κύρου δούλου ὄντος*[5] *οὐδεὶς ἀπῄει πρὸς βασιλέᾱ.* 8. *κώμᾱς δὲ κατακαύσαντες ἔνθεν ἐξῄεσαν.* 9. *ἐμοί, ὦ ἄνδρες, θῡομένῳ ἰέναι*[6] *ἐπὶ βασιλέᾱ οὐκ ἐγίγνετο τὰ ἱερά.* 10. *ἐνῆν*[7] *δὲ ἐν τῇ ἐπιστολῇ καὶ τῆς πρόσθεν φιλίᾱς ὑπομνήματα καὶ πίστεως.* 11. *ὑμεῖς δὲ οὐκ ἦτε εἰς τὴν χώρᾱν.* 12. *καὶ οὐδὲν*[8] *μέντοι οὐδὲ τοῦτον παθεῖν ἔφασαν.* 13. *τὰ δὲ πλοῖα Ἀβροκόμᾱ προϊὼν κατέκαυσεν, ἵνα μὴ Κῦρος διαβαίη.* 14. *νῦν μὲν οὖν ἄπιτε, καταλιπόντες τόνδε τὸν ἄνδρα· ὕστερον δὲ πάρεστε πρὸς τὴν κρίσιν.* 15. *τῆς νυκτὸς προελθόντες καταλαμβάνουσι χωρίον ὑπερδέξιον οἱ βάρβαροι, ᾗ ἔμελλον οἱ Ἕλληνες παριέναι, ἀκρωνυχίᾱν*[9] *ὄρους, ὑφ' ἣν ἡ κατάβασις ἦν εἰς τὸ πεδίον.* 16. *καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐσάλπιγξε, προβαλλόμενοι τὰ ὅπλα ἐπῄεσαν.* 17. *καὶ οὔ φᾱσιν ἰέναι, ἐὰν μή τις αὐτοῖς χρήματα διδῷ.* 18. *ἢν δ' ἀποψηφίσωνται οἱ ἄλλοι, ἄπιμεν ἅπαντες.* 19. *τέλος δὲ εἶπε, Καὶ νῦν ἔξεστιν ὑμῖν πιστὰ λαβεῖν παρ' ἡμῶν ἢ μὴν φιλίᾱν παρέξειν ὑμῖν*

[1] The partic. *φάς* is never used in Attic prose, but instead of this *φάσκων* occurs.

[2] See 354.

[3] See 354. The unexpressed subj. of the infin. (350) is the same as that of *φησί*. In the phrase *πρὸς ἐκεῖνον*, *πρός* means *against*.

[4] *Cf.* 560, I. 10.

[5] Concessive use of the partic. See 379.

[6] *for going.* Construe with *οὐκ ἐγίγνετο*, and *cf.* 524, I. 15.

[7] See p. 83[7].

[8] Construe with *παθεῖν*, and *cf.* 601, I. 16.

[9] In apposition (p. 25[8]) with *χωρίον*.

τὴν χώρᾱν καὶ ἀδόλως ἀπάξειν εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἀγορὰν παρέχοντας.[1] 20. *οὕτως οἱ δειλοὶ κύνες τοὺς μὲν παριόντας διώκουσί τε καὶ δάκνουσιν, ἢν δύνωνται, τοὺς δὲ διώκοντας φεύγουσιν.*

II. 1. They made the attack with a great shout. 2. He refused to go. 3. Let us go to the men. 4. They denied that there was another road. 5. Let the hoplites be at hand with their arms. 6. They desisted and went to their tents. 7. *I* say, therefore, that you ought to cross the Euphrates. 8. For what herald will be willing to go? 9. You got[2] your living by[3] robbery, as you yourself said. 10. The enemy advanced slowly. 11. But (while) saying this, he heard a noise[4] going through the ranks. 12. They went frequently to his headquarters and demanded their pay.

666. R. **εσ, es,** *live, be.*

εἰ-μί (for εσ-μι), **εἶ** (for εσ-ι, in Homer ἐσ-σι), *etc., be*; part. **ὤν, οὖσα, ὄν,** gen. **ὄντ-ος,** *etc.* (stem **οντ-**), older form **ἐ-ων,** *etc.* (stem **ε-οντ-** for **εσ-οντ-**); **οὐσ-ία, -ᾱς** (for **οντ-ια**), *property* (that which is), *being, existence*; **ἐξ-ουσία, -ᾱς,** *possibility, power* (*cf.* ἔξ-εστι, *it is free to one, it is allowed*); **συν-ουσία, -ᾱς,** *a being together*, **ἔτ ᾰζω** (from a stem **ετ-**, for **σ-ετ-**), *examine, test* (see if a thing *is*); **ἐξ-ετ-ᾰζω,** *examine closely, inspect*; **ἐξετα-σι-ς, -ε-ως, ἡ,** *examination, inspection, review*; **ἐτ-υ-μο-ς,** **-ο-ν** (**ετ-ε-** for **σ-ετ-ε-**), *true, actual*; **ἔτ οι μο-ς, η, -ο-ν** or **-ω-ς, -ο-ν** (**ἑτ-** for **σ-ετ-**), *real, ready, prepared*; **ἑτοίμως,** adv., *readily*; **ἐύς** (for **εσ-υ-ς**), *real, true, good*; neut. contracted as adv., *εὖ, well.*

s-u-m (for *es-u-m*), *be*, inf. **es-se**; **ab sēn-s,** *adj., absent*; **prae-sēn-s,** *adj., present*; **s-ō n-s,** *adj., the real one, guilty, criminal*; **er-u-s,** *-ī, m., master, lord.*

AM, ART, IS, ARE, SOOTH, SIN; **etymo**-*logy*, **eu**-*logy*, **ev**-*angelist.*

NOTE. — The group of Greek words is remarkable as showing in nearly all of the words a complete loss of the root. The Latin words all preserve traces of it.

---

[1] Agrees with ἡμᾶς to be supplied as subj. of παρέξειν and ἀπάξειν.

[2] Use ἔχω.

[3] Use ἀπό.

[4] See p. 63 [3].

LESSON XCIX.

Irregular Verbs in -MI (continued), *ἵημι, κεῖμαι, ἧμαι.*

667. Other important irregular verbs in *-μι* (664) are the following: —

1. **ἵημι** (ἑ-), *send*,
   ἥσω **ἧκα**[1] **εἶκα**[2] **εἷμαι** **εἵθην**
2. **κεῖμαι** (κει-), *lie, be laid*, fut. **κείσομαι.**
3. **ἧμαι** (ἡσ-),[3] *sit*, commonly in the compound form *κάθημαι* in Attic prose.

Commit to memory the paradigms of *ἵημι, κεῖμαι*, and *κάθημαι* in 702, 703, 704.

668. EXERCISES.

I. 1. *ἐπὶ τοῦ ἅρματος καθήμενος τὴν πορείαν ἐποιεῖτο.* 2. *ὡς εἶδε τὸν στρατηγὸν διελαύνοντα, ἵησι τῇ ἀξίνῃ.* 3. *τοῖς διαβαίνουσιν*[4] *ἐπικείσονται οἱ Καρδοῦχοι ὄπισθεν.* 4. *τί κατάκειμαι ; ἡ δὲ νὺξ προβαίνει.* 5. *ἦν δὲ τὸ τεῖχος ᾠκοδομημένον πλίνθοις ὀπταῖς ἐν ἀσφάλτῳ κειμέναις.* 6. *εὐθὺς ἵεντο ἄνω κατὰ τὴν φανερὰν ὁδόν.* 7. *οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι δείσαντες ἧκαν ἑαυτοὺς κατὰ τῆς χιόνος εἰς τὴν νάπην.* 8. *οὗτοι δέ, ὅτι οὐκ ἤθελε τοὺς φεύγοντας προέσθαι, ἐφοβοῦντο αὐτόν.* 9. *ἐμελέτων τοξεύειν ἄνω τὰ τοξεύματα ἱέντες μακράν.*[5] 10. *ἐν μέσῳ γὰρ ἤδη κεῖται ταῦτα τὰ ἀγαθά.* 11. *αἱ δὲ βάλανοι τῶν φοινίκων, οἵᾱς ἐν τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἔστιν*[6] *ἰδεῖν, τοῖς οἰκέταις*[7] *ἀπέκειντο.* 12. *κράτιστον,*[8] *ὦ Χειρίσοφε, ἡμῖν*

[1] Compare the first aor. forms of *τίθημι* and *δίδωμι*, 636 e and 639 e.

[2] See p. 83[8].

[3] *σ* of the theme is retained only in the forms *ἧσται, ἧστο*, and not always here.

[4] *Cf.* 129, I. 10.

[5] *to a great height. Sc. ὁδόν* and *cf.* 219, I. 6.

[6] See 188 a.

[7] *Cf.* 106, I. 10.

[8] See p. 224[2].

ἵεσθαι ὡς τάχιστα ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον. 13. *καὶ γὰρ οὐδὲ πόρρω δοκοῦμέν μοι Κύρου*[1] *καθῆσθαι.* 14. *ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες λοχᾶγοί, οὔτε καθεύδειν δύναμαι οὔτε κατακεῖσθαι*[2] *ἔτι.* 15. *τούτου ἕνεκα βασιλέᾶ ὑπώπτευεν ἐπὶ τὸ πεδίον τὸ ὕδωρ ἀφεικέναι.* 16. *ἐνταῦθ' ἐκτραπόμενοι ἐκάθηντο, καὶ οὐκ ἔφασαν πορεύεσθαι.* 17. *ἔνθα δὴ Πολυκράτης Ἀθηναῖος λοχᾶγὸς ἐκέλευσεν ἀφιέναι*[3] *ἑαυτόν.* 18. *ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν πρὸς τεῖχος ἔρημον μέγα, πρὸς τῇ πόλει κείμενον.* 19. *πολλοὶ δὲ ἀντιλέγουσιν ὡς οὐκ ἄξιόν ἐστι βασιλεῖ ἀφεῖναι τοὺς ἐφ' ἑαυτὸν στρατευσαμένους.*

II. 1. Straightway they rushed into the boats. 2. And many were lying outstretched. 3. But they let their dogs loose at night.[4] 4. The snow concealed the arms and the men as they lay asleep.[5] 5. If you will make known the one who let the ass loose,[6] you shall receive a reward. 6. But when the trumpet sounded, they charged upon the enemy. 7. They surprised the guards sitting about a fire. 8. He says he will never abandon his friends. 9. But having said, "I see the man," he rushed at him. 10. They let them go when they had served[7] breakfast to them. 11. The enemy were encamped in[8] the open road. 12. They were eager to intrust to him money, cities, their own lives.

669. **κεῖμαι**, *lie.*

κεῖ-μαι, *lie*; **κοι-μά-ω**, *lay to rest*; **κῶ-μο-ς**, *ὁ, banquet* (where the guests reclined); **κώ-μη**, *-ης, dwelling-place, village* ('resting-place'); **κωμ-άρχη-ς**, *-ου* (R. **αρχ**, 463), *village chief*; **κωμη-τη-ς**, *-ου, villager*; **κῶ-μα**, *-ατ-ος, τ', deep sleep.*

cī-ui-s, *-is, m., citizen*; **tran-qui-llu-s**, *adj., quiet*; **quiē-s**, *-ētis, f., a lying still, rest*; **quiē-sc-ō**, *keep quiet, rest.*

---

[1] See p. 28[1].

[2] The infin. *κεῖσθαι* retains its accent in compounds, *i.e.* the accent is not recessive.

[3] *Sc.* *αὐτούς* as subj. of *ἀφιέναι.*

[4] *τὰς νύκτας.* *Cf.* 239, II. 9.

[5] *as they lay asleep*, use the partic.

[6] See 371.

[7] Use the partic.

[8] Use *ἐπί* with dat.

LESSON C.

Review of Groups. — Reading Lesson.

Review the groups of related words in 638, 641, 644, 649, 654, 658, 663, 666, 669.

Review 140, 142.

Read and translate again 630.

Read and translate the following passage: —

670. Κῦρος.

Χ. καὶ οὐκέτι τρία ἢ τέτταρα στάδια διειχέτην τὼ φάλαγγε ἀπ' ἀλλήλων ἡνίκα ἐπαιάνιζόν τε οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ προῄρχοντο ἀντίοι ἰέναι τοῖς πολεμίοις. ὡς δ' ἐξεκύμαινέ τι τῆς Ἑλληνικῆς φάλαγγος, τὸ ἐπιλειπόμενον ἤρξατο δρόμῳ θεῖν· καὶ ἅμα ἐφθέγξαντο πάντες οἱόνπερ τῷ Ἐνυαλίῳ ἐλελίζουσι, καὶ πάντες δὲ ἔθεον. πρὶν δὲ τόξευμα ἐξικνεῖσθαι, ἐκκλίνουσιν οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ φεύγουσι. καὶ ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐδίωκον οἱ Ἕλληνες.

Κῦρος δ' ὁρῶν τοὺς Ἕλληνας νῑκῶντας τὸ καθ' αὑτοὺς καὶ διώκοντας, ἡδόμενος καὶ προσκυνούμενος ἤδη ὡς βασιλεὺς ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφ' αὐτόν, οὐδ' ὡς ἐξήχθη διώκειν, ἀλλὰ συνεσπειρᾱμένην ἔχων τὴν τῶν σὺν ἑαυτῷ ἑξακοσίων ἱππέων τάξιν ἐπεμελεῖτο ὅ τι ποιήσει βασιλεύς. οὗτος δὲ μέσον ἔχων τῆς αὑτοῦ στρατιᾶς ὅμως ἔξω ἐγένετο τοῦ Κύρου εὐωνύμου κέρᾱτος. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδεὶς αὐτῷ ἐμάχετο ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου, ἐπέκαμπτεν ὡς εἰς κύκλωσιν. ἔνθα δὴ Κῦρος ἐλαύνει ἀντίος· καὶ ἐμβαλὼν σὺν τοῖς ἑξακοσίοις νῑκᾷ τοὺς πρὸ βασιλέως τεταγμένους καὶ εἰς φυγὴν ἔτρεψεν. ὡς δ' ἡ τροπὴ ἐγένετο, διασπείρονται καὶ οἱ Κύρου ἑξακόσιοι εἰς τὸ διώκειν ὁρμήσαντες, πλὴν πάνυ ὀλίγοι ἀμφ' αὐτὸν κατελείφθησαν. σὺν τούτοις δὲ ὢν καθορᾷ βασιλέᾱ· καὶ εὐθὺς οὐκ ἠνέσχετο, ἀλλ' εἰπὼν Τὸν ἄνδρα ὁρῶ, ἴετο ἐπ' αὐτὸν καὶ παίει κατὰ τὸ στέρνον καὶ τιτρώσκει

διὰ τοῦ θώρᾱκος. παίοντα δ' αὐτὸν ἀκοντίζει τις παλτῷ ὑπὸ τὸν ὀφθαλμὸν βιαίως· καὶ ἐνταῦθα μαχόμενοι καὶ βασιλεὺς καὶ Κῦρος καὶ οἱ ἀμφ' αὐτοὺς ὑπὲρ ἑκατέρου, ὁπόσοι μὲν τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλέᾱ ἀπέθνησκον Κτησίᾱς λέγει· παρ' ἐκείνῳ γὰρ ἦν· Κῦρος δὲ αὐτός τε ἀπέθανε καὶ ὀκτὼ οἱ ἄριστοι τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν ἔκειντο ἐπ' αὐτῷ. οὕτως οὖν ἐτελεύτησεν ὁ Κῦρος.

NOTES.

3. **ἐξεκύμαινέ τι τῆς φάλαγγος.** *a part of the phalanx surged forward.* — 5. **οἰόνπερ,** *just as.* — 6. **πρὶν . . . ἐξικνεῖσθαι**: *cf.* 487, line 13, and note. — 10. **ἡδόμενος. προσκυνούμενος**: concessive (379), *although he was pleased, etc.* — 12. **συνεσπειραμένην**: pf. of συ-σπειράομαι. — 13. **οὗτος δὲ . . . κέρᾱτος**: the king's forces in this battle numbered 900,000. — 16. **ὡς εἰς κύκλωσιν**, *as if to encircle them.* — 22. **ἠνέσχετο**: double augment, ἀνέχω here taking the augment both before and after the preposition. — 24. **αὐτόν**: *i.e.* Cyrus. — 25. **μαχόμενοι . . . ἑκατέρου**: the construction begun by these subjects is not finished, but breaks off suddenly in the indirect question ὁπόσοι . . . ἀπέθνησκον. It is partially resumed in the following **Κῦρος δὲ . . . αὐτῷ**. — 29. **ἔκειντο,** *lay dead.*

Translate the following passage into Greek: —

671. All were armed with cuirasses and helmets except Cyrus, but he took his place in the battle with his head unprotected. It was now afternoon, and the king and his troops were in plain sight. There were 900,000 of these and 150 chariots. On the enemies' left were cavalry in white cuirasses. Tissaphernes was said to be their commander. The barbarian force came on in even line, but the Greek force was still getting into position. But when the Greeks raised the paean and charged double quick, the barbarians gave way and fled. Thereupon the Greeks pursued with might and main, while Cyrus with his 600 cavalry attacked and routed the enemies' centre, and he himself with his own hand wounded the king. There in the fight Cyrus proved himself a brave man; but at last he was himself slain, and all his table-companions lay dead upon his body. Thus died Cyrus, the son of Darius.

INFLEXION OF VERBS.

Index of Paradigms.

		PAGE
ἄγω:	Perfect Middle System of Palatal Mute Verbs, § 684	289
δείκνῡμι:	Present System, § 692	295
δίδωμι:	Present System, § 690	293
	Second Aorist System, § 694	296
δύω:	Second Aorist System, § 696	297
εἰμί:	Paradigm, § 700	299
εἶμι:	Paradigm, § 701	299
ἵημι:	Paradigm, § 702	300
ἵστημι:	Present System, § 691	294
	Second Aorist System, § 695	297
	Second Perfect System without Suffix, § 697	297
κάθημαι:	Paradigm, § 704	301
κεῖμαι:	Paradigm, § 703	301
λείπω:	Second Aorist System, § 689	287
	Second Perfect System, § 681	287
	Perfect Middle System of Labial Mute Verbs, § 683	288
λύω:	Present System, § 672	282
	Future System, § 673	283
	First Aorist System, § 674	283
	First Perfect System, § 675	284
	Perfect Middle System, § 676	284, 285
	First Passive System, § 677	285
οἶδα:	Paradigm, § 698	298
πείθω:	Perfect Middle System of Lingual Mute Verbs, § 685	289
στέλλω:	Perfect Middle System of Liquid Verbs, § 686	290
	Second Passive System, § 688	291
τελέω:	Perfect Middle System of Vowel Verbs with added σ, § 682	288
τίθημι:	Present System, § 689	292
	Second Aorist System, § 693	296
φαίνω:	Future System of Liquid Verbs, § 678	286
	First Aorist System of Liquid Verbs, § 679	286
	Perfect Middle System of Liquid Verbs, § 687	290
φημί:	Paradigm, § 699	298

672. *Present System of λύω, loose.*

		Active.		Middle and Passive.	
		Present.	Imperfect.	Present.	Imperfect.
Indicative.	S. 1	λύω	ἔ-λῡο-ν	λύο-μαι	ἐ-λῡό-μην
	2	λύεις	ἔ-λῡε-ς	λύει	ἐ-λύου
	3	λύει	ἔ-λῡε	λύε-ται	ἐ-λύε-το
	D. 2	λύε-τον	ἐ-λύε-τον	λύε-σθον	ἐ-λύε-σθον
	3	λύε-τον	ἐ-λῡέ-την	λύε-σθον	ἐ-λῡέ-σθην
	P. 1	λύο-μεν	ἐ-λύο-μεν	λῡό-μεθα	ἐ-λῡό-μεθα
	2	λύε-τε	ἐ-λύε-τε	λύε-σθε	ἐ-λύε-σθε
	3	λύουσι	ἔ-λῡο-ν	λύο-νται	ἐ-λύο-ντο
		Present.		Present.	
Subjunctive.	S. 1	λύω		λύω-μαι	
	2	λύῃς		λύῃ	
	3	λύῃ		λύη-ται	
	D. 2	λύη-τον		λύη-σθον	
	3	λύη-τον		λύη-σθον	
	P. 1	λύω-μεν		λῡώ-μεθα	
	2	λύη-τε		λύη-σθε	
	3	λύωσι		λύω-νται	
Optative.	S. 1	λύοι-μι		λῡοί-μην	
	2	λύοι-ς		λύοι-ο	
	3	λύοι		λύοι-το	
	D. 2	λύοι-τον		λύοι-σθον	
	3	λῡοί-την		λῡοί-σθην	
	P. 1	λύοι-μεν		λῡοί-μεθα	
	2	λύοι-τε		λύοι-σθε	
	3	λύοιε-ν		λύοι-ντο	
Imperative.	S. 2	λῦε		λύου	
	3	λῡέ-τω		λῡέ-σθω	
	D. 2	λύε-τον		λύε-σθον	
	3	λῡέ-των		λῡέ-σθων	
	P. 2	λύε-τε		λύε-σθε	
	3	λῡό-ντων		λῡέ-σθων	
Infin.		λύειν		λύε-σθαι	
Partic.		λύων, -ουσα, -ον		λῡό-μενο-ς, -η, -ο-ν	

673.		*Future System of λῡ́ω.*		674. *First Aorist System of λῡ́ω.*	
		Active.	Middle.	Active.	Middle.
		Future.		First Aorist.	
Indicative.	S. 1	λῡ́σω	λῡ́σο-μαι	ἔ-λῡσα	ἐ-λῡσά-μην
	2	λῡ́σεις	λῡ́σει	ἔ-λῡσα-ς	ἐ-λῡ́σω
	3	λῡ́σει	λῡ́σε-ται	ἔ-λῡσε	ἐ-λῡ́σα-το
	D. 2	λῡ́σε-τον	λῡ́σε-σθον	ἐ-λῡ́σα-τον	ἐ-λῡ́σα-σθον
	3	λῡ́σε-τον	λῡ́σε-σθον	ἐ-λῡσά-την	ἐ-λῡσά-σθην
	P. 1	λῡ́σο-μεν	λῡσό-μεθα	ἐ-λῡ́σα-μεν	ἐ-λῡσά-μεθα
	2	λῡ́σε-τε	λῡ́σε-σθε	ἐ-λῡ́σα-τε	ἐ-λῡ́σα-σθε
	3	λῡ́σουσι	λῡ́σο-νται	ἔ-λῡσα-ν	ἐ-λῡ́σα-ντο
Subjunctive.	S. 1			λῡ́σω	λῡ́σω-μαι
	2			λῡ́σῃς	λῡ́σῃ
	3			λῡ́σῃ	λῡ́σῃ-ται
	D. 2			λῡ́σῃ-τον	λῡ́σῃ-σθον
	3			λῡ́σῃ-τον	λῡ́σῃ-σθον
	P. 1			λῡ́σω-μεν	λῡσώ-μεθα
	2			λῡ́σῃ-τε	λῡ́σῃ-σθε
	3			λῡ́σωσι	λῡ́σω-νται
Optative.	S. 1	λῡ́σοι-μι	λῡσοί-μην	λῡ́σαι-μι	λῡσαί-μην
	2	λῡ́σοι-ς	λῡ́σοι-ο	λῡ́σεια-ς, λῡ́σαι-ς	λῡ́σαι-ο
	3	λῡ́σοι	λῡ́σοι-το	λῡ́σειε, λῡ́σαι	λῡ́σαι-το
	D. 2	λῡ́σοι-τον	λῡ́σοι-σθον	λῡ́σαι-τον	λῡ́σαι-σθον
	3	λῡσοί-την	λῡσοί-σθην	λῡσαί-την	λῡσαί-σθην
	P. 1	λῡ́σοι-μεν	λῡσοί-μεθα	λῡ́σαι-μεν	λῡσαί-μεθα
	2	λῡ́σοι-τε	λῡ́σοι-σθε	λῡ́σαι-τε	λῡ́σαι-σθε
	3	λῡ́σοιε-ν	λῡ́σοι-ντο	λῡ́σεια-ν, λῡ́σαιε-ν	λῡ́σαι-ντο
Imperative.	S. 2			λῦσον	λῦσαι
	3			λῡσά-τω	λῡσά-σθω
	D. 2			λῡ́σα-τον	λῡ́σα-σθον
	3			λῡσά-των	λῡσά-σθων
	P. 2			λῡ́σα-τε	λῡ́σα-σθε
	3			λῡσά-ντων	λῡσά-σθων
Infin.		λῡ́σειν	λῡ́σε-σθαι	λῦσαι	λῡ́σα-σθαι
Partic.		λῡ́σων, -ουσα, -ον	λῡσό-μενο-ς, -η, -ο-ν	λῡ́σᾱς, -σᾶσα, -σαν	λῡσά-μενο-ς, -η, -ο-ν

675. *First Perfect System of λύω.*

676. *Perfect Middle System of λύω* (see next page).

			ACTIVE.		MIDDLE and PASSIVE.	
			First Perf.	First Plup.	Perfect.	Pluperfect.
Indicative.	S.	1	λέλυκα	ἐ-λελύκη	λέλυ-μαι	ἐ-λελύ-μην
		2	λέλυκα-s	ἐ-λελύκη-s	λέλυ-σαι	ἐ-λέλυ-σο
		3	λέλυκε	ἐ-λελύκει	λέλυ-ται	ἐ-λέλυ-το
	D.	2	λελύκα-τον	ἐ-λελύκε-τον	λέλυ-σθον	ἐ-λέλυ-σθον
		3	λελύκα-τον	ἐ-λελυκέ την	λέλυ-σθον	ἐ-λελύ-σθην
	P.	1	λελύκα-μεν	ἐ-λελύκε μεν	λελύ-μεθα	ἐ-λελύ-μεθα
		2	λελύκα-τε	ἐ-λελύκε-τε	λέλυ-σθε	ἐ-λέλυ-σθε
		3	λελύκᾱσι	ἐ-λελύκε-σαν	λέλυ-νται	ἐ-λέλυ-ντο
			First Perfect.		Perfect.	
Subjunctive.	S.	1	λελύκω		λελυ μένος (-η, -ον) ὦ	
		2	λελύκῃs		" ᾖs	
		3	λελύκῃ		" ᾖ	
	D.	2	λελύκη-τον		λελυ-μένω (-ᾱ, -ω) ἦτον	
		3	λελύκη-τον		" ἦτον	
	P.	1	λελύκω-μεν		λελυ-μένοι (-αι, -α) ὦμεν	
		2	λελύκη-τε		" ἦτε	
		3	λελύκωσι		" ὦσι	
Optative.	S.	1	λελύκοι-μι		λελυ-μένος (-η, -ον) εἴην	
		2	λελύκοι-s		" εἴης	
		3	λελύκοι		" εἴη	
	D.	2	λελύκοι-τον		λελυ-μένω (-ᾱ, -ω) εἶτον	εἴητον
		3	λελυκοί-την		" εἴτην	εἰήτην
	P.	1	λελύκοι-μεν		λελυ-μένοι (-αι, -α) εἶμεν	εἴημεν
		2	λελύκοι-τε		" εἶτε	εἴητε
		3	λελύκοιε-ν		" εἶεν	εἴησαν
Imperative.	S.	2			λέλυ-σο	
		3			λελύ-σθω	
	D.	2			λέλυ-σθον	
		3			λελύ-σθων	
	P.	2			λέλυ-σθε	
		3			λελύ-σθων	
Infin.			λελυκέ ναι		λελύ-σθαι	
Partic.			λελυκώς, -κυῖα, -κός		λελυ-μένο-s, -η, -ο-ν	

		Perfect Middle System of λύω (continued).	**677.** *First Passive System of λύω.*	
		Mid. and Pass.	Passive.	
		Future Perfect.	First Aorist.	First Future.
Indicative.	S. 1	λελύσο-μαι	ἐ-λύθη-ν	λυθήσο-μαι
	2	λελύσει	ἐ-λύθη-ς	λυθήσει
	3	λελύσε-ται	ἐ-λύθη	λυθήσε-ται
	D. 2	λελύσε-σθον	ἐ-λύθη-τον	λυθήσε-σθον
	3	λελύσε-σθον	ἐ-λυθή-την	λυθήσε-σθον
	P. 1	λελῡσό-μεθα	ἐ-λύθη-μεν	λυθησό-μεθα
	2	λελύσε-σθε	ἐ-λύθη-τε	λυθήσε-σθε
	3	λελύσο-νται	ἐ-λύθη-σαν	λυθήσον-ται
Subjunctive.	S. 1		λυθῶ	
	2		λυθῇς	
	3		λυθῇ	
	D. 2		λυθῆ-τον	
	3		λυθῆ-τον	
	P. 1		λυθῶ-μεν	
	2		λυθῆ-τε	
	3		λυθῶσι	
Optative.	S. 1	λελῡσοί-μην	λυθείη-ν	λυθησοί-μην
	2	λελύσοι-ο	λυθείη-ς	λυθήσοι-ο
	3	λελύσοι-το	λυθείη	λυθήσοι-το
	D. 2	λελύσοι σθον	λυθεῖ-τον or λυθείη-τον	λυθήσοι-σθον
	3	λελῡσοί-σθην	λυθεί-την λυθειή την	λυθησοί-σθην
	P. 1	λελῡσοί-μεθα	λυθεῖ μεν λυθείη μεν	λυθησοί-μεθα
	2	λελύσοι-σθε	λυθεῖ-τε λυθείη τε	λυθήσοι-σθε
	3	λελύσοι-ντο	λυθεῖε-ν λυθείη-σαν	λυθήσοι ντο
Imperative.	S. 2		λύθη-τι	
	3		λυθή-τω	
	D. 2		λύθη-τον	
	3		λυθή-των	
	P. 2		λύθη-τε	
	3		λυθέ-ντων	
Infin.		λελύσε-σθαι	λυθῆ-ναι	λυθήσε-σθαι
Partic.		λελυσό-μενο-ς, -η, -ο-ν	λυθείς, -εῖσα, -έν	λυθησό-μενο-ς, -η, -ο-ν

678.		*Future System of Liquid Verbs:* φαίνω (φαν-), *show.*		679. *First Aorist System of Liquid Verbs:* φαίνω (φαν-), *show.*	
		Active.	Middle.	Active.	Middle.
		Future.		First Aorist.	
Indicative.	S. 1	φανῶ	φανοῦ-μαι	ἔ-φηνα	ἐ-φηνά-μην
	2	φανεῖς	φανεῖ	ἔ-φηνα-ς	ἐ-φήνω
	3	φανεῖ	φανεῖ-ται	ἔ-φηνε	ἐ-φήνα-το
	D. 2	φανεῖ-τον	φανεῖ-σθον	ἐ-φήνα-τον	ἐ-φήνα-σθον
	3	φανεῖ-τον	φανεῖ-σθον	ἐ-φηνά-την	ἐ-φηνά-σθην
	P. 1	φανοῦ-μεν	φανού-μεθα	ἐ-φήνα-μεν	ἐ-φηνά-μεθα
	2	φανεῖ-τε	φανεῖ-σθε	ἐ-φήνα-τε	ἐ-φήνα-σθε
	3	φανοῦσι	φανοῦ-νται	ἔ-φηνα-ν	ἐ-φήνα-ντο
Subjunctive.	S. 1			φήνω	φήνω-μαι
	2			φήνῃς	φήνῃ
	3			φήνῃ	φήνη-ται
	D. 2			φήνη-τον	φήνη-σθον
	3			φήνη-τον	φήνη-σθον
	P. 1			φήνω-μεν	φηνώ-μεθα
	2			φήνη-τε	φήνη-σθε
	3			φήνωσι	φήνω-νται
Optative.	S. 1	φανοίη ν or φανοῖ-μι	φανοί-μην	φήναι-μι	φηναί-μην
	2	φανοίη-ς φανοῖ ς	φανοῖ-ο	φήνεια-ς, φήναι-ς	φήναι-ο
	3	φανοίη φανοῖ	φανοῖ-το	φήνειε, φήναι	φήναι-το
	D. 2	φανοῖ-τον	φανοῖ-σθον	φήναι-τον	φήναι-σθον
	3	φανοί-την	φανοί σθην	φηναί-την	φηναί-σθην
	P. 1	φανοῖ-μεν	φανοί μεθα	φήναι-μεν	φηναί-μεθα
	2	φανοῖ-τε	φανοῖ-σθε	φήναι-τε	φήναι-σθε
	3	φανοῖε-ν	φανοῖ-ντο	φήνεια-ν, φήναιε-ν	φήναι-ντο
Imperative.	S. 2			φῆνον	φῆναι
	3			φηνά-τω	φηνά-σθω
	D. 2			φήνα-τον	φήνα-σθον
	3			φηνά-των	φηνά-σθων
	P. 2			φήνα-τε	φήνα-σθε
	3			φηνά-ντων	φηνά-σθων
Infin.		φανεῖν	φανεῖ-σθαι	φῆναι	φῆνα-σθαι
Partic.		φανῶν, -οῦσα, -οῦν	φανού-μενο ς -η, -ο-ν	φήνᾶς, -ᾶσα, -αν	φηνά-μενο-ς, -η, -ο-ν

680. *Second Aorist System of* λείπω (λιπ-), *leave.*

		Active.	Middle.
		Second Aorist.	
Indicative.	S. 1	ἔ-λιπο-ν	ἐ-λιπό-μην
	2	ἔ-λιπε-ς	ἐ-λίπου
	3	ἔ-λιπε	ἐ-λίπε-το
	D. 2	ἐ-λίπε-τον	ἐ-λίπε-σθον
	3	ἐ-λιπέ-την	ἐ-λιπέ-σθην
	P. 1	ἐ-λίπο-μεν	ἐ-λιπό-μεθα
	2	ἐ-λίπε-τε	ἐ-λίπε-σθε
	3	ἔ-λιπο-ν	ἐ-λίπο-ντο
Subjunctive.	S. 1	λίπω	λίπω-μαι
	2	λίπῃς	λίπῃ
	3	λίπῃ	λίπη-ται
	D. 2	λίπη-τον	λίπη-σθον
	3	λίπη-τον	λίπη-σθον
	P. 1	λίπω-μεν	λιπώ-μεθα
	2	λίπη-τε	λίπη-σθε
	3	λίπωσι	λίπω-νται
Optative.	S. 1	λίποι-μι	λιποί-μην
	2	λίποι-ς	λίποι-ο
	3	λίποι	λίποι-το
	D. 2	λίποι-τον	λίποι-σθον
	3	λιποί-την	λιποί-σθην
	P. 1	λίποι-μεν	λιποί-μεθα
	2	λίποι-τε	λίποι-σθε
	3	λίποιε-ν	λίποι-ντο
Imperative.	S. 2	λίπε	λιποῦ
	3	λιπέ-τω	λιπέ-σθω
	D. 2	λίπε-τον	λίπε-σθον
	3	λιπέ-των	λιπέ-σθων
	P. 2	λίπε-τε	λίπε-σθε
	3	λιπό-ντων	λιπέ-σθων
Infin.		λιπεῖν	λιπέ-σθαι
Partic.		λιπών, -οῦσα, -όν	λιπό-μενο-ς, -η, -ο-ν

681. *Second Perfect System of* λείπω (λιπ-), *leave.*

	Active.	
	Second Perf.	Second Plup.
S. 1	λέλοιπα	ἐ-λελοίπη
2	λέλοιπα-ς	ἐ-λελοίπη-ς
3	λέλοιπε	ἐ-λελοίπει
D. 2	λελοίπα-τον	ἐ-λελοίπε-τον
3	λελοίπα-τον	ἐ-λελοιπέ-την
P. 1	λελοίπα-μεν	ἐ-λελοίπε-μεν
2	λελοίπα-τε	ἐ-λελοίπε-τε
3	λελοίπᾶσι	ἐ-λελοίπε-σαν
	Second Perfect.	
S. 1	λελοίπω	
2	λελοίπῃς	
3	λελοίπῃ	
D. 2	λελοίπη-τον	
3	λελοίπη-τον	
P. 1	λελοίπω-μεν	
2	λελοίπη-τε	
3	λελοίπωσι	
S. 1	λελοίποι-μι	
2	λελοίποι-ς	
3	λελοίποι	
D. 2	λελοίποι-τον	
3	λελοιποί-την	
P. 1	λελοίποι-μεν	
2	λελοίποι-τε	
3	λελοίποιε-ν	
Infin.	λελοιπέ-ναι	
Partic.	λελοιπώς, υῖα, -ός	

682. *Perfect Middle System of Vowel Verbs with added σ:* τελέω (τελε-), *complete.*

		Middle and Passive.	
		Perfect.	Pluperfect.
Indicative.	S. 1	τετέλε-σ-μαι	ἐ-τετελέ-σ-μην
	2	τετέλε-σαι	ἐ-τετέλε-σο
	3	τετέλε-σ-ται	ἐ τετέλε-σ-το
	D. 2	τετέλε-σθον	ἐ-τετέλε-σθον
	3	τετέλε-σθον	ἐ-τετελέ-σθην
	P. 1	τετελέ-σ-μεθα	ἐ-τετελέ-σ-μεθα
	2	τετέλε-σθε	ἐ-τετέλε-σθε
	3	τετελε-σ-μένοι εἰσί	τετελε-σ-μένοι ἦσαν
		Perfect.	
Subjunctive.	S.	τετελε-σ-μένος ὦ, *etc.*	
	D.	τετελε-σ-μένω ἦτον, *etc.*	
	P.	τετελε σ-μένοι ὦμεν, *etc.*	
Optative.	S.	τετελε-σ-μένος εἴην, *etc.*	
	D.	τετελε-σ-μένω εἶτον, *etc.*	
	P.	τετελε-σ-μένοι εἶμεν, *etc.*	
Imperative.	S. 2	τετέλε-σο	
	3	τετελέ-σθω	
	D. 2	τετέλε-σθον	
	3	τετελέ-σθων	
	P. 2	τετέλε-σθε	
	3	τετελέ-σθων	
Infin.		τετελέ-σθαι	
Partic.		τετελε-σ-μένο-ς, -η, -ο-ν	
		Future Perfect.	
Indic. Opt. Infin. Partic.		Lacking.	

683. *Perfect Middle System of Labial Mut. Verbs:* λείπω (λιπ-), *leave.*

		Middle and Passive.	
		Perfect.	Pluperfect.
Indicative.	S. 1	λέλειμ-μαι	ἐ-λελείμ-μην
	2	λέλειψαι	ἐ-λέλειψο
	3	λέλειπ-ται	ἐ-λέλειπ-το
	D. 2	λέλειφ θον	ἐ-λέλειφ-θον
	3	λέλειφ-θον	ἐ-λελείφ-θην
	P. 1	λελείμ-μεθα	ἐ-λελείμ-μεθα
	2	λέλειφ-θε	ἐ-λέλειφ-θε
	3	λελειμ-μένοι εἰσί	λελειμ-μένοι ἦσαν
		Perfect.	
Subjunctive.	S.	λελειμ-μένος ὦ, *etc.*	
	D.	λελειμ-μένω ἦτον, *etc.*	
	P.	λελειμ-μένοι ὦμεν, *etc.*	
Optative.	S.	λελειμ-μένος εἴην, *etc.*	
	D.	λελειμ-μένω εἶτον, *etc.*	
	P.	λελειμ-μένοι εἶμεν, *etc.*	
Imperative.	S. 2	λέλειψο	
	3	λελείφ-θω	
	D. 2	λέλειφ-θον	
	3	λελείφ-θων	
	P. 2	λέλειφ-θε	
	3	λελείφ-θων	
Infin.		λελεῖφ-θαι	
Partic.		λελειμ-μένο-ς, -η, -ο-ν	
		Future Perfect.	
Indic.		λελείψο-μαι, *etc.*	
Opt.		λελειψοί-μην, *etc.*	
Infin.		λελείψε-σθαι	
Partic.		λελειψό-μενο-ς, -η, -ο-ν	

684.		*Perfect Middle System of Palatal Mute Verbs:* ἄγω (αγ-), *lead.*		685.	*Perfect Middle System of Lingual Mute Verbs:* πείθω (πιθ-), *persuade.*	
		Middle and Passive.			Middle and Passive.	
		Perfect.	Pluperfect.		Perfect.	Pluperfect.
Indicative.	S. 1	ἦγ-μαι	ἤγ-μην		πέπεισ-μαι	ἐ-πεπείσ-μην
	2	ἦξαι	ἦξο		πέπει-σαι	ἐ-πέπει-σο
	3	ἦκ-ται	ἦκ-το		πέπεισ-ται	ἐ-πέπεισ-το
	D. 2	ἦχ-θον	ἦχ-θον		πέπει-σθον	ἐ-πέπει-σθον
	3	ἦχ-θον	ἤχ-θην		πέπει-σθον	ἐ-πεπεί-σθην
	P. 1	ἤγ-μεθα	ἤγ-μεθα		πεπείσ-μεθα	ἐ-πεπείσ-μεθα
	2	ἦχ-θε	ἦχ-θε		πέπει-σθε	ἐ-πέπει-σθε
	3	ἠγ-μένοι εἰσί	ἠγ-μένοι ἦσαν		πεπεισ-μένοι εἰσί	πεπεισ-μένοι ἦσαν
		Perfect.			Perfect.	
Subjunctive.	S.	ἠγ-μένος ὦ, *etc.*			πεπεισ-μένος ὦ, *etc.*	
	D.	ἠγ-μένω ἦτον, *etc*			πεπεισ-μένω ἦτον, *etc.*	
	P.	ἠγ-μένοι ὦμεν, *etc.*			πεπεισ-μένοι ὦμεν, *etc.*	
Optative.	S.	ἠγ-μένος εἴην, *etc.*			πεπεισ-μένος εἴην, *etc.*	
	D.	ἠγ-μένω εἶτον, *etc.*			πεπεισ-μένω εἶτον, *etc.*	
	P.	ἠγ-μένοι εἶμεν, *etc.*			πεπεισ-μένοι εἶμεν, *etc.*	
Imperative.	S. 2	ἦξο			πέπει-σο	
	3	ἦχ-θω			πεπεί-σθω	
	D. 2	ἦχ-θον			πέπει-σθον	
	3	ἦχ-θων			πεπεί-σθων	
	P. 2	ἦχ-θε			πέπει-σθε	
	3	ἦχ-θων			πεπεί-σθων	
Infin.		ἦχ-θαι			πεπεῖ-σθαι	
Partic.		ἠγ-μένο-ς, -η, -ο-ν			πεπεισ-μένο-ς -η, -ο-ν	
		Future Perfect.			Future Perfect.	
Indic. Opt. Infin. Partic.		Lacking.			Lacking.	

686. *Perfect Middle System of Liquid Verbs:* στέλλω (στελ-), *send.*

687. *Perfect Middle System of Liquid Verbs:* φαίνω (φαν-), *show.*

		Middle and Passive.		Middle and Passive.	
		Perfect.	Pluperfect.	Perfect.	Pluperfect.
Indicative.	S. 1	ἔσταλ-μαι	ἐστάλ-μην	πέφασ-μαι	ἐ-πεφάσ-μην
	2	ἔσταλ-σαι	ἔσταλ-σο	Lacking.	Lacking.
	3	ἔσταλ-ται	ἔσταλ-το	πέφαν-ται	ἐ-πέφαν-το
	D. 2	ἔσταλ-θον	ἔσταλ-θον	πέφαν-θον	ἐ-πέφαν-θον
	3	ἔσταλ-θον	ἐστάλ-θην	πέφαν-θον	ἐ-πεφάν-θην
	P. 1	ἐστάλ-μεθα	ἐστάλ-μεθα	πεφάσ-μεθα	ἐ-πεφάσ-μεθα
	2	ἔσταλ-θε	ἔσταλ-θε	πέφαν-θε	ἐ-πέφαν-θε
	3	ἐσταλ-μένοι	ἐσταλ-μένοι	πεφασ-μένοι	πεφασ-μένοι
		εἰσί	ἦσαν	εἰσί	ἦσαν
		Perfect.		Perfect.	
Subjunctive.	S.	ἐσταλ-μένος ὦ, *etc.*		πεφασ-μένος ὦ, *etc.*	
	D.	ἐσταλ-μένω ἦτον, *etc.*		πεφασ μένω ἦτον, *etc.*	
	P.	ἐσταλ-μένοι ὦμεν, *etc.*		πεφασ μένοι ὦμεν, *etc.*	
Optative.	S.	ἐσταλ-μένος εἴην, *etc.*		πεφασ-μένος εἴην, *etc.*	
	D.	ἐσταλ-μένω εἶτον, *etc.*		πεφασ-μένω εἶτον, *etc.*	
	P.	ἐσταλ-μένοι εἶμεν, *etc.*		πεφασ-μένοι εἶμεν, *etc.*	
Imperative.	S. 2	ἔσταλ-σο		Lacking.	
	3	ἐστάλ-θω		πεφάν-θω	
	D. 2	ἔσταλ-θον		πέφαν-θον	
	3	ἐστάλ-θων		πεφάν-θων	
	P. 2	ἔσταλ-θε		πέφαν-θε	
	3	ἐστάλ-θων		πεφάν-θων	
Infin.		ἐστάλ-θαι		πεφάν-θαι	
Partic.		ἐσταλ-μένο-ς -η, -ο-ν		πεφασ-μένο-ς, -η, -ο-ν	
		Future Perfect.		Future Perfect.	
Indic. Opt. Infin. Partic.		Lacking.		Lacking.	

688. *Second Passive System of* στέλλω (στελ-), *send.*

		Passive.	
		Second Aorist.	Second Future.
Indicative.	S. 1	ἐ-στάλη-ν	σταλήσο-μαι
	2	ἐ-στάλη-ς	σταλήσει
	3	ἐ-στάλη	σταλήσε-ται
	D. 2	ἐ-στάλη-τον	σταλήσε-σθον
	3	ἐ-σταλή-την	σταλήσε-σθον
	P. 1	ἐ-στάλη-μεν	σταλησό-μεθα
	2	ἐ-στάλη-τε	σταλήσε-σθε
	3	ἐ-στάλη-σαν	σταλήσο-νται
Subjunctive.	S. 1	σταλῶ	
	2	σταλῇς	
	3	σταλῇ	
	D. 2	σταλῆ-τον	
	3	σταλῆ-τον	
	P. 1	σταλῶ-μεν	
	2	σταλῆ-τε	
	3	σταλῶσι	
Optative.	S. 1	σταλείη-ν	σταλησοί-μην
	2	σταλείη-ς	σταλήσοι-ο
	3	σταλείη	σταλήσοι-το
	D. 2	σταλεῖ-τον or σταλείη-τον	σταλήσοι-σθον
	3	σταλεί-την σταλειή-την	σταλησοί-σθην
	P. 1	σταλεῖ-μεν σταλείη-μεν	σταλησοί-μεθα
	2	σταλεῖ-τε σταλείη-τε	σταλήσοι-σθε
	3	σταλεῖε-ν σταλείη-σαν	σταλήσοι-ντο
Imperative.	S. 2	στάλη-θι	
	3	σταλή-τω	
	D. 2	στάλη-τον	
	3	σταλή-των	
	P. 2	στάλη-τε	
	3	σταλέ-ντων	
Infin.		σταλῆ-ναι	σταλήσε-σθαι
Partic.		σταλείς, -εῖσα, -έν	σταλησό-μενο-ς, -η, -ο-ν

VERBS IN -MI.

689. *Present System of τίθημι (θε-), place, put.*

			Active.		Middle and Passive.	
			Present.	Imperfect.	Present.	Imperfect.
Indicative.		S. 1	τί-θη-μι	ἐ-τί-θη-ν	τί-θε-μαι	ἐ-τι-θέ-μην
		2	τί-θη-ς	ἐ-τί-θεις	τί-θε-σαι	ἐ-τί-θε-σο
		3	τί-θη-σι	ἐ-τί-θει	τί-θε-ται	ἐ-τί-θε-το
		D. 2	τί-θε-τον	ἐ-τί-θε-τον	τί-θε-σθον	ἐ-τί-θε-σθον
		3	τί-θε-τον	ἐ-τι-θέ-την	τί-θε-σθον	ἐ-τι-θέ-σθην
		P. 1	τί-θε-μεν	ἐ-τί-θε-μεν	τι-θέ-μεθα	ἐ-τι-θέ-μεθα
		2	τί-θε-τε	ἐ-τί-θε-τε	τί-θε-σθε	ἐ-τί-θε-σθε
		3	τι-θέ ᾱσι	ἐ-τί-θε-σαν	τί-θε-νται	ἐ-τί-θε-ντο
			Present.		Present.	
Subjunctive.		S. 1	τι-θῶ		τι-θῶ-μαι	
		2	τι-θῇς		τι-θῇ	
		3	τι-θῇ		τι-θῇ-ται	
		D. 2	τι-θῆ-τον		τι-θῆ-σθον	
		3	τι-θῆ-τον		τι-θῆ-σθον	
		P. 1	τι-θῶ-μεν		τι-θώ-μεθα	
		2	τι-θῆ-τε		τι-θῆ-σθε	
		3	τι-θῶσι		τι-θῶ-νται	
Optative.		S. 1	τι-θείη-ν		τι-θεί-μην	
		2	τι-θείη-ς		τι-θεῖ-ο	
		3	τι-θείη		τι-θεῖ-το	
		D. 2	τι-θεῖ-τον or τι-θείη-τον		τι-θεῖ-σθον	
		3	τι-θεί-την	τι-θείη-την	τι-θεί-σθην	
		P. 1	τι-θεῖ-μεν	τι-θείη-μεν	τι-θεί-μεθα	
		2	τι-θεῖ-τε	τι-θείη-τε	τι-θεῖ-σθε	
		3	τι-θεί-ν	τι-θείη-σαν	τι-θεί-ντο	
Imperative.		S. 2	τί-θει		τί-θε-σο	
		3	τι-θέ-τω		τι-θέ-σθω	
		D. 2	τί-θε-τον		τί-θε-σθον	
		3	τι-θέ-των		τι-θέ-σθων	
		P. 2	τί-θε-τε		τί-θε-σθε	
		3	τι-θέ-ντων		τι-θέ-σθων	
Infin.			τι-θέ-ναι		τί-θε-σθαι	
Partic.			τι-θείς, -εῖσα, -έν		τι-θέ-μενο-ς, -η, -ο-ν	

VERBS IN -MI.

690. *Present System of* δίδωμι (δο-), *give.*

		ACTIVE.		MIDDLE and PASSIVE.	
		Present.	Imperfect.	Present.	Imperfect.
Indicative.	S. 1	δί-δω-μι	ἐ-δί-δουν	δί-δο-μαι	ἐ-δι-δό-μην
	2	δί-δω-ς	ἐ-δί-δους	δί-δο-σαι	ἐ-δί-δο-σο
	3	δί-δω-σι	ἐ-δί-δου	δί-δο-ται	ἐ-δί-δο-το
	D. 2	δί-δο-τον	ἐ-δί-δο-τον	δί-δο-σθον	ἐ-δί-δο-σθον
	3	δί-δο-τον	ἐ-δι-δό-την	δί-δο-σθον	ἐ-δι-δό-σθην
	P. 1	δί-δο-μεν	ἐ-δί-δο-μεν	δι-δό-μεθα	ἐ-δι-δό-αθμε
	2	δί-δο-τε	ἐ-δί-δο-τε	δί-δο-σθε	ἐ-δί-δο-σθε
	3	δι-δό-ᾶσι	ἐ-δί-δο-σαν	δί-δο-νται	ἐ-δί-δο-ντο
		Present.		Present.	
Subjunctive.	S. 1	δι-δῶ		δι-δῶ-μαι	
	2	δι-δῷς		δι-δῷ	
	3	δι-δῷ		δι-δῶ-ται	
	D. 2	δι-δῶ-τον		δι-δῶ-σθον	
	3	δι-δῶ-τον		δι-δῶ-σθον	
	P. 1	δι-δῶ-μεν		δι-δώ-μεθα	
	2	δι-δῶ-τε		δι-δῶ-σθε	
	3	δι-δῶσι		δι-δῶ-νται	
Optative.	S. 1	δι-δοίη-ν		δι-δοί-μην	
	2	δι-δοίη-ς		δι-δοῖ-ο	
	3	δι-δοίη		δι-δοῖ-το	
	D. 2	δι-δοῖ-τον or δι-δοίη-τον		δι-δοῖ-σθον	
	3	δι-δοί-την δι-δοιή-την		δι-δοί-σθην	
	P. 1	δι-δοῖ-μεν δι-δοίη-μεν		δι-δοί-μεθα	
	2	δι-δοῖ-τε δι-δοίη-τε		δι-δοῖ-σθε	
	3	δι-δοῖε-ν δι-δοίη-σαν		δι-δοῖ-ντο	
Imperative.	S. 2	δί-δου		δί-δο-σο	
	3	δι-δό-τω		δι-δό-σθω	
	D. 2	δί-δο-τον		δί-δο-σθον	
	3	δι-δό-των		δι-δό-σθων	
	P. 2	δί-δο-τε		δί-δο-σθε	
	3	δι-δό-ντων		δι-δό-σθων	
Infin.		δι-δό-ναι		δί-δο-σθαι	
Partic.		δι-δούς, -οῦσα, -όν		δι-δό-μενο-ς, -η, -ο ν	

Verbs in -MI.

691. *Present System of ἵστημι (στα-), set, make stand.*

		Active.		Middle and Passive.	
		Present.	Imperfect.	Present.	Imperfect.
Indicative.	S. 1	ἵ-στη-μι	ἵ-στη-ν	ἵ-στα-μαι	ἱ-στά-μην
	2	ἵ-στη-ς	ἵ-στη-ς	ἵ-στα-σαι	ἵ-στα-σο
	3	ἵ-στη-σι	ἵ-στη	ἵ-στα-ται	ἵ-στα-το
	D. 2	ἵ-στα-τον	ἵ-στα-τον	ἵ-στα-σθον	ἵ-στα-σθον
	3	ἵ-στα-τον	ἱ-στά-την	ἵ-στα-σθον	ἱ-στά-σθην
	P. 1	ἵ-στα-μεν	ἵ-στα-μεν	ἱ-στά-μεθα	ἱ-στά-μεθα
	2	ἵ-στα-τε	ἵ-στα-τε	ἵ-στα-σθε	ἵ-στα-σθε
	3	ἱ-στάσι	ἵ-στα-σαν	ἵ-στα-νται	ἵ-στα-ντο
		Present.		Present.	
Subjunctive.	S. 1	ἱ-στῶ		ἱ-στῶ-μαι	
	2	ἱ-στῇς		ἱ-στῇ	
	3	ἱ-στῇ		ἱ-στῆ-ται	
	D. 2	ἱ-στῆ-τον		ἱ-στῆ-σθον	
	3	ἱ-στῆ-τον		ἱ-στῆ-σθον	
	P. 1	ἱ-στῶ μεν		ἱ-στώ μεθα	
	2	ἱ-στῆ-τε		ἱ-στῆ-σθε	
	3	ἱ-στῶσι		ἱ-στῶ-νται	
Optative.	S. 1	ἱ-σταίη-ν		ἱ-σταί-μην	
	2	ἱ-σταίη-ς		ἱ-σταῖ-ο	
	3	ἱ-σταίη		ἱ-σταῖ-το	
	D. 2	ἱ-σταῖ-τον or ἱ-σταίη-τον		ἱ-σταῖ-σθον	
	3	ἱ-σταί-την ἱ-σταιή-την		ἱ-σταί-σθην	
	P. 1	ἱ-σταῖ-μεν ἱ-σταίη-μεν		ἱ-σταί-μεθα	
	2	ἱ-σταῖ-τε ἱ-σταίη-τε		ἱ-σταῖ-σθε	
	3	ἱ-σταῖε-ν ἱ-σταίη-σαν		ἱ-σταῖ-ντο	
Imperative.	S. 2	ἵ-στη		ἵ-στα-σο	
	3	ἱ-στά-τω		ἱ-στά-σθω	
	D. 2	ἵ-στα-τον		ἵ-στα-σθον	
	3	ἱ-στά-των		ἱ-στά-σθων	
	P. 2	ἵ-στα-τε		ἵ-στα-σθε	
	3	ἱ-στά-ντων		ἱ-στά-σθων	
Infin.		ἱ-στά-ναι		ἵ-στα-σθαι	
Partic.		ἱ-στάς, -ᾶσα, -ἀν		ἱ-στά-μενο-ς, -η, -ο-ν	

Verbs in -MI.

692. *Present System of* δείκνῡμι (δεικ-), *show.*

		Active.		Middle and Passive.	
		Present.	Imperfect.	Present.	Imperfect.
Indicative.	S. 1	δείκ-νῡ-μι	ἐ-δείκ-νῡ-ν	δείκ-νυ-μαι	ἐ-δεικ-νύ-μην
	2	δείκ-νῡ-ς	ἐ-δείκ-νῡ-ς	δείκ-νυ-σαι	ἐ-δείκ-νυ-σο
	3	δείκ-νῡ-σι	ἐ-δείκ-νῡ	δείκ-νυ-ται	ἐ-δείκ-νυ-το
	D. 2	δείκ-νυ-τον	ἐ-δείκ-νυ-τον	δείκ-νυ-σθον	ἐ-δείκ-νυ-σθον
	3	δείκ-νυ-τον	ἐ-δεικ-νύ-την	δείκ-νυ-σθον	ἐ-δεικ-νύ-σθην
	P. 1	δείκ-νυ-μεν	ἐ-δείκ-νυ-μεν	δεικ-νύ-μεθα	ἐ-δεικ-νύ-μεθα
	2	δείκ-νυ-τε	ἐ-δείκ-νυ-τε	δείκ-νυ-σθε	ἐ-δείκ-νυ-σθε
	3	δεικ-νύ-ᾱσι	ἐ-δείκ-νυ-σαν	δείκ-νυ-νται	ἐ-δείκ-νυ-ντο
		Present.		Present.	
Subjunctive.	S. 1	δεικνύω		δεικνύωμαι	
	2	δεικνύῃς		δεικνύῃ	
	3	δεικνύῃ		δεικνύηται	
	D. 2	δεικνύητον		δεικνύησθον	
	3	δεικνύητον		δεικνύησθον	
	P. 1	δεικνύωμεν		δεικνυώμεθα	
	2	δεικνύητε		δεικνύησθε	
	3	δεικνύωσι		δεικνύωνται	
Optative.	S. 1	δεικνύοιμι		δεικνυοίμην	
	2	δεικνύοις		δεικνύοιο	
	3	δεικνύοι		δεικνύοιτο	
	D. 2	δεικνύοιτον		δεικνύοισθον	
	3	δεικνυοίτην		δεικνυοίσθην	
	P. 1	δεικνύοιμεν		δεικνυοίμεθα	
	2	δεικνύοιτε		δεικνύοισθε	
	3	δεικνύοιεν		δεικνύοιντο	
Imperative.	S. 2	δείκ-νῡ		δείκ-νυ-σο	
	3	δεικ-νύ-τω		δεικ-νύ-σθω	
	D. 2	δείκ-νυ-τον		δείκ-νυ-σθον	
	3	δεικ-νύ-των		δεικ-νύ-σθων	
	P. 2	δείκ-νυ-τε		δείκ-νυ-σθε	
	3	δεικ-νύ-ντων		δεικ-νύ-σθων	
Infin.		δεικ-νύ-ναι		δείκ-νυ-σθαι	
Partic.		δεικ-νύς, -ῦσα, -ύν		δεικ-νύ-μενο-ς, -η, -ο-ν	

VERBS IN -MI.

693. *Second Aorist System of τίθημι (θε-), place, put.*

694. *Second Aorist System of δίδωμι (δο-), give.*

			ACTIVE.	MIDDLE.	ACTIVE.	MIDDLE.
			Second Aorist.		Second Aorist.	
Indicative.	S.	1		ἐ-θέ-μην		ἐ-δό-μην
		2	Lacking.	ἔ-θου	Lacking.	ἔ-δου
		3		ἔ-θε-το		ἔ-δο-το
	D.	2	ἔ-θε-τον	ἔ-θε-σθον	ἔ-δο-τον	ἔ-δο-σθον
		3	ἐ-θέ-την	ἐ-θέ-σθην	ἐ-δό-την	ἐ-δό-σθην
	P.	1	ἔ-θε-μεν	ἐ-θέ-μεθα	ἔ-δο-μεν	ἐ-δό-μεθα
		2	ἔ-θε-τε	ἔ-θε-σθε	ἔ-δο-τε	ἔ-δο-σθε
		3	ἔ-θε-σαν	ἔ-θε-ντο	ἔ-δο-σαν	ἔ-δο-ντο
Subjunctive.	S.	1	θῶ	θῶ-μαι	δῶ	δῶ-μαι
		2	θῇς	θῇ	δῷς	δῷ
		3	θῇ	θῆ-ται	δῷ	δῶ-ται
	D.	2	θῆ-τον	θῆ-σθον	δῶ-τον	δῶ-σθον
		3	θῆ-τον	θῆ-σθον	δῶ-τον	δῶ-σθον
	P.	1	θῶ-μεν	θώ-μεθα	δῶ-μεν	δώ-μεθα
		2	θῆ-τε	θῆ-σθε	δῶ-τε	δῶ-σθε
		3	θῶσι	θῶ-νται	δῶσι	δῶ-νται
Optative.	S.	1	θείη-ν	θεί-μην	δοίη-ν	δοί-μην
		2	θείη-ς	θεῖ-ο	δοίη-ς	δοῖ-ο
		3	θείη	θεῖ-το	δοίη	δοῖ-το
	D.	2	θεῖ-τον or θείη-τον	θεῖ-σθον	δοῖ-τον or δοίη-τον	δοῖ-σθον
		3	θεί-την θείη-την	θεί-σθην	δοί-την δοίη-την	δοί-σθην
	P.	1	θεῖ-μεν θείη-μεν	θεί-μεθα	δοῖ-μεν δοίη-μεν	δοί-μεθα
		2	θεῖ-τε θείη-τε	θεῖ-σθε	δοῖ-τε δοίη-τε	δοῖ-σθε
		3	θεῖε-ν θείη-σαν	θεῖ-ντο	δοῖε-ν δοίη-σαν	δοῖ-ντο
Imperative.	S.	2	θέ-ς	θοῦ	δό-ς	δοῦ
		3	θέ-τω	θέ-σθω	δό-τω	δό-σθω
	D.	2	θέ-τον	θέ-σθον	δό-τον	δό-σθον
		3	θέ-των	θέ-σθων	δό-τῶν	δό-σθων
	P.	2	θέ-τε	θέ-σθε	δό-τε	δό-σθε
		3	θέ-ντων	θέ-σθων	δό-ντων	δό-σθων
Infin.			θεῖναι	θέ-σθαι	δοῦναι	δό-σθαι
Part.			θείς, θεῖσα, θέ-ν	θέ-μενο-ς, -η, -ο-ν	δούς, δοῦσα, δό-ν	δό-μενο-ς, -η, -ο-ν

VERBS IN -MI.

		695. *Second Aorist System of ἵστημι (στα-), set.*	696. *Second Aor. System of δύω, enter.*	697. *Second Perf. System without Suffix of ἵστημι (στα-), set.*	
		ACTIVE.	ACTIVE.	ACTIVE.	
		Second Aor.	Second Aor.	Second Perf.	Second Plup.
Indicative.	S. 1	ἔ-στη-ν, *stood*	ἔ-δῡ-ν		
	2	ἔ-στη-ς	ἔ-δῡ-ς	Lacking.	Lacking.
	3	ἔ-στη	ἔ-δῡ		
	D. 2	ἔ-στη-τον	ἔ-δῡ-τον	ἕ-στα-τον	ἕ-στα-τον
	3	ἐ-στή-την	ἐ-δύ-την	ἕ-στα-τον	ἑ-στά-την
	P. 1	ἔ-στη-μεν	ἔ-δῡ-μεν	ἕ-στα-μεν	ἕ-στα-μεν
	2	ἔ-στη τε	ἔ-δῡ-τε	ἕ-στα-τε	ἕ-στα-τε
	3	ἔ-στη-σαν	ἔ-δῡ-σαν	ἑ-στᾶσι	ἕ-στα-σαν
				Second Perfect.	
Subjunctive.	S. 1	στῶ	δύω	ἑ-στῶ	
	2	στῇς	δύῃς	ἑ-στῇς	
	3	στῇ	δύῃ	ἑ-στῇ	
	D. 2	στῆ-τον	δύητον	ἑ-στῆ-τον	
	3	στῆ-τον	δύητον	ἑ-στῆ-τον	
	P. 1	στῶ-μεν	δύωμεν	ἑ-στῶ-μεν	
	2	στῆ-τε	δύητε	ἑ-στῆ-τε	
	3	στῶσι	δύωσι	ἑ-στῶσι	
Optative.	S. 1	σταίη-ν	Lacking.	ἑ-σταίη-ν	
	2	σταίη-ς		ἑ-σταίη-ς	
	3	σταίη		ἑ-σταίη	
	D. 2	σταῖ-τον or σταίη-τον		ἑ-σταῖ-τον or ἑ-σταίη-τον	
	3	σταί-την σταιή-την		ἑ-σταί-την ἑ-σταιή-την	
	P. 1	σταῖ-μεν σταίη-μεν		ἑ-σταῖ-μεν ἑ-σταίη-μεν	
	2	σταῖ-τε σταίη τε		ἑ-σταῖ-τε ἑ-σταίη-τε	
	3	σταῖε-ν σταίη-σαν		ἑ-σταῖε-ν ἑ-σταίη-σαν	
Imperative.	S. 2	στῆ-θι	δῦ-θι	ἕ-στα-θι	
	3	στή-τω	δύ-τω	ἑ-στά-τω	
	D. 2	στῆ-τον	δῦ-τον	ἕ-στα-τον	
	3	στή-των	δύ-των	ἑ-στά-των	
	P. 2	στῆ-τε	δῦ-τε	ἕ-στα-τε	
	3	στά-ντων	δύ-ντων	ἑ-στά-ντων	
Infin.		στῆ-ναι	δῦ-ναι	ἑ-στά-ναι	
Partic.		στάς, στᾶσα, στά-ν	δύς, δῦσα, δύ-ν	ἑ-στώς, ἑ-στῶσα, ἑ-στός	

Irregular Verbs in -MI.

		698. οἶδα (ἰδ-), *know*.		699. φημί (φα-), *say*.	
		Active.		Active.	
		Second Perf.	Second Pluperfect.	Present.	Imperfect.
Indicative.	S. 1	οἶδα	ᾔδη or ᾔδειν	φημί	ἔφην
	2	οἶσθα	ᾔδησθα or ᾔδεισθα	φῄς	ἔφησθα or ἔφης
	3	οἶδε	ᾔδει or ᾔδειν	φησί	ἔφη
	D. 2	ἴστον	ἦστον	φατόν	ἔφατον
	3	ἴστον	ἤστην	φατόν	ἐφάτην
	P. 1	ἴσμεν	ἦσμεν	φαμέν	ἔφαμεν
	2	ἴστε	ἦστε	φατέ	ἔφατε
	3	ἴσᾶσι	ἦσαν or ᾔδεσαν	φᾶσί	ἔφασαν
		Second Perfect.		Present.	
Subjunctive.	S. 1	εἰδῶ		φῶ	
	2	εἰδῇς		φῇς	
	3	εἰδῇ		φῇ	
	D. 2	εἰδῆτον		φῆτον	
	3	εἰδῆτον		φῆτον	
	P. 1	εἰδῶμεν		φῶμεν	
	2	εἰδῆτε		φῆτε	
	3	εἰδῶσι		φῶσι	
Optative.	S. 1	εἰδείην		φαίην	
	2	εἰδείης		φαίης	
	3	εἰδείη		φαίη	
	D. 2	εἰδεῖτον		φαῖτον	or φαίητον
	3	εἰδείτην		φαίτην	φαιήτην
	P. 1	εἰδεῖμεν	or εἰδείημεν	φαῖμεν	φαίημεν
	2	εἰδεῖτε	εἰδείητε	φαῖτε	φαίητε
	3	εἰδεῖεν	εἰδείησαν	φαῖεν	φαίησαν
Imperative.	S. 2	ἴσθι		φαθί	or φάθι
	3	ἴστω		φάτω	
	D. 2	ἴστον		φάτον	
	3	ἴστων		φάτων	
	P. 2	ἴστε		φάτε	
	3	ἴστων		φάντων	
Infin.		εἰδέναι		φάναι	
Partic.		εἰδώς, εἰδυῖα, εἰδός, gen. εἰδότος, *etc.*			

Irregular Verbs in -MI.

700. εἰμί (εσ-), *be*.

		Active.	
		Present.	Imperfect.
Indicative.	S. 1	εἰμί	ἦ or ἦν
	2	εἶ	ἦσθα
	3	ἐστί	ἦν
	D. 2	ἐστόν	ἦστον or ἦτον
	3	ἐστόν	ἤστην ἤτην
	P. 1	ἐσμέν	ἦμεν
	2	ἐστέ	ἦστε ἦτε
	3	εἰσί	ἦσαν
		Present.	
Subjunctive.	S. 1	ὦ	
	2	ᾖς	
	3	ᾖ	
	D. 2	ἦτον	
	3	ἦτον	
	P. 1	ὦμεν	
	2	ἦτε	
	3	ὦσι	
Optative.	S. 1	εἴην	
	2	εἴης	
	3	εἴη	
	D. 2	εἶτον or εἴητον	
	3	εἴτην εἰήτην	
	P. 1	εἶμεν εἴημεν	
	2	εἶτε εἴητε	
	3	εἶεν εἴησαν	
Imperative.	S. 2	ἴσθι	
	3	ἔστω	
	D. 2	ἔστον	
	3	ἔστων	
	P. 2	ἔστε	
	3	ἔστων, ἔστωσαν, ὄντων	
Infin.		εἶναι	
Partic.		ὤν, οὖσα, ὄν, gen. ὄντος, *etc.*	

701. εἶμι (ι-), *go*.

		Active.	
		Present.	Imperfect.
Indicative.	S. 1	εἶμι	ᾖα or ᾔειν
	2	εἶ	ᾔεις ᾔεισθα
	3	εἶσι	ᾔει ᾔειν
	D. 2	ἴτον	ᾖτον
	3	ἴτον	ᾔτην
	P. 1	ἴμεν	ᾖμεν
	2	ἴτε	ᾖτε
	3	ἴᾶσι	ᾖσαν or ᾔεσαν
		Present.	
Subjunctive.	S. 1	ἴω	
	2	ἴῃς	
	3	ἴῃ	
	D. 2	ἴητον	
	3	ἴητον	
	P. 1	ἴωμεν	
	2	ἴητε	
	3	ἴωσι	
Optative.	S. 1	ἰοιμι or ἰοίην	
	2	ἴοις	
	3	ἴοι	
	D. 2	ἴοιτον	
	3	ἰοίτην	
	P. 1	ἴοιμεν	
	2	ἴοιτε	
	3	ἴοιεν	
Imperative.	S. 2	ἶθι	
	3	ἴτω	
	D. 2	ἴτον	
	3	ἴτων	
	P. 2	ἴτε	
	3	ἴτων, ἰόντων, ἴτωσαν	
Infin.		ἰέναι	
Partic.		ἰών, ἰοῦσα, ἰόν, gen. ἰόντος, *etc.*	

Irregular Verbs in -MI.

702. ἵημι (ἑ-), *send*.

		Active.		Mid. and Pass.		Active.	Middle.
		Pres.	Imperf.	Pres.	Imperf.	Second Aorist.	
Indicative.	S. 1	ἵημι	ἵην	ἕμαι	ἑμην		εἵμην
	2	ἵης	ἵεις	ἕσαι	ἕσο	Lacking.	εἷσο
	3	ἵησι	ἵει	ἕται	ἕτο		εἷτο
	D. 2	ἵετον	ἵετον	ἕσθον	ἕσθον	εἷτον	εἷσθον
	3	ἵετον	ἱέτην	ἕσθον	ἑσθην	εἵτην	εἵσθην
	P. 1	ἵεμεν	ἵεμεν	ἑμεθα	ἑμεθα	εἷμεν	εἵμεθα
	2	ἵετε	ἵετε	ἕσθε	ἕσθε	εἷτε	εἷσθε
	3	ἱᾶσι	ἵεσαν	ἕνται	ἕντο	εἷσαν	εἷντο
		Present.		Present.			
Subjunctive.	S. 1	ἱῶ		ἱῶμαι		ὦ	ὦμαι
	2	ἱῇς		ἱῇ		ἧς	ἧ
	3	ἱῇ		ἱῆται		ἧ	ἧται
	D. 2	ἱῆτον		ἱῆσθον		ἦτον	ἦσθον
	3	ἱῆτον		ἱῆσθον		ἦτον	ἦσθον
	P. 1	ἱῶμεν		ἱώμεθα		ὦμεν	ὥμεθα
	2	ἱῆτε		ἱῆσθε		ἦτε	ἦσθε
	3	ἱῶσι		ἱῶνται		ὦσι	ὦνται
Optative.	S. 1	ἱείην		ἱείμην		εἴην	εἵμην
	2	ἱείης		ἱεῖο		εἴης	εἷο
	3	ἱείη		ἱεῖτο		εἴη	εἷτο
	D. 2	ἱεῖτον, ἱείητον		ἱεῖσθον		εἶτον, εἰήτον	εἷσθον
	3	ἱείτην, ἱειήτην		ἱείσθην		εἴτην, εἰήτην	εἵσθην
	P. 1	ἱεῖμεν, ἱείημεν		ἱείμεθα		εἶμεν, εἰήμεν	εἵμεθα
	2	ἱεῖτε, ἱείητε		ἱεῖσθε		εἶτε, εἰήτε	εἷσθε
	3	ἱεῖεν, ἱείησαν		ἱεῖντο		εἶεν, εἰήσαν	εἷντο
Imperative.	S. 2	ἵει		ἕσο		ἕς	οὗ
	3	ἱέτω		ἱέσθω		ἕτω	ἕσθω
	D. 2	ἵετον		ἵεσθον		ἕτον	ἕσθον
	3	ἱέτων		ἱέσθων		ἕτων	ἕσθων
	P. 2	ἵετε		ἵεσθε		ἕτε	ἕσθε
	3	ἱέντων		ἱέσθων		ἕντων	ἕσθων
Infin.		ἱέναι		ἵεσθαι		εἶναι	ἕσθαι
Partic.		ἱείς, ἱεῖσα, ἱέν		ἱέμενος		εἷς, εἶσα, ἕν	ἕμενος

Irregular Verbs in -MI.

		703. κεῖμαι (κει-), *lie.*		**704.** κάθ-ημαι (ἧσ-), *sit down.*	
		Present.	Imperfect.	Present.	Imperfect.
Indicative.	S. 1	κεῖμαι	ἐκείμην	κάθημαι	ἐκαθήμην or καθήμην
	2	κεῖσαι	ἔκεισο	κάθησαι	ἐκάθησο καθῆσο
	3	κεῖται	ἔκειτο	κάθηται	ἐκάθητο καθῆστο
	D. 2	κεῖσθον	ἔκεισθον	κάθησθον	ἐκάθησθον καθῆσθον
	3	κεῖσθον	ἐκείσθην	κάθησθον	ἐκαθήσθην καθήσθην
	P. 1	κείμεθα	ἐκείμεθα	καθήμεθα	ἐκαθήμεθα καθήμεθα
	2	κεῖσθε	ἔκεισθε	κάθησθε	ἐκάθησθε καθῆσθε
	3	κεῖνται	ἔκειντο	κάθηνται	ἐκάθηντο καθῆντο
		Present.		Present.	
Subjunctive.	S. 1	κέωμαι		καθῶμαι	
	2	κέῃ		καθῇ	
	3	κέηται		καθῆται	
	D. 2	κέησθον		καθῆσθον	
	3	κέησθον		καθῆσθον	
	P. 1	κεώμεθα		καθώμεθα	
	2	κέησθε		καθῆσθε	
	3	κέωνται		καθῶνται	
Optative.	S. 1	κεοίμην		καθοίμην	
	2	κέοιο		καθοῖο	
	3	κέοιτο		καθοῖτο	
	D. 2	κέοισθον		καθοῖσθον	
	3	κεοίσθην		καθοίσθην	
	P. 1	κεοίμεθα		καθοίμεθα	
	2	κέοισθε		καθοῖσθε	
	3	κέοιντο		καθοῖντο	
Imperative.	S. 2	κεῖσο		κάθησο	
	3	κείσθω		καθήσθω	
	D. 2	κεῖσθον		κάθησθον	
	3	κείσθων		καθήσθων	
	P. 2	κεῖσθε		κάθησθε	
	3	κείσθων		καθήσθων	
Infin.		κεῖσθαι		καθῆσθαι	
Partic.		κείμενος		καθήμενος	

SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS.

The remainder of this book contains the first eight chapters of Xenophon's Anabasis, broken up into twenty reading lessons, and a development, by the inductive method, of the most important principles of Greek syntax, in nineteen additional lessons. The two sets of lessons are arranged alternately.

The notes to the reading lessons aim to give the pupil such assistance as will enable him, with the help of the general vocabulary, to read each lesson intelligently by himself in preparation for the work of the class-room. Generally, notes are not given on such parts of these lessons as have occurred in previous exercises and reading lessons. These parts are considerable, and were an important consideration in determining the length of the reading lessons.

The notes to the reading lessons seldom anticipate principles of syntax, but simply translate the sentences in which new idioms occur. But these sentences are introduced later, in their proper place, in the Greek exercises of the lessons on syntax. Many instances of simple and complex sentences in indirect discourse after ὅτι and ὡς and of indirect questions occur in particular in the third chapter of the first book of the Anabasis. The consideration of the principles which underlie these is deferred until it can be undertaken systematically.

The teacher is advised in the class-room to make these reading lessons the means of thorough drill on all forms, on the use of prepositions, and on such principles of syntax *as have previously been presented*. This drill has purposely not been anticipated in the notes.

Many of the sentences in the Greek exercises on syntax are repeated from previous lessons. In the preparation of his lesson, the pupil should examine these sentences according to the directions given, and then commit to memory the rules which follow.

The teacher is advised in the class-room to have each sentence of the Greek exercises on syntax read and translated *in order*, to have it examined with reference to the important idiom which it illustrates, and then to have the principle stated in the form of a rule.

READING LESSONS.

Introductory.

705. The Anabasis of Xenophon tells the story of the expedition of Cyrus the Younger against his brother Artaxerxes, and of the retreat, after the death of Cyrus, of the Ten Thousand Greeks whom he had gathered under his command. The expedition set out from Sardis in the spring of 401 B.C.

Cyrus was the second son of Darius II. In 407 B.C., his father made him, when only seventeen years of age, satrap of Lydia, Phrygia the Greater, and Cappadocia, and military commander of the forces that gathered at Castolus. Active in body, temperate in life, resolute and upright in character, he soon won the respect and confidence of his subjects.

The Persians at this time were bitterly hostile to Athens, their ancient enemy, and Cyrus was eager to aid the Lacedaemonians in their struggle against her. As soon as he arrived at Sardis in the spring of 407 B.C., Lysander, the Spartan admiral, appealed to him for help in putting down their common enemy. The answer of the youthful ruler is memorable. "These are the express orders," he said, "of my father, and I shall fulfil them. I bring with me five hundred talents. If these are insufficient, I will use the private funds which my father has given me. If these fail, I will coin into money the throne on which I sit." The timely aid which he rendered the Lacedaemonians did much to hasten the end of the Peloponnesian War. Cyrus became the warm friend of Lysander, and when in 405 B.C. he was summoned to the bedside of his dying father, he turned over to the Spartan admiral his treasure, and assigned to him his entire personal revenue.

Here the Anabasis begins, and the following Reading Lessons give an account of the ambitious young ruler until his ill-fated death on the battle-field of Cunaxa.

LESSON CI.

Reading Lesson.

706. ANABASIS I. i. 1–6.

Darius, falling dangerously ill, summons to him his two sons, Artaxerxes and Cyrus (1, 2). On the king's death Artaxerxes succeeds to the throne. He is persuaded by the satrap Tissaphernes that his brother is plotting against him, and has him arrested. Cyrus, saved from death only by his mother's entreaty, returns in disgrace to his province and concerts measures against the king (3, 4). He conciliates all who come to him, sees to his own native troops (5), and secretly collects Greek mercenaries. A part of this army he enlists in western Asia Minor, alleging as a reason that the Greek cities which have put themselves under his protection are in danger from the machinations of Tissaphernes (6).

I.

Δᾱρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίγνονται παῖδες 1
δύο, πρεσβύτερος μὲν Ἀρταξέρξης, νεώτερος δὲ
Κῦρος. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἠσθένει Δᾱρεῖος καὶ ὑπώπτευε
τελευτὴν τοῦ βίου, ἐβούλετο τὼ παῖδε ἀμφοτέρω
παρεῖναι. ὁ μὲν οὖν πρεσβύτερος παρὼν ἐτύγ- 2
χανε· Κῦρον δὲ μεταπέμπεται ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἧς
αὐτὸν σατράπην ἐποίησε, καὶ στρατηγὸν δὲ αὐτὸν

1. Δᾱρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος: gen. of the *source* (p. 188[1]). — γίγνονται: historical pres. *Cf.* ἀπαντῶσιν, line 6, ἀναβαίνει, l. 9, *etc.* — 2. πρεσβύτερος . . . Κῦρος. *The former, the elder, and Cyrus, the younger.* Ἀρταξέρξης and Κῦρος are in appos. (p. 25[5]), with παῖδες. — 3. ἠσθένει, *was ill.* The impf. denotes the continuance of the state. — 4. τὼ παῖδε ἀμφοτέρω: acc. dual, subj. of παρεῖναι (350). — 5. παρὼν ἐτύγχανε, *was, as it happened, already there.* See p. 250[3]. — 7. ἐποίησε, *had made*, aor. in a subordinate clause with p. p. force. This use of the aor. is especially common after temporal conjunctions like ἐπεί, *etc.* *Cf.* ἐτελεύτησε, l. 12, κατέστη, l. 13, ἀπῆλθε, l. 18, *etc.* — καὶ . . . δέ, *and also*, δέ being the conjunctive word. The word between the two is emphatic. Cyrus was given

ἀπέδειξε πάντων ὅσοι εἰς Καστωλοῦ πεδίον ἀθροίζονται. ἀναβαίνει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος λαβὼν Τισσαφέρνην ὡς φίλον, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔχων ὁπλίτας ἀνέβη τριᾱκοσίους, ἄρχοντα δὲ αὐτῶν Ξενίᾱν Παρράσιον. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐτελεύτησε Δᾱρεῖος καὶ 3 κατέστη εἰς τὴν βασιλείᾱν Ἀρταξέρξης, Τισσαφέρνης διαβάλλει τὸν Κῦρον πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφὸν ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοι αὐτῷ. ὁ δὲ πείθεται καὶ συλλαμβάνει Κῦρον ὡς ἀποκτενῶν· ἡ δὲ μήτηρ ἐξαιτησαμένη αὐτὸν ἀποπέμπει πάλιν ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν. ὁ δ' ὡς ἀπῆλθε κινδῡνεύσᾱς καὶ ἀτῑμα- 4 σθείς, βουλεύεται ὅπως μήποτε ἔτι ἔσται ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ, ἀλλά, ἢν δύνηται, βασιλεύσει ἀντ' ἐκείνου. Παρύσατις μὲν δὴ ἡ μήτηρ ὑπῆρχε τῷ Κύρῳ, φιλοῦσα αὐτὸν μᾶλλον ἢ τὸν βασιλεύοντα Ἀρταξέρξην. ὅστις δ' ἀφῑκνεῖτο τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως 5 πρὸς αὐτὸν πάντας οὕτω διατιθεὶς ἀπεπέμπετο ὥστε αὐτῷ μᾶλλον φίλους εἶναι ἢ βασιλεῖ. καὶ τῶν παρ' ἑαυτῷ δὲ βαρβάρων ἐπεμελεῖτο ὡς πολε-

---

military as well as civil authority by his father. — 10. **ὡς φίλον**: Tissaphernes was in fact the bitter enemy of Cyrus at this time, and Cyrus probably made him accompany him because he feared to leave him behind. — 11. **ἄρχοντα**: in appos. with **Ξενίᾱν**, which is the second object of **ἔχων**. — 15. **ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοι αὐτῷ**, *that he was plotting against him.* — 16. **ὡς ἀποκτενῶν**, *as intending to put him to death, with the avowed intention of putting him to death.* The fut. partic. expresses purpose (379), and **ὡς** shows that the purpose was that of Artaxerxes. — 18. **ὁ δέ**, *but he, i.e.* Cyrus. — 20. **ἢν δύνηται**: *cf.* 648, I. 3. — 21. **Κύρῳ**: see p. 84. — 23. **παρὰ βασιλέως**, *from the presence of the king*, used attributively after **τῶν**, the subst. for *persons* being omitted. The expression is brief. In full it would be **ὅστις δὲ τῶν παρὰ βασιλεῖ** (dat.) **ἀφῑκνεῖτο παρὰ βασιλέως** (gen.). *Cf.* 494, I. 24. — 24. **πάντας**: plur., because of the distributive force of **ὅστις**. For the regular agreement, see 568. — 26. **βαρβάρων**: *cf.* 305, I. 11.

μεῖν τε ἱκανοὶ εἴησαν καὶ εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχοιεν αὐτῷ. τὴν δὲ Ἑλληνικὴν δύναμιν ἤθροιζεν ὡς μάλιστα 6
ἐδύνατο ἐπικρυπτόμενος, ὅπως ὅτι ἀπαρασκευότα-
τον λάβοι βασιλέα. ὧδε οὖν ἐποιεῖτο τὴν συλλο-
γήν. ὁπόσας εἶχε φυλακὰς ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι παρήγ-
γειλε τοῖς φρουράρχοις ἑκάστοις λαμβάνειν ἄνδρας
Πελοποννησίους ὅτι πλείστους καὶ βελτίστους, ὡς
ἐπιβουλεύοντος Τισσαφέρνους ταῖς πόλεσι. καὶ
γὰρ ἦσαν αἱ Ἰωνικαὶ πόλεις Τισσαφέρνους τὸ ἀρ-
χαῖον ἐκ βασιλέως δεδομέναι, τότε δ' ἀφειστήκε-
σαν πρὸς Κῦρον πᾶσαι πλὴν Μιλήτου.

— 28. **ὡς . . . ἐπικρυπτόμενος**. *as secretly as possible*. 31. *concealing his act* (mid., 197) *as much as possible* (*as most he was able*). — 29. **ὅτι ἀπαρασκευότατον**, *as unprepared as possible* (p. 172[3]). — 31. **φυλακάς**: the antec. is incorporated into the rel. clause (369). If the word stood in the principal clause, we should have **τῶν φυλακῶν**, depending on **φρουράρχοις**. — 33. **ὡς . . . πόλεσι**: *on the ground that Tissaphernes was plotting against the cities*. When a circumstantial partic. (379) belongs to a subst. that is not connected with the main construction of the sentence, the two stand together in the *genitive absolute*. The corresponding usage in Lat. is the *ablative absolute*. The partic. is here *causal*, and **ὡς** shows that the reason is that assigned by Cyrus. Without **ὡς** the reason would be given on the authority of Xenophon, the narrator. — 34. **καὶ γάρ**, *and the reason was plausible*), *for*, *etc.*, Lat. *etenim*. — 35. **ἦσαν . . . τὸ ἀρχαῖον**, *the cities of Ionia had originally* (*cf.* **τὸ πρῶτον**, 198, l. 10) *belonged to Tissaphernes* (*cf.* 361, l. 5). The impf. **ἦσαν** is used with **τὸ ἀρχαῖον** of a time prior to the main action. For the situation of Ionia and of Miletus, one of its chief cities, see the map.

Review 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98 entire.

Make a special study of the prepositions in this Reading Lesson (**ἀντί**, 20; **ἀπό**, 6; **εἰς**, 8, 13; **ἐξ**, 36; **ἐν**, 31; **ἐπί**, 17, 19; **παρά**, 23, 26; **πρός**, 14, 24, 37), carefully consulting the General Vocabulary. Note the case which follows the preposition, the meaning of the preposition demanded by the context, and the nature of its relation (98 a) to the rest of the sentence. It is sometimes difficult to state the last briefly. Prepositional phrases are without exception either adjective or adverbial.

LESSONS ON SYNTAX.

Introductory.

707. *Syntax* treats of the correct arrangement (σύνταξις) of words in sentences.

708. Every sentence must contain two parts, a *subject* and a *predicate*. The subject is that of which something is stated. The predicate is that which is stated of the subject.

a. The subject is a substantive or an equivalent expression, with or without modifiers, or a pronoun expressed or understood. The predicate is a finite verb, with or without modifiers, or a finite verb followed by a predicate adjective or substantive.

709. That upon which the action of the verb is exerted is called the *object*. The object may be either *direct* or *indirect*. The direct object is in the accusative; the indirect object is in the dative.

a. Verbs which may have a direct object are called *transitive*; those which cannot are called *intransitive*.

710. An adjective qualifying a substantive is either *attributive* or *predicate*. An attributive adjective is directly joined with the substantive without the intervention of a verb. A predicate adjective is connected with the substantive through the medium of a copulative verb.

a. The term predicate adjective includes all adjectives and participles that are not attributive.

711. A substantive which forms a part of the predicate and is connected with the subject through the medium of a copulative verb is called a *predicate* substantive.

a. The verbs which serve to connect a predicate adjective or substantive with the subject are the copula εἰμί, *be*, expressed or understood, and similar copulative verbs, such as those signifying to *become*, *be named, be chosen, be made, be thought*, and *appear*.

LESSON CII.

Subject and Predicate. — Apposition. — Adjectives.

712. EXERCISE.

1. ἐφαίνετο ἴχνη ἀνθρώπων. 2. καὶ ἔχει τὴν Ὀρόντου δύναμιν, τοῦ τὴν βασιλέως θυγατέρα ἔχοντος.[1] 3. ὥστε τὸ στράτευμα πάμπολυ ἐφάνη. 4. τὰ ἄκρα ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τοῦ στρατεύματος ἦν. 5. ὅσα δὴ ἐν τῇ ἀναβάσει τῇ μετὰ Κύρου οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔπραξαν μέχρι τῆς μάχης ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται.[2] 6. τῇδε γὰρ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ[3] μῖρίους ἄψεσθε ἀνθ' ἑνὸς Κλεάρχους. 7. Κῦρος ἐπειρᾶτο κατάγειν τοὺς ἐκπεπτωκότας. 8. ἀκούω δὲ κώμας εἶναι καλὰς οὐ πλέον εἴκοσι σταδίων ἀπεχούσας. 9. Παρύσατις δὴ ἡ μήτηρ ἐφίλει τὸν Κῦρον μᾶλλον ἢ τὸν βασιλεύοντα Ἀρταξέρξην. 10. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει εἰς Κελαινάς, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. 11. ἀγαθὸς ὁ ἀνὴρ ἐστιν. 12. ἐκηρῦξε[4] δὲ τοῖς Ἕλλησι συσκευάζεσθαι. 13. καὶ εἶδον τοὺς λόφους ἄσμενοι.[5] 14. ἐν τῇ πρόσθεν προσβολῇ ὀλίγους ἔχων[6] ἔπαθεν οὐδέν. 15. τὸ δ' ἁπλοῦν καὶ τὸ ἀληθὲς ἐνόμιζε τὸ αὐτὸ τῷ ἡλιθίῳ[7] εἶναι. 16. καὶ τὸ βασίλειον σημεῖον ὁρᾶν ἔφασαν, ἀετόν τινα χρῖσοῦν. 17. πρὸς σκηνὴν ἦγεσαν τὴν Ξενοφῶντος. 18. παρήγγειλε τοῖς φρουράρχοις λαμβάνειν ἄνδρας Πελοποννησίους. 19. εἰς Πῖσιδίας ἐβούλετο Κῦρος στρατεύεσθαι. 20. διὰ δὲ τοῦτο ὁ ποταμὸς καλεῖται Μαρσύας. 21. ἔτι οὖν ἂν γένοιτο τῷ ἐμῷ ἀδελφῷ πολέμιος, ἐμοὶ δὲ φίλος καὶ πιστός;

---

[1] *τοῦ ἔχοντος, him who has* (371), in apposition with Ὀρόντου.

[2] The subj. of δεδήλωται is the indirect question ὅσα . . . μάχης (571 a).

[3] *Cf.* 498, I. 5.

[4] The verb implies the omitted subj. *ὁ κῆρυξ*.

[5] *with pleasure*. A predicate adj. is sometimes used in Greek where we should use an adv. or adverbial phrase.

[6] The partic. is concessive (379).

[7] *the same as (with) folly*. See p. 115[4].

Examine in the preceding exercise the subjects of the finite verbs in 1, 3, 4, 5, 7, 9, 11, 19, 20, and note their case.

713. Rule of Syntax. — The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.

a. The subject is often not expressed, especially when it is a pronoun. Examine 2, 6, 8, 10, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 21.

Examine the subjects of the infinitives in 7, 8, 12, 15, 16, 18, 19. Review 350.

Examine the finite verbs and their subjects in each sentence of the above exercise, except 1 and 4, and note their number and person.

714. Rule of Syntax. — A verb agrees with its subject nominative in number and person.

Now examine 1 and 4, and review 90.

Examine the predicate substantives and adjectives and the corresponding subjects in 3, 11, 15, 20, 21, and note their case.

715. Rule of Syntax. — With the copula εἰμί and similar verbs, such as those signifying to *become, be named, be chosen, be made, be thought,* and *appear,* a predicate substantive or adjective is in the same case as the subject.

Examine the first and second substantives in 9, 10, 16, and Ὀρόντου and τοῦ ἔχοντος in 2, and note their case and their relation to one another.

716. Rule of Syntax. — A substantive annexed to another substantive to describe it, and denoting the same person or thing, agrees with it in case. This is called *apposition.*

Examine the adjectives, the article, the adjective pronouns, the participles, and the substantives (or pronouns) which these qualify, in 3, 4, 6, 8, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 16, 18, 21, and note their gender, number, and case.

717. Rule of Syntax. — Adjectives agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case. This rule applies also to the article and to adjective pronouns and participles.

Examine the adjectives and participles in 2, 7, 14 (ὀλίγους, οὐδέν), 15, and observe that they are used substantively and generally have the article.

718. Rule of Syntax. — An adjective or a participle, generally with the article, may be used as a substantive.

Examine the relative position of the article, substantive, and attributive (not only adjectives, but also dependent genitives, prepositions with their cases, adverbs, participles, and possessive pronouns, used attributively) in 2, 5, 9, 14, 16, 17, 21.

719. Rule of Syntax. — When an attributive adjective, or equivalent expression, qualifies a substantive which has the article, the order is commonly *article, attributive, substantive*, but it may be *substantive, article, attributive*. In the latter case the substantive may take another article before it.

a. Dependent genitives often fail to follow the rule, and stand either before or after both article and substantive.[1]

Examine the relative position of the article, substantive, and predicate adjective in 3, 11.

720. Rule of Syntax. — When a predicate adjective qualifies a substantive which has the article, it never stands between the article and its substantive, but precedes or follows both.

721. EXERCISE.

1. And the gods are judges of the contest. 2. I will carry you safely over, if you will give me a talent (as) pay. 3. But the enemy on[2] the hill observed the march of the light-armed troops to[3] the summit. 4. Many of the foot-soldiers were slain in the pursuit. 5. And Cyrus said that the expedition was[4] against the Pisidians. 6. All urged Xenophon to go. 7. And she gave him much money. 8. The commanders are safe. 9. There is in this place a palace of the[5] great king. 10. Wherefore the king did not perceive the plot against himself. 11. Clearchus was a Lacedaemonian exile. 12. Cyrus at length determined[6] to proceed up country. 13. Cyrus remitted to the king the tributes that accrued.[7] 14. He marched through Lydia three stages, twenty-two parasangs, to the river Maeander.

[1] The gen. of the personal pronoun, for example, always has this position. *Cf.* 517, I. 6.

[2] ἐπί with the gen.

[3] ἐπί with the acc.

[4] For the mood and tense, *cf.* 712, 16 above.

[5] See p. 144[3].

[6] *It seemed best to Cyrus.*

[7] See 369.

LESSON CIII.

Reading Lesson.

722. ANABASIS I. i. 7–11.

Cyrus lays siege to Miletus, with the intention of restoring the exiles whom Tissaphernes has expelled from this city (7). He appeals to the king in his contention with Tissaphernes, and thus deceives the king (8). Other Greek mercenaries are enlisted for Cyrus in the Chersonese by Clearchus, who makes this peninsula his base of operations against the Thracians (9). Still other Greek troops are enlisted for him in Thessaly by Aristippus (10), and in Greece, by Proxenus, Sophaenetus, and Socrates (11).

I.

ἐν Μῑλήτῳ δὲ Τισσαφέρνης προαισθόμενος τὰ 7
αὐτὰ ταῦτα βουλευομένους, ἀποστῆναι πρὸς Κῦρον,
τοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν ἀπέκτεινε τοὺς δ' ἐξέβαλεν. ὁ δὲ
Κῦρος, ὑπολαβὼν τοὺς φεύγοντας, συλλέξᾱς στρά-
τευμα ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ
θάλατταν, καὶ ἐπειρᾶτο κατάγειν τοὺς ἐκπεπτω-
κότας. καὶ αὕτη αὖ ἄλλη πρόφασις ἦν αὐτῷ τοῦ
ἀθροίζειν στράτευμα. πρὸς δὲ βασιλέᾱ πέμπων 8
ἠξίου ἀδελφὸς ὢν αὐτοῦ δοθῆναι οἷ ταύτᾱς τᾶς
πόλεις μᾶλλον ἢ Τισσαφέρνην ἄρχειν αὐτῶν, καὶ
ἡ μήτηρ συνέπρᾶττεν αὐτῷ ταῦτα· ὥστε βασιλεὺς
τὴν μὲν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἐπιβουλὴν οὐκ ἠσθάνετο, Τισ-

---

1. **τὰ αὐτὰ . . . βουλευομένους**: *sc. τινάς, that certain persons were forming this same* (516) *plan*. The partic. is in indirect discourse (p. 250[5]), and its obj. is a cognate acc. (p. 122[1]). — 2. **ἀποστῆναι**: in appos. with **τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα**. — 3. **τοὺς μέν, τοὺς δέ**: *cf.* 479, I. 12. — 7. **τοῦ ἀθροίζειν**: *cf.* 517, I. 14. — 9. **ὤν**: causal partic. (379). — **δοθῆναι**: obj. of **ἠξίου** (355). So **ἄρχειν** in l. 10. — **οἷ**: see 515, 513. — 10. **αὐτῶν**: see p. 838. — 12. **Τισ-**

σαφέρνει δὲ ἐνόμιζε πολεμοῦντα αὐτὸν ἀμφὶ τὰ στρατεύματα δαπανᾶν· ὥστε οὐδὲν ἤχθετο αὐτῶν πολεμούντων. καὶ γὰρ ὁ Κῦρος ἀπέπεμπε τοὺς γιγνομένους δασμοὺς βασιλεῖ ἐκ τῶν πόλεων ὧν Τισσαφέρνης ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων. ἄλλο δὲ στράτευμα αὐτῷ συνελέγετο ἐν Χερρονήσῳ τῇ καταντιπέρᾱς Ἀβύδου τόνδε τὸν τρόπον. Κλέαρχος Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς ἦν· τούτῳ συγγενόμενος ὁ Κῦρος ἠγάσθη τε αὐτὸν καὶ δίδωσιν αὐτῷ μῡρίους δᾱρεικούς. ὁ δὲ λαβὼν τὸ χρῡσίον στράτευμα συνέλεξεν ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων, καὶ ἐπολέμει ἐκ Χερρονήσου ὁρμώμενος τοῖς Θρᾳξὶ τοῖς ὑπὲρ Ἑλλήσποντον οἰκοῦσι, καὶ ὠφέλει τοὺς Ἕλληνας· ὥστε καὶ χρήματα συνεβάλλοντο αὐτῷ εἰς τὴν τροφὴν τῶν στρατιωτῶν αἱ Ἑλλησποντιακαὶ πόλεις ἑκοῦσαι. τοῦτο δ' αὖ οὕτω τρεφόμενον ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ τὸ στράτευμα. Ἀρίστιππος δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς ξένος ὢν ἐτύγχανεν αὐτῷ, καὶ πιεζόμενος ὑπὸ τῶν οἴκοι ἀντιστασιωτῶν ἔρχεται πρὸς

σαφέρνει: with πολεμοῦντα (*cf.* 274, I. 4). — 13. αὐτόν: *i.e.* Cyrus, subj. (350) of δαπανᾶν (354). — 14. οὐδέν, *not at all* (p. 70 8). — αὐτῶν πολεμούντων, *because they were at war*, gen. absolute. *Cf.* 706, 34, and note on 33. — 15. καὶ γάρ, *and (the more) because*, Lat. *etenim*. (*Cf.* 706, 34. — 16. ὧν: for ἅ. The relative is sometimes attracted into the case of its antecedent. — 17. ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων, *had (previously), as it happened, possessed*. *Cf.* 706, 5, and note. For the tense of ἐτύγχανεν, *cf.* ἦσαν, 706, 35, and note. — 18. Χερρονήσῳ τῇ καταντιπέρᾱς: see 719. For the situation of the Chersonese, see the map. — 19. Ἀβύδου: *cf.* 361, I. 16. — 21. ἠγάσθη, *came to admire*. The aor. of verbs which denote a *continued state* generally expresses the *entrance into* that state. Thus, ἀσθενέω, *be sick*, ἠσθένησα, *fell sick*; βασιλεύω, *be king*, ἐβασίλευσα, *became king*. This is called the *inceptive* aor. — 24. τοῖς . . . οἰκοῦσι: see 719. — 28. ἑκοῦσαι: *cf.* 712, 13. — τρεφόμενον ἐλάνθανεν, *was secretly supported*

τὸν Κῦρον καὶ αἰτεῖ αὐτὸν εἰς δισχιλίους ξένους καὶ τριῶν μηνῶν μισθόν, ὡς οὕτω περιγενόμενος ἂν τῶν ἀντιστασιωτῶν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος δίδωσιν αὐτῷ εἰς τετρακισχιλίους καὶ ἓξ μηνῶν μισθόν, καὶ δεῖται αὐτοῦ μὴ πρόσθεν καταλῦσαι πρὸς τοὺς ἀντιστασιώτας πρὶν ἂν αὐτῷ συμβουλεύσηται. οὕτω δὲ αὖ τὸ ἐν Θετταλίᾳ ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ τρεφόμενον στράτευμα. Πρόξενον δὲ τὸν Βοιώτιον ξένον ὄντα 11 αὐτῷ ἐκέλευσε λαβόντα ἄνδρας ὅτι πλείστους παραγενέσθαι, ὡς εἰς Πισίδας βουλόμενος στρατεύεσθαι, ὡς πράγματα παρεχόντων τῶν Πισιδῶν τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χώρᾳ. Σοφαίνετον δὲ τὸν Στυμφάλιον καὶ Σωκράτην τὸν Ἀχαιόν, ξένους ὄντας καὶ τούτους, ἐκέλευσεν ἄνδρας λαβόντας ἐλθεῖν ὅτι πλείστους, ὡς πολεμήσων Τισσαφέρνει σὺν τοῖς φυγάσι τῶν Μιλησίων. καὶ ἐποίουν οὕτως οὗτοι.

(p. 250[3]). — 32. **αὐτόν, μισθόν**: objects of *αἰτεῖ* (p. 100[2]). — **εἰς**, *for*. The adj. phrase *εἰς . . . ξένους* and the following gen. qualify *μισθόν*. — 33. **ὡς οὕτω περιγενόμενος ἄν**, *on the ground that* (for *ὡς*, see 706, 33, and note) *in this way he* (Cyrus) *would get the better of*. *περιγενόμενος ἄν*, if expressed by a finite mood, would be *περιγένοιτο ἄν*, to which *οὕτω* furnishes the protasis (p. 104[19]). — 34. **ἀντιστασιωτῶν**: see p. 907. — 36. **αὐτοῦ**: *cf.* 356, I. 11. — **μή**: the regular neg. with the infin., whereas the indic. regularly has *οὐ*. — 37. **πρὶν ἂν αὐτῷ συμβουλεύσηται**, *until he should have consulted with him*. — 41. **ὡς βουλόμενος**, *on the ground that he* (Cyrus) *wished*. *Cf.* l. 33 above. — **εἰς**, *into the country of*. — 42. **ὡς . . . Πισιδῶν**, *on the ground that the Pisidians were causing trouble*. For the gen. absolute with *ὡς*, see 706, 34. For Pisidia, see the map. — 44. **ξένους ὄντας καὶ τούτους**, *these also being his guest friends*. *τούτους* is in apposition with *Σοφαίνετον* and *Σωκράτην*. — 46. **ὡς πολεμήσων**: *cf.* 706, 16, and note. — **σύν**, *with the aid of*. Compare with this the preceding simple dat. *Τισσαφέρνει* (p. 83[16]).

Make a special study of the prepositions in this Reading Lesson (*ἀμφί*, 13; *ἀπό*, 23; *εἰς*, 27, 32, 35, 41; *ἐν*, 1, 18; *ἐξ*, 16, 24; *κατά*, 5 (*bis*); *πρός*, 2, 8, 12, 31, 36; *σύν*, 46; *ὑπό*, 31) according to the directions given in Lesson CI.

LESSON CIV.

Pronouns.

723. EXERCISE.

1. *οὐκ ἐξ ἴσου, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, ἐσμέν·*[1] *σὺ μὲν γὰρ ἐφ' ἵππου ὀχεῖ, ἐγὼ δὲ χαλεπῶς κάμνω τὴν ἀσπίδα φέρων.* 2. *Χειρίσοφον δὲ κελεύει οἱ συμπέμψαι τοὺς ψίλους.* 3. *ἀπορουμένοις δ' αὐτοῖς προσῆλθέ τις ἀνήρ.* 4. *αὐτὸς δεξιὰς δοὺς συνέλαβες τοὺς στρατηγούς.* 5. *ἦν οὖν αὐτῶν ἐπισκεψώμεθα τίνες πέπανται σφενδόνας, καὶ τούτῳ*[2] *δῶμεν αὐτῶν*[3] *ἀργύριον, ἴσως τινὲς φανοῦνται ἱκανοὶ ἡμᾶς ὠφελεῖν.* 6. *λοιπόν μοι εἰπεῖν ὅπερ καὶ μέγιστον νομίζω εἶναι.* 7. *ἄλλου τινὸς*[4] *δεῖ πρὸς τούτοις οἷς λέγει.* 8. *οἱ στρατηγοί, οἳ διὰ πίστεως τοῖς βαρβάροις ἑαυτοὺς ἐνεχείρισαν, πολλὰ καὶ κακὰ πεπόνθᾶσιν.* 9. *πρὸς δὲ βασιλέᾶ πέμπων Κῦρος ἠξίου ἀδελφὸς ὢν αὐτοῦ δοθῆναι οἱ ταύτᾶς τὰς πόλεις.* 10. *Δέξιππον δὲ κελεύουσι διασώσαντα αὐτοῖς τὰ πρόβατα, τὰ μὲν*[5] *αὐτὸν*[6] *λαβεῖν, τὰ δὲ σφίσιν ἀποδοῦναι.* 11. *οὐχ ὥρᾶ ἐστὶν ἡμῖν ἀμελεῖν ἡμῶν αὐτῶν,*[7] *ἀλλὰ βουλεύεσθαι ὅ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν ἐκ τούτων.* 12. *ἄλλο δὲ στράτευμα αὐτῷ συνελέγετο ἐν Χερρονήσῳ τῇ καταντιπέρᾶς Ἀβύδου τόνδε τὸν τρόπον.* 13. *Κῦρος παραγγέλλει τῷ Ἀριστίππῳ ἀποπέμψαι πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ὃ εἶχε στράτευμα.* 14. *σύ τε γὰρ Ἕλλην εἶ καὶ ἡμεῖς τοσοῦτοι*[8] *ὄντες ὅσους*[8] *σὺ ὁρᾷς.* 15. *οὓς οὖν ἑώρᾶ ἐθέλοντας κινδῡνεύειν, τούτους ἄρχοντας ἐποίει ἧς κατεστρέφετο χώρᾶς.* 16. *ὑμῶν δὲ σὺ*

---

[1] The preceding pause prevents the recession of the accent.

[2] *I.e.* the possessor of a sling.

[3] *for them, i.e.* the slings. The thing *bargained for* is put in the gen.

[4] *something else. Cf.* 508, I. 14.

[5] *τὰ μὲν . . . τὰ δέ, some . . . the rest.* See p. 118[5].

[6] Intensive, *himself.*

[7] *Cf.* 532, I. 5.

[8] See 542, 571.

πρῶτος, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἀπόφηναι γνώμην ὅ τι σοι δοκεῖ. 17. τίνα γνώμην ἔχεις περὶ τῆς πορείας; 18. εἰ οὖν νῦν ἀποδειχθείη τίνα χρὴ ἡγεῖσθαι, οὐκ ἂν ὕστερον βουλεύεσθαι ἡμᾶς δέοι. 19. εἶχε δὲ τὸ μὲν δεξιὸν Μένων καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, τὸ δὲ εὐώνυμον Κλέαρχος καὶ οἱ ἐκείνου.

Examine the subjects of the finite verbs in 1, 4, 14, 16 (σύ), 17, and observe that they are all pronouns and are omitted unless emphatic.

Review 514.

Examine the uses of the personal pronoun of the third person and of αὐτός in 2, 3, 4, 5, 9, 10, 12, 19.

Review 515, 516.

Examine the reflexive pronouns in 8, 11, 13, and note the subjects to which they severally refer.

Review 528.

Examine the uses of the demonstrative pronouns in 5, 7, 9, 11, 12, 15, 19.

Review 540, 541.

Examine the position of the demonstratives, with reference to the article and substantive, in 9, 12.

Review 174. The rule applies also to ὅδε and ἐκεῖνος.

Examine the use of the interrogative pronouns in 5, 17, 18.

Review 558.

Examine the use of the indefinite pronoun in 3, 5, 7.

724. Rule of Syntax. — The indefinite τὶς may be either substantive or adjective. It is sometimes nearly equivalent to the English *a* or *an*.

Examine the relative pronouns and their antecedents in 8, 14, 15 (οὗς), and note their gender, number, person, and case.

Review 568.

Examine the relation of the relative pronoun to its antecedent in 6, 13.

Review 569.

Examine the relative pronoun in 7, 15 (ἧς), and note its case and its relation to its antecedent.

725. Rule of Syntax. — When a relative would naturally be in the accusative as the object of a verb, it is generally *assimilated* to the case of its antecedent, if this is a genitive or dative. The antecedent may be incorporated into the relative clause.

Examine the use of ὅστις in 11, 16.
Review 570.

726. EXERCISE.

1. *I* am willing to carry you across. 2. For they are now themselves burning the king's country. 3. But once the king's army[1] invaded their country.[2] 4. And beside these he had (those) whom[3] the king gave him. 5. But if anybody sees another better[4] (plan), let him speak. 6. And what soldiers he himself had he commanded to follow. 7. Having persuaded his own[5] city, he sailed away. 8. But they attempted to induce him to return. 9. You neither love them[6] nor (do) they[6] (love) you. 10. He thinks the general sent back to him what army he had. 11. Cyrus set out with (those) whom I have mentioned. 12. He appointed the same man general. 13. They planned these same (things). 14. Who wounded Cyrus, the son[7] of Darius?

LESSON CV.

Reading Lesson.

727. ANABASIS I. ii. 1–6.

Cyrus is now ready to set out inland. He collects his troops at Sardis, and announces, in order to conceal his real object, that his intention is to expel the Pisidians from their territory (1–3). The

[1] *a royal army.*
[2] *threw (itself) in upon* (εἰς) *them.*
[3] Use ὅσος.
[4] Use the neut. sing.
[5] *Cf.* 532, I. 2.
[6] Use ἐκεῖνος.
[7] The subst. *υἱός* may be omitted after the article, when a qualifying gen. is added. *Cf.* 161, I. 14.

king, informed of the real facts by Tissaphernes, makes ready to meet him (4). Cyrus sets out from Sardis and marches through Lydia across the Maeander to Colossae in Phrygia, where he is joined by Menon (5, 6).

II.

ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκει αὐτῷ ἤδη πορεύεσθαι ἄνω, τὴν 1
μὲν πρόφασιν ἐποιεῖτο ὡς Πισίδας βουλόμενος
ἐκβαλεῖν παντάπασιν ἐκ τῆς χώρας· καὶ ἀθροίζει
ὡς ἐπὶ τούτους τό τε βαρβαρικὸν καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνι-
κόν. ἐνταῦθα καὶ παραγγέλλει τῷ τε Κλεάρχῳ
λαβόντι ἥκειν ὅσον ἦν αὐτῷ στράτευμα, καὶ τῷ
Ἀριστίππῳ συναλλαγέντι πρὸς τοὺς οἴκοι ἀπο-
πέμψαι πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ὃ εἶχε στράτευμα· καὶ Ξενίᾳ
τῷ Ἀρκάδι, ὃς αὐτῷ προειστήκει τοῦ ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι
ξενικοῦ, ἥκειν παραγγέλλει λαβόντα τοὺς ἄλλους
πλὴν ὁπόσοι ἱκανοὶ ἦσαν τὰς ἀκροπόλεις φυλάτ-
τειν. ἐκάλεσε δὲ καὶ τοὺς Μίλητον πολιορκοῦντας, 2
καὶ τοὺς φυγάδας ἐκέλευσε σὺν αὐτῷ στρατεύεσθαι,
ὑποσχόμενος αὐτοῖς, εἰ καλῶς καταπράξειεν ἐφ' ἃ

---

1. **πορεύεσθαι**: subj. of *ἐδόκει* (352). — **τὴν μὲν . . . βουλόμενος**, *he gave as his pretext indeed (that he was going) because he wished* (*cf.* 722, 41). *μέν* implies a clause with *δέ*, such as *τῇ δ' ἀληθείᾳ ἐπὶ βασιλέα ἐπορεύετο*. — 4. **ὡς ἐπὶ τούτους**, *avowedly against these*. — 5. **ἐνταῦθα**, *there, i.e.* to Sardis, his headquarters. Construe with *ἥκειν*. — **καί**, *also*. Clearchus and Aristippus were at a distance (722, 19–39), and their troops are not regarded as part of the Greek force (*τὸ Ἑλληνικόν*) just mentioned. — 6. **ἥκειν**: subj. not expressed (350). So *ἀποπέμψαι* in l. 7. — **ὅσον . . . στράτευμα**, *whatever troops he had* (*cf.* 706, 31). — 7. **τοὺς οἴκοι**: *cf.* 722, 31, and p. 839. — 9. **προειστήκει**, *was commander of*, plup. with impf. force. The plup. of *ἵστημι* is *εἰστήκη*, representing *ε-σε-στηκη* (p. 264[3]). — **τοῦ ξενικοῦ**: for the case, *cf.* *αὐτῶν*, 722, 10. — 10. **λαβόντα**: acc. with the unexpressed subj. of *ἥκειν*, rather than dat. (*cf.* ll. 6, 7) with *Ξενίᾳ*, because the latter is remote in position. — 11. **πλήν**: *sc.* *τοσούτων*, as antec. to *ὁπόσοι*. — 14. **ὑποσχόμενος . . . οἵκαδε**, *promising them that, if he should successfully accomplish the*

ἐστρατεύετο, μὴ πρόσθεν παύσεσθαι πρὶν αὐτοὺς καταγάγοι οἴκαδε. οἱ δὲ ἡδέως ἐπείθοντο· ἐπίστευον γὰρ αὐτῷ· καὶ λαβόντες τὰ ὅπλα παρῆσαν εἰς Σάρδεις. Ξενίας μὲν δὴ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων 3
λαβὼν παρεγένετο εἰς Σάρδεις ὁπλίτας εἰς τετρακισχιλίους, Πρόξενος δὲ παρῆν ἔχων ὁπλίτας μὲν εἰς πεντακοσίους καὶ χιλίους, γυμνήτας δὲ πεντακοσίους, Σοφαίνετος δὲ ὁ Στυμφάλιος ὁπλίτας ἔχων χιλίους, Σωκράτης δὲ ὁ Ἀχαιὸς ὁπλίτας ἔχων ὡς πεντακοσίους, Παῦσίων δὲ ὁ Μεγαρεὺς τριακοσίους μὲν ὁπλίτας, τριακοσίους δὲ πελταστὰς ἔχων παρεγένετο· ἦν δὲ καὶ οὗτος καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης τῶν ἀμφὶ Μίλητον στρατευομένων. οὗτοι μὲν εἰς Σάρδεις 4
αὐτῷ ἀφίκοντο. Τισσαφέρνης δὲ κατανοήσας ταῦτα, καὶ μείζονα ἡγησάμενος εἶναι ἢ ὡς ἐπὶ Πισίδας τὴν παρασκευήν, πορεύεται ὡς βασιλέα ἢ ἐδύνατο τάχιστα ἱππέας ἔχων ὡς πεντακοσίους. καὶ βασιλεὺς μὲν δὴ ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους 5
τὸν Κύρου στόλον, ἀντιπαρεσκευάζετο.

---

object (569) *for which he was taking the field, he would not stop* (p. 250 ⁸) *until he restored them to their homes.* — 18. **Σάρδεις**: see the map. — **τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων**: for *ἐκ τῶν πόλεων τοὺς ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι*. *Cf.* 706, 23. — 19. **ὁπλίτας**: in appos. with *τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων*. — **εἰς**: *cf.* 498, I. 12. — 23. **ὡς**: *cf.* 491, I. 25. — 26. **ἦν**: *cf.* p. 232 ⁷. — **τῶν στρατευομένων**: *cf.* 380, I. 1. — 27. **οὗτοι μέν**: in contrast with those who joined him later. Every Greek sentence has in general a conjunction to connect it with what goes before. But Xenophon frequently omits the conjunction in a sentence that begins with a demonstrative (*cf.* ll. 37, 38) or adverb of place (*cf.* ll. 5, 41). — 28. **αὐτῷ**: dat. of advantage (p. 254 ⁵). — 29. **μείζονα . . . ἢ ὡς**, *too great to be*, lit. *greater than as* (*it would be, if*) *etc.* — 30. **ὡς**: *cf.* 391, I. 11. — 31. **ἢ ἐδύνατο τάχιστα**, *as rapidly as possible*, lit. *in what way he could most quickly.* — 32. **Τισσαφέρνους**: gen. of the source. *Cf.* 498, I. 1.

Κῦρος δὲ ἔχων οὓς εἴρηκα ὡρμᾶτο ἀπὸ Σάρ-
35 δεων· καὶ ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λῡδίᾱς σταθμοὺς τρεῖς
παρασάγγᾱς εἴκοσι καὶ δύο ἐπὶ τὸν Μαίανδρον
ποταμόν. τούτου τὸ εὖρος δύο πλέθρα· γέφῡρα
δὲ ἐπῆν ἐζευγμένη πλοίοις. τοῦτον διαβὰς ἐξε- 6
λαύνει διὰ Φρυγίᾱς σταθμὸν ἕνα παρασάγγᾱς
40 ὀκτὼ εἰς Κολοσσάς, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, εὐδαίμονα
καὶ μεγάλην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρᾱς ἑπτά· καὶ
ἦκε Μένων ὁ Θετταλὸς ὁπλίτᾱς ἔχων χῑλίους καὶ
πελταστὰς πεντακοσίους, Δόλοπας καὶ Αἰνιᾶνας
καὶ Ὀλυνθίους.

34. ὡρμᾶτο: the march began in the spring of 401 B.C. Trace the route, in the following description, on the map. — 38. πλοίοις: dat. of means (p. 47 [5]). — 42. Menon was sent by Aristippus, who was not able to obey the summons of Cyrus in person (see ll. 6 ff.).

Make a special study of the prepositions in this Reading Lesson (ἀμφί, 26; ἀπό, 34; διά, 35, 39; εἰς, 18, 19 (*bis*), 21, 27, 40; ἐν, 9; ἐξ, 3, 18; ἐπί, 4, 14, 29, 36; πρός, 7, 8; σύν, 13) according to the directions previously given.

LESSON CVI.

Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Cases.

728. EXERCISE.

1. ἀγαθόν τι ποιήσομεν ὑμᾶς. 2. ὦ θαυμασιώτατε ἄνθρωπε, σύγε οὐδὲ ὁρῶν γιγνώσκεις οὐδὲ ἀκούων μέμνησαι. 3. οὗτος, ὦ ἄνδρες, βασιλεὺς ἐγένετο τῶν Περσῶν. 4. πορευόμενοι δὲ διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρᾱς ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν Μάσκᾱν ποταμόν, τὸ εὖρος πλεθριαῖον. 5. μείναντες δὲ ταύτην τὴν ἡμέρᾱν τῇ ἄλλῃ [1] ἐπορεύοντο. 6. ἀλλὰ μὰ τοὺς θεοὺς οὐκ ἔγωγε αὐτοὺς διώξω. 7. στρατιώτᾱς γὰρ ᾔτησε

[1] *Cf.* 167, I. 13.

τὸν σατράπην. 8. τοιαῦτα τοὺς ἐχθροὺς ἡμῶν οἱ θεοὶ ποιήσουσιν. 9. δεῖ τὸν στρατιώτην φοβεῖσθαι μᾶλλον τὸν ἄρχοντα ἢ τοὺς πολεμίους, εἰ μέλλει φυλακὰς φυλάξειν.[1] 10. κράτιστον, ὦ Χειρίσοφε, ἡμῖν ἴεσθαι ὡς τάχιστα ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον. 11. ὥστε καὶ χρήματα συνεβάλλοντο αὐτῷ εἰς τὴν τροφὴν τῶν στρατιωτῶν αἱ πόλεις ἑκοῦσαι.[2] 12. καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν[3] ὁ μὲν ἦρχεν, οἱ δὲ ἐπειθοντο. 13. ἀπεῖχον τῆς χαράδρας ὀκτὼ σταδίους. 14. Ἀριαῖος δέ, ὃν ἡμεῖς ἠθέλομεν βασιλέα καθιστάναι, ἡμᾶς κακὸν ποιεῖν πειρᾶται. 15. Κλέαρχε καὶ Πρόξενε, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ παρόντες Ἕλληνες, οὐκ ἴστε ὅ τι ποιεῖτε. 16. ἦσαν δὲ νὴ Δία καὶ ἡμῶν[4] οἳ ἔδεισαν. 17. ἀλλ' οὐ στρατηγήσω ταύτην τὴν στρατηγίαν. 18. καί με φεύγοντα ἐκ τῆς πατρίδος τά τε ἄλλα Κῦρος ἐτίμησε καὶ μυρίους ἔδωκε δαρεικούς. 19. πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ πόλις ᾠκεῖτο μεγάλη καὶ εὐδαίμων ὄνομα Καιναί. 20. ἐὰν δὲ μὴ ἡγεμόνα διδῷ, συνταττωμεθα τὴν ταχίστην.[5] 21. οὗτοι ἠρώτων Κῦρον τὰ δόξαντα[6] τῇ στρατιᾷ. 22. ἀναμνήσω γὰρ ὑμᾶς καὶ τοὺς τῶν προγόνων τῶν ὑμετέρων[7] κινδύνους. 23. Κῦρον δὲ μεταπέμπεται ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἧς αὐτὸν σατράπην ἐποίησε. 24. οἱ Θρᾷκες ἐβούλοντο ἀφαιρεῖσθαι τοὺς Ἕλληνας τὴν γῆν.

Examine the substantives and pronouns in the nominative in 2, 3, 6, 8, 11, 14, 16, 18, 19, 21, 24, and note their relation to the finite verbs.

729. **Rule of Syntax.** — The nominative is used chiefly as the subject of a finite verb (713), or in the predicate after verbs signifying to *be, become, etc.* (715), when used in a finite mood.

Examine the vocatives in 2, 3, 10, 15.

---

[1] The fut. infin. is used with μέλλω to form a periphrastic future.
[2] *Cf.* 712, 13.
[3] *thenceforth.*
[4] *Sc.* τινές as subj. of ἦσαν.
[5] *Sc.* ὁδόν.
[6] See 718.
[7] See 719 end.

730. Rule of Syntax. — The vocative, with or without ὦ, is used as the case of address.

Examine the accusatives in 6 (αὐτούς), 9 (ἄρχοντα, πολεμίους), 11 (χρήματα), 15 (ὅ τι), 18 (μέ, δᾱρεικούς), 20 (ἡγεμόνα), 23 (Κῦρον), and the verbs on which they depend, and note their mutual relation.

731. Rule of Syntax. — The direct object of the action of a transitive verb is put in the accusative.

Examine the accusatives in 9 (φυλακάς), 17, and the verbs to which they belong, and note their meaning and mutual relation.

732. Rule of Syntax. — Any verb whose meaning permits it may take an accusative of kindred signification. This accusative repeats the idea *already contained* in the verb, and may follow intransitive as well as transitive verbs. It is called the *cognate* accusative.

Examine the function of the accusatives in 4 (εὖρος), 18 (ἄλλα), 19.

733. Rule of Syntax. — The accusative of *specification* may be joined with a verb, adjective, or substantive, to denote that *in respect to which* the expression is used.

Examine the force of the accusatives in 12, 20 (τὴν ταχίστην).

734. Rule of Syntax. — The accusative in certain expressions has the force of an adverb.

Examine the function of the accusatives in 5, 13.

735. Rule of Syntax. — The accusative may denote *extent* of time or space.

Examine the construction of the accusatives in 6 (θεούς), 16.

736. Rule of Syntax. — The accusative follows the adverbs of swearing νή and μά, *by*. An oath introduced by νή is affirmative; one introduced by μά is negative.

Examine the pairs of accusatives in 7, 21, 22, 24, and the verbs on which they depend, and note their mutual relation.

737. Rule of Syntax. — Many transitive verbs may take two object accusatives. Such are verbs signifying to *ask*, *remind, teach, clothe, conceal,* and *deprive.*

Examine the pairs of accusatives in 1, 8, 14 (ἡμᾶς, κακόν), note the signification of the verbs on which they depend, and observe that of each pair one accusative denotes the person, the other the thing.

738. Rule of Syntax. — Verbs signifying to *do anything to* a person take two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing.

Examine the pairs of accusatives in 14 (ὃν, βασιλέα), 23 (αὐτόν, σατράπην), and the verbs on which they depend, and observe that of each pair one accusative expresses predicate relation.

739. Rule of Syntax. — Many transitive verbs may take a *predicate* accusative in addition to the object accusative. Such are verbs signifying to *name, choose, make,* and *think.*

a. This is the active construction corresponding to the passive with copulative verbs. See 715.

The accusative is used also with prepositions (95, 96, 97) and as the subject of the infinitive (350).

740. EXERCISE.

1. And another army was collected for him in the following manner. 2. What opinion have you expressed, Socrates? 3. We will ask the general whether he has garrisons in the cities.[1] 4. Why do you ask me for boats? 5. And thence they proceeded one stage, four parasangs. 6. They wished to rob them of their land. 7. The general has committed a great error.[2] 8. This man they made king. 9. But the Greeks proceeded safely for the rest of the day. 10. And the wall was forty feet[3] in height. 11. They remained there seven days. 12. Through the middle[4] of the city there flows a river, which is called the Cydnus,[5] two plethra in width. 13. This man was chosen general.

[1] The indirect question is the second obj.
[2] *Cf.* 628, I. 17.
[3] *Cf.* 319, I. 18.
[4] *Cf.* 386, I. 8.
[5] *Cf.* 728, 19 above.

LESSON CVII.

Reading Lesson.

741. ANABASIS I. ii. 7–12.

From Colossae Cyrus proceeds to Celaenae. The historian, in an interesting digression, tells of the palace and great park of Cyrus at Celaenae; of the sources and of the first course of the river Maeander (7); of the royal residence at Celaenae, close upon the sources of the river Marsyas, which empties into the Maeander; of the contest of Apollo and Marsyas and of the naming of the river (8); and of the building of the palace and of the settlement of Celaenae by Xerxes. Cyrus remains here a month, and is joined by the rest of his Greek troops. He reviews and numbers these (9). Thence he marches northwest through Peltae, where the festival of the Lycaea is celebrated, to the Market of the Ceramians, on the borders of Mysia (11). Thence eastward to the Plain of Cayster, where Epyaxa, the wife of the king of Cilicia, meets him and furnishes him money with which to pay his troops (12).

II.

ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας 7
εἴκοσιν εἰς Κελαινάς, τῆς Φρυγίας πόλιν οἰκουμέ-
νην, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα Κύρῳ βα-
σίλεια ἦν καὶ παράδεισος μέγας ἀγρίων θηρίων
πλήρης, ἃ ἐκεῖνος ἐθήρευεν ἀπὸ ἵππου, ὁπότε γυ-
μνάσαι βούλοιτο ἑαυτόν τε καὶ τοὺς ἵππους. διὰ
μέσου δὲ τοῦ παραδείσου ῥεῖ ὁ Μαίανδρος ποτα-
μός· αἱ δὲ πηγαὶ αὐτοῦ εἰσιν ἐκ τῶν βασιλείων·
ῥεῖ δὲ καὶ διὰ τῆς Κελαινῶν πόλεως. ἔστι δὲ καὶ 8
μεγάλου βασιλέως βασίλεια ἐν Κελαναῖς ἐρυμνὰ

5. **ὁπότε βούλοιτο**, *whenever he wished*. — 7. **μέσου**: see p. 111 5. — 8. **ἐκ τῶν βασιλείων**: we should say *within* instead of *out of the palace*, and the more precise statement in Greek would be *ἐν τοῖς βασιλείοις*. — 9. **Κελαινῶν**: in appos. with *πόλεως* (716). For the order of the words,

ἐπὶ ταῖς πηγαῖς τοῦ Μαρσύου ποταμοῦ ὑπὸ τῇ ἀκροπόλει· ῥεῖ δὲ καὶ οὗτος διὰ τῆς πόλεως καὶ ἐμβάλλει εἰς τὸν Μαίανδρον· τοῦ δὲ Μαρσύου τὸ εὖρός ἐστιν εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε ποδῶν. ἐνταῦθα λέγεται Ἀπόλλων ἐκδεῖραι Μαρσύαν, νικήσας ἐρίζοντά οἱ περὶ σοφίας, καὶ τὸ δέρμα κρεμάσαι ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ ὅθεν αἱ πηγαί· διὰ δὲ τοῦτο ὁ ποταμὸς καλεῖται Μαρσύας. ἐνταῦθα Ξέρξης, ὅτε ἐκ τῆς 9
Ἑλλάδος ἡττηθεὶς τῇ μάχῃ ἀπεχώρει, λέγεται οἰκοδομῆσαι ταῦτά τε τὰ βασίλεια καὶ τὴν Κελαινῶν ἀκρόπολιν. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε Κῦρος ἡμέρας τριάκοντα· καὶ ἦκε Κλέαρχος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς ἔχων ὁπλίτας χιλίους καὶ πελταστὰς Θρᾷκας ὀκτακοσίους καὶ τοξότας Κρῆτας διακοσίους. ἅμα δὲ καὶ Σῶσις παρῆν ὁ Συράκόσιος ἔχων ὁπλίτας τριακοσίους, καὶ Σοφαίνετος ὁ Ἀρκὰς ἔχων ὁπλίτας χιλίους. καὶ ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος ἐξέτασιν καὶ ἀριθμὸν τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐποίησεν ἐν τῷ παραδείσῳ, καὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ σύμπαντες ὁπλῖται μὲν μύριοι καὶ χίλιοι,

cf. ὁ Μαίανδρος ποταμός in l. 7. — 11. **ὑπό**, *under, at the foot of.* — 14. **ποδῶν**: *cf.* 198, l. 7. — **ἐνταῦθα . . . σοφίας**: *cf.* 517, l. 19. — 16. **καὶ κρεμάσαι**, *and to have hung up.* **κρεμάσαι**, first aor. infin. of κρεμάννυμι, is in the same const. with ἐκδεῖραι. — 17. **ὅθεν**, *whence*, for ὅθι or οὗ, *where*. See note on l. 8. — 19. **τῇ μάχῃ**, *in the (well-known) battle*, that of Salamis, fought in 480 B.C. — **λέγεται οἰκοδομῆσαι**: *cf.* λέγεται ἐκδεῖραι in l. 15. — 22. **Κλέαρχος**: *cf.* 722, 19 ff., and 727, 5 ff. — 25. **Σῶσις**: not previously mentioned, and not again referred to in the Anabasis. — 26. **Σοφαίνετος**: if this is the general mentioned in 722, 43, and 727, 22, the purpose for which he had been left behind must remain in doubt. — 28. **ἐγένοντο οἱ σύμπαντες**, *the whole number amounted to.* — 29. **ὁπλῖται μέν, πελτασταὶ δέ**: in appos. with *οἱ σύμπαντες*, expressing the two parts of the whole. The sum-total here given does not tally with the total of the numbers given in the preceding sections. Xenophon is here speaking in round numbers. —

πελτασταὶ δὲ ἀμφὶ τοὺς δισχιλίους. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξε- 10
λαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα εἰς Πέλ-
τας, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας
τρεῖς· ἐν αἷς Ξενίας ὁ Ἀρκὰς τὰ Λύκαια ἔθυσε
καὶ ἀγῶνα ἔθηκε· τὰ δὲ ἆθλα ἦσαν στλεγγίδες
χρυσαῖ· ἐθεώρει δὲ τὸν ἀγῶνα καὶ Κῦρος. ἐν-
τεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δώδεκα
εἰς Κεραμῶν ἀγοράν, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, ἐσχάτην
πρὸς τῇ Μυσίᾳ χώρᾳ. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθ- 11
μοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας τριάκοντα εἰς Καΰστρου
πεδίον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας
πέντε· καὶ τοῖς στρατιώταις ὠφείλετο μισθὸς
πλέον ἢ τριῶν μηνῶν, καὶ πολλάκις ἰόντες ἐπὶ
τὰς θύρας ἀπῄτουν. ὁ δὲ ἐλπίδας λέγων διῆγε
καὶ δῆλος ἦν ἀνιώμενος· οὐ γὰρ ἦν πρὸς τοῦ
Κύρου τρόπου ἔχοντα μὴ ἀποδιδόναι. ἐνταῦθα 12
ἀφικνεῖται Ἐπύαξα ἡ Συεννέσιος γυνὴ τοῦ Κιλί-
κων βασιλέως παρὰ Κῦρον· καὶ ἐλέγετο Κύρῳ
δοῦναι χρήματα πολλά. τῇ δ' οὖν στρατιᾷ τότε

---

30. **ἀμφὶ τοὺς δισχιλίους**: *cf.* 198, I. 12. — **ἐντεῦθεν . . . εἰς Πέλτας**: Cyrus now changes the direction of his march (see the map), probably with the double object of increasing his supplies and of getting on the main high-road to the east. — 34. **ἦσαν**: irregularly in agreement with the predicate substantive *στλεγγίδες*, not with its subj. *ἆθλα*. — 38. **ἐντεῦθεν . . . τριάκοντα**: these were *forced* marches. The object of Cyrus probably was to meet Epyaxa before his Greek troops became clamorous for their pay. — 42. **πλέον**: used indeclinably for *πλεόνων*. — 43. **ἐλπίδας λέγων διῆγε**, *kept* (**διῆγε**) *expressing* (or *continued to express*) *his hope* (*of paying them*). — 44. **δῆλος ἦν ἀνιώμενος**: we should say, *was evidently troubled*. — **οὐ γὰρ . . . ἀποδιδόναι**: *cf.* 640, I. 19. — 46. **τοῦ Κιλίκων βασιλέως**: but above in l. 10 we have simply *μεγάλου βασιλέως*, without the art. See p. 111[3]. — 47. **ἐλέγετο δοῦναι**, *she was said to have given*. *Cf.* ll. 15 and 19. — 48. **οὖν**, *at any rate*, *i.e.* however Cyrus got the money, he *at any rate*

ἀπέδωκε Κῦρος μισθὸν τεττάρων μηνῶν. εἶχε δὲ ἡ Κίλισσα καὶ φύλακας περὶ αὐτὴν Κίλικας καὶ Ἀσπενδίους.

certainly had it to pay his troops with. — Syennesis, as Xenophon calls him, was pursuing a double policy. He sent money to Cyrus by the hands of his wife, but at the same time he was endeavouring to propitiate Artaxerxes, being determined to keep his throne whichever of the two prevailed.

Make a special study of the prepositions in this Reading Lesson (ἀμφί, 30; ἀπό, 5; διά, 6, 9, 12, 17; εἰς, 2, 13, 31, 37, 39; ἐκ, 10, 16, 28, 33; ἐξ, 8, 18; ἐπί, 11, 42; παρά, 47; περί, 16, 50; πρός, 38, 44; ὑπό, 11) according to the directions previously given.

LESSON CVIII.

The Genitive Case.

742. EXERCISE.

1. ἐπὶ ταῖς βασιλέως θύραις ἦσαν. 2. ὅμως δὲ οἱ πολλοὶ δι' αἰσχύνην καὶ ἀλλήλων καὶ Κύρου συνηκολούθησαν. 3. καὶ γὰρ νομαὶ πολλαὶ βοσκημάτων κατελήφθησαν. 4. τοῦ δὲ Μαρσύου τὸ εὖρός ἐστιν εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε ποδῶν. 5. καὶ τῶν διαβαινόντων τὸν ποταμὸν οὐδεὶς ἐβρέχθη ἀνωτέρω τῶν μαστῶν.[1] 6. ἦσαν δὲ οὗτοι τῶν ἀμφὶ Μίλητον στρατευομένων. 7. ταῦτα δὲ λέγων θορύβου ἤκουσε διὰ τῶν τάξεων ἰόντος. 8. καὶ ἔταξεν αὐτοὺς λαβόντας τοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ στρατοῦ[2] συνεκβιβάζειν τὰς ἁμάξας. 9. τῶν δὲ περιττῶν μετεδίδοσαν ἀλλήλοις. 10. ὑμεῖς γὰρ δόξετε αἴτιοι εἶναι ἄρξαντες τοῦ διαβαίνειν.[3] 11. πρῶτον μὲν κατακαύσωμεν τὰς ἁμάξας, ἵνα μὴ τὰ ζεύγη ἡμῶν στρατηγῇ. 12. βούλεται

[1] See p. 179[1]. [2] *Sc.* μέρος. [3] *Cf.* 517, I. 14.

οὖν καὶ σὲ τούτων γεύσασθαι. 13. ταῦτα δὲ συνενηνεγμένα ἦν[1] τῷ σατραπεύοντι τῆς χώρας. 14. καὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν οἱ συνεπόμενοι ἀπωλώλεσαν. 15. ἐξαπίνης οἱ μὲν αὐτῶν ἐτόξευον, οἱ δ' ἐσφενδόνων. 16. καὶ εἴ τις δὲ χρημάτων ἐπιθῦμεῖ, κρατεῖν πειράσθω. 17. διφθέρας ἐπίμπλασαν χόρτου κούφου. 18. πάντες γὰρ κοινῆς σωτηρίας δεόμεθα. 19. μηδαμῶς ἁπτώμεθα τούτου τοῦ πράγματος. 20. τὸ δὲ λοιπὸν πειρώμεθα ταύτης τῆς τάξεως. 21. καὶ αἰτεῖ Κῦρον τριῶν μηνῶν μισθόν. 22. καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν αἱ πόλεις Τισσαφέρνους τὸ ἀρχαῖον. 23. τῶν δὲ Μένωνος στρατιωτῶν ξύλα σχίζων τις ἔησι Κλεάρχου τῇ ἀξίνῃ· καὶ οὗτος αὐτοῦ ἥμαρτεν. 24. τούτων γὰρ κοινωνήσαντες καὶ[2] προβάτων καὶ ἀνδραπόδων μετέσχετε. 25. ὁ δὲ Καλλίμαχος ὡς ὁρᾷ αὐτὸν παριόντα ἐπιλαμβάνεται αὐτοῦ τῆς ἴτυος.[3] 26. πάντες γὰρ οὗτοι ἀντεποιοῦντο ἀρετῆς. 27. τούτου δέ, ὦ ἄνδρες, ῥᾳδίως τεύξεσθε. 28. ἐρωτᾷ αὐτοὺς εἴ που ἥσθηνται ἄλλου στρατεύματος. 29. τούτων δὲ οὐδεὶς μέμνηται. 30. καὶ εἰς κώμας πολλῶν κἀγαθῶν γεμούσας ἦλθον. 31. δέδοικα γὰρ μὴ ἐπιλάθησθε τῆς οἴκαδε ὁδοῦ. 32. καὶ τῶν παρ' ἑαυτῷ δὲ βαρβάρων ἐπεμελεῖτο Κῦρος. 33. οὐχ ὥρᾱ ἐστὶν ἡμῖν ἀμελεῖν ἡμῶν αὐτῶν. 34. ὁ τῶν βαρβάρων φόβος πολὺς ἦν. 35. κρηπὶς δ' ὑπῆν λιθίνη τὸ ὕψος εἴκοσι ποδῶν.

Examine the genitives in 1, 2, 3, 4 (Μαρσύου), 5 (τῶν διαβαινόντων), 8, 14, 15, 21, 23 (Μένωνος, στρατιωτῶν), 25 (αὐτοῦ), 31, 35, and note the nature of the relation which each sustains to the substantive, or equivalent expression, on which it depends.

743. Rule of Syntax. — A substantive in the genitive may depend directly on another substantive. This is called the *attributive* genitive and expresses various relations. Thus: —

---

[1] συνενηνεγμένα ἦν, compound form in the third *sing.*, where συνενήνεκτο might have occurred.

[2] *also.*

[3] *the rim of his shield*, αὐτοῦ (*of him*) being a gen. of possession.

1. *Possession:* 1, 23 (Μένωνος), 25 (αὐτοῦ). The *possessive* genitive.

2. The *subject* of an action or feeling: 34. The *subjective* genitive.

3. The *object* of an action or feeling: 2. The *objective* genitive.

4. *Material:* 3. Genitive of *material.*

5. *Measure* of time or space: 21, 35. Genitive of *measure.*

6. The *whole*, after words denoting a part: 5 (τῶν διαβαινόντων), 8, 14, 15, 23 (στρατιωτῶν). The *partitive* genitive.

a. The partitive genitive may occur with all substantives, pronouns, adjectives (especially superlatives), participles with the article, and even adverbs, which denote a part. The word denoting the part is sometimes understood.

Examine the genitives in 4 (πόδων), 6, 22, observe that each is part of the predicate, and note the relation of each to the subject of the principal verb.

744. Rule of Syntax.—A substantive in the genitive may stand in the predicate after the copula.

a. The predicate genitive generally belongs to the subject of the sentence, and may express any of the relations of the attributive genitive.

Examine the genitives in 9, 24, and note the signification of the verbs on which they depend.

745. Rule of Syntax.—The genitive follows verbs signifying to *share* (*give* or *take a part*).

Examine the genitives in 10, 19, 20, 23 (Κλεάρχου, αὐτοῦ), 25 (ἵππος), 26, 27, and note the signification of the verbs on which they depend.

746. Rule of Syntax.—The genitive follows verbs signifying to *take hold of, touch, claim, aim at, hit, attain, miss, make trial of, begin.*

Examine the genitives in 7 (θορύβου), 12, 16, 28, 29, 31, 32, 33, and note the signification of the verbs on which they depend.

747. Rule of Syntax.—The genitive follows verbs which signify an action of the *senses* or of the *mind*, particularly those meaning to *taste, hear, perceive, remember, forget, desire, care for, neglect.*

Examine the genitives in 11, 13, and note the signification of the verbs on which they depend.

748. Rule of Syntax.—The genitive follows verbs signifying to *rule* and *lead.*

Examine the genitives in 17, 18, 30, and note the signification of the verbs on which they depend.

749. Rule of Syntax.—The genitive follows verbs of *plenty* and *want*. Those signifying to *fill* take also the accusative of the thing filled.

750. EXERCISE.

1. But *we* resolutely refrained on account of our[1] oaths (sworn in the name) of the gods. 2. And underneath there was a foundation of polished stone. 3. And upon this foundation a brick fort a hundred feet in height had been built. 4. So the great (part) of the Greek force was in this way persuaded. 5. Many of the beasts of burden perished of[2] hunger. 6. He marched on to the river, which was[3] a plethrum in width. 7. The water did not touch the hay. 8. It is right to obtain this. 9. Nobody tasted food. 10. And he commanded Clearchus to lead the right wing. 11. Many of the barbarians had fled from the villages. 12. For the cities were the satrap's. 13. And nobody missed (his) man. 14. There is need of slingers and horsemen. 15. But some of the soldiers heard the man's voice, and opened the gate. 16. He began the debate as follows. 17. They were angry on account of the destruction of their fellow-soldiers.

[1] Use the art. [2] ὑπό with the gen. [3] Use the partic.

LESSON CIX.

Reading Lesson.

751. ANABASIS I. ii. 13–20.

From the Plain of Caÿster. Cyrus marches south-east to Thymbrium, and thence to Tyriaeum, where he reviews his forces (13, 14). The Greeks draw themselves up in full array, and make a splendid appearance (15, 16). Halting his chariot in front of the Greek phalanx, he orders them to present arms and advance (17). Hereupon the barbarian troops are terrified, and the Cilician queen flees precipitately. Cyrus is pleased to see the terror with which the Greeks inspire the native troops (18). Thence he marches to Iconium, and thence through Lycaonia, which the Greeks plunder (19). Menon is sent to escort the queen into Cilicia; Cyrus himself proceeds to Dana (20).

II.

ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγ- 13
γας δέκα εἰς Θύμβριον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθα
ἦν παρὰ τὴν ὁδὸν κρήνη ἡ Μίδου καλουμένη τοῦ
Φρυγῶν βασιλέως, ἐφ' ᾗ λέγεται Μίδᾶς τὸν Σάτυ-
ρον θηρεῦσαι οἴνῳ κεράσᾶς αὐτήν. ἐντεῦθεν 14
ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγᾶς δέκα εἰς
Τυριαῖον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέ-
ρᾶς τρεῖς. καὶ λέγεται δεηθῆναι ἡ Κίλισσα Κύρου
ἐπιδεῖξαι τὸ στράτευμα αὐτῇ· βουλόμενος οὖν ἐπι-
δεῖξαι ἐξέταστιν ποιεῖται ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ τῶν Ἑλλή-
νων καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων. ἐκέλευε δὲ τοὺς Ἕλλη- 15
νας ὡς νόμος αὐτοῖς εἰς μάχην οὕτω ταχθῆναι καὶ
στῆναι, συντάξαι δ' ἕκαστον τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ. ἐτά-

3. παρὰ τὴν ὁδόν: the acc. after παρα because of the idea of motion involved, the water, after it has left the fountain, flowing *along the road*. With ἐπί, a verb of rest, we should expect the dat. — 4. τὸν Σάτυρον, *the (well-known) Satyr, i.e.* Silenus. — 5. οἴνῳ, *with wine* (p. 47 [5]). — 12. ὡς . . . μάχην, *as their custom (was) for battle*. — 13. στῆναι, *to take their*

χθησαν οὖν ἐπὶ τεττάρων· εἶχε δὲ τὸ μὲν δεξιὸν
Μένων καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, τὸ δὲ εὐώνυμον Κλέαρχος
καὶ οἱ ἐκείνου, τὸ δὲ μέσον οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοί.
ἐθεώρει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος πρῶτον μὲν τοὺς βαρβάρους· 16
οἱ δὲ παρήλαυνον τεταγμένοι κατ' ἴλᾶς καὶ κατὰ
τάξεις· εἶτα δὲ τοὺς Ἕλληνας, παρελαύνων ἐφ'
ἅρματος καὶ ἡ Κίλισσα ἐφ' ἁρμαμάξης. εἶχον
δὲ πάντες κράνη χαλκᾶ καὶ χιτῶνας φοινικοῦς
καὶ κνημῖδας καὶ τὰς ἀσπίδας ἐκκεκαλυμμένας.
ἐπειδὴ δὲ πάντας παρήλασε, στήσᾱς τὸ ἅρμα 17
πρὸ τῆς φάλαγγος μέσης, πέμψᾱς Πίγρητα τὸν
ἑρμηνέᾱ παρὰ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων
ἐκέλευσε προβαλέσθαι τὰ ὅπλα καὶ ἐπιχωρῆσαι
ὅλην τὴν φάλαγγα. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα προεῖπον τοῖς
στρατιώταις· καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐσάλπιγξε, προβαλλόμενοι
τὰ ὅπλα ἐπῆσαν. ἐκ δὲ τούτου θᾶττον προϊόντων
σὺν κραυγῇ, ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου δρόμος ἐγένετο
τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς, τῶν δὲ βαρ- 18
βάρων φόβος πολύς, καὶ ἥ τε Κίλισσα ἔφυγεν ἐπὶ
τῆς ἁρμαμάξης καὶ οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς καταλιπόντες

places (second aor.). — **ἕκαστον**: *sc.* στρατηγόν. — **τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ**, *his own men*. — 14. **εἶχε**: see p. 232[7], and *cf.* 741, 4. — 17. **πρῶτον μέν**: the correlative is **εἶτα δέ** in l. 19. — 18. **κατ' ἴλᾶς καὶ κατὰ τάξεις**, *by squadrons and by companies*, of cavalry and infantry respectively. — 19. **τοὺς Ἕλληνας**: governed by **ἐθεώρει** in l. 17. — 21. **πάντες**: *i.e.* the Greeks. — 22. **ἐκκεκαλυμμένᾱς**, *uncovered*, a circumstantial partic. of manner (379). — 23. **παρήλασε**, *had driven by*. See note on **ἐποίησε** in 706, 7. — **στήσᾱς**: *first* aor., and therefore trans. — 24. **μέσης**: *cf.* 741, 7, and note. — 29. **θᾶττον προϊόντων**: *sc.* αὐτῶν, *as they advanced more and more rapidly*. For the gen. absol., see note on 706, 33. — 31. **ἐπὶ τας σκηνάς**: as if threatening the barbarian troops with an attack. Below we are told the Greeks later *dispersed to their tents with a roar of laughter* (**οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες . . . ἦλθον**). — 33. **οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς ἔφυγον**: *i.e.* **οἱ ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ ἔφυγον ἐκ τῆς**

τὰ ὄνια ἔφυγον. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες σὺν γέλωτι ἐπὶ
35 τὰς σκηνὰς ἦλθον. ἡ δὲ Κίλισσα ἰδοῦσα τὴν
λαμπρότητα καὶ τὴν τάξιν τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐθαύ-
μασε. Κῦρος δὲ ἤσθη τὸν ἐκ τῶν Ἑλλήνων εἰς
τοὺς βαρβάρους φίλον ἰδών. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει 19
σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας εἴκοσιν εἰς Ἰκόνιον,
40 τῆς Φρυγίας πόλιν ἐσχάτην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε τρεῖς
ἡμέρας. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λυκαονίας
σταθμοὺς πέντε παρασάγγας τριάκοντα. ταύτην
τὴν χώραν ἐπέτρεψε διαρπάσαι τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ὡς
πολεμίαν οὖσαν. ἐντεῦθεν Κῦρος τὴν Κίλισσαν εἰς 20
45 τὴν Κιλικίαν ἀποπέμπει τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν· καὶ
συνέπεμψεν αὐτῇ τοὺς στρατιώτας οὓς Μένων εἶχε
καὶ αὐτόν. Κῦρος δὲ μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων ἐξελαύνει
διὰ Καππαδοκίας σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας
εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε πρὸς Δάτα, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, μεγά-
50 λην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς·
ἐν ᾧ Κῦρος ἀπέκτεινεν ἄνδρα Πέρσην Μεγαφέρνην,
φοινῖκιστὴν βασίλειον, καὶ ἕτερόν τινα τῶν ὑπάρ-
χων δυνάστην, αἰτιασάμενος ἐπιβουλεύειν αὐτῷ.

ἔφυγον. Cf. 706, 23, and 727, 18, and notes. — 37. ἐκ τῶν Ἑλλήνων εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους: attributive prepositional phrases (p. 231). — 43. διαρπάσαι: cf. 624, 1, 15 and 20. — ὡς πολεμίαν οὖσαν: *on the ground that it was hostile*. For ὡς with the causal participle, cf. 706, 33, and 722, 33, 41, 42, and notes. — 45. ὁδόν: adverbial acc. (734). — 47. αὐτόν: intensive (516). — 51. ἐν ᾧ: see 706, 2. — 52. καὶ ἕτερον . . . δυνάστην: *and a certain other powerful man of his satraps*. — 53. ἐπιβουλεύειν: see 354. Cyrus's charge was ἐπιβουλεύουσιν ἐμοί.

Make a special study of the prepositions in this Reading Lesson (ἀπό, 30; διά, 41, 48; εἰς, 2, 6, 12, 37, 39, 44; ἐκ, 10, 54; ἐξ, 29, 33, 37; ἐπί, 4, 11, 19, 20, 31, 32, 34; κατά, 18 (*bis*); μετά, 47; παρά, 3, 25; πρό, 24; πρός, 19; σύν, 15, 30, 34) according to the directions previously given.

LESSON CX.

Genitive Case (continued).

752. EXERCISE.

1. οὗτος ἡμᾶς Βυζαντίου ἀποκλείσει. 2. τὰ δ' ἅρματα ἐφέρετο διὰ τῶν τάξεων κενὰ ἡνιόχων. 3. τούτου σε ζηλῶ. 4. ἡ δὲ ὄψις τῶν βαλάνων ἠλέκτρου οὐδὲν διέφερεν. 5. μακρότερον γὰρ οἱ Ῥόδιοι τῶν Περσῶν ἐσφενδόνων. 6. οὕτω περιγένοιτο ἂν τῶν ἀντιστασιωτῶν. 7. καὶ πολεμίου οὐδενὸς κατεγέλᾱ. 8. τὰ δὲ ἐπιτήδεια πότερον ὠνεῖσθαι κρεῖττον[1] ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς ἢ[2] οὗτοι παρεῖχον, μῑκρὰ μέτρα[3] πολλοῦ ἀργυρίου, ἢ αὐτοὺς[4] λαμβάνειν; 9. διώξει γάρ σε ἀσεβείᾱς. 10. ἔμπειροι γὰρ ἦσαν τῆς χώρᾱς. 11. καὶ ὁ σατράπης μάλα ταχέως ἔξω βελῶν ἀπεχώρει. 12. Κῦρος δ' οὖν ἀνέβη ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη οὐδενὸς κωλύοντος. 13. κακῶς γὰρ τῶν ἡμετέρων ἐχόντων[5] πάντες οὗτοι οὓς ὁρᾶτε βάρβαροι πολεμιώτεροι ἡμῖν ἔσονται τῶν παρὰ βασιλεῖ ὄντων. 14. βασιλεὺς οὐ μαχεῖται δέκα ἡμερῶν. 15. τῶν εἰς τὸν πόλεμον ἔργων, τοξικῆς τε καὶ ἀκοντίσεως, φιλομαθέστατος ἦν. 16. ὁμολογουμένως ἐκ[6] πάντων τῶν ἐμπείρως αὐτοῦ ἐχόντων[5] ἔδοξε γενέσθαι[7] ἀνὴρ πολεμικός. 17. ἦσαν γὰρ οἱ λοχᾶγοὶ πλησίον ἀλλήλων. 18. καὶ χρόνον[8] τινὰ ἐπέσχον τῆς πορείᾱς οἱ βάρβαροι. 19. διέσχον ἀλλήλων βασιλεύς τε καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ὡς τριάκοντα στάδια. 20. οὐδὲν[9] πλήθει γε ἡμῶν ἐλείφθησαν. 21. Ξενοφῶν βούλεται τῑμωρήσασθαι αὐτοὺς τῆς ἐπιθέσεως. 22. ἔστε ἄνδρες ἄξιοι τῆς ἐλευθερίᾱς

---

[1] *Sc.* ἐστίν.
[2] See 725.
[3] In apposition with τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.
[4] Intensive (516), to be taken with ἡμᾶς, the unexpressed subj. of λαμβάνειν.
[5] See p. 104[3].
[6] ὁμολογουμένως ἐκ, *as was agreed by.*
[7] *to have shown himself* (354).
[8] See 735.
[9] See 734.

ἧς ὑμᾶς ἐγὼ εὐδαιμονίζω. 23. καὶ ἀφίκοντο εἰς κώμας πολλὰς πολλῶν τῶν ἐπιτηδείων μεστάς. 24. τῶν καλλίστων ἑαυτὸν ἠξίωσε[1] Ξενοφῶν.

Examine the genitives in 4 (ἠλέκτρου), 18, 19, and observe that they express the idea of separation or distinction.

753. Rule of Syntax. — The genitive (as ablative) may denote that from which anything is *separated* or *distinguished*. On this principle the genitive follows verbs which signify to *remove, restrain, release, cease, fail, differ, yield*, and the like.

Examine the genitives in 6, 20, and note the signification of the verbs on which they depend.

754. Rule of Syntax. — The genitive follows verbs signifying to *surpass* or *be inferior*.

Examine the genitives in 9, 21, observe that they express a crime, and note the signification of the verbs on which they depend.

755. Rule of Syntax. — Verbs of *judicial action* are followed by a genitive expressing the *crime*. Such are verbs signifying to *accuse, prosecute, convict, acquit, condemn*, and the like.

Examine the genitives in 3, 22 (ἧς), observe that they denote a cause, and note the signification of the verbs on which they depend.

756. Rule of Syntax. — The genitive often denotes a *cause*, especially with verbs expressing emotions. Such are verbs expressing *admiration, wonder, affection, hatred, pity, anger, envy, revenge*, and the like.

Examine the genitives in 1, 7, and observe that the verbs on which they depend are compound.

757. Rule of Syntax. — The genitive often depends on a preposition included in a compound verb.

Examine the genitives in 8 (ἀργυρίου), 24, and observe that they express price or value.

---

[1] *deemed himself worthy, valued himself at.*

758. Rule of Syntax. — The genitive may denote the *price* or *value* of a thing.

Examine the genitive in 14, and observe that it expresses the time within which.

759. Rule of Syntax. — The genitive may denote the *time within which* an action takes place.

Examine the genitives in 2 (ἡνιόχων), 10, 15, 22 (ἐλευθερίᾱς), 23, and note the signification of the adjectives with which they are connected.

760. Rule of Syntax. — The *objective* genitive follows many verbal adjectives. These adjectives are chiefly kindred, in meaning or derivation, to verbs which take the genitive, but some of them are kindred to verbs which take the accusative.

Examine the genitives in 11, 16 (αὐτοῦ), 17, and note the signification of the adverbs with which they are connected.

761. Rule of Syntax. — The genitive follows adverbs derived from adjectives which take the genitive, and many adverbs of place.

Examine the substantives and circumstantial participles in the genitive in 12, 13 (τῶν ἡμετέρων ἐχόντων), and observe that they are not grammatically connected with the construction of the sentence in which they occur.

762. Rule of Syntax. — A substantive and a circumstantial participle, not grammatically connected with the main construction of the sentence, may stand by themselves in the genitive. This is called the *genitive absolute*.

Examine the genitives in 5, 13 (τῶν ὄντων), and observe that they follow comparatives.

763. Rule of Syntax. — Adjectives and adverbs of the comparative degree are followed by the genitive when ἤ, *than*, is omitted.

The genitive is used also with prepositions (93, 96, 97).

764. EXERCISE.

1. The soldier was convicted of treason. 2. He admired the citizens for their virtue. 3. You laughed at me. 4. For these are still more cowardly than those who have been defeated[1] by us. 5. And they overcame the light-armed soldiers. 6. But the Greeks were about[2] eight stadia distant from the ravine. 7. He sold the horse for fifty daries. 8. And the plain abounded in trees of every sort, and in vines. 9. For these rivers are impassable at a distance from their sources. 10. This took place while the Greeks were going away.[3] 11. For this general was at the head of the mercenary (force) in the cities. 12. The horse was sacred to the Sun. 13. But all this (is) hard (to do) by night and when there is an uproar.[3]

LESSON CXI.

Reading Lesson.

765. ANABASIS I. ii. 21–27.

Leaving Dana, Cyrus defers for a day the attempt to cross the mountains into Cilicia, because he hears that Syennesis is guarding the pass. The next day Syennesis is reported to have withdrawn on hearing that Menon is already in Cilicia, and that triremes are on the way from Ionia (21). Cyrus makes the passage, and descends into a great fertile plain (22). Thence he proceeds to Tarsi, the capital of Cilicia, through which flows the river Cydnus (23). He finds the town abandoned by the king and most of the inhabitants (24). Menon reached Tarsi five days before the arrival of Cyrus, having lost two companies in the passage of the mountains (25), and his soldiers plundered the town, because of the loss of their comrades. Cyrus, on his arrival, summons Syennesis, who is finally persuaded by his wife to obey (26). Cyrus and the king seal their compact of friendship with gifts (27).

---

[1] See 371. [2] ὅσον. [3] *Cf.* 752, 12 above.

II.

ἐντεῦθεν ἐπειρῶντο εἰσβάλλειν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίᾱν· 21
ἡ δὲ εἰσβολὴ ἦν ὁδὸς ἁμαξιτὸς ὀρθίᾱ ἰσχῡρῶς
καὶ ἀμήχανος εἰσελθεῖν στρατεύματι, εἴ τις ἐκώ-
λῡεν. ἐλέγετο δὲ καὶ Συέννεσις εἶναι ἐπὶ τῶν
ἄκρων φυλάττων τὴν εἰσβολήν· διὸ ἔμειναν ἡμέ-
ρᾱν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ ἦκεν ἄγγελος
λέγων ὅτι λελοιπὼς εἴη Συέννεσις τὰ ἄκρα, ἐπεὶ
ἤσθετο ὅτι τὸ Μένωνος στράτευμα ἤδη ἐν Κιλικίᾳ
ἦν εἴσω τῶν ὀρέων, καὶ ὅτι τριήρεις ἥκουε περι-
πλεούσᾱς ἀπ' Ἰωνίᾱς εἰς Κιλικίᾱν Ταμῶν ἔχοντα
τὰς Λακεδαιμονίων καὶ αὐτοῦ Κύρου. Κῦρος δ' 22
οὖν ἀνέβη ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη οὐδενὸς κωλύοντος, καὶ εἶδε
τὰς σκηνὰς οὗ οἱ Κίλικες ἐφύλαττον. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ
κατέβαινεν εἰς πεδίον μέγα καὶ καλόν, ἐπίρρυτον,
καὶ δένδρων παντοδαπῶν σύμπλεων καὶ ἀμπέλων·
πολὺ δὲ καὶ σήσαμον καὶ μελίνην καὶ κέγχρον καὶ
πῡροὺς καὶ κρῑθὰς φέρει. ὄρος δ' αὐτὸ περιέχει
ὀχυρὸν καὶ ὑψηλὸν πάντῃ ἐκ θαλάττης εἰς θάλατ-
ταν. καταβὰς δὲ διὰ τούτου τοῦ πεδίου ἦλασε 23

---

3. **ἀμήχανος εἰσελθεῖν στρατεύματι**, *impracticable for an army* (p. 254) *to enter* (p. 219[1]). — 5. **φυλάττων τὴν εἰσβολήν**: not with the intention of real opposition, but to give colour to his asserted allegiance to the king. — 7. **λελοιπὼς . . . τὰ ἄκρα**, *had abandoned the heights.* **ἐπεί**, *since.* — 9. **ὅτι**, *because.* The order is, *ὅτι ἤκουε Ταμων ἔχοντα* (p. 240[5]), *τριήρεις περιπλεούσᾱς* (369), *because he heard Tamos was in command of the triremes that were sailing round, etc.* — 11. **τὰς . . . Κύρου**: with *τριήρεις* (719). — 12. **οὖν**, *at any rate, i.e.* for whatever reason Syennesis left the heights. *Cf.* 741, 48. — 13. **τὰς σκηνάς**, *the camp*, antecedent to the relative adv. *οὗ*. — **ἐφύλαττον**, *had been on guard. Cf.* **ἦσαν** in 706, 35, and *ἐτέτακτο* in 722, 17, and notes. — 16. **πολύ**: in agreement with *σήσαμον*, the nearest subst., but to be understood with the others that follow. — 17. **φέρει**: not the historical pres., but the pres. to denote the fact that was true at the

σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγᾱς πέντε καὶ εἴκοσιν εἰς Ταρσούς, τῆς Κιλικίᾱς πόλιν μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα, ἔνθα ἦν τὰ Συεννέσιος βασίλεια τοῦ Κιλίκων βασιλέως· διὰ μέσου δὲ τῆς πόλεως ῥεῖ ποταμὸς Κύδνος ὄνομα, εὖρος δύο πλέθρων. ταύτην τὴν πόλιν ἐξέλιπον οἱ ἐνοικοῦντες 24 μετὰ Συεννέσιος εἰς χωρίον ὀχυρὸν ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη πλὴν οἱ τὰ καπηλεῖα ἔχοντες· ἔμειναν δὲ καὶ οἱ παρὰ τὴν θάλατταν οἰκοῦντες ἐν Σόλοις καὶ ἐν Ἰσσοῖς. Ἐπύαξα δὲ ἡ Συεννέσιος γυνὴ προτέρᾱ 25 Κύρου πέντε ἡμέραις εἰς Ταρσοὺς ἀφίκετο· ἐν δὲ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ τῶν ὀρέων τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδίον δύο λόχοι τοῦ Μένωνος στρατεύματος ἀπώλοντο· οἱ μὲν ἔφασαν ἁρπάζοντάς τι κατακοπῆναι ὑπὸ τῶν Κιλίκων, οἱ δὲ ὑπολειφθέντας καὶ οὐ δυναμένους εὑρεῖν τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα οὐδὲ τὰς ὁδοὺς εἶτα πλανωμένους ἀπολέσθαι· ἦσαν δ' οὖν οὗτοι ἑκατὸν ὁπλῖται. οἱ δ' ἄλλοι ἐπεὶ ἦκον, τήν τε πόλιν 26 τοὺς Ταρσοὺς διήρπασαν, διὰ τὸν ὄλεθρον τῶν συστρατιωτῶν ὀργιζόμενοι, καὶ τὰ βασίλεια τὰ ἐν αὐτῇ. Κῦρος δὲ ἐπεὶ εἰσήλασεν εἰς τὴν πόλιν,

---

time when the historian wrote. So ἀθροίζονται in 706, 8. — 23. μέσου: see 718. — τῆς πόλεως: see 743, 6. — 24. πλέθρων: limits ποταμός (743, 5). — 25. ταύτην: *cf.* 727, 27, and note. — οἱ ἐνοικοῦντες: see 718. *Cf.* οἱ ἔχοντες and οἱ οἰκοῦντες in l. 27 f. — 27. πλὴν . . . ἔχοντες: *sc.* οὐκ ἐξέλιπον. — 29. προτέρᾱ . . . ἀφίκετο. *reached Tarsi five days* (p. 171 5) *before* (*cf.* ἑκοῦσαι in 722, 28, and note) *Cyrus* (763). — 31. τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδίον: see 719. — 32. οἱ μὲν . . . κατακοπῆναι. *some said that they* (*i.e.* the lost soldiers of Menon) *had been cut to pieces* (354) *while committing some act of plunder* (732). — 35. εἶτα. *then*, taking up the two preceding participles, which qualify the unexpressed subj. of ἀπολέσθαι. ἀπολέσθαι is in parallel const. to κατακοπῆναι. — 36. οὖν: *cf.* l. 12. — 37. οἱ δ' ἄλλοι: *i.e.* of Menon's force.

μετεπέμπετο τὸν Συέννεσιν πρὸς ἑαυτόν· ὁ δ' οὔτε πρότερον οὐδενί πω κρείττονι ἑαυτοῦ εἰς χεῖρας ἐλθεῖν ἔφη οὔτε τότε Κύρῳ ἰέναι ἤθελε, πρὶν ἡ γυνὴ αὐτὸν ἔπεισε καὶ πίστεις ἔλαβε. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἐπεὶ συνεγένοντο ἀλλήλοις, Συέννεσις μὲν ἔδωκε Κύρῳ χρήματα πολλὰ εἰς τὴν στρατιάν, Κῦρος δὲ ἐκείνῳ δῶρα ἃ νομίζεται παρὰ βασιλεῖ τίμια, ἵππον χρῡσοχάλῑνον καὶ στρεπτὸν χρῡσοῦν καὶ ψέλια καὶ ἀκῑνάκην χρῡσοῦν καὶ στολὴν Περσικήν, καὶ τὴν χώρᾱν μηκέτι διαρπάζεσθαι· τὰ δὲ ἡρπασμένα ἀνδράποδα, ἤν που ἐντυγχάνωσιν, ἀπολαμβάνειν.

27

—42. **οὐδενί**: with *εἰς χεῖρας ἐλθεῖν, come into close relations* (p. 83[19]). For the neg., see p. 202[2]. —43. **ἐλθεῖν**: Syennesis said *ἦλθον* (354). —**ἰέναι**: *sc. εἰς χεῖρας*. —47. **Κῦρος δέ**: *sc. ἔδωκε*. —50. **διαρπάζεσθαι, ἀπολαμβάνειν**: like *δῶρα* in l. 47, the objects of *ἔδωκε* to be supplied. —51. **ἤν που ἐντυγχάνωσιν**, *if they* (Syennesis and the Cilicians) *should fall in with them anywhere.*

Make a special study of the prepositions in this Reading Lesson (*ἀπό*, 10; *διά*, 19, 23, 38; *εἰς*, 1, 10, 14, 18, 21, 26, 30, 31, 40, 42, 46; *ἐν*, 6, 8, 28 (*bis*), 30, 39; *ἐξ*, 18; *ἐπί*, 4, 12, 26; *μετά*, 26, 44; *παρά*, 28, 47; *πρός*, 41; *ὑπό*, 33), according to the directions previously given.

LESSON CXII.

The Dative Case.

766. EXERCISE.

1. *ἐσήμηνε*[1] *τοῖς Ἕλλησι τῇ σάλπιγγι.* 2. *τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ ταῦτα ἐδόκει ὠφέλιμα εἶναι.* 3. *τὸ δὲ στράτευμα αὐτῷ ἀνατεταραγμένον*[2] *ἐπορεύετο.* 4. *ὄνομα δὲ ἦν τῇ πόλει Μέσπιλα.* 5. *πάντες γὰρ ποταμοὶ προϊοῦσι*[3] *πρὸς τὰς*

[1] Sc. *ὁ σαλπικτής*.
[2] A participle of *manner* (379).
[3] *in case of those going up stream* (*sc. τισί*).

πηγὰς διαβατοὶ γίγνονται. 6. ὑποχείριοι δὲ μηδέποτε γενώμεθα ζῶντες τοῖς πολεμίοις. 7. τὰ δὲ κρέα τῶν ἀγρίων ὄνων ἦν παραπλήσια τοῖς ἐλαφείοις. 8. οὐ γὰρ κραυγῇ, ἀλλὰ σῑγῇ, προσῇσαν. 9. εὐθὺς ἔννοια αὐτῷ ἐμπίπτει, Τί κατάκειμαι; 10. γέφῡρα δὲ ἐπῆν ἐζευγμένη πλοιοις. 11. τῇ δὲ αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἦλθεν ἐπὶ τὴν διάβασιν τοῦ ποταμοῦ. 12. ὅσῳ ἂν θᾶττον ἔλθω,[1] τοσούτῳ ἀπαρασκευοτέρῳ βασιλεῖ μαχοῦμαι. 13. τούτοις ἥσθη Κῦρος. 14. οἱ γὰρ ἵπποι αὐτοῖς δέδενται. 15. πάντῃ γὰρ πάντα τοῖς θεοῖς ὑποχα. 16. ἀναγνοὺς τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἀνακοινοῦται Σωκράτει τῷ Ἀθηναίῳ περὶ τῆς πορείᾱς. 17. πρᾶγματα παρεῖχεν οὗτος ὁ ἀνὴρ τῇ ἐμῇ χώρᾳ. 18. καταπηδήσᾱς ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου περιέπεσεν αὐτῷ. 19. τί καλὸν ἐπέπρᾱκτο ὑμῖν; 20. ἐὰν ἴωσι, μισθοφορὰ ἔσται τοῖς στρατιώταις. 21. τῷ σατράπῃ τοῦ μισθοῦ ἕνεκα ὑπηρετοῦμεν. 22. παρεκελεύετο τοῖς Ἕλλησι πορεύεσθαι. 23. ἐμοὶ γὰρ ξένος Κῦρος ἐγένετο. 24. ἐμοὶ μῡρίους ἔδωκε δᾱρεικούς. 25. ὑμεῖς ἐμοὶ οὐκ ἐθέλετε πείθεσθαι. 26. ὁ Κῦρος ἀπέπεμπε τοὺς γιγνομένους δασμοὺς βασιλεῖ. 27. τοῖς νεᾱνίσκοις ἐνέχεαν οἶνον. 28. καὶ τὸν βαπτίσαντα πολλοῖς μακαριστὸν ἐποίησεν. 29. αὐτῷ οἱ καλοί τε καὶ ἀγαθοὶ εὖνοι ἦσαν. 30. ὑμῖν ἐμποδών εἰμι; 31. Κῦρος οὐκέτι ἡμῖν μισθοδότης ἐστίν. 32. ἔτυχε γὰρ τάξις αὐτῷ ἑπομένη τῶν ὁπλῑτῶν. 33. μετὰ δὲ τὴν ἐξέτασιν ἅμα τῇ ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ ἤκουσιν αὐτόμολοι. 34. καὶ συνέπεμψεν αὐτῇ τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς. 35. ἡ δὲ εἰσβολὴ ἦν ὁδὸς ἁμαξιτὸς ἀμήχανος εἰσελθεῖν στρατεύματι.

Examine the datives in 17, 24, 26, and observe that they are the indirect objects of transitive verbs.

767. Rule of Syntax. — The indirect object of the action of a transitive verb is put in the dative. This object is generally introduced in English by *to*.

[1] The subjv. here used after the relative with ἄν is of the same nature as the subjv. after ἐάν, expressing future condition (273).

Examine the datives in 1 (Ἕλλησι), 2, 21, 22, 25, and observe that they are the indirect objects of intransitive verbs.

768. Rule of Syntax. — Many intransitive verbs take a dative of the indirect object. Some of these verbs are transitive in English.

a. The verbs of this class which are transitive in English are chiefly those signifying to *benefit, serve, obey, defend, assist, please, trust, satisfy, advise, exhort*, or any of their opposites; also those expressing *friendliness, hostility, blame, abuse, reproach, envy, anger, threats*.

Examine the datives in 3, 14, 27, 35, and observe that they denote the person or thing for whose advantage or disadvantage something is or is done.

769. Rule of Syntax. — The person or thing for whose *advantage* or *disadvantage* anything is or is done is put in the dative. This dative is generally introduced in English by *for*.

Examine the datives in 4, 20, 23, and observe that they follow a copulative verb and denote the possessor.

770. Rule of Syntax. — The dative with εἰμί, γίγνομαι, and similar verbs may denote the *possessor*.

Examine the datives in 5, 28, and note their relation to the rest of the sentence.

771. Rule of Syntax. — The dative may denote the person in whose *view* or in *relation* to whom something is true.

Examine the datives in 6, 15, 29, 30, 31, and note the words with which they are connected.

772. Rule of Syntax. — The dative follows many adjectives and adverbs and some verbal substantives of kindred meaning with the verbs which take the dative of the indirect object or of advantage or disadvantage.

Examine the datives in 7, 12 (βασιλεῖ), 16, 32, 33, and note the signification of the words with which they are immediately connected.

773. Rule of Syntax. — The dative is used with words implying *likeness* or *unlikeness* and *association* or *opposition*. These include verbs, adjectives, and adverbs.

ἐπεὶ ἔγνω ὅτι οὐ δυνήσεται βιάσασθαι, συνήγαγεν ἐκκλησίαν τῶν αὐτοῦ στρατιωτῶν. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἐδάκρυε πολὺν χρόνον ἑστώς· οἱ δὲ ὁρῶντες ἐθαύμαζον καὶ ἐσιώπων· εἶτα δὲ ἔλεξε τοιάδε. "Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, μὴ θαυμάζετε ὅτι χαλεπῶς φέρω τοῖς παροῦσι πράγμασιν. ἐμοὶ γὰρ ξένος Κῦρος ἐγένετο καί με φεύγοντα ἐκ τῆς πατρίδος τά τε ἄλλα ἐτίμησε καὶ μυρίους ἔδωκε δαρεικούς· οὓς ἐγὼ λαβὼν οὐκ εἰς τὸ ἴδιον κατεθέμην ἐμοὶ ἀλλ' οὐδὲ καθηδυπάθησα, ἀλλ' εἰς ὑμᾶς ἐδαπάνων. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν πρὸς τοὺς Θρᾷκας ἐπολέμησα, καὶ ὑπὲρ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἐτῑμωρούμην μεθ' ὑμῶν, ἐκ τῆς Χερρονήσου αὐτοὺς ἐξελαύνων βουλομένους ἀφαιρεῖσθαι τοὺς ἐνοικοῦντας Ἕλληνας τὴν γῆν. ἐπειδὴ δὲ Κῦρος ἐκάλει, λαβὼν ὑμᾶς ἐπορευόμην, ἵνα εἴ τι δέοιτο ὠφελοίην αὐτὸν ἀνθ' ὧν εὖ ἔπαθον ὑπ' ἐκείνου. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὑμεῖς οὐ βούλεσθε συμπορεύεσθαι, ἀνάγκη δή μοι ἢ ὑμᾶς προδόντα τῇ Κύρου φιλίᾳ χρῆσθαι ἢ πρὸς ἐκεῖνον ψευσάμενον

which contain a *negative* idea (here ἐξέφυγε, *escaped* = *did not suffer*) are followed by the infin., the negative *οὐ* may be added to strengthen the negation. Such a neg. cannot be translated in English. — 9. ὅτι οὐ δυνήσεται, *that he would not be able*, i.e. *could not*. — 10. πρῶτον μέν: see 754, 17, and note. — ἐδάκρυε . . . ἑστώς, *stood* (649) *and wept a long time* (735). — 14. πράγμασιν: dat. of cause (775). — 15. τὰ ἄλλα, *in other respects* (733). — 18. οὐδέ, *nor even*. — 20. ἐτῑμωρούμην: *sc.* αὐτούς, *i.e.* the Thracians. — 22. Ἕλληνας, γῆν: see 737. — 24. εἴ τι δέοιτο, *in case he should have any* (732) *need* (*of me*). — ἄνθ' ὧν . . . ἐκείνου, *in return for the benefits I had received from him*, *i.e.* ἀντὶ τούτων ἃ (725), *etc.* — 25. ὑπ' ἐκείνου: εὖ πάσχω, *be well treated*, is practically a pass., and is often followed by ὑπό and the gen. of the agent (223). — ἡμεῖς: see 514, and *cf.* ll. 17, 30, 33, 34, 40. — 26. ἀνάγκη: *sc.* ἐστί. — προδόντα: in agreement with μέ, the unexpressed subj. of χρῆσθαι. — 27. φιλίᾳ: see p. 834. This is the *instrumental* dat.

μεθ' ὑμῶν εἶναι. εἰ μὲν δὴ δίκαια ποιήσω οὐκ
οἶδα, αἰρήσομαι δ' οὖν ὑμᾶς καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν ὅ τι
30 ἂν δέῃ πείσομαι. καὶ οὔποτε ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς ὡς ἐγὼ
Ἕλληνας ἀγαγὼν εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους, προδοὺς
τοὺς Ἕλληνας τὴν τῶν βαρβάρων φιλίαν εἱλόμην,
ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμοὶ οὐκ ἐθέλετε πείθεσθαι οὐδὲ 6
ἕπεσθαι, ἐγὼ σὺν ὑμῖν ἕψομαι καὶ ὅ τι ἂν δέῃ πεί-
35 σομαι. νομίζω γὰρ ὑμᾶς ἐμοὶ εἶναι καὶ πατρίδα
καὶ φίλους καὶ συμμάχους, καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν μὲν ἂν
οἶμαι εἶναι τίμιος ὅπου ἂν ὦ, ὑμῶν δὲ ἔρημος ὢν
οὐκ ἂν ἱκανὸς οἶμαι εἶναι οὔτ' ἂν φίλον ὠφελῆσαι
οὔτ' ἂν ἐχθρὸν ἀλέξασθαι. ὡς ἐμοῦ οὖν ἰόντος
40 ὅπῃ ἂν καὶ ὑμεῖς, οὕτω τὴν γνώμην ἔχετε. ταῦτα 7
εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται οἵ τε αὐτοῦ ἐκείνου καὶ
οἱ ἄλλοι ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες ἐπῄνεσαν· παρὰ δὲ
Ξενίου καὶ Ἡασίωνος πλείους ἢ δισχίλιοι λαβόντες
15 τὰ ὅπλα καὶ τὰ σκευοφόρα ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο
παρὰ Κλέαρχον.

---

(775), χράομαι meaning *use* in the sense of *serve oneself*. — 28. εἰ, *whether*. — 29. ὅ τι ἂν δέῃ, *whatever I must* (*sc.* πάσχειν). — 30. ἂν εἶναι: by quotation (354) for ἂν εἴην. The protasis is implied in σὺν ὑμῖν (p. 104[19]), *i.e. if I should follow with you*. — 37. ὅπου ἂν ὦ, *wherever I may be*. — ὑμῶν: with ἔρημος (760). — 38. ἂν εἶναι: representing ἂν εἴην, as above in l. 36. The prot. is here contained in ἄν = εἰ εἴην (p. 104[1]). — οὔτ' ἂν . . . οὔτ' ἂν: the ἄν here does not belong to the following infinitives, but repeats the ἄν with εἶναι. — ὠφελῆσαι, ἀλέξασθαι: with ἱκανός (p. 249[4]). — 39. ὡς ἐμοῦ οὖν ἰόντος, *since, therefore, I shall* (*as I say*, ὡς) *go, etc.* The gen. absolute (762) is causal. For ὡς, see 706, 33, and note. — 40. ὅπῃ ἂν καὶ ὑμεῖς, *wherever you too may go* (*sc.* ἦτε). — 41. οἵ: see 186 *c*.

Make a special study of the prepositions in this Reading Lesson (ἀντί, 24; εἰς, 17, 18, 31; ἐξ, 15, 20; ἐπί, 3, 4; μετά, 20, 28; παρά, 13, 46; πρός, 19, 27; ὑπέρ, 20; ὑπό, 25; σύν, 29, 31, 36), according to the directions previously given.

LESSON CXIV.

Voices. — Tenses. — Causal Sentences. — Imperative and Subjunctive in Commands, Exhortations, and Prohibitions.

780. EXERCISE.

1. ἡμεῖς Κύρου οὐκέτι στρατιῶταί ἐσμεν, ἐπεί γε οὐ συνεπόμεθα αὐτῷ. 2. ἀλλὰ καλῶς γε ἀποθνήσκωμεν, ὑποχείριοι δὲ μηδέποτε γενώμεθα ζῶντες τοῖς πολεμίοις. 3. εἰ δὲ μὴ σοὶ τοὺς στρατιώτας συγκαλεῖν δοκεῖ, λέγε καὶ διδασκε. 4. ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμοὶ οὐκ ἐθέλετε πείθεσθαι, ἐγὼ σὺν ὑμῖν ἕψομαι. 5. παρῶμεν οὖν ὥσπερ Κῦρος κελεύει. 6. χαλεπά ἐστι τὰ παρόντα, ὑπότε στρατηγῶν τοιούτων στερόμεθα. 7. καὶ μηδεὶς ὑπολάβῃ με βούλεσθαι λαθεῖν. 8. ὑμεῖς, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοί, τούτοις ἀποκρίνασθε. 9. στρατηγοὺς ἑλώμεθα ἄλλους ὡς τάχιστα, εἰ μὴ βούλεται Κλέαρχος ἀπάγειν. 10. μηδεὶς οἰέσθω με τοῦτο λέγειν. 11. ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, μὴ θαυμάζετε ὅτι χαλεπῶς φέρω τοῖς παροῦσι πράγμασιν. 12. ἀκούσατε τοὺς λόγους μου. 13. μή μοι ἀντιλέξῃς. 14. μὴ πολεμεῖτε ἄδικον πόλεμον. 15. κολασθέντων δὲ νῦν ἀξίως τῆς ἀδικίας. 16. εἰ δέ τις ὑμῶν ἀθῡμεῖ ὅτι ἡμῖν μὲν οὐκ εἰσὶν ἱππεῖς τοῖς δὲ πολεμίοις πολλοὶ πάρεισιν, ἐνθῡμήθητε ὅτι οἱ μύριοι ἱππεῖς οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ μύριοί εἰσιν ἄνθρωποι. 17. ὅτῳ[1] οὖν ταῦτα δοκεῖ καλῶς ἔχειν, ἀνατεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα. ἀνέτειναν ἅπαντες. 18. συναλλαγείς, ὦ Ἀρίστιππε, πρὸς τοὺς οἴκοι ἀπόπεμψον πρὸς ἐμὲ ὃ ἔχεις στράτευμα. 19. ἔλειψε Συέννεσις τὰ ἄκρα, ὅτι τριήρεις ἥκουε περιπλεούσας ἀπ' Ἰωνίας εἰς Κιλικίαν Ταμὼν ἔχοντα τὰς Λακεδαιμονίων καὶ αὐτοῦ Κύρου. 20. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὑμεῖς οὐ βούλεσθε συμπορεύεσθαι, ἀνάγκη δή μοι ἢ τῇ Κύρου

[1] See 567.

φιλίᾳ χρῆσθαι ἢ μεθ' ὑμῶν εἶναι. 21. ἐπώμεθα καὶ μὴ κακίους ὦμεν τῶν πρόσθεν Κύρῳ συναναβάντων. 22. καὶ παρὰ τὴν γέφῡραν πέμψατε φυλακήν, ὡς διανοεῖται αὐτὴν λῦσαι Τισσαφέρνης τῆς νυκτός. 23. καὶ τὸ νῑκᾶν τοὺς φίλους εὖ ποιοῦντα Κῦρον[1] οὐδὲν[2] θαυμαστὸν ἦν, ἐπειδή γε καὶ δυνατώτερος ἦν. 24. ὅτε δὴ τοῦτο οὕτως ἔχει, διαπολεμήσομεν τούτοις τοῖς βαρβάροις.

Review 58, 196, 197, 198, 221, 222, 223, 224, 60, 61, 64, 73, 100, 101, 116, 117, 203.

Examine 1, 4, 6, 11, 16, 19, 20, 22, 23, 24, and observe that each contains a clause which expresses a cause. Note the particle that introduces this clause, the mode of its principal verb, the tense of the preceding verb, and the negative that occurs, if the clause is negative.

781. Rule of Syntax. — Causal sentences express a *cause*, and are introduced by ὅτι, ὡς, ἐπεί, ἐπειδή, ὅτε, and ὁπότε, *because* or *since*. They have the indicative after both primary and secondary tenses. The negative particle is οὐ.

Review 265, 266, 267, 321.

Examine the imperatives in 3, 8, 12, 15, 16, 17, 18, 22, and note their force.

Review 325.

Examine the subjunctives in 2, 5, 9, 21, and note their force, their person and number, and their negative, if a negative occurs.

Review 271.

Examine the imperatives and subjunctives in 7, 10, 11, 13, 14, and note their force, and their tense and negative.

Review 327.

782. EXERCISE.

1. Do not abandon us. 2. Tell us this first. 3. But he is angry because Proxenus speaks of his[3] ill-treatment lightly. 4. Let us see this horse. 5. Let him come. 6. Do not be

[1] Subj. of νῑκᾶν. [2] See 734. [3] 528.

dispirited on this account. 7. Let us conquer those who have been drawn up before the king. 8. But now, since the struggle is for[1] deliverance, be much braver. 9. Do not lie. 10. Open the door. 11. Do not despise yourself. 12. Provide yourself with arms. 13. Let us write a letter to the king. 14. Let us go up on the mountain. 15. Fear the gods and honour your parents.[2] 16. Let the general be honoured by his fellow-citizens.

[1] περί, with gen. [2] See p. 27[5].

LESSON CXV.

Reading Lesson.

783. ANABASIS I. iii. 8–14.

Cyrus sends for Clearchus, who refuses to obey his summons, but secretly sends him an encouraging message (8). Clearchus again assembles his men, and speaks as follows. "We have broken with Cyrus, and must look elsewhere for our pay (9). Naturally, he is indignant with us (10), and we must take good counsel. The crisis is grave, and, whether we stay here or leave, we must be watchful of our interests (11). Cyrus is a good friend to his friends, but he can be a bitter enemy, and he possesses very great resources. I, therefore, ask you to express your views freely (12)." Different speakers come forward, some of whom, at the instigation of Clearchus, show how hard it will be to get away (13). One in particular, who seems urgent, proposes a plan for their return which is obviously impracticable and full of danger (14).

III.

Κῦρος δὲ τούτοις ἀπορῶν τε καὶ λυπούμενος 8
μετεπέμπετο τὸν Κλέαρχον· ὁ δὲ ἰέναι μὲν οὐκ
ἤθελε, λάθρᾳ δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν πέμπων αὐτῷ
ἄγγελον ἔλεγε θαρρεῖν ὡς καταστησομένων τούτων

1. τούτοις: neut. (775). — 4. ἔλεγε θαρρεῖν, *bade him not to be discouraged* (355). ἔλεγε is here equivalent to ἐκέλευε. — ὡς . . . δέον, *since*

εἰς τὸ δέον· μεταπέμπεσθαι δ' ἐκέλευεν αὐτόν· αὐτὸς δ' οὐκ ἔφη ἰέναι. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα συναγαγὼν 9
τοὺς θ' ἑαυτοῦ στρατιώτας καὶ τοὺς προσελθόντας αὐτῷ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων τὸν βουλόμενον, ἔλεξε τοιάδε.
Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, τὰ μὲν δὴ Κύρου δῆλον ὅτι 10
οὕτως ἔχει πρὸς ἡμᾶς ὥσπερ τὰ ἡμέτερα πρὸς ἐκεῖνον· οὔτε γὰρ ἡμεῖς ἐκείνου ἔτι στρατιῶται, ἐπεί γε οὐ συνεπόμεθα αὐτῷ, οὔτε ἐκεῖνος ἔτι ἡμῖν μισθοδότης. ὅτι μέντοι ἀδικεῖσθαι νομίζει ὑφ' 10
ἡμῶν οἶδα· ὥστε καὶ μεταπεμπομένου αὐτοῦ οὐκ ἐθέλω ἐλθεῖν, τὸ μὲν μέγιστον αἰσχῡνόμενος ὅτι σύνοιδα ἐμαυτῷ πάντα ἐψευσμένος αὐτόν, ἔπειτα καὶ δεδιὼς μὴ λαβών με δίκην ἐπιθῇ ὧν νομίζει ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἠδικῆσθαι. ἐμοὶ οὖν δοκεῖ οὐχ ὥρᾱ εἶναι 11
ἡμῖν καθεύδειν οὐδ' ἀμελεῖν ἡμῶν αὐτῶν, ἀλλὰ

---

this matter would be settled in the right way (718). For the gen. absolute with ὡς, expressing cause, see 706, 33, and note. ὡς shows that the reason is that assigned by Clearchus. — 5. **μεταπέμπεσθαι**, *to keep sending for him.* — 6. **αὐτὸς . . . ἰέναι**: *but for himself he said he would not go.* αὐτός limits the unexpressed (350) subj. of ἰέναι, but takes the case of the subj. of the leading verb. The thought is, "*You* keep sending for me, but still *I'll* not go." — 7. **θ'**: *i.e.* τέ, by elision (21) and by the change of the smooth mute to the rough before the following rough breathing. — 8. **αὐτῷ**: see 774. — 9. **τὰ . . . Κύρου**: *cf.* 611, I. 14. — **δῆλον**: *sc. ἐστίν.* — 10. **οὕτως . . . ἐκεῖνον**: *his relations to us are in just* (πέρ in ὥσπερ) *the same position as ours to him.* — 11. **ἡμεῖς**: *sc. ἐσμέν.* — 13. **μέντοι**, *however.* — 14. **καὶ μεταπεμπομένου αὐτοῦ**, *although he keeps sending for me.* Note the force of καί with the *concessive* partic. (379) used in the gen. absolute (762). — 15. **τὸ μὲν μέγιστον**, *chiefly* (734). The correlative is ἔπειτα καί. — 16. **σύνοιδα . . . αὐτόν**, *I am conscious* (for ἐαυτῷ, see 771) *that I have deceived* (p. 250[9]) *him in everything.* — 17. **δεδιὼς μὴ ἐπιθῇ**: see 280. — **ὧν . . . ἠδικῆσθαι**, *for that* (*sc.* τούτων, 569), *in which* (ὧν for ἅ, 725) *he thinks he has been wronged by me.* ἅ is a cognate acc. (*cf.* 185, I. 13, and 732). — 19. **καθεύδειν, ἀμελεῖν, βουλεύεσθαι**: dependent on ὥρᾱ (p. 219[3]). —

βουλεύεσθαι ὅ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν ἐκ τούτων. καὶ ἕως τε μένομεν αὐτοῦ σκεπτέον μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι ὅπως ἀσφαλέστατα μενοῦμεν, εἴ τε ἤδη δοκεῖ ἀπιέναι, ὅπως ἀσφαλέστατα ἄπιμεν, καὶ ὅπως τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἕξομεν· ἄνευ γὰρ τούτων οὔτε στρατηγοῦ οὔτε ἰδιώτου ὄφελος οὐδέν. ὁ δ' ἀνὴρ πολλοῦ μὲν ἄξιος 12
φίλος ᾧ ἂν φίλος ᾖ, χαλεπώτατος δ' ἐχθρὸς ᾧ ἂν πολέμιος ᾖ, ἔγει δὲ δύναμιν καὶ πεζὴν καὶ ἱππικὴν καὶ ναυτικὴν ἣν πάντες ὁμοίως ὁρῶμέν τε καὶ ἐπιστάμεθα· καὶ γὰρ οὐδὲ πόρρω δοκοῦμέν μοι αὐτοῦ καθῆσθαι. ὥστε ὥρᾳ λέγειν ὅ τι τις γιγνώσκει ἄριστον εἶναι. ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἐπαύσατο. ἐκ δὲ τού- 13
του ἀνίσταντο οἱ μὲν ἐκ τοῦ αὐτομάτου, λέξοντες ἃ ἐγίγνωσκον, οἱ δὲ καὶ ὑπ' ἐκείνου ἐγκέλευστοι, ἐπιδεικνύντες οἷᾶ εἴη ἡ ἀπορίᾳ ἄνευ τῆς Κύρου γνώμης καὶ μένειν καὶ ἀπιέναι. εἷς δὲ δὴ εἶπε 14
προσποιούμενος σπεύδειν ὡς τάχιστα πορεύεσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα στρατηγοὺς μὲν ἑλέσθαι ἄλλους ὡς τάχιστα, εἰ μὴ βούλεται Κλέαρχος ἀπάγειν· τὰ δ' ἐπιτήδει' ἀγοράζεσθαι (ἡ δ' ἀγορὰ ἦν ἐν τῷ βαρβαρικῷ στρατεύματι) καὶ συσκευάζεσθαι·

---

20. ἕως, *as long as, while*. — 21. αὐτοῦ: adverb. — σκεπτέον εἶναι: *cf.* 585, 1. 3. — 22. ἤδη, *at once*. — 26. ᾧ ἂν φίλος ᾖ, *to whomsoever he is a friend*. — 28. ὁμοίως: with πάντες, *all alike*. — 29. αὐτοῦ: with πόρρω (761), *at a distance from him*. — 30. ὥρᾳ λέγειν: *se.* ἐστι, and see note on l. 19. — 32. λέξοντες: the fut. partic. expresses purpose (879), *to say*. — 33. ἐκείνου: *i.e.* Clearchus. — 34. οἷᾶ . . . ἀπορίᾳ, *what the difficulty was*. *Cf.* 571 a. — 35. εἷς δὲ δὴ εἶπε, *but one in a pastical or proposed*. Seven infinitives follow, containing the man's successive recommendations, dependent on εἶπε, the first of which is ἑλέσθαι. — 38. εἰ μὴ βούλεται, *if Clearchus was not willing*. — μή: the regular negative in all conditions. — 39. ἡ δ' ἀγορὰ . . . στρατεύματι: this parenthetical statement of the historian shows the

ἐλθόντας δὲ Κῦρον αἰτεῖν πλοῖα, ὡς ἀποπλέοιεν· ἐὰν δὲ μὴ διδῷ ταῦτα, ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖν Κῦρον ὅστις διὰ φιλίας τῆς χώρας ἀπάξει· ἐὰν δὲ μηδὲ ἡγεμόνα διδῷ, συντάττεσθαι τὴν ταχίστην, πέμψαι δὲ καὶ προκαταληψομένους τὰ ἄκρα, ὅπως μὴ φθάσωσι μήτε Κῦρος μήτε οἱ Κίλικες καταλαβόντες, ὧν πολλοὺς καὶ πολλὰ χρήματα ἔχομεν ἀνηρπακότες. οὗτος μὲν τοιαῦτα εἶπε· μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον Κλέαρχος εἶπε τοσοῦτον.

absurdity of the proposal. — 41. **ἐλθόντας**: limits the unexpressed subj. of **αἰτεῖν**. The subj. of each of the infinitives dependent on **εἶπε** is an unexpressed pronoun referring to the Greeks. — 42. **ἐὰν μὴ διδῷ ταῦτα**, *if he would not give them.* — **ὅστις ἀπάξει**, *who would lead them, i.e. to lead them.* — 43. **φιλίας**: predicate adj. (*sc.* **οὔσης**), *that was friendly.* — 44. **τὴν ταχίστην**: *sc.* **ὁδόν**, an adverbial acc. (734). — 45. **προκαταληψομένους**: *sc.* **ἄνδρας**. The partic. expresses purpose (879). — **ὅπως μὴ φθάσωσι**, *that they might not get the start.* — 46. **καταλαβόντες**: for the partic. with **φθάνω**, *cf.* 648, I. 9. — 47. **ὧν . . . ἀνηρπακότες**: these words are in the exact form in which they were originally spoken, *many of whom and much of whose property we have plundered and now have.* — **ἔχομεν ἀνηρπακότες**: equivalent to **ἀνηρπάκομεν καὶ ἔχομεν**.

Make a special study of the prepositions in this Reading Lesson (**διά**, 43; **εἰς**, 5, 37; **ἐν**, 39; **ἐξ**, 20, 31, 32; **μετά**, 6, 48; **πρός**, 10 (*bis*); **ὑπό**, 13, 18, 33), according to the directions previously given.

LESSON CXVI.

Interrogative Subjunctive. — Subjunctive and Future Indicative with **οὐ μή**. — Verbals. — Optative in the Expression of a Wish.

784. EXERCISE.

1. **σκεπτέον ἐστὶν**[1] **ὅπως ἀσφαλέστατα μενοῦμεν.** 2. **μὴ τοῦτο ποιῶμεν;**[2] 3. **βούλει οὖν τοῦτο ἐπισκοπῶμεν;**[3]

[1] See 584.

[2] *Shall we not do this?*

[3] *Do you wish, then, that we should consider this?*

4. οὐ μή σε κρύψω[1] πρὸς ὅντινα βούλομαι ἀφικέσθαι.[2] 5. πολλὰ γὰρ ἐνορῶ[3] δι' ἃ ἐμοὶ τοῦτο οὐ ποιητέον. 6. ἢν γὰρ ἅπαξ δύο ἢ τριῶν ἡμερῶν ὁδὸν ἀπόσχωμεν, οὐκέτι μὴ δύνηται βασιλεὺς ἡμᾶς καταλαβεῖν. 7. ἱκανὸς δὲ καί ἐστιν ἐμποιῆσαι τοῖς παροῦσιν ὡς πειστέον ἐστὶ Κλεάρχῳ.[4] 8. μηδ' ἔρωμαι[5] ὁπόσου πωλεῖ; 9. οὐ πρὸ τῆς ἀληθείας τῖμητέος ἀνήρ. 10. σὺν Κλεάρχῳ πέμπωμεν τοὺς πελταστάς; 11. μισθωσώμεθα οὖν κηρῦκα, ἢ αὐτὸς ἀνείπω; 12. καταβατέον οὖν ἐν μέρει ἑκάστῳ. 13. εἶπω οὖν σοι τὸ αἴτιον; 14. ἐπιθῡμητέον ἐστὶ τοῖς ἀνθρώποις τῆς ἀρετῆς. 15. εὖ ἴσθι ὅτι οὐ μήποτέ σε ἄκοντά τις ἄξει. 16. ποῖ φύγωμεν; 17. τί δῶ ἑκάστῳ τῶν φίλων; 18. πότερον τοῦτο βίᾱν φῶμεν ἢ μὴ φῶμεν εἶναι; 19. πότερον πέμπωμέν τινας ἢ πάντες ἴωμεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἀρήξοντες; 20. ἤν τε εἷς πῃ δυνηθῇ τῶν λόχων ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον ἀναβῆναι, οὐδεὶς μηκέτι μείνῃ τῶν πολεμίων. 21. ἀλλὰ τουτονὶ οἱ θεοὶ ἀποτίσαιντο.[6] 22. ἡμεῖς γὰρ ἂν τοιαῦτα πάθοιμεν,[7] οἷα τοὺς ἐχθροὺς οἱ θεοὶ ποιήσειαν.[8] 23. σῴζοισθε ἀσφαλῶς ὅποι θέλει ἕκαστος.

Review 265, 266, 267, 296.

Examine 2, 3, 8, 10, 11, 13, 16, 17, 18, 19, and observe that each sentence is interrogative, that its principal verb is in the first person of the subjunctive, and that the sentence, if negative, takes μή.

785. Rule of Syntax. — The first person of the subjunctive may be used in questions of appeal, where a person asks himself or another *what he is to do*. The negative is μή.

a. The question is sometimes introduced by βούλει or βούλεσθε.

---

[1] *I will not* (emphatic) *conceal from you, etc.*

[2] The indirect question (570) is the second object of κρύψω (737).

[3] *see in (this undertaking).*

[4] See 768 a.

[5] *And may I not ask, etc.*

[6] *May the gods take vengeance on them!*

[7] See p. 104[14].

[8] *as may the gods bring upon our foes* (738).

Examine 4, 6, 15, 20, and observe that each sentence, or a part of it, is strongly negatived by οὐ μή, and has its verb either in the subjunctive or in the future indicative.

786. Rule of Syntax. — The subjunctive and sometimes the future indicative are used with the double negative οὐ μή in the sense of an emphatic future indicative with οὐ.

a. The subjunctive, when used in this construction, is generally in the aorist tense.

Examine the use of the verbals in -τεος in 1, 5, 7, 9, 12, 14.
Review 583, 584.

Examine the optatives in 21, 22 (ποιήσειαν), 23, and observe that each expresses a wish which refers to the future.

787. Rule of Syntax. — When a wish refers to the future, it is expressed by the optative.

a. The optative may be preceded by εἴθε or εἰ γάρ, *O that, O if.* The negative of these clauses is μή.

788. EXERCISE.

1. The general must pursue the enemy. 2. What shall I say? 3. They will *not* await the enemy. 4. We must make war on the barbarians.[1] 5. For you will *never* make the vicious better. 6. We must not be dispirited. 7. Will you receive[2] him, or shall we go away? 8. They will *not* be able to go up on the mountain. 9. We must not surrender these soldiers to the king. 10. With what[3] shall I begin? 11. Shall I proceed with the army into the city? 12. Fellow-soldiers, we must make our journey on foot. 13. And may I not[4] answer, if some young (man) questions me? 14. The general must provide chariots and march against the enemy. 15. We must never do the state harm, but obey (her). 16. Do you wish, then, that I should answer them?

---

[1] See 773.
[2] Use the fut indic.
[3] *With what, i.e. whence.*
[4] *and not, cf.* 784, 8 above.

LESSON CXVII.

Reading Lesson.

789. ANABASIS I. iii. 15–21.

Clearchus declares that he will not lead them, but that he will be obedient to the man whom they put in command (15). Another speaker comes forward who shows the folly of the plan just proposed (16). "I should distrust," he says, "any assistance that Cyrus might lend us. I could wish rather that we might get away without his knowledge. But that is impossible (17). We must, therefore, send and ask him what use he intends to make of us. If this undertaking is not different from his previous enterprises, let us follow him (18). But if we cannot approve it, let us tell him that he either must convince us of our duty to support him, or must let us depart in peace. When we get his answer, we can make up our minds (19)." This proposal is adopted. Cyrus answers that he wishes to march against his enemy Abrocomas, twelve stages distant, on the Euphrates (20). The Greeks agree to follow, but demand additional pay. Cyrus promises them half again as much as before (21).

III.

Ὡς μὲν στρατηγήσοντα ἐμὲ ταύτην τὴν στρα- 15
τηγίαν μηδεὶς ὑμῶν λεγέτω· πολλὰ γὰρ ἐνορῶ δι'
ἃ ἐμοὶ τοῦτο οὐ ποιητέον· ὡς δὲ τῷ ἀνδρὶ ὃν ἂν
ἕλησθε πείσομαι ᾗ δυνατὸν μάλιστα, ἵνα εἰδῆτε
ὅτι καὶ ἄρχεσθαι ἐπίσταμαι ὥς τις καὶ ἄλλος
μάλιστα ἀνθρώπων. μετὰ τοῦτον ἄλλος ἀνέστη, 16
ἐπιδεικνὺς μὲν τὴν εὐήθειαν τοῦ τὰ πλοῖα αἰτεῖν

1. ὡς μέν . . . λεγέτω, *let no one of you speak of me as about to assume this command.* — 3. ὡς δὲ . . . μάλιστα: *sc.* οὕτω λέγετε (imv.) from the preceding μηδεὶς λεγέτω. — 4. ᾗ δυνατὸν μάλιστα, *to the best of my ability. Sc.* ἐστίν. — 5. ὅτι . . . ἀνθρώπων, *that I know how also to submit to authority as well as any man that lives.* — μάλιστα ἀνθρώπων (743, 6 a), *in the highest degree* (lit. *best of all men*), repeats and emphasizes the thought of ὥς τις καὶ ἄλλος, *as well as any other man whosoever* (καί being emphatic).

κελεύοντος, ὥσπερ πάλιν τὸν στόλον Κύρου ποιουμένου, ἐπιδεικνὺς δὲ ὡς εὔηθες εἴη ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖν παρὰ τούτου ᾧ λῡμαινόμεθα τὴν πρᾶξιν. εἰ δὲ καὶ τῷ ἡγεμόνι πιστεύσομεν ὃν ἂν Κῦρος δῷ, τί κωλύει καὶ τὰ ἄκρα ἡμῖν κελεύειν Κῦρον προκαταλαβεῖν; ἐγὼ γὰρ ὀκνοίην μὲν ἂν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα ἐμβαίνειν ἃ ἡμῖν δοίη, μὴ ἡμᾶς ταῖς τριήρεσι καταδύσῃ, φοβοίμην δ' ἂν τῷ ἡγεμόνι ᾧ δοίη ἕπεσθαι, μὴ ἡμᾶς ἀγάγῃ ὅθεν οὐκ ἔσται ἐξελθεῖν· βουλοίμην δ' ἂν ἄκοντος ἀπιὼν Κύρου λαθεῖν αὐτὸν ἀπελθών· ὃ οὐ δυνατόν ἐστιν. ἀλλ' ἐγώ φημι ταῦτα μὲν φλυαρίας εἶναι· δοκεῖ δέ μοι ἄνδρας ἑλθόντας πρὸς Κῦρον οἵτινες ἐπιτήδειοι σὺν Κλεάρχῳ ἐρωτᾶν ἐκεῖνον τί βούλεται ἡμῖν χρῆσθαι· καὶ ἐὰν μὲν ἡ πρᾶξις ᾖ παραπλησίᾱ 17 18

— 8. **ὥσπερ . . . ποιουμένου**, *just as if Cyrus were returning* (762) *home* (lit. *making his expedition back*), and so did not longer need his boats. — 9. **ὡς εὔηθες εἴη**, *that it was silly*, corresponding to *τὴν εὐήθειαν* in the clause with *μέν*. — 10. **παρὰ . . . πρᾶξιν**: from this point to the end of the speech (l. 32), the words are given in just the form used by the speaker. — 11. **πιστεύσομεν**, *intend to trust*. The fut. indic. sometimes expresses present intention. — **τί . . . προκαταλαβεῖν**: *i.e.* if we intend to trust the guide, we might as well show confidence in Cyrus himself directly, and urge him to secure the heights for us in advance. The question is ironical. — 14. **μὴ . . . καταδύσῃ**, *lest he may sink us* (280) *with his triremes* (775). — 15. **ᾧ**: for *ὅν* (725). — 16. **ὅθεν**: *i.e.* (*ἐκεῖσε*) *ὅθεν*, *(into a place) from which*. — 17. **ἄκοντος Κύρου**: *sc.* *ὄντος*. The gen. absol. (762) expresses manner (379), *against his will*. — **ἀπιών**: equivalent to *εἰ ἀπίοιμι* (379). — **λαθεῖν αὐτὸν ἀπελθών**, *to get off without his knowing it* (p. 250[3]). — 19. **δοκεῖ δέ μοι**, *I think it best, I would recommend*. The subjects of *δοκεῖ* (352) are the infinitives that follow, *ἐρωτᾶν* (l. 24), *ἕπεσθαι* (l. 23), *εἶναι* (l. 24), *ἀξιοῦν* (l. 27), *ἀπαγγεῖλαι* (l. 31), and *λαθεῖν* (l. 32), each with its modifiers. — 20. **ἄνδρας**: subj. of *ἐρωτᾶν*. — **οἵτινες**, *such as are* (*sc.* *εἰσίν*). — 21. **τί . . . χρῆσθαι**, *what use* (732) *he wishes to make of us* (p. 834[4]). The same use of the cases occurs below in *ὅτῳ*

οἵαπερ καὶ πρόσθεν ἐχρῆτο τοῖς ξένοις, ἕπεσθαι καὶ ἡμᾶς καὶ μὴ κακίους εἶναι τῶν πρόσθεν τούτῳ συναναβάντων· ἐὰν δὲ μείζων ἡ πρᾶξις τῆς πρό- 19
σθεν φαίνηται καὶ ἐπιποιωτέρᾳ καὶ ἐπικινδῦνοτέρᾳ, ἀξιοῦν ἢ πείσαντα ἡμᾶς ἄγειν ἢ πεισθέντα πρὸς φιλίᾱν ἀφῑέναι· οὕτω γὰρ καὶ ἑπόμενοι ἂν φίλοι αὐτῷ καὶ πρόθῡμοι ἑποίμεθα καὶ ἀπιόντες ἀσφαλῶς ἂν ἀπίοιμεν· ὅ τι δ' ἂν πρὸς ταῦτα λέγῃ ἀπαγγεῖλαι δεῦρο· ἡμᾶς δ' ἀκούσαντας πρὸς ταῦτα βουλεύεσθαι. ἔδοξε ταῦτα, καὶ ἄνδρας ἑλόμενοι 20
σὺν Κλεάρχῳ πέμπουσιν οἳ ἠρώτων Κῦρον τὰ δόξαντα τῇ στρατιᾷ. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι ἀκούοι Ἀβροκόμᾱν ἐνθρὸν ἄνδρα ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ εἶναι. ἀπέχοντα δώδεκα σταθμούς· πρὸς τοῦτον οὖν ἔφη βούλεσθαι ἐλθεῖν· κἂν μὲν ᾖ ἐκεῖ. τὴν δίκην ἔφη χρῆζειν ἐπιθεῖναι αὐτῷ, ἢν δὲ φύγῃ, ἡμεῖς ἐκεῖ πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευσόμεθα. ἀκούσαντες 21
δὲ ταῦτα οἱ αἱρετοὶ ἀπαγγέλλουσι τοῖς στρατιώταις· τοῖς δὲ ὑποψίᾱ μὲν ἦν ὅτι ἄγοι πρὸς βασιλέα, ὅμως δὲ ἐδόκει ἕπεσθαι. προσαιτοῦσι δὲ μισθόν· ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὑπισχνεῖται ἡμιόλιον πᾶσι

(for ὥσπερ by assimilation, 725) and τῶν ξένων. — 25. πρόσθεν: when he went to Babylon, just before the death of Darius. See 706, 9–12. — ἕπεσθαι, εἶναι: with ἡμᾶς as subj. — 24. τῶν . . . συναναβάντων: see 763. — 25. τῆς πρόσθεν: *sc.* πράξεως. — 27. ἀξιοῦν. *demands*, *i.e.* the deputies (ἄνδρας) mentioned in l. 20. ἀπαγγεῖλαι in l. 31 has the same subj. — ἄγειν, ἀφιέναι: the subj. refers to Cyrus. — 28. ἑπόμενοι, ἀπιόντες: equivalent to εἰ ἑποίμεθα, εἰ ἀπιοιμεν (379 a. — 29. φίλοι πρόθῡμοι: predicate adjectives. — 34. ὅτι ἀκούοι, *that he heard*. — 37. κἂν μὲν ᾖ ἐκεῖ, *and if he should be there*. — 38. ἦν δὲ . . . βουλευσόμεθα: the exact words of the speaker. — 41. τοῖς δὲ . . . ἦν, *they had* (770), *etc.*, *i.e.*, *they suspected*. For τοῖς δέ, *cf.* ὁ δέ in l. 34. — ὅτι ἄγοι, *that he was leading them*. —

δώσειν οὗ πρότερον ἔφερον, ἀντὶ δᾶρει.
ἡμιδᾶρεικὰ τοῦ μηνὸς τῷ στρατιώτῃ· ὅτι γὰρ
βασιλέᾶ ἄγοι οὐδὲ ἐνταῦθα ἤκουσεν οὐδεὶς ἐν
τῷ φανερῷ.

44. **δώσειν**: see p. 250[6]. — **οὗ**: *i.e.* (*τούτου*) *ὅν* (725). The gen. depends on *ἡμιόλιον*, which has the force of a comparative, *a half more* (763). — 45. **τοῦ μηνός**. *each month* (759). — By the expedient here described, Cyrus led the Greeks nineteen stages farther inland (in place of twelve) before announcing publicly his real purpose.

Make a special study of the prepositions in this Reading Lesson (*ἀντί*, 44; *διά*, 2; *εἰς*, 13; *ἐν*, 46; *ἐπί*, 35, 45; *μετά*, 6; *παρά*, 10; *πρός*, 20, 28, 30, 31, 36, 39, 41; *σύν*, 21, 33), according to the directions previously given.

LESSON CXVIII.

Final and Object Clauses.

790. EXERCISE.

1. *τούτῳ δε τῷ ἀνδρὶ πείσομαι, ἵνα εἰδῆτε ὅτι καὶ ἄρχεσθαι ἐπίσταμαι.* 2. *σκεπτέον ἐστὶν ὅπως ἀσφαλέστατα μενοῦμεν, εἴ τε ἤδη δοκεῖ ἀπιέναι, ὅπως ἀσφαλέστατα ἄπιμεν, καὶ ὅπως τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἕξομεν.* 3. *τὴν δὲ Ἑλληνικὴν δύναμιν ἤθροιζεν ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο ἐπικρυπτόμενος, ὅπως ὅτι ἀπαρασκευότατον λάβοι βασιλέᾶ.* 4. *ὅπως δὲ καὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμὲ ἐπαινέσετε ἐμοὶ μελήσει.*[1] 5. *καὶ περὶ τούτων ἐμνήσθην, ἵνα μὴ ταὐτὰ πάθητε.* 6. *οἱ θεώμενοι ἐφοβοῦντο μή τι πάθῃ.* 7. *τοὺς δὲ ἀποθανόντας αὐτοκέλευστοι οἱ Ἕλληνες ἠκίσαντο, ὡς ὅτι φοβερώτατον τοῖς πολεμίοις εἴη.* 8. *ὅπως δ' ἀμῦνούμεθα οὐδεὶς ἐπιμελεῖται.* 9. *ἀλλὰ δέδοικα μὴ ὥσπερ οἱ λωτοφάγοι ἐπιλαθώμεθα τῆς οἴκαδε ὁδοῦ.* 10. *φίλος ἐβούλετο εἶναι τοῖς μέγιστα δυναμένοις, ἵνα ἀδικῶν μὴ ἐδοίη δίκην.* 11. *καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης ὑπώπτευσε μή τι πρὸς τῆς*

[1] The clause with *ὅπως* is here the subj. of *μελήσει*.

οἵαπερ καὶ πρόσθεν ἐχρῆτο τοῖς ξένοις, ἕπεσθαι καὶ ἡμᾶς καὶ μὴ κακίους εἶναι τῶν πρόσθεν τούτῳ συναναβάντων· ἐὰν δὲ μείζων ἡ πρᾶξις τῆς πρό- 19
σθεν φαίνηται καὶ ἐπιπονωτέρᾳ καὶ ἐπικινδυνοτέρᾳ, ἀξιοῦν ἢ πείσαντα ἡμᾶς ἄγειν ἢ πεισθέντα πρὸς φιλίαν ἀφιέναι· οὕτω γὰρ καὶ ἑπόμενοι ἂν φίλοι αὐτῷ καὶ πρόθυμοι ἑποίμεθα καὶ ἀπιόντες ἀσφαλῶς ἂν ἀπίοιμεν· ὅ τι δ' ἂν πρὸς ταῦτα λέγῃ ἀπαγγεῖλαι δεῦρο· ἡμᾶς δ' ἀκούσαντας πρὸς ταῦτα βουλεύεσθαι. ἔδοξε ταῦτα, καὶ ἄνδρας ἑλόμενοι 20
σὺν Κλεάρχῳ πέμπουσιν οἳ ἠρώτων Κῦρον τὰ δόξαντα τῇ στρατιᾷ. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι ἀκούοι Ἀβροκόμαν ἐληλυθέναι ἄνδρα ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ εἶναι, ἀπέχοντα δώδεκα σταθμούς· πρὸς τοῦτον οὖν ἔφη βούλεσθαι ἐλθεῖν· κἂν μὲν ᾖ ἐκεῖ, τὴν δίκην ἔφη χρήζειν ἐπιθεῖναι αὐτῷ, ἢν δὲ φύγῃ, ἡμεῖς ἐκεῖ πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευσόμεθα. ἀκούσαντες 21
δὲ ταῦτα οἱ αἱρετοὶ ἀπαγγέλλουσι τοῖς στρατιώταις· τοῖς δὲ ὑποψίᾳ μὲν ἦν ὅτι ἄγοι πρὸς βασιλέα, ὅμως δὲ ἐδόκει ἕπεσθαι. προσαιτοῦσι δὲ μισθόν· ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὑπισχνεῖται ἡμιόλιον πᾶσι

(for ὥσπερ by assimilation, 725; and τοῖς ξένοις). — 23. πρόσθεν: when he went to Babylon, just before the death of Darius. See 706, 9–12. — ἕπεσθαι, εἶναι: with ἡμᾶς as subj. — 24. τῶν . . . συναναβάντων: see 763. — 25. τῆς πρόσθεν: *sc.* πράξεως. — 27. ἀξιοῦν, *demand*, *i.e.* the deputies (ἄνδρας) mentioned in l. 20. ἀπαγγεῖλαι in l. 31 has the same subj. — ἄγειν, ἀφιέναι: the subj. refers to Cyrus. — 28. ἑπόμενοι, ἀπιόντες: equivalent to εἰ ἑποίμεθα, εἰ ἀπίοιμεν (379). — 29. φίλοι πρόθυμοι: predicate adjectives. — 31. ὅτι ἀκούοι, *that he heard*. — 37. κἂν μὲν ᾖ ἐκεῖ, *and if he should be there*. — 38. ἦν δὲ . . . βουλευσόμεθα: the exact words of the speaker. — 11. τοῖς δὲ . . . ἦν, *they had* (770), *etc.*, *i.e.*, *they suspected*. For τοῖς δέ, *cf.* ὁ δέ in l. 34. — ὅτι ἄγοι, *that he was leading them*. —

δώσειν οὗ πρότερον ἔφερον, ἀντὶ δᾱρεικοῦ τρία ἡμιδᾱρεικὰ τοῦ μηνὸς τῷ στρατιώτῃ· ὅτι δὲ ἐπὶ βασιλέᾱ ἄγοι οὐδὲ ἐνταῦθα ἤκουσεν οὐδεὶς ἔν γε τῷ φανερῷ.

41. **δώσειν**: see p. 250[6]. — **οὗ**: *i.e.* (τούτου) ὅν (725). The gen. depends on ἡμιόλιον, which has the force of a comparative, *a half more* (763). — 45. **τοῦ μηνός**, *each month* (759). — By the expedient here described, Cyrus led the Greeks nineteen stages farther inland (in place of twelve) before announcing publicly his real purpose.

Make a special study of the prepositions in this Reading Lesson (ἀντί, 44; διά, 2; εἰς, 13; ἐν, 46; ἐπί, 35, 45; μετά, 6; παρά, 10; πρός, 20, 28, 30, 31, 36, 39, 41; σύν, 21, 33), according to the directions previously given.

LESSON CXVIII.

Final and Object Clauses.

790. EXERCISE.

1. τούτῳ δε τῷ ἀνδρὶ πείσομαι, ἵνα εἰδῆτε ὅτι καὶ ἄρχεσθαι ἐπίσταμαι. 2. σκεπτέον ἐστὶν ὅπως ἀσφαλέστατα μενοῦμεν, εἴ τε ἤδη δοκεῖ ἀπιέναι, ὅπως ἀσφαλέστατα ἄπιμεν, καὶ ὅπως τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἕξομεν. 3. τὴν δὲ Ἑλληνικὴν δύναμιν ἤθροιζεν ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο ἐπικρυπτόμενος, ὅπως ὅτι ἀπαρασκευότατον λάβοι βασιλέᾱ. 4. ὅπως δὲ καὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμὲ ἐπαινέσετε ἐμοὶ μελήσει.[1] 5. καὶ περὶ τούτων ἐμνήσθην, ἵνα μὴ ταὐτὰ πάθητε. 6. οἱ θεώμενοι ἐφοβοῦντο μή τι πάθῃ. 7. τοὺς δὲ ἀποθανόντας αὐτοκέλευστοι οἱ Ἕλληνες ᾑρέσαντο, ὡς ὅτι φοβερώτατον τοῖς πολεμίοις εἴη. 8. ὅπως δ' ἀμῡνούμεθα οὐδεὶς ἐπιμελεῖται. 9. ἀλλὰ δέδοικα μὴ ὥσπερ οἱ λωτοφάγοι ἐπιλαθώμεθα τῆς οἴκαδε ὁδοῦ. 10. φίλος ἐβούλετο εἶναι τοῖς μέγιστα δυναμένοις, ἵνα ἀδικῶν μὴ διδοίη δίκην. 11. καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης ὑπώπτευσε μή τι πρὸς τῆς

[1] The clause with ὅπως is here the subj. of μελήσει.

πόλεως ἐπαίτιον εἴη Κύρῳ φίλον γενέσθαι.[1] 12. καί σε οὐκ ἤγειρον, ἵνα ὡς ἥδιστα καθεύδῃς. 13. ἔδεισε μὴ ἐπιπλεύσωσιν αἱ νῆες. 14. ἐβουλεύετο ὅπως μήποτε ἔτι ἔσται ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ, ἀλλὰ βασιλεύσει ἀντ' ἐκείνου. 15. πέμψωμεν δὲ καὶ προκαταληψομένους τὰ ἄκρα, ὅπως μὴ φθάνωσι μήτε Κῦρος μήτε οἱ Κίλικες καταλαβόντες. 16. λαβὼν ὑμᾶς ἐπορευόμην, ἵνα ὠφελοίην αὐτὸν ἀνθ' ὧν εὖ ἔπαθον ὑπ' ἐκείνου. 17. δέδια μὴ λαβών με δίκην ἐπιθῇ ὧν νομίζει ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἠδικῆσθαι. 18. ἐγὼ γὰρ ὀκνοίην μὲν ἄν[2] εἰς τὰ πλοῖα ἐμβαίνειν, μὴ ἡμᾶς ταῖς τριηρεσι καταδύσῃ, φοβοίμην δ' ἄν[2] τῷ ἡγεμόνι ἕπεσθαι, μὴ ἡμᾶς ἀγάγῃ ὅθεν οὐκ ἔσται ἐξελθεῖν.

Review 265, 266, 267, 296.

Examine the use of the subjunctive and optative in the dependent clauses of 1, 3, 7, 10, 15, 16, noting the tense of the leading verb.

Review 278, 302.

Examine 5, 12, noting the mood of the dependent clause and the tense of the leading verb.

791. Rule of Syntax. — The subjunctive may be used in final clauses after secondary tenses, instead of the optative, to express the purpose as originally conceived.

Examine the use of the future indicative in 2, 4, 8, 14, noting the particle which introduces it, its negative, if it is negative, and the meaning and tense of the leading verb.

792. Rule of Syntax. — After verbs which signify to *strive for*, *care for*, or *effect*, the object of the action is expressed by ὅπως, *that*, or ὅπως μή, *that not*, with the future indicative, after both primary and secondary tenses.

Examine the use of the subjunctive and optative in the dependent clauses of 9, 11, 17, 18, noting the tense of the leading verb.

Review 280, 304.

---

[1] Κύρῳ φίλον γενέσθαι is the subj. of εἴη, of which τι ἐπαιτιον, *some cause for blame*, is predicate.

[2] Any opt. which refers to the future has the force of a primary tense.

Examine 6, 13, noting the mood of the dependent clause and the tense of the leading verb.

793. Rule of Syntax. — The subjunctive may be used after the secondary tenses of verbs which denote fear, instead of the optative, to express the fear as originally conceived.

794. EXERCISE.

1. They went and asked Cyrus for boats, that they might sail away. 2. For they feared that the enemy would attack them (while) going through the ravine. 3. He thought that he needed friends, that he might have co-workers. 4. For they feared that they would be cut off and the enemy would get on both sides of them.[1] 5. And they were apprehensive that, if they should burn[2] the villages, they might not have provisions. 6. Let us therefore burn up the wagons which we have, that our teams may not be our generals.[3] 7. But no one of us is in return taking any[4] care that we may contend (with them) as successfully as possible. 8. They fear that the Greeks will attack them during the night.[5] 9. See to (it), then, that you be men worthy of the freedom which[6] you possess. 10. I did this, that the enemy might not think that we had set out for home.

LESSON CXIX.

Reading Lesson.

795. ANABASIS I. iv. 1–6.

From Tarsi Cyrus proceeds to the river Psarus, thence to the river Pyramus, and finally reaches Issi upon the sea-coast, the last city in Cilicia (1). Here he remains three days. During this time his fleet

[1] See 761.
[2] See 379.
[3] *may not take command of* (στρατηγέω) *us* (748).
[4] οὐδέν. See p. 202 [2] and 732.
[5] See 759.
[6] See 725.

arrives, which has been conducted from Ephesus by Tamos (2). Chirisophus is on board the ships with 700 heavy-armed men. Cyrus is joined also by 400 Greek mercenaries who desert from Abrocomas (3). Thence he proceeds to the Syro-Cilician Pass, a narrow way between the mountains and the coast, and defended at each end by a wall (4). He makes ready to land men on both sides of the further-most wall; but this plan proves to be unnecessary, as Abrocomas does not attempt to bar his passage, but retreats towards Babylon (5). Cyrus advances through Syria, and comes to Myriandus, a thriving emporium (6).

IV.

ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας 1
δέκα ἐπὶ τὸν Ψάρον ποταμόν, οὗ ἦν τὸ εὖρος τρία
πλέθρα. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἕνα παρα-
σάγγας πέντε ἐπὶ τὸν Πύραμον ποταμόν, οὗ ἦν τὸ
εὖρος στάδιον. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο
παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα εἰς Ἰσσούς, τῆς Κιλι-
κίας ἐσχάτην πόλιν ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ οἰκουμένην,
μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας 2
τρεῖς· καὶ Κύρῳ παρῆσαν αἱ ἐκ Πελοποννήσου
νῆες τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε καὶ ἐπ' αὐταῖς ναύαρχος
Πυθαγόρας Λακεδαιμόνιος. ἡγεῖτο δ' αὐταῖς Τα-
μὼς Αἰγύπτιος ἐξ Ἐφέσου, ἔχων ναῦς ἑτέρας
Κύρου πέντε καὶ εἴκοσιν, αἷς ἐπολιόρκει Μίλη-
τον, ὅτε Τισσαφέρνει φίλη ἦν, καὶ συνεπολέμει

1. The army has now been on the march four months. Retrace on the map the route travelled from Sardis to Tarsi. — 9. **Κυρῳ**: for the case, *cf.* **αὐτῷ** in 727, 28. The fleet, which here effects a junction with the land forces of Cyrus, preparatory to his march into the interior, is the one already mentioned in 765, 9-11. — 11. **ἡγεῖτο δ' αὐταῖς**, *conducted them, i.e.* the ships (769, 1). — 12. **ἐξ Ἐφέσου**: the Lacedæmonian ships under Pythagoras had joined the fleet of Cyrus at Ephesus. — 13. **αἷς ἐπολιόρκει**, *with which he (i.e.* Tamos) *had been besieging*. So **συνεπολέμει** below. *Cf.* **ἐτήγανεν** in 722, 17, and note. — 14. **ὅτε ἦν**, *since it had*

Κύρῳ πρὸς αὐτόν. παρῆν δὲ καὶ Χειρίσοφος 3
Λακεδαιμόνιος ἐπὶ τῶν νεῶν, μετάπεμπτος ὑπὸ
Κύρου, ἑπτακοσίους ἔχων ὁπλίτας, ὧν ἐστρατήγει
παρὰ Κύρῳ. αἱ δὲ νῆες ὥρμουν παρὰ τὴν Κύ-
ρου σκηνήν. ἐνταῦθα καὶ οἱ παρ' Ἀβροκόμᾳ
μισθοφόροι Ἕλληνες ἀποστάντες ἦλθον παρὰ
Κῦρον τετρακόσιοι ὁπλῖται καὶ συνεστρατεύοντο
ἐπὶ βασιλέᾳ. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἕνα πα- 4
ρασάγγᾱς πέντε ἐπὶ πύλᾱς τῆς Κιλικίᾱς καὶ τῆς
Συρίᾱς. ἦσαν δὲ ταῦτα δύο τείχη, καὶ τὸ μὲν
ἔσωθεν τὸ πρὸ τῆς Κιλικίᾱς Συέννεσις εἶχε καὶ
Κιλίκων φυλακή, τὸ δὲ ἔξω τὸ πρὸ τῆς Συρίᾱς
βασιλέως ἐλέγετο φυλακὴ φυλάττειν. διὰ μέσου
δὲ ῥεῖ τούτων ποταμὸς Κάρσος ὄνομα, εὖρος πλέ-
θρου. ἅπαν δὲ τὸ μέσον τῶν τειχῶν ἦσαν στά-
διοι τρεῖς· καὶ παρελθεῖν οὐκ ἦν βίᾳ· ἦν γὰρ ἡ
πάροδος στενὴ καὶ τὰ τείχη εἰς τὴν θάλατταν
καθήκοντα, ὕπερθεν δ' ἦσαν πέτραι ἠλίβατοι· ἐπὶ
δὲ τοῖς τείχεσιν ἀμφοτέροις ἐφειστήκεσαν πύλαι.
ταύτης ἕνεκα τῆς παρόδου Κῦρος τὰς ναῦς μετε- 5

---

been (781). — 15. **αὐτόν**: *i.e.* Tissaphernes. — 16. **μεταπεμπτός**, *sent for*, verbal in *-τος*, equal to *μεταπεμφθείς*, and so followed by *ὑπὸ Κύρου* (223). — 17. **ὧν . . . Κύρῳ**, *the command of whom he (now) held under Cyrus.* — 19. **οἱ παρ' Ἀβροκόμᾳ**: *cf. τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως* in 706, 23, and note. — **Ἀβροκόμᾳ**: the so-called Doric gen., found in Attic chiefly in foreign proper names. — 23. **πύλᾱς**: the article is omitted, since the subst. is used almost as a proper name. — 24. **ἦσαν . . . τείχη**, *this pass consisted of two walls.* **ταῦτα** for *αὗται* (with which *ἦσαν* really agrees), by attraction into agreement with the predicate subst. *τείχη*. — **τὸ μὲν ἔσωθεν**: *sc. τεῖχος*. — 29. **ἦσαν**: in agreement with the predicate subst. *στάδιοι*, a plur. to *στάδιον*. — 32. **καθήκοντα**: to be connected with *ἦν* as a predicate, *ἦν καθήκοντα* being equivalent to *καθῆκε*. — **ἐπὶ . . . πύλαι**, *in (on) each wall a gate*

πέμψατο, ὅπως ὁπλίτᾱς ἀποβιβάσειεν εἴσω καὶ ἔξω τῶν πυλῶν, καὶ βιασάμενοι τοὺς πολεμίους παρέλθοιεν, εἰ φυλάττοιεν ἐπὶ ταῖς Συρίαις πύλαις, ὅπερ ᾤετο ποιήσειν ὁ Κῦρος τὸν Ἀβροκόμᾱν, ἔχοντα πολὺ στράτευμα. Ἀβροκόμᾱς δὲ οὐ τοῦτ' ἐποίησεν, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε Κῦρον ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ὄντα, ἀναστρέψᾱς ἐκ Φοινίκης παρὰ βασιλέᾱ ἀπήλαυνεν, ἔχων, ὡς ἐλέγετο, τριάκοντα μῡριάδας στρατιᾶς.) ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ Συρίᾱς σταθμὸν ἕνα 6 παρασάγγᾱς πέντε εἰς Μῡρίανδον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην ὑπὸ Φοινικων ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ· ἐμπόριον δ' ἦν τὸ χωρίον καὶ ὥρμουν αὐτόθι ὁλκάδες πολλαί.

was set. — 35. **εἴσω καὶ ἔξω τῶν πυλῶν**, *within and without the pass, i.e.* between the two walls and beyond the wall on the Syrian side. The object of Cyrus was to attack Abrocomas both in front and in the rear. — 37. **εἰ φυλάττοιεν**, *in case they should be keeping guard.* — 38. **ὅπερ**, *just the thing which*, referring to the thought of the preceding clause. — 39. **ἔχοντα**: causal partic. (379).

Make a special study of the prepositions in this Reading Lesson (**διά**, 27, 43; **εἰς**, 6, 31, 44; **ἐν**, 40; **ἐξ**, 9, 12, 41; **ἐπί**, 2, 4, 7, 10, 16, 22, 23, 32, 37; **παρά**, 18 (*bis*), 19, 20, 41; **πρό**, 25, 26; **πρός**, 15; **ὑπό**, 16, 45), according to the directions previously given.

LESSON CXX.

Conditional Sentences: Present and Past Particular Conditions.

796. EXERCISE.

1. εἰ ὑμεῖς ἐθέλετε ἐξορμᾶν, ἕπεσθαι ὑμῖν βούλομαι. 2. εἰ ταῦτα ἔπραξαν, καλῶς ἔσχεν. 3. εἰ ταῦτα ἔπρᾱξαν, καλῶς ἂν ἔσχεν.[1] 4. εἴπερ ἐμὸς ἀδελφός ἐστιν, οὐκ ἀμαχεὶ ταῦτ' ἐγὼ λήψομαι. 5. Κλέαρχος τοίνυν εἰ παρὰ τοὺς ὅρκους

[1] *If they had done this, it would have been well*, an unfulfilled supposition. Note that the apodosis has **ἄν**.

ἔλῡε τὰς σπονδάς, τὴν δίκην ἔχει. 6. ἀλλά, εἰ βούλει, μένε ἐπὶ τῷ στρατεύματι, ἐγὼ δ' ἐθέλω πορεύεσθαι· εἰ δὲ χρῄζεις, πορεύου ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος, ἐγὼ δὲ μενῶ αὐτοῦ. 7. καὶ ἂν ταῦτ' ἐποίει, εἰ ἑώρᾱ ἡμᾶς ἀπιόντας.[1] 8. ἀλλ' εἰ βούλεσθε συναπιέναι, ἥκειν κελεύει ὑμᾶς τῆς νυκτός. 9. οὐκ ἂν τῶν νήσων ἐκράτει, εἰ μή τι ναυτικὸν εἶχεν. 10. εἰ δέ τι ἄλλο βέλτῑον,[2] τολμάτω καὶ ὁ ἰδιώτης διδάσκειν. 11. στρατηγοὺς ἑλώμεθα ἄλλους ὡς τάχιστα, εἰ μὴ βούλεται Κλέαρχος ἀπάγειν. 12. εἰ μέντοι τότε πλείους συνελέγησαν, ἐκινδύνευσεν ἂν διαφθαρῆναι πολὺ τοῦ στρατεύματος. 13. εἰ τοῦτο πεποίηκας, ἐπαινεῖσθαι ἄξιος εἶ. 14. εἴ τε ἤδη δοκεῖ ἀπιέναι, σκεπτέον ἐστὶν ὅπως ἀσφαλέστατα ἄπιμεν. 15. ἡ πόλις πᾶσα διεφθάρη ἄν, εἰ ἄνεμος ἐπεγένετο. 16. καὶ ἡμῖν γ' ἂν τρισάσμενος ταῦτ' ἐποίει βασιλεύς, εἰ ἑώρᾱ ἡμᾶς μένειν παρασκευαζομένους. 17. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες, εἴ τις καὶ ἀθῡμότερος[3] ἦν πρὸς τὴν ἀνάβασιν, ἀκούοντες τὴν Κύρου ἀρετὴν ἥδῑον καὶ προθῡμότερον συνεπορεύοντο.

Examine 1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 8, 10, 11, 13, 14, 17.

Observe that these sentences are conditional, consisting of a protasis and apodosis (272); that the protasis is introduced by εἰ, *if*, and has the indic.; that it states a particular supposition in the present or past, and implies nothing as to its fulfilment; and that the apodosis assumes a great variety of forms (being expressed here, *e.g.*, by the indic., present, past, and future, by the impv., by the subjv., and by the verbal in **-τεος**).

797. Rule of Syntax. — When the protasis *simply states* a present or past particular supposition, implying nothing as to the fulfilment of the condition, it has the indicative with εἰ. Any form of the verb may stand in the apodosis.

Such conditional sentences are designated as *Particular Suppositions of the First Class* (I. 1).

[1] *He would be doing this, if he saw, etc.*, an unfulfilled supposition.

[2] *better plan. Sc.* ἐστί.

[3] *even* (καί) *somewhat discouraged.*

a. The negative of all protases is regularly μή, that of all apodoses is regularly οὐ.

Examine 3, 7, 12, 15, 16.

Observe that the protasis is introduced by εἰ, *if*, and has a secondary tense of the indic.: that it states a supposition in the present or past, using respectively the impf. or aor. indic., and implies that the condition *is not* or *was not fulfilled*: and that the apodosis has a secondary tense of the indic. with ἄν.

798. Rule of Syntax. — When the protasis states a present or past supposition, implying that the condition *is not* or *was not fulfilled*, the secondary tenses of the indicative are used in both protasis and apodosis. The apodosis has the adverb ἄν. The imperfect refers to present time, the aorist to a simple occurrence in past time.

a. The imperfect may refer to an act as going on or repeated in past time. Examine 9, which refers to the past.

Such conditional sentences are designated as *Suppositions of the Second Class* (II.).

799. EXERCISE.

1. But if anybody sees a better (plan), let him speak. 2. If he had restrained himself, he would now be king. 3. And if you had not come, we should have proceeded against the king. 4. If you have the money, pay it to the soldiers. 5. If this is so, I will go away at once. 6. If the general had wished to go, the soldiers would have followed (him). 7. If he went into the city, he received the gold. 8. He would not have done this, if I had not bid him. 9. If you say this, you are deceived. 10. If he wrote the letter, he did well. 11. If he had done this, he would have injured me greatly.[1] 12. If the citizens had been wise, they would then have put this tyrant to death. 13. If you have not done wrong, why are you about[2] to flee? 14. It would be much more wonderful, if they were honoured.

[1] μέγα, see 732.

[2] *be about*, μέλλω.

LESSON CXXI.

Reading Lesson.

800. ANABASIS I. iv. 7–11.

At Myriandus Xenias and Pasion, in jealousy of the increasing influence of Clearchus, desert by sea. The rumour spreads that Cyrus is in pursuit of them (7). But he, calling his Greek generals together, announces that he shall not do this. "Let them go, traitors though they are and though their punishment would be easy, since formerly they were true to me (8)." This decision pleases the Greeks, and they accompany him with greater alacrity. Cyrus proceeds eastward, crosses the Chalus (9), and reaches the sources of the Dardas, where he destroys the park and burns the palace of the Syrian governor (10). At Thapsacus on the Euphrates he announces the real object of his expedition (11).

IV.

ἐνταῦθ' ἔμειναν ἡμέρᾱς ἑπτά· καὶ Ξενίᾱς ὁ 7
Ἀρκὰς στρατηγὸς καὶ Παύσιων ὁ Μεγαρεὺς ἐμ-
βάντες εἰς πλοῖον καὶ τὰ πλείστου ἄξια ἐνθέμενοι
ἀπέπλευσαν, ὡς μὲν τοῖς πλείστοις ἐδόκουν, φιλο-
τῑμηθέντες ὅτι τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς αὐτῶν τοὺς παρὰ
Κλέαρχον ἀπελθόντας ὡς ἀπιόντας εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα
πάλιν καὶ οὐ πρὸς βασιλέᾱ εἴᾱ Κῦρος τὸν Κλέ-
αρχον ἔχειν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσαν ἀφανεῖς, διῆλθε λόγος
ὅτι διώκοι αὐτοὺς Κῦρος τριήρεσι· καὶ οἱ μὲν
ηὔχοντο ὡς δειλοὺς ὄντας αὐτοὺς ληφθῆναι, οἱ δ'

---

4. **μέν**: the correlative clause with δέ is omitted, but *μέν* implies that there was another opinion in the camp. — **ἐδόκουν**: *they seemed*, the personal const. We should use the impersonal const., *it seemed*. — **φιλοτῑμηθέντες**, *since they were jealous* (379). — 5. **ὅτι . . . εἴᾱ Κῦρος**: also causal (781). For the facts see 779, 43–46. — **στρατιώτᾱς**: obj. of ἔχειν in l. 8. — 6. **ὡς ἀπιόντας**: purpose (706, 16, and note). — 7. **καὶ οὐ**: *sc.* ἰόντας from the preceding ἀπιόντας. — 9. **ὅτι διώκοι . . . Κῦρος**, *that Cyrus was in pursuit of them*. — 10. **ὡς δειλοὺς . . . ληφθῆναι**, *that they might be*

ὤκτειρον εἰ ἁλώσοιντο. Κῦρος δὲ συγκαλέσᾱς 8
τοὺς στρατηγοὺς εἶπεν, Ἀπολελοίπᾱσιν ἡμᾶς Ξενίᾱς καὶ Πᾱσίων. ἀλλ᾽ εὖ γε μέντοι ἐπιστάσθων ὅτι οὔτε ἀποδεδράκᾱσιν· οἶδα γὰρ ὅπῃ οἴχονται· οὔτε ἀποπεφεύγᾱσιν· ἔχω γὰρ τριήρεις ὥστε ἑλεῖν τὸ ἐκείνων πλοῖον· ἀλλὰ μὰ τοὺς θεοὺς οὐκ ἔγωγε αὐτοὺς διώξω, οὐδ᾽ ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς ὡς ἐγὼ ἕως μὲν ἂν παρῇ τις χρῶμαι, ἐπειδὰν δὲ ἀπιέναι βούληται, συλλαβὼν καὶ αὐτοὺς κακῶς ποιῶ καὶ τὰ χρήματα ἀποσῡλῶ. ἀλλὰ ἴόντων, εἰδότες ὅτι κακίους εἰσὶ περὶ ἡμᾶς ἢ ἡμεῖς περὶ ἐκείνους. καίτοι ἔχω γε αὐτῶν καὶ τέκνα καὶ γυναῖκας ἐν Τράλλεσι φρουρούμενα· ἀλλ᾽ οὐδὲ τούτων στερήσονται, ἀλλ᾽ ἀπολήψονται τῆς πρόσθεν ἕνεκα περὶ ἐμὲ ἀρετῆς. καὶ ὁ μὲν ταῦτα εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες, εἴ τις καὶ 9
ἀθῡμότερος ἦν πρὸς τὴν ἀνάβασιν, ἀκούοντες τὴν Κύρου ἀρετὴν ἥδιον καὶ προθῡμότερον συνεπορεύοντο.

μετὰ ταῦτα Κῦρος ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγᾱς εἴκοσιν ἐπὶ τὸν Χάλον ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου, πλήρη δ᾽ ἰχθύων μεγάλων καὶ

---

caught, because they were cowards. ὡς shows that the reason assigned is that of the subject of ᾤκτειρον. See note on 706, 33. — 11. **εἰ ἁλώσοιντο**, *if they were to be captured.* — 17. **οὐδ᾽ ἐρεῖ οὐδείς**: emphatic negation (p. 202 [2]). — **ἕως ἂν παρῇ τις**, *so long as anybody stays by me.* — 18. **ἐπειδὰν βούληται**, *when he wishes.* — 19. **αὐτούς**: plur., although referring to τὶς. *Cf.* 706, 24. — 20. **ἰόντων**: imv. — 23. **φρουρούμενα**: neuter, although it limits both τέκνα and γυναῖκας, since these are regarded as articles of property. — By this unlooked for clemency Cyrus got the good-will of the Greeks and lost little; for, although the two generals deserted, their troops remained, numbering some 5000 or 6000. — 29. **μετὰ ταῦτα**: see 727, 27, and note. — 31. **πλέθρου**: see 744 a. So below in line 37.

πρᾱέων, οὓς οἱ Σύροι θεοὺς ἐνόμιζον καὶ ἀδικεῖν οὐκ εἴων, οὐδὲ τὰς περιστερᾶς. αἱ δὲ κῶμαι ἐν αἷς ἐσκήνουν Παρυσάτιδος ἦσαν εἰς ζώνην δεδο-
35 μέναι. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς πέντε παρα- 10
σάγγᾱς τριάκοντα ἐπὶ τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Δάρδατος ποταμοῦ, οὗ τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου. ἐνταῦθα ἦν τὰ Βελέσυος βασίλεια τοῦ Συρίᾱς ἄρξαντος, καὶ παράδεισος πάνυ μέγας καὶ καλός, ἔχων πάντα ὅσα
40 ὧραι φύουσι. Κῦρος δ' αὐτὸν ἐξέκοψε καὶ τὰ βασίλεια κατέκαυσεν. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς 11
τρεῖς παρασάγγᾱς πεντεκαίδεκα ἐπὶ τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος τεττάρων σταδίων· καὶ πόλις αὐτόθι ᾠκεῖτο μεγάλη καὶ εὐδαίμων Θάψα-
45 κος ὄνομα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρᾱς πέντε· καὶ Κῦρος μεταπεμψάμενος τοὺς στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἡ ὁδὸς ἔσοιτο πρὸς βασιλέᾱ μέγαν εἰς Βαβυλῶνα· καὶ κελεύει αὐτοὺς λέγειν ταῦτα τοῖς στρατιώταις καὶ ἀναπείθειν ἕπεσθαι.

— 32. **οὓς, θεούς**: see 739. — **ἀδικεῖν**: *sc.* τινά as subj. — 34. **Παρυσάτιδος ἦσαν**, *belonged to Parasatis* (744 a). — 38. **τοῦ ἄρξαντος**, *who had been ruler*. Note the tense. Belesys had probably fled on the approach of Cyrus. — 47. **ὅτι ἡ ὁδὸς ἔσοιτο**, *that the expedition would be*. The fact here announced must have been apparent to the Greeks for some time. They had kept on, however, intending, when they arrived at the Euphrates and Cyrus announced his real object, to demand a bounty.

Make a special study of the prepositions used in composition with verbs (127) in this Reading Lesson (**ἀνα-**, 49; **ἀπο-**, 4, 6 (*bis*), 12, 14, 15, 18, 20, 24; **δια-**, 8; **ἐν-**, 2, 3; **ἐξ-**, 29, 35, 40, 41; **κατα-**, 41; **μετα-**, 46; **παρα-**, 18; **συν-**, 11, 19, 27), carefully consulting the General Vocabulary. Note the meaning of the simple verb, the force of the preposition when used in composition, and the meaning of the compound verb when the two are united. The prepositions were originally adverbs, and it is chiefly as such that they appear in composition with verbs.

LESSON CXXII.

Conditional Sentences: Present and Past General Conditions. — Iterative Tenses.

801. EXERCISE.

1. οἱ θεοὶ ἱκανοί εἰσι τοὺς μικρούς, κἂν ἐν δεινοῖς ὦσι,[1] σῴζειν εὐπετῶς. 2. τὰς δὲ ὠτίδας ἄν τις ταχὺ ἀνιστῇ,[2] ἔστι λαμβάνειν. 3. ἦν ἐπικούρημα τῶν ποδῶν, εἴ τις τὴν νύκτα ὑπολύοιτο.[3] 4. ἤν τι[4] περὶ ἡμᾶς ἁμαρτάνωσι, περὶ τὰς ἑαυτῶν ψυχὰς ἁμαρτάνουσι. 5. περὶ πλείστου ἐποιεῖτο Κῦρος, εἴ τῳ σπείσαιτο[5] καὶ εἴ τῳ ὑπόσχοιτό τι, μηδαμῶς ψεύδεσθαι. 6. καὶ εἴ τις αὐτῷ δοκοίη τῶν πρὸς τοῦτο τεταγμένων βλᾶκεύειν, ἐκλεγόμενος τὸν ἐπιτηδειον ἔπαισεν ἄν.[6] 7. εἰ δέ τινα ὁρῴη Κῦρος δεινὸν ὄντα οἰκονόμον, οὐδένα ἂν πώποτε ἀφείλετο,[7] ἀλλ' ἀεὶ πλειω προσεδίδου. 8. μισεῖ, οὐκ ἤν τίς τι[4] αὐτὸν ἀδικῇ, ἀλλ' ἐάν τινα ὑποπτεύσῃ βελτίονα ἑαυτοῦ εἶναι. 9. εἰ δή ποτε πορεύοιτο, προσκαλῶν τοὺς φίλους ἐσπουδαιολογεῖτο. 10. εἴ τινες ἰδοιέν πῃ τοὺς σφετέρους ἐπικρατοῦντας, ἀνεθάρρησαν ἄν. 11. ἐάν τίς τι ἀγαθὸν ἢ κακὸν ποιήσῃ αὐτόν,[8] νίκᾶν πειρᾶται. 12. ἀναλαμβάνων αὐτῶν τὰ ποιήματα διηρώτων ἄν.[9] 13. εἰ ἐξελαύνοι Ἀστυάγης, ἐφ' ἵππου χρῡσοχαλίνου περιῆγε τὸν Κῦρον. 14. καὶ τοὺς ὄνους οὐκ ἦν λαβεῖν, εἰ μὴ διαστάντες οἱ ἱππεῖς θηρῷεν διαδεχόμενοι. 15. καὶ πάντες δ' οἱ τῶν βαρβάρων ἄρχοντες μέσον ἔχοντες τὸ αὐτῶν ἡγοῦνται, νομίζοντες οἵτω καὶ ἐν ἀσφαλεστάτῳ εἶναι.[10] ἦν ἡ ἡ ἰσχὺς αὐτῶν ἑκατέρωθεν.

---

[1] *even if they are, etc.*
[2] *if one starts them up, etc.*
[3] *if one took off his shoes, etc.*
[4] See 732.
[5] *if he made a treaty, etc.*
[6] *he would beat him.*
[7] *used to rob* (ἂν ἀφείλετο), *etc.*
[8] See 738.
[9] *I used to question them.*
[10] See 354. Their thought is, οὕτω καὶ ἐν ἀσφαλεστάτῳ ἐσμεν, ἢν ᾖ ἡ ἰσχὺς ἡμῶν ἑκατέρωθεν.

802. Suppositions are to be distinguished as *particular* or *general.*

a. The protases of the examples given to establish the rule in 797 are all *particular* suppositions, *i.e.* they refer to a definite act supposed to occur or to have occurred at some definite time.

b. But a supposition otherwise similar to those referred to in 797, *i.e.* a present or past supposition which implies nothing as to the fulfilment of the condition, may be *general.* Such a general supposition refers indefinitely to any act of a given class, which may be supposed to occur or to have occurred at any time. The apodosis expresses a customary or repeated action or a general truth in present or past time. *E.g., if ever he receives anything, he (always) gives it; if ever he received anything, he (always) gave it.*

c. This distinction of suppositions as particular or general is seen in all classes of conditional sentences, but it is only in the First Class (I.) that the distinction is indicated by the *form* of the sentence.

Examine 1, 2, 4, 8, 11, 15.

Observe that these general suppositions are all present; that the protasis is introduced by ἐάν (or ἤν or ἄν, for which see p. 90[1]), *if*, and has the subjv.; and that the apodosis has the pres. indic. or its equivalent.

803. Rule of Syntax. — Present general suppositions have ἐάν with the subjunctive in the protasis, and the present indicative (or some other present form denoting repetition) in the apodosis.

Such conditional sentences are designated as *Present General Suppositions of the First Class* (I. 2 a).

Examine 3, 5, 9, 13, 14.

Observe that these general suppositions are all past; that the protasis is introduced by εἰ, *if*, and has the opt.; and that the apodosis has the impf. indic.

804. Rule of Syntax. — Past general suppositions have εἰ with the optative in the protasis, and the imperfect indicative (or some other form denoting past repetition) in the apodosis.

Such conditional sentences are designated as *Past General Suppositions of the First Class* (I. 2 b).

Examine 12, and the apodoses in 6, 7, 10.

Observe that the impf. or aor. indic. here has ἄν, and expresses customary action.

805. Rule of Syntax. — The imperfect and aorist indicative are sometimes used with the adverb ἄν to denote a *customary* action.

a. This *iterative* use of the secondary tenses of the indic. with ἄν must be carefully distinguished from apodoses with ἄν expressing non-fulfilment (798).

Observe that 6, 7, 10 are past general suppositions (804).

806. EXERCISE.

1. If any soldier ever stole, he was punished. 2. He is always angry, if he sees anybody doing wrong. 3. If he promises anybody anything, he never deceives him. 4. But it was a protection, if one journeyed with something black before his eyes. 5. If we ever attacked the enemy, they escaped with ease. 6. If the soldiers march in good order, he praises them. 7. If anybody perjures himself, they impose a penalty on him. 8. He used to beat his soldiers. 9. If he suspected that anybody was plotting against him, he put him to death. 10. They would not let the late-comers approach the fire, unless they gave them a share of their provisions.

LESSON CXXIII.

Reading Lesson.

807. ANABASIS I. iv. 12–19.

The Greek troops refuse to go on without extra pay (12). Cyrus agrees to give each man five minas, when they get to Babylon. Menon, in the mean time, urges his troops to cross the Euphrates before the others decide, and so win the favour of Cyrus by seeming to be the most zealous in his service (13–15). They comply, and Cyrus ex-

presses his satisfaction (16). Cyrus then crosses the Euphrates with the rest of his troops, and proceeds to the Araxes, where he remains three days (17–19).

IV.

οἱ δὲ ποιήσαντες ἐκκλησίαν ἀπήγγελλον ταῦτα· 12
οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἐχαλέπαινον τοῖς στρατηγοῖς, καὶ
ἔφασαν αὐτοὺς πάλαι ταῦτ' εἰδότας κρύπτειν, καὶ
οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι, ἐὰν μή τις αὐτοῖς χρήματα διδῷ,
ὥσπερ τοῖς προτέροις μετὰ Κύρου ἀναβᾶσι παρὰ
τὸν πατέρα τοῦ Κύρου, καὶ ταῦτα οὐκ ἐπὶ μάχην
ἰόντων, ἀλλὰ καλοῦντος τοῦ πατρὸς Κῦρον. ταῦτα 13
οἱ στρατηγοὶ Κύρῳ ἀπήγγελλον· ὁ δ' ὑπέσχετο
ἀνδρὶ ἑκάστῳ δώσειν πέντε ἀργυρίου μνᾶς, ἐπὴν
εἰς Βαβυλῶνα ἥκωσι, καὶ τὸν μισθὸν ἐντελῆ μέχρι
ἂν καταστήσῃ τοὺς Ἕλληνας εἰς Ἰωνίαν πάλιν.
τὸ μὲν δὴ πολὺ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ οὕτως ἐπείσθη.
Μένων δέ, πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι τί ποιήσουσιν οἱ ἄλλοι
στρατιῶται, πότερον ἕψονται Κύρῳ ἢ οὔ, συνέλεξε
τὸ αὑτοῦ στράτευμα χωρὶς τῶν ἄλλων καὶ ἔλεξε
τάδε. Ἄνδρες, ἐάν μοι πεισθῆτε, οὔτε κινδυνεύ- 14
σαντες οὔτε πονήσαντες τῶν ἄλλων πλέον προτι-

---

2. **ἐχαλέπαινον**: the anger of the soldiers was doubtless feigned, to force from Cyrus the greater pay. — 3. **εἰδότας**, *though they had known*, concessive (379). — 4. **τις**: the reference is, of course, to Cyrus. — 5. **ὥσπερ**: *sc.* ἔδωκε, *as he had given it.* — **τοῖς προτέροις ἀναβᾶσι**, *to those who had previously gone inland.* προτέροις is a predicate adj. with the force of an adv. *Cf.* προτέρᾱ in 765, 29, and note. The reference is to the 300 Greeks mentioned in 706, 10–12. — 6. **καὶ ταῦτα**, *and that too. Sc.* ἐποίησεν. — 7. **ἰόντων**: *sc.* ἐκείνων, referring to τοῖς ἀναβᾶσι. For the gen. absol., see 762. So καλοῦντος τοῦ πατρός following. — 9. **δώσειν**: see p. 250[6]. — **ἐπὴν . . . ἥκωσι**, *when they should get to Babylon.* — 10. **ἐντελῆ**, *in full*, predicate adj. (720). The daric and a half a month, promised in 789, 44 f., was not to be reduced because of the present bounty of five minas. — **μέχρι ἂν καταστήσῃ**, *until he should restore them.* — 17. **τῶν ἄλ-**

μήσεσθε στρατιωτῶν ὑπὸ Κύρου. τί οὖν κελεύω ποιῆσαι; νῦν δεῖται Κῦρος ἕπεσθαι τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἐπὶ βασιλέα· ἐγὼ οὖν φημι ὑμᾶς χρῆναι διαβῆναι τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι ὅ τι οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες ἀποκρινοῦνται Κύρῳ. ἢν μὲν γὰρ ψηφίσωνται ἕπεσθαι, ὑμεῖς δόξετε αἴτιοι εἶναι ἄρξαντες τοῦ διαβαίνειν, καὶ ὡς προθυμοτάτοις οὖσιν ὑμῖν χάριν εἴσεται Κῦρος καὶ ἀποδώσει· ἐπίσταται δ' εἴ τις καὶ ἄλλος· ἢν δὲ ἀποψηφίσωνται οἱ ἄλλοι, ἄπιμεν μὲν ἅπαντες τοὔμπαλιν, ὑμῖν δὲ ὡς μόνοις πειθομένοις πιστοτάτοις χρήσεται καὶ εἰς φρούρια καὶ εἰς λοχαγίας, καὶ ἄλλου οὑτινος ἂν δέησθε οἶδα ὅτι ὡς φίλοι τεύξεσθε Κύρου. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἐπείθοντο καὶ διέβησαν πρὶν τοὺς ἄλλους ἀποκρίνασθαι. Κῦρος δ' ἐπεὶ ἤσθετο διαβεβηκότας, ἥσθη τε καὶ τῷ στρατεύματι πέμψας Γλοῦν εἶπεν, Ἐγὼ μέν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἤδη ὑμᾶς ἐπαινῶ· ὅπως δὲ καὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμὲ ἐπαινέσετε ἐμοὶ μελήσει, ἢ μηκέτι με Κῦρον νομίζετε. οἱ μὲν δὴ στρατιῶται ἐν ἐλπίσι μεγάλαις ὄντες ηὔχοντο αὐτὸν εὐτυχῆσαι, Μένωνι δὲ καὶ δῶρα ἐλέγετο πέμψαι μεγαλοπρεπῶς. ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσας διέβαινε· συνείπετο δὲ καὶ τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα αὐτῷ ἅπαν. καὶ τῶν διαβαινόντων τὸν ποταμὸν οὐδεὶς ἐβρέχθη

λων στρατιωτῶν: see 763. — 24. **τοῦ διαβαίνειν**: *cf.* 742, 10. — 26. **ἐπίσταται**: *sc.* χάριν ἀποδιδόναι. — **εἴ τις καὶ ἄλλος**: *cf.* ὃς τις καὶ ἄλλος in 789, 5. — 27. **τοὔμπαλιν**: *i.e.* τὸ ἐμπαλιν (p. 554). — 28. **ὡς μόνοις πειθομένοις**, *because you alone were obedient*. — **πιστοτάτοις**, *as most trustworthy*, predicate adj. — 29. **ἄλλου . . . δέησθε**, *whatever else you want* (749). — 30. **τεύξεσθε Κύρου**, *you will get from Cyrus* (p. 188¹). — 33. **διαβεβηκότας**, *that they had crossed* (p. 250⁶). — 35. **ὅπως . . . μελήσει**: *cf.* 790, 4. —

ἀνωτέρω τῶν μαστῶν ὑπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ. οἱ δὲ 18
Θαψακηνοὶ ἔλεγον ὅτι οὐπώποθ' οὗτος ὁ ποταμὸς
διαβατὸς γένοιτο πεζῇ εἰ μὴ τότε, ἀλλὰ πλοίοις,
ἃ τότε Ἀβροκόμᾶς προϊὼν κατέκαυσεν, ἵνα μὴ
Κῦρος διαβῇ. ἐδόκει δὴ θεῖον εἶναι καὶ σαφῶς
ὑποχωρῆσαι τὸν ποταμὸν Κύρῳ ὡς βασιλεύσοντι.
ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Συρίᾶς σταθμοὺς ἐννέα 19
παρασάγγᾶς πεντήκοντα· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται πρὸς
τὸν Ἀράξην ποταμόν. ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν κῶμαι πολ-
λαὶ μεσταὶ σίτου καὶ οἴνου. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν
ἡμέρᾶς τρεῖς καὶ ἐπεσῑτίσαντο.

43. ὅτι . . . γένοιτο. *that never before had this river become passable.* — 44. εἰ μὴ τότε, *except then*, emphasizing οὐπώποτε. — 45. κατέκαυσεν: plup. in force. — ἵνα μὴ διαβῇ: see 791. — 46. ἐδόκει . . . βασιλεύσοντι, *it seemed accordingly that it* (the lowness of the river) *was a divine intervention* (718), *and that the river had plainly retired before Cyrus* (769), *because he was about to be king.*

Make a special study of the prepositions used in composition in this Reading Lesson (ἀνα-, 5; ἀπο-, 1, 8, 22, 25, 26, 27, 32, 49; δια-, 20, 24, 31, 33, 39, 41, 46; ἐξ-, 48; ἐπι-, 35 (*bis*), 52; κατα-, 11, 45; προ-, 17, 45; συν-, 14, 39; ὑπο-, 8, 47), according to the directions given in Lesson CXXI.

LESSON CXXIV.

Conditional Sentences: Future Conditions.

808. EXERCISE.

1. κἂν μὲν ᾖ ἐκεῖ, τὴν δίκην ἐπιθήσομεν αὐτῷ, ἢν δὲ φύγῃ, ὑμεῖς ἐκεῖ πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευσόμεθα. 2. εἰ οὖν ὁρῴην ὑμᾶς σωτήριόν τι βουλευομένους, ἔλθοιμι ἂν πρὸς ὑμᾶς. 3. οὕτω[1] γὰρ ἂν ὑμεῖς ἀπολελυμένοι τῆς αἰτίᾶς εἴητε.

[1] *In this way*, or *if this should happen*, representing the protasis.

4. ἐγὼ ἐθέλω, ὦ ἄνδρες, διαβιβάσαι ὑμᾶς, ἂν ἐμοὶ ὧν δέομαι ὑπηρετήσητε καὶ τάλαντον μισθὸν πορίσητε. 5. νῦν ἄν, εἰ βούλοιο, σύ τε ἡμᾶς ὀνήσαις καὶ ἡμεῖς σὲ μέγαν ποιήσαιμεν. 6. καίτοι εἰ ἅμα τ' ἐλεύθερος εἴης καὶ πλούσιος γένοιο, τίνος ἂν δέοιο; 7. τὴν ἐλευθερίαν ἑλοίμην ἂν ἀντὶ ὧν[1] ἔχω πάντων. 8. εἰ δὲ ἆθλα προτιθείη τις, πολὺ ἂν πλείους διὰ τοῦτο ἐμπορεύοιντο. 9. οὐδ' εἰ πάντες ἔλθοιεν Πέρσαι, πλήθει γε οὐχ[2] ὑπερβαλοίμεθ' ἂν τοὺς πολεμίους. 10. ἂν δέ τις ἀνθιστῆται, σὺν ὑμῖν πειρασόμεθα χειροῦσθαι. 11. οὐδὲ γὰρ ἄν με ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐπαινοίη, εἰ ἐξελαύνοιμι τοὺς εὐεργέτας. 12. οὐκ ἴμεν,[3] ἐὰν μή τις ἡμῖν χρήματα διδῷ. 13. ἢν οὖν σωφρονῆτε, τοῦτον τἀναντία[4] ποιήσετε ἢ τοὺς κύνας ποιοῦσι· τοὺς μὲν γὰρ κύνας τοὺς χαλεποὺς τὰς μὲν ἡμέρας διδέασι, τὰς δὲ νύκτας ἀφιᾶσι, τοῦτον δέ, ἢν σωφρονῆτε, τὴν νύκτα μὲν δήσετε, τὴν δὲ ἡμέραν ἀφήσετε. 14. καὶ ἐὰν μὲν ἡ πρᾶξις ᾖ παραπλησιᾶ οἵαπερ[5] καὶ πρόσθεν ἐχρῆτο Κῦρος τοῖς ξένοις, ἑπώμεθα καὶ ἡμεῖς· ἐὰν δὲ μείζων ἡ πρᾶξις τῆς πρόσθεν φαίνηται, ἀξιῶμεν πεισθέντα ἡμᾶς πρὸς φιλίαν ἀφῑέναι. 15. ἐὰν καλῶς καταπράξω ἐφ' ἃ στρατεύομαι, ὑμᾶς κατάξω οἴκαδε. 16. Κῦρος δὲ τοῖς Κίλιξι διδοῖ τὰ ἁρπασμένα ἀνδράποδα, ἥν που ἐντυγχάνωσιν, ἀπολαμβάνειν. 17. καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν[6] μὲν ἂν εἴην τίμιος, ὑμῶν δὲ ἔρημος ὤν[7] οὐκ ἂν ἱκανὸς εἴην οὔτ' ἂν φίλον ὠφελῆσαι οὔτ' ἂν ἐχθρὸν ἀλέξασθαι. 18. ἐὰν δὲ μὴ διδῷ πλοῖα, ἡγεμόνα αἰτῶμεν Κῦρον· ἐὰν δὲ μηδὲ ἡγεμόνα διδῷ, συνταττώμεθα τὴν ταχίστην. 19. βουλοίμην δ' ἂν ἄκοντος ἀπιὼν[8] Κῦρου λαθεῖν αὐτὸν ἀπελθών· ὃ οὐ δυνατόν ἐστιν. 20. οὕτω γὰρ καὶ ἑπόμενοι ἂν φίλοι αὐτῷ ἑποίμεθα καὶ ἀπιόντες ἀσφαλῶς ἂν ἀπίοιμεν. 21. ἄνδρες, ἐάν μοι πεισθῆτε, τῶν ἄλλων πλέον προτῑμή-

---

[1] See 725.

[2] *Not even if all, etc., not even then, etc.*

[3] See p. 274[4].

[4] See 738.

[5] See note on 789, 21.

[6] The phrase implies the protasis, *with you, i.e. if I should be with you.*

[7] Conditional, *i.e. if I should be.*

[8] *I.e. if I should leave.*

σεσθε στρατιωτῶν ὑπὸ Κύρου. 22. ἢν μὲν γὰρ ψηφίσωνται ἕπεσθαι, ὑμεῖς δόξετε αἴτιοι εἶναι· ἢν δ' ἀποψηφίσωνται οἱ ἄλλοι, ἄπιμεν ἅπαντες τοὔμπαλιν.

Review 265, 266, 267, 296.

Examine 1, 10, 12, 13, 15, 21, 22.
Review 272 a.

Examine 4, 14, 16, 18.
Observe that here the apodosis is not expressed by the fut. indic., but by other future forms, namely, by the infin. (4, 16) and subjv. (14, 18).
Review 273.[1]
Such conditional sentences are designated as *Suppositions of the Third Class* (III.).

Examine 2, 5, 6, 8, 9, 11.
Review 299 a and 300.
Such conditional sentences are designated as *Suppositions of the Fourth Class* (IV.).

Examine 3, 7, 17, 19, 20.
Observe that here the protasis is not expressed by the opt. with εἰ, but is contained in a participle (17, 19, 20),[2] or is implied in an adv. (3) or in some other part of the sent. (17),[3] or is even altogether omitted (7).[4]

809. EXERCISE.

1. For if we take this height, those above the road[5] will not be able to remain. 2. He would gladly give them guides, if they should wish to go away. 3. For if they see you dispirited, they will all be cowardly. 4. What shall we suffer, if we yield and get in the power of the king? 5. If they should receive pledges, they would come. 6. If the king fights within ten days, I will give you ten talents. 7. For if we should besiege this city, we should take it. 8. And we shall

[1] The fut. indic. with εἰ is often used for the subjv. with ἐάν in future conditions, as a still more vivid form of expression.

[2] See 379.
[3] See p. 104 [10].
[4] See p. 104 [14].
[5] οἱ ὑπὲρ τῆς ὁδοῦ. See p. 83 [9].

not be able to pass by, unless we cut off the enemy. 9. If the horsemen arrive before the battle, we shall be victorious. 10. If I should escape the notice of these (men), I should be saved; but[1] if I should be taken, I should suffer death. 11. If therefore we make the peace, we shall dwell in the city in[2] great safety. 12. If therefore we should have arms, we should make use also of our valour; but[1] if we should surrender these, we should lose our lives also.

[1] For the correlation of the two parts of the sentence, *cf.* 808, 1 above.
[2] μετά with the gen.

LESSON CXXV.

Reading Lesson.

810. ANABASIS I. v. 1–7.

The march is continued from the river Araxes through the desert of Arabia along the northern bank of the Euphrates (1). The horsemen hunt the wild animals in which the plain abounds (2, 3). The army reaches Corsote, which has been abandoned by its inhabitants, on the river Mascas (4). Thence Cyrus rapidly marches thirteen days through the desert. Many of the beasts of burden perish from hunger (5). Grain failing, the soldiers live upon flesh (6). Once during this time the wagons are stuck in the mud, and Cyrus bids Glus and Pigres to take part of the barbarian force and aid in getting them out (7).

v.

ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Ἀραβίας τὸν Εὐ- 1
φράτην ποταμὸν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχων σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους
πέντε παρασάγγας τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε. ἐν τούτῳ
δὲ τῷ τόπῳ ἦν μὲν ἡ γῆ πεδίον ἅπαν ὁμαλὲς
ὥσπερ θάλαττα, ἀψινθίου δὲ πλῆρες· εἰ δέ τι καὶ
ἄλλο ἐνῆν ὕλης ἢ καλάμου, ἅπαντα ἦσαν εὐώδη

4. ἅπαν: *cf.* 263, 1, 3. — 6. ἅπαντα, *if there was anything else, they were all, etc. Cf.* 706, 23, 24, and note. — ἦσαν: see 90. This plur. occurs

ὥσπερ ἀρώματα· δένδρον δ' οὐδὲν ἐνῆν, θηρία δὲ 2
παντοῖα, πλεῖστοι ὄνοι ἄγριοι, πολλαὶ δὲ στρουθοὶ
αἱ μεγάλαι· ἐνῆσαν δὲ καὶ ὠτίδες καὶ δορκάδες·
ταῦτα δὲ τὰ θηρία οἱ ἱππεῖς ἐνίοτε ἐδίωκον. καὶ
οἱ μὲν ὄνοι, ἐπεί τις διώκοι, προδραμόντες ἔστα-
σαν· πολὺ γὰρ τῶν ἵππων ἔτρεχον θᾶττον· καὶ
πάλιν, ἐπεὶ πλησιάζοιεν οἱ ἵπποι, ταὐτὸν ἐποίουν,
καὶ οὐκ ἦν λαβεῖν, εἰ μὴ διαστάντες οἱ ἱππεῖς
θηρῷεν διαδεχόμενοι. τὰ δὲ κρέα τῶν ἁλισκομέ-
νων ἦν παραπλήσια τοῖς ἐλαφείοις, ἁπαλώτερα δέ.
στρουθὸν δὲ οὐδεὶς ἔλαβεν· οἱ δὲ διώξαντες τῶν 3
ἱππέων ταχὺ ἐπαύοντο· πολὺ γὰρ ἀπέσπα φεύ-
γουσα, τοῖς μὲν ποσὶ δρόμῳ, ταῖς δὲ πτέρυξιν
αἴρουσα ὥσπερ ἱστίῳ χρωμένη. τὰς δὲ ὠτίδας
ἄν τις ταχὺ ἀνιστῇ, ἔστι λαμβάνειν· πέτονται
γὰρ βραχὺ ὥσπερ πέρδικες καὶ ταχὺ ἀπαγορεύ-
ουσι. τὰ δὲ κρέα αὐτῶν ἥδιστα ἦν. πορευόμενοι 4
δὲ διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν
Μάσκαν ποταμόν, τὸ εὖρος πλεθριαῖον. ἐνταῦθα
ἦν πόλις ἐρήμη, μεγάλη, ὄνομα δ' αὐτῇ Κορσωτή·
περιερρεῖτο δ' αὖτη ὑπὸ τοῦ Μάσκα κύκλῳ.
ἐνταῦθ' ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο.
ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους τρισκαίδεκα 5
παρασάγγας ἐνενήκοντα τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν ἐν

---

frequently in Xenophon. — 7. **δένδρον**: emphatic by its position. — 8. **πλεῖστοι**, *very many* (453). — 11. **ἐπεί τις διώκοι**, *whenever anybody pursued*. So in l. 13, **ἐπεὶ . . . ἵπποι**, *whenever they came near*. — **ἔστασαν**: see 697. — 14. **οὐκ ἦν**, *it was impossible*. — **εἰ μὴ . . . θηρῷεν**: see 804. — 19. **τοῖς μὲν . . . χρωμένη**, *plying its feet in running* (775) *and raising and using its wings like a sail*. **δρόμῳ** and **αἴρουσα** (379) express the manner. — 21. **ἄν τις . . . ἀνιστῇ**: see 803. — 27. **Μάσκα**: Doric gen. *Cf.* 795, 19. —

δεξιᾷ ἔχων, καὶ ἀφικνεῖται ἐπὶ Πύλας. ἐν τούτοις τοῖς σταθμοῖς πολλὰ τῶν ὑποζυγίων ἀπώλετο ὑπὸ λῖμοῦ· οὐ γὰρ ἦν χόρτος οὐδὲ ἄλλο οὐδὲν δένδρον, ἀλλὰ ψιλὴ ἦν ἅπασα ἡ χώρᾱ· οἱ δὲ ἐνοικοῦντες ὄνους ἀλέτᾱς παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν ὀρύττοντες καὶ ποιοῦντες εἰς Βαβυλῶνα ἦγον καὶ ἐπώλουν καὶ ἀνταγοράζοντες σῖτον ἔζων. τὸ δὲ στράτευμα ὁ σῖτος ἐπέλιπε, καὶ πρίασθαι οὐκ ἦν εἰ μὴ ἐν τῇ Λῡδίᾳ ἀγορᾷ ἐν τῷ Κύρου βαρβαρικῷ, τὴν καπίθην ἀλεύρων ἢ ἀλφίτων τεττάρων σίγλων. ὁ δὲ σίγλος δύναται ἑπτὰ ὀβολοὺς καὶ ἡμιωβόλιον Ἀττικούς· ἡ δὲ καπίθη δύο χοίνικας Ἀττικὰς ἐχώρει. κρέα οὖν ἐσθίοντες οἱ στρατιῶται διεγίγνοντο. ἦν δὲ τούτων τῶν σταθμῶν οὓς πάνυ μακροὺς ἤλαυνεν, ὁπότε ἡ πρὸς ὕδωρ βούλοιτο διατελέσαι ἢ πρὸς χιλόν. καὶ δή ποτε στενοχωρίᾱς καὶ πηλοῦ φανέντος ταῖς ἁμάξαις δυσπορεύτου ἐπέστη ὁ Κῦρος σὺν τοῖς περὶ αὐτὸν ἀρίστοις καὶ εὐδαι-

6

7

33. ἄλλο, *either*. — 35. ὄνους ἀλέτᾱς, *mill stones*. From the ass, as a beast of burden, the term *ass* came to have various derived meanings, as here *the upper mill-stone*. — παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν: note the acc. and *cf.* 751, 3. — 38. καὶ . . . ἦν, *it was impossible to purchase it*. — 39. τὴν καπίθην . . . σίγλων, *namely the capithe of flour or barley* (gen. of material, 743, 4) *for four siogli* (758). — 41. δύναται, *is worth*, with acc. — 43. κρέα ἐσθίοντες: *by eating* (879) *flesh, i. e. on flesh*. — ἦν . . . οὓς: equivalent to ἦσάν τινες τούτων τῶν σταθμῶν εἰς, *there were some of these marches* (743, 6) *which, etc.* In the same way ἔστιν οἵ signifies simply *some* (= *sunt qui* in Lat.). The phrases became fixed and the verb remained in the sing., without regard to the number of the unexpressed subj. Translate ἦν οὓς simply *some*. The acc. is cognate (732) after ἤλαυνεν. — 44. μακρούς: predicate adj. — 45. ὁπότε βούλοιτο, *whenever he wished*. — 46. καὶ δή ποτε, *and once in particular*, adding a special fact. — στενοχωρίᾱς . . . φανέντος: gen. absol. (762). The partic. agrees with the nearer subst. — 47. ταῖς ἁμάξαις δυσπο-

μονεστάτοις καὶ ἔταξε Γλοῦν καὶ Πίγρητα λαβόν-
50 τας τοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ στρατοῦ συνεκβιβάζειν τὰς ἁμάξας.

ρεύτου, *hard for the wagons* (769) *to get through.* — 50. **στρατοῦ**: see 743, 6 a.

Make a special study of the prepositions used in composition in this Reading Lesson (**ἀνα-**, 21; **ἀντι-**, 37; **ἀπο-**, 18, 22, 24, 31, 32; **δια-**, 14, 15, 43, 45; **ἐν-**, 6, 7, 9, 34; **ἐξ-**, 1, 29, 50; **ἐπι-**, 28, 38, 47; **περι-**, 27; **προ-**, 11; **συν-**, 50), according to the directions previously given.

LESSON CXXVI.

Relative and Temporal Sentences: Conditional Relative.

811. EXERCISE.

1. ὅτῳ δοκεῖ ταῦτα, ἀνατεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα. 2. τούτους τοὺς σταθμοὺς πάνυ μακροὺς ἤλαυνεν, ὁπότε ἡ πρὸς ὕδωρ βούλοιτο διατελέσαι ἢ πρὸς χιλόν. 3. ἐγὼ γὰρ οἰκοίην ἂν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα ἐμβαίνειν ἃ ἡμῖν δοίη. 4. τῷ δὲ ἡγεμόνι πιστεύσομεν ὃν ἂν Κῦρος διδῷ. 5. καὶ οἱ ὄνοι, ἐπεί τις διώκοι, προδραμόντες ἔστασαν· καὶ πάλιν, ἐπεὶ πλησιάζοιεν οἱ ἵπποι, ταὐτὸν ἐποίουν. 6. τοὺς πλείστους ἔθαψαν· οὓς δὲ μὴ ηὕρισκον, κενοτάφιον αὐτοῖς ἐποίησαν. 7. τῷ δὲ ἀνδρὶ ὃν ἂν ἕλησθε πείσομαι. 8. ὅ τι δ' ἂν πρὸς ταῦτα λέγῃ ἀναγγείλατε δεῦρο. 9. οἱ δ' ἐπεὶ τὰ ἅρματα προΐδοιεν, διίσταντο. 10. ὅτῳ οὖν ταῦτα δοκεῖ καλῶς ἔχειν, ἐπικῖρωσάτω ὡς τάχιστα. 11. καὶ σὺν ἡμῖν ὅ τι ἂν δέῃ πείσομαι. 12. ὅπου στρατηγὸς σῶς εἴη, τὸν στρατηγὸν παρεκάλουν. 13. οἱ δὲ ἄνδρες εἰσὶν οἱ ποιοῦντες ὅ τι ἂν ἐν ταῖς μάχαις γίγνηται. 14. εἰς τὰ πλοῖα τούς τε ἀσθενοῦντας ἐνεβίβασαν καὶ τῶν σκευῶν ὅσα μὴ ἀνάγκη ἦν ἔχειν. 15. ὡς ἐμοῦ οὖν ἴοντος ὅπῃ ἂν καὶ ὑμεῖς, οὕτω τὴν γνώμην ἔχετε. 16. ἔπεμπε γὰρ βίκους οἴνου, ὁπότε πάνυ ἡδὺν λάβοι. 17. οὗτινος δ'

ἂν δέησθε οἶδα ὅτι ὡς φίλοι τεύξεσθε Κύρου. 18. *ἃ μὴ ἐβούλετο δοῦναι, οὐκ ἂν ἔδωκεν.* 19. *τὸ δὲ λοιπὸν πειρώμενοι ταύτης τῆς τάξεως βουλευσόμεθα ὅ τι ἂν ἀεὶ κράτιστον δοκῇ εἶναι.* 20. *εἰ οὖν νῦν ἀποδειχθείη τίνας χρὴ ἡγεῖσθαι τοῦ πλαισίου, οὐκ ἂν ὁπότε οἱ πολέμιοι ἔλθοιεν βουλεύεσθαι ἡμᾶς δέοι.* 21. *ἀνδρὶ ἑκάστῳ ὀῶσω πέντε ἀργυρίου μνᾶς, ἐπὴν εἰς Βαβυλῶνα ἥκωμεν.* 22. *οὐδ' ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς ὡς ἐγὼ ἐπειδὰν ἀπιέναι βούληταί τις συλλαβὼν αὐτοὺς κακῶς ποιῶ.*

812. Relative clauses are to be distinguished according to the nature of the antecedent of the relative.

a. The antecedent of a relative is either *definite* or *indefinite*. It is definite when the relative refers to a definite person or thing, or to some definite time, place, or manner; it is indefinite when no such definite person, thing, time, place, or manner is referred to. Both definite and indefinite antecedents may be either expressed or understood.

b. A relative clause with an indefinite antecedent has a conditional force, and is called a conditional relative clause. Its negative is always *μή*.

c. A conditional relative clause differs from an ordinary conditional clause not in force but only in form. It substitutes for the ordinary conditional particle *εἰ*, *if*, a relative pronoun or adverb, but with the added idea of the person, thing, time, place, or manner contained in the relative. *Exx.* in the sentences given above *ὅτῳ*, *to whomsoever*, in 1, is equivalent to *εἴ τινι*, *if to anybody*; *ὁπότε*, *whenever*, in 2, to *εἴ ποτε*, *if ever*, *ἃ*, *which*, in 3, to *εἰ ταῦτα*, *etc.*

Review 797, and the observation which precedes it.

Examine 1, 6, 10, 14, conditional relative sentences of the First Class, expressing particular suppositions (I. 1).

Review 803, and the observation which precedes it.

Examine 13, 22, conditional relative sentences of the First Class, expressing present general suppositions (I. 2 a).

Review 804, and the observation which precedes it.

Examine 2, 5, 9, 12, 16, conditional relative sentences of the First Class, expressing past general suppositions (I. 2 b).

Review 798, and the observation which precedes it.
Examine 18, a conditional relative sentence of the Second Class (II.).

Review 273, and 272 a.
Examine 4, 7, 8, 11, 15, 17, 19, 21, conditional relative sentences of the Third Class (III.).

Review 300, and 299 a.
Examine 3, 20, conditional relative sentences of the Fourth Class (IV.).

813. Rule of Syntax. — Conditional relative sentences have *four* classes, two (I., II.) containing *present* and *past*, and two (III., IV.) containing *future* conditions, which correspond to those of ordinary protasis. Class I. has two forms, one (1) with particular suppositions, the other (2) with general suppositions, either present (a) or past (b).

814. The following table gives a summary classification of both ordinary conditional and conditional relative sentences: —

I. *Present and Past suppositions implying nothing as to the fulfilment of the condition:* —

1. *Particular:* —

Protasis has εἰ Conditional relative has relative	with indicative.
Apodosis has Antecedent clause has	any form of the verb.

2 a. *Present General:* —

Protasis has ἐάν Conditional relative has relative with ἄν	with subjunctive.
Apodosis has Antecedent clause has	present indicative.

2 b. *Past General:* —

Protasis has εἰ Conditional relative has relative	with optative.
Apodosis has Antecedent clause has	imperfect indicative.

II. *Present and past suppositions implying that the condition is not or was not fulfilled:* —

Protasis has εἰ Conditional relative has relative	with past tense of indicative.
Apodosis has Antecedent clause has	past tense of indicative with ἄν.

III. *Future suppositions in the more vivid form:* —

Protasis has ἐάν Conditional relative has relative with ἄν	with subjunctive.[1]
Apodosis has Antecedent clause has	any future form.

IV. *Future suppositions in the less vivid form:* —

Protasis has εἰ Conditional relative has relative	with optative.
Apodosis has Antecedent clause has	optative with ἄν.

815. EXERCISE.

1. But we must suffer whatever shall seem best to the gods. 2. And I should fear to follow the guide whom he might give us. 3. But if anybody shall hinder us from our journey, we shall fight it out with him[2] as bravely as possible.[3] 4. He (is) a worthy friend, to whomsoever he is a friend. 5. But I grant you, said he, whichever you wish to choose. 6. And in company with you I shall be in honour wherever I shall be. 7. He hunted on horseback, whenever he wished to exercise himself. 8. Whenever anybody wished to go away, he permitted him.[4] 9. And whenever it was necessary to cross a bridge, each company hastened. 10. (Those) who[5] were not able to escape perished. 11. Whatever[6] arrows were taken were useful to the bowmen. 12. Whenever it shall be (the) proper time, I will come.

[1] See p. 375[1].
[2] Use οὗτος, and see 773.
[3] Lit., *as we shall be able most bravely.*
[4] *Cf.* 811, 22 above.
[5] Use ὅσος.
[6] Lit., *how many* (use ὁπόσος) *of the arrows* (743, 6 a).

LESSON CXXVII.

Reading Lesson.

816. ANABASIS I. v. 8–13.

The work progresses slowly, and Cyrus bids the noblest of the Persians about him to lay hold. With splendid discipline, they instantly obey (8). The march of Cyrus across the desert has been rapid, for he hopes by a quick and vigorous attack to take the king at a disadvantage (9). On the way the soldiers cross the Euphrates, on rafts made of skins, to Charmande, where they purchase food and wine (10). Here a dispute arises between the troops of Clearchus and Menon, and Clearchus narrowly escapes being killed (11, 12). Greatly incensed, he calls his men to arms, and advances against Menon's division, who are thrown into consternation by his attack (13).

v.

ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ σχολαίως ποιεῖν, ὥσπερ 8
ὀργῇ ἐκέλευσε τοὺς περὶ αὐτὸν Πέρσᾱς τοὺς
κρατίστους συνεπισπεῦσαι τὰς ἁμάξᾱς. ἔνθα δὴ
μέρος τι τῆς εὐταξίᾱς ἦν θεάσασθαι. ῥῥᾳδίως
γὰρ τοὺς πορφυροῦς κάνδυς ὅπου ἔτυχεν ἕκαστος
ἐστηκώς, ἵεντο ὥσπερ ἂν δράμοι τις περὶ νίκης
καὶ μάλα κατὰ πρᾱνοῦς γηλόφου, ἔχοντες τούτους
τε τοὺς πολυτελεῖς χιτῶνας καὶ τὰς ποικίλᾱς ἀνα-
ξυρίδας, ἔνιοι δὲ καὶ στρεπτοὺς περὶ τοῖς τραχή-
λοις καὶ ψέλια περὶ ταῖς χερσίν· εὐθὺς δὲ σὺν
τούτοις εἰσπηδήσαντες εἰς τὸν πηλὸν θᾶττον ἢ ὡς

1. ὥσπερ ὀργῇ, *just as if in anger* (775). — 6. ὥσπερ . . . νίκης, *just as one would run* (*i.e.* in a foot-race at the public games) *to get the victory.* — 7. καὶ μάλα . . . γηλόφου, *even down a very* (μάλα) *steep hill.* — ἔχοντες . . . ἀναξυρίδας, *having on both the costly tunics and coloured trousers which they are in the habit of wearing.* τούτους marks the dress as one well known. — 11. θᾶττον . . . ἂν ᾤετο, *more quickly than* (omit ὡς, *as*, in

τις ἂν ᾠ̓ετο μετεώρους ἐξεκόμισαν τὰς ἀμάξᾶς. τὸ δὲ σύμπαν δῆλος ἦν Κῦρος ὡς σπεύδων πᾶσαν 9
τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ οὐ διατρίβων ὅπου μὴ ἐπισῖτισμοῦ
ἕνεκα ἤ τινος ἄλλου ἀναγκαίου ἐκαθέζετο, νομίζων,
ὅσῳ μὲν θᾶττον ἔλθοι, τοσούτῳ ἀπαρασκευοτέρῳ
βασιλεῖ μαχεῖσθαι, ὅσῳ δὲ σχολαίτερον, τοσούτῳ
πλέον συναγείρεσθαι βασιλεῖ στράτευμα. καὶ
συνιδεῖν δ' ἦν τῷ προσέχοντι τὸν νοῦν ἡ βασιλέως
ἀρχὴ πλήθει μὲν χώρᾶς καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἰσχῡρὰ
οὖσα, τοῖς δὲ μήκεσι τῶν ὁδῶν καὶ τῷ διεσπά-
σθαι τὰς δυνάμεις ἀσθενής, εἴ τις διὰ ταχέων τὸν
πόλεμον ἐποιεῖτο. πέρᾱν δὲ τοῦ Εὐφράτου ποτα- 10
μοῦ κατὰ τοὺς ἐρήμους σταθμοὺς ἦν πόλις εὐδαί-
μων καὶ μεγάλη, ὄνομα δὲ Χαρμάνδη· ἐκ ταύτης
οἱ στρατιῶται ἠγόραζον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, σχεδίαις

English) *one would have thought*. This indic. with ἄν expresses past possibility, and is called the potential indic. — 12. μετεώρους ἐξεκόμισαν: *i.e. lifted and carried out*. — 13. δῆλος . . . σπεύδων, *Cyrus himself* (ὡς with the partic.) *showed that he was making haste*. — 14. ὁδόν: see 735. — οὐ διατρίβων: with δῆλος ἦν, *it was evident he did not delay*. — ὅπου μή, *except where*, lit. *where not*. — 16. ὅσῳ . . . ἀπαρασκευοτέρῳ, *the* (ὅσῳ) *more quickly he came* (to Babylon) *the* (τοσούτῳ) *less prepared, etc.* — 17. τοσούτῳ . . . στράτευμα, *the greater the army that was collecting for the king*. Note the tense of συναγείρεσθαι, expressing an action in progress. — 18. καὶ . . . οὖσα, *and further* (καὶ) *an attentive observer* (τῷ . . . τὸν νοῦν, 771) *could see that the king's empire was powerful in respect to extent of territory and number of inhabitants*. συνιδεῖν is introduced as subj. of ἦν, *it was possible to see*, and the natural const. to follow would be τὴν ἀρχὴν ἰσχυρὰν οὖσαν (p. 250[3]). But after τὸν νοῦν the writer's point of view changes, and the rest of the sentence is constructed as if for συνιδεῖν ἦν the nearly equivalent δῆλη ἦν (*cf.* l. 13) had been used. — 20. πλήθει: a dat. of manner (775) used to express the *respect*. — 21. τῷ διεσπάσθαι: pf. infin. used with the art. as a subst. in the dat., like πλήθει above. — 22. δυνάμεις: subj. of διεσπάσθαι. — εἴ . . . ἐποιεῖτο: *i.e.* in case of a vig-

διαβαίνοντες ὧδε. διφθέρας ἃς εἶχον στεγάσματα ἐπίμπλασαν χόρτου κούφου, εἶτα συνῆγον καὶ συνέσπων, ὡς μὴ ἅπτεσθαι τῆς κάρφης τὸ ὕδωρ· ἐπὶ τούτων διέβαινον καὶ ἐλάμβανον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, οἴνόν τε ἐκ τῆς βαλάνου πεποιημένον τῆς ἀπὸ τοῦ φοίνῑκος καὶ σῖτον μελίνης· τοῦτο γὰρ ἦν ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ πλεῖστον. ἀμφιλεξάντων δέ τι ἐνταῦθα τῶν 11 τε τοῦ Μένωνος στρατιωτῶν καὶ τῶν τοῦ Κλεάρχου, ὁ Κλέαρχος κρίνας ἀδικεῖν τὸν τοῦ Μένωνος πληγὰς ἐνέβαλεν· ὁ δὲ ἐλθὼν πρὸς τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στράτευμα ἔλεγεν· ἀκούσαντες δὲ οἱ στρατιῶται ἐχαλέπαινον καὶ ὠργίζοντο ἰσχῡρῶς τῷ Κλεάρχῳ. τῇ δὲ αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ Κλέαρχος ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὴν διά- 12 βασιν τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ ἐκεῖ κατασκεψάμενος τὴν ἀγορὰν ἀφιππεύει ἐπὶ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν διὰ τοῦ Μένωνος στρατεύματος σὺν ὀλίγοις τοῖς περὶ αὐτόν· Κῦρος δὲ οὔπω ἦκεν, ἀλλ᾽ ἔτι προσήλαυνε· τῶν δὲ Μένωνος στρατιωτῶν ξύλα σχίζων τις ὡς εἶδε Κλέαρχον διελαύνοντα, ἴησι τῇ ἀξίνῃ· καὶ οὗτος μὲν αὐτοῦ ἥμαρτεν· ἄλλος δὲ λίθῳ καὶ ἄλλος, εἶτα πολλοί, κραυγῆς γενομένης. ὁ δὲ 13 καταφεύγει εἰς τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στράτευμα, καὶ εὐθὺς

---

orous attack. — 27. **διφθέρας, χόρτου**: see 749. — **στεγάσματα**, *as coverings* (746). — 29. **ὡς μὴ ἅπτεσθαι**: the infin. with *ὡς* (as with *ὥστε*) expresses *result*. — **κάρφης**: see 746. — 31. **ἐκ, ἐπό**: respectively *out of, off of*. — 32. **τοῦτο . . . πλεῖστον**, *for this (thing) was very abundant in the country*. *τοῦτο* is neut., although referring to *μελίνης*. — 33. **ἀμφιλεξάντων τι**, *having had some dispute* (732). — 35. **ἀδικεῖν . . . Μένωνος**, *that Menon's soldier* (probably two soldiers, one of Menon, the other of Clearchus, had begun the quarrel) *was in the wrong* (354). — 42. **σὺν . . . αὐτόν**, *with few about him*, lit. *with those about him few*, *ὀλίγοις* being a pred. adj. 46. **αὐτοῦ**: see 746. — **λίθῳ**: *sc.* *ἔησι*. — 48. **καταφεύγει**, *flees for help*.

παραγγέλλει εἰς τὰ ὅπλα· καὶ τοὺς μὲν ὁπλί-
50 τας αὐτοῦ ἐκέλευσε μεῖναι τὰς ἀσπίδας πρὸς τὰ
γόνατα θέντας, αὐτὸς δὲ λαβὼν τοὺς Θρᾷκας καὶ
τοὺς ἱππέᾶς, οἳ ἦσαν αὐτῷ ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι
πλείους ἢ τετταράκοντα, τούτων δὲ οἱ πλεῖστοι
Θρᾷκες, ἤλαυνεν ἐπὶ τοὺς Μένωνος, ὥστ' ἐκείνους
55 ἐκπεπλῆχθαι καὶ αὐτὸν Μένωνα, καὶ τρέχειν ἐπὶ
τὰ ὅπλα· οἱ δὲ καὶ ἔστασαν ἀποροῦντες τῷ
πράγματι.

50. τας ἀσπίδας . . . θέντας: an attitude of defence. The shield was set in rest on the left knee, which was slightly advanced. — 54. ὥστ' ἐκείνους ἐκπεπλῆχθαι: *cf.* 553, 1. 19. — 56. ἔστασαν: see 697. — 57. πράγματι: dat. of cause (775).

Make a special study of the prepositions used in composition in this Reading Lesson (ἀφι-, 33; ἀπο-, 41; δια-, 21, 27, 30, 45; εἰσ-, 11; ἐν-, 36; ἐξ-, 12, 55; ἐπι-, 3; κατα-, 15, 40, 48; παρα-, 49; προσ-, 19, 43; συν-, 3, 18, 19, 28, 29), according to the directions previously given.

LESSON CXXVIII.

Relative and Temporal Sentences: Relative Clauses expressing Purpose, Result, or Cause, and Temporal Particles signifying *Until* and *Before*. — Consecutive Clauses with ὥστε.

817. EXERCISE.

1. οὔποτ' ἐπίᾶσιν ἕως ἂν τὸ σύνθημα παρέλθῃ. 2. καὶ ἡ μήτηρ συνέπρᾶττεν αὐτῷ ταῦτα· ὥστε βασιλεὺς τὴν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἐπιβουλὴν οὐκ ᾐσθάνετο. 3. οὐδαμόθεν αὐτοὺς ἀφίεσαν πρὶν παραθεῖεν ἄριστον. 4. ἔσονται σπονδαί, μέχρι ἂν βασιλεῖ ταῦτα διαγγελθῇ. 5. ἡγεμόνα αἰτῶμεν Κῦρον, ὅστις διὰ φιλίᾶς τῆς χώρᾶς ἀπάξει. 6. ἕως οἱ πλεῖστοι

γνώμην ἀπεφήναντο, ἡσυχίᾱν ἂν ἦγον. 7. καὶ ἐὰν ἐγὼ φαίνωμαι ἀδικεῖν, οὐ χρή με ἐνθένδε ἀπελθεῖν πρὶν ἂν δῶ δίκην. 8. καὶ γίγνεται τοσοῦτον μεταξὺ τῶν στρατευμάτων ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ οὐκ ἐφάνησαν οἱ πολέμιοι. 9. ἡγεμόνες ἥκουσιν οἳ ὑμᾶς, ἐὰν σπονδαὶ γένωνται, ἄξουσιν ἔνθεν ἔξετε τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. 10. ἀλλὰ διατρίψω ἕστ' ἂν ἥκωσιν οἱ ἄγγελοι. 11. ἄτοπα λέγεις, ὅς γε κελεύεις ἐμὲ καθηγεῖσθαι. 12. ἀνδρὶ ἑκάστῳ δώσει τὸν μισθὸν ἐντελῆ μέχρι ἂν καταστήσῃ τοὺς Ἕλληνας εἰς Ἰωνίᾱν πάλιν. 13. ἀπὸ τοῦ τρίτου γηλόφου οὐκ ἐκίνησαν τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς πρὶν ἀπὸ τῆς δεξιᾶς πλευρᾶς τοῦ πλαισίου ἀνήγαγον πελταστὰς πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. 14. τίς οὕτω μαίνεται ὅστις οὐ βούλεταί σοι φίλος εἶναι; 15. οὐκ αἰσχύνεσθε, οἵτινες ἡμᾶς προδεδωκότες σὺν τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐφ' ἡμᾶς ἔρχεσθε; 16. καὶ παρήγαγον ἐν τρίσιν ἡμέραις ἕως ἐπὶ τὰ ὅρια κατέστησαν τοὺς Ἕλληνας. 17. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἰσχῡρῶς κατέτεινεν, ἔστε διεπράξατο πέντε μὲν στρατηγοὺς ἰέναι, εἴκοσι δὲ λοχᾱγούς. 18. καὶ πολεμῶν διεγένετο Κλέαρχος μέχρι Κῦρος ἐδεήθη τοῦ στρατεύματος. 19. ἑκάστοτε περιεμένομεν ἕως βασιλεὺς παρελαύνοι. 20. διατελοίην ἂν πολεμῶν ἕως τὰς ναῦς παραδοίησαν. 21. πάντας οὕτω διατιθεὶς ἀπεπέμπετο ὥστε αὐτῷ μᾶλλον φίλους εἶναι ἢ βασιλεῖ. 22. ὑμᾶς χρὴ διαβῆναι τὸν ποταμὸν πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι ὅ τι οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες ἀποκρινοῦνται. 23. ἐὰν καλῶς καταπράξω ἐφ' ἃ στρατεύομαι, οὐ πρόσθεν παύσομαι πρὶν ἂν ὑμᾶς καταγάγω οἴκαδε.

Examine the relative clauses in 5, 9 (two illustrations).

Observe that these clauses express *purpose* and have the fut. indic.

818. Rule of Syntax. — The relative with the future indicative may express a *purpose.*

Examine the relative clause in 14.

Observe that this clause expresses *result* and has the indicative with **οὐ.**

819. Rule of Syntax. — The relative, generally with the indicative, may express a *result*. The negative is *οὐ*.

Examine the relative clauses in 11, 15.

Observe that these clauses express *cause* and have the indicative.

820. Rule of Syntax. — A relative clause may express a *cause*. The verb is in the indicative, as in causal sentences (781).

Examine the temporal clauses in 16, 17, 18.

Observe that these clauses are introduced by temporal particles meaning *until*, that they refer to the past, and have the indicative.

821. Rule of Syntax. — When *ἕως, ἔστε,* and *μέχρι, until*, refer to a definite past action, they take the indicative, usually the aorist.

Examine the temporal clauses in 1, 4, 6, 10, 12, 19, 20.

Observe that these clauses follow the construction of conditional relative sentences.

822. Rule of Syntax. — The particles *ἕως, ἔστε,* and *μέχρι, until*, follow the construction of conditional relatives in both forms of future conditions, in unfulfilled conditions, and in present and past general suppositions.

Examine the clauses with *πρίν* in 3, 7, 13, 22, 23.

823. Rule of Syntax. — The particle *πρίν, before, until*, is followed by the infinitive, and also (like *ἕως*) by the finite moods.

a. With the infinitive *πρίν* means *before*, and the leading clause is affirmative. With the finite moods *πρίν* means *before* or *until*, and the leading verb is negative or implies a negative.

Examine the consecutive clauses with *ὥστε* in 2, 8, 21.

824. Rule of Syntax. — *ὥστε, so as, so that*, is used with the infinitive and with the indicative to express a *result*.

a. With the infin. (the negative being *μή*), the result is stated as one which the action of the leading verb *tends* to produce; with the indicative (the negative being *οὐ*), as one which that action actually *does* produce.

825. EXERCISE.

1. They waited until the men left the city. 2. They are getting arms together with which to defend themselves. 3. Let the truce be in force until I come. 4. He had not come; so that the Greeks were anxious. 5. He was not willing to go, until his wife persuaded him. 6. They command the heralds to wait until the general shall be at leisure. 7. But the rest of the soldiers struck[1] and stoned and reviled the man until they compelled (him) to take[2] his shield and proceed. 8. Generals have come to collect an army for Cyrus. 9. When they had heard this, they obeyed and crossed before the rest made answer. 10. He will not stop fighting against his opponents until he has consulted with you. 11. You are happy, since you have ancestral gods. 12. For I have triremes, so as to capture their boat. 13. I shall delay in Sardis until the general arrives. 14. If I had known this, I should have waited until the general had arrived. 15. We will go forward until we join Cyrus.

LESSON CXXIX.

Reading Lesson.

826. ANABASIS I. v. 14–17 and vi. 1–5.

Proxenus comes up and endeavours to persuade Clearchus not to make an attack (15). Then Cyrus comes (16), and in sharp and vigorous language shows the Greeks the folly and danger of a quarrel (16). Clearchus comes to his senses, and withdraws his troops (17).

As the army advances, traces of the king's cavalry are observed. Orontas, a Persian noble, turning traitor to Cyrus, offers to go forward with a thousand horse and cut off the cavalry that are laying the country waste by fire. To this Cyrus consents (1, 2). Orontas

[1] Use the historical pres. [2] Use the partic.

then writes to the king, saying that he intends to desert with his command. But his messenger betrays him and carries the letter to Cyrus. He arrests the traitor and summons seven Persian noblemen and Clearchus to his tent to try him (3. 4). Clearchus afterwards relates how the trial was conducted (5).

V.

ὁ δὲ Πρόξενος (ἔτυχε γὰρ ὕστερος προσιὼν καὶ 14
τάξις αὐτῷ ἑπομένη τῶν ὁπλιτῶν) εὐθὺς οὖν εἰς τὸ
μέσον ἀμφοτέρων ἄγων ἔθετο τὰ ὅπλα καὶ ἐδεῖτο
τοῦ Κλεάρχου μὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτα. ὁ δ' ἐχαλέπαινεν
ὅτι αὐτοῦ ὀλίγου δεήσαντος καταλευσθῆναι πρᾴως
λέγοι τὸ αὐτοῦ πάθος, ἐκέλευσέ τε αὐτὸν ἐκ τοῦ
μέσου ἐξίστασθαι. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ ἐπῄει καὶ Κῦρος 15
καὶ ἐπύθετο τὸ πρᾶγμα· εὐθὺς δ' ἔλαβε τὰ παλτὰ
εἰς τὰς χεῖρας καὶ σὺν τοῖς παροῦσι τῶν πι-
στῶν ἧκεν ἐλαύνων εἰς τὸ μέσον, καὶ λέγει τάδε.
Κλέαρχε καὶ Πρόξενε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ παρόντες 16
Ἕλληνες, οὐκ ἴστε ὅ τι ποιεῖτε. εἰ γάρ τινα ἀλλή-
λοις μάλην συνάψετε, νομίζετε ἐν τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ
ἐμέ τε κατακεκόψεσθαι καὶ ὑμᾶς οὐ πολὺ ἐμοῦ
ὕστερον· κακῶς γὰρ τῶν ἡμετέρων ἐχόντων
πάντες οὗτοι οὓς ὁρᾶτε βάρβαροι πολεμιώτεροι
ἡμῖν ἔσονται τῶν παρὰ βασιλεῖ ὄντων. ἀκούσᾱς 17
ταῦτα ὁ Κλέαρχος ἐν ἑαυτῷ ἐγένετο· καὶ παυσά-
μενοι ἀμφότεροι κατὰ χώρᾱν ἔθεντο τὰ ὅπλα.

---

1. **ἔτυχε . . . προσιών**, *happened to be coming on later* (p. 250[3]). — 2. **τάξις**: *sc.* ἔτυχεν. **οὖν**: resumes the narrative, after the parenthetical statement. — 5. **ὅτι . . . λέγοι**, *because, when he (i.e.* Clearchus) *had barely escaped*, lit. *had wanted little* (749) *of* (762), *being stoned to death, he had spoken lightly*. — 12. **εἰ συνάψετε**: see p. 375[1]. — 14. **κατακεκόψεσθαι**: *cf.* 553, l. 22. — 15. **κακῶς ἐχόντων**: equivalent to ἐὰν τὰ ἡμέτερα κακῶς ἔχῃ. See 762 and p. 104[10].

VI.

ἐντεῦθεν προϊόντων ἐφαίνετο ἴχνη ἵππων καὶ 1
κόπρος· εἰκάζετο δ' εἶναι ὁ στίβος ὡς δισχιλίων
ἵππων. οὗτοι προϊόντες ἔκαον καὶ χῖλὸν καὶ εἴ τι
ἄλλο χρήσιμον ἦν. Ὀρόντᾱς δὲ Πέρσης ἀνὴρ
γένει τε προσήκων βασιλεῖ καὶ τὰ πολέμια λεγό-
μενος ἐν τοῖς ἀρίστοις Περσῶν ἐπιβουλεύει Κύρῳ,
καὶ πρόσθεν πολεμήσᾱς, καταλλαγεὶς δέ. οὗτος 2
Κύρῳ εἶπεν, εἰ αὐτῷ δοίη ἱππέᾱς χῖλίους, ὅτι τοὺς
προκατακάοντας ἱππέᾱς ἢ κατακάνοι ἂν ἐνεδρεύ-
σᾱς ἢ ζῶντας πολλοὺς αὐτῶν ἂν ἕλοι καὶ κωλύσειε
τοῦ κάειν ἐπιόντας, καὶ ποιήσειεν ὥστε μήποτε
δύνασθαι αὐτοὺς ἰδόντας τὸ Κύρου στράτευμα
βασιλεῖ διαγγεῖλαι. τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ ἀκούσαντι
ταῦτα ἐδόκει ὠφέλιμα εἶναι, καὶ ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὸν
λαμβάνειν μέρος παρ' ἑκάστου τῶν ἡγεμόνων. ὁ 3
δ' Ὀρόντᾱς νομίσᾱς ἑτοίμους εἶναι αὐτῷ τοὺς
ἱππέᾱς γράφει ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ βασιλέᾱ ὅτι ἥξοι
ἔχων ἱππέᾱς ὡς ἂν δύνηται πλείστους· ἀλλὰ φρά-
σαι τοῖς ἑαυτοῦ ἱππεῦσιν ἐκέλευεν ὡς φίλιον αὐτὸν
ὑποδέχεσθαι. ἐνῆν δὲ ἐν τῇ ἐπιστολῇ καὶ τῆς
πρόσθεν φιλίᾱς ὑπομνήματα καὶ πίστεως. ταύ-

---

20. **ἐντεῦθεν**: from the camp opposite Charmande. — **προϊόντων**: *sc.* **αὐτῶν** (762). — 24. **γένει**: *cf.* 816, 20. — **τὰ πολέμια λεγόμενος**, *reckoned, in matters pertaining to war* (733). — 27. **εἰ αὐτῷ δοίη**. the apodosis to this protasis (300) contains four verbs. The particle **ἄν** is expressed with the first two and is to be supplied with the others. — **ὅτι**: the position is unusual. We should expect to find **ὅτι** just after **εἶπεν**. — 30. **τοῦ κάειν ἐπιόντας**, *from attacking* (**ἐπιόντας** limits the subj. of **κάειν**) *and burning* (753). — **ὥστε μήποτε δύνασθαι**: see 824 a. — 33. **ταῦτα**: subj. of **ἐδόκει**. — 34. **ἡγεμόνων**: *i.e.* the Persian commanders. — 36. **ὅτι . . . πλείστους**. *(to the effect) that he would come with as many horsemen as he should be*

την τὴν ἐπιστολὴν δίδωσι πιστῷ ἀνδρί, ὡς ᾤετο· ὁ δὲ λαβὼν Κύρῳ δίδωσιν. ἀναγνοὺς δὲ αὐτὴν ὁ 4
Κῦρος συλλαμβάνει Ὀρόντᾱν, καὶ συγκαλεῖ εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν Πέρσᾱς τοὺς ἀρίστους τῶν
περὶ αὐτὸν ἑπτά, καὶ τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατη-
γοὺς ἐκέλευεν ὁπλίτᾱς ἀγαγεῖν, τούτους δὲ θέσθαι
τὰ ὅπλα περὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ σκηνήν. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα
ἐποίησαν, ἀγαγόντες ὡς τρισχῑλίους ὁπλίτᾱς.
Κλέαρχον δὲ καὶ εἴσω παρεκάλεσε σύμβουλον, ὅς 5
γε καὶ αὐτῷ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐδόκει προτῑμηθῆναι
μάλιστα τῶν Ἑλλήνων. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐξῆλθεν, ἐξήγ-
γειλε τοῖς φίλοις τὴν κρίσιν τοῦ Ὀρόντᾱ ὡς ἐγέ-
νετο· οὐ γὰρ ἀπόρρητον ἦν. ἔφη δὲ Κῦρον
ἄρχειν τοῦ λόγου ὧδε.

able (to come with), i.e. with us as our guests (possible). — 50. **καὶ αὐτῷ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις**, *not only to him, i.e.* Cyrus *but also to the rest, i.e.* of the Persians). That is, it was generally known to the Persians that Clearchus was the most prominent (note προτῑμηθῆναι) man among the Greeks. — 51. **τῶν Ἑλλήνων**: with μάλιστα (743, 6 a). — 53. **οὐ γὰρ ἀπόρρητον ἦν**: *i.e.* *ὡς ἡ κρίσις ἐγένετο.*

Make a special study of the prepositions used in composition in this Reading Lesson (ἀνα-, 42; δια-, 32; ἐκ-, 28, 39; ἐξ-, 7, 51 *bis*; ἐπι-, 7, 25, 39; κατα-, 5, 14, 26, 28 *bis*; παρα-, 9, 11, 49; προ-, 20, 22, 28, 50; προσ-, 1, 24; συ-, 13, 43 *bis*; υπο-, 39), according to the directions previously given.

LESSON CXXX.

Indirect Discourse: Simple Sentences after ὅτι and ὡς and in Indirect Questions.

827. Examine the following: —

γράφω ἐπιστολήν, *I am writing a letter*: λέγει ὅτι (or ὡς) γράφει ἐπιστολήν, *he says that he is writing a letter.*

τί βούλεσθε; *what do you want?* ἐρωτᾷ τί (or ὅ τι) βούλεσθε, *he asks what you want.*

τί εἴπω; *what shall I say?* ἀπορεῖ τί (or ὅ τι) εἴπῃ, *he is at a loss what to say.*

Observe in these examples that a simple sentence, in the form of a statement or question, is quoted *indirectly*, *i.e.* that its original words are made to conform to the construction of the sentence in which they are quoted. This involves in some of these examples a change in the *person* of the verb of the quoted sentence. Whether the person changes or not depends on the connexion, as in English. It involves also the use of ὅτι or ὡς, *that*, to introduce the indirect quotation and may involve a change of the interrogative pronoun to the general relative (570) in the indirect question.

828. Examine the following: —

ἔλεξεν ὅτι (or ὡς) γράφοι ἐπιστολήν, *he said that he was writing a letter.*

ἠρώτησε τί (or ὅ τι) βούλοισθε, *he asked what you wanted.*

ἠπόρει τί (or ὅ τι) εἴποι, *he was at a loss what to say.*

Observe that now, with a change of the verb in the principal clause from a *primary* to a *secondary* tense (61), the *mood* of the verb of the indirect quotation or question has changed to the optative, but that the *tense* remains unchanged.

829. EXERCISE.

1. τούτῳ πείσομαι, ἵνα εἰδῆτε ὅτι καὶ ἄρχεσθαι ἐπίσταμαι. 2. ἀλλὰ ἰόντων, εἰδότες ὅτι κακίους εἰσὶ περὶ ἡμᾶς ἢ ἡμεῖς περὶ ἐκείνους. 3. ὥστε ὥρᾱ ἐστὶ λέγειν ὅ τι τις γιγνώσκει ἄριστον εἶναι. 4. βουλεύομαι ὅπως σε ἀποδρῶ.[1] 5. δοκεῖ δέ μοι ἡμᾶς ἐρωτᾶν Κῦρον τί βούλεται ἡμῖν χρῆσθαι. 6. οὐκ ἔχω[2] ὅ τι δῶ ἑκάστῳ τῶν φίλων. 7. ἀποκρίνεται ὅτι ταῦτ' ἂν ἐποίησεν ἡμᾶς ἰδών.[3] 8. λέγει ὡς περὶ πλείστου ἂν ποιήσαιτο σῶσαι ἡμᾶς. 9. ἐπεδείκνυ ὡς εὔηθες εἴη

[1] In the original, πῶς σε ἀποδρῶ; (785).

[2] *I do not know.*

[3] Equivalent to εἰ εἶδε (379).

ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖν. 10. *ὅτι δὲ ἐπὶ βασιλέᾱ ἄγοι οὐδὲ ἐνταῦθα ἤκουσεν οὐδείς.* 11. *ἠρώτων Κῦρον τί βούλοιτο τῇ στρατιᾷ χρῆσθαι.* 12. *τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἠπόρουν ὁπόθεν λαμβάνοιεν.*[1] 13. *εἶπον ὅτι οὕτω σωτηρίᾱς ἂν τύχοιεν.* 14. *ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι ἀκούει Ἀβροκόμᾱν ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ εἶναι.* 15. *τοῖς δὲ στρατιώταις ὑποψίᾱ ἦν ὅτι Κῦρος ἄγει πρὸς βασιλέᾱ.* 16. *διέβησαν τὸν ποταμὸν πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι ὅ τι οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες ἀποκρινοῦνται Κύρῳ.* 17. *ἠπορεῖτο εἰ κατακαύσωμεν τὰς ἁμάξᾱς.* 18. *διέβαλλε τὸν Κῦρον πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφὸν ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοι αὐτῷ.* 19. *διῆλθε λόγος ὅτι διώκοι αὐτοὺς Κῦρος τριμερεσι.* 20. *Μένων δέ, πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι τί ποιήσουσιν οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται, πότερον ἔψονται Κύρῳ ἢ οὔ, συνέλεξε τὸ αὑτοῦ στράτευμα χωρὶς τῶν ἄλλων.* 21. *ὁ ἄγγελος ἔλεξεν ὅτι λελοιπὼς εἴη Συέννεσις τὰ ἄκρα.* 22. *οἱ δὲ Θαψακηνοὶ ἔλεγον ὅτι οὐπώποθ' οὗτος ὁ ποταμὸς διαβατὸς γένοιτο πεζῇ εἰ μὴ τότε.* 23. *ἠρώτων εἰ δοῖεν ἂν τούτων τὰ πιστά.* 24. *καὶ Κῦρος ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἡ ὁδὸς ἔσοιτο πρὸς βασιλέᾱ μέγαν εἰς Βαβυλῶνα.* 25. *καὶ οὔποτε ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς ὡς ἐγὼ προδοὺς ὑμᾶς τὴν τῶν βαρβάρων φιλίᾱν εἵλόμην.* 26. *ἔγνω ὅτι οὐ δυνήσεται τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς βιάσασθαι ἰέναι.* 27. *ἔνθα δὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔγνωσαν ὅτι πλαίσιον ἰσόπλευρον πανταχῇ τάξις εἴη.* 28. *ἐβουλεύοντο εἰ τὰ σκευοφόρα ἐνταῦθα ἄγοιντο ἢ ἀπίοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.* 29. *ἐβόᾱ καὶ βαρβαρικῶς καὶ Ἑλληνικῶς ὅτι βασιλεὺς σὺν στρατεύματι πολλῷ προσέρχεται.*

In examining the sentences cited below, convert each indirect quotation and question into its original Greek form.

Examine the indirect quotations and questions in 1, 2, 3, 5, 25.

Observe that each of these follows a verb in a primary tense, and retains its own verb in its original mood (the indicative without ἄν) and tense.

---

[1] In the original, *πόθεν λαμβάνωμεν;*

Examine the indirect quotations and questions in 9, 10, 11, 18, 19, 21, 22, 24, 27.

Observe that each follows a verb in a secondary tense, and that its verb has been changed from the indicative (without ἄν) to the optative, but that the tense of its verb remains unchanged.

Observe that in translating these optatives into English, we use a *past* tense of the *indicative*, or, if they refer to the future, a form with *would*.

Examine the indirect quotations and questions in 14, 15, 16, 20, 26, 29.

Observe that each follows a verb in a secondary tense, but retains its verb in its original mood (the indicative without ἄν) and tense.

Observe that we translate the quoted verbs as if optatives (see above).

830. Rule of Syntax. — After a primary tense, an indicative (without ἄν), in indirect quotations after ὅτι and ὡς and in indirect questions, retains both its mood and its tense. After a secondary tense, it is either changed to the same tense of the optative or retained in the original mood and tense.

Examine the indirect questions in 4, 6.

Observe that each follows a primary tense and retains its own verb in its original mood (785) and tense.

Examine the indirect questions in 12, 28.

Observe that each follows a secondary tense, and that its verb has been changed from the subjunctive (785) to the optative, but that the tense of its verb remains unchanged.

Examine the indirect question in 17.

Observe that this follows a secondary tense, but retains its verb in its original mood (785) and tense.

831. Rule of Syntax. — After a primary tense, an interrogative subjunctive, when indirectly quoted, retains both its mood and its tense. After a secondary tense, it is either changed to the same tense of the optative or retained in the same tense of the subjunctive.

Examine the indirect quotations and question in 7, 8, 13, 23.

Observe that each retains its verb in the original mood and tense (an indicative or an optative with ἄν), whether the verb which it follows is primary or secondary.

832. Rule of Syntax. — After both primary and secondary tenses, an indicative or optative with ἄν, in indirect quotations with ὅτι or ὡς and in indirect questions, retains both its mood and its tense (with ἄν).

833. EXERCISE.[1]

1. I said that we had many fair[2] hopes of safety. 2. But he answered that he had deliberated with respect to this. 3. For they now knew that he was leading (ἵεται) against his brother. 4. And he shouted that the king was coming on with a great army. 5. For the satrap said that Cyrus had plotted against the king. 6. But they deliberated how[3] they should drive the men away from the hill. 7. He asked whither he should turn. 8. They knew that their fear was groundless. 9. He said that he would arrest him and put (him) to death. 10. But he did not indicate what he would do. 11. But he was deliberating whether[4] they should send some, or[4] should all go to the camp. 12. And (τε) being asked what he needed, he said, "I shall need two thousand leathern bags." 13. They were at a loss what they should call this. 14. For they perceived that the enemy were among the baggage. 15. Thereupon he answered that they would[5] die sooner than give up their arms. 16. Silanus said to Cyrus that the king would not fight within ten days.

[1] In translating these sentences into Greek, determine first of all what the quoted sentence would be in the direct form *in English*, so as to get the original tense. In Greek *the tense does not change* when the sentence is indirectly quoted, but in English a change of tense is the rule after secondary tenses.

[2] *many and fair.*

[3] πῶς.

[4] *Cf.* 829, 28.

[5] The original affirmation was, πρόσθεν ἂν ἀποθάνοιμεν, *etc.*

LESSON CXXXI.

Reading Lesson.

834. ANABASIS I. vi. 6–11.

Cyrus, addressing the council, tells how Orontas on two previous occasions proved false to him, but was again received into favour (6, 7). He then asks the prisoner if he has received any injury from him that would justify his present attempt. Orontas acknowledges that he has not, and that he has no reason to expect further mercy (8). Cyrus then refers the case to those present, and Clearchus advises that the culprit be put to death, in which opinion the others concur, and Orontas is led away (9, 10). He is taken to the tent of Artapates, and is never seen again, alive or dead (11).

VI.

Παρεκάλεσα ὑμᾶς, ἄνδρες φίλοι, ὅπως σὺν ὑμῖν βουλευόμενος, ὅ τι δίκαιόν ἐστι καὶ πρὸς θεῶν καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων, τοῦτο πράξω περὶ Ὀρόντου τουτουί. τοῦτον γὰρ πρῶτον μὲν ὁ ἐμὸς πατὴρ ἔδωκεν ὑπήκοον εἶναι ἐμοί· ἐπεὶ δὲ ταχθείς, ὡς ἔφη αὐτός, ὑπὸ τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ οὗτος ἐπολέμησεν ἐμοὶ ἔχων τὴν ἐν Σάρδεσιν ἀκρόπολιν καὶ ἐγὼ αὐτὸν προσπολεμῶν ἐποίησα ὥστε δόξαι τούτῳ τοῦ πρὸς ἐμὲ πολέμου παύσασθαι, καὶ δεξιὰν ἔλα

3. τουτουί: the demonstratives may be emphasized by adding -ί. The strengthened form implies a gesture, *Orontas here.* — 6. αὐτός: simply emphasizes (516) the subj. of ἔφη, which is here to be rendered by an emphatic *he.* Cyrus discredits the statement. — 7. καὶ ἐγὼ ἐποίησα, *and I brought it about*, dependent on ἐπεί in l. 5. The principal clause begins with μετὰ ταῦτα in l. 10. — 8. αὐτόν: not the obj. of προσπολεμῶν, which takes the dat. Cyrus began to say ἐγὼ αὐτὸν (*him*, emphatic) προσπολεμῶν (partic. of manner) ἐποίησα τοῦ πρὸς ἐμὲ πολέμου παύσασθαι (αὐτόν being subj. of παύσασθαι), but changed the construction, so that αὐτόν seems to stand

βον καὶ ἔδωκα, μετὰ ταῦτα, ἔφη, ὦ Ὀρόντᾱ, ἔστιν 7
ὅ τι σε ἠδίκησα; ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὔ. πάλιν δὲ ὁ
Κῦρος ἠρώτᾱ, Οὐκοῦν ὕστερον, ὡς αὐτὸς σὺ ὁμο-
λογεῖς οὐδὲν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἀδικούμενος, ἀποστὰς εἰς
Μῦσοὺς κακῶς ἐποίεις τὴν ἐμὴν χώρᾱν ὅ τι ἐδύνω;
ἔφη ὁ Ὀρόντᾱς. Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ὁπότ' αὖ
ἔγνως τὴν σαυτοῦ δύναμιν, ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὸν τῆς
Ἀρτέμιδος βωμὸν μεταμέλειν τέ σοι ἔφησθα καὶ
πείσᾱς ἐμὲ πιστὰ πάλιν ἔδωκάς μοι καὶ ἔλαβες
παρ' ἐμοῦ; καὶ ταῦθ' ὡμολόγει ὁ Ὀρόντᾱς. Τί 8
οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἀδικηθεὶς ὑπ' ἐμοῦ νῦν τὸ τρί-
τον ἐπιβουλεύων μοι φανερὸς γέγονας: εἰπόντος
δὲ τοῦ Ὀρόντᾱ ὅτι οὐδὲν ἀδικηθείς, ἠρώτησεν ὁ
Κῦρος αὐτόν, Ὁμολογεῖς οὖν περὶ ἐμὲ ἄδικος γε-
γενῆσθαι; Ἦ γὰρ ἀνάγκη, ἔφη ὁ Ὀρόντᾱς. ἐκ
τούτου πάλιν ἠρώτησεν ὁ Κῦρος, Ἔτι οὖν ἂν γένοιο
τῷ ἐμῷ ἀδελφῷ πολέμιος, ἐμοὶ δὲ φίλος καὶ πιστός;
ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐδ' εἰ γενοίμην, ὦ Κῦρε, σοί
γ' ἄν ποτε ἔτι δόξαιμι. πρὸς ταῦτα Κῦρος εἶπε 9
τοῖς παροῦσιν, Ὁ μὲν ἀνὴρ τοιαῦτα μὲν πεποίηκε,
τοιαῦτα δὲ λέγει· ὑμῶν δὲ σὺ πρῶτος, ὦ Κλέαρχε,

---

loosely with ἐποίησα (*made him so that he thought it best, etc.*). — 10. **μετὰ ταῦτα**, *since that*, the pledge given and received. There is an abrupt change of address from the council to Orontas, which is helped by the insertion of ἔφη, *said he*. — **ἔστιν . . . ἠδίκησα**, *is there any wrong which* (732) *I have done you?* — 11. **ὅτι οὔ**: *sc.* ἐστί (or εἴη). At the end of a sentence οὔ is accented. — 14. **ὅ τι ἐδύνω**, *in what* (733) *you were able*. — 16. **δύναμιν**: the context shows that this means here *lack of power, weakness*. — 17. **μεταμέλειν σοι**, *that you repented* (354). — 21. **ἐπιβουλεύων . . . γέγονας**, *are you so manifestly plotting against me?* — **εἰπόντος Ὀρόντᾱ**: see 762. — 22. **ὅτι οὐδὲν ἀδικηθείς**: *sc.* ἐπιβουλεύων αὐτῷ φανερὸς γέγονε. — 24. **Ἦ γάρ**, (*I confess*) *for in truth, etc.* — **ἀνάγκη**: *sc.* ἐστίν. — 27. **ὅτι**:

ἀπόφηναι γνώμην ὅ τι σοι δοκεῖ. Κλέαρχος δὲ εἶπε τάδε. Συμβουλεύω ἐγὼ τὸν ἄνδρα τοῦτον ἐκποδὼν ποιεῖσθαι ὡς τάχιστα, ὡς μηκέτι δέῃ τοῦτον φυλάττεσθαι, ἀλλὰ σχολὴ ᾖ ἡμῖν τὸ κατὰ τοῦτον εἶναι τοὺς ἐθελοντὰς φίλους τούτους εὖ ποιεῖν. ταύτῃ δὲ τῇ γνώμῃ ἔφη καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους προσθέσθαι. μετὰ ταῦτα, ἔφη, κελεύοντος Κύρου ἔλαβον τῆς ζώνης τὸν Ὁρόντᾱν ἐπὶ θανάτῳ ἅπαντες ἀναστάντες καὶ οἱ συγγενεῖς· εἶτα δὲ ἐξῆγον αὐτὸν οἷς προσετάχθη. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον αὐτὸν οἵπερ πρόσθεν προσεκύνουν, καὶ τότε προσεκύνησαν, καίπερ εἰδότες ὅτι ἐπὶ θάνατον ἄγοιτο. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὴν Ἀρταπάτου σκηνὴν εἰσήχθη τοῦ πιστοτάτου τῶν Κύρου σκηπτούχων, μετὰ ταῦτα οὔτε ζῶντα Ὁρόντᾱν οὔτε τεθνηκότα οὐδεὶς εἶδε πώποτε οὐδὲ ὅπως ἀπέθανεν οὐδεὶς εἰδὼς ἔλεγεν· εἰκάζον δὲ ἄλλοι ἄλλως· τάφος δὲ οὐδεὶς πώποτε αὐτοῦ ἐφάνη.

---

here introduces a *direct* quotation, and is not to be translated. — 34. **τὸ κατὰ τοῦτον εἶναι**, *so far as this fellow is concerned*. The infin. may stand *absolutely* in parenthetical phrases, but in certain instances of this use it seems superfluous, as here **τὸ κατὰ τοῦτον εἶναι** means no more than **τὸ κατὰ τοῦτον** (lit. *as regards what pertains to him*). **τό** with the word for thing understood (p. 839) is an accusative of specification (733). — 35. **ἐθελοντάς**: note the accent (a subst., not **ἐθέλοντας**, partic. of **ἐθέλω**). — 38. **ἔλαβον . . . Ὁρόντᾱν**: verbs signifying to *take hold of* may be followed by the simple gen. (746), or, as here, by an object acc. with a gen. of the part taken hold of. — 39. **καί**, *even*. — 40. **οἷς προσετάχθη**, *to whom it had been appointed*, *sc.* **ἐξάγειν**. — 42. **καίπερ εἰδότες**, *although they knew* (379).

Make a special study of the prepositions used in composition in this Reading Lesson (**ἀνα-**, 39; **ἀπο-**, 11, 13, 27, 31, 46; **εἰσ-**, 13; **ἐπι-**, 21; **ἐξ-**, 39; **μετα-**, 17; **παρα-**, 1, 29; **προσ-**, 8, 37, 40, 41 (*bis*); **συν-**, 32), according to the directions previously given.

LESSON CXXXII.

Indirect Discourse: Infinitive and Participle in Indirect Quotations.

835. EXERCISE.

1. ἐν Μιλήτῳ δὲ Τισσαφέρνης προησθάνετο τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα βουλευομένους.[1] 2. ὥστε βασιλεὺς Τισσαφέρνει ἐνόμιζε πολεμοῦντα Κῦρον ἀμφὶ τὰ στρατεύματα δαπανᾶν. 3. Τισσαφέρνης μείζονα ἡγεῖτο εἶναι ἢ ὡς ἐπὶ Πισιδᾶς τὴν παρασκευήν. 4. ἐνταῦθα λέγεται Ἀπόλλων ἐκδεῖραι Μαρσύᾱν καὶ τὸ δέρμα κρεμάσαι ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ. 5. Κῦρος δῆλος ἦν ἀνιώμενος. 6. τοῦ Εὐφράτου τὰς πηγὰς ἐλέγετο οὐ πρόσω τοῦ Τίγρητος εἶναι. 7. τούτῳ Κῦρον ἐπιστρατεύοντα πρῶτος[2] ἤγγειλα. 8. τριήρεις ἥκουε περιπλεούσᾱς ἀπ' Ἰωνίᾱς εἰς Κιλικίᾱν Ταμὼν ἔχοντα. 9. νομίζει Κῦρος ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἠδικῆσθαι. 10. οἶδα γὰρ ὑμῖν τοὺς Μῦσοὺς λῦπηροὺς ὄντας. 11. ἐνταῦθα Ξέρξῃς λέγεται οἰκοδομῆσαι ταῦτα τὰ βασίλεια. 12. οἱ μὲν ἔφασαν τοὺς τοῦ Μένωνος στρατιώτᾱς ἁρπάζοντάς τι κατακοπῆναι ὑπὸ τῶν Κιλίκων, οἱ δὲ οὐ δυναμένους εὑρεῖν τὰς ὁδοὺς ἀπολέσθαι. 13. σύνοιδα γὰρ ἐμαυτῷ πάντα ἐψευσμένος αὐτόν. 14. τοῖς Αἰγυπτίοις μάλιστα ὑμᾶς νῦν γιγνώσκω τεθῡμωμένους. 15. καὶ ἐλέγετο Ὑπάξα Κύρῳ δοῦναι χρήματα πολλά. 16. οἱ στρατιῶται οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι τοῦ πρόσω· ὑπώπτευον γὰρ ἤδη ἐπὶ βασιλέᾱ ἰέναι· μισθωθῆναι δὲ οὐκ ἐπὶ τοῦτῳ ἔφασαν. 17. καὶ λέγεται δεηθῆναι ἡ Κλεισσὰ Κύρου ἐπιδεῖξαι τὸ στράτευμα αὐτῇ. 18. Κλέαρχος δοκεῖ γενέσθαι ἀνὴρ πολεμικός. 19. τί οὖν ἀδικηθεὶς ὑπ' ἐμοῦ νῦν τὸ τρίτον ἐπιβουλεύων μοι φανερὸς γέγονας; 20. οὐδὲ πόρρω δοκοῦμέν μοι Κύρου καθῆσθαι. 21. καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν μὲν ἂν οἶμαι εἶναι τίμιος, ὑμῶν δὲ ἔρημος ὢν οὐκ ἂν

[1] *Sc.* τινάς.

[2] *Cf.* 779, 4, and note.

ἱκανὸς οἶμαι εἶναι οὔτ' ἂν φίλον ὠφελῆσαι οὔτ' ἂν ἐχθρὸν ἀλέξασθαι. 22. *εὖ συμβουλεύσᾱς ἐφάνη ὁ ἀνήρ.* 23. *οἶμαι γὰρ ἂν ἡμᾶς τοιαῦτα παθεῖν οἷα τοὺς ἐχθροὺς οἱ θεοὶ ποιήσειαν.*[1] 24. *Κῦρος δ' ἐπεὶ ᾔσθετο τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς διαβεβηκότας, ἥσθη.* 25. *ὑπισχνεῖται αὐτοῖς μὴ πρόσθεν παύσεσθαι πρὶν ἂν αὐτοὺς καταγάγῃ οἴκαδε.* 26. *ἐπειδὴ δὲ τοὺς βαρβάρους οὐ προσιόντας ἑώρων οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἥσθησαν.* 27. *ᾔδειν γὰρ ἡμᾶς οὕτως ἂν ποριζομένους*[2] *τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.* 28. *εἰ οὖν ὁρᾷην ὑμᾶς σωτήριόν τι βουλευομένους, ἔλθοιμι ἂν πρὸς ὑμᾶς.* 29. *ἐπιβουλεύων ἡμῖν φανερός ἐστι.* 30. *τούτους δὲ ἔφασαν οἰκεῖν ἀνὰ τὰ ὄρη καὶ πολεμικοὺς εἶναι, καὶ βασιλέως οὐκ ἀκούειν, ἀλλὰ ἐμβαλεῖν ποτε εἰς αὐτοὺς βασιλέᾱ.*

836. Indirect quotations are expressed not only by *ὅτι* or *ὡς* and a finite verb (830), but also by the *infinitive*, and sometimes by the *participle*.

In examining the sentences cited below, convert each indirect quotation into its original form.

Examine the infinitives in 2, 3, 9, 12 (*κατακοπῆναι, ἀπολέσθαι*), 16, 21 (*ἂν εἶναι, ἂν εἶναι*), 23, 25, 30.

Observe that these infinitives follow verbs of *saying* or *thinking* or the like, that they represent indicatives, or optatives with *ἄν* (21, 23), in the original, and that the tenses have not been changed. If the original had *ἄν*, the infinitive retains it.

Review 354.

Examine 4, 6, 11, 15, 17 (*δεηθῆναι*), 18, 20.

837. Many verbs of this class, especially *λέγω* in the passive and *δοκέω*, *seem*, while allowing both the personal and the impersonal construction, are generally used personally.

838. Of the three common verbs meaning to *say*, —

a. *φημί* regularly takes the infinitive in indirect discourse. Examine 12, 16, 30.

---

[1] See 787.

[2] The original was, *ἂν ποριζοίμεθα*.

b. εἶπον regularly takes ὅτι or ὡς with the indicative or optative. Examine 829, 13.

c. λέγω allows either construction, but in the active voice it generally takes ὅτι or ὡς. Examine 829, 8, 21, 22, 24.

Examine the participles in 1, 5, 7, 8 (ἔχοντα), 10, 13, 14, 19 (ἐπιβουλεύων), 22, 24, 26, 27, 28, 29, and note the meaning of the verbs after which they are quoted, and the mood and tense of the originals of the participles.

839. Rule of Syntax. — With many verbs the participle stands in indirect discourse, each tense representing the corresponding tense of a finite mood.

a. If the original had ἄν, the participle retains it. Examine 27.

b. Such verbs are chiefly those signifying to *see, hear, learn, perceive, know, be ignorant of, remember, forget, show, appear, prove, acknowledge*, and ἀγγέλλω, *announce*. Here belong also the phrases δῆλός εἰμι and φανερός εἰμι, φανερὸς γίγνομαι, used personally.

c. Most of these verbs may also take a clause with ὅτι or ὡς in indirect discourse.

Examine the negatives with the infinitives and participles in 6, 16, 21, 25, 26, 30.

840. The regular negative of the infinitive and participle in indirect discourse is οὐ, but μή sometimes irregularly occurs.

841. EXERCISE.[1]

1. For he heard that Cyrus was[2] in Cilicia. 2. And he promised[3] that he would deliver over the Greeks to him. 3. He said that he had been ordered[4] by my brother to war with me. 4. The wife of the king is said to have taken refuge there. 5. For I know that pledges have been given. 6. For I knew that the soldiers had provisions. 7. And the great king dug[5] this trench when he learned[6] that Cyrus was

[1] See p. 396[1].

[2] Use the participle in translating this exercise into Greek wherever the principal verb is one of those named in 839 b.

[3] See p. 250[6].

[4] He said, ἐτάχθην.

[5] *made*.

[6] Use ἐπειδή and the indic. of πυνθάνομαι.

marching against (him). 8. I saw that you were suffering harm and were not[1] able to retaliate. 9. For they did not know that he was dead. 10. They therefore announce that in that case the Greeks would retreat. 11. And the Greeks knew the enemy wished to go away. 12. Do you think,[2] Cyrus, that your brother will fight? 13. Let it not yet be manifest that we[3] have set out for home. 14. He accordingly showed[4] that the satrap had broken the truce. 15. He is conscious that he has broken[5] the truce.

LESSON CXXXIII.

Reading Lesson.

842. ANABASIS I. vii. 1–10.

Cyrus proceeds through Babylonia, and at the end of the third day's march reviews his troops (1). The next morning he receives information about the King's army, and summons the Greek generals and captains to council (2). He expresses his confidence in them (3), describes the manner of a Persian onset, and promises to reward them magnificently in case of victory (4). Gaulites says there are doubts as to the sincerity of Cyrus and his ability to fulfil his promises (5). Cyrus thereupon describes the extent of country he hopes to conquer, and promises a crown to each Greek (6, 7). The Greeks are much encouraged by these assurances (8). Cyrus gives his decided opinion that his brother will not refuse to fight (9). The numbers of the Greeks and barbarians in the army of Cyrus are given (10).

VII.

ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Βαβυλωνίας στα- 1
θμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας δώδεκα. ἐν δὲ τῷ τρίτῳ
σταθμῷ Κῦρος ἐξέτασιν ποιεῖται τῶν Ἑλλήνων
καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ περὶ μέσας νύκτας·

1 *Cf.* 835, 26 above.
2 Use οἴομαι.
3 *Cf.* 835, 29 above.
4 Use δείκνῡμι.
5 *Cf.* 835, 13 above, and note the use of the reflexive pron.

ἐδόκει γὰρ εἰς τὴν ἐπιοῦσαν ἕω ἥξειν βασιλέᾱ σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι μαχούμενον· καὶ ἐκέλευε Κλέαρχον μὲν τοῦ δεξιοῦ κέρως ἡγεῖσθαι, Μένωνα δὲ τὸν Θετταλὸν τοῦ εὐωνύμου, αὐτὸς δὲ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ διέταξε. μετὰ δὲ τὴν ἐξέτασιν ἅμα τῇ ἐπιούσῃ 2
ἡμέρᾳ ἥκοντες αὐτόμολοι παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως ἀπήγγελλον Κύρῳ περὶ τῆς βασιλέως στρατιᾶς. Κῦρος δὲ συγκαλέσᾱς τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχᾱγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων συνεβουλεύετό τε πῶς ἂν τὴν μάχην ποιοῖτο καὶ αὐτὸς παρήνει θαρρύνων τοιάδε. Ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, οὐκ ἀνθρώπων ἀπορῶν 3
βαρβάρων συμμάχους ὑμᾶς ἄγω, ἀλλὰ νομίζων ἀμείνους καὶ κρείττους πολλῶν βαρβάρων ὑμᾶς εἶναι, διὰ τοῦτο προσέλαβον. ὅπως οὖν ἔσεσθε ἄνδρες ἄξιοι τῆς ἐλευθερίᾱς ἧς κέκτησθε καὶ ἧς ὑμᾶς ἐγὼ εὐδαιμονίζω. εὖ γὰρ ἴστε ὅτι τὴν ἐλευθερίᾱν ἑλοίμην ἂν ἀντ' ὧν ἔχω πάντων καὶ ἄλλων πολλαπλασίων. ὅπως δὲ καὶ εἰδῆτε εἰς οἷον ἔρ- 4
χεσθε ἀγῶνα, ὑμᾶς εἰδὼς διδάξω. τὸ μὲν γὰρ πλῆθος πολύ, καὶ κραυγῇ πολλῇ ἐπίᾱσιν· ἂν δὲ ταῦτα ἀνάσχησθε, τἄλλα καὶ αἰσχύνεσθαί μοι

---

5. ἐδόκει, *he thought* — εἰς . . . ἕω: *cf.* 175, I. 9. — 6. μαχούμενον: fut. partic. expressing purpose (379). — καὶ ἐκέλευε . . . διέταξε: the Greeks were next to the river, Cyrus and his barbarian troops on their left. — 13. πῶς ἄν . . . μάχοιτο: see 832. — 14. παρήνει . . . τοιάδε, *exhorted and encouraged them as follows.* — 18. διὰ τοῦτο: resumes *πάντων, because I thought, etc., on this account.* — ὅπως ἔσεσθε: an *object* clause (792) after *σκοπεῖτε, see to it,* to be supplied. — 19. ἧς, ἧς: see 725 and 756. — 21. ἀνθ' ὧν . . . πάντων, *in preference to all that* (725) *I have.* — 22. ὅπως εἰδῆτε: a *final* clause (278). — εἰς οἷον . . . ἀγῶνα, *into what sort of a struggle you are going* (571 a). — 23. τὸ πλῆθος: *sc.* ἐστί. — 25. ταῦτα: *i.e.* their numbers and outcry. — τἄλλα . . . ἀνθρώπους, *as to all else, I feel even ashamed*

δοκῶ οἵους ἡμῖν γνώσεσθε τοὺς ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ὄντας ἀνθρώπους. ὑμῶν δὲ ἀνδρῶν ὄντων καὶ εὐτόλμων γενομένων, ἐγὼ ὑμῶν τὸν μὲν οἴκαδε βουλόμενον ἀπιέναι τοῖς οἴκοι ζηλωτὸν ποιήσω ἀπελθεῖν, πολλοὺς δὲ οἶμαι ποιήσειν τὰ παρ' ἐμοὶ ἑλέσθαι ἀντὶ τῶν οἴκοι. ἐνταῦθα Γαυλίτης παρὼν φυγὰς Σάμιος, πιστὸς δὲ Κύρῳ, εἶπε, Καὶ μήν, ὦ Κῦρε, λέγουσί τινες ὅτι πολλὰ ὑπισχνεῖ νῦν διὰ τὸ ἐν τοιούτῳ εἶναι τοῦ κινδύνου προσιόντος, ἂν δὲ εὖ γένηταί τι, οὐ μεμνήσεσθαί σέ φᾶσιν· ἔνιοι δὲ οὐδ' εἰ μεμνῇό τε καὶ βούλοιο, δύνασθαι ἂν ἀποδοῦναι ὅσα ὑπισχνεῖ. ἀκούσᾶς ταῦτα ἔλεξεν ὁ Κῦρος, Ἀλλ' ἔστι μὲν ἡμῖν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἡ ἀρχὴ ἡ πατρῴᾱ πρὸς μὲν μεσημβρίᾱν μέχρι οὗ διὰ

(lit. *seem to myself even to be ashamed* — see 837) *as to what sort of men* (ἀνθρώπους with emphasized contempt at the end of the sentence) *you will discover those in our country to be* (ὄντας, 839). The indirect question οἵους . . . ἀνθρώπους (571 a) follows αἰσχύνεσθαι. Its direct form would be ποίους γνωσόμεθα τοὺς ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ὄντας ἀνθρώπους; — 27. ὑμῶν . . . γενομένων: gen. absol. (762), the participles expressing condition (379). Freely rendered the thought is, *only do you be men* (*cf.* l. 18) *and prove yourselves bold of spirit, and I will make, etc.* — 28. ὑμῶν: with τὸν βουλόμενον (743 a), which is the subj. of ἀπελθεῖν. — 29. τοῖς οἴκοι, *to those at home* (771). — 31. τῶν οἴκοι: neut. *Cf.* τὰ παρ' ἐμοί just above. — Γαυλίτης . . . εἶπε: probably at the suggestion of Cyrus. — 33. διὰ . . . προσιόντος, *because you are* (lit. *on account of your being* — *cf.* 524, l. 19) *at such (a critical point) of the danger* (743 a) *that is approaching.* — 35. τι: the reference to his present undertaking is purposely vague. — μεμνήσεσθαι: fut. perf., serving as a simple fut. to μέμνημαι (642, 6). — ἔνιοι δέ: *sc.* φᾶσιν. — 36. οὐδ' εἰ . . . δύνασθαι ἄν, *not even if you should remember, etc., would you be able* (354). — μεμνῇο: perf. opt. mid. sec. per. sing. of μιμνήσκω. The perf. opt. mid. is ordinarily compound (307 d), but a few vowel verbs form it directly from the stem. Thus, μέμνημαι, *remember*, opt. μεμνήμην, μεμνῆο, μεμνῆτο, *etc.* (for μεμνη-ιμην, μεμνη-ιο, μεμνη-ιτο). — 38. ἔστι πρὸς μεσημβρίᾱν, *is* (*i.e extends*) *toward the south.* For ἔστι, see 188 a. — 39. μέχρι

καῦμα οὐ δύνανται οἰκεῖν ἄνθρωποι, πρὸς δὲ ἄρκτον μέχρι οὗ διὰ χειμῶνα· τὰ δ' ἐν μέσῳ τούτων πάντα σατραπεύουσιν οἱ τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ φίλοι. ἦν δ' ἡμεῖς νικήσωμεν, ἡμᾶς δεῖ τοὺς ἡμετέρους 7
φίλους τούτων ἐγκρατεῖς ποιῆσαι. ὥστε οὐ τοῦτο δέδοικα μὴ οὐκ ἔχω ὅ τι δῶ ἑκάστῳ τῶν φίλων, ἂν εὖ γένηται, ἀλλὰ μὴ οὐκ ἔχω ἱκανοὺς οἷς δῶ. ὑμῶν δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ στέφανον ἑκάστῳ χρῦσοῦν δώσω. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες αὐτοί τε 8
ἦσαν πολὺ προθῡμότεροι καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐξήγγελλον. εἰσῆσαν δὲ παρ' αὐτὸν οἵ τε στρατηγοὶ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων τινὲς ἀξιοῦντες εἰδέναι τί σφίσιν ἔσται, ἐὰν κρατήσωσιν. ὁ δὲ ἐμπιμπλὰς ἁπάντων τὴν γνώμην ἀπέπεμπε. παρεκελεύοντο 9
δὲ αὐτῷ πάντες ὅσοιπερ διελέγοντο μὴ μάχεσθαι, ἀλλ' ὄπισθεν ἑαυτῶν τάττεσθαι. ἐν δὲ τῷ καιρῷ τούτῳ Κλέαρχος ὧδέ πως ἤρετο τὸν Κῦρον· Οἴει γάρ σοι μαχεῖσθαι, ὦ Κῦρε, τὸν ἀδελφόν; Νὴ Δί', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, εἴπερ γε Δᾱρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδός ἐστι παῖς, ἐμὸς δὲ ἀδελφός, οὐκ ἀμαχεὶ ταῦτ' ἐγὼ λήψομαι. ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐν τῇ ἐξοπλισίᾳ ἀριθμὸς 10
ἐγένετο τῶν μὲν Ἑλλήνων ἀσπὶς μῡρίᾱ καὶ τετρα-

οὗ, *to where*, lit. *to what place*, . οὗ being the gen. sing. neut. of the relative ὅς, ἥ, ὅ, and ἄχρι an improper prep. — 44. **τούτων**: see 760. — **τοῦτο**: introduces the object clause (280) **μὴ οὐκ ἔχω**, *this, namely, that I shall not know, etc.* — 45. **ὅ τι δῶ**: see 831. — 46. **ἂν εὖ γένηται**: *sc.* **τὰ πράγματα**. — **ἀλλὰ . . . δῶ**, *but that I shall not have enough to whom to give.* — 48. **οἱ δέ**: the generals and captains (see l. 12) present at the council. — 53. **παρεκελεύοντο . . . τάττεσθαι**: had Cyrus followed this advice, the whole course of Persian history might have been changed. — 61. **ἀσπίς**, *shield, i.e. men*, as we say 'a thousand horse.' — The sum total of the

κοσίᾱ, πελτασταὶ δὲ δισχίλιοι καὶ πεντακόσιοι, τῶν δὲ μετὰ Κύρου βαρβάρων δέκα μῡριάδες καὶ ἅρματα δρεπανηφόρα ἀμφὶ τὰ εἴκοσι.

Greeks here given does not tally with the numbers previously given. The reason for the discrepancy is uncertain.

Make a special study of the prepositions used in composition in this Reading Lesson (ἀνα-, 25; ἀπο-, 11, 29 (*bis*), 36, 53; δια-, 9, 54; εἰσ-, 50; ἐν-, 52; ἐξ-, 1, 49; ἐπι-, 24; παρα-, 14, 31, 53; προσ-, 18, 34; συν-, 12, 13; ὑπο-, 33, 37), according to the directions previously given.

LESSON CXXXIV.

Indirect Discourse: Indirect Quotation of Complex Sentences.

843. EXERCISE.

1. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὑπῐσχνεῖτο ἡμιόλιον πᾶσι δώσειν οὗ πρότερον ἔφερον.[1] 2. ἠξίουν εἰδέναι τι σφίσιν ἔσται, ἐὰν κρατήσωσιν. 3. καὶ οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι, ἐὰν μή τις αὐτοῖς χρήματα διδῷ. 4. οὗτος δ' εἶπεν ὅτι φλυᾱροίη ὅστις λέγοι ἄλλως πως σωτηρίᾱς ἂν τυχεῖν[2] ἢ βασιλέᾱ πείσᾱς. 5. ὑπέσχετο αὐτοῖς, εἰ καλῶς καταπράξειε τὸν στόλον, μὴ πρόσθεν παύσεσθαι πρὶν αὐτοὺς καταγάγοι οἴκαδε. 6. ἐνόμιζε γάρ, ὅσῳ θᾶττον ἔλθοι, τοσούτῳ ἀπαρασκευοτέρῳ βασιλεῖ μαχεῖσθαι. 7. ὁ δ' ὑπέσχετο ἀνδρὶ ἑκάστῳ δώσειν πέντε ἀργυρίου μνᾶς, ἐπὴν εἰς Βαβυλῶνα ἥκωσι, καὶ τὸν μισθὸν ἐντελῆ μέχρι ἂν καταστήσῃ τοὺς Ἕλληνας εἰς Ἰωνίᾱν πάλιν. 8. οἱ δ' ἐαλωκότες ἔλεγον ὅτι τὰ πρὸς μεσημβρίᾱν[3] τῆς[4] ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνα εἴη, δι' ἥσπερ ἥκοιεν. 9. τοῦτο δὴ δεῖ λέγειν, πῶς ἂν πορευοίμεθά τε ὡς ἀσφαλέστατα καί, εἰ μάχεσθαι δέοι, ὡς κράτιστα μαχοίμεθα.[5] 10. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτι περὶ

---

[1] Cyrus said, ἡμιόλιον πᾶσι δώσω οὗ πρότερον ἐφέρετε.

[2] In the original ἂν τύχοιμι (838 c).

[3] *the (parts) to the south.*

[4] *Sc.* ὁδοῦ, and see 744.

[5] ἄν belongs to μαχοίμεθα also.

σπονδῶν ἥκοιεν ἄνδρες οἵτινες ἱκανοὶ ἔσονται τὰ παρὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων βασιλεῖ ἀπαγγεῖλαι. 11. οἶδα αὐτοὺς τοῦτο ἂν ποιήσαντας,[1] εἰ ἐξῆν.[2] 12. οὐδ' ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς ὡς ἐγὼ ἕως μὲν ἂν παρῇ τις χρῶμαι, ἐπειδὰν δὲ ἀπιέναι βούληται, συλλαβὼν καὶ αὐτοὺς κακῶς ποιῶ καὶ τὰ χρήματα ἀποσῖλῶ. 13. ἂν δὲ εὖ γένηταί τι, οὐ μεμνήσεσθαί σέ φᾶσιν· ἔνιοι δὲ οὐδ' εἰ μεμνῆό τε καὶ βούλοιο, δύνασθαι ἂν ἀποδοῦναι ὅσα ὑπισχνεῖ. 14. ἔλεγον ὅτι ἥκοιεν ἡγεμόνας ἔχοντες, οἳ αὐτούς, ἐὰν σπονδαὶ γένωνται, ἄξουσιν ἔνθεν ἕξουσι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. 15. Ὀρόντᾶς ἔγραψεν ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ βασιλέᾶ ὅτι ἥξοι ἔχων ἱππέᾶς ὡς ἂν δύνηται πλείστους. 16. οὗτος Κύρῳ εἶπεν, εἰ αὐτῷ δοίη ἱππέᾶς χῖλίους, ὅτι τοὺς προκατακάοντας ἱππέᾶς ἢ κατακάνοι ἂν ἐνέδρευσᾶς ἢ ζῶντας πολλοὺς αὐτῶν ἕλοι. 17. κἂν μὲν ᾖ ἐκεῖ, τὴν δίκην ἔφη χρήξειν ἐπιθεῖναι αὐτῷ, ἢν δὲ φύγῃ, ἡμεῖς ἐκεῖ πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευσόμεθα.[3] 18. οἱ δ' ᾤκτειρον εἰ ἁλώσοιντο. 19. ὁ δ' ἐχαλέπαινεν ὅτι[4] πρᾴως λέγοι τὸ αὐτοῦ πάθος. 20. λαβὼν ὑμᾶς ἐπορευόμην, ἵνα εἴ τι δέοιτο ὠφελοίην αὐτόν. 21. Κῦρος τὰς ναῦς μετεπέμψατο, ὅπως βιασάμενοι τοὺς πολεμίους παρέλθοιεν, εἰ φυλάττοιεν ἐπὶ ταῖς Συρίαις πύλαις. 22. ἐδεῖτο αὐτοῦ μὴ πρόσθεν καταλῦσαι πρὸς τοὺς ἀντιστασιώτᾶς πρὶν ἂν αὐτῷ συμβουλεύσηται. 23. εἷς δὲ δὴ εἶπε στρατηγοὺς μὲν ἑλέσθαι ἄλλους ὡς τάχιστα, εἰ μὴ βούλεται Κλέαρχος ἀπάγειν· ἐλθόντας δὲ Κῦρον αἰτεῖν πλοῖα· ἐὰν δὲ μὴ διδῷ ταῦτα, ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖν Κῦρον ὅστις διὰ φιλίᾶς τῆς χώρᾶς ἀπάξει.

844. When a complex sentence, *i.e.* a sentence consisting of a principal and a dependent clause or clauses, is indirectly quoted, its *leading* verb follows the rules for simple sentences (830, 831, 832, 834, 839). But its *dependent* verbs are subject to the following law (845).

[1] In the original τοῦτο ἂν ἐποίησαν (839 a).
[2] *had it been possible.*
[3] Observe the shift to *direct* discourse in the last clause.
[4] *because.*

In examining the sentences cited below, convert each quoted complex sentence into its original form.

Examine the dependent verbs in 9 (δέοι), 11 (ἐξῆν), 12 (παρῇ, βούληται), 13 (γένηται, μεμνῆο, βούλοιο, ὑπισχνεῖ).

Observe that the dependent clause here follows a primary tense, and that its verb has not changed its original mood and tense.

Examine the dependent verbs in 4 (λέγοι for λέγει), 5 (εἰ καταπράξειε for ἐὰν καταπράξω, πρὶν καταγάγοι for πρὶν ἂν καταγάγω), 6 (ὅσῳ ἔλθοι for ὅσῳ ἂν ἔλθω), 8 (ἥκοιεν for ἥκετε).

Observe that the dependent clause here follows a secondary tense, that its verb was originally in the subjunctive or in a primary tense of the indicative, that it has been changed to the optative, but that its tense remains the same, and that, when the subjunctive becomes the optative, ἄν is dropped.

Examine the dependent verbs in 2 (κρατήσωσιν), 3 (διδῷ), 7 (ἥκωσι, καταστήσῃ), 10 (ἔσονται), 14 (γένωνται, ἄξουσιν, ἔξουσι), 15 (δύνηται), 17 (ᾖ, φύγῃ).

Observe that the dependent clause here follows a secondary tense, but that its verb has not changed its original mood and tense.

Examine the dependent verbs in 1 (ἔφερον) and 16 (δοίη).

Observe that the dependent clause here follows a secondary tense, that its verb was originally in a secondary tense of the indicative or in the optative, and that it has not changed its mood and tense.

845. Rule of Syntax. — When a complex sentence is indirectly quoted, after primary tenses its *dependent* verbs retain their original mood and tense. After secondary tenses, dependent *primary* tenses of the indicative and all dependent subjunctives may either be changed to the *same tense* of the optative or retain their original mood and tense. When a subjunctive becomes optative, ἄν is dropped, ἐάν becoming εἰ, *etc.* Dependent *secondary* tenses of the indicative and dependent optatives remain unchanged.

a. One verb of the quoted complex sentence may be changed to the optative, while another is retained in the original mood. Examine 10, 14, 15.

Examine the dependent verbs in 18 (ἁλώσοιντο for ἁλώσονται), 19 (λέγοι for ἔλεγε), 20 (εἰ δέοιτο for ἐὰν δέηται), 21 (εἰ φυλάττοιεν for ἐὰν φυλάττωσιν), 22 (συμβουλεύσηται), 23 (βούλεται, διδῷ, ἀπάξει)

Observe that the clause to which the dependent clause is here attached *is not itself quoted*, but that nevertheless the dependent clause follows the rule in 845.

846. Rule of Syntax. — The principles of 845 apply also to any dependent clause after a secondary tense (even if the clause on which it depends is not quoted) which expresses indirectly the past thought of any person.

a. This construction is allowed after verbs of *emotion* (18), sometimes in causal sentences (19), after final clauses (20, 21), and after verbs of *commanding, advising*, and the like with the infinitive (22, 23).

847. EXERCISE.[1]

1. And he promised him that if he would come he would make him a friend to Cyrus. 2. He said that if there was no objection[2] he wished to converse with them. 3. He said that if they should see you dispirited they would all be cowardly. 4. And he told (him) that just as soon as[3] the expedition should come to an end he would immediately send him home. 5. He announced that if we had not come they would be proceeding against the king. 6. He said that he should delay until the king arrived. 7. But he said that he did not commend the man if he had done this. 8. And they said that the enemy were within in great numbers,[4] and that they[5] were striking our men. 9. And they said that they would burst open the gates if they did not open (them) of their own accord. 10. It was evident that they would elect him if anybody should put it to vote. 11. But he said he should dread to embark in the boats which Cyrus might give them. 12. He accordingly then asked who those were who (always) did[6] whatever took place in battle.[7]

---

[1] See p. 396[1]. The direction is here of special importance.

[2] *unless something hindered.*

[3] *just as soon as*, ἐπειδάν (or ἐπειδή) τάχιστα.

[4] *in great numbers*, πολλοί. See also 720.

[5] *and that they*, *i.e. who.*

[6] *those who did*, see 371.

[7] ἐν ταῖς μάχαις.

LESSON CXXXV.

Reading Lesson.

848. ANABASIS I. vii. 11–20 and viii. 1–3.

An account of the king's forces is given (11–13). Cyrus advances a day's march farther, and at midday comes to a deep trench dug by the king, but he succeeds in making his way past this (14–16). The king does not come to an engagement, and traces of his retreat are observed (17). Cyrus rewards the soothsayer Silanus (18). Concluding that the king has given up the intention of fighting, he proceeds with less caution (19, 20).

But near the station where he intends to halt for breakfast, Cyrus is met by Pategyas riding at full speed, who calls out that the king and his army are approaching (1). Great confusion ensues (2), and Cyrus gives orders for all to arm and fall into line (3).

VII.

τῶν δὲ πολεμίων ἐλέγοντο εἶναι ἑκατὸν καὶ 11
εἴκοσι μῡριάδες καὶ ἅρματα δρεπανηφόρα διᾱκό-
σια. ἄλλοι δὲ ἦσαν ἑξακισχίλιοι ἱππεῖς, ὧν
Ἀρταγέρσης ἦρχεν· οὗτοι δ' αὖ πρὸ αὐτοῦ βασι-
λέως τεταγμένοι ἦσαν. τοῦ δὲ βασιλέως στρατεύ- 12
ματος ἦσαν ἄρχοντες καὶ στρατηγοὶ καὶ ἡγεμόνες
τέτταρες, τριάκοντα μῡριάδων ἕκαστος, Ἀβροκό-
μᾱς, Τισσαφέρνης, Γωβρύᾱς, Ἀρβάκης. τούτων
δὲ παρεγένοντο ἐν τῇ μάχῃ ἐνενήκοντα μῡριάδες
καὶ ἅρματα δρεπανηφόρα ἑκατὸν καὶ πεντήκοντα·
Ἀβροκόμᾱς δὲ ὑστέρησε τῆς μάχης ἡμέραις πέντε,
ἐκ Φοινίκης ἐλαύνων. ταῦτα δὲ ἤγγελλον πρὸς 13

---

1. εἶναι: see 837. — 3. ἄλλοι, *besides*. *Cf.* 810, 33. — 4. αὖ, *moreover*. — 11. μάχης: after ὑστέρησε (754), which implies comparison. *Cf.* the construction of ἐμοῦ after the adv. in 826, 14. — ἡμέραις: see 776. —

Κῦρον οἱ αὐτομολήσαντες ἐκ τῶν πολεμίων παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως πρὸ τῆς μάχης, καὶ μετὰ τὴν
15 μάχην οἳ ὕστερον ἐλήφθησαν τῶν πολεμίων ταὐτὰ ἤγγελλον. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ Κῦρος ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν 14
ἕνα παρασάγγᾱς τρεῖς συντεταγμένῳ τῷ στρατεύματι παντὶ καὶ τῷ Ἑλληνικῷ καὶ τῷ βαρβαρικῷ· ᾤετο γὰρ ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ μαχεῖσθαι βασιλέᾱ·
20 κατὰ γὰρ μέσον τὸν σταθμὸν τοῦτον τάφρος ἦν ὀρυκτὴ βαθεῖα, τὸ μὲν εὖρος ὀργυιαὶ πέντε, τὸ δὲ βάθος ὀργυιαὶ τρεῖς. παρετέτατο δὲ ἡ τάφρος 15
ἄνω διὰ τοῦ πεδίου ἐπὶ δώδεκα παρασάγγᾱς μέχρι τοῦ Μηδίᾱς τείχους. ἔνθα αἱ διώρυχες ἀπὸ τοῦ
25 Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ ῥέουσαι· εἰσὶ δὲ τέτταρες, τὸ μὲν εὖρος πλεθριαῖαι, βαθεῖαι δὲ ἰσχῡρῶς, καὶ πλοῖα πλεῖ ἐν αὐταῖς σῖταγωγά· εἰσβάλλουσι δὲ εἰς τὸν Εὐφράτην, διαλείπουσι δ' ἑκάστη παρασάγγην, γέφῡραι δ' ἔπεισιν. ἦν δὲ παρὰ τὸν
30 Εὐφράτην πάροδος στενὴ μεταξὺ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς τάφρου ὡς εἴκοσι ποδῶν· τὸ εὖρος· ταύτην δὲ 16
τὴν τάφρον βασιλεὺς ποιεῖ μέγας ἀντὶ ἐρύματος, ἐπειδὴ πυνθάνεται Κῦρον προσελαύνοντα. ταύτην δὴ τὴν πάροδον Κῦρός τε καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ παρῆλθε

---

14. **καὶ μετὰ . . . ἤγγελλον**: compare the *order* with that of the preceding sentence. — 15. **πολεμίων**: with *οἱ* (743, 6a). — 17. **συντεταγμένῳ τῷ στρατεύματι**, *with his troops in line of battle*, a dat. of manner (775) expressing the idea of *accompaniment*. — 20. **μέσον**: *cf.* 741, 7, and see p. 141[5]. — 21. **ὀργυιαί**: in appos. with *τάφρος*, where we should expect *ὀργυιῶν* (743, 5). *Cf.* the use of the adj. in 26. — 24. **τοῦ Μηδίας τείχους**: see the map. — **διώρυχες**: *sc. εἰσι*. — 28. **διαλείπουσι . . . παρασάγγην**, *they are distant each a parasang* (*from the other*). — 33. **προσελαύνοντα**: see p. 250[5]. — 34. **παρῆλθε, ἐγένοντο**: the point of view shifts. Cyrus is prominently

καὶ ἐγένοντο εἴσω τῆς τάφρου. ταύτῃ μὲν οὖν τῇ 17
ἡμέρᾳ οὐκ ἐμαχέσατο βασιλεύς, ἀλλ' ὑποχωρούντων φανερὰ ἦσαν καὶ ἵππων καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἴχνη πολλά. ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος Σῑλᾱνὸν καλέσᾱς τὸν 18
Ἀμπρακιώτην μάντιν ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ δᾱρεικοὺς τρισχῑλίους, ὅτι τῇ ἑνδεκάτῃ ἀπ' ἐκείνης ἡμέρᾳ προθῡόμενος εἶπεν αὐτῷ ὅτι βασιλεὺς οὐ μαχεῖται δέκα ἡμερῶν, Κῦρος δ' εἶπεν, Οὐκ ἄρα ἔτι μαχεῖται, εἰ ἐν ταύταις οὐ μαχεῖται ταῖς ἡμέραις· ἐὰν δ' ἀληθεύσῃς, ὑπισχνοῦμαί σοι δέκα τάλαντα. τοῦτο τὸ χρῡσίον τότε ἀπέδωκεν, ἐπεὶ παρῆλθον αἱ δέκα ἡμέραι. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ τῇ τάφρῳ οὐκ ἐκώλῡε βασι- 19
λεὺς τὸ Κύρου στράτευμα διαβαίνειν, ἔδοξε καὶ Κύρῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀπεγνωκέναι τοῦ μάχεσθαι· ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ Κῦρος ἐπορεύετο ἠμελημένως μᾶλλον. τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ ἐπί τε τοῦ ἅρματος καθή- 20
μενος τὴν πορείαν ἐποιεῖτο καὶ ὀλίγους ἐν τάξει ἔχων πρὸ αὑτοῦ, τὸ δὲ πολὺ αὐτῷ ἀνατεταραγμένον ἐπορεύετο καὶ τῶν ὅπλων τοῖς στρατιώταις πολλὰ ἐπὶ ἁμαξῶν ἤγετο καὶ ὑποζυγίων.

---

in the writer's mind when he says παρῆλθε (sing.), the whole army when he says ἐγένοντο. — 35. μέν: *cf.* τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ in l. 50. — 37. ἦσαν: *cf.* 810, 6, and note. — 40. ὅτι . . . εἶπεν: causal clause (781). — ἀπ', *from, i.e. before.* — 41. ὅτι . . . μαχεῖται: see 830. — 42. ἡμερῶν: see 759. — ἔτι, *hereafter, i.e. at all.* — εἰ οὐ μαχεῖται: οὐ for μή (797 a), because Cyrus is consciously repeating the statement of Silanus. For the fut. indic., see p. 375[1]. — 43. ἀληθεύσῃς, *prove to be speaking the truth.* The future apodosis (273) is δώσειν, to be supplied with ὑπισχνοῦμαι. — 45. παρῆλθον: see note on 706, 7. — 47. ἔδοξε, *he seemed* (837). — 48. ἀπεγνωκέναι τοῦ μάχεσθαι, *to have abandoned the intention of fighting* (753 and p. 194[6]). — 49. ὥστε ἐπορεύετο: see 824. — 52. αὐτῷ: dat. of disadvantage, but στρατιώταις below, of advantage (769).

καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν ἀμφὶ ἀγορὰν πλήθουσαν καὶ πλησίον ἦν ὁ σταθμὸς ἔνθα ἔμελλε καταλύειν, ἡνίκα Πατηγύας ἀνὴρ Πέρσης τῶν ἀμφὶ Κῦρον πιστῶν προφαίνεται ἐλαύνων ἀνὰ κράτος ἱδροῦντι τῷ ἵππῳ, καὶ εὐθὺς πᾶσιν οἷς ἐνετύγχανεν ἐβόᾱ καὶ βαρβαρικῶς καὶ Ἑλληνικῶς ὅτι βασιλεὺς σὺν στρατεύματι πολλῷ προσέρχεται ὡς εἰς μάχην παρεσκευασμένος. ἔνθα δὴ πολὺς τάραχος ἐγένετο· αὐτίκα γὰρ ἐδόκουν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ πάντες δὲ ἀτάκτοις σφίσιν ἐπιπεσεῖσθαι· Κῦρός τε καταπηδήσᾱς ἀπὸ τοῦ ἅρματος τὸν θώρᾱκα ἐνέδῡ καὶ ἀναβὰς ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον τὰ παλτὰ εἰς τὰς χεῖρας ἔλαβε, τοῖς τε ἄλλοις πᾶσι παρήγγελλεν ἐξοπλίζεσθαι καὶ καθίστασθαι εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ τάξιν ἕκαστον.

58. **ἱδροῦντι τῷ ἵππῳ**, *with his horse in a sweat*, a dat. of manner (775). *Cf.* l. 17 above. — 59. **οἷς**: see 774. — 60. **ὅτι . . . προσέρχεται**: see 830. — 61. **ὡς εἰς μάχην**, *apparently for battle*. — 66. **τὰ παλτὰ . . . ἔλαβε**: *cf.* 826, 8.

Make a special study of the prepositions used in composition in this Reading Lesson (ἀνα-, 52, 66; ἀπο-, 45, 48; δια-, 28, 47; εἰσ-, 27; ἐν-, 59, 65; ἐξ-, 16, 67; ἐπι-, 29, 64; κατα-, 50, 56, 64, 68; παρα-, 9, 22, 34, 45, 62, 67; προ-, 58; πρασ-, 33, 61; συν-, 17; ὑπο-, 36, 44), according to the directions previously given.

LESSON CXXXVI.

The Infinitive.

849. EXERCISE.

1. ἐδεήθη ἡ Κίλισσα Κύρου ἐπιδεῖξαι τὸ στράτευμα αὐτῇ. 2. αἰσχρὸν δ' οὐδὲν ἐπὶ ταῖς βασιλέως θύραις οὔτ'[1] ἀκοῦσαι

[1] See p. 202[2].

οὔτ' ἰδεῖν ἔστιν.[1] 3. Κῦρος οὖν οὕτως ἐτελεύτησεν, ἀνὴρ ὢν ἄρχειν ἀξιώτατος. 4. ἤρξατε τοῦ διαβαίνειν. 5. καὶ τοῖς ἱππεῦσιν εἴρητο θαρροῦσι[2] διώκειν. 6. καὶ εἴ τις πολέμιος ἐγένετο, σπεισαμένου Κύρου ἐπίστευε μηδὲν ἂν παρὰ τὰς σπονδὰς παθεῖν.[3] 7. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἰέναι οὐκ ἤθελεν. 8. λοιπόν μοι εἰπεῖν ὅπερ καὶ μέγιστον νομίζω εἶναι. 9. ἐνόμιζον γὰρ ἱκανοὺς εἶναι ἡμᾶς περιγενέσθαι τῷ πολέμῳ. 10. ἔτι δ' ἔχομεν σώματα ἱκανώτερα τούτων πόνους φέρειν. 11. εἰς τὸ διώκειν ὥρμησαν. 12. συνωφελοῦσι δ' οὐδὲν οὔτε εἰς τὸ μάχεσθαι οὔτ' εἰς τὸ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔχειν. 13. κράτιστον ἡμῖν ἔσεσθαι ὡς τάχιστα ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον. 14. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα περαίνειν ἤδη ὥρᾱ. 15. ἡ βασιλέως ἀρχὴ ἦν τῷ διεσπάσθαι[4] τὰς δυνάμεις ἀσθενεῖς. 16. οὗτοι ἱκανοὶ ἦσαν τὰς ἀκροπόλεις φυλάττειν. 17. τοῦτον γὰρ ὁ ἐμὸς πατὴρ ἔδωκεν ὑπήκοον εἶναι ἐμοί. 18. αἱ γὰρ σφενδόναι διὰ τὸ χειροπληθέσι τοῖς λίθοις σφενδονᾶν[5] ἐπὶ βραχὺ ἐξικνοῦνται. 19. αὕτη αὖ ἄλλη πρόφασις ἦν αὐτῷ τοῦ ἀθροίζειν στράτευμα. 20. πολλὰ ὑπισχνεῖ νῦν, ὦ Κῦρε, διὰ τὸ ἐν τοιούτῳ εἶναι τοῦ κινδύνου προσιόντος. 21. εἶπεν ὅτι σπείσασθαι βούλοιτο. 22. ταύτην τὴν χώρᾱν ἐπέτρεψε διαρπάσαι τοῖς Ἕλλησι. 23. τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἐβόᾱ ἄγειν τὸ στράτευμα κατὰ μέσον τὸ τῶν πολεμίων. 24. ἔδοξε βασιλεῦς καὶ Κύρῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀπεγνωκέναι τοῦ μάχεσθαι.[6]

Examine the infinitives in 2, 5, 8 (εἰπεῖν), 13, and the verbs with which they are connected as subject nominatives.

Review 352.

Examine the infinitives in 6, 8 (εἶναι), 9 (εἶναι), 24 (ἀπεγνωκέναι), and note the meaning of the verbs on which they depend.

---

[1] See 188 a.

[2] *courageously*, dat. plur. of the partic. qualifying the unexpressed subj. of διώκειν, but assimilated in case to ἱππεῦσιν. The partic. expresses manner (379).

[3] In the original ἂν πάθοιμι.

[4] For τῷ διεσπάσθαι, see 775. The subj. of the infin. is τὰς δυνάμεις.

[5] *Sc.* τοὺς σφενδονήτᾱς as subj. of the infin.

[6] For τοῦ μάχεσθαι, see 755.

Review 354, and re-examine in 835 the infinitives in indirect discourse in 2, 3, 4, 6, 9, 11, 12, 15, 16, 17, 18, 20, 21, 23, 25, 30.

Examine the infinitives in 1, 7, 21, 23, and the verbs on which they depend as object accusatives.

Review 355.

Examine the infinitives in 3, 9 (*περιγενέσθαι*), 10, 14, 16, and the adjectives and the substantive on which they depend.

850. Rule of Syntax. — The infinitive may depend on adjectives or substantives, especially those which express *ability, fitness,* or the like.

Examine the infinitives in 17, 22, and observe that they express purpose.

851. Rule of Syntax. — The infinitive may express the *purpose* of an action.

Examine the infinitives in 11, 12, 18, 20, and observe that they have the neuter article and depend on prepositions.

852. Rule of Syntax. — The infinitive with the neuter article may depend on a preposition.

Examine the infinitives in 4, 15, 19, 24 (*μάχεσθαι*), and observe that they have the neuter article and are used as substantives in the genitive or dative.

853. Rule of Syntax. — The genitive and dative of the infinitive, with the neuter article, may stand in most of the constructions belonging to those cases.

For the infinitive with *πρίν* and *ὥστε*, see 823 and 824.

854. EXERCISE.

1. It seemed best to them to go away. 2. And the station was near, where he was about to halt. 3. It is not, therefore, a time for us to be sleeping. 4. But it was a most fearful (thing) to see. 5. They intrust their children to them to be educated.[1] 6. It was manifest,[2] therefore, that Menon desired

[1] Use the *active* of the infin., *to educate*.

[2] See 839 b.

to be rich. 7. But the peltasts must[1] pursue. 8. The fairest equipment befits victory.[2] 9. He accomplished this by[3] being[4] severe. 10. For I should be able in this way to benefit my friends. 11. And they said they would give up the dead. 12. It is safer for them to flee than for us. 13. But when[5] it was now evening, it was time for the enemy to go away. 14. For we have come to save you. 15. For he was stern in aspect.[6]

---

[1] Use δεῖ.
[2] Use the infin. (853) of νῑκάω in the dat. (768).
[3] ἐκ.
[4] Use the infin. (852).
[5] ἐπειδή.
[6] *stern to see.*

LESSON CXXXVII.

Reading Lesson.

855. ANABASIS I. viii. 4–16.

The troops of Cyrus fall into line as speedily as possible (4, 5). The armour of the body-guard of Cyrus and of their horses is described (6, 7). Toward evening the enemy appear, marching in solid squares, with their chariots in the van. They approach slowly and in silence, prepared for battle (8–11). Cyrus calls to Clearchus to attack the centre where the king is, but he is unwilling to do this (12, 13). The king's troops continue to advance, the Greek force being not yet completely in line. Cyrus surveys both armies, and tells Xenophon, who rides up to him, to announce that the sacrifices are favourable (14, 15). The watchword passes down the line of the Greeks from man to man and then back again (16).

VIII.

ἔνθα δὴ σὺν πολλῇ σπουδῇ καθίσταντο, Κλέ- 4
αρχος μὲν τὰ δεξιὰ τοῦ κέρᾱτος ἔχων πρὸς τῷ
Εὐφρᾱ́τῃ ποταμῷ, Πρόξενος δὲ ἐχόμενος, οἱ δ'

---

2. **τὰ δεξιὰ τοῦ κέρατος**, *the right* (*sc.* μέρη, *parts*) *of the wing.* κέρας here refers to the whole Greek force (τὸ Ἑλληνικόν), which was the right

ἄλλοι μετὰ τοῦτον, Μένων δὲ καὶ τὸ στράτευμα
τὸ εὐώνυμον κέρας ἔσχε τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ. τοῦ δὲ 5
βαρβαρικοῦ ἱππεῖς μὲν Παφλαγόνες εἰς χιλίους
παρὰ Κλέαρχον ἔστησαν ἐν τῷ δεξιῷ καὶ τὸ
Ἑλληνικὸν πελταστικόν, ἐν δὲ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ Ἀρι-
αῖός τε ὁ Κύρου ὕπαρχος καὶ τὸ ἄλλο βαρβαρικόν.
Κῦρος δὲ καὶ οἱ ἱππεῖς τούτου ὅσον ἑξακόσιοι 6
ὡπλισμένοι θώραξι μὲν αὐτοὶ καὶ παραμηριδίοις
καὶ κράνεσι πάντες πλὴν Κύρου· Κῦρος δὲ ψιλὴν
ἔχων τὴν κεφαλὴν εἰς τὴν μάχην καθίστατο. οἱ 7
δ' ἵπποι πάντες οἱ μετὰ Κύρου εἶχον καὶ προμετω-
πίδια καὶ προστερνίδια· εἶχον δὲ καὶ μαχαίρας οἱ
ἱππεῖς Ἑλληνικάς. καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν μέσον ἡμέρας 8
καὶ οὔπω καταφανεῖς ἦσαν οἱ πολέμιοι· ἠνίκα δὲ
δείλη ἐγίγνετο, ἐφάνη κονιορτὸς ὥσπερ νεφέλη
λευκή, χρόνῳ δὲ συχνῷ ὕστερον ὥσπερ μελανίᾳ
τις ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἐπὶ πολύ. ὅτε δὲ ἐγγύτερον ἐγί-
γνοντο, τάχα δὴ καὶ χαλκός τις ἤστραπτε καὶ αἱ
λόγχαι καὶ αἱ τάξεις καταφανεῖς ἐγίγνοντο. καὶ 9
ἦσαν ἱππεῖς μὲν λευκοθώρακες ἐπὶ τοῦ εὐωνύ-
μου τῶν πολεμίων· Τισσαφέρνης ἐλέγετο τούτων

---

wing of the entire force of Cyrus. κέρας in l. 5 refers only to a *part* of this same Greek division (or κέρας). — 5. **τοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ**: with ἱππεῖς (743, 6). Note τὸ ἄλλο βαρβαρικόν in l. 9. — 6. **χιλίους**: note the case and cf. 498, I. 12. — 7. **ἔστησαν**: *took their position* (second aor.). The Paphlagonian cavalry and light-armed Greek troops were placed at the extreme right to support the heavy-armed troops of Clearchus. — 10. **Κῦρος καὶ οἱ ἱππεῖς τούτου**: *sc.* ἔστησαν. — **ὅσον**, *about*. — 11. **θώραξι μὲν αὐτοί**: the arming of the men *themselves* is contrasted with that of the horses (οἱ δ' ἵπποι in l. 13). — 12. **πάντες πλὴν Κύρου**: the exception extends only to κράνεσι, as appears from what follows. — 19. **χρόνῳ . . . πολύ**, *but some time* (776) *later* (*the cloud of dust appeared*) *just like a sort of blackness in the plain*

ἄρχειν· ἐχόμενοι δὲ τούτων γερροφόροι, ἐχόμενοι δὲ ὁπλῖται σὺν ποδήρεσι ξυλίναις ἀσπίσιν· Αἰγύπτιοι δ' οὗτοι ἐλέγοντο εἶναι· ἄλλοι δ' ἱππεῖς, ἄλλοι τοξόται. πάντες δ' οὗτοι κατὰ ἔθνη ἐν πλαισίῳ πλήρει ἀνθρώπων ἕκαστον τὸ ἔθνος ἐπορεύετο. πρὸ δὲ αὐτῶν ἅρματα διαλείποντα συχνὸν 10
ἀπ' ἀλλήλων τὰ δὴ δρεπανηφόρα καλούμενα· εἶχον δὲ τὰ δρέπανα ἐκ τῶν ἀξόνων εἰς πλάγιον ἀποτεταμένα καὶ ὑπὸ τοῖς δίφροις εἰς γῆν βλέποντα, ὡς διακόπτειν ὅτῳ ἐντυγχάνοιεν. ἡ δὲ γνώμη ἦν ὡς εἰς τὰς τάξεις τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐλῶντα καὶ διακόψοντα. ὃ μέντοι Κῦρος εἶπεν ὅτε καλέσας παρε- 11
κελεύετο οἷς Ἕλλησι τὴν κραυγὴν τῶν βαρβάρων ἀνέχεσθαι, ἐψεύσθη τοῦτο· οὐ γὰρ κραυγῇ ἀλλὰ σῑγῇ ὡς ἀνυστὸν καὶ ἡσυχῇ ἐν ἴσῳ καὶ βραδέως προσῇσιν. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ Κῦρος παρελαύνων 12
αὐτὸς σὺν Πίγρητι τῷ ἑρμηνεῖ καὶ ἄλλοις τρισὶν ἢ τέτταρσι τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἐβόᾱ ἄγειν τὸ στράτευμα κατὰ μέσον τὸ τῶν πολεμίων, ὅτι ἐκεῖ βασιλεὺς

---

for a great distance. — 25. **τούτων**: see 746. — 28. **πάντες . . . ἐπορεύετο**, *but these were all proceeding nation by nation, each nation* (ἕκαστον τὸ ἔθνος in apps. with οὗτοι) *in the form of a solid square.* **ἐπορεύετο** (for ἐπορεύοντο) ἡ attracted into agreement with ἔθνος, which intervenes between the verb and its subj. — 30. **ἅρματα**: *sc.* ἦν. — **συχνόν**: *sc.* χωρίον (735). — 33. **ὡς διακόπτειν**: *cf.* 816, 29, and note. See also 824 a. — 34. **ὅτῳ ἐντυγχάνοιεν**: we might have had ὅτῳ ἂν ἐντυγχάνωσιν to express the thought in the form in which it was originally conceived. See 846. — **ἡ δὲ γνώμη . . . διακόψοντα**, *they were intended to drive* (fut. of ἐλαύνω), *etc.* The participles are nom., as if γνώμην εἶχεν (*sc.* τὰ ἅρματα) had preceded; and ὡς is used with the future participles of purpose as if the chariots themselves had the intention. See note on 706, 16. — 38. **ἐψεύσθη τοῦτο**, *this* (733) *he was mistaken.* τοῦτο repeats the relative clause. — 39. **ἐν ἴσῳ**, *with even step.* — 43. **ὅτι εἴη**: we might have had ἦν. See 781,

εἴη· κἂν τοῦτ', ἔφη, νικῶμεν, πάνθ' ἡμῖν πεποίη-
45 ται. ὁρῶν δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος τὸ μέσον στῖφος καὶ 13
ἀκούων Κύρου ἔξω ὄντα τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ εὐωνύμου
βασιλέᾱ (τοσοῦτον γὰρ πλήθει περιῆν βασιλεὺς
ὥστε μέσον τὸ ἑαυτοῦ ἔχων τοῦ Κύρου εὐωνύμου
ἔξω ἦν) — ἀλλ' ὅμως ὁ Κλέαρχος οὐκ ἤθελεν ἀπο-
50 σπάσαι ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὸ δεξιὸν κέρας, φοβού-
μενος μὴ κυκλωθείη ἑκατέρωθεν. τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ 14
ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι αὐτῷ μέλοι ὅπως καλῶς ἔχοι. καὶ
ἐν τούτῳ τῷ καιρῷ τὸ μὲν βαρβαρικὸν στράτευμα
ὁμαλῶς προῄει, τὸ δὲ Ἑλληνικὸν ἔτι ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ
55 μένον συνετάττετο ἐκ τῶν ἔτι προσιόντων. καὶ ὁ
Κῦρος παρελαύνων οὐ πάνυ πρὸς αὐτῷ τῷ στρα-
τεύματι κατεθεᾶτο ἑκατέρωσε ἀποβλέπων εἴς τε
τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ τοὺς φίλους. ἰδὼν δὲ αὐτὸν 15
ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος, ἐπελάσᾱς
60 ὡς συναντῆσαι ἤρετο εἴ τι παραγγέλλοι· ὁ δ'
ἐπιστήσᾱς εἶπε καὶ λέγειν ἐκέλευσε πᾶσι ὅτι καὶ

---

846 a. — 44. **κἂν νικῶμεν**: see 273. The apodosis **πεποίηται**, although a perf. in form, still refers vividly to the future, *our whole task is well have been) done.* — **ἡμῖν**: see 224. — 45. **ὁρῶν . . . στῖφος**, *although he saw* (concessive, 379) *the compact body at the centre*, i.e. the 6000 cavalry men mentioned in 848, 3. **ἀκούων** is also concessive. — 46. **Κύρου**, *from Cyrus* (p. 188 b). — **ὄντα βασιλέᾱ**, *that the king was* 839. — 47. **πλήθει**, *in respect to numbers*, a dat. of manner (775) expressing *respect*. — 49. **ἀλλ' ὅμως**, *but still*, resuming the narrative after the parenthesis, with emphatic repetition of **ὁ Κλέαρχος**. — 52. **ὅτι . . . ἔχοι**: Clearchus said, **μοὶ μέλει ὅπως καλῶς ἔχῃ** (*sc.* **τὰ πράγματα**). See 845. — 53. **τὸ βαρβαρικὸν στράτευμα**: the king's army. — 55. **μένον**: nom. sing. neut. of the present partic. — **συνετάττετο . . . προσιόντων**, *was forming its line from those still coming up.* — 56. **οὐ πάνυ πρός**, *not very near*, i.e. *at some distance from.* — 57. **ἑκατέρωσε**: with **ἀποβλέπων**. — 60. **ὡς συναντῆσαι**: *cf.* l. 3 above, and note. — **εἴ τι παραγγέλλοι**, *whether he had any orders* (830). — 61. **ἐπι-**

τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ καὶ τὰ σφάγια καλά. ταῦτα δὲ λέγων θορύβου ἤκουσε διὰ τῶν τάξεων ἰόντος, καὶ ἤρετο τίς ὁ θόρυβος εἴη. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπεν ὅτι τὸ σύνθημα παρέρχεται δεύτερον ἤδη. καὶ ὃς ἐθαύμασε τίς παραγγέλλει καὶ ἤρετο ὅ τι εἴη τὸ σύνθημα. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο ΖΕΥΣ ΣΩΤΗΡ ΚΑΙ ΝΙΚΗ.

στήσᾱς, *pulling up (sc. τὸν ἵππον)*. — 64. **ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος**: Clearchus had ridden up in the meantime. — 65. **καὶ ὅς**, *and he, i.e.* Cyrus. The relative is here used as a demonstrative. — 66. **τίς παραγγέλλει**, *who was giving it out*, without his approval.

Make a special study of the prepositions used in composition in this Reading Lesson (ἀνα-, 38; ἀπο-, 32, 49, 52, 57, 67; δια-, 30, 35; ἐν-, 34; ἐπι-, 61; κατα-, 1, 13, 57; παρα-, 36, 40, 56, 60, 65, 66; περι-, 47; προ-, 54; προσ-, 40, 55; συν-, 55, 60; ὑπο-, 59), according to the directions previously given.

LESSON CXXXVIII.

The Participle.

856. EXERCISE.

1. ἀλλ' ὑποχωρούντων φανερὰ ἦσαν καὶ ἵππων καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἴχνη πολλά. 2. τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ ἐπί τε τοῦ ἅρματος καθήμενος τὴν πορείαν ἐποιεῖτο καὶ ὀλίγους ἐν τάξει ἔχων πρὸ αὑτοῦ, τὸ δὲ πολὺ αὐτῷ ἀνατεταραγμένον ἐπορεύετο. 3. ἤδη ἦν ἀμφὶ ἀγορὰν πλήθουσαν. 4. Ὀρόντᾱν προσεκύνησαν, καίπερ εἰδότες ὅτι ἐπὶ θάνατον ἄγοιτο. 5. καὶ συλλαμβάνει Κῦρον ὡς ἀποκτενῶν. 6. πυνθάνεται βασιλεὺς Κῦρον προσελαύνοντα. 7. ἐπειδὴ πεπτωκότα εἶδε Κῦρον, καταπηδήσᾱς ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου περιέπεσεν αὐτῷ. 8. ὁ δ' ἔχαιρε ταῦτα ἀκούων. 9. πειθομένοις ὑμῖν οὐ μεταμελήσει. 10. ἐγὼ οὖν οὔποτε ἐπαυόμην βασιλέᾱ μακαρίζων, διαθεώμενος ὅσην

χώρᾱν ἔχοι. 11. ὁ πρεσβύτερος παρὼν ἐτύγχανεν. 12. μετὰ τοῦτον ἄλλος ἀνέστη, ἐπιδεικνὺς τὴν εὐήθειαν τοῦ τὰ πλοῖα αἰτεῖν κελεύοντος. 13. καὶ διετέλουν χρώμενοι τοῖς τῶν πολεμίων τοξεύμασιν. 14. βουλοίμην δ' ἂν ἄκοντος[1] ἀπιὼν Κύρου λαθεῖν αὐτὸν ἀπελθών. 15. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἱππεῖς καὶ φεύγοντες ἅμα ἐτίτρωσκον εἰς τοὔπισθεν τοξεύοντες ἀπὸ τῶν ἵππων. 16. παρήγγειλε τοῖς φρουράρχοις λαμβάνειν ἄνδρας ὅτι πλείστους ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοντος Τισσαφέρνους ταῖς πόλεσιν. 17. οἱ πολέμιοι οὐδὲν ἐπαύσαντο δι' ὅλης τῆς νυκτὸς κυλίνδοντες τοὺς λίθους. 18. καὶ κατέκοψάν τινας τῶν ἐσκεδασμένων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. 19. ταῦτα τὰ ἔθνη ἂν παύσαιμι ἐνοχλοῦντα ἀεὶ τῇ ὑμετέρᾳ εὐδαιμονίᾳ. 20. μετὰ ταῦτα ἤδη ἡλίου δύνοντος ἔλεξε τοιάδε. 21. καὶ τοῖς ἱππεῦσιν εἴρητο θαρροῦσι διώκειν ὡς ἐφεψομένης ἱκανῆς δυνάμεως. 22. ταῦτα δὲ λέγων θορύβου ἤκουσε διὰ τῶν τάξεων ἰόντος.[2] 23. πέμπωμεν δὲ προκαταληψομένους τὰ ἄκρα, ὅπως μὴ φθάσωσιν οἱ Κίλικες καταλαβόντες. 24. οὗτοι δὲ προσελθόντες καὶ καλέσαντες τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἄρχοντας λέγουσιν ὅτι βασιλεὺς κελεύει τοὺς Ἕλληνας, ἐπεὶ νικῶν τυγχάνει καὶ Κῦρον ἀπέκτονε, παραδόντας τὰ ὅπλα ἰόντας ἐπὶ τὰς βασιλέως θύρᾱς εὑρίσκεσθαι ἄν τι δύνωνται ἀγαθόν.

857. The participle has three uses. First, it may express an *attribute*, qualifying a substantive like an ordinary adjective; secondly, it may define the *circumstances* under which an action takes place; thirdly, it may be joined to certain verbs to *supplement* their meaning, often having a force resembling that of the infinitive.

Examine the attributive participles in 1, 3, 12 (ἐπιδεικνύς), and observe that they are used as attributive adjectives.

Review 369.

---

[1] *Sc.* ὄντος.

[2] *Not* in indirect discourse. The supplementary partic. may be used to denote the act in which an object is perceived, as here, *heard a noise go*.

Examine the attributive participles in 12 (κελεύοντος), 18, 24 (ἄρχοντας), and observe that they are used substantively with the article after the analogy of adjectives (718).

Review 371.

Examine the circumstantial participles in 2, 4, 5, 7 (καταπηδήσᾱς), 10 (διαθεώμενος), 14 (ἀπιών), 15, 21 (θαρροῦσι), 22 (λέγων), 23 (προκαταληψομένους), 24 (προσελθόντες, καλέσαντες, παραδόντας, ἰόντας), and observe that they are adverbial in their nature and express relations of *time, cause, manner, means, purpose, condition, concession,* and *attendant circumstance.*

Review 379.

Examine the circumstantial participles in 14 (ὄντος), 16, 20, 21 (ἐφεψομένης), and observe that they are used in the genitive absolute, and express relations of *time, cause, etc.,* as above.

Review 762.

858. Circumstantial participles, especially those denoting *cause* or *purpose,* are often preceded by ὡς. This shows that they express the idea or the assertion of the subject of the leading verb or that of some other person prominent in the sentence, *without implying* that it is also the idea of the speaker or writer. Examine 5, 16, 21.

Examine the supplementary participles in 8, 9, 10 (μακαρίζων), 13, 17, 19, and observe that they complete the idea expressed by the verb and closely resemble the infinitive.

859. Rule of Syntax. — The supplementary participle completes the idea expressed by the verb, by showing to what its action relates. It may belong to either the subject or the object of the verb, and it agrees with it in case.

a. In this sense the participle is used with verbs signifying to *begin, continue, endure, persevere, cease, repent, be weary, be pleased, displeased,* or *ashamed.*

Examine the supplementary participles in 11, 14 (ἀπελθών), 23 (καταλαβόντες), 24 (νῑκῶν), note the verbs with which they are connected, and observe that the participle contains the leading idea of the expression.

860. Rule of Syntax.—The participle with *λανθάνω, escape the notice of, τυγχάνω, happen,* and *φθάνω, anticipate,* contains the leading idea of the expression and is usually to be translated by a finite verb.

a. The aorist participle here coincides in time with the principal verb, and does not, according to the rule for the participle (372), in itself denote past time.

Examine the supplementary participles in 6, 7 (*πεπτωκότα*), and observe that they are used in indirect discourse.

Review 839, and re-examine in 835 the participles in indirect discourse in 1, 5, 7, 8, 10, 13, 14, 19, 22, 24, 26, 27, 28, 29.

861. EXERCISE.

1. But these got[1] above the enemy (who were) following.[2] 2. For those who had been wounded were many. 3. And another army was secretly[3] supported for him in Thrace. 4. For they have ceased to war with one another.[4] 5. He happened to have money. 6. We came and encamped near him. 7. A square is a bad arrangement when enemies are following. 8. We attacked[5] them while (they were) crossing the ravine. 9. He went up upon the mountains without opposition.[6] 10. When this had been said, they arose. 11. I therefore never ceased to pity you. 12. Let us therefore attack those who are burning the ships. 13. He immediately crossed the river with his soldiers. 14. The enemy appeared while the Greeks were crossing the river. 15. They then announced that the generals had all suffered death.[7] 16. Though he continues to send for me, I am not willing to go. 17. He suffered no injury, though he had (only) a few soldiers (with him).

---

[1] Use *γίγνομαι*.
[2] Put the partic. in the attributive position.
[3] *Cf.* 856, 14.
[4] See 773.
[5] Use *ἐπιτίθημι*.
[6] *nobody opposing.*
[7] Use *ἀποθνήσκω*.

LESSON CXXXIX.

Reading Lesson.

862. ANABASIS I. viii. 17–29.

Cyrus accepts the watchword, and returns to his own place. The Greeks sing the paean and advance (17). They break into a run, and raise the war-cry (18), at which the barbarians on the left of the king's army give way and take flight (19). The enemies' chariots do little execution (20). Cyrus is pleased at the enemies' defeat, but does not join in the pursuit. He directs his attention towards the king, who is beyond his extreme left, and then, in fear that the Greeks may be encircled, moves directly upon him and puts to rout the troops in front (21–24). He attacks the king in person and wounds him, but is himself struck with a javelin, and in the fierce fight that ensues is killed. Artapates dies upon his body (25–29).

VIII.

ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἀκούσᾱς, Ἀλλὰ δέχομαί τε, ἔφη, 17
καὶ τοῦτο ἔστω. ταῦτα δ' εἰπὼν εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ
χώρᾱν ἀπήλαυνε· καὶ οὐκέτι τρία ἢ τέτταρα
στάδια διειχέτην τὼ φάλαγγε ἀπ' ἀλλήλων ἡνίκα
ἐπαιάνιζόν τε οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ προήρχοντο ἀντίοι
ἰέναι τοῖς πολεμίοις. ὡς δὲ πορευομένων ἐξεκύ 18
μαινέ τι τῆς φάλαγγος, τὸ ἐπιλειπόμενον ἤρξατο
δρόμῳ θεῖν· καὶ ἅμα ἐφθέγξαντο πάντες οἷόνπερ
τῷ Ἐνυαλίῳ ἐλελίζουσι, καὶ πάντες δὲ ἔθεον.
λέγουσι δέ τινες ὡς καὶ ταῖς ἀσπίσι πρὸς τὰ
δόρατα ἐδούπησαν, φόβον ποιοῦντες τοῖς ἵπποις.
πρὶν δὲ τόξευμα ἐξικνεῖσθαι, ἐκκλίνουσιν οἱ βάρ- 19

1. **Ἀλλὰ δέχομαι**, *well, I accept it* (the pass-word). ἀλλά marks the opposition between his present concession and previous surprise. — 6. **πορευομένων**: *sc.* αὐτῶν, *as they proceeded* (762). — 11. **ἵπποις**: see

βαροι καὶ φεύγουσι. καὶ ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐδίωκον μὲν κατὰ κράτος οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐβόων δὲ ἀλλήλοις μὴ θεῖν δρόμῳ, ἀλλ' ἐν τάξει ἕπεσθαι. τὰ δ' ἄρματα ἐφέροντο τὰ μὲν δι' αὐτῶν τῶν πολεμίων, τὰ δὲ καὶ διὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων κενὰ ἡνιόχων. οἱ δ' ἐπεὶ προΐδοιεν, διίσταντο· ἔστι δ' ὅστις καὶ κατελήφθη ὥσπερ ἐν ἱπποδρόμῳ ἐκπλαγείς· καὶ οὐδὲν μέντοι οὐδὲ τοῦτον παθεῖν ἔφασαν, οὐδ' ἄλλος δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ ἔπαθεν οὐδεὶς οὐδέν, πλὴν ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ τοξευθῆναί τις ἐλέγετο. Κῦρος δ' ὁρῶν τοὺς Ἕλληνας νικῶντας τὸ καθ' αὐτοὺς καὶ διώκοντας, ἡδόμενος καὶ προσκυνούμενος ἤδη ὡς βασιλεὺς ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφ' αὐτόν, οὐδ' ὡς ἐξήχθη διώκειν, ἀλλὰ συνεσπειραμένην ἔχων τὴν τῶν σὺν ἑαυτῷ ἑξακοσίων ἱππέων τάξιν ἐπεμελεῖτο ὅ τι ποιήσει βασιλεύς. καὶ γὰρ ᾔδει αὐτὸν ὅτι μέσον ἔχοι τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος. καὶ πάντες δ' οἱ τῶν βαρβάρων ἄρχοντες μέσον ἔχοντες τὸ αὑτῶν ἡγοῦνται, νομίζοντες οὕτω καὶ ἐν ἀσφαλεστάτῳ εἶναι, ἢν ᾖ ἡ ἰσχὺς αὐτῶν ἑκατέρωθεν, καὶ εἴ τι παραγγεῖλαι χρήζοιεν, ἥμισει ἂν χρόνῳ αἰσθάνεσθαι τὸ στράτευμα. καὶ βασιλεὺς

769. — 16. **τὰ μέν, τὰ δέ**: in appos. with ἅρματα. — 17. **ἡνιόχων**: see 760. — 18. **ἐπεὶ προΐδοιεν**: see 813. **ἔστι δ' ὅστις**: we should expect ἦν δέ τις ὅς. *Cf.* ἦν οἷς in 810, 13, and note. — **κατελήφθη ἐκπλαγείς**. *in his consternation was caught* (*i.e.* by failing to get out of the way of an oncoming chariot). — 19. **καὶ . . . ἔφασαν**. *and yet they said that not even he suffered any harm.* — 20. **οὐδὲ . . . δέ**: the negative expression corresponding to καὶ . . . δέ. *Cf.* 706, 7, and note. — **οὐδ' οὐδεὶς οὐδέν**: emphatic negation (p. 202 ²). — 28. **ᾔδει αὐτὸν ὅτι ἔχοι**, *knew him that he had, i.e. knew that he had.* — 30. **μέσον τὸ αὑτῶν**: see 719 and 743, 1. — 33. **ἂν αἰσθάνεσθαι**: in the original ἂν αἰσθάνοιτο (354), the apodosis to εἰ

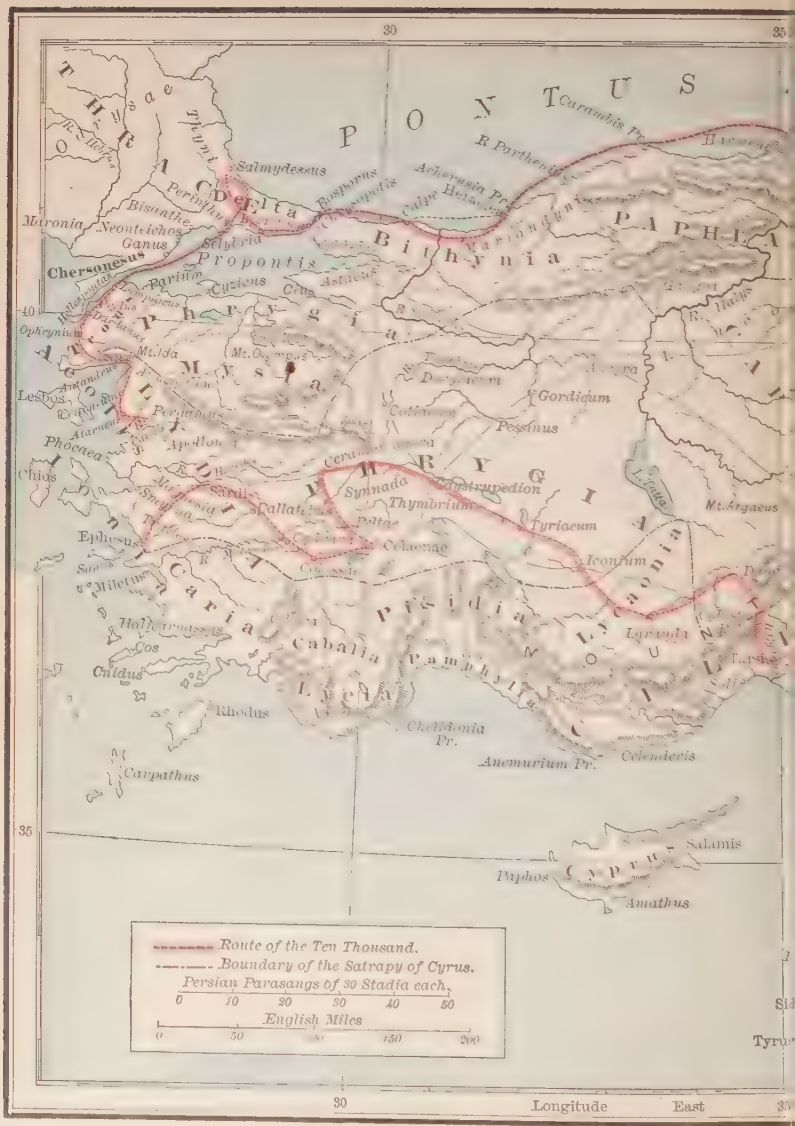
35 δὴ τότε μέσον ἔχων τῆς αὐτοῦ στρατιᾶς ὅμως ἔξω
ἐγένετο τοῦ Κύρου εὐωνύμου κέρατος. ἐπεὶ δὲ
οὐδεὶς αὐτῷ ἐμάχετο ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου οὐδὲ τοῖς αὐτοῦ
τεταγμένοις ἔμπροσθεν, ἐπέκαμπτεν ὡς εἰς κύκλω-
σιν. ἔνθα δὴ Κῦρος δείσᾱς μὴ ὄπισθεν γενό- 24
40 μενος κατακόψῃ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ἐλαύνει ἀντίος·
καὶ ἐμβαλὼν σὺν τοῖς ἑξακοσίοις νῑκᾷ τοὺς πρὸ
βασιλέως τεταγμένους καὶ εἰς φυγὴν ἔτρεψε τοὺς
ἑξακισχῑλίους, καὶ ἀποκτεῖναι λέγεται αὐτὸς τῇ
ἑαυτοῦ χειρὶ Ἀρταγέρσην τὸν ἄρχοντα αὐτῶν.
45 ὡς δ' ἡ τροπὴ ἐγένετο, διασπείρονται καὶ οἱ 25
Κύρου ἑξακόσιοι εἰς τὸ διώκειν ὁρμήσαντες, πλὴν
πάνυ ὀλίγοι ἀμφ' αὐτὸν κατελείφθησαν, σχεδὸν
οἱ ὁμοτράπεζοι καλούμενοι. σὺν τούτοις δὲ ὢν 26
καθορᾷ βασιλέᾱ καὶ τὸ ἀμφ' ἐκεῖνον στῖφος· καὶ
50 εὐθὺς οὐκ ἠνέσχετο, ἀλλ' εἰπὼν Τὸν ἄνδρα ὁρῶ,
ἵετο ἐπ' αὐτὸν καὶ παίει κατὰ τὸ στέρνον καὶ
τιτρώσκει διὰ τοῦ θώρᾱκος, ὥς φησι Κτησίᾱς ὁ
ἰᾱτρὸς καὶ ἰᾶσθαι αὐτὸς τὸ τραῦμά φησι. παί- 27
οντα δ' αὐτὸν ἀκοντίζει τις παλτῷ ὑπὸ τὸν ὀφθαλ-
55 μὸν βιαίως· καὶ ἐνταῦθα μαχόμενοι καὶ βασιλεὺς
καὶ Κῦρος καὶ οἱ ἀμφ' αὐτοὺς ὑπὲρ ἑκατέρου, ὁπό-

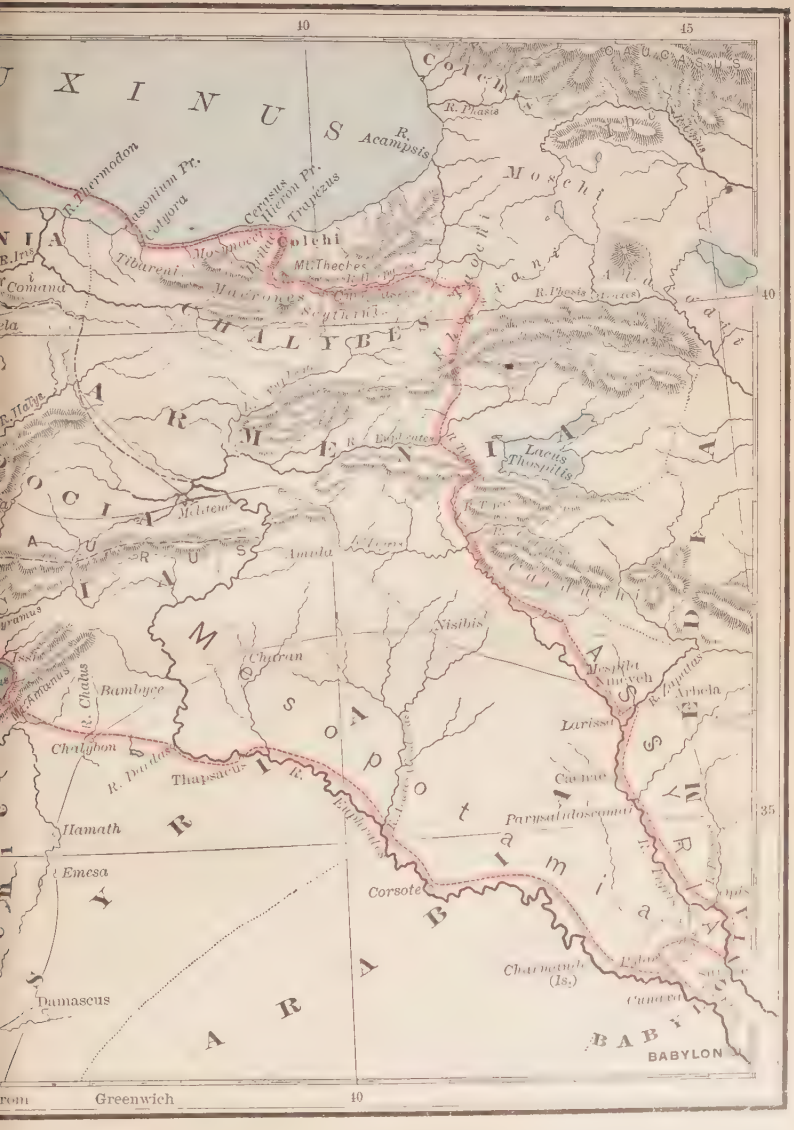
. . . χρήζοιεν. — 39. **γενόμενος**: *i.e.* ἐὰν γένηται (379). — 47. **σχεδὸν . . . καλούμενοι**, *chiefly his so called table-companions.* — 49. **τὸ ἀμφ' ἐκεῖνον στῖφος**: the king's ὁμοτράπεζοι, probably, who, now that the 6000 had fled, rallied about him in a compact body (στῖφος) for his protection. — 53. **καὶ ἰᾶσθαι . . . φησι**, *he says that he himself cured the wound.* Ctesias said ἰώμην (impf.) αὐτὸς τὸ τραῦμα. The present infin. in indirect discourse (354) sometimes represents the *imperfect* indic., against the rule that in Greek the tense does not change in quotation. This results from the fact that there is no imperfect infin.; but the construction is allowed only when the time of the infin. is made clear by the context. —

σοι μὲν τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλέᾱ ἀπέθνησκον Κτησίας
λέγει· παρ' ἐκείνῳ γὰρ ἦν· Κῦρος δὲ αὐτός τε
ἀπέθανε καὶ ὀκτὼ οἱ ἄριστοι τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν
60 ἔκειντο ἐπ' αὐτῷ. Ἀρταπάτης δ' ὁ πιστότατος 28
αὐτῷ τῶν σκηπτούχων θεράπων λέγεται, ἐπειδὴ
πεπτωκότα εἶδε Κῦρον, καταπηδήσᾱς ἀπὸ τοῦ
ἵππου περιπεσεῖν αὐτῷ. καὶ οἱ μέν φᾱσι βασιλέᾱ 29
κελεῦσαί τινα ἐπισφάξαι αὐτὸν Κύρῳ, οἱ δ' ἑαυτὸν
65 ἐπισφάξασθαι σπασάμενον τὸν ἀκινάκην· εἶχε
γὰρ χρῡσοῦν· καὶ στρεπτὸν δ' ἐφόρει καὶ ψέλια
καὶ τἆλλα ὥσπερ οἱ ἄριστοι Περσῶν· ἐτετίμητο
γὰρ ὑπὸ Κύρου δι' εὐνοιάν τε καὶ πιστότητα.

60. ὁ πιστότατος αὐτῷ θεράπων, *the attendant most in his confidence*. — 63. περιπεσεῖν αὐτῷ, *to have fallen about him* (774), *i.e.* so as to embrace him. — 64. ἐπισφάξαι αὐτὸν Κυρῳ, *to slay him* (Artapates) *over Cyrus* (774), *i.e.* as a sacrifice. — ἑαυτὸν ἐπισφάξασθαι: strongly reflexive, ἑαυτόν being added to the verb in the mid. (196).

Make a special study of the prepositions used in composition in this Reading Lesson (ἀνα-, 50; ἀπο-, 3, 43, 57, 59; διᾰ-, 4, 18, 45; ἐν-, 41; ἐξ-, 6, 12 (*bis*), 19, 26; ἐπι-, 7, 28, 38, 64, 65; κατα-, 18, 40, 47, 49, 62; παρα-, 33; περι-, 63; προ-, 5, 18; συν-, 26), according to the directions previously given.


30
35
PONTUS
Thyniae
Mygdones
Bithynia
PAPHLA
Propontis
Chersonesus
Mysia
Lydia
Caria
Pisidia
Cabalia
Pamphylia
Lycaonia
Salmydessus
Bosporus
Mitronia
Parium
Cyzicus
Lesbos
Phocaea
Chios
Ephesus
Miletus
Halicarnassus
Cos
Cnidus
Rhodus
Carpathus
Gordium
Pessinus
Synnada
Thymbrium
Tyriaeum
Iconium
Celaenae
Mt. Argaeus
Anemurium Pr.
Celenderis
Salamis
Paphos
Amathus
Route of the Ten Thousand.
Boundary of the Satrapy of Cyrus.
Persian Parasangs of 30 Stadia each.
0 10 20 30 40 50
English Miles
0 50 100 150 200
30
Longitude East


40
45
X I N U S
R. Acampsis
Colchi
R. Thermodon
Jasonium Pr.
Coltyora
Cerasus
Hieron Pr.
Trapezus
Moschi
R. Phasis
Tibareni
Comana
Macrones
Mt. Thoches
Mt. Moschici
Colchi
Scythini
CHALYBES
R. Halys
ARMENIA
Lacus Thospitis
Melitene
Amida
R. Tigris
Mesopotamia
Chyran
Bambyce
R. Chalus
Chalybon
R. Euphrates
Thapsacus
Hamath
Emesa
Corsote
Parsalutoscamus
Carrae
Arbela
Larissa
ASSYRIA
Charmande (Is.)
Damascus
BABYLONIA
BABYLON
Greenwich
40
35

VOCABULARIES.

I. GREEK-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

II. ENGLISH-GREEK VOCABULARY.

ABBREVIATIONS.

abl. = ablative.
abs., absol. = absolute, -ly.
acc. = accusative.
act. = active, -ly.
adj. = adjective, -ly.
adv. = adverb, adverbial, -ly.
antec. = antecedent.
aor. = aorist.
apod. = apodosis.
appos. = apposition, appositive.
art. = article.
attrib. = attributive.
cf. = *confer*, compare.
comm. = commonly.
comp. = comparative.
cond. = condition, conditional.
conj. = conjunction.
const. = construction.
contr. = contraction, contracted.
dat. = dative.
def. = definite.
dem., demon. = demonstrative.
dep. = deponent.
dim. = diminutive.
dir. = direct.
disc. = discourse.
e.g. = for example.
encl. = enclitic.
Eng. = English.
esp. = especial, -ly.
etc. = and so forth.
f., ff. = following.
fem. = feminine.
freq. = frequently.
fut. = future.
gen. = genitive.
i.e. = that is.
impers. = impersonal, -ly.
impf., imperf. = imperfect.
imv. = imperative.
indec., indecl. = indeclinable.
indef. = indefinite.
ind., indic. = indicative.
indir. = indirect.
inf., infin. = infinitive.
interr. = interrogative, -ly.
intr., intrans. = intransitive, -ly.
Lat. = Latin.
lit. = literal, -ly.
masc. = masculine.
mid. = middle.
neg. = negative, -ly.
neut. = neuter.
nom. = nominative.
obj. = object.
opt. = optative.
p., pp. = page, pages.
part., partic. = participle.
pass. = passive, -ly.
pers. = person, personal, -ly.
pf., perf. = perfect.
pl., plur. = plural.
plpf., plup. = pluperfect.
post-posit. = post-positive.
pred. = predicate.
prep. = preposition.
pres. = present.
pron. = pronoun.
prop. = proper, -ly.
prot. = protasis.
reflex. = reflexive, -ly.
rel. = relative, -ly.
R. = root.
Rem. = remark.
sc. = *scilicet*.
sec. = second.
sent. = sentence.
sing. = singular.
subj. = subject.
subjv. = subjunctive.
subst. = substantive, -ly.
sup. = superlative.
tr., trans. = transitive, -ly.
voc. = vocative.

VOCABULARIES.

I. GREEK-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

In the following Vocabulary the theme of each simple verb is given in parentheses directly after the present indicative unless the verb is of the First Class (595).

The small Roman numeral following the principal parts of a simple verb designates the class to which the verb belongs. When no small Roman numeral occurs, the verb is of the First Class. Compound verbs are not classified, nor are their themes or principal parts given, if the simple verb occurs elsewhere in the Vocabulary or presents no difficulties. Deponents that are regular have the aorist middle, unless it is stated that they are passive deponents. Arabic numerals refer to the sections of this book.

The form of the genitive is given for substantives of the A-declension, the gender is indicated in the O-declension, and both genitive and gender are given in the Consonant-declension.

The derivation of most words is indicated within brackets or by means of the dagger, which points up (†) or down (‡), or in both directions (‡) to some simpler related word or words. Arabic numerals within the brackets refer to the groups of related words previously given. If no indication of the derivation is given, the etymological connexion of the word is unknown, doubtful, or too difficult to be discussed here. The parts of compound words are separated by a hyphen.

ἀ-, an inseparable particle, (a) *negative;* (b) *copulative.* 424 a b.

ἄ, see **ὅς**.

ἄ-βατος, *ον* [*βαίνω*], *not to be trodden;* of mountains or a country, *impassable*, for men or horses.

Ἀβροκόμᾱς, *ā* (Dor. gen.), *Abrocomas*, satrap of Phoenicia and Syria, and commander of one fourth of the king's army.

Ἄβῡδος, *ἡ*, *Abȳdus*, a city of Troas, on the Hellespont.

ἀγαγεῖν, **ἀγάγῃ**, *etc.*, see **ἄγω**.

ἀγαθός, *ή*, *όν*, 469, *good* in the broadest sense (as opposed to *κακός*), *brave*, *expert*, *upright*, *noble*, *useful*, *excellent;* *ἀγαθόν*, *τό*, *good*, *good thing;* pl., *good things*, *blessings*, *supplies;* *καλὸς καὶ ἀγαθός*, *καλὸς κἀγαθός*, *noble and good*, 'gentleman'; *ἐπ' ἀγαθῷ*, *for one's good.*

ἄγαμαι, *ἠγασάμην*, *ἠγάσθην*, 647, 3, vii., *admire.*

†ἀγγέλλω (*αγγελ-*), *ἀγγελῶ*, *ἤγγειλα*, *ἤγγελκα*, *ἤγγελμαι*, *ἠγγέλθην*, 619, 1, iv., *bring news*, *announce*, *report.* 839.

ἄγγελος, *ὁ* [*angel*, *ev-angelist*], *messenger*, *scout*, *envoy*, *herald.*

ἀγείρω (*αγερ-*), *ἤγειρα*, iv., *collect.*

ἄγκῡρα, *ᾱς*, [*anchor*], *anchor.*

ἀ-γνώμων, *ον*, gen. *ονος* [644], *ignorant*, *thoughtless*, *senseless.*

ἀγορά, *ᾶς* [*ἀγείρω*], *assembly*, *meeting*, *place of assembly*, Lat. *forum*, esp. *market-place*, *market;* *ἀμφὶ ἀγορὰν πλήθουσαν*, *about the time of full market*, *forenoon.*

‡ἀγοράζω (*αγοραδ-*), *ἀγοράσω*, *etc.*, iv., *frequent the market*, *buy*, *purchase;* mid., *buy for oneself.*

ἄγριος, *ᾱ*, *ον* [435], *wild.*

ἄγω, ἄξω, ἤγαγον, ἦχα, ἦγμαι, ἤχθην, 604, 1 [435], *set going, drive, lead, bring, conduct, carry, convey*, intrans., *lead on, march, go*; ἄγε δή, ἄγετε δή, *come now! well then!* ἡσυχίᾱν ἄγειν, *keep quiet*; ἄγων, ἄγοντες, *with*.

ἀγών, ῶνος, ὁ [435], *assembly, contest, struggle, games*; ἀγῶνα τιθέναι, *hold games*.

ἀγωνίζομαι (αγωνιδ-), ἀγωνιοῦμαι, *etc.*, iv. [435], *contend, fight*.

ἀγωνο-θέτης, ου [435, 638], *judge of a contest, president in the games*.

ἄ-δειπνος, ον [δεῖπνον], *without supper, supperless* (see δεῖπνον).

ἀδελφός, ὁ, *brother*.

ἀ-δεῶς, adv. [δείδω], *without fear, fearlessly, confidently*.

ἄ-δηλος, ον [δῆλος], *doubtful, uncertain*.

ἀ-δικέω, ἀδικήσω, *etc.* [486], *be unjust, do wrong, wrong, injure*, with fut. mid. as pass.; pres. as pf., *have done wrong, be in the wrong*, and so in the pass., *be wronged, have suffered wrong*.

ἀ-δικίᾱ, ᾱς [486], *wrongdoing*.

ἄ-δικος, ον [486], *unjust, wicked*; ὁ ἄδικος, *the wrongdoer*.

ἀ-δόλως, adv. [δόλος, *deceit*], *without deceit* or *treachery*.

ἀ-δύνατος, ον [δύναμαι], *unable, powerless, impossible*.

ἀεί, adv. [Lat. *aeuum, age*, Eng. EVER, AYE], *always, ever, from time to time*.

ἀετός, ὁ, *eagle*.

Ἀθῆναι, ῶν, *Athens*.

†**Ἀθηναῖος**, ᾱ, ον, *Athenian*; **Ἀθηναῖος**, ὁ, *an Athenian*.

†**Ἀθήνησι**, adv., *at Athens*.

ἆθλον, τό [ἆθλος, ὁ, *contest*, Eng. *athlete*], *prize of contest, prize*.

ἀθροίζω (αθροιδ-), ἀθροίσω, *etc.*, 618, 1, iv. [ἀθρόος, *in a body*], *press close together, collect*, as troops. Lat. *cōgō*; mid., intrans., *muster*.

ἀ-θῡμέω, ἀθῡμήσω [537], *be ἄθῡμος, be discouraged, dejected*, or *dispirited, lose courage*.

ἀ-θῡμίᾱ, ᾱς [537], *faintheartedness, dejection, despondency*.

ἄ-θῡμος, ον [537], *without heart, dispirited, faintherted*.

αἱ, **αἳ**, see ὁ, ὅς

Αἰγύπτιος, ᾱ, ον [Αἴγυπτος, *Egypt*], *Egyptian*; Αἰγύπτιος, ὁ, *an Egyptian*.

αἰκίζω (αικιδ-), comm. dep., αἰκίζομαι, αἰκιοῦμαι, *etc.*, iv. [αἰκής, *shameful*], *outrage, maltreat, mutilate*.

αἰνέω, αἰνέσω, ᾔνεσα, ᾔνεκα, ᾔνημαι, ᾐνέθην [αἶνος, *tale, praise*], *praise*.

Αἰνιάν, ᾶνος, ὁ, *an Aenianian*.

αἴξ, αἰγός, ὁ, ἡ, *goat*.

†**αἱρετός**, ή, όν, *chosen*; οἱ αἱρετοί, *the deputies*.

αἱρέω (αιρε-, ἑλ-), αἱρήσω, εἷλον, ᾕρηκα, ᾕρημαι, ᾑρέθην, 655, 1, viii. [*di-aeresis, heresy*], *take, seize, capture*; mid., *take for oneself, choose, prefer, elect*.

αἴρω (ᾱο-), ἀρῶ, ἦρα, ἦρκα, ἦρμαι, ἤρθην, iv. [*met-eor*], *raise*.

αἷς, see ὅς.

αἰσθάνομαι (αισθ-), αἰσθήσομαι, ᾐσθόμην, ᾔσθημαι, 625, 1, v. [*aesthetic*], *perceive, learn, see, observe*; with gen., *hear, hear of*. 747, 839.

αἰσχρός, ά, όν [αἰδώς, *sense of shame*], *shameful, base, disgraceful*.

†**αἰσχύνη**, ης, *shame, disgrace*; δι' αἰσχύνην ἀλλήλων, *from a sense of shame before one another*.

†**αἰσχύνω** (αισχυν-), αἰσχυνῶ, ᾔσχῡνα, ᾔσχύνθην, 619, 2, iv., *shame*; mid. as pass. dep., *feel ashamed, feel ashamed before, stand in awe of*.

αἰτέω, αἰτήσω, *etc.*, *ask for, beg, demand*. 737.

αἰτίᾱ, ᾱς, *blame, censure*.

‡**αἰτιάομαι**, *αἰτιάσομαι, etc.*, 265 a, *blame, reproach, accuse, charge.*

‡**αἴτιος**, ᾱ, ον, *to blame, responsible; αἴτιός εἰμι, be the cause; τὸ αἴτιον, the cause.*

αἰχμ-άλωτος, ον [564], *captured by the spear, taken in war, captured; αἰχμάλωτοι, οἱ, captives.*

ἀκῑνάκης, ου, *a short sword.*

ἀκολουθέω, ἀκολουθήσω, *etc.*, *accompany, follow.* 773.

ἀκοντίζω (ακοντιδ-), ἀκοντιῶ, iv. [564], *hurl the javelin, hit with a javelin, hit.*

ἀκόντισις, εως, ἡ [564], *javelin-throwing.*

ἀκοντιστής, οῦ [564], *javelin-thrower, javelin-man.*

ἀκούω, ἀκούσομαι, ἤκουσα, ἀκήκοα, ἠκούσθην, 604, 2 [Lat. *caueō, take care*, Eng. *acoustic*], *hear, learn, hear of, listen to, give heed to.* 747, 839.

ἄκρᾱ, ᾱς [564], *height, citadel.*

ἄ-κρᾱτος, ον [κεράννῡμι], *unmixed.*

ἀκρό-πολις, εως, ἡ [564], *upper city, acropolis, citadel.*

ἄκρος, ᾱ, ον [564], *pointed, at the point, highest, topmost; ἄκρον, τό, height, summit; τὰ ἄκρα, the heights.*

ἀκρ-ωνυχίᾱ, ᾱς [564], *spur, crest.*

ἄκων, ουσα, ον [for ἀ-έκων, see ἑκών], *unwilling, reluctant; ἄκοντός τινος (sc. ὄντος), against a man's will, without his consent.*

ἀλαλάζω (αλαλαγ-), ἀλαλάξομαι, ἠλάλαξα, iv. [ἀλαλή, *battle-cry*], *raise the war-cry.*

ἀλέξω, ἀλέξομαι, ἠλεξάμην, *ward off;* mid., *ward off from oneself, repulse.*

ἀλέτης, ου [ἀλέω, *grind*], lit. *grinder*, only as adj. in the phrase ὄνος ἀλέτης, *upper mill-stone.*

ἄλευρον, τό [ἀλέω, *grind*], in. pl., *flour, wheaten flour.*

†**ἀ-λήθεια**, ᾱς, *truth, sincerity.*

†**ἀ-ληθεύω**, ἀληθεύσω, ἠλήθευσα, *speak the truth, tell the truth.*

ἀ-ληθής, ές [λανθάνω], *unconcealed, true; τὸ ἀληθές, the truth.*

ἁλίσκομαι (ἁλ-), ἁλώσομαι, ἐάλων and ἥλων, ἐάλωκα and ἥλωκα, 642, 1, vi., *be captured, taken, caught, be convicted*, used as pass. to αἱρέω.

ἄλκιμος, ον [ἀλκή, *prowess*], *stout, brave, warlike, valiant.*

ἀλλά, adversative conj. [533], *otherwise, in another way, on the other hand, still, but, yet.* It introduces something different from or opposed to what has been said before, and occurs frequently after negatives. At the beginning of a speech, by way of an abrupt transition, or to break off discussion, *well, well but, however, for my part.*

ἀλλάττω (αλλαγ-), ἀλλάξω, ἤλλαξα, ἤλλαχα, ἤλλαγμαι, ἠλλάχθην and ἠλλάγην, 617, 1, iv. [533], *change.*

ἄλλῃ, adv. [533], *in another way, elsewhere, somewhere else.*

ἀλλήλων, reciprocal pron., 530 [533], *of one another, each other.*

ἄλλος, η, ο [533], *other, another;* with the art., *the other, the remaining, the rest, the rest of; ἄλλοι ἄλλως*, Lat. *alīī aliter, some one way, others another; τῇ ἄλλῃ (sc. ἡμέρᾳ), next day;* with numerals and in enumerating objects, *besides, further; ὥς τις καὶ ἄλλος, as (well as) any other man whosoever; οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἤ, nothing else than, only.*

ἄλλοτε, adv. [533], *at another time; ἄλλοτε καὶ ἄλλοτε, every now and then.*

ἄλλως, adv. [533], *otherwise, in another way; ἄλλως πως, in some* or *any other way.*

ἀ-λόγιστος, ον [591], *unreasoning, foolish, inconsiderate.*

ἄλφιτον, τό, in pl., *barley meal.*

ἀλωπεκῆ, ῆς [ἀλώπηξ, *fox*, Lat. *vulpēs, fox*], *fox-skin, fox-skin cap.*

ἁλώσομαι, see ἁλίσκομαι.

ἅμα, adv. [Lat. *sem-per, always*, Eng. SAME, SOME], *at the same time, together; ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, at daybreak; ἅμα τῇ ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ, as the next day was breaking.* 773.

ἁμ-αξα, ης [435], a heavy *wagon*, originally and generally with four wheels (and therefore with two united axles, as the name signifies).

ἁμ-αξιτός, όν [435], *passable for wagons; ὁδὸς ἁμαξιτός, wagon-road.*

ἁμαρτάνω (ἁμαρτ-), ἁμαρτήσομαι, ἥμαρτον, ἡμάρτηκα, ἡμάρτημαι, ἡμαρτήθην, 625, 2, v., *miss the mark, miss, fail* (in conduct), *err, do wrong, commit error.* 746.

ἀ-μαχεί, adv. [μάχη], *without fighting, without a struggle.*

ἀ-μαχητί, adv. [μάχη], *without fighting.*

Ἀμπρακιώτης, ου, *an Ambraciot.*

ἀμείνων, ον, gen. ονος, comp. of ἀγαθός, 469, *better, braver, stouter.*

ἀ-μελέω, ἀμελήσω, *etc.* [μέλει], *be careless, neglect.* 747.

ἀ-μελῶς, adv. [μέλει], *negligently, carelessly, incautiously.*

ἀ-μήχανος, ον [455], *without means, impossible, impracticable.*

ἀμιλλάομαι, ἀμιλλήσομαι, *etc.*, pass. dep., 599 [ἄμιλλα, *contest*], *contend, struggle, race.*

ἄμπελος, ἡ, *vine.*

ἀμύνω (αμυν-), ἀμυνῶ, ἤμῦνα, iv., *ward off, defend;* mid., *ward off from oneself, defend oneself.*

ἀμφί, prep. [akin to ἄμφω, *cf.* Lat. *ambi-, amb-*, in composition, *round about*], orig. *on both sides of*, hence *about*, followed by the acc. and very rarely by the gen. With gen., *about, concerning*, of things. With acc., of place, *round, about*, of persons, countries, or things; of the object affected, ἀμφὶ στράτευμα δαπανᾶν, *spend money on an army;* of time, *about, at;* with numerals preceded by the art., *about.* Lat. *circiter.* οἱ ἀμφί with an acc. of a person may denote either the followers of that person or that person and his followers, as οἱ ἀμφὶ βασιλέα, *the king's attendants*, but οἱ ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον, *Chirisophus and his men;* τὰ ἀμφὶ τάξεις, *tactics.*

In composition ἀμφί signifies *on both sides, about.*

ἀμφι-λέγω, *speak on both sides, have a dispute, quarrel.*

†**ἀμφότερος**, ᾱ, ον, *both.*

‡**ἀμφοτέρωθεν**, adv., *on both sides, from both sides.*

ἄμφω [akin to ἀμφί, *cf.* Lat. *ambō*, *both*, Eng. BOTH], *both.*

ἄν, a post-positive particle without an exact equivalent in English. Three uses of ἄν are to be distinguished: I. In conditional, relative, and temporal protases. See 273, 803, 814, III., 814, I. 2 a, 822, 823. ἄν unites with the particle εἰ (forming ἐάν, ἄν, or ἤν), and sometimes with the relatives. II. In apodosis. See 798, 300, 814, II., 814, IV., 822, 823. III. In iterative sentences. See 805.

ἄν, contracted form of ἐάν.

ἀνά, prep. with acc. [Eng. ON], *up* (opposed to κατά). Of place, *up, up along, upon, over, throughout;* with numerals to signify distribution, *at the rate of*, ἀνὰ ἑκατόν, *by hundreds, a hundred each;* to express manner, ἀνὰ κράτος, *up to one's strength, at full speed.*

In composition ἀνά signifies *up, back, again*, and is sometimes simply intensive.

ἀνα-βαίνω, *go up, ascend, march up, mount.*

‡**ἀνά-βασις**, εως, ἡ, *going up, ascent, march inland.*

ἀνα-βολή, ῆς [480], *that which is thrown up, earth-work, rampart.*

ἀν-αγγέλλω, *bring back word, report.*

ἀνα-γιγνώσκω, *know again, recognize, read.*

†**ἀναγκάζω** (αναγκαδ-), ἀναγκάσω, *etc.*, iv., *force, compel, oblige.*

†**ἀναγκαῖος**, ᾱ, ον, *necessary; ἀναγκαῖόν τι, some necessity.*

ἀνάγκη, ης, *force, necessity, constraint; ἀνάγκη ἐστί* (more often without *ἐστί*), *it is necessary, one must*, of physical necessity. 850.

ἀνα-γνούς, see *ἀνα-γιγνώσκω.*

ἀν-άγω, *lead up, take up.*

ἀνα-θαρρέω, *regain courage, pluck up courage again.*

ἀνά-θημα, ατος, τό [638], *something set up, a votive offering.*

ἀν-αιρέω, *take up;* mid., *take up* one's dead for burial.

ἀνα-κοινόω, *make common, communicate, consult* a god; mid., *confer with* a friend. 773.

ἀνα-κράζω, *raise a shout, shout, cry out.*

ἀνα-λαμβάνω, *take* or *pick up.*

ἀνα-λάμπω, *burst into flames.*

ἀνα-μένω, *wait for, await*, Lat. *expectō;* intrans., *remain, wait.*

ἀνα-μιμνῄσκω, *remind of.* 737.

ἀναξυρίδες, ίδων, αἱ, *trousers.*

ἀνα-παύω, *make to cease* or *halt;* mid., *desist, stop, halt* for the purpose of resting, *rest.*

ἀνα-πείθω, *persuade.*

ἀνα-πνέω, *breathe again.*

ἀν-αρπάζω, *snatch up, carry off as booty, plunder.*

ἀνα-στάς, *etc.*, see *ἀν-ίστημι.*

ἀνα-σταυρόω [649], *set up on a stake, impale.*

ἀνα-στέλλω, *send back, repulse.*

ἀνα-στρέφω, *turn back, turn round, face about;* pass., *be turned back, rally.*

ἀνα-σχέσθαι, *etc.*, see *ἀν-έχω.*

ἀνα-ταράττω, *stir up;* pf. pass., *be in confusion* or *disorder.*

ἀνα-τείνω, *stretch up, hold up;* *ἀνατεταμένος, with extended wings.*

ἀνα-τίθημι, *put* or *lay upon.*

ἀνα-χωρέω, *move back, withdraw, retire*, of troops.

ἀνδράποδον, τό, *a slave*, esp. *a captive* taken in war.

ἀνδρεῖος, ᾱ, ον [*ἀνήρ*], *manly, brave, valiant.*

‡**ἀνδρείως**, adv., *bravely, courageously.*

ἀν-εῖλον, see *ἀν-αιρέω.*

ἀν-εῖναι, see *ἀν-ίημι.*

ἀν-εῖπον, *proclaim*, of a herald.

ἄνεμος, ὁ [Lat. *anima, breath, wind, animus, soul*], *wind;* *ἄνεμος ἐναντίος, a wind full in the face.*

ἀν-ερωτάω, *ask with authority, inquire of, question, demand.*

ἀν-έστην, see *ἀν-ίστημι.*

ἄνευ, improper prep., *without*, followed by the gen.

ἀν-έχω, impf. and aor. mid. with double augment, *ἠνειχόμην* and *ἠνεσχόμην, hold up;* mid., *control oneself, tolerate, endure.*

ἀν-ήγαγον, see *ἀν-άγω.*

ἀν-ήκεστος, ον [*ἀκέομαι, heal, ἄκος, τό, remedy*, Eng. *pan-acea*], *not to be healed, incurable, irreparable.*

ἀνήρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ, 291, *man*, Lat. *vir*, as opposed to woman, youth, or child, in contrast with the generic *ἄνθρωπος.*

ἀνθ-ίστημι, *match against;* mid., *stand against, resist.*

ἄνθρωπος, ὁ, ἡ [*phil-anthropy*], *man, human being*, Lat. *homō*, one of the human race as opposed to a higher or lower order of beings;

contemptuously, *person, fellow;* pl., *men, persons, people.*

ἀνῐάω, ἀνῐάσω, ἠνῐάσα, ἠνῐάθην [ἀνῐᾱ, *grief*], *harass, trouble.*

ἀν-ίστημι, *make stand up, rouse up, start up, raise up;* mid., with pf. and 2 aor. act., *stand up, rise, get up.*

ἄν-οδος, ἡ [ὁδός], *way up,* the *march inland* from the coast.

ἀν-οίγω, ἀν-οίξω, ἀν-έῳξα, ἀν-έῳγα and ἀν-έῳχα, ἀν-έῳγμαι, ἀν-εῴχθην, 604, 8, *open up, open.*

ἀντ-αγοράζω, *buy in exchange.*

ἀντ-επιμελέομαι, *take care in return, take measures against.*

ἀντί, prep. with gen., orig. *facing, over against, against,* hence, *instead of, for, in place of, in preference to, in return for.*

In composition ἀντί signifies *against, in opposition, in return, in turn, instead.*

ἀντι-λέγω, *say* or *speak against, say in opposition, object.*

ἀντίος, ᾱ, ον [ἀντί], *set against, opposite;* ἀντίοι ἰέναι, *go to meet;* ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου, *from the opposite side.* 772.

ἀντι-παρα-θέω, *run along* one's own line *to meet.*

ἀντι-παρασκευάζομαι, *prepare oneself in turn.*

ἀντι-παρατάττομαι, *array oneself against.*

ἀντι-ποιέω, *do in return, retaliate;* mid., *lay claim to.* 746.

ἀντι-στασιώτης, ου [649], *one of the opposite faction, opponent.*

ἀντι-τάττω, *set against;* mid., *marshal oneself against.* 773.

ἀντι-φυλάττω, *guard in turn;* mid., *guard oneself in turn.*

ἄντρον, τό, *cave.*

ἀνυστός, όν [ἀνύω, *accomplish*], *to be accomplished, possible.*

ἄνω, adv. [ἀνά], *above, up, on higher ground, upwards, into the air, up country;* comp., ἀνωτέρω, sup., ἀνωτάτω.

†ἄνωθεν, adv., *from above.*

ἀξίᾱ, ᾱς [435], *worth, value;* τὴν ἀξίαν τινὶ νεῖμαι, *give one his deserts.*

ἀξίνη, ης [Lat. *ascia, axe,* Eng. AXE, ADZE], *axe,* Lat. *bipennis.*

ἄξιος, ᾱ, ον [435], *weighing as much as, worthy of, deserving, valuable, befitting, worth;* neut. ἄξιον (*sc.* ἐστί), *be worth while, becoming;* πολλοῦ ἄξιος, *worth much, of great value;* πλείονος ἄξιος, *more valuable* or *serviceable,* πλείστου ἄξιος, *most valuable.* 760.

ἀξιόω, ἀξιώσω, *etc.* [435], *think fit, deem worthy* or *proper, expect;* hence, *claim, ask, demand.* 758.

ἀξίως, adv. [435], *worthily, fitly.* 761.

ἄξων, ονος, ὁ [435], *axle.*

ἀπ-αγγέλλω, *bring back word, announce, report.*

ἀπ-αγορεύω [ἀγορεύω, *harangue, say,* ἀγορά], *say no, forbid;* intrans., *give up* or *out.*

ἀπ-άγω, *lead away* or *back.*

ἀπ-αιτέω, *ask from, demand, demand back.*

ἀπ-αλλάττω, *change off, abandon, quit, go away, depart, withdraw,* act. and mid.; pass., *be freed from, be rid of.*

ἁπαλός, ή, όν, *tender, delicate.*

ἅπαξ, numeral adv., 496, *once.*

ἀ-παράσκευος, ον [παρασκευή], *unprepared.*

ἅ-πᾶς, ᾶσα, αν [544], *all together, all, whole, entire;* with the art. it has pred. position, as ἅπαν τὸ μέσον, *the entire space between.*

ἄπ-ειμι (εἰμί), *be away* or *absent.*

ἄπ-ειμι (εἶμι), *go off* or *away, depart.*

ἄ-πειρος, *ον* [561], *without experience, unskilled.*

ἀπ-ελαύνω, *drive away;* intr., *march, ride,* or *go away.*

ἀπ-ελθών, see ἀπ-έρχομαι.

ἄ-περ, see ὅσ-περ.

απ-έρχομαι, *come* or *go away, depart, retreat, desert.*

ἀπ-εχθάνομαι, ἀπ-εχθήσομαι, ἀπ-ηχθόμην, ἀπ-ήχθημαι, 625, 3, v. [ἔχθος, τό, *hatred*], *be hated* or *hateful, incur hatred.*

ἀπ-έχω, *keep off* or *away;* intr., *be away from* or *distant,* Lat. *distō;* mid., *keep oneself from, desist* or *refrain from.* 753.

ἀπ-ῄει, see ἄπ-ειμι (εἶμι).

ἀπ-ῆλθον, see ἀπ-έρχομαι.

ἀπ-ιέναι, *etc.*, see ἄπ-ειμι (εἶμι).

ἀ-πιστέω, ἀπιστήσω, *etc.* [495], *distrust, mistrust, disobey.* 768.

ἄ-πλετος, *ον* [πίμπλημι], *not to be filled* or *measured, great.*

ἁπλόος, *όη, όον*, contr. *οῦς, ῆ, οῦν, simple, frank, sincere,* Lat. *simplex;* τὸ ἁπλοῦν, *sincerity.*

ἀπό, prep. with gen. [Lat. *ab,* Eng. OFF, OF], *from, off, off from, away from.* Of place, *from, away from;* of time, *from, after, starting from;* of source, including origin, *from;* of cause, *on, upon;* of means, *by, out of, by the aid of, by means of, with.*

In composition ἀπό signifies *from, away, off, in return, back,* but is sometimes simply intensive, and sometimes almost neg. (arising from the sense of *off*).

ἀπο-βιβάζω, *make go off, disembark.*

ἀπο-βλέπω, *look away from* all other objects at one, *look steadily.*

ἀπο-γιγνώσκω, *give up the intention of.* 753.

ἀπο-δείκνῡμι, *point out, make known, appoint;* mid., *set forth one's views, declare, express.* 739.

ἀπο-δέρω, *take the hide off, flay, skin.*

ἀπο-διδράσκω, *run away, desert, escape by stealth, abandon.*

ἀπο-δίδωμι, *give back* or *up, restore, deliver, pay, fulfil;* mid., *sell.*

ἀπο-θνῄσκω, *die off, die, be killed, be slain, be put to death, suffer death.*

ἀπο-θύω, *sacrifice* in payment of a vow, *offer a votive sacrifice.*

ἀπό-κειμαι, *be laid away.*

ἀπο-κλείω, *shut off, intercept.* 757.

ἀπο-κόπτω, *cut off, beat off.*

ἀπο-κρίνομαι, *give a decision, make answer, answer,* Lat. *respondeō.*

ἀπο-κρύπτω, *hide from, conceal.*

ἀπο-κτείνω, *kill off, put to death.*

ἀπο-κωλύω, *hinder from, hinder, prevent.*

ἀπο-λαμβάνω, *take from* or *back, regain.*

ἀπο-λείπω, *leave behind, forsake, abandon, desert.*

ἀπ-όλλῡμι, *destroy utterly, kill;* mid. with 2 pf. and plpf. act., *perish, die, be lost.*

Ἀπόλλων, *ωνος*, ὁ, *Apollo,* one of the greatest of the divinities of the Greeks, god of music and poetry.

ἀπο-λύω, *loose from, acquit.* 757.

ἀπ-ολώλεκα, see ἀπ-όλλῡμι.

ἀπο-νοστέω [*νόστος, return home*], *return home.*

ἀπο-πέμπω, *send off* or *away, let go, send home, remit;* mid., *send away from oneself, dismiss.*

ἀπο-πλέω, *sail from* the side of, *sail away* or *home.*

ἀπό-πλοος, contr. ἀπόπλους, ὁ [πλέω], *voyage home.*

ἀπο-πορεύομαι, *go off, depart.*

ἀ-πορέω, ἀπορήσω, *etc.* [561], *be in doubt, be at a loss,* act. and mid.; *be in want of.* 749.

ἀ-πορίᾱ, ᾱς [561], *difficulty.*

ἄ-πορος, *ον* [561], *without means, impracticable;* of roads, mountains, or rivers, *impassable, unfordable;* ἄπορον, *τό, obstacle, difficulty.*

ἀπό-ῤῥητος, *ον* [ἐρῶ], *not to be told, secret.*

ἀπο-σκεδάννῡμι, *scatter to the winds;* mid. and pass., *be dispersed, straggle.*

ἀπο-σπάω, *draw off, separate, withdraw.*

ἀπο-στέλλω, *send back* or *away* with a commission, *despatch, dismiss.*

ἀπο-στρατοπεδεύομαι, *camp away from.*

ἀπο-στρέφω, *turn back, induce to return.*

ἀπο-σῡλάω [σῦλον, σκῦλον, *spoil*], *strip off, spoil, rob.* 737.

ἀπο-σῴζω, *bring back safely* or *in safety, restore safe.*

ἀπο-τείνω, *reach out, extend.*

ἀπο-τέμνω, *cut off, sever,* as parts of the body, and so as a military phrase, *intercept.*

ἀπο-τίθημι, *put* or *store away.*

ἀπο-τίνω, *pay back;* mid., *make pay back, punish, requite.*

ἀπο-φαίνω, *show forth;* mid., *show one's own, declare, express.*

ἀπο-φεύγω, *flee away, escape, flee.*

ἀπο-χωρέω, *go away, depart, retreat, withdraw.*

ἀπο-ψηφίζομαι, *vote no, vote against, reject by vote.*

ἀ-προσδόκητος, *ον* [προσδοκάω, *expect*], *unexpected;* ἐξ ἀπροσδοκήτου, *unexpectedly,* Lat. *ex improūīsō.*

ἅπτω (ἁφ-), ἅψω, ἧψα, ἧμμαι, ἥφθην, 613, 1, iii., *lay hold of, fasten, kindle;* mid., *touch.* 746.

ἄρα, post-positive particle of inference, *therefore, accordingly, then.*

ᾶρα, interrogative particle, *surely? indeed?,* but often best expressed in Eng. by the intonation; ᾆρ' οὐ, Lat. *nōnne,* expecting an affirmative answer.

Ἀραβίᾱ, ᾱς, *Arabia.*

Ἀράξης, ου, *the Araxes.*

Ἀρβάκης, ου, *Arbaces,* one of the four generals of the king.

Ἀργεῖος, ᾱ, *ον, of Argos* or *Argolis;* Ἀργεῖος, *ὁ, an Argive.*

ἀργός, *όν* [468], *not working, idle, in idleness.*

†**ἀργύρεος**, ᾱ, *ον,* 191, *of silver.*

†**ἀργύριον**, *τό, silver, silver money, coin.*

ἄργυρος, *ὁ* [ἀργός, *white,* Lat. *argentum*], *silver.*

ἀρέσκω (αρε-), ἀρέσω, ἤρεσα, ἠρέσθην, vi., *please, suit.* 768.

ἀρετή, ῆς, *goodness, virtue, courage, valour, good service.*

ἀρήγω, ἀρήξω, ἤρηξα, *succour.*

Ἀριαῖος, *ὁ, Ariaeus,* the lieutenant-general of Cyrus, and commander of his barbarian force.

ἀριθμός, *ὁ* [*arithmetic*], *number, enumeration, extent.*

Ἀρίσταρχος, *ὁ, Aristarchus.*

ἀριστάω, ἀριστήσω, *etc.* [ἄριστον], *breakfast,* Lat. *prandeō.*

ἀριστερός, ᾱ́, *όν, left,* Lat. *sinister;* ἐν ἀριστερᾷ (*sc.* χειρί), *on the left.*

Ἀρίστιππος, *ὁ, Aristippus.*

ἄριστον, *τό* [ἦρι, *early*], *breakfast.*

ἄριστος, *η, ον,* 469, *fittest* in any sense, *best, bravest, noblest.*

Ἀρκάς, *άδος, ὁ, an Arcadian.*

ἄρκτος, *ἡ* [*arctic*], *bear;* the constellation *Ursa Mājor, the north.*

ἅρμα, *ατος, τό, war-chariot,* Lat. *carrus.*

ἁρμ-άμαξα, *ης* [435], *a closed carriage.*

Ἀρμενίᾱ, ᾱς, *Armenia.*

ἁρμοστής, οῦ, *governor, harmost.*

ἁρπάζω (ἁρπαδ-), ἁρπάσω, ἥρπασα, ἥρπακα, ἥρπασμαι, ἡρπάσθην, 618, 2,

iv. [Lat. *rapiō*, *seize*, *tear*, Eng. ***Harpy***], *seize*, *capture*, *carry away*, *plunder*.

Ἀρταγέρσης, *ου*, *Artagerses*, commander of the king's body-guard.

Ἀρταξέρξης, *ου*, *Artaxerxes II.*, eldest son of Darius II. 705.

Ἀρταπάτης, *ου*, *Artapates*, the confidential attendant of Cyrus.

Ἄρτεμις, *ιδος*, *ἡ*, *Artemis*, sister of Apollo, patroness of hunting.

ἄρτος, *ὁ*, *loaf of bread*.

Ἀρχαγόρᾱς, *ᾱ*, *Archagoras*.

ἀρχαῖος, *ᾱ*, *ον* [463], *old*, *ancient*; *τὸ ἀρχαῖον*, adv., *formerly*.

ἀρχή, *ῆς* [463], *beginning*, *rule*, *province*, *government*, *satrapy*.

ἀρχικός, *ή*, *όν* [463], *fit to rule*.

ἄρχω, *ἄρξω*, *ἦρξα*, *ἦργμαι*, *ἤρχθην*, 600, 1 [463], *be first*, in point of time *begin*, *take the lead* in an action, *be the first* to do it; in point of station *rule*, *reign over*, *command*, *have command*; *ἄρχων*, *ὁ*, *ruler*, *commander*, *leader*, *chief*, a higher title than *στρατηγός*; *τὸ ἄρχειν*, *the government*; *οἱ ἀρχόμενοι*, *subjects*, *soldiers*; mid., *begin*, *enter upon* an action. 746, 748.

ἄρωμα, *ατος*, *τό* [*aroma*], *spice*, *fragrant herbs*.

ἀ-σέβεια, *ᾱς* [*ἀ-σεβής*, *impious*, *σέβομαι*, *revere*], *impiety*.

†**ἀ-σθενέω**, *be feeble*, *ill*, *sick*.

ἀ-σθενής, *ές* [*σθένος*, *τό*, *strength*], *without strength*, *weak*, *feeble*.

Ἀσίᾱ, *ᾱς*, *Asia*.

ἀσκέω [*ascetic*], *practice*, *observe*.

ἀσκός, *ὁ*, *leathern bag*, *wine-skin*.

ἄσμενος, *η*, *ον* [*ἥδομαι*], *well-pleased*, *with pleasure*, *gladly*.

ἀσπάζομαι (*ασπαδ-*), *ἀσπάσομαι*, iv. [580], *draw to oneself*, *embrace*, *welcome*, *greet*.

Ἀσπένδιος, *ὁ*, *an Aspendian*.

ἀσπίς, *ίδος*, *ἡ*, *shield*.

ἀστράπτω (*αστραπ-*), *ἤστραψα*, iii., *flash*, *glitter*.

ἄστυ, *εως*, *τό*, *town*.

Ἀστυάγης, *ου*, *Astyages*.

†**ἀ-σφάλεια**, *ᾱς*, *safety*, *freedom from danger*, *security*.

ἀ-σφαλής, *ές* [*σφάλλω*], *not liable to be tripped up*, *safe*, *free from danger*, *sure*, *secure*; *ἐν ἀσφαλεστέρῳ*, *in greater security*; *ἐν ἀσφαλεστάτῳ*, *in the safest place*.

ἄσφαλτος, *ἡ* [*asphalt*], *asphalt*.

ἀ-σφαλῶς, adv. [*ἀσφαλής*], *safely*, *securely*, *without danger*.

ἀ-τακτέω [554], *be out of order*.

ἄ-τακτος, *ον* [554], *in disorder*.

ἀ-τῑμάζω (*ατῑμαδ-*), *ἀτῑμάσω*, *etc.*, iv. [444], *dishonour*, *disgrace*.

ἀτμίζω (*ατμιδ-*), *ἀτμίσω*, iv. [*ἀτμός*, *vapour*], *steam*.

ἄ-τοπος, *ον* [*τόπος*], *out of place*, *strange*, *absurd*.

Ἀττικός, *ή*, *όν*, *Attic*.

αὖ, adv., *again*, *in turn*, *moreover*.

αὐλίζομαι (*αυλιδ-*), *ηὐλίσθην*, iv. [*αὐλή*, *open courtyard*], *lie in the open air*, *bivouac*, *lodge*, *be quartered*.

αὐτίκα, adv., *at this very moment*, *immediately*, *on the spot*.

αὐτόθι, adv. [518], *in this* or *that very place*, *here*, *there*.

αὐτο-κέλευστος, *ον* [518], *self-directed*, *of one's own accord*.

αὐτό-ματος, *ον* [518], *self-impelled*; *ἀπὸ* or *ἐκ τοῦ αὐτομάτου*, *unbidden*, *voluntarily*.

αὐτο-μολέω [518], *desert*, the regular military word.

αὐτό-μολος, *ὁ* [518], *deserter*.

αὐτός, *ή*, *ό*, 511 [518], intensive pron., *self*, *same*, *him*, *her*, *it*. 515, 516.

αὐτοῦ, adv. [518], *in the very place*, *here*, *there*.

αὑτοῦ, see *ἑαυτοῦ*.

ἀφ', see **ἀπό**.

ἀφ-αιρέω, *take away;* mid., *take away for oneself, rob.* 737.

ἀ-φανής, ές [483], *unseen, out of sight.*

ἀ-φανίζω (αφανιδ-), ἀφανιῶ, ἠφάνισα, ἠφάνικα [483], *hide, blot out.*

ἁφ-αρπάζω, *plunder, pillage.*

ἀφ-εστήκεσαν, see **ἀφ-ίστημι**.

ἀφ-ήσω, see **ἀφ-ίημι**.

ἄ-φθονος, *ον* [φθόνος, *δ*, *envy*], *ungrudging, abundant, fertile.*

ἀφ-ίημι, *send away, let go, let loose, let flow;* πρὸς φιλίαν ἀφιέναι, *let depart in peace.*

ἀφ-ικνέομαι, *come from* one place to another, *arrive, reach, return.*

ἀφ ἱππεύω [564], *ride back or off.*

ἀφ ἵστημι, *set off, separate, lead to revolt;* intrans. in pass. and in 2 aor. and pf. act., *stand off, revolt.*

ἄ-φρων, *ον*, gen. *ονος* [φρήν], *without sense, senseless, foolish.*

ἀ φυλακτος, *ον* [φυλάττω], *unguarded, unwatched.*

ἀ φυλάκτως, adv., *unguardedly.*

Ἀχαιός, οῦ, *ὁ*, *an Achaean.*

ἀ χάριστος, *ον* [χαρίζομαι], *ungracious, unpleasant.*

ἀ χαρίστως, adv., *without thanks.*

ἄχθομαι, ἀχθέσομαι, ἠχθέσθην, *be troubled, displeased, or vexed.*

ἀ χρεῖος, *ον* [χράομαι], *useless.*

ἀψίνθιον, *τό*, *wormwood.*

B.

Βαβυλών, ῶνος, *ἡ*, *Babylon.*

Βαβυλωνία, ᾱς, *Babylonia.*

βάθος, ους, *τό* [*bathos*], *depth.*

βαθύς, εῖα, ύ, *deep.*

βαίνω (βα-), βήσομαι, ἔβην, βέβηκα, βεβαα, ἐβάθην, 646, 1, iv. and v. [Lat. *venio*, *come*, Eng. COME, *basis*], *go, walk.*

βακτηρία, ας, *staff, walking-stick.*

βάλανος, *ἡ*, *acorn, date.*

βάλλω (βαλ-), βαλῶ, ἔβαλον, βέβληκα, βέβλημαι, ἐβλήθην, 619, 3, iv. [480], *throw, throw at, hit, hit* with stones, *stone.*

βάπτω (βαφ-), βάψω, ἔβαψα, βέβαμμαι, ἐβάφην, 613, 2, iii. [*baptize*], *dip, dip in.*

βαρβαρικός, ή, όν, *foreign, barbarian;* τὸ βαρβαρικόν (*sc.* στράτευμα), *the Persian force* of Cyrus.

βαρβαρικῶς, adv., *in the barbarian tongue, e.g. in Persian.*

βάρβαρος, *ον* [*barbarous*], *not Greek, barbarian, foreign;* βάρβαρος, *ὁ*, *a foreigner, barbarian.*

βαρέως, adv. [*baros*, *heavy*, Lat. *gravis*, *heavy*, Eng. *bary-tone*], *heavily;* βαρέως ἀκούειν, *hear with anger.*

βασίλεια, ᾱς, *queen.*

βασιλεία, ᾱς, *kingship, royalty.*

βασίλειος, *ον*, *royal;* βασίλειον, *τό*, and *βασίλεια*, *τά*, *palace.*

βασιλεύς, έως, *ὁ* [*basilica, basilisk*], *king*, Lat. *rēx*, esp. the king of Persia, when the art. is regularly omitted; παρὰ βασιλεῖ, *at court.*

βασιλεύω, βασιλεύσω, *be king.*

βασιλικός, ή, όν, *royal, the king's.*

βέβαιος, ᾱ, *ον* [βαίνω], *abiding, firm, constant.*

Βέλεσυς, εως, *ὁ*, *Belesys*, a satrap.

βέλος, ους, *τό* [480], *missile.*

βέλτιστος, η, ον, 469 [615], *most desired, best, noblest, most advantageous.*

βελτίων, *ον*, 469 [615], *more desired, better, nobler, more advantageous.*

βῆμα, ατος, *τό* [βαίνω], *stride.*

βίᾱ, ᾱς, *force, violence*, Lat. *uīs.*

βιάζομαι (βιαδ-), βιάσομαι, *etc.*, 618, 3, iv., *force, compel, overpower.*

βιαίως, adv., *violently, hard.*

βιβάζω (βιβαδ-), βιβάσω or **βιβῶ**, ἐβίβασα, iv. [βαίνω], *make go.*

βίβλος, ἡ [*Bible, biblio-graphy*], *book*, Lat. *liber*.

βῖκος, ὁ, *a large jar, wine-jar*.

βίος, ὁ [Lat. *uīuus, alive*, Eng. QUICK, *bio-graphy*], *life, living*.

βλᾰκεύω [*βλᾰ́ξ, slack*], *be slack* or *idle, shirk*.

βλάπτω (βλαβ-), βλάψω, ἔβλαψα, βέβλαφα, βέβλαμμαι, ἐβλάφθην and ἐβλάβην, 613, 3, iii. [*βλάβη, hurt*], *injure, hurt, damage, harm*.

βλέπω, βλέψω, ἔβλεψα, *look, turn one's eyes, face, point*.

†**βοάω**, βοήσομαι, ἐβόησα, *shout, call out, cry out*.

βοή, ῆς, *shout, call, cry*.

‡**βοή-θεια**, ᾱς, *succour, aid, help*.

↓**βοη-θέω**, βοηθήσω, ἐβοήθησα, βεβοήθηκα, βεβοήθημαι [θέω], *run to rescue at a cry for help, give assistance, bring aid, help, assist*. 768.

Βοιώτιος, ὁ, *a Boeotian*.

Βορέᾱς, ου, contr. Βορρᾶς, ᾶ, *Boreas*; Βορέᾱς or ἄνεμος Βορέᾱς, *the north wind*.

βόσκημα, ατος, τό [*βόσκω, feed*], *fatted beast*, pl. *cattle*.

βουλεύω, βουλεύσω, *etc.* [615], *plan, plot*; comm. mid., *form one's own plan, plan, consider, deliberate, purpose, determine, settle on*. 792.

βουλή, ῆς [615], *will, plan, deliberation*; *senate*.

βούλομαι, βουλήσομαι, βεβούλημαι, ἐβουλήθην, 605, 1 [615], *will, wish, desire, be willing, like*.

βοῦς, βοός, ὁ, ἡ, 388 [Lat. *bōs, ox, cow*, Eng. cow, *bucolic*], *ox, cow*, pl. *cattle, oxen*.

βραδέως, adv. [*βραδύς, slow*], *slowly, leisurely*.

βραχύς, εῖα, ύ [Lat. *breuis, short*], *short*; πέτεσθαι βραχύ, *have a short flight*; βραχύτερα τοξεύειν, *shoot less far*; ἐπὶ βραχὺ ἐξικνεῖσθαι, *have a short range*.

βρέχω, ἔβρεξα, βέβρεγμαι, ἐβρέχθην, 600, 2, *wet*, pass. *get wet*.

βροτός, ὁ, *a mortal*.

Βυζάντιον, τό, *Byzantium*.

βωμός, ὁ, *altar*.

Γ.

γάμος, ὁ [*bi-gamy, crypto-gam*], *wedding, marriage*.

γάρ, post-positive causal conj., *for*; when it expresses specification, confirmation, or explanation, *because, indeed, certainly, then, now, for example, namely*; in questions, *then*, or to be omitted in translation; καὶ γάρ, Lat. *etenim, and (this is so) for, and to be sure, and really*.

γαστήρ, τρός, ἡ [*gastric*], *belly*.

Γαυλῖτης, ου, *Gaulites*.

γέ, enclitic and post-positive intens. particle, *even, at least, yet, indeed, certainly*, but often to be indicated in Eng. only by emphasis.

γεγενῆσθαι, γέγονα, see *γίγνομαι*.

γελάω, γελάσομαι, ἐγέλασα, ἐγελάσθην, 441, *laugh*, Lat. *rīdeō*.

↓**γέλως**, ωτος, ὁ, *laughter, roar of laughter*.

γέμω, *be full of*. 749.

γενναιότης, ητος, ἡ [612], *nobility, magnanimity, generosity*.

γένος, ους, τό [612], *family, race*.

γέρρον, τό, *wicker-shield*.

↓**γερρο-φόροι**, οἱ [658], light-armed *troops with wicker-shields*.

γέρων, οντος, ὁ [GRAY], *old man*.

γεύω, γεύσω, ἔγευσα, γέγευμαι [Lat. *gustō, taste*, Eng. CHOOSE], *give a taste*; mid., *taste*. 747.

γέφῡρα, ᾱς, *bridge*; γέφῡρα ἐζευγμένη πλοίοις, *pontoon bridge*.

γῆ, γῆς [*apo-gee, geo-graphy*], *earth, ground, country*, Lat. *terra, land* as opposed to sea.

†**γή-λοφος**, *ὁ* [λόφος], *mound of earth, hill, hillock.*

γίγνομαι, *γενήσομαι, ἐγενόμην, γέγονα, γεγένημαι*, 606, 1 [612], *be born, become, be made, happen, take place, occur*, and with many other meanings to be determined from the context, such as *arise, fall upon, get, dawn, draw on, fall, accrue, be favourable, amount to, prove oneself to be.*

γιγνώσκω (*γνο-*), *γνώσομαι, ἔγνων, ἔγνωκα, ἔγνωσμαι, ἐγνώσθην*, 642, 2, vi. [644], *perceive, know, understand, learn, think.* 839.

Γλοῦς, *ὁ*, *Glus*, an Egyptian.

γνώμη, *ης* [644], *opinion, plan, understanding, judgment; ἄνευ τῆς γνώμης τινός, against one's will; ἐμπιμπλᾶς τὴν γνώμην, satisfy one's desire.*

γνῶναι, γνώσομαι, see *γιγνώσκω*.

γονεύς, *έως, ὁ* [612], *father*, pl. *parents.*

γόνυ, *γόνατος, τό* [Lat. *genū*, *knee*, Eng. KNEE], *knee.*

γοῦν, post-positive intensive particle [*γέ*+*οὖν*], *at any rate, anyhow.*

γραῦς, *γρᾱός, ἡ*, 388 [*cf. γέρων*], *old woman.*

γράφω, *γράψω, ἔγραψα, γέγραφα, γέγραμμαι, ἐγράφην*, 604, 3 [Lat. *scrībō*, *write*, Eng. SHARP, GRAVE, *graphic, grammar, etc.*], *make a mark, draw, write, describe.*

†**γυμνάζω** (*γυμναδ-*), *γυμνάσω, etc.*, iv., *train naked, exercise.*

†**γυμνής**, *ῆτος, ὁ, a light armed foot-soldier.*

†**γυμνικός**, *ή, όν, gymnastic.*

γυμνός, *ή, όν*, [*gymnast*], *naked, stripped, lightly clad.*

γυνή, *γυναικός, ἡ*, 392 [612], *woman, wife.*

Γωβρύᾱς, *ου, Gobryas*, one of the four generals of the king.

Δ.

δαίμων, *ονος, ὁ* [*demon*], *divinity.*

δάκνω (*δακ-*), *δήξομαι, ἔδακον, δέδηγμαι, ἐδήχθην*, 624, 1, v., *bite.*

δακρύω, *δακρύσω, ἐδάκρυσα, δεδάκρυμαι* [*δάκρυ, tear*, Lat. *lacrima, tear*, Eng. TEAR], *shed tears, weep.*

Δάνα, *τά, Dana*, a city.

δανείζω (*δανειδ-*), *δανείσω*, iv., *lend*; mid., *have lent to oneself, borrow.*

δαπανάω, *δαπανήσω, etc.* [*δαπάνη, expense*], *spend, expend.*

Δάρδας, *ατος, ὁ, the Dardas.*

†**δᾰρεικός**, *ὁ, daric*, a Persian gold coin. It contained about 125.5 grains of gold, and would now be worth about $5.40 in American gold. The daric was worth 20 Attic drachmas.

Δᾱρεῖος, *ὁ, Darius*, the name of many of the Persian kings. 705.

δασμός, *ὁ, tax, impost, tribute.*

δασύς, *εῖα, ύ, thick, dense, thickly grown, rough.*

δέ, post-positive conj., *but*, midway in force between *ἀλλά* and *καί*. Its adversative force is often slight, so that it may be rendered by *and, to be sure, further, etc.* *μέν* is often found in the preceding clause, and *μὲν . . . δέ* then have the force of *while . . . yet, on the one hand . . . on the other*, or *both . . . and*, but generally these expressions are too strong to be used in translating into English, and the force of *μέν* had better be indicated simply by stress of the voice (see *μέν*). *καὶ . . . δέ, and* (*δέ*) *also, but further.*

-δε, suffix denoting *whither*, or with demonstrative force.

δεδιώς, δέδοικα, see *δείδω*.

δέῃ, δεηθῆναι, δεῖ, see *δέω, lack.*

δείδω, *δείσομαι, ἔδεισα, δέδοικα* and *δέδια*, 660, 3 (pres. not Attic), *fear, be afraid*, of reasonable fear.

δείκνῡμι (δεικ-), δείξω, ἔδειξα, δέδειχα, δέδειγμαι, ἐδείχθην, 651, 1, v. [486], *point out, indicate, show.*

δείλη, ης, *afternoon, evening.*

δειλός, ή, όν [δείδω], *fearful, cowardly, skulking, vile.*

δεινός, ή, όν [δείδω], *dreadful, perilous, terrible, marvellous, skilful, clever;* δεινόν, τό, *peril, danger.*

δεῖπνον, τό, *dinner, supper.*

δέκα, indecl., 496 [Lat. *decem, ten,* Eng. TEN, *decade*], *ten.*

δένδρον, τό, *tree,* Lat. *arbor.*

δεξιός, ά, όν [602], *right,* Lat. *dexter;* ἡ δεξιά (*sc.* χείρ), *the right (hand),* used either in indicating direction, or with λαβεῖν καὶ δοῦναι as a sign of confirmation; τὸ δεξιόν (*sc.* κέρας), *the right (wing).*

†**δέρμα**, ατος, τό, *hide, skin.*

δέρω, δερῶ, ἔδειρα, δέδαρμαι, ἐδάρην [Lat. *dolō, split,* Eng. TEAR, *epidermis*], *flay.*

δεσμός, ὁ [δέω, *bind*], *band, strap.*

δεσπότης, ου [*despot*], *master, lord,* Lat. *dominus.*

δεῦρο, adv., *hither, here.*

δεύτερος, ᾱ, ον, 496 [499], *second;* δεύτερον, as adv., *a second time,* Lat. *iterum.*

δέχομαι, δέξομαι, ἐδεξάμην, δέδεγμαι, 600, 6 [602], *receive* what is offered, *take, accept, admit, await.*

δέω, δήσω, ἔδησα, δεδεκα, δέδεμαι, ἐδέθην, 442 [*dia-dem*], *bind, fasten, tie, fetter, shackle.*

δέω, δεήσω, ἐδέησα, δεδέηκα, δεδέημαι, ἐδεήθην, 605, 2, *lack, want, need;* comm. mid., *lack, need, want, desire, beg, request;* δεῖ, used impersonally, *there is need, it is necessary* or *proper, one must, ought, should.* 749.

δή, post-positive intensive particle, *now, indeed, in particular, accordingly, so, then,* but often its force is best indicated simply by emphasis.

δῆλος, η, ον, *plain, clear, evident, manifest.*

†**δηλόω**, δηλώσω, *etc., make clear.*

δημόσιος, ᾱ, ον [δῆμος, *the people*], *public;* τὰ δημόσια, *the public money.*

δῃόω, δῃώσω, ἐδῄωσα [Epic δήιος, *hostile*], *lay waste, ravage.*

διά, prep. with gen. and acc. [499], orig. *between,* then *through.* With gen., used of place, time, or means, *through, during, throughout, by means of,* Lat. *per;* διὰ ταχέων, *rapidly;* διὰ πίστεως, *trustingly.* With acc., *through, by means* or *aid of, on account of, for the sake of,* Lat. *ob* or *propter.*

In composition διά signifies *through* or *over;* sometimes it adds an idea of continuance or fulfilment; or it may signify *apart,* Lat. *dī-, dis-.*

Δία, Διΐ, **Διός**, see **Ζεύς**.

δια-βαίνω, *go over, cross.*

δια-βάλλω, *throw over, throw at* with words, *slander, traduce.*

διά-βασις, εως, ἡ [δια-βαίνω], *a crossing,* hence *ford, bridge.*

δια-βατός, ή, όν [δια-βαίνω], *fordable, passable.*

δια-βιβάζω, *make go across, take* or *carry across.*

δι-αγγέλλω, *carry word through, bring word, report.*

δια-γίγνομαι, of time, *get through, continue, exist, subsist.* 859.

δι-άγω, of time, *pass, spend, live, continue.* 859.

δια-δέχομαι, *receive at intervals;* θηρῶσι διαδεχόμενοι, *relieve one another in the chase.*

δια-δίδωμι, *distribute.*

δια-θεάομαι, *observe closely.*

δια-κόπτω, *cut to pieces* or *through.*

διᾱ-κόσιοι, αι, α, 496 [499], *200.*

δια-λαγχάνω, *assign by lot.*

δια λέγομαι, δια λέξομαι, δι-ελεξάμην, δι-ελέχθην, *converse with.* 773.

δια-λείπω, *leave a space between, stand apart, be distant.*

δια-νέμω, *divide up among.*

δια-νοέομαι, pass. dep., *be minded, intend, purpose.*

δια-πέμπω, *send round.*

δια-πλέω, *sail over* or *across.*

δια-πολεμέω, *fight it out.* 773.

δια-πράττω, *work out;* comm. mid., *bring to pass, effect.*

δι-αρπάζω, *tear in pieces, plunder, lay waste, sack, spoil, ravage.*

δια-σημαίνω, *point out, indicate.*

δια-σκηνέω, *encamp apart.*

δια-σπάω, *draw apart, separate, scatter,* of soldiers.

δια-σπείρω, *scatter about, scatter.*

δια-σῴζω, *bring through safely, keep safe, save.*

δια-τάττω, *draw up in array.*

δια-τελέω, *finish, complete the march, continue.* 859.

δια-τίθημι, *arrange, dispose.*

δια-τρέφω, *feed well, support.*

δια-τρῑ́βω, *rub through, spend, waste time, delay.*

δια-φερόντως, adv. [658], *differently* from others, *pre-eminently, peculiarly, surpassingly.*

δια-φέρω, *bear apart, quarrel, be different from,* Lat. *differō.* 753.

δια-φθείρω, *destroy utterly, ruin, corrupt.*

διδάσκαλος, ὁ [486], *teacher.*

διδάσκω (διδαχ-), διδάξω, ἐδίδαξα, δεδίδαχα, δεδίδαγμαι, ἐδιδάχθην, 642, 3, vi. [486], *teach, instruct, show,* Lat. *docēō.* 737.

δίδημι, *bind,* collateral form of *δέω, bind.*

διδράσκω (δρᾰ-), δρᾰ́σομαι, ἔδρᾱν, δέδρᾰκα, 646, 2, vi. [TREAD], *run.*

δίδωμι (δο-), δώσω, ἔδωκα, δέδωκα, δέδομαι, ἐδόθην, 647, 2, vii. [641], *give, grant, permit.*

δι-ελαύνω, *drive* or *ride through.*

δι-έρχομαι, *go* or *march through, travel, spread abroad.*

δι-ερωτάω, *cross-question.*

δι-έχω, *hold apart, be apart.* 753.

δι-ίστημι, *set apart;* mid. and 2 aor. act. intr., *stand apart, open ranks, stand at intervals.*

δίκαιος, ᾱ, ον [486], *just, right, reasonable, proper.*

δικαιοσύνη, ης [486], *justice.*

δικαίως, adv. [486], *justly, rightly.*

δίκη, ης [486], *custom, right, justice, punishment, deserts.*

διό, for **δι᾽ ὅ**, *wherefore.*

δι-πλοῦς, ῆ, οῦν, 191 [499], *double.*

δίς, adv., 496 [499], *twice,* Lat. *bis.*

δισ-χίλιοι, αι, α, 496 [499], *2000.*

διφθέρᾱ, ᾱς, *tanned hide, leathern bag.*

δί-φρος, ὁ [499, 658], *body of a chariot.*

διώκω, διώξω, ἐδίωξα, δεδίωχα, ἐδιώχθην, 604, 4, *pursue, go in pursuit, chase, give chase, prosecute.* 755.

†**δίωξις**, εως, ἡ, *pursuit.*

δι-ῶρυξ, υχος, ἡ [**δι-ορύττω**, *dig through*], *ditch, canal.*

δοκέω, δόξω, ἔδοξα, δέδογμαι, ἐδόχθην, 605, 3 [586], *seem, appear, seem best* or *good, be voted, think.*

Δόλοψ, οπος, ὁ, *a Dolopian.*

δόξα, ης [586], *reputation.*

δορκάς, άδος, ἡ, *gazelle.*

δόρυ, ατος, τό [δρύς, *tree,* Eng. TREE], prop. *stem* of a tree, then *shaft* of a spear, and hence *spear.*

†**δουλεύω**, ἐδούλευσα, δεδούλευκα, *be a slave,* Lat. *seruiō.*

δοῦλος, ὁ, *slave,* Lat. *seruus.*

δοῦναι, *etc.*, see **δίδωμι.**

δουπέω, ἐδούπησα [**δοῦπος**, *din*], *make a din.*

Δρακόντιος, ὁ, *Dracontius.*

δράμοιμι, δραμοῦμαι, see *τρέχω.*

†**δρεπανη-φόρος**, ον [658], *scythe-bearing,* of chariots.

δρέπανον, *τό*, *scythe.*

δρόμος, *ὁ* [*cf.* διδράσκω, Eng. *dromedary*], *a running, run, race, race-course; δρόμῳ, on the run, double quick.*

δύναμαι (δυνα-), δυνήσομαι, δεδύνημαι, ἐδυνήθην, 647, 4, vii. [*dynamic*], *be able, be capable, be strong enough, be powerful, can, be worth, amount to.*

†**δύναμις**, εως, ἡ, *ability, power, resources, force, troops.*

†**δυνάστης**, ου, *nobleman.*

†**δυνατός**, ή, όν, *able, possible.*

δύνω, *set*, of the sun. See δύω.

δύο, δυοῖν, 496 [499], *two.*

δυσ- [*dys-peptic*], *ill, hard.* 424 c.

δυσ-πόρευτος, ον [561], *hard to get through*, of heavy ground.

δύω, δύσω, ἔδῡσα and ἔδῡν, δέδῡκα, δέδυμαι, ἐδύθην, 652, 1, *make enter*, intr. *enter;* mid., *set*, of the sun.

δώ-δεκα, indecl., 496 [499], *twelve.*

δωρέομαι, δωρήσομαι, *etc.* [641], *give a present, present.*

δῶρον, τό [641], *present, gift.*

E.

ἑάλωκα, ἑάλων, see ἁλίσκομαι.

ἐάν, contr. ἤν or ἦν, in crasis κἄν for καὶ ἐάν, conj. [εἰ+ἄν], *if*, with subjv. 273, 803.

ἑ-αυτοῦ, ἧς, οὗ, reflexive pron., 527 [518], *of himself, herself, itself.* 528.

ἐάω, ἐάσω, εἴᾱσα, εἴᾱκα, εἴᾱμαι, εἰάθην, *permit, allow, let, let go.*

ἕβδομος, η, ον, 496 [ἑπτά], *seventh.*

ἐγ-, for ἐν before a palatal mute.

ἐγγύς, adv., *near, at hand*, comp. ἐγγύτερον, sup. ἐγγυτάτω or ἐγγύτατα.

ἐγείρω (εγερ-), ἐγερῶ, ἤγειρα and ἠγρόμην, ἐγρήγορα, ἐγήγερμαι, ἠγέρθην, iv., *rouse;* pass. and 2 pf., *lie awake.*

ἐγ-καλύπτω, *cover closely;* mid., *wrap oneself up.*

ἐγ-κέλευστος, ον [κελεύω], *instigated.*

ἐγ-κέφαλος, ὁ [κεφαλή], *brain; crown, cabbage*, of the palm.

ἐγ-κρατής, ές [471], *in possession of, master of.* 760.

ἐγ-χειρίδιον, τό [χείρ], *dagger.*

ἐγ-χειρίζω (χειριδ-), ἐγ-χειριοῦμαι, *etc.*, iv. [χείρ], *commit to the hands of, entrust.*

ἐγ-χέω, *pour in.*

ἐγώ, ἐμοῦ or μοῦ, personal pron., 511 [Lat. *ego, mē*, Eng. I, ME, *egoist*], *I.* 512, 513, 514.

†**ἔγω-γε** [γέ], *I for my part.*

ἔδεισα, see δείδω.

†**ἐθελοντής**, οῦ, *volunteer;* as adj., *of one's own free will.*

ἐθέλω or **θέλω**, ἐθελήσω, ἠθέλησα, ἠθέληκα, 605, 4, *wish, be willing, volunteer.*

ἔθνος, ους, τό [*ethnic*], *nation, tribe*, Lat. *nātiō.*

εἰ, conj., procl., *if*, w. ind. and opt., 797, 798, 800, 804; in indirect questions, *whether;* εἰ μή, *if not, except, unless*, Lat. *nisi;* εἰ δὲ μή, *otherwise.*

εἴᾱ, εἴᾱσα, see ἐάω.

εἶδον, see ὁράω.

εἰκάζω (εικαδ-), εἰκάσω, εἴκασα, εἴκασμαι, εἰκάσθην, iv., *liken, suppose, conjecture, fancy.*

εἴκοσι, indecl., 496 [Lat. *vīgintī*, *twenty*, Eng. TWENTY], *twenty.*

εἴληφα, *etc.*, see λαμβάνω.

εἶλον, εἱλόμην, see αἱρέω.

εἰμί [εσ-], ἔσομαι, 700 [666], *be, exist;* with gen. or dat. of possessor, *belong, have, possess;* ἔστι, *it is possible, one can.*

εἶμι (ι-), impf. ᾔα or ᾖειν, 701 [Lat. *eō, īre, go*], *go* (pres. indic. with fut. sense, *shall go*), *proceed, march.*

εἴ-περ [εἰ+πέρ], *if in fact.*

εἶπον (επ-, ερ-), ἐρῶ, εἴρηκα, εἴρημαι, ἐρρήθην, 655, 2, viii. [Lat. *uocō, call;*

Lat. *uerbum, word,* Eng. WORD], *say, speak, tell, relate, propose, order;* εἴρητο, *orders had been given.* 838 b.

εἰρήνη, ης [*Irene*], *peace,* Lat. *pāx.*

εἰς, prep. w. acc., procl., prop. of place, *into, to, among, for, against, into the country of,* sometimes with verbs of rest, but implying previous motion, where Eng. uses *in;* of time, *up to, during, in, at;* with numerals, *up to, at most, to the number of;* of the end or object, *in regard to, for, in respect to.*

In composition εἰς signifies *into, to, on, in.*

εἷς, μία, ἕν, numeral adj., 496, 497, *one,* Lat. *ūnus.*

εἰσ-άγω, *lead into* or *in.*

εἰσ-βάλλω, *throw into;* intr., *empty,* of rivers, *invade.*

εἰσ-βολή, ῆς [480], *entrance, pass.*

εἴσ-ειμι (εἶμι), *go in, enter.*

εἰσ-ελαύνω, *drive* or *march into.*

εἰσ-έρχομαι, *come in, enter.*

εἴσομαι, see οἶδα.

εἴσ-οδος, ἡ [ὁδός], *entrance.*

εἰσ-πηδάω, *spring into.*

εἰστήκειν, see ἵστημι.

εἴσω, adv. [ἐν], *inside, within.*

εἶτα, adv., *then, thereupon.*

ἕκαστος, η, ον, *each, every,* of more than two.

ἑκάστοτε, adv., *every time.*

ἑκάτερος, ᾱ, ον, *each* of two.

ἑκατέρω-θεν, adv., *on both sides* or *flanks.*

ἑκατέρω-σε, adv., *in both directions.*

ἑκατόν, indecl., 496 [Lat. *centum,* Eng. HUNDRED, *hecatom-b*], *100.*

ἐκ-βάλλω, *throw out, expel.*

ἔκ-γονος, ον [612], *born* or *sprung from;* ἔκγονον, τό, *offspring.*

ἐκ-δέρω, *strip off the skin, flay.*

ἐκ-δίδωμι, *give* or *deliver up.*

ἐκεῖ, adv., *there, in that place, thither.*

ἐκεῖνος, η, ο, dem. pron., 539 b, *that, that man there,* Lat. *ille.* 540.

ἐκ-καλύπτω, *uncover,* of shields without the usual leathern case.

ἐκ-κλησίᾱ, ᾱς [622], *meeting, assembly.*

ἐκ-κλίνω, *bend out, give way.*

ἐκ-κομίζω, *carry out.*

ἐκ-κόπτω, *cut off* or *down.*

ἐκ-κῡμαίνω (κῦμαν-), iv. [κῦμα, *billow*], *billow out, surge forward.*

ἐκ-λέγω, *pick out;* mid., *select for oneself, choose.*

ἐκ-λείπω, *leave out, abandon, quit;* intr., *fail, melt away.*

ἐκ-πεπληγμένος, see ἐκ-πλήσσω.

ἐκ-πίπτω, *fall out* or *down, be driven out, be exiled.*

ἐκ-πλέω, *sail out* or *away.*

ἔκ-πλεως, ων, gen. ω [πίμπλημι], *filled out, full, in full, complete.*

ἐκ-πλήττω, *strike out* of one's senses, *amaze, terrify.*

ἐκ-ποδών, adv. [πούς], *out of the way.*

ἐκ-πορίζω, *furnish, supply.*

ἕκτος, η, ον, 496 [ἕξ], *sixth.*

ἐκ-τρέπω, *turn out* or *aside.*

ἐκ-τρέφω, *bring up, rear.*

ἐκ-φέρω, *carry out, report.*

ἐκ-φεύγω, *flee away, escape.*

ἑκών, οὖσα, όν, *willing, of one's own accord;* in pred., *willingly.*

ἐλάττων, ον, gen. ονος, 469, *smaller, less, fewer.*

ἐλαύνω, (ελα-), ἐλῶ, ἤλασα, ἐλήλακα, ἐλήλαμαι, ἠλάθην, 624, 2, v. [*elastic*], *drive, set in motion;* intr., *ride, drive, march.*

ἐλάφειος, ον [ἔλαφος, *deer*], *of a deer;* κρέα ἐλάφεια, *venison.*

ἐλάχιστος, η, ον, 469, *fewest, least, shortest, lowest.*

ἐλέγχω, ἐλεγξω, ἤλεγξα, ἐλήλεγμαι, ἠλέγχθην, 600, 3, *investigate, examine, convict, confute.*

ἑλεῖν, **ἑλέσθαι**, see *αἱρέω*.

ἐλελίζω (ελελιγ-), ἠλέλιξα, iv., *cry ἐλελεῦ, raise the war-cry.*

†**ἐλευθερίᾱ**, ᾱς, *liberty, freedom.*

ἐλεύθερος, ᾱ, ον, *free,* Lat. *līber.*

‡**ἐλευθερόω**, ἐλευθερώσω, *liberate.*

ἐλθεῖν, **ἐλθών**, see *ἔρχομαι.*

†**Ἑλλάς**, άδος, ἡ, *Greece.*

Ἕλλην, ηνος, ὁ [*Hellenic*], *a Greek.*

‡**Ἑλληνικός**, ή, όν, *Greek;* τὸ Ἑλληνικόν, *the Greek army.*

‡**Ἑλληνικῶς**, adv., *in Greek.*

†**Ἑλλησποντιακός**, ή, όν, *lying on the Hellespont.*

Ἑλλήσποντος, ὁ, *the Hellespont,* now the Dardanelles.

ἐλπίς, ίδος, ἡ, *hope.*

ἐμ-, for *ἐν-* before a labial mute.

ἐμ-αυτοῦ, ῆς, reflexive pron., 527 [518], *of myself.* 528.

ἐμ-βαίνω, *go into, embark.*

ἐμ-βάλλω, *throw in, inflict;* intr., *empty,* of rivers, *make an invasion, attack.*

ἐμ-βιβάζω, *embark, put on board.*

ἐμός, ή, όν, 531 [Lat. *meus, my,* Eng. MINE, MY], *my, mine.*

ἔμ-παλιν, adv. [πάλιν], with τό (by crasis), τοὔμπαλιν, *back, back again.*

ἔμ-πειρος, ον [561], *acquainted with.* 760.

ἐμ-πείρως, adv. [561], *by experience;* ἐμπείρως αὐτοῦ ἔχειν, *be personally acquainted with him.* 761.

ἐμ-πίμπλημι, *fill full, satisfy.* 749.

ἐμ-πίμπρημι, *set on fire.*

ἐμ-πίπτω, *fall upon, occur to.* 774.

ἔμ πλεως, ων, gen. ω [πίμπλημι], *quite full of, full of.* 760.

ἐμ-ποδών, adv. [πούς], *before the feet, in the way;* ἐμποδὼν εἶναι, *be in the way, hinder.* 772.

ἐμ-ποιέω, *create* or *inspire in, impress upon.* 774.

ἐμ-πορεύομαι [561], *travel on business, engage in traffic.*

ἐμ-πόριον, τό [561], *place of trade, emporium.*

ἔμ-προσθεν, adv. [πρόσθεν], *before, in front of;* ὁ ἔμπροσθεν λόγος, *the previous book.* 761.

ἐν, prep. w. dat., procl. [Lat. *in,* Eng. IN], *in.* Of place, *in, among, in presence of, before, at, on, by;* of time, *in, during, within, at, in the course of;* ἐν τούτῳ, *meanwhile;* ἐν ᾧ, *while.*

In composition *ἐν* signifies *in, at, on, upon, among.*

ἐν-αντίος, ᾱ, ον [ἀντίος], *opposite, in one's face;* τἀναντία, *the reverse.*

ἐν-άπτω, *set on fire.*

ἑν-δέκατος, η, ον, 496 [ἕν-δεκα, *eleven*], *eleventh.*

†**ἔνδο-θεν**, adv., *from inside.*

ἔνδον, adv. [ἐν], *inside, within.*

ἐν-δύω, *put on.*

ἐν-εδρεύω, ἐν-εδρεύσομαι, ἐν-ήδρευσα, ἐν-ηδρεύθην [ἐν-έδρᾱ, *ambush,* ἕδρα, *seat,* see καθ-έζομαι], *set an ambush, waylay.*

ἔν-ειμι (εἰμί), *be in* or *there.*

ἕνεκα or **ἕνεκεν**, improper prep. with gen., post-positive, *on account of.*

ἐνενήκοντα, indecl., 496 [ἐννέα], *ninety.*

ἐν-εσθίω, *eat quickly* or *hastily.*

ἐν-εχείρισα, see ἐγ-χειρίζω.

ἔνθα, adv. [ἐν], of place, *where, there, here;* of time, *then, thereupon.*

‡**ἐνθά-δε**, adv., *there, here, hither.*

‡**ἔνθα-περ**, adv., *just where.*

ἔν-θεν, adv. [ἐν], *from there, thence, whence.*

‡**ἐνθέν-δε**, adv., *hence, from this spot.*

ἐν θῡμέομαι, ἐν-θῡμήσομαι, ἐν-τεθύμημαι, ἐν-εθῡμήθην, 599 [537], *have in mind, reflect.*

ἐν-θύμημα, ατος, τό [537], *thought, device, plan.*

ἐνιαυτός, ὁ, *year*, Lat. *annus*.

ἔνιοι, αι, α, *some*.

ἐνίοτε, adv. [*cf.* ἔνιοι], *sometimes*.

ἐννέα, indecl., 496 [Lat. *nouem*, *nine*, Eng. NINE], *nine*.

ἐν-νοέω, *have in mind*, often as pass. dep., *consider*, *be anxious* or *apprehensive*.

ἔν-νοια, ᾱς [644], *thought*.

ἐν-οικέω, *live in*, *inhabit*; *οἱ ἐνοικοῦντες*, *the inhabitants*.

ἐν-οράω, *see in* a person or thing.

ἑνός, **ἑνί**, see εἷς.

ἐν-οχλέω. ἐν-ωχλήσω. ἠν-ώχληκα. ἠν-ώχλημαι. ἠν-ωχλήθην [ὄχλος, *crowd*], *crowd upon*, *harass*, *annoy*.

ἐνταῦθα, adv. [ἐν], *there*, *here*, *in this place*, *hereupon*, *thereupon*.

ἐν-τείνω, *stretch* or *strain tight*, *inflict upon*.

ἐν-τελής, ές [τέλος, *end*], *at the end*, *complete*, *in full*.

ἐντεῦθεν, adv. [ἐν], *thence*, *from this place*, *thereupon*.

ἐν-τίθημι [638], *put in*, *inspire in*. 774.

ἐντός, adv. [ἐν], *within*. 761.

ἐν-τυγχάνω, *chance upon*, *meet*, *find*. 774.

Ἐνυάλιος, ὁ, *Enyalius*, a name of Ares, god of war.

ἐξ, before a consonant **ἐκ**, prep. w. gen., proel. [Lat. *ex*, *ē*]. Of place, *out of*, *from*, *from within*; of time, *after*, as *ἐκ τούτου*, *after this*, *hereupon*, *ἐκ παίδων*, *from boyhood*; of source or origin, *from*, *in consequence of*, as *ἐκ τούτου*, *in consequence of this*.

In composition *ἐξ* signifies *from*, *away*, *out*, often implying resolution, strong intention, fulfilment, or completion.

ἕξ, indecl., 496 [Lat. *sex*, *six*, Eng. SIX, *hex-agon*], *six*.

ἐξ-αγγέλλω, *tell out*, *report*, esp. the proceedings of a conference.

ἐξ-άγω, *lead forth*, *induce*.

ἐξ-αιτέω, *ask from*, *demand*; mid., *beg off*, *save by entreaty*.

ἑξακισ-χίλιοι, αι, α, 496 [ἕξ+χίλιοι], *6000*.

ἑξα-κόσιοι, αι, α, 496 [ἕξ+ἑκατόν], *600*.

ἐξ-απατάω. ἐξ-απατήσω, *deceive grossly*, *mislead*.

ἐξ-απάτη, ης [ἀπάτη, *deceit*], *gross deceit*, *deception*.

ἐξ-απίνης, adv. [ἄφνω, adv., *of a sudden*], *all of a sudden*, *unexpectedly*.

ἔξ-ειμι (εἰμί), used only impers., *ἔξ-εστι*, *it is allowed* or *possible*.

ἔξ-ειμι (εἶμι), *go out*, *depart*.

ἐξ-ελαύνω, *drive out*, *expel*; intr., *march*, *march on*.

ἐξ-έρχομαι, *go* or *come out*, *get out*, *escape*, *march out*.

ἔξ-εστι, **ἐξ-έσται**, see ἔξ-ειμι (εἰμί).

ἐξ-εταζω (εταδ-), ἐξ-ετάσω, *etc.*, iv. [666], *examine closely*, *review*.

ἐξ-έτασις, εως, ἡ [666], *inspection*, *review*.

ἑξήκοντα, indecl., 476 [ἕξ], *sixty*.

ἐξ-ικνέομαι, *reach* a place *from* somewhere, *reach the mark*, *hit*.

ἐξ-ίστημι, *make stand out of*; mid., *stand aside*, *retire*.

ἐξ-οπλίζω, *arm*; mid., *arm oneself*.

ἐξ-οπλισία, ᾱς, *state of being armed*; *ἐν τῇ ἐξοπλισίᾳ*, *under arms*.

ἐξ-ορμάω, *urge out*, *incite*, *arouse*; intr., *set out*.

ἔξω, adv. [ἐξ, Eng. *exotic*], *outside*, *without*, *beyond the reach of*. 761.

ἐπ-αγγέλλομαι, *declare oneself*, *promise*, *offer*.

ἐπ-αινέω, *bestow praise on*, *praise*, *commend*, *approve*, *applaud*.

ἐπ-αίτιος, ον [αἴτιος], *blamed for*; *ἐπαίτιόν τι*, *cause for blame*.

ἐπ-ακολουθέω, *follow upon* or *after, follow, pursue.* 773.

ἐπάν, see **ἐπήν**.

ἐπεί, temporal and causal conj., *when, since.*

‡**ἐπειδ-άν**, conj. with subjv. [ἄν], *when, after,* with or without τάχιστα, *as soon as.*

‡**ἐπει-δή**, conj. [δή], *when.*

ἔπ-ειμι (εἰμί), *be on* or *upon, be over.*

ἔπ-ειμι (εἶμι), *go* or *come on, follow, advance, make an attack.*

ἐπεί-περ, conj. [ἐπεί], *since indeed.*

ἔπ-ειτα, adv. [εἶτα], *thereupon, thereafter, moreover.*

ἐπ-εκ-θέω, *run out against.*

ἐπ-έχω, *hold upon, hold back, delay.* 753.

ἐπήν, temporal conj. with subjv. [ἐπεί+ἄν], *whenever, as soon as.*

ἐπί, prep. with gen., dat., or acc. With gen., of place, *on, upon,* ἐφ' ἵππων, *on horseback,* with verbs of motion, *towards, in the direction of;* of time, *in the time of, at;* of manner, esp. denoting distribution, ἐπὶ τεττάρων, *four deep,* ἐπὶ φάλαγγος, *in the form of a phalanx, in battle array.* With dat., of place, *upon, on, by, close to, at,* ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ, *on the sea;* of time, ἐπὶ τούτῳ or τούτοις, *at* or *upon this, thereupon;* of cause, aim, or reason, *for;* of possession, *in the power of, in command of;* of manner, *in,* ἐπὶ γάμῳ, *in marriage.* With acc., of place, *on, upon, to, against;* of extent of space, *extending over, over, along;* of extent of time, *for, during;* of purpose or object, *to, for.*

In composition ἐπί signifies *over, in, upon, against, in addition,* but often it is merely intensive.

ἐπι-βουλεύω, *plan* or *plot against, design.* 774.

ἐπι-βουλή, ῆς [615], *a plan against, plot, design.*

ἐπι-γίγνομαι, *come upon, arise.*

ἐπι-γράφω, *write upon, inscribe.*

ἐπι-δείκνῡμι, *show to, point out, display, disclose;* mid., *show for oneself, show.*

ἐπί-θεσις, εως, ἡ [638], *attack.*

ἐπι-θῡμέω, ἐπι-θυμήσω, ἐπ-εθύμησα [537], *have one's heart on, desire, long for.* 747.

ἐπι-θῡμία, ας [537], *desire.*

ἐπι-κάμπτω (καμπ-), ἐπι-κάμψω, iii., *bend towards, wheel.*

ἐπι-κατα-ρρίπτω, *throw down after.*

ἐπί-κειμαι, *lie upon, attack.* 774.

ἐπι-κίνδῡνος, ον [κίνδῡνος], *dangerous, perilous.*

ἐπικουρέω, ἐπικουρήσω, ἐπεκούρησα [ἐπίκουρος, *ally*], *lend assistance.* 768.

‡**ἐπικούρημα**, ατος, τό, *relief, protection.*

ἐπι-κρατέω, *get the mastery.*

ἐπι-κρύπτω, *conceal, hide.*

ἐπι-κῡρόω, ἐπι-κῡρώσω [κῦρος, τό, *might*], *make valid, confirm, ratify.*

ἐπι-λαμβάνω, *take to oneself;* mid., *take hold of.* 746.

ἐπι-λανθάνομαι, *forget.* 747.

ἐπι-λείπω, *leave behind;* intr., *fail, give out.*

†**ἐπι-μέλεια**, ας, *care, thoughtfulness, attention.*

†**ἐπι-μελέομαι**, ἐπι-μελήσομαι, ἐπι-μεμέλημαι, ἐπ-εμελήθην, *care for, give attention to.* 747, 792.

ἐπι-μελής, ές [μέλει], *careful.*

ἐπι-νοέω, *have in mind, purpose.*

†**ἐπι-ορκέω**, ἐπι-ορκήσω, ἐπι-ώρκηκα, ἐπι-ώρκησα, *swear falsely, forswear* or *perjure oneself.*

ἐπί-ορκος, ον [ὅρκος], *perjured.*

ἐπι-πίπτω, *fall upon, attack, assail;* of snow, *fall.*

ἐπι-πλέω, *sail upon* or *against.*

ἐπί-πονος, ον [580], *laborious.*

ἐπί-ρρυτος, ον [ῥέω], *flowed upon, watered, well watered.*

ἐπι-σῑτίζομαι (σῑτιδ-), ἐπι-σῑτιοῦμαι, ἐπ-εσῑτισάμην, iv. [σῖτος], *collect* or *procure supplies.*

ἐπι-σῑτισμός, ὁ, *a procuring of supplies, foraging.*

ἐπι-σκέπτομαι, *look to, examine, inquire.*

ἐπι-σκοπέω, *look to, consider.*

ἐπίσταμαι (ἐπιστα-), ἐπιστή-σομαι, ἠπιστήθην, 647, 5, viii., *understand, know, know how.*

ἐπι-στέλλω, *send to, send word, enjoin, command.*

ἐπι-στολή, ῆς [*epistle*], *letter.*

ἐπι-στρατεύω, *make an expedition against.* 774.

ἐπι-σφάττω, *slay upon.*

ἐπι-τάττω, *lay orders on, command.* 774.

ἐπι-τελέω, *bring to an end, fulfil.*

ἐπιτήδειος, ᾱ, ον [*expedient, of set purpose*], *suitable, fit, deserving*; τὰ **ἐπιτήδεια**, *provisions, supplies.*

ἐπι-τίθημι, ἐπι-θήσω, ἐπ-έθηκα : δίσμ. ἐπιτίθεται, *inflict punishment*; mid., *attack, assault.* 774.

ἐπι-τρέπω, *turn over to, entrust*; mid., *give leave, permit* or *yield* for protection.

ἐπι-τυγχάνω, ἐπι-τεύξομαι, ἐπ-έτυχον, *find.* 774.

ἐπι-φαίνομαι, *show oneself to, appear.*

ἐπι-χειρέω, ἐπι-χειρήσω [χείρ], *put one's hand to, attempt.*

ἐπι-χέω, *pour on* or *in.*

ἐπι-χωρέω, *move against, advance.*

ἐπι ψηφίζω, *put to vote.*

ἐπ οικοδομέω, *build on* or *upon.*

ἕπομαι, ἑψομαι, ἑσπόμην, 604, 5 [Lat. *sequor, sol'ous*], *follow, accompany, pursue.* 773.

ἑπτά, indecl., 496 [Lat. *septem, seven*, Eng. SEVEN, *hepta* (*pta*), *seven.*

ἑπτα κόσιοι, αι, α [*heptator*], *700.*

Ἐπύαξα, ης, *Epyaxa.*

ἐργάζομαι (εργαδ-), ἐργάσομαι, εἰργασάμην, εἴργασμαι, 618, 4, iv. [468], *work, do, inflict on.* 738.

ἔργον, τό [468], *work, deed, execution, exercise.*

ἔρημος, η, ον, and ος, ον [*hermit*], *deserted, empty, uninhabited, destitute* or *deprived of*; στρατιὰ ἐρήμη *marches through a desert.* 760.

ἐρίζω (ερῑδ-), ερῑσ-ω, ἔρῑσα, iv. [ἔρις, *strife*], *strive, contend, vie with.* 773.

Ἑρμηνεύς, εως, ὁ [*hermeneutic*], *interpreter.*

Ἑρμῆς, οῦ, 178, *Hermes*, the *Mercury* of the Romans, messenger of Zeus.

ἔρυμα, ατος, τό, *protection, wall.*

ἐρυμνός, ή, όν, *fortified.*

ἔρχομαι (ερχ-, ελευθ-), ἐλεύσομαι, ἦλθον, ἐλήλυθα, 655, 3, viii. [*pros-elyte*], *come, go.*

ἐρῶ, see **εἶπον**.

ἔρως, ωτος, ὁ [*erotic*], *love.*

ἐρωτάω, ἐρωτήσω, ἠρώτησα, 2 a or, ἠρόμην, *ask* a question, *inquire.* 737.

ἑσθής, ῆτος, ἡ [ἕννυμι, *clothe*, Lat. *vestis*, *clothing*, Eng. WEAR], *clothes, raiment.*

ἐσθίω (εσθι-, εδ-, φαγ-), ἔδομαι, ἔφαγον, ἐδήδοκα, ἐδήδεσμαι, ἠδέσθην, 655, 1, viii. [Lat. *edō, eat*, Eng. EAT], *eat, have to eat, live on.*

ἔσται, ἔσοιτο, see **εἰμί**.

ἐσταλμένος, see **στέλλω**.

ἕστε, conj., *until.* 821, 822.

ἑστηκώς, ἕστησαν, ἑστώς, see **ἵστημι**.

ἔσχατος, η, ον [ξ], *farthest, outermost, extreme*; τὰ ἔσχατα **παθεῖν**, *suffer death.*

ἔσω-θεν, adv. [ἔσω], *from inside*; τὸ **ἔσωθεν**, *the inner.*

ἔταξα, ἐτάχθησαν, see **τάττω**.

ἕτερος, ᾱ, ον [*hetero-dox, heterogeneous*], *the other, one of two*; without art., *another, other.*

ἔτι, adv. of time and degree, *yet, still, further, longer, any more, again.*

ἕτοιμος, η, ον, or ος, ον [666], *ready, prepared.*

ἔτος, ους, τό [Lat. *uetus, old,* Eng. WETHER], *year,* Lat. *annus.*

ἐτράφην, see *τρέφω.*

εὖ, adv. [666], *well, well off, happily; εὖ ποιεῖν, do well by, benefit.*

†**εὐ-δαιμονίᾱ**, ᾱς, *prosperity.*

†**εὐ-δαιμονίζω** [ευδαιμονιδ-], **εὐδαιμονιῶ**, **ηὐδαιμόνισα**, iv., *count happy, congratulate.* 756.

†**εὐ-δαιμόνως**, adv., *happily,* comp. **εὐδαιμονέστερον.**

εὐ-δαίμων, ον, gen. ονος, [δαίμων], *of good fate* or *fortune, fortunate, happy, prosperous, flourishing.*

εὐ-εργέτης, ου [468], *well-doer, benefactor.*

†**εὐ-ήθεια**, ᾱς, *simplicity, silliness, folly.*

εὐ-ήθης, ες [ἦθος, τό, *character,* Eng. *ethics*], *of simple character, silly, foolish.*

εὐθύς, adv., *straightway, immediately, at once,* Lat. *statim.*

εὐ-κλεῶς, adv. [εὐ-κλεής, *famous,* κλέος, τό, *fame,* Lat. *cluēō, be spoken of,* Eng. LOUD], *gloriously.*

εὔ-νοια, ᾱς [644], *good-will, fidelity.*

εὐ-νοϊκῶς, adv. [644], *with good-will, kindly; εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχειν, be well-disposed.*

εὔ-νοος, ον, contr. **εὔνους, ουν** [644], *well-disposed, attached.*

εὐ-πετῶς, adv. [εὐ-πετής, *falling well, easy,* cf. πίπτω], *easily.*

εὑρίσκω (εὑρ-), **εὑρήσω**, **ηὗρον**, **ηὕρηκα**, **ηὕρημαι**, **ηὑρέθην**, 642, 4, vi., *find, devise, procure.*

εὖρος, ους, τό [εὐρύς, *broad*], *breadth, width.*

εὐ-τάκτως, adv. [554], *in good order.*

εὐ-ταξίᾱ, ᾱς [554], *good order, discipline.*

εὐ-τολμος, ον [τόλμα], *of brave spirit, courageous.*

εὐ-τυχέω, **εὐτυχήσω**, *etc.* [554], *have success.*

Εὐφράτης, ου, *the Euphrātes.*

εὔχομαι, **εὔξομαι**, **εὐξάμην**, 600, 7, *pray, wish for, offer one's vows.*

εὐ-ώδης, ες [ὄζω, *smell,* Lat. *odor, smell*], *sweet-smelling, fragrant.*

εὐ-ώνυμος, ον [644], *of good name* or *omen,* euphemistic for the ill-omened word **ἀριστερός**, *left; τὸ εὐώνυμον, the left wing.*

ἐφ', see *ἐπί.*

ἔφαγον, see *ἐσθίω.*

ἐφάνην, see *φαίνω.*

ἔφασαν, ἔφατε, see *φημί.*

ἐφ-έπομαι, *follow after, pursue.* 773.

Ἔφεσος, ἡ, *Ephesus.*

ἔφη, ἔφησθα, see *φημί.*

ἐφ-ίστημι, *bring to a stand, make halt;* intr. in mid., 2 aor., and pf., *be set in* or *on, stop, halt.*

ἔφ-οδος, ἡ [ὁδός], *way to, approach.*

ἐχθρός, ά, όν [ἔχθος, *hate*], *hostile; ἐχθρός, ὁ, enemy, foe.*

ἔχω (σεχ-), ἕξω and **σχήσω**, **ἔσχον**, **ἔσχηκα**, **ἔσχημαι**, 604, 6 [608], *have,* Lat. *habeō, hold, possess, receive, keep, wear; ἔχων, having, with;* with inf., *be able, can;* with an adv. equivalent to **εἶναι** with an adj., as **εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχειν**, *be well-disposed; οὐκ ἔχω, not to know;* mid., *hold on to, come next to.*

ἕψω, **ἑψήσω**, **ἥψησα**, *boil.*

ἑώρᾱ, ἑώρᾱκα, ἑώρων, see *ὁράω.*

ἕως, ἕω, ἡ [Lat. *aurōra, dawn,* Eng. EAST], *dawn, east.*

ἕως, conj., *as long as, while, until.* 821, 822.

Z.

ζάω, **ζήσω** [ζωός, *alive,* Eng. *zoology*], *live, be alive.*

ζεύγνῡμι (ζυγ-), ζεύξω, ἔζευξα, ἔζευγ-μαι, ἐζύγην and ἐζεύχθην, 651, 2, v. [654], *yoke, join, form by joining.*

ζεῦγος, ους, τό [654], *yoke, team,* Lat. *iugum,* pl. *cattle.*

Ζεύς, Διός, ὁ, 392, *Zeus,* highest of the gods.

ζηλόω, ζηλώσω [ζῆλος, *envy,* Eng. *zeal, jealous*], *emulate, envy.* 756.

‡**ζηλωτός,** ή, όν, *to be envied; ζηλωτόν, an object of envy.*

ζημία, ας, *loss, penalty.*

‡**ζημιόω,** ζημιώσω, *etc., cause one loss, do damage to, punish.* 755.

ζῆν, ζῶν, see ζάω.

ζητέω, ζητήσω, *etc., seek, ask for.*

ζώνη, ης [*zone*], *belt, girdle.*

H.

ἤ, conj., *or; ἤ . . . ἤ, either . . . or; πότερον . . . ἤ, whether . . . or.*

ἤ, conj., *than,* Lat. *quam.*

ἦ, intensive particle, *really, truly;* in oaths, *ἦ μήν, in very truth.*

ᾗ, dat. sing. fem. of ὅς used adv. (*sc.* ὁδῷ), *in which way, where, as.*

ἤγγειλα, see ἀγγέλλω.

ἡγεμών, όνος, ὁ [435], *leader, guide.*

ἡγέομαι, ἡγήσομαι, ἠγησάμην, ἧγημαι, ἡγήθην, 255 a [435], *go before, lead, conduct, command; think, believe, consider.* 748.

ᾔδειν, ᾔδεσαν, see οἶδα.

ἡδέως, adv. [ἡδύς], *gladly;* comp. ἥδῑον, sup. ἥδιστα.

ἤδη, adv., *already, by this time, at length, now, forthwith.*

†**ἥδομαι,** ἡσθήσομαι, ἥσθην, *be glad, be pleased.*

ἡδύς, εῖα, ύ [Lat. *suāuis, sweet,* Eng. SWEET], *sweet, pleasant.*

ἥκιστα, see ἧττων.

ἥκω, ἥξω, *come, be* or *have come.*

ἤλασε. see ἐλαύνω.

Ἠλεῖος, ὁ, *an Elēan.*

ἤλεκτρον, τό [*electric*], *lustre, radiance, amber; electrum,* a compound of ⅘ gold and ⅕ silver.

ἦλθον, see ἔρχομαι.

†**ἠλίβατος,** ον, *high, steep.*

ἠλίθιος, ᾱ, ον, *idle, foolish, silly; τὸ ἠλίθιον, folly.*

ἥλιος, ὁ [*helio-trope, peri-helion*], *the sun.*

ἡλωκώς, see ἁλίσκομαι.

ἧμαι [ἡσ-], 667, 3, *sit.*

ἡμεῖς, *etc.,* see ἐγώ.

ἡμελημένως, adv. [formed from pf. pass. partic. of ἀμελέω], *carelessly.*

ἡμέρᾱ, ας [*ep-hemeral*], *day; τῇ ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ, next day; μέσον ἡμέρᾱς, mid-day, noon; ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, at day-break.*

ἡμέτερος, ᾱ, ον, 531 [ἡμεῖς], *our; τὰ ἡμέτερα, our affairs.*

ἡμι-, only in composition [Lat. *sēmi-, half-,* Eng. *hemi-*], *half.*

ἡμί-βρωτος, ον [βρωτός, *to be eaten,* βιβρώσκω, *eat,* Lat. *uorō, devour*], *half-eaten.*

ἡμι-δᾶρεικόν, τό, [δᾶρεικός], *half-daric.*

ἡμι-δεής, ές [δέω, *lack*], *wanting half, half full.*

ἡμι-όλιος, ᾱ, ον [ὅλος], *containing the whole and half, half as much again.*

ἥμισυς, εια, υ [ἡμι-], *half.*

ἡμι ωβόλιον. τό [ὀβολός], *half-obol.*

ἤν, contr. form of ἐάν.

ἦν, see εἰμί.

ἡνίκα, conjunctive adv., *when.*

ἡνί-οχος, ὁ [608], *driver, charioteer.*

ἠρέθην. ἠρήμην. see αἱρέω.

ἠρόμην, see ἐρωτάω.

ἧσθη, see ἥδομαι.

ἡσυχῇ, adv. [ἥσυχος, *quiet*], *quietly, in silence.*

ἡσυχίᾱ, ᾱς [ἥσυχος, *quiet*], *stillness, quiet; ἡσυχίᾱν ἄγειν, keep still, hold one's peace.*

†**ἡττάομαι**, ἡττήσομαι, *etc.*, pass. dep., 599, *be inferior, be worsted* or *defeated.* 754.

ἧττων, ον, gen. ονος, 469, *inferior, weaker.*

Θ.

θάλαττα, ης, *sea*, Lat. *mare.*

θαμινά, adv. [θαμά, *often*], *frequently, often.*

θάνατος, ὁ [θνήσκω], *death.*

↓**θανατόω**, θανατώσω, ἐθανάτωσα, ἐθανατώθην, *put* or *condemn to death.*

θάπτω (ταφ-), θάψω, ἔθαψα, τέθαμμαι, ἐτάφην, 613, 4, iii., *bury.*

†**θαρραλέος**, ᾱ, ον, *bold, courageous.*

‡**θαρραλέως**, adv., *boldly, courageously.*

†**θαρρέω**, θαρρήσω, ἐθάρρησα, τεθάρρηκα, *be bold* or *courageous, take heart; θαρρῶν*, partic. as adv., *confidently.*

θάρρος, ους, τό [DARE, DURST], *courage.*

↓**θαρρύνω**, iv., *make bold, cheer, encourage.*

θάττων, see ταχύς.

θαυμάζω (θαυμαδ-), θαυμάσομαι, ἐθαύμασα, τεθαύμακα, ἐθαυμάσθην, 618, 5, iv. [θαῦμα, *wonder*, Eng. *thaumaturgy*], *wonder at, admire, wonder.*

↓**θαυμάσιος**, ᾱ, ον, *wonderful, remarkable.*

↓**θαυμαστός**, ή, όν, *wondrous, wonderful, surprising, remarkable.*

†**Θαψακηνοί**, οἱ, *inhabitants of Thapsacus, Thapsacenes.*

Θάψακος, ή, *Thapsacus.*

θεᾶ, ᾶς [θεός], *goddess.*

θεάομαι, θεάσομαι, *etc.*, 598 [*theatre*], *gaze at, behold.*

θεῖος, ᾱ, ον [θεός], *divine; θεῖον, τό, divine intervention, portent.*

θέλω, see ἐθέλω.

-θεν, suffix denoting *whence.*

θεός, ὁ, ἡ [*theo-logy, theism*], *god, goddess.*

†**θεραπεύω**, θεραπεύσω [*therapeutic*], *serve, wait upon, take care of, court.*

θεράπων, οντος, ὁ, *servant.*

†**Θετταλίᾱ**, ᾱς, *Thessaly.*

Θετταλός, ὁ, *a Thessalian.*

θέω (θυ-), θεύσομαι, 610, 1, ii., *run, race;* of troops, *charge.*

θεωρέω, θεωρήσω, ἐθεώρησα, τεθεώρηκα [θεωρός, *spectator, cf.* θεᾶομαι, Eng. *theorem, theory*], *view, witness, inspect, review.*

θήρᾱ, ᾱς [θήρ, *wild beast*, Lat. *ferus, wild*, Eng. DEER], *hunt, chase.*

↓**θηράω**, θηρᾰσω, ἐθήρᾰσα, τεθήρᾰκα, ἐθηρθάην, *hunt, chase, pursue.*

↓**θηρεύω**, θηρεύσω, *etc.*, *hunt, catch.*

↓**θηρίον**, τό, *wild animal, creature.*

θησαυρός, ὁ [638], *treasure.*

-θι, suffix denoting *where.*

θνήσκω (θαν-), θανοῦμαι, ἔθανον, τέθνηκα, 642, 5, vi., *die*, pf. and 2 pf., 660, 2, *be dead, be slain.*

θόρυβος, ὁ [θρόος, *noise*], *noise, disturbance, uproar.*

†**Θρᾴκιος**, ᾱ, ον, *Thracian.*

Θρᾷξ, κός, ὁ, *a Thracian.*

θυγάτηρ, τρός, ἡ, 291 [DAUGHTER], *daughter.*

Θύμβριον, τό, *Thymbrium.*

θῡμο-ειδής, ές [537, 663], *high-spirited.*

θῡμόομαι, θῡμώσομαι, τεθύμωμαι, ἐθῡμώθην, [537], *be angry.* 768.

θῡμός, ὁ [537], *soul, heart.*

θύρᾱ, ᾱς [Lat. *foris, door*, Eng. DOOR], *door; ἐπὶ ταῖς βασιλέως θύραις, at court;* so *θύραι* of a general's *headquarters.*

θυσίᾱ, ᾱς [538], *sacrifice, offering.*

θύω, θύσω, τύσα, τέθυκα, τέθυμαι, ἐτύθην, 442 [538], *sacrifice;* mid., *cause to sacrifice, offer sacrifice.*

†**θωρᾱκίζω** (*θωρᾱκιδ-*), *ἐθωράκισα, τεθωράκισμαι, ἐθωρᾱκίσθην*, iv., *arm with a cuirass*; mid., *put on one's cuirass.*

θώρᾱξ, *ᾱκος, ὁ* [*thorax*], *breastplate, corselet, cuirass.*

I.

ἰάομαι, ἰάσομαι, ἰᾱσάμην, ἴάθην, *heal, cure.*

‡**ἰᾱτρός**, *ὁ, surgeon, physician.*

ἰδέ, ἰδεῖν, *etc.*, see *ὁράω.*

ἴδιος, *ᾱ, ον* [*idiom, idio-syncrasy*], *one's own, personal, private; εἰς τὸ ἴδιον, for one's personal use.*

‡**ἰδιώτης**, *ου* [*idiot*], *an ordinary* or *private person, private soldier, private.*

ἱδρόω, ἵδρωσα [*ἱδρώς, sweat*, Lat. *sūdor, sweat*, Eng. SWEAT], *sweat, reek with sweat.*

†**ἱερεῖον**, *τό, victim for sacrifice.*

ἱερός, *ᾱ́, όν* [*hier-archy, hiero-glyphic*], *holy, sacred; ἱερά, τά, sacrifices, omens* from inspecting the vitals, in contrast to *σφάγια.*

ἵημι(*ἑ-*), *ἥσω, ἧκα, εἷκα, εἷμαι, εἵθην*, 667, 1, 702, *send, throw, hurl at*; mid., *send oneself, rush, charge*, 746.

†**ἱκανός**, *ή, όν, coming up to, sufficient, able, capable, competent.*

‡**ἱκανῶς**, adv., *sufficiently, enough.*

ἱκνέομαι (*ἱκ-*), *ἵξομαι, ἱκόμην, ἷγμαι*, 627, 1, v., *come.*

Ἰκόνιον, *τό, Iconium.*

ἵλεως, *ων*, gen. *ω*, 170, *propitious.*

ἴλη, *ης* [*εἴλω, press, hem in*], *crowd, band*; of cavalry, *troop.*

ἵνα, final particle, *that, in order that.*

ἱππεύς, *έως, ὁ* [564], *horseman, knight, cavalryman*, pl., *cavalry.*

ἱππικός, *ή, όν* [564], *for cavalry, cavalry-*; *ἱππικόν, τό, cavalry, horse.*

ἱππό-δρομος, *ὁ* [564], *race-course, hippodrome.*

ἵππος, *ὁ, ἡ* [564], *horse, mare*; *ἀπὸ* or *ἐφ' ἵππου, on horseback.*

ἴσθι, ἴσμεν, *etc.*, see *οἶδα.*

†**ἰσό-πλευρος**, *ον* [*πλευρά*], *with equal sides, equilateral.*

ἴσος, *η, ον* [*iso-sceles*], *equal*; *οὐκ ἐξ ἴσου ἐσμέν, we are not on an equality.*

Ἰσσοί, *οἱ, Issus.*

ἵστημι (*στα-*), *στήσω*, **ἔστησα** and *ἔστην, ἕστηκα, ἕσταμαι, ἐστάθην*, 647, 6, vii., 2 pf. *ἕστατον, etc.*, 659, 697 [649], *set, make stand, make halt*; intr. in mid. (except 1 aor.), in 2 aor., both pfs., and both plpfs. act., *stand, stop, halt.*

ἱστίον, *τό* [649], *sail.*

†**ἰσχῠρός**, *ᾱ, όν, strong.*

‡**ἰσχῠρῶς**, adv., *strongly, vehemently, exceedingly, vigorously, with severity.*

ἰσχύς, *ύος, ἡ* [Lat. *uīs, strength*], *strength*; of an army, *force.*

ἴσως, adv. [*ἴσος*], *equally, perhaps.*

ἶτυς, *υος, ἡ, outer edge, rim.*

ἰχθύς, *ύος, ὁ* [*ichthyo-logy*], *fish.*

ἴχνος, *ους, τό, trace, track.*

Ἰωνίᾱ, *ᾱς, Ionia.*

‡**Ἰωνικός**, *ή, όν, Ionian.*

K.

κἀγαθά, by crasis for *καὶ ἀγαθά.*

κἀγώ, by crasis for *καὶ ἐγώ.*

καθ', see *κατά.*

καθ-έζομαι (*ἑδ-*), *καθ-εδοῦμαι*, impf. *ἐκαθ-εζόμην*, iv. [Lat. *sedeō, sit*, Eng. SIT, SET], *sit down*; of a general, *make a halt, encamp.*

καθ-εύδω, *καθ-ευδήσω, lie down to sleep, sleep, lie* or *be asleep.*

καθ-ηγέομαι, *lead* or *show the way.*

καθ-ηδυπαθέω, *καθ-ηδυπάθησα* [580], *be luxurious, waste in luxury.*

καθ-ήκω, *come down, reach* or *extend down.*

κάθ-ημαι, 704, *sit down, be seated;* of soldiers, *be encamped.*

καθ-ίστημι, *set down, station, bring down* or *back, bring, establish, make, appoint;* mid. with pf. and 2 aor. act. intrans., *take one's place, be established.* 739.

καθ-οράω, *look down on, observe, inspect.*

καί, conj., *and*, Lat. *et;* influencing particular words or expressions, *also, too, even, further*, Lat. *etiam;* καὶ . . . καί or τε . . . καί, *both . . . and, not only . . . but also.*

Καιναί, ῶν, *Caenae.*

καινός, ή, όν, *new, strange.*

καί-περ, concessive particle [καί], *although*, with the participle.

καιρός, ό, *the right* or *fitting time, opportunity, occasion.*

καί-τοι, conj. [καί+τοί], *and yet.*

καίω, see κάω.

κἀκεῖνος, by crasis for καὶ ἐκεῖνος.

†**κακό-νους**, ουν, 191 c [644], *evil-minded, ill-disposed.*

κακός, ή, όν, 448, 469, *bad* in the broadest sense (as opposed to ἀγαθός), *base, cowardly, hurtful;* κακόν, τό, *harm, evil.*

↓**κακοῦργος**, ό [468], *wrongdoer.*

↓**κακῶς**, adv., *badly, ill;* κακῶς ποιεῖν, *do harm* or *damage to, injure, ravage;* κακῶς ἔχειν, *be badly off.*

κάλαμος, ό, *reed*, Lat. *harūndō.*

καλέω, καλῶ, ἐκάλεσα, κέκληκα, κέκλημαι, ἐκλήθην, 442 [622], *call, summon*, Lat. *uocō, call, name;* ὁ καλούμενος, *the so-called.*

Καλλίμαχος, ό, *Callimachus.*

καλός, ή, όν, 469 [HALE, WHOLE, *calli-graphy*], *beautiful, fair, propitious, noble;* καλὸς καὶ ἀγαθός, καλὸς κἀγαθός, *noble and good*, 'gentleman.'

καλύπτω (καλυβ-), καλύψω, ἐκάλυψα, κεκάλυμμαι, ἐκαλύφθην, 613, 5, iii., *cover.*

καλῶς, adv. [καλός], *beautifully, bravely, well, successfully, honourably;* καλῶς ἔχειν, *be well.*

κάμνω (καμ-), καμοῦμαι, ἔκαμον, κέκμηκα, 624, 3, v., *labour, be weary.*

κἀμοί, by crasis for καὶ ἐμοί.

κἄν, by crasis for καὶ ἐάν.

κάνδυς, υος, ό, a long outer garment, *the caftan.*

κάνεον, contr. κανοῦν, τό, *basket.*

καπηλεῖον, τό [κάπηλος, *retail dealer*, Lat. *caupō, tradesman*], *retail shop, tavern*, Lat. *caupōna.*

καπίθη, ης, *capithe*, a Persian dry measure, equal to two choenices. See χοῖνιξ.

κάπνος, ό, *smoke*, Lat. *fūmus.*

Καππαδοκία, ᾱς, *Cappadocia.*

κάπρος, ό [Lat. *caper, goat*], *wild boar*, Lat. *aper.*

Καρδοῦχοι, οἱ, *the Carduchians.*

Καρία, ᾱς, *Caria.*

Κάρσος, ό, *the Carsus.*

κάρφη, ης [κάρφω, *dry up*], *dried stalks, hay, straw.*

Καστωλός, ή, *Castōlus.*

κατά, prep. with gen. and acc., *down* (as opposed to ἀνά), Lat. *sub.* With gen., denoting motion from above, *down, down from, down upon, underneath.* With acc., of place or position, with verbs of motion, *on, over, down, down along, by, opposite, against, near, at;* of fitness or relation, *according to, concerning;* καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν, *by land and sea;* κατὰ κράτος, *with might and main;* κατὰ ἔθνη, *by nations;* κατὰ μέσον τὸν σταθμόν, *about the middle of the day's march.*

In composition κατά signifies *down, along*, or *against;* frequently it

merely strengthens the meaning of the simple verb, and often cannot be translated; sometimes it gives a transitive force to an intransitive simple verb (*cf.* Lat. *dē-*).

κατα-βαίνω, *go down, descend.*

↓κατά-βασις, εως, ἡ, *descent, march down* to the coast.

κατά-γειος, ον (γῆ), *underground.*

κατα-γελάω, *laugh at, deride.* 757.

κατ-άγω, *lead down* or *back, bring back, restore.*

κατα-δύω, *make enter, sink,* of ships; mid. intr., *sink down.*

κατα-θεάομαι, *look down on.*

κατ-αισχύνω, *disgrace.*

κατα-καίνω (καν-), κατα-κανῶ, κατ-έκανον, κατα-κέκονα, iv. [*cf.* κτείνω], *kill, slay, cut down.*

κατα-κάω, *burn down, burn up, burn.*

κατά-κειμαι, *lie down, lie asleep* or *outstretched.*

κατα-κηρύττω, *proclaim.*

κατα-κλείω, *shut up* or *in.*

κατα-κόπτω, *cut to pieces, slay.*

κατα-λαμβάνω, *seize upon, capture, take, surprise, occupy.*

κατα-λείπω, *leave behind, abandon.*

κατα λεύω, κατα-λεύσω, κατ-έλευσα, κατ-ελεύσθην [λᾶς, λᾶος, ὁ, *stone*], *stone to death, stone.*

κατ-αλλάττω, *change completely, reconcile.*

κατα-λύω, *unloose, dissolve, end, make peace, stop fighting, unyoke* (*sc.* τὰ ὑποζύγια), *i.e. make a halt, halt.*

κατα-μανθάνω, *learn thoroughly.*

κατα-μένω, *stay behind.*

κατα-νοέω, *mark well, observe.*

κατ-αντι-πέρᾱς, adv. [561], *over against, opposite.* 761.

κατα-πετρόω [πέτρᾱ], *stone to death.*

κατα-πηδάω, *leap down, leap.*

κατα-πράττω, *do thoroughly, execute, bring to an end, accomplish.*

κατα-σκέπτομαι, *view closely.*

κατα-σκηνέω, *encamp, camp.*

κατα-σπάω, *draw* or *drag down.*

κατά-στασις, εως, ἡ [649], *state, condition.*

κατα-στρέφω, *turn down, subdue.*

κατα-σχίζω, *split down, cleave asunder, burst through, burst open.*

κατα-τείνω, *stretch hard, insist.*

κατα-τίθημι, *put down, lay away* or *up;* παρά τινα καταθέσθαι, *put into one's keeping.*

κατα-φανής, ές [483], *clearly seen, in plain sight, visible.*

κατα-φεύγω, *take refuge.*

κατα-φρονέω, *set one's mind against, despise.* 757.

κατ-είδον, see καθ-οράω.

κατ-εσθίω, *eat up, bolt.*

κατ-έχω, *hold down, restrain, check, control, occupy.*

κατ-ηγορέω, κατ-ηγορήσω, etc., 597 [κατ-ήγορος, *accuser,* ἀγορεύω, *harangue, speak,* ἀγορά], *speak against, charge, accuse.* 757.

κατ-ιδών, see καθ-οράω.

καῦμα, ατος, τό [κάω], *heat.*

Καΰστρου πεδίον, τό, *Caÿster Plain, Caÿsterfield.*

κάω (καυ-), καύσω, ἔκαυσα, κέκαυκα, κέκαυμαι, ἐκαύθην, 620, 1, iv. [**caustic**, *holo-caust*], *burn, kindle, cauterize;* πῦρ ἔκᾱον, *they kept a fire going.*

κέγχρος, ὁ, *millet, millet grass.*

κεῖμαι, κείσομαι, 667, 2, 703 [Lat. *cīvis, citizen, quiēs, rest,* Eng. HOME, *cemetery*], *lie, be laid, lie dead.*

Κελαιναί, ῶν, *Celaenae.*

κελεύω, κελεύσω, ἐκέλευσα, κεκέλευκα, κεκέλευσμαι, ἐκελεύσθην, 441 b [Lat. *celer, swift, currō, run,* Eng. CAR, HORSE], *drive, order, command, bid, give orders,* Lat. *iubeō, urge, advise, suggest.*

κενός, *ή*, *όν*, *empty*, *groundless*. 760.

‡**κενο-τάφιον**, *τό* [*τάφος*], *cenotaph*.

Κεραμῶν ἀγορά, *ᾶς*, *Market of the Ceramians*.

κεράννῡμι (*κερα-*), *ἐκέρασα*, *κέκρᾶμαι*, *ἐκεράσθην* and *ἐκράθην*, v. [*crasis*], *mix*.

κέρας, *κέρως* and *κέρᾰτος*, *τό* [Lat. *cornū*, *horn*, Eng. HORN, HART, *rhino-ceros*], *horn*, prop. of an animal, then *bugle horn*, *drinking horn*, *peak* of a mountain, *wing* of an army.

Κερασούντιοι, *οἱ*, *the Cerasuntians*.

κεφαλή, *ῆς* [Lat. *caput*, *head*, Eng. HEAD, *a-cephalous*], *head*.

κῆρυξ, *ῡκος*, *ὁ* [622], *herald*.

κηρῡττω (*κηρῡκ-*), *κηρῡξω*, *ἐκήρῡξα*, *κεκήρῡχα*, *κεκήρῡγμαι*, *ἐκηρῡχθην*, 617, 2, iv. [622], *be a herald*, *proclaim*, *make proclamation*.

†**Κιλικίᾱ**, *ᾱς*, *Cilicia*.

Κίλιξ, *ικος*, *ὁ*, *a Cilician*.

‡**Κίλισσα**, *ᾱς*, *Cilician queen*.

†**κινδῡνεύω**, *κινδῡνεύσω*, *etc.*, *encounter danger*, *run a risk*, *be in peril*.

κίνδῡνος, *ὁ*, *danger*, *risk*.

κῑνέω, *κῑνήσω*, *etc.* [Lat. *cieō*, *cause to go*, Eng. HIE], *move*, *remove*.

κλάω (*κλαυ-*), *κλαύσομαι* and *κλαυσοῦμαι*, 620, 2, iv., *weep*, *wail*.

Κλεάνωρ, *ορος*, *ὁ*, *Cleānor*.

Κλέαρχος, *ὁ*, *Clearchus*, a Spartan general, the special friend of Cyrus; Κλέαρχοι, *men like Clearchus*.

κλείω, *κλείσω*, *ἔκλεισα*, *κέκλειμαι* and *κέκλεισμαι*, *ἐκλείσθην*, 441 b [Lat. *claudō*, *close*, Eng. SLOT], *shut*, *close*.

κλέπτω (*κλεπ-*), *κλέψω*, *ἔκλεψα*, *κέκλοφα*, *κέκλεμμαι*, *ἐκλάπην*, 613, 6, iii. [Lat. *clepō*, *steal*, Eng. *shop*-LIFTER], *steal*, *embezzle*.

Κλεώνυμος, *ὁ*, *Cleonymus*.

†**κλῖμαξ**, *ακος*, *ἡ* [*climax*], *ladder* (because it *leans*).

κλίνω (*κλιν-*), *κλινῶ*, *ἔκλῑνα*, *κέκλιμαι*, *ἐκλίθην* and *ἐκλίνην*, 619, 4, iv. [Lat. *inclīnō*, *incline*. Eng. LEAN, *climate*, *en-clitic*], *cause to lean*, *bend*.

κλώψ, *κλωπός*, *ὁ* [*κλέπτω*], *thief*.

κνημίς, *ῖδος*, *ἡ* [*κνήμη*, *leg*], *greave*.

κοιμάω, *ἐκοίμησα*, *ἐκοιμήθην* [*κεῖμαι*], *lay to rest*, *put to sleep*; mid. and pass., *lie down*, *go to sleep*, *sleep*.

†**κοινῇ**, adv., *in common*, *jointly*.

κοινός, *ή*, *όν*, *common*, *joint*.

‡**κοινόω**, *κοινώσω*, *make common*, *communicate*.

‡**κοινωνέω**, *κοινωνήσω*, *have a share of*, *partake of*. 745.

‡**κοινωνός**, *ὁ*, *sharer*, *partner*.

κολάζω (*κολαδ-*), *κολάσω*, *ἐκόλασα*, *κεκόλασμαι*, *ἐκολάσθην*, iv., *check*, *punish*, *inflict punishment*.

Κολοσσαί, *ῶν*, *Colossae*.

Κόλχοι, *οἱ*, *the Colchians*.

κομίζω (*κομιδ-*), *κομιῶ*, *etc.*, iv. [*κομέω*, *care for*], *carry away* so as to save, *bring*, *convey*.

κονιορτός, *ὁ*, *cloud of dust*.

κόπρος, *ἡ*, *dung*.

κόπτω (*κοπ-*), *κόψω*, *ἔκοψα*, *κέκοφα*, *κέκομμαι*, *ἐκόπην*, 613, 7, iii. [CHOP, *syn-copate*], *cut*, *hew*, *slash*, *fell*, *slaughter*.

Κορσωτή, *ῆς*, *Corsōte*.

κορυφή, *ῆς*, *top*, *summit*.

†**κοσμέω**, *κοσμήσω*, *dress*, *adorn*.

κόσμος, *ὁ* [*cosmic*, *cosmetic*], *order*, *dress*, *equipment*.

κοῦφος, *η*, *ον*, *light*; *χόρτος κοῦφος*, *hay*.

κράζω (*κραγ-*), *ἔκραγον*, *κέκρᾶγα*, 617, 3, iv. [622], *cry out*.

κράνος, *ους*, *τό* [*cranium*], *head-piece*, *helmet*.

κρατέω, *κρατήσω*, *etc.* [471], *be strong*, *have the power*, *be superior*, *master*, *overcome*, *control*, *conquer*.

κρᾱτήρ, ῆρος, ὁ [κεράννῡμι], *mixing bowl, punch bowl.*

κράτιστος, η, ον, 469 [471], *strongest, bravest, best, noblest;* neut. pl. κράτιστα as adv., *in the best way, most bravely.*

κράτος, ους, τό [471], *strength, force, might,* Lat. *vīs.*

κραυγή, ῆς [622], *outcry, shout, clamour, uproar.*

κρέας, κρέως, τό [Lat. *carō, flesh,* Eng. *creo-sote*], *flesh,* pl. *pieces of flesh, meat.*

κρείττων, ον, gen. ονος, 469 [471], *stronger, braver, better, nobler, more valuable.*

κρέμαμαι (κρεμα-), κρεμήσομαι, 647, 7, vii., intr., *hang, be suspended.*

†κρεμάννῡμι (κρεμα-), κρεμῶ, ἐκρέμασα, ἐκρεμάσθην, v., trans., *hang up, suspend.*

κρήνη, ης, *spring, well,* Lat. *fons.*

κρηπίς, ῖδος, ἡ, *base, foundation.*

Κρής, Κρητός, ὁ, *a Cretan.*

κρῖθή, ῆς, in pl., *barley.*

†κρίθινος, η, ον, *of barley.*

κρίνω (κριν-), κρινῶ, ἔκρῑνα, κέκρικα, κέκριμαι, ἐκρίθην, 619, 5, iv. [Lat. *cernō, separate,* Eng. *critic, hypocrisy*], *divide, distinguish, decide, determine, be of opinion, judge, bring to trial.*

κρῑός, ὁ, *ram,* Lat. *arīēs.*

κρίσις, εως, ἡ [κρίνω, Eng. *crisis*], *decision, trial.*

κρούω, κρούσω, ἔκρουσα, κέκρουκα, κέκρουμαι and κέκρουσμαι, ἐκρούσθην, *strike* one thing against another, *clash, rattle.*

κρύπτω (κρυφ-), κρύψω, ἔκρυψα, κέκρυμμαι, ἐκρύφθην, 613, 8, iii. [*crypt, crypto-gam, grotto*], *hide, conceal,* Lat. *tegō.* 737.

κτάομαι, κτήσομαι, ἐκτησάμην, κέκτημαι, 598, *acquire, gain, get, get together;* pf. as pres., *possess, have.*

κτείνω (κτεν-), κτενῶ, ἔκτεινα, ἔκτονα, 619, 6, iv., *kill.*

κτῆμα, ατος, τό [κτάομαι], *possession,* pl. *property.*

κτῆνος, ους, τό [κτάομαι], *chattel, domestic animal,* pl. *cattle.*

Κτησίᾱς, ου, *Ctesias,* a famous Greek physician at the Persian court.

Κύδνος, ὁ, *the Cydnus.*

κύκλος, ὁ [Lat. *circus, circle,* Eng. *ring, cycle, bi-cycle, en-cyclo-pædia*], *circle, curve, ring;* **κύκλῳ**, *in a circle.*

†κυκλόω, κυκλώσω, etc., *surround, encircle, hem in.*

†κύκλωσις, εως, ἡ, *an encircling;* ὡς εἰς κύκλωσιν, *as if to encircle.*

κυλίνδω, ἐκύλῑσα, κεκύλῑσμαι, ἐκυλίσθην [*cylinder*], *roll, roll down.*

Κῦρος, ὁ, I. *Cyrus the Elder,* founder of the Persian empire, according to Xenophon the son of Cambȳses and grandson of Astyages. II. *Cyrus the Younger,* the leader of the expedition against Artaxerxes. 705.

κύων, κυνός, ὁ [Lat. *canis, dog,* Eng. hound, *cynic*], *dog, hound, cur.*

κωλύω, κωλύσω, etc., *hinder, prevent, oppose, check;* τὸ κωλῦον, *the hindrance, obstacle.*

†κωμ-άρχης, ου [463], *village-chief.*

κώμη, ης [κεῖμαι], *village.*

†κωμήτης, ου, *villager.*

κώπη, ης, *oar-handle, oar.*

Λ.

λαβεῖν, λαβών, see λαμβάνω.

λαγχάνω (λαχ-), λήξομαι, ἔλαχον, εἴληχα, εἴλημαι, ἐλήχθην, 626, 1, v., *obtain by lot, get, obtain, be possessed of, hold.*

λαγώς, ὁ, *hare,* Lat. *lepus.*

λαθεῖν, λαθών, see λανθάνω.

λάθρᾳ, adv. [λανθάνω], *covertly, without the knowledge of.*

Λακεδαιμόνιος, ᾱ, ον, *Lacedaemonian;* Λακεδαιμόνιος, ὁ, *a Lacedaemonian.*

λακτίζω (λακτιδ-), λακτιῶ, *etc.*, iv. [λάξ, adv., *with the foot*, Lat. *calx*, *heel*], *kick at, kick.*

Λάκων, ωνος, ὁ, *a Laconian.*

‡**Λακωνικός**, ή, όν, *Laconian.*

λαμβάνω (λαβ-), λήψομαι, ἔλαβον, εἴληφα, εἴλημμαι, ἐλήφθην, 626, 2, v. [Lat. *labor, toil*, Eng. *di-lemma, pro-lepsis*], *take, take* into one's hand, *receive, get, take* or *get possession of, enlist, catch, find.*

†**λαμπρός**, ά, όν, *bright, distinguished.*

‡**λαμπρότης**, ητος, ἡ, *splendour.*

λάμπω, λάμψω, ἔλαμψα, λέλαμπα [Lat. *limpidus, clear*, Eng. *lamp*], *shine, be bright, blaze.*

λανθάνω (λαθ-), λήσω, ἔλαθον, λέληθα, λέλησμαι, 626, 3, v. [Lat. *lateō, lie hid*, Eng. *lethargy, Lethe*], *lie hid, escape the notice of;* mid., *forget.* 860.

λέγω, ἔλεξα, εἶλοχα, εἴλεγμαι, ἐλέγην and ἐλέχθην, 604, 7 [591], *gather, collect.*

λέγω, λέξω, ἔλεξα, λέλεγμαι, ἐλέχθην, 600, 4 [591], *say, speak, tell, state, mention, relate*, Lat. *dicō, bid, charge, vote.* 837, 838 c.

λείπω (λιπ-), λείψω, ἔλιπον, λέλοιπα, λέλειμμαι, ἐλείφθην, 609, 1, ii. [Lat. *linquō, leave*, Eng. LEND, *eclipse*], *leave, abandon, forsake, quit, leave behind, leave alive;* πλήθει ἡμῶν λειφθέντες, *inferior to us in numbers.* 754.

†**λευκο-θώρᾱξ**, ᾱκος, ὁ, ἡ [θώρᾱξ], *in white cuirass.*

λευκός, ή, όν [Lat. *lūx, light*, Eng. LIGHT], *white.*

λεώς, ὁ, *people.*

λήγω, λήξω, ἔληξα, *leave off, end. come to an end.*

λῄζομαι (ληδ-), ἐλῃσάμην, iv. [λεία, *booty*], *plunder, pillage.*

‡**λῃστής**, οῦ, *plunderer, robber.*

†**λίθινος**, η, ον, *of stone.*

λίθος, ὁ [*litho-graphy*], *stone.*

λιμήν, ένος, ὁ, *harbour, port.*

λῑμός, ὁ, *hunger, famine.*

λίνεος, ᾶ, ον, contr. οῦς, ῆ, οῦν [λίνον, *linen*], *linen.*

λόγος, ὁ [591], *word, saying, statement, speech, discourse, debate, rumour, narrative.*

λόγχη, ης, *point* or *spike of a spear, spear, lance.*

λοιδορέω, λοιδορήσω, *etc.* [λοίδορος, *abusive*], *revile, abuse.*

λοιπός, ή, όν [λείπω], *remaining,* with the art., *the rest;* λοιπόν (*sc.* ἐστί), *it remains;* τὸ λοιπόν, *for the future.* 734.

λόφος, ὁ, *hill, ridge, height.*

†**λοχ-ᾱγία**, ᾱς [435], *captaincy.*

†**λοχ-ᾱγός**, ὁ [435], *commander of a* λόχος, *captain.*

λόχος, ὁ [λέχος, *couch*, Lat. *lectus, couch*, Eng. LIE, LAIR, LOG], *ambush, men in ambush, a company.*

†**Λῡδίᾱ**, ᾱς, *Lydia.*

Λῡδιος, ᾱ, ον, *Lydian.*

Λύκαιος, ᾱ, ον, *Lycaean;* τὰ Λύκαια, *the Lycaea*, a festival in honour of Zeus.

Λυκᾱονίᾱ, ᾱς, *Lycaonia.*

Λύκιος, ὁ, *Lycius*, an Athenian.

λύκος, ὁ [Lat. *lupus, wolf*, Eng. WOLF], *wolf.*

λῡμαίνομαι (λῡμαν-), λῡμανοῦμαι, ἐλῡμηνάμην, λελῡμασμαι, iv. [λύμη, *insult*], *outrage, destroy, ruin.*

†**λῡπέω**, λῡπήσω, *etc.*, *grieve, distress, vex, annoy, molest.*

λύπη, ης, *pain, grief, sorrow.*

‡**λῡπηρός**, ά, όν, *painful, troublesome, annoying.*

λύω, λύσω, ἔλῡσα, λέλυκα, λέλυμαι, ἐλύθην, 442 [Lat. *luō*, *loose*, Eng. LOSE, LOOSE, *ana-lyze*], *loose*, *set free*, *release*, *break*, *break down*, *destroy*; mid., *loose one's own*, *ransom*.

λωτο-φάγοι, *οἱ* [λωτός, *lotus*, + φαγεῖν, see ἐσθίω], *lotus-eaters*.

λῴων, λῷον, gen. *ονος*, 469, *better*, *preferable*, *pleasanter*.

M.

μά, intensive particle, *surely*, used in negative oaths. 736.

Μαίανδρος, *ὁ* [*meander*], *the Maeander*, a river in Asia Minor of winding course.

μαίνομαι (μαν-), μανοῦμαι, μέμηνα, ἐμάνην, iv. [*maniac*, *necro-mancy*], *rage*, *be mad*.

μακαρίζω (μακαριδ-), ἐμακάρισα, ἐμακαρίσθην, iv. [455], *regard as happy*.

μακαριστός, *ἡ*, *όν* [455], *deemed happy*, *enviable*.

μακρός, *ά*, *όν* [455], *long*, *high*, *tall*; μακράν (*sc.* ὁδόν), *a long way*; μακρότερον, adv., *farther*, *at longer range*.

Μάκρων, *ονος*, *ὁ*, *a Macronian*.

μάλα, adv., *very*, *much*, *very much*, *greatly*, *exceedingly*, Lat. *valdē*; comp. μᾶλλον, *more*, *rather*; sup. μάλιστα, *most*, *especially*.

μανθάνω (μαθ-), μαθήσομαι, ἔμαθον, μεμάθηκα, 626, 4, v. [*mathematics*], *learn*, *find out*.

μάντις, εως, *ὁ* [μαίνομαι], *one inspired*, *seer*, *diviner*.

Μαρσύας, *ου*, *Marsyas*, a satyr.

†**μαρτυρέω**, μαρτυρήσω, *etc.*, *testify*, *bear witness*, Lat. *testor*.

†**μαρτύριον**, *τό*, *evidence*, *proof*.

μάρτυς, *υρος*, *ὁ* [*martyr*], *witness*.

Μάσκᾱς, *ᾱ*, *ὁ*, *the Mascas*.

μάστιξ, *ῑγος*, *ἡ*, *whip*, *lash*.

μαστός, *ὁ*, *nipple*, *breast*, of men; *hill*, *hillock*.

†**μάχαιρα**, *ᾱς*, *knife*, *sword*, *sabre*.

μάχη, *ης*, *battle*, *engagement*, *fight*.

‡**μάχομαι**, μαχοῦμαι, ἐμαχεσάμην, μεμάχημαι, 605, 5, *fight*, *give battle*. 773.

μεγαλο-πρεπῶς, adv. [455], *magnificently*, *in a princely manner*.

μεγάλως, adv. [455], *greatly*.

Μεγαρεύς, *έως*, *ὁ*, *a Megarian*.

μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα, 385, 469 [455], *great*, Lat. *māgnus*, *large*, *tall*, *weighty*, *powerful*; neut. as adv., μέγα, *greatly*; τὸ μέγιστον, *chiefly*; οἱ μέγιστα δυνάμενοι, *the most powerful*.

Μεγαφέρνης, *ου*, *Megaphernes*.

μέγεθος, *ους*, *τό* [455], *greatness*, *magnitude*, *size*.

μέγιστος, sup. of μέγας.

μεθ', see μετά.

μείζων, comp. of μέγας.

μείων, comp. of μῑκρός.

†**μελανίᾱ**, *ᾱς*, *blackness*.

μέλᾱς, μέλαινα, μέλαν, gen. μέλανος, *etc.*, 338 [*melan-choly*], *black*.

μέλει, μελήσει, ἐμέλησε, μεμέληκε, impers., *it is a care*, *it concerns*; ἐμοὶ μελήσει, *I will see to it*. 792.

‡**μελετάω**, μελετήσω, ἐμελέτησα, μεμελέτηκα, *care for*, *attend to*, *practise*.

‡**μελέτη**, *ης*, *care*, *attention*, *practice*.

μελίνη, *ης*, *millet*.

μέλλω, μελλήσω, ἐμέλλησα, *be about*, *intend*, *delay*.

μεμνῆσο, *etc.*, see μιμνήσκω.

μέν, post-positive particle, never used as a conj. to connect words and sentences, but to distinguish the word or clause with which it stands from something that is to follow, and commonly answered by δέ (sometimes by ἀλλά, μέντοι, ἔπειτα)

in the corresponding clause, *on the one hand, indeed, truly*, but often it is not to be translated, and its presence is to be shown merely by stress of voice; ὁ μὲν . . . ὁ δέ, *the one . . . the other*, plur. *some . . . others*; ἀλλὰ μέν, *but certainly*.

↓**μέν-τοι** [τοί], adv., *really, certainly, in truth*; conj., *yet, still, however, nevertheless*.

μένω, μενῶ, ἔμεινα, μεμένηκα, 605, 6 [Lat. *maneō*, *stay*], *remain, stay, wait for, last, be in force*.

Μένων, ωνος, ὁ, *Menon*.

μέρος, ους, τό, *division, part, share, portion*, Lat. *pars*; μέρος τι τῆς εὐταξίας, *an instance of their discipline*; ἐν μέρει, *in turn*.

†**μεσ-ημβρίᾱ**, ᾱς [ἡμέρᾱ], *noon, midday*; *the south*.

μέσος, η, ον [Lat. *medius, middle*, Eng. MID], *middle*; μέσον, τό, *the middle, centre, midst, space between*.

Μέσπιλα, ᾱς, *Mespila*.

μεστός, ή, όν, *full of, laden*. 760.

μετά, prep. with gen. and acc. With gen., *with, in company with, among*; with acc., of place or time, *behind, after, next*; μετὰ τοῦτο or ταῦτα, *after this, hereupon*.

In composition μετά signifies sharing, *with, among*, or time or quest, *after*, or change, *from one place to another*.

μετα-δίδωμι, *give among, give a share*. 745.

μετα-μέλει, *it is a care afterwards, it repents*; with μοι, *I repent*. 859.

μεταξύ, adv., *between*. 761.

†**μετά-πεμπτος**, ον, *sent for*.

μετα-πέμπω, *send after*; mid., *send for* a person *to come to oneself, summon*.

μετ-έχω, *have a share*. 745.

μετ-έωρος, ον [ἄϊρω, Eng. *meteor*], *raised from the ground, on high*.

μέτρον, τό [Lat. *mētior, measure*, Eng. *metre, etc.*], *measure*.

μέχρι, improper prep. with gen., of time or place, *up to, until*; conj., *until*. 821, 822.

μή, adv., *not*, used with the imv. and subjv. in all constructions; in all final and object clauses, except after μή, *that not, lest*, which takes οὐ; in all conditional and conditional relative clauses, and in the corresponding temporal sentences after ἕως, πρίν, *etc.*; in relative sentences expressing a purpose; in expressions of a wish; with the infin., except in indirect discourse; and with the partic. when it expresses a condition. All of the compounds of μή follow the usage of the simple word.

↓**μηδαμῶς**, adv. [μηδαμός, *none*], *by no means*, Lat. *nēquāquam*.

↓**μη-δέ**, conj. and adv. [δέ], *but not, and not, nor*, Lat. *neque, nec*; *not even*, Lat. *nē . . . quidem*.

↓**μηδ-είς**, μία, έν, 497 c [εἷς], *not one, none, no, nobody, nothing*, Lat. *nēmo, nullus*.

↓**μηδέ-ποτε**, adv. [ποτέ], *never*, Lat. *nunquam*.

†**Μηδίᾱ**, ᾱς, *Media*.

Μῆδος, ὁ, *a Mede*.

Μήδοκος, ὁ, *Medocus*.

μήθ', see μήτε.

μη-κ-έτι, adv. [μή + ἔτι], *not again, no longer*.

μῆκος, ους, τό [455], *length*.

μήν, post-positive intensive particle, *in truth, surely, truly*, Lat. *uērō*; καὶ μήν, *and in fact, and yet*; ἀλλὰ μήν, *but surely, but still*; ἦ μήν, *in very truth*.

μήν, μηνός, ὁ [Lat. *mēnsis, month*, Eng. MOON, MONTH], *month*.

μηνύω, μηνύσω, *etc.*, *disclose, make known*.

μή-ποτε, adv. [*μή*+*ποτέ*], *not ever, never*, Lat. *nunquam.*

μή-τε, conj. [*μή*+*τέ*], *and not; μήτε . . . μήτε, neither . . . nor; μήτε . . . τέ, not only not . . . but also*, Lat. *neque . . . et.*

μήτηρ, *μητρός*, *ἡ*, 291 [Lat. *māter, mother*, Eng. MOTHER], *mother.*

μία, see *εἷς.*

μίγνῡμι (*μιγ-*), *μίξω*, *ἔμῐξα*, *μέμῐγμαι*, *ἐμίχθην* and *ἐμίγην*, 651, 3, v. [Lat. *misceō, mix*, Eng. MIX], *mix, mingle.*

Μίδᾱς, *ου*, *Midas*, a mythical king of Phrygia.

Μιθριδάτης, *ου*, *Mithridātes.*

μῑκρός, *ᾱ́*, *όν*, 469 [*micro-scope*], *small, little*, Lat. *paruus, of small account, insignificant;* neut. as adv., *μῑκρόν, hardly;* comp. *μείων, smaller, less;* neut. as adv., *μεῖον, less.*

†**Μῑλήσιος**, *ᾱ*, *ον*, *Milesian.*

Μίλητος, *ἡ*, *Milētus.*

μῑμέομαι, *μῑμήσομαι*, *etc.* [*μῖμος, actor*, Eng. *mimic*], *imitate, copy.*

μιμνῄσκω (*μνα-*), *μνήσω*, *ἔμνησα*, *μέμνημαι*, *ἐμνήσθην*, 642, 6, vi. [Lat. *meminī, remember, moneō, remind, admonish*, Eng. *mentor, mnemonics*], *remind;* mid. and pass., *remind oneself, remember, mention, make mention*, with pf. *μέμνημαι* as pres., Lat. *meminī.* 747.

μῖσέω, *μῑσήσω*, *etc.* [*μῖσος, τό, hatred*, Lat. *miser, wretched*, Eng. *mis-anthrope*], *hate*, Lat. *ōdī.*

†**μισθο-δότης**, *ου* [641], *paymaster, employer.* 772.

μισθός, *ὁ* [MEED], *wages, pay, hire, reward.*

‡**μισθο-φορά**, *ᾶς* [658], *wages received, pay.*

‡**μισθο-φόρος**, *ον* [658], *receiving pay; μισθοφόροι, οἱ, mercenaries.*

‡**μισθόω**, *μισθώσω*, *etc.*, *let for hire, let;* mid., *have let to oneself, hire*, 197 a; pass., *be hired.*

μνᾶ, *ᾶς*, *mina*, the next to the highest denomination in Attic silver money, although never actually minted as a coin, one sixtieth of a talent, and worth to-day about $18.00 in U.S. silver money, according to its legal rate of value.

μνήμων, *ον*, gen. *ονος* [*μιμνῄσκω*], *mindful.* 760.

μνησθῇ, see *μιμνῄσκω.*

μόλυβδος, *ὁ*, *lead.*

μόνος, *η*, *ον* [*monk, monad, mono-*], *alone*, Lat. *sōlus, only, sole;* neut. as adv., *μόνον, alone, only, solely.*

Μοῦσα, *ης* [*Muse*], *Muse.*

Μῡρίανδος, *ἡ*, *Myriandus.*

†**μῡριάς**, *άδος*, *ἡ* [*myriad*], *the number ten thousand, myriad.*

μῡρίος, *ᾱ*, *ον*, *countless;* pl. *μύριοι, αι, α*, 496, *10,000; ἀσπὶς μῡρίᾱ, ten thousand shield, i.e. shield-bearers.*

†**Μύσιος**, *ᾱ*, *ον*, *Mysian.*

Μῦσός, *ὁ*, *a Mysian.*

μῶρος, *ᾱ*, *ον* [*sopho-more*], *dull, stupid, foolish*, Lat. *stultus.*

N.

νάπη, *ης*, *ravine, glen.*

†**ναυ-αρχος**, *ὁ* [463], *admiral.*

ναῦς, *νεώς*, *ἡ*, 388 [Lat. *nāuis, ship*, Eng. *nautical, cf. νέω*], *ship* (because it *swims*).

‡**ναύτης**, *ου*, *sailor.*

‡**ναυτικός**, *ή*, *όν*, *naval; ναυτικόν τι, a naval force, a fleet.*

νεᾱνίᾱς, *ου* [*νέος*], *young man.*

‡**νεᾱνίσκος**, *ὁ*, *young man.*

νεκρός, *ὁ* [Lat. *nex, death*, Eng. *necro-logy*], *dead body, corpse; οἱ νεκροί, the dead.*

νέμω, *νεμῶ*, *ἔνειμα*, *νενέμηκα*, *νενέμημαι*, *ἐνεμήθην*, 605, 7 [509], *distribute, portion out, award*, Lat. *distribuō, drive to pasture;* mid., of cattle, *feed, graze.*

νέος, ᾱ, ον [Lat. *nouus*, *new*; Eng. NEW, *neo-phyte*], *young*, *fresh*.

νεφέλη, ης [*νέφος*, *τό*, *cloud*, Lat. *nūbēs*, *cloud*], *cloud*; hence *net*.

νέω (νυ-), νευσοῦμαι, ἔνευσα, *etc.*, 610, 2, ii. [Lat. *nō*, *swim*, *cf.* ναῦς], *swim*.

νεώς, ώ, 170, *temple*.

νεῶν, see ναῦς.

νή, intensive particle, *surely*, used in affirmative oaths. 736.

νῆσος, ἡ [*cf.* *νέω*], *island* (as *swimming* in the sea).

†**νῑκάω**, νῑκήσω, *etc.*, *conquer*, *prevail over*, *surpass*, *outdo*, Lat. *uincō*.

νίκη, ης, *victory*, Lat. *uīctōria*.

νοέω, νοήσω, *etc.* [644], *observe*, *perceive*, *plan*.

νομή, ῆς [509], *pasture*, *herd*.

νομίζω (νομιδ-), νομιῶ, *etc.*, 618, 6, iv. [509], *regard as a custom*, pass., *be the custom*, *be usual*; *own*, *regard*, *consider*, *believe*, *think*, Lat. *putō*.

νόμος, ὁ [509], *custom*, *law*.

νοῦς, νοῦ, ὁ, 180 [644], *mind*, Lat. *mēns*; ἐν νῷ ἔχειν, *have in mind*, *purpose*.

νυκτο-φύλαξ, ακος, ὁ [νύξ+φύλαξ], *night-watch*, *picket*.

νύκτωρ, adv. [νύξ], *by* or *at night*.

νῦν, adv. [Lat. *nunc*, *now*, Eng. NOW], *now*, *just now*, *just*, *at present*.

νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ [Lat. *nox*, *night*, Eng. NIGHT], *night*; μέσαι νύκτες, *midnight*.

Ξ.

Ξενίᾱς, ου, *Xenias*.

†**ξενικός**, ή, όν, *mercenary*; τὸ ξενικόν (*sc.* στράτευμα), *the mercenary force*.

ξένος, ὁ, *stranger*, *foreigner*, *guest friend*, *guest*, *host*, *foreign soldier*, *mercenary*.

Ξενοφῶν, ῶντος, ὁ, *Xenophon*, an Athenian, author of the Anabasis.

Ξέρξης, ου, *Xerxes*, in particular *Xerxes I.*, son of Darius I.

ξηραίνω (ξηραν-), ξηρανῶ, ἐξήρᾱνα, ἐξήρασμαι, ἐξηράνθην, iv. [ξηρός, *dry*], *dry*.

ξίφος, ους, τό, *sword*, Lat. *gladius*.

†**ξυλίζομαι** (ξυλιδ-), iv., *gather wood*.

†**ξύλινος**, η, ον, *of wood*, *wooden*.

ξύλον, τό, *wood*, *piece* or *bar of wood*; pl. *timbers*, *beams*, *wood*, *fuel*.

Ο.

ὁ, ἡ, τό, the definite art., 88, *the*, with demonstrative force in the expressions ὁ μὲν . . . ὁ δέ, *the one . . . the other*, *this . . . that*, pl. *these . . . those*, *some . . . the rest*; ὁ δέ, without preceding ὁ μέν, *and he*, *but he*, and in pl., *but they*, *and the rest* (never referring to the *subject* of the preceding sentence, but always to some word in an oblique case). As the art., used sometimes in Greek where we should omit it, as with proper names and numerals. The art. may be used also to mark a person or thing as *well known* or *customary*, or with distributive force, as τοῦ μηνὸς τῷ στρατιώτῃ, *per month to each soldier*, or where we should use a possessive pron. τὰ Κύρου, *Cyrus's relations*; οἱ ἐκείνου, *his men*; οἱ φεύγοντες, *the exiles*; ὁ βουλόμενος, *whoever wishes*; οἱ οἴκοι, *those at home*; οἱ ἔνδον, *those within*; οἱ παρὰ βασιλέως, *men from the king*; οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς, *market men*; οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, *his men*.

ὀβολός, ὁ, *obol*, an Attic silver coin, worth about three cents.

ὀγδοήκοντα, indecl., 496 [ὀκτώ], *eighty*.

ὄγδοος, η, ον, 496 [ὀκτώ], *eighth.*

ὅδε, ἥδε, τόδε, demon. pron., 539 a [ὁ + -δε], *this, the following.* 540, 541.

ὁδός, ἡ [Lat. *solum, ground,* Eng. *ex-odus, meth-od, etc.*], *way, road,* Lat. *uia; march, journey, expedition.*

ὅ-θεν, adv. [ὅς], *from which place, whence.*

οἱ, οἵ, οἷ, see ὁ, ὅς, οὗ.

οἶδα, 2 pf. with pres. force, 661, 698 [663], *know, understand, have knowledge of.* 839.

†**οἴκα-δε**, adv., *home, homeward.*

†**οἰκεῖος**, ᾱ, ον, *belonging to one's house, familiar; οἱ οἰκεῖοι, one's family, kinsmen, friends.*

†**οἰκέτης**, ου, *house servant, domestic.*

†**οἰκέω**, οἰκήσω, etc., *inhabit, dwell, occupy, live;* pass., *be inhabited, be situated.*

†**οἰκίᾱ**, ᾱς, *house, dwelling.*

†**οἰκο-δομέω**, οἰκοδομήσω, etc. [δέμω, *build*], *build, construct, erect.*

†**οἴκο-θεν**, adv., *from home.*

†**οἴκοι**, adv., 28, *at home.*

†**οἰκο-νόμος**, ὁ [509], *steward.*

οἶκος, ὁ [Lat. *uīcus, abode, village,* Eng. *di-ocese, eco-nomy*], *house* regarded as a *home.*

οἰκτείρω (οικτερ-), οἰκτερῶ, ᾤκτειρα, iv. [οἶκτος, *pity*], *pity,* Lat. *miscreor.*

οἶμαι, see οἴομαι.

οἶνος, ὁ [Lat. *uīnum, wine*], *wine; οἶνος φοινίκων, palm-wine.*

οἴομαι or **οἶμαι**, οἰήσομαι, ᾠήθην, 605, 8, *think, believe, expect.*

οἷος, ᾱ, ον, *of which kind,* (*such*) *as,* Lat. *quālis; οἷός τε, able, possible; of what sort* or *kind.* 571, 571 a.

‡**οἱόσ-περ**, ἅπερ, ὁνπερ, *just* (*such*) *as;* neut. as adv., οἷόνπερ, *just as.*

οἴσω, see φέρω.

οἴχομαι, οἰχήσομαι, pres. with pf. force, *have gone, be gone.*

οἰωνός, ὁ, *bird of omen, omen.*

†**ὀκνέω**, ὀκνήσω, ὤκνησα, *shrink from* an act, *hesitate, dread, fear.*

‡**ὀκνηρῶς**, adv., *reluctantly.*

ὄκνος, ὁ, *hesitation, reluctance.*

†**ὀκτακισ-χίλιοι**, αι, α, 496 [χίλιοι], *8000.*

†**ὀκτα-κόσιοι**, αι, α, 496 [ἑκατόν], *800.*

ὀκτώ, indecl., 496 [Lat. *octō*, *eight*, Eng. EIGHT, *octo-gon*], *eight.*

ὄλεθρος, ὁ [ὀλλῡμι], *destruction, loss.*

ὀλίγος, η, ον [*olig-archy*], *little, small,* pl. *few.*

ὁλκάς, άδος, ἡ [ἕλκω, *haul*], *ship of burden, merchantman.*

ὄλλῡμι (ολ-), ὀλῶ, ὤλεσα and ὠλόμην, ὀλώλεκα and ὄλωλα, 651, 4, v., *destroy, lose.*

ὅλος, η, ον [Lat. *solidus, whole,* Eng. *cath-olic*], *whole, entire.*

Ὀλύνθιος, ὁ, *an Olynthian.*

ὁμαλής, ές [ὁμός], *even, level.*

‡**ὁμαλῶς**, adv., *in even line.*

ὄμνῡμι (ομ-), ὀμοῦμαι, ὤμοσα, ὀμώμοκα, ὀμώμομαι and ὀμώμοσμαι, ὠμόθην and ὠμόσθην, 651, 5, v., *swear, take an oath.*

†**ὅμοιος**, ᾱ, ον, *like, similar.* 773.

‡**ὁμοίως**, adv., *in like manner, alike.*

†**ὁμο-λογέω**, ὁμολογήσω, etc. [591], *agree, confess, admit.*

‡**ὁμο-λογουμένως**, adv. [591], *avowedly, by common consent.*

ὁμός, ή, όν [ἅμα], *one and the same.*

‡**ὁμο-τράπεζος**, ον [τράπεζα], *at the same table;* ὁμοτράπεζος, ὁ, *table-companion.*

‡**ὅμως**, adv., *all the same, nevertheless, yet, still, however.*

ὄν, ὄν, see εἰμί, ὅς.

ὀνείρατα, τά, *dream.*

ὀνίνημι (ονα-), ὀνήσω, ὄνησα and ὠνήμην, ὠνήθην, 647, 8, vii., *benefit, assist.*

ὄνομα, ατος, τό [644], *name.*

ὄνος, ὁ [Lat. *asinus, ass*, Eng. ASS], *ass.*

ὅπῃ, conjunctive adv., *where, wherever, in whatever way*, Lat. *quā.*

ὄπισθεν, adv., *behind, in the rear; τὸ ὄπισθεν, τοὔπισθεν, the rear.* 761.

‡**ὀπισθο-φυλακίᾱ**, ᾱς, *command of the rear.*

‡**ὀπισθο-φύλαξ**, ακος, ὁ [φύλαξ], *rear-guard.*

†**ὁπλίζω** (ὁπλιδ-), ὥπλισα, ὥπλισμαι, ὡπλίσθην, *arm, equip.*

ὁπλίτης, ου, *heavy-armed soldier, hoplite.*

ὅπλον, τό [*pan-oply*], *implement*, pl. *gear, arms, armour; ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις, under arms.*

ὁποῖος, ᾱ, ον, rel. pron., *of which kind, (such) as*, Lat. *quālis, of what sort.* 571, 571 a.

ὁπόσος, η, ον, rel. pron., *how much* or *large, how many, (as much* or *as many) as*, Lat. *quantus.* 571, 571 a.

ὁπότε, conjunctive adv., *when, whenever, since, because.*

ὁπότερος, ᾱ, ον, rel. pron., *which* of two parties, *whichever*, Lat. *uter.*

ὅπου, conjunctive adv., *where, wherever*, Lat. *ubi.*

ὀπτός, ή, όν, *baked, burnt.*

ὅπως, conjunctive adv. and final particle, *in what way, how, that, in order that.*

ὁράω (ὁρα-, ιδ-, οπ-), ὄψομαι, εἶδον, ἑόρᾱκα and ἑώρᾱκα, ἑωρᾶμαι and ὦμμαι, ὤφθην, 655, 5, viii. [*a*-WARE, *pan-orama*; 663; Lat. *oculus*, Eng. EYE, OGLE, *optic, syn-opsis*], *see* in its widest sense, *behold, look, observe, perceive*, Lat. *uideō.* 839.

ὀργή, ῆς, *temper, anger; ὀργῇ, in a passion.*

‡**ὀργίζομαι** (οργιδ-), ὀργιοῦμαι, *etc.*, iv., *be angry, be in a passion.* 768.

ὀργυιά, ᾶς, *fathom*, six Greek feet.

†**ὄρθιος**, ᾱ, ον, *straight up, steep, in column.*

ὀρθός, ή, όν [*ortho-dox*], *straight, direct.*

ὄρθρος, ὁ, *daybreak, dawn.*

ὀρθῶς, adv. [ὀρθός], *rightly, justly.*

ὅρια, τά [*horizon*], *boundary.*

ὅρκος, ὁ, *oath.*

ὁρμάω, ὁρμήσω, *etc.* [ὁρμή, *motion*], *set in motion, hasten;* mid. and pass., *set out* or *forth, start.*

ὁρμέω [ὅρμος, *anchorage*], *be moored, lie at anchor.*

ὄρνῖς, ὄρνῑθος, ὁ, ἡ [*ornitho-logy*], *bird.*

Ὀρόντᾱς, ᾱ or ου, *Orontas.*

ὄρος, ους, τό, *mountain.*

†**ὀρυκτός**, ή, όν, *dug, artificial.*

ὀρύττω (ορυχ-), ὀρύξω, ὤρυξα, ὀρώρυχα, ὀρώρυγμαι, ὠρύχθην, 617, 4, iv., *dig*, Lat. *fodiō; quarry.*

ὀρφανός, ή, όν [*orphan*], *orphan.*

ὅς, ἥ, ὅ, rel. pron., 566, *who, which, what*, Lat. *quī; διʼ ἅ, why; ἐν ᾧ, during which (time), meantime;* as dem., *καὶ ὅς, and he.* 568, 569, 725.

ὅσος, η, ον, rel. pron., *how much* or *great, how many, (as much* or *as many) as*, Lat. *quantus;* neut. as adv., *ὅσον*, with numerals, *about; ὅσῳ*, with comparatives, *by how much, the.* 571, 571 a.

‡**ὅσοσ-περ**, ηπερ, ονπερ, *just (as much* or *many) as.*

ὅσ-περ, ἥπερ, ὅπερ [ὅς], *just who, just what.*

ὅσ-τις, ἥτις, ὅ τι, 567 [ὅς+τὶς], *who, whoever, whichever, whatever, which, what.* 570.

ὅτε, conjunctive adv., *when, as, whenever, because, since.*

ὅτι, conj. [neut. of ὅστις], *that, because, since;* used also to strengthen superlatives, as ὅτι ἀπαρασκευότατος, *as unprepared as possible.*

οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ, adv., pred., *not*, Lat. *nōn*, used, to deny a fact, with the indic. and opt. in all *independent* sentences, except wishes; in indirect discourse after ὅτι and ὡς; and in causal sentences; accented at the end of a clause or sentence. All of the compounds of οὐ follow the usage of the simple word.

οὗ, conjunctive adv. [ὅς], *where.*

οὗ, dat. οἷ, personal pron., 511, *of himself*, Lat. *suī.* 515.

†**οὐδαμῇ**, adv., *in no wise.*

†**οὐδαμό-θεν**, adv., *from no place.*

οὐδαμός, ή, όν [οὐδέ], *none.*

↓**οὐδαμοῦ**, adv., *nowhere.*

οὐ-δέ, neg. conj. and adv. [οὐ+δέ], *but not, and not, nor yet, nor*, Lat. *neque, nec;* as adv., *not even*, Lat. *nē . . . quidem, not at all, by no means.*

↓**οὐδ-είς**, μία, ἕν, 497 c [εἷς], *not one, not any, none, no*, Lat. *nullus; nobody*, Lat. *nēmō; nothing*, Lat. *nihil.*

οὔθ', see οὔτε.

οὐκ-έτι, adv. [οὐ+ἔτι], *no longer.*

οὐκ-οὖν, inter. particle and inferential conj. [οὐ+οὖν], *not then? not therefore?* expecting an affirmative answer, Lat. *nōnne igitur;* as conj., *therefore, then, so*, Lat. *igitur*, with no neg. force.

οὖν, post-positive inferential conj., stronger than ἄρα, *therefore, then, accordingly, consequently, now, so.*

οὔ-ποτε, adv. [οὐ+ποτέ], *never.*

οὔ-πω, adv. [οὐ+πώ], *not yet.*

οὐ-πώποτε, adv. [οὐ + πώποτε], *never yet.*

οὐρά, ᾶς, *tail; rear*, of an army.

οὔ-τε, neg. conj. [οὐ+τέ], *and not*, Lat. *neque; οὔτε . . . οὔτε, neither . . . nor, οὔτε . . . τέ, not only . . . but also*, Lat. *neque . . . et.*

οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο, demon. pron., 172, *this*, pl. *these*, freq. as pers. pron., *he, she, it*, pl. *they*, Lat. *hīc;* καὶ ταῦτα, *and that too.* 174. 541.

↓**οὑτοσί, αὑτηί, τουτί**, strengthened form of οὗτος, *this man here.*

↓**οὕτως**, before a consonant **οὕτω**, adv., *thus, so, in that case.*

οὐχί, adv., emphatic form of οὐ.

ὀφείλω [illegible]. ὀφειλήσω. ὠφείλησα and **ὤφελον, ὠφείληκα, ὠφειλήθην**, iv., *owe*, Lat. *debeō;* pass., *be due.*

ὄφελος, τό, *advantage, use.*

ὀφθαλμός, ὁ [*cf.* ὁράω], *eye.*

ὀχέω, ὀχήσω [ὄχος, *carriage*, Lat. *uehō, carry*, Eng. WAGON, WAY], *carry;* pass., *ride.*

ὄχθη, ης, *height, bank, bluff.*

ὀχυρός, ά, όν [608], *tenable, strong, secure.*

ὀψίζω (ὀψιδ-), **ὀψίσθην**, iv. [ὀψέ, adv., *late*], *be* or *come late;* οἱ ὀψίζοντες, *the late comers.*

ὄψις, εως, ἡ [*cf.* ὁράω], *look.*

Π.

παθεῖν, see πάσχω.

πάθος, ους, τό [580], *experience, trouble, ill-treatment.*

παιᾰνίζω (παιᾰνιδ-), ἐπαιάνισα, iv. [παιάν, *paean*], *raise the paean.*

†**παιδεία**, ᾶς, *training.*

†**παιδεύω**, παιδεύσω, *etc.*, *train up a child, educate.*

†**παιδίον**, τό, *infant, little child.*

παῖς, παιδός, ὁ, ἡ [Lat. *puer, boy, child*, Eng. FOAL, *ped-agogue*], *child, boy, girl, son;* ἐκ παίδων, *from boyhood.*

παίω, παίσω, ἔπαισα, πέπαικα, ἐπαίσθην, *strike, hit, beat, strike at.*

πάλαι, adv., *long, long ago.*

†**παλαιός**, ά, όν [*palae-ontology*], *ancient, old.*

πάλιν, adv. [*palim-psest*], *back again, a second time.*

παλτόν, τό, *javelin, spear.*

πάμ-πολυς, πόλλη, πολυ [544], *very much, great,* or *numerous,* pl. *very many,* Lat. *permultus.*

παντά-πᾶσι, adv. [544], *all in all, altogether, wholly.*

πάντῃ, adv. [544], *in every way.*

παντοδαπός, ή, όν [544], *of every description, of all sorts.*

παντοῖος, ᾱ, ον [544], *of all sorts.*

πάνυ, adv. [544], *very, altogether, wholly, very much.*

πάομαι (pres. not in use), πάσομαι, ἐπᾱσάμην, πέπᾱμαι, *acquire;* pf. as pres., *possess, have.*

παρά, prep. with gen., dat., and acc. [*para-*, as *para-graph, etc.*], *beside.* With gen., *from beside, from the presence of, from;* with the pass., *by.* With dat., *beside, by the side of, beside, at* or *on the side of, with, at;* παρὰ βασιλεῖ, *at court;* τὰ παρ' ἐμοί, *my fortunes, my side.* With acc., *to a position beside, to the side of, unto, to, towards, along to, alongside, along, near, by, past,* sometimes even with verbs of rest; *beside, beyond, against, contrary to, in violation of;* of time, *during.*

In composition παρά signifies *along, along by* or *past, alongside, by, beside, beyond, aside, amiss.*

παρ-αγγέλλω, *pass along an order, give orders, pass the word, give out, order;* κατὰ τὰ παρηγγελμένα, *according to orders.*

παρα-γίγνομαι, *be by, be present* or *at hand, arrive.*

παρ-άγω, *lead along, lead on;* εἰς τὰ πλάγια, *lead into position on either flank* of an enemy's force.

παράδεισος, ὁ [*paradise*], *park.*

παρα-δίδωμι, *pass along* to one, *give up, deliver over, surrender, pass along.*

παρα-δραμεῖν, see παρα-τρέχω.

παρ-αινέω, *recommend, advise.* 768 a.

παρ-αιτέομαι, *beg, intercede.*

παρα-καλέω, *call to one's side, summon, call to* or *forth, urge.*

παρα-κελεύομαι, *urge along, exhort, urge.* 768.

παρα-μένω, *stay* or *stand by.*

παρα-μηρίδια, τά [μηρός, *thigh*], *thigh pieces, armour for the thighs.*

παρα-πέμπω, *send along, despatch.*

παρα-πλέω, *sail along.*

παρα-πλήσιος, ᾱ, ον [πλήσιος], *near by, similar, like.* 773.

παρασάγγης, ου, *parasang,* a Persian road measure, equal to about 30 stadia or three and one-third miles.

παρα-σκευάζω, *put things side by side, get ready, prepare, procure;* mid., *prepare* or *procure for oneself, make ready, provide.*

παρα-σκευή, ῆς [σκευή], *preparation, equipment.*

παρα-σκηνέω, *encamp near* or *by.* 774.

παρα-τάττω, *draw up side by side;* παρατεταγμένοι, *drawn up in line.*

παρα-τείνω, *stretch out, extend.*

παρα-τίθημι, *put beside, set before, serve.*

παρα-τρέχω, *run along* or *by.*

πάρ-ειμι (εἶμί), *be near* or *by, be at* a place, *be at hand* or *present, have come;* τὰ παρόντα, *the present circumstances.*

πάρ-ειμι (εἶμι), *go* or *pass by.*

παρ-ελαύνω, *march by* or *past, ride past, review.*

παρ-έρχομαι, *pass by* or *along.*

παρ-έχω, *hold near, afford, furnish, render, make, cause, inspire.*

πάρ-οδος, ἡ [ὁδός], *way by, pass, passage, act of passing.*

Παρράσιος, ὁ, *a Parrhasian.*

Παρύσατις, ιδος, ἡ, *Parysatis*, mother of Cyrus the Younger.

πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν, 260 [544], *all*, Lat. *omnis, every*, with a subst. comm. in the predicate position, *all, entire, the whole.*

Πᾶσίων, ωνος, ὁ, *Pasion.*

πάσχω (παθ-), πείσομαι, ἔπαθον, πέπονθα, 642, 7, vi. [580], *experience, suffer*, Lat. *patior*; εὖ πάσχειν, *be well treated.*

Πατηγύας, ᾱ, *Pategyas.*

πατήρ, πατρός, ὁ, 291 [Lat. *pater, father*, Eng. FATHER], *father.*

†πατρίς, ίδος, ἡ, *native land.*

†πατρῷος, ᾱ, ον, *ancestral, hereditary.*

παύω, παύσω, *etc.* [Lat. *paucus, few*, Eng. FEW], *make to cease, end, stop*; mid., *make oneself to cease, cease, stop, desist, give up, come to an end.* 859.

Παφλαγών, όνος, ὁ, *a Paphlagonian.*

παχύς, εῖα, ύ [*pachy-derm*], *thick, stout.*

πεδίον, τό [πέδον, *ground*], *level ground, open country, plain.*

†πεζῇ, adv., *on foot, afoot.*

πεζός, ή, όν [πούς], *on foot*; **πεζός**, ὁ, *foot soldier*, pl. *infantry.*

πείθω (πιθ-), πείσω, ἔπεισα, πέπεικα and πέποιθα, πέπεισμαι, ἐπείσθην, 609, 2, ii. [495], *persuade, prevail upon*; mid. and pass., *be prevailed on, yield, obey.* 768.

πεῖρα, ᾱς [561], *experience.*

πειράω, πειράσω, *etc.* [561], *try, prove*, comm. pass. dep., *try, test, attempt, endeavour.* 746.

πείσομαι, see πάσχω and πείθω.

πειστέος, ᾱ, ον, verbal [495], *to be persuaded* or *obeyed.*

†Πελοποννήσιος, ᾱ, ον, *Peloponnesian.*

Πελοπόννησος, ἡ, *Peloponnesus.*

Πέλται, ῶν, *Peltae.*

†πελταστής, οῦ, *peltast, targeteer.*

†πελταστικός, ή, όν, *belonging to peltasts*; τὸ πελταστικόν (*sc.* στράτευμα), *the peltast force.*

πέλτη, ης, *shield, target*, small and light.

πέμπω, πέμψω, ἔπεμψα, πέπομφα, πεπεμμαι, ἐπέμφθην, 604, 9 [*pomp*], *send, despatch, send word.*

†πεντᾱ-κόσιοι, αι, α, 496 [ἑκατόν], *500.*

πέντε, indecl., 496 [Lat. *quinque*, Eng. FIVE, *penta-gon*], *five.*

†πεντε-καί-δεκα, indecl., 496 [δέκα], *fifteen.*

†πεντήκοντα, indecl., 496, *fifty.*

πέπᾶμαι, see πάομαι.

πέπονθα, *etc.*, see πάσχω.

πεπτωκα, *etc.*, see πίπτω.

-πέρ, intensive enclitic particle, *very, just, even.*

περαίνω (περαν-), περανῶ, ἐπέρᾶνα, πεπέρασμαι, ἐπεράνθην, 619, 7, iv. [561], *bring to an end, carry out, accomplish.*

πέρᾶν, adv. [561], *across, beyond*, 761.

πέρδῐξ, ῐκος, ὁ, ἡ [*partridge*], *partridge.*

πέρθω, πέρσω, ἔπερσα, *destroy.*

περί, prep. with gen., dat., and acc. [*peri-*, as in *peri-patetic, period, etc.*], *round, on all sides, about.* With gen., chiefly in a derived sense, *about, with respect to, concerning, because of, for*, Lat. *dē*; expressing superiority, *more than*, as in the phrases, περὶ παντὸς ποιεῖσθαι, *consider all important*, περὶ πλείστου ποιεῖσθαι, *consider most important.* With dat., of place, *round, about.* With acc., of place, *about, all round,*

round; of persons, *about, attending on;* of things, *about;* of time, *about;* of relation, *in respect to, to, in one's dealings with*, Lat. *dē*.

In composition περί signifies *round, about, (remaining) over, above* (superiority).

περι-άγω, *take about* with one.

περι-γίγνομαι, *be superior to.* 754.

περί-ειμι (εἰμί), *be superior to.* 754.

περι-έχω, *surround, encompass.*

περι-μένω, *wait round, remain.*

περι-πίπτω, *embrace.* 774.

περι-πλέω, *sail round.*

περί-πλους, ὁ, 180, c [πλοῦς], *a sailing round, voyage round.*

περι-ρρέω, *encircle.*

περιστερά, ᾶς, *dove, pigeon.*

†**περιττεύω**, ἐπερίττευσα, *be over and above, reach beyond, outflank.* 754.

πέριττος, η, ον [περί], *superfluous, unnecessary.*

Πέρσης, ου, *a Persian.*

↓**περσίζω** [περσιδ-], iv., *speak Persian.*

↓**Περσικός**, ή, όν, *Persian.*

↓**περσιστί**, adv., *in Persian.*

πέτομαι, πτήσομαι, ἐπτόμην [Lat. *penna*, Eng. FEATHER], *fly.*

πέτρᾱ, ᾱς [*petri-fy*], *rock, mass of rock, crag.*

πῄ, indefinite enclitic adv., *in any way, anyhow, somehow.*

πηγή, ῆς, *fountain, source.*

πήγνῡμι (παγ-), ἔπηξα, πέπηγα, ἐπάγην, 651, 6, v. [Lat. *pāx, compact, peace*, Eng. FANG, FEE], *fix, freeze.*

πηδάω, πηδήσω, ἐπήδησα, πεπήδηκα, *leap.*

πηλός, ὁ, *clay, mire, mud.*

πῆχυς, εως, ὁ, *forearm, cubit.*

Πίγρης, ητος, ὁ, *Pigres.*

πιέζω (πιεδ-), πιέσω, ἐπίεσα, ἐπιέσθην, iv., *press hard, crowd;* pass., *be hard pressed.*

πίμπλημι (πλα-), πλήσω, ἔπλησα, πέπληκα, πέπλημαι and πέπλησμαι, ἐπλήσθην, 647, 9, vii. [Lat. *impleō, fill up*, Eng. FILL, FULL, *plethora*], *fill.* 749.

πίμπρημι (πρα-), πρήσω, ἔπρησα, πέπρημαι, ἐπρήσθην, 647, 10, vii., *set on fire, burn.*

πίνω (πι-), πίομαι, ἔπιον, πέπωκα, πέπομαι, ἐπόθην, 624, 4, v. [629], *drink.*

πίπτω, πεσοῦμαι, ἔπεσον, πέπτωκα, 606, 2 [Lat. *petō, seek*, Eng. FIND], *fall.*

Πῑσίδαι, ῶν, *the Pisidians.*

πιστεύω, πιστεύσω [495], *put faith in, trust, rely on.* 768 a.

πίστις, εως, ἡ [495], *faith, good faith, pledge.*

πιστός, ή, όν [495], *faithful, trustworthy;* πιστοί, a title given to Persian royal counsellors; πιστά, τά, *pledges.* 772.

πιστότης, ητος, ἡ [495], *fidelity.*

πλάγιος, ᾱ, ον [πλάγος, τό, *the side*], *sideways, slanting;* τὰ πλάγια, *the flanks* of an army; εἰς πλάγιον, *sideways.*

πλαίσιον, τό, *square*, of troops.

πλανάομαι, πλανήσομαι, pass. dep. [πλάνη, *wandering*, Eng. *planet*], *wander, stray, straggle*, Lat. *uagor, miss the mark.*

†**πλεθριαῖος**, ᾱ, ον, *of a plethrum.*

πλέθρον, τό, *a plethrum*, a measure of 100 Greek feet.

πλεῖστος, πλείων, see πολύς.

πλέκω, ἔπλεξα, πέπλεγμαι, ἐπλέχθην and ἐπλάκην [Lat. *plicō, fold*, Eng. FOLD], *twist, plait.*

πλευρά, ᾶς [*pleurisy*], *side, flank.*

πλέω (πλυ-), πλεύσομαι and πλευσοῦμαι, ἔπλευσα, πέπλευκα, πέπλευσμαι, 610, 3, ii. [Lat. *pluō, rain*, Eng. FLOW], *sail.*

πληγή, ῆς [πλήττω], *blow, stroke.*

πλῆθος, ους, τό [πίμπλημι]. *fullness, extent, number, multitude.*

πλήθω [πίμπλημι], *be full.*

πλήν, conj., *except, except that;* improper prep. with gen., *except.*

πλήρης, ες [πίμπλημι]. *full, full of, abounding in.* 760.

†**πλησιάζω** (πλησιαδ-), πλησιάσω, *etc.*, iv., *approach, draw near.* 773.

πλησίος, ᾱ, ον, *near;* neut. as adv., πλησίον, *near, at hand,* in attributive position, *neighbouring.* 761.

πλήττω (πλαγ-, πλᾰγ-, πλᾱγ-, ἔπλᾰξα, πέπληγα, πέπλημαι, ἐπλήγην and ἐπλάγην, 617. ᾰ, iv. [Lat. *plango, strike.* Eng. plaque, *apo-plexy*, stroke, *hit, smite.*

†**πλίνθινος**, η, ον, *of brick, brick.*

πλίνθος, ὁ [Lat. *plinth*], *brick.*

πλοῖον, τό [πλέω], *vessel, boat.*

πλοῦς, ὁ, 180 [πλέω], *voyage.*

†**πλούσιος**, ᾱ, ον, *rich, wealthy.*

†**πλουτέω**, πλουτήσω, *be rich.*

πλοῦτος, ὁ, *wealth.*

πνέω (πνυ-), πνευσοῦμαι, ἔπνευσα, πέπνευκα, 610, 4, ii. [*pneu-matics*], *breathe, blow.*

ποδήρης, ες [πούς], *reaching to the feet.*

ποῖ, interr. adv., *whither?*

ποιέω, ποιήσω, *etc.*, *do, make, produce, fashion, effect, cause, accomplish, inflict;* εὖ or κακῶς ποιεῖν, *treat well* or *ill;* ἐκκλησίαν ποιεῖν, *call* or *convoke a meeting.* 738, 739.

‡**ποίημα**, ατος, τό [*poem*], *poem.*

ποικίλος, η, ον, *party-coloured.*

ποῖος, ᾱ, ον, interr. pron., *of what sort?* Lat. *quālis.* 559, 559 a.

†**πολεμέω**, πολεμήσω, *etc.*, *war, make* or *carry on war, fight.* 773.

†**πολεμικός**, ή, όν [*polemic*], *of* or *for war, warlike, skilled in war.*

†**πολέμιος**, ᾱ, ον, *belonging to war, at war with, hostile;* τὰ πολέμια, *military matters;* πολέμιος, ὁ, *an enemy,* in war; **οἱ πολέμιοι**, *the enemy.* 773.

πόλεμος, ὁ, *war, warfare.*

‡**πολι-ορκέω**, πολιορκήσω [ἔργω. *hem in*], *hem in a city, besiege.*

πόλις, εως, ἡ. [*acro-polis*], *city, state.*

‡**πολίτης**, ου, *citizen, fellow-citizen.*

πολλάκις, adv. [πολύς], *many times, often, frequently.*

πολλαπλάσιος, ᾱ, ον [πολύς + πίμπλημι], *many times as many.*

Πολυκράτης, ους, ὁ, *Polycrates.*

πολύς, πολλή, πολύ, 385, 469 [*poly-*, as in *polysyllable, etc.*, much, many, Lat. *multus*, *plurimus*, *plus*, *plurimus*, *plerique*], *large, long, strong;* neut. as adv., πολύ, *much, far;* τὸ πολύ, *the greater part;* ἐπ' πολύ, *over a great extent.*

‡**πολυ-τελής**, ές [τέλος, *outlay*], *requiring outlay, expensive.*

πονέω, πονήσω, *etc.* [580], *toil, labour, undergo hardship, earn by hard work.*

πονηρίᾱ, ᾱς [580], *knavery.*

πονηρός, ά, όν [580], *burdensome, bad, poor, base, worthless, vicious, harmful.*

πόνος, ὁ [580], *toil, hardship.*

πορείᾱ, ᾱς [561], *journey, march.*

πορεύω, πορεύσω [561], *make go;* comm. pass. dep., *go, proceed, advance, march, journey.*

πορίζω (πορισ-), ποριῶ, *etc.*, 618, 7, iv. [561], *furnish, provide, give;* mid., *get, obtain.*

πόρος, ὁ [561], *ford, means.*

πόρρω, adv. [573], *far from.* 761.

πορφυροῦς, ᾶ, οῦν, 191 b [*porphyry*], *dark red, purple.*

πόσος, η, ον, interr. pron., *how much?* Lat. *quantus.* 559, 559 a.

ποταμός, ὁ [*hippo-potamus*], *river.*

ποτέ, indef. encl. adv., *at some time, once on a time, once, ever.*

πότερος, ᾱ, ον, interr. pron., *which of two?* neut. as adv., in an alternative question, πότερον . . . ἤ, *whether . . . or*, Lat. *utrum . . . an.*

ποτόν, τό [629], *drink.*

ποῦ, indef. encl. adv., *anywhere.*

πούς, ποδός, ὁ [Lat. *pēs*, Eng. root, *tri-pod*], *foot*, as a measure equal to about 11.65 inches.

πρᾶγμα, ατος, τό [πράττω], *deed, thing, matter, affair, event, circumstance, difficulty;* pl., *affairs, trouble.*

πρᾱνής, ές [573], *headlong, steep.*

πρᾶξις, εως, ἡ [πράττω], *undertaking.*

πρᾷος, εῖα, ον, gen. pl. πρᾱέων, *mild, tame.*

πράττω (πρᾱγ-), πράξω, ἔπρᾱξα. πέπρᾱγα and πέπρᾱχα, πέπρᾱγμαι, ἐπράχθην, 617, 6, iv. [*practice*], *do, act, accomplish;* intr., *do, fare.*

πρᾴως, adv. [πρᾷος], *lightly.*

πρέπω, πρέψω, ἔπρεψα, *be fit.*

πρέσβυς, εως, ὁ [*presbyter, priest*], *old, reverend;* comp. and sup., πρεσβύτερος, πρεσβύτατος; πρέσβεις, οἱ, *envoys.*

πρίασθαι, see ὠνέομαι.

πρίν, conj. [573], *before, until.* 823.

πρό, prep. with gen. [573], of place, *before, in front of, facing*, hence, *in defence of, for the sake of, for, in preference to;* of time, *before.*

In composition πρό signifies *before, forth, forward, in public, in behalf of.*

προ-αισθάνομαι, *observe beforehand.* 839.

προ-άρχομαι, *take the start.*

προ βαίνω, *advance, wear on.*

προ-βάλλω, *throw before;* mid., προβάλλεσθαι τὰ ὅπλα, *present arms.*

πρόβατον, τό, comm. plur., *sheep, cattle.*

πρό-γονος, ὁ [612], *ancestor.*

προ-διαβαίνω, *cross first.*

προ-δίδωμι, *give over, surrender, betray, abandon.*

προ-δοσίᾱ, ᾱς [641], *treason.*

προ-δότης, ου [641], *traitor.*

πρό-ειμι (εἶμι), *go forward, advance, proceed, come on.*

προ-είπον, *tell before, give orders.*

προ-ελαύνω, intr., *ride forward, march on before, push on.*

προ-έρχομαι, *go forward, advance.*

προ-θέω, *run ahead.*

προ-θῡμέομαι, προ-θῡμήσομαι and προ-θῡμηθήσομαι, προυθῡμήθην [537], *be eager.*

πρό-θῡμος, ον [537], *ready, eager.*

προ-θῡμως, adv. [537], *eagerly.*

προ-θύω, *sacrifice before;* mid., *offer sacrifice before* an event.

προ-ίημι, *send forth;* mid., *give oneself up, entrust, surrender, abandon.*

προ-ίστημι, *put at the head of;* intr. in pf. and 2 pf., *stand* or *be at the head of.* 757.

προ-καλύπτω, *cover up.*

προ-κατακάω, *burn down in front.*

προ-καταλαμβάνω, *pre-occupy.*

προ-μετωπίδιον, τό [μέτωπον, *forehead*], *frontlet*, of horses.

Πρόξενος, ὁ, *Proxenus.*

προ-οράω, *see in front.*

προ-πέμπω, *send forward, escort.*

προ-πίνω, *drink before* another, *drink a health, drink as a pledge.*

πρός, prep. with gen., dat., and acc., *confronting, at, by.* With gen., *over against, towards;* in swearing, *by;* with the pass., *by, from;* with adjectives, *in the sight of;* expressing what is characteristic, *pertaining to, like.* With dat., *near, at, besides, in addition to.* With acc., *to, towards, against, before, at, according to, with respect to, about;* πρὸς φιλίᾱν, *in a friendly manner.*

In composition *πρός* signifies *to, towards, against, besides, in addition to.*

προσ-άγω, *lead to* or *against;* intr., *lead on, advance.*

προσ-αιτέω, *ask in addition.*

προσ-βάλλω, *throw against;* intr., *attack, make an attack.*

προσ-βολή, *ῆς* [480], *assault.*

προσ-δίδωμι, *give besides.*

προσ-ειμι (*εἶμι*), *come to, advance.*

προσ-ελαύνω, *ride towards* or *up.*

προσ-έρχομαι, *come on* or *up, approach, advance.* 774.

προσ-έχω, *hold to, apply;* *προσέχειν τὸν νοῦν, direct* or *give attention to.* 774.

προσ-ήκω, *be come to, be related to.* 768.

πρόσ-θεν, adv. [*πρός*], *before, previously, sooner;* in attributive position, *previous.*

προσ-ἵημι, *let approach.*

προσ-καλέω, *call to, summon.*

προσ-κυνέω, *προσ-κυνήσω, προσ-εκύνησα* [*κυνέω, kiss*], *make obeisance to, salute.*

προσ-λαμβάνω, *take to oneself.*

προσ-όμνῡμι, *swear besides.*

προσ-ποιέομαι, *take to oneself, assume, pretend.*

προσ-πολεμέω, *war against.*

προσ-τάττω, *assign* or *appoint.*

προ-στερνίδιον, *τό* [*στέρνον*], *breastplate,* of horses.

προσ-τίθημι, *add to;* mid., *agree.*

προσ-φιλῶς, adv. [*φίλος*], *in a friendly way toward, kindly.*

πρόσω, adv. [573], *forward, far, at a distance, far from;* *τοῦ πρόσω, forward.* 761.

πρότερος, *ᾱ, ον* [573], *former, previous;* neut. as adv., *formerly.*

προ-τίθημι, *set forth, offer.*

προ-τῑμάω, *honour more.*

προ-τρέχω, *run forward.*

προ-φαίνω, *show forth;* mid., *come in sight, appear.*

πρό-φασις, *εως, ἡ* [483], *pretext.*

προ-φύλαξ, *ακος, ὁ* [*φύλαξ*], *picket.*

πρῶτος, *η, ον* [573], *first, foremost;* neut. as adv., *πρῶτον, at first, first.*

πτέρυξ, *υγος, ἡ* [*πέτομαι*], *wing* of a bird, *flap* of a cuirass.

Πῡθαγόρᾱς, *ου, Pythagoras.*

πυκνός, *ή, όν* [*πύξ*], *thick, close together.*

Πύλαι, *ῶν, Pylae.*

πύλη, *ης, gate,* pl. *gate, pass.*

πυνθάνομαι (*πυθ-*), *πεύσομαι, ἐπυθόμην, πέπυσμαι,* 626, 5, v., *inquire, ask, learn by inquiry, learn, ascertain, find out.* 839.

πύξ, adv. [Lat. *pūgnus, fist,* Eng. FIST], *with clenched fist.*

πῦρ, *πυρός, τό* [FIRE, *pyre*], *fire;* pl. *πυρά, τά, beacons.*

πῡραμίς, *ίδος, η* [*pyramid*], *pyramid.*

Πύραμος, *ὁ, the Pyramus.*

πύργος, *ὁ, tower.*

πῡρός, *ὁ, wheat,* comm. pl.

πώ, indef. encl. adv., *yet, up to this time.*

πωλέω, *πωλήσω* [*mono-poly*], *sell.*

πῶμα, *ατος, τό* [629], *drink.*

πώ-ποτε, indef. adv. [*πώ*+*ποτέ*], *at any time, ever, ever yet.*

πῶς, interr. adv., *how?*

πώς, indef. encl. adv., *in any way, somehow, at all.*

P.

ῥᾴδιος, *ᾱ, ον,* 469, *easy.*

ῥᾳδίως, adv., *easily, readily.*

ῥᾳ-θῡμίᾱ, *ᾱς* [537], *easy life.*

ῥέω (*ῥυ-*), *ῥεύσομαι, ἐρρύηκα, ἐρρύην,* 610, 5, ii. [*cata-rrh, rheum*], *flow.*

ῥήτωρ, *ορος, ὁ* [*cf.* *εἶπον*], *speaker, orator.*

ῥίπτω (ῥιφ-), ῥῑ́ψω, ἔρρῑψα, ἔρρῑφα, ἔρρῑμμαι, ἐρρῐ́φθην and ἐρρίφην, 613, 9, iii., *throw, hurl, cast aside.*

Ῥόδιος, ὁ, *a Rhodian.*

Σ.

†**σαλπιγκτής**, see σαλπικτής.

σάλπιγξ, γγος, ἡ, *trumpet.*

↓**σαλπίζω** (σαλπιγγ-), ἐσάλπιγξα, iv., *blow the trumpet;* ἐπεὶ ἐσάλπιγξε (*sc.* ὁ σαλπικτής), *when the trumpet sounded the charge.*

↓**σαλπικτής**, οῦ, *trumpeter.*

Σάμιος, ᾱ, ον, *Samian.*

Σάρδεις, εων, αἱ, *Sardis.*

†**σατραπεύω**, *be satrap, rule.* 748.

σατράπης, ου, *viceroy, satrap.*

Σάτυρος, ὁ, *the satyr Silēnus.*

σαφής, ές [Lat. *sapiō, be wise,* Eng. SAP], *of keen taste, clear, manifest.*

↓**σαφῶς**, adv., *clearly, evidently.*

-σε, suffix denoting *whither.*

σε-αυτοῦ, ῆς, contr. σαυτοῦ, ῆς, refl. pron., 527 [518], *of yourself.* 528.

σελήνη, ης, *the moon.*

σέσωμαι, see σῴζω.

Σεύθης, ου, *Seuthes.*

σῆμα, ατος, τό, *sign.*

↓**σημαίνω** (σημαν-), σημανῶ, ἐσήμηνα, σεσήμασμαι, ἐσημάνθην, 619, 8, iv., *show by a sign, give the signal, make known.*

↓**σημεῖον**, τό, *signal, standard.*

σήσαμον, τό, *sesame.*

σῑγή, ῆς, *silence.*

σίγλος, ὁ, *siglus,* a coin current in Persia worth 7½ obols.

σιδηροῦς, ᾶ, οῦν, 191 b [σίδηρος, *iron*], *made of iron, iron,* Lat. *ferreus.*

Σικελίᾱ, ᾱς, *Sicily.*

Σῑλᾱνός, ὁ, *Silānus.*

Σῑνώπη, ης, *Sinōpe.*

†**σῖτ-αγωγός**, όν [435], *corn-carrying.*

†**σιτηρέσιον**, τό, *provision money.*

σῖτος, ὁ [*para-site*], *grain, corn, food, supplies.*

σιωπάω, σιωπήσομαι [σιωπή, *silence*], *be silent.*

σκάπτω (σκαφ-), σκάψω, ἔσκαψα, ἔσκαφα, ἔσκαμμαι, ἐσκάφην, 613, 10, iii., *dig.*

σκεδάννῡμι (σκεδα-), σκεδῶ, ἐσκέδασα, ἐσκέδασμαι, ἐσκεδάσθην, 651, 7, v. [SCATTER], *scatter;* mid., *scatter, straggle.*

σκέπτομαι (σκεπ-), σκέψομαι, ἐσκεψάμην, ἔσκεμμαι, 613, 11, iii. [Lat. *species, sight,* Eng. SPY, *sceptic*], *spy, spy out, view, find out, observe carefully, deliberate, see to it.*

↓**σκευάζω** (σκευαδ-), σκευάσω, iv., *use utensils, prepare, get* or *make ready, equip.*

†**σκευή**, ῆς, *equipment, dress.*

σκεῦος, ους, τό, *gear, utensils,* pl. *baggage.*

‡**σκευο-φορέω**, σκευοφορήσω [658], *carry baggage.*

↓**σκευο-φόρος**, ον [658], *baggage-carrying;* σκευοφόρα, τά, *pack-animals, the baggage-train, the baggage.*

†**σκηνέω**, σκηνήσω, ἐσκήνησα, *be in camp,* aor. *go into camp, encamp.*

σκηνή, ῆς [SHED, *scene*], *tent.*

↓**σκηνόω**, ἐσκήνωσα, ἐσκήνωκα, *encamp.*

σκηπτός, ὁ, *thunder-bolt.*

σκηπτοῦχος, ὁ [608], *sceptre-bearer.*

σκόλοψ, οπος, ὁ, *stake, pole,* pl. *palisade.*

†**σκοπέω**, *look at, spy, consider, see to it.*

σκοπός, ὁ [σκέπτομαι, Eng. *scope, bi-shop*], *spy, scout, sentinel.*

Σόλοι, οἱ [*solecism*], *Soli.*

σός, σή, σόν, 531 [σύ, Lat. *tuus, thy,* Eng. THINE, THY], *thy, thine, your.*

Σοφαίνετος, ὁ, *Sophaenetus.*

†**σοφίᾱ**, *ας, skill, ability.*

σοφός, ἡ, ὁν [σαφής, Eng. *philo-sophy*], *skilled, wise.*

σπανίζω (σπανιδ-), σπανιῶ, iv. [580], *lack, need, want.* 749.

σπάνιος, ᾱ, ον [580], *scanty, scarce.*

Σπάρτη, ης, *Sparta.*

‡**Σπαρτιάτης**, ου, *a Spartan.*

σπάρτον, τό, *rope, cord.*

σπάω, ἔσπασα, ἔσπακα, ἔσπασμαι, ἐσπάσθην, 441 [580], *draw.*

σπείρω (σπερ-), σπερῶ, ἔσπειρα, ἔσπαρμαι, ἐσπάρην, iv. [SPURN, *sporadic*], *sow, scatter, disperse.*

σπένδω, σπείσω, ἔσπεισα, ἔσπεισμαι [Lat. *spondeō, promise*], *offer a libation;* mid., *make a treaty.* 773.

σπεύδω, σπεύσω, ἔσπευσα, 600, 5, *urge, hasten, be urgent.*

σπονδή, ῆς [σπένδω, Eng. *spondee*], *libation,* pl. *truce.*

†**σπουδαιο-λογέω** [591], *carry on an earnest conversation.*

σπουδή, ῆς [σπεύδω], *haste, hurry.*

στάδιον, τό, pl. στάδιοι, οἱ, and στάδια, τά [580], *extended space, stadium, stade,* as a measure of distance 600 Greek feet, or 582½ English feet. See πούς.

σταθμός, ὁ [649], *stopping-place, station, stage, day's march.*

†**στέγασμα**, ατος, τό, *covering.*

στέγη, ης [στέγω, *cover,* Lat. *tegō, cover,* Eng. THATCH,], *roof, house.*

στέλλω (στελ-), στελῶ, ἔστειλα, ἔσταλκα, ἔσταλμαι, ἐστάλην, 619, 9, iv., *put in order, equip, send.*

στενός, ή, όν [*steno-graphy*], *narrow, strait.*

‡**στενο-χωρίᾱ**, ας [χώρᾱ], *narrow pass.*

στερέω, στερήσω, *etc.*, 2 fut. pass., στερήσομαι, *deprive, rob;* pres. pass., στέρομαι, *have lost, be without.* 753.

στέρνον, τό, *breast.*

στερρῶς, adv. [στερρός, *firm,* Eng. *stereo-type*], *firmly, obstinately.*

στέφανος, ὁ [στέφω, *put round*], *crown, wreath, chaplet.*

στήλη, ης [στέλλω], *pillar, post.*

στῖβος, ὁ, *track, trail.*

στῖφος, ους, τό, *mass, throng.*

στλεγγίς, ίδος, ἡ, *tiara.*

στολή, ῆς [στέλλω, Eng. *stole*], *dress, garment, robe.*

στόλος, ὁ [στέλλω], *equipment, armed force, expedition.*

στόμα, ατος, τό, *mouth, van.*

†**στρατείᾱ**, ας, *expedition.*

†**στράτευμα**, ατος, τό, *army, troops, host, force, division, contingent.*

†**στρατεύω**, στρατεύσω, *make an expedition, make war;* dep. mid., *take the field, take part in an expedition.*

†**στρατ-ηγέω**, στρατηγήσω [435], *be general, lead, command.* 748.

†**στρατ-ηγίᾱ**, ας [435], *office of general, command.*

†**στρατ-ηγός**, ὁ [435], *general, commander.*

†**στρατιά**, ᾶς, *army, troops, host.*

†**στρατιώτης**, ου, *soldier,* pl. *troops.*

†**στρατο-πεδεύω**, *encamp;* comm. dep. mid., *encamp, go into camp.*

†**στρατό-πεδον**, τό [πέδον, *ground*], *camp-ground, encampment.*

στρατός, ὁ, *an encamped army, army, force.*

†**στρεπτός**, ὁ, *necklace, collar.*

στρέφω, στρεψω, ἐστρεψα, ἔστροφα, ἔστραμμαι, ἐστράφην and ἐστρέφθην, 604, 10 [*strophe, apo-strophe*], *turn, twist;* intr. and in pass., *turn* or *face about.*

στρουθός, ἡ [*o-strich*], *sparrow;* στρουθὸς ἡ μεγάλη, *the ostrich.*

στυγνός, ή, όν, *hateful, stern.*

Στυμφάλιος, ὁ, *a Stymphalian.*

σύ, σοῦ, pers. pron., 511 [Lat. *tū,* Eng. THOU], *thou, you.* 512, 513, 514.

συγ-γενής, *és* [612], *akin*; οἱ συγγενεῖς, *one's kinsmen.*

συγ-γίγνομαι, *get into company with, become acquainted with, meet.* 774.

σύ-γε [σύ + γέ], *you indeed.*

συγ-καλέω, *call together, summon.*

Συέννεσις, *ιος*, ὁ, *Syennesis.*

συλ-λαμβάνω, *seize, arrest.*

συλ-λέγω, *collect, gather, bring together*; pass., *come together, assemble.*

συλ-λογή, *ῆς* [591], *levying, levy.*

συμ-βάλλω, *throw together*; mid., *bring one's own together, contribute.*

συμ-βουλεύω, *plan with, advise, counsel, give advice*; mid., *consult with, deliberate.*

σύμ-βουλος, ὁ [615], *adviser.*

†**συμ-μαχίᾱ**, *ās*, *alliance.*

σύμ-μαχος, *ον* [*μάχη*], *in alliance with*; σύμμαχος, ὁ, *ally.*

συμ-μίγνῡμι, *mix with, join.*

σύμ-πᾶς, *ᾶσα*, *αν* [544], *all together, all*; τὸ σύμπαν, *in general.*

συμ-πέμπω, *send with.*

σύμ-πλεως, *ων*, gen. *ω* [*πίμπλημι*], *quite full, full, abounding in.* 760.

συμ-πολεμέω, *help in war, make war with.*

συμ-πορεύομαι, *accompany.*

συμ-πρᾶττω, *help in doing, cooperate.*

συμ-φέρω, *collect, be of use.*

σύν, prep. with dat. [Lat. *cum, with*], *with, in company with, along with, together with, on the side of, with the help* or *aid of, by the favour of.*

In composition *σύν* signifies *with, along with, together, jointly, at the same time, entirely, at once.*

συν-αγείρω, *collect together.*

συν-άγω, *bring together, call.*

συν-αθροίζω, *get together.*

συν-ακολουθέω, *follow.* 773.

συν-αλλάττω, *reconcile.*

συν-αναβαίνω, *march up with.*

συν-αντάω, *συν-ήντησα* [*ἀντί*], *meet with, meet.* 773.

συν-άπειμι (*εἶμι*), *go away with.*

συν-άπτω, *join with.*

σύν-δειπνος, ὁ [*δεῖπνον*], *table-companion, guest at dinner.*

σύν-ειμι (*εἰμί*), *be with*; οἱ συνόντες, *one's associates.*

συν-εκ-βιβάζω, *help extricate.*

συν-εκκόπτω, *help cut down.*

συν-επι-σπεύδω, *help hurry on.*

συν-έπομαι, *follow with, accompany.* 773.

σύν-εργος, *ον* [468], *working with*; σύνεργος, ὁ, *helper, assistant, coworker.*

συν-έρχομαι, *come together.*

συν-θήκη, *ης* [638], *compact, agreement.*

σύν-θημα, *ατος*, τό [638], *watchword.*

σύν-οδος, ἡ [*ὁδός*], *encounter.*

σύν-οιδα, *share in knowledge, be conscious.* 839.

συν-οράω, *see at once, mark.*

συν-τάττω, *set in order together, draw up in battle array*; mid., *fall into battle-line, take one's position.*

συν-τίθημι, *put together*; mid., *make an agreement, contract.*

συν-τράπεζος, ὁ [*τράπεζα*], *table-companion.*

συν-ωφελέω, *join in aiding.*

Συρᾱκόσιος, ὁ, *a Syracusan.*

†**Συρίᾱ**, *ās*, *Syria.*

†**Σύριος**, *ā*, *ον*, *Syrian.*

Σύρος, ὁ, *a Syrian.*

συ-σκευάζω, *collect baggage*; mid., *collect one's own baggage, pack up.*

συ-σπάω, *draw* or *sew together.*

συ-σπειράομαι, *συν-εσπείρᾱμαι*, *συν-εσπειράθην*, *be formed in close order* or *in a solid body.*

συ-στρατεύομαι, *take the field with, join an expedition.*

συ-στρατιώτης, *fellow-soldier.*

συχνός, ή, όν, *considerable, long.*

σφάγιον, τό [σφάττω], *victim;* pl., *omens* drawn from the movements of the victims, *external* omens in contrast with *ἱερά.*

σφάλλω (σφαλ-), σφαλῶ, ἔσφηλα, ἔσφαλμαι, ἐσφάλην, iv. [Lat. *fallō, trip*, Eng. FALL], *trip up, make fall;* pass., *fail, meet with a mischance.*

σφάττω (σφαγ-), σφάξω, ἔσφαξα, ἔσφαγμαι, ἐσφάγην, iv., *slay, sacrifice.*

σφεῖς, see οὗ.

†**σφενδονάω**, ἐσφενδόνησα, *use the sling, throw with a sling, sling.*

σφενδόνη, ης, *sling*, Lat. *funda.*

‡**σφενδονήτης**, ου, *slinger.*

σφέτερος, ᾱ, ον [σφεῖς], *their own.*

σφίσι, see οὗ.

σφόδρα, adv. [σφοδρός, *violent*], *exceedingly, excessively.*

σχεδία, ας, *raft, float.*

σχεδόν, adv. [608], *near, nearly.*

σχίζω (σχιδ-, σχιζ-), ἔσχισα, ἐσχίσθην, iv. [Lat. *scindō, split*, Eng. *schism*], *split.*

σχολαίως, adv. [608], *slowly;* neut. comp. as adv., σχολαίτερον, *more slowly.*

σχολή, ῆς [608], *leisure;* σχολῇ, *slowly.*

σῴζω (σωδ-), σώσω, ἔσωσα, σέσωκα, σέσωμαι and σέσωσμαι, ἐσώθην, 618, 8, iv. [σῶος], *save, rescue, preserve, keep safe;* mid. and pass., *save oneself, be saved alive, escape, return* or *arrive safely.*

Σωκράτης, ους, ὁ, *Socrates.*

σῶμα, ατος, τό, *body, life, person.*

σῶος, ᾱ, ον or **σῶς**, σᾶ, σῶν [Lat. *sānus, sound*], *safe and sound, alive, saved from danger.*

Σῶσις, ιος, ὁ, *Sosis.*

σωτήρ, ῆρος, ὁ [σῴζω], *saviour.*

‡**σωτηρίᾱ**, ᾱς, *safety, deliverance, rescue from danger.*

Σωτηρίδᾱς, ου, *Soteridas.*

σωτήριος, ᾱ, ον [σωτήρ], *salutary.*

†**σω-φρονέω**, σωφρονήσω, *be discreet, wise*, or *prudent.*

†**σω-φροσύνη**, ης, *self-control.*

σώ-φρων, ον, gen. ονος [σῶος + φρήν], *of sound mind, discreet.*

T.

τάλαντον, τό, *a talent*, worth 60 minas or about $1080.00. See μνᾶ.

Ταμώς, ό, *Tamos.*

τἀναντία, by crasis for τὰ ἐναντία.

τάξις, εως, ἡ [554], *arrangement*, esp. of troops, *order, rank, array, line of battle, division.*

ταπεινός, ή, όν, *submissive.*

τάπις, ιδος, ἡ, *carpet, rug.*

ταράττω (ταραχ-), ταράξω, ἐτάραξα, τετάραγμαι, ἐταράχθην, 617, 7, iv., *trouble, disturb.*

‡**τάραχος**, ὁ, *confusion, tumult.*

Ταρσοί, ῶν, *Tarsus.*

τάττω (ταγ-), τάξω, ἔταξα, τέταχα, τέταγμαι, ἐτάχθην, 617, 8, iv. [554], *arrange, assign, order*, esp. of troops, *draw up, marshal;* mid. and pass., *take one's post, be stationed.*

ταῦρος, ὁ [Lat. *taurus, bull*, Eng. STEER], *bull.*

ταὐτά, by crasis for τὰ αὐτά.

ταύτῃ, adv. [οὗτος], *in this way* or *direction.*

τάφος, ὁ [θάπτω, Eng. *epi-taph*], *burial, burial-place, grave.*

τάφρος, η [θάπτω], *ditch, trench.*

†**τάχα**, adv., *quickly, forthwith;* in apodosis with ἄν, *perhaps.*

†**ταχέως**, adv., *quickly, soon.*

†**τάχος**, ους, τό, *swiftness, speed.*

ταχύς, εῖα, ύ, 448, *quick, swift*, Lat. *celer;* διὰ ταχέων, *with speed;* neut. as adv., ταχύ, *swiftly, soon;*

comp. θᾶττον, *more quickly*; sup. τάχιστα, with ὅτι or ὡς, *as quickly as possible, with all possible speed.*

τέ, encl. copulative conj., *and*, corresponding to καί much as Lat. *-que* to *et*; τε . . . καί or τε καί, *both . . . and.*

τεθνάναι, τέθνηκα, see θνήσκω.

τείνω (τεν-), τενῶ, ἔτεινα, τέτακα, τέταμαι, ἐτάθην, 619, 10, iv. [Lat. *tendō*, *stretch*, Eng. THIN, DANCE, *tone*], *stretch, exert oneself, hasten, push on.*

τεῖχος, ους, τό [DIKE, DITCH, DIG], *wall, rampart, fort.*

τέκνον, τό [554], *child.*

†**τελευταῖος**, ᾱ, ον, *last, at the rear*; οἱ τελευταῖοι, *the rear guard.*

†**τελευτάω**, τελευτήσω, *end, finish, end one's life, die.*

†**τελευτή**, ῆς, *end, death.*

†**τελέω**, τελῶ, ἐτέλεσα, τετέλεκα, τετέλεσμαι, ἐτελέσθην, 441, *complete, finish, fulfil* an obligation, *pay.*

τέλος, ους, τό [Lat. *terminus*, *end*, Eng. *talisman*], *fulfilment, end, result*; acc. as adv., τέλος, *at last, finally.* 734.

τέλος, ους, τό [τόλμα], *what is imposed on one, tax, outlay*; pl. τὰ τέλη, *the authorities, magistrates.*

τέμνω (τεμ-), τεμῶ, ἔτεμον and ἔταμον, τέτμηκα, τέτμημαι, ἐτμήθην, 624, 5, v. [Lat. *temno*, *slight*, 'cut,' Eng. *a-tom*], *cut.*

τέρας, ατος, τό, *portent.*

†**τετράκις**, adv., 496, *four times.*

‡**τετρακισ-χίλιοι**, αι, α [χίλιοι], *4000.*

†**τετρα-κόσιοι**, αι, α [ἑκατόν], *400.*

†**τετρα-πλοῦς**, ῆ, οῦν, 191 [πίμπλημι], *filled four times, four-fold.*

†**τετταράκοντα**, indecl., 496, *forty.*

τέτταρες, α, 496, 497 [Lat. *quattuor*, Eng. FOUR, *tetra-gon, tetrarchy*], *four.*

τήκω, (τακ-), τήξω, ἔτηξα, τέτηκα, ἐτάκην and ἐτήχθην, 609, 3, ii. [Lat. *tābēs*, *decay*, Eng. THAW], *melt*; intr. *thaw, melt.*

τήμερον, adv. [τ-, demon. prefix, + ἡμέρα], *to-day*, Lat. *hodie.*

Τίγρης, ητος, ὁ, *the Tigris.*

τίθημι (θε-), θήσω, ἔθηκα, τέθεικα, τέθειμαι, ἐτέθην, 647, 1, vii. [638], *put, set, place, institute*; θέσθαι τὰ ὅπλα, *order arms, ground arms, get under arms*; κατὰ χώρᾱν ἔθεντο τὰ ὅπλα, *moved back to quarters.*

τῑμάω, τῑμήσω, *etc.* [444], *value, esteem, honour.*

τῑμή, ῆς [444], *value, worth, price, honour, esteem.*

τίμιος, ᾱ, ον [444], *precious, valued, honoured, in honour, worthy.*

τῑμ-ωρέω, τῑμωρήσω, *etc.* [444], *avenge*; mid., *avenge oneself on, take vengeance on, punish*; pass., *be punished, tortured.* 755.

τίνω (τι-), τίσω, ἔτῑσα, τέτῑκα, τέτισμαι, ἐτίσθην, 624, 6, v. [444], *pay back, expiate*; mid., *make pay, punish.*

τίς, τί, gen. τίνος, interr. pron., 557, *who? which? what?* Lat. *quis*; neut. acc. as adv., τί, *why?* 558.

τις, τι, gen. τινός, encl. indef. pron., 557, *a, an, any, some, a sort of, a certain*, Lat. *quis*; subst., *somebody, anybody, something, anything*, pl. *some.*

Τισσαφέρνης, ους, ὁ, *Tissaphernes.*

τιτρώσκω (τρω-), τρώσω, τέτρωκα, τέτρωμαι, ἐτρώθην, 642, 8, vi., *wound.*

τοί, encl. intensive particle, *in truth, verily, surely, of a certainty.*

τοι-γαρ-οῦν, inferential conj. [τοί + γάρ + οὖν], *therefore, accordingly.*

τοί-νυν, post-posit. inferential conj. [τοί + νύν, *now*], *therefore, then.*

τοιόσδε, τοιάδε, τοιόνδε, demon pron., *such, such as follows*; ἔλεξε

τοιάδε, *spoke as follows* or *in the following terms.* 542, 542 a.

τοιοῦτος, τοιαύτη, τοιοῦτον, demon. pron., *such, such as precedes.* 542, 542 a.

τόλμα, ης [Lat. *tolerō, endure,* Eng. *a-tlas*], *courage to endure.*

†**τολμάω**, τολμήσω, *etc., have the courage, venture, risk, dare.*

Τολμίδης, ου, *Tolmides.*

τόξευμα, ατος, τό [554], *arrow.*

τοξεύω. ἐτόξευσα. τετόξευμαι. ἐτοξεύθην [554], *use one's bow, shoot.*

τοξική, ῆς [544], *archery.*

τόξον, ου [544], *bow.*

τοξότης, ου [544], *bowman.*

τόπος, ὁ [TOPIC], *place, region.*

τοσόσδε, τοσήδε, τοσόνδε, dem. pron., *so much, so many.* 542.

τοσοῦτος, τοσαύτη, τοσοῦτον, dem. pron., *so much, so many;* with comparatives, τοσούτῳ, *by so much, the;* neut. acc. as adv., τοσοῦτον, *so much, so far.* 542.

τότε, adv., *at that time, then.*

τοὔμπαλιν, by crasis for τὸ ἔμπαλιν.

τοὔπισθεν, by crasis for τὸ ὄπισθεν.

τράγημα, ατος, τό, *sweet-meats.*

Τράλλεις, εων, οἱ, *Tralles.*

τρά-πεζα, ης [τέτταρες + πούς, *cf.* πεζός], *table,* prop. with four legs.

τραῦμα, ατος, τό [τιτρώσκω], *wound.*

τράχηλος, ὁ, *neck, throat.*

τραχύς, εῖα, ύ, *harsh, rough.*

τρεῖς, τρία, 496, 497 [Lat. *trēs,* Eng. THREE, *tri-pod*], *three.*

τρέπω, τρέψω, ἔτρεψα and ἔτραπον, τέτροφα, τέτραμμαι, ἐτράπην and ἐτρέφθην, 604, 11 [Lat. *torqueō, turn, twist,* Eng. THREAD], *turn, direct, divert, rout;* mid., *turn oneself, turn aside, look, face.*

τρέφω, θρέψω, ἔθρεψα, τέθραμμαι, ἐτράφην and ἐθρέφθην, 604, 12, *nourish, support, maintain;* pass., *be supported, subsist.*

τρέχω (τρεχ-, δραμ-), δραμοῦμαι, ἔδραμον. δεδράμηκα. δεδραμημαι. 655, 6, viii. [δρόμος]. *run.*

τριάκοντα, indecl., 496 [τρεῖς], *thirty.*

τρια-κόσιοι, αι, α, 496 [τρεῖς + ἑκατόν], *300.*

τρίβω. τρίψω. ἔτριψα. τέτριφα. τέτριμμαι, ἐτρίβην and ἐτρίφθην, 604, 13, *rub.*

τρι-ήρης, ους, ἡ [τρεῖς + ἐρέσσω, *row*], *war-vessel, trireme, galley.*

τρισ-άσμενος, η, ον [τρεῖς + ἥδομαι], *thrice glad, very glad.*

τρισ-καί-δεκα. indecl., 496 [τρεῖς + δέκα], *thirteen.*

τρισχίλιοι, αι, α, 496 [τρεῖς + χίλιοι], *3000.*

τρίτος, η, ον, 496 [τρεῖς], *third;* adv., τὸ τρίτον, *the third time.*

†**τρόπαιον**, τό [*trophy*], *trophy.*

τροπή, ῆς [τρέπω], *rout, defeat.*

τρόπος, ὁ [τρέπω, Eng. *tropic*], *manner, turn, character.*

τροφή, ῆς [τρέφω], *support.*

τυγχάνω (τυχ-), τεύξομαι, ἔτυχον, τετύχηκα and τέτευχα, 626, 6, v. [554], *hit, attain, get, obtain, happen, chance.* 746, 860.

Τυριαῖον, τό, *Tyriaeum.*

τύχη. ης [554]. *luck, fortune, chance;* κατὰ τύχην, *by chance.*

τῳ, see τίς.

Υ.

ὕδωρ, ατος, τό [Lat. *unda, wave,* Eng. WATER, WET, *hydro-*], *water.*

υἱός, οῦ [SON], *son.*

ὕλη, ης [Lat. *silua, wood*], *wood, fagots.*

ὑμεῖς, see σύ.

†**ὑμέτερος**, ᾱ, ον, 531, *your.*

ὑπ-άγω, *lead under,* intr. *lead on* or *advance slowly;* mid., *draw on, suggest craftily.*

ὑπ-αρχος, ὁ [463], *lieutenant.*

ὑπ-άρχω, *be under as a foundation, be on hand, be, be on one's side, support.* 768.

ὑπ-ασπιστής, οῦ [ἀσπίς], *shield-bearer, squire.*

ὕπ-ειμι (εἰμί), *be under* or *underneath.*

ὑπ-ελαύνω, *ride under* or *up to.*

ὑπέρ, prep. with gen. and acc. [Lat. *super, over*, Eng. OVER, *hyper-*], *over.* With gen., *over, above, beyond, for, in behalf of, for the sake of, in defence of, instead of.* With acc., *over, above, more than.*

In composition *ὑπέρ* signifies *over, above, beyond, exceedingly, for, in behalf of.*

ὑπερ-βάλλω, *strike* or *pass over, surpass, exceed.*

ὑπερ-βολή, ῆς [480], *act of crossing, crossing, mountain-pass.*

ὑπερ-δέξιος, ᾱ, ον [602], *above on the right, above.*

ὕπερ-θεν, adv. [*ὑπέρ*], *overhead.*

ὑπέρ-φρων, ον, gen. ονος [φρήν], *high-minded, haughty, arrogant.*

ὑπ-έσχετο, *etc.*, see *ὑπισχνέομαι.*

ὑπ-ήκοος, ον [ἀκούω], *listening to, obedient.* 772.

†**ὑπηρετέω**, *ὑπηρετήσω, serve, help, furnish.* 768.

ὑπηρέτης, ου, *servant, attendant.*

ὑπ-ισχνέομαι, *ὑπο-σχήσομαι, ὑπ-εσχόμην, ὑπ-έσχημαι*, 627, 2, v. [608], *hold oneself under, promise.*

ὑπό, prep. with gen., dat., and acc. [Lat. *sub, under*], *under.* With gen., *under, from under*, frequently of agency, *by, through, from, at the hands of, by reason of.* With dat., *under, beneath, at the foot of, under the power of.* With acc., *under, down under.*

In composition *ὑπό* signifies *under*, often with an idea of secrecy or craft (*cf.* Eng. *underhand*), or has diminutive force, *rather, somewhat*, or it denotes subordination or inferiority.

ὑπο-δέχομαι, *receive under* one's protection, *welcome.*

ὑπο-δέω, *bind under;* mid. and pass., *put one's shoes on; ὑποδεδεμένοι, in their shoes.*

ὑπο-ζύγιον, τό [654], *beast of burden;* pl. *baggage animals.*

ὑπο-λαμβάνω, *take under* one's protection, *take up* the discourse, *answer, assume, suppose.*

ὑπο-λείπω, *leave behind.*

ὑπο-λύω, *loose beneath, take off one's shoes.*

ὑπο-μένω, *stay behind.*

ὑπό-μνημα, ατος, τό [μιμνήσκω], *memorial, reminder.*

ὑπό-πεμπτος, ον [πέμπω], *sent secretly* or *as a spy.*

ὑπ-οπτεύω, *ὑπ-οπτεύσω* [ὕπ-οπτος, *viewed with suspicion, cf.* ὁράω], *suspect, apprehend, surmise.*

ὑπο-φείδομαι, *spare a little.*

ὑπο-χείριος, ον [χείρ], *under the hands of, subject to.* 772.

ὕπ-οχος, ον [608], *subject to.* 772.

ὑπο-χωρέω, *move under* another's influence, *retire, withdraw, retreat.*

ὑπ-οψίᾱ, ας [*cf.* ὑπ-οπτεύω], *suspicion, apprehension; ὑποψίᾱ ἐστί*, with dat. of person, *be apprehensive.*

†**ὑστεραῖος**, ᾱ, ον, *later, following; τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ* (*sc.* ἡμέρᾳ), *the following day, next day.*

†**ὑστερέω**, *ὑστέρησα, ὑστέρηκα, be later, come too late for.* 754.

ὕστερος, ᾱ, ον [OUT, UTTER], *later;* neut. as adv., *ὕστερον, later, afterwards.*

ὑφ-ίημι, *send under, concede;* mid., *put oneself under, yield.*

†**ὑψηλός**, ή, όν, *high, lofty.*

ὕψος, ους, τό [ὑπέρ], *height.*

Φ.

φαίνω (φαν-), φανῶ, ἔφηνα, πέφαγκα and πέφηνα, πέφασμαι, ἐφάνθην and ἐφάνην, 619, 11, iv. [483], *bring to light, make appear, show;* mid. and pass. and 2 pf., *show oneself, be shown* or *seen, appear, turn out.* 839.

φάλαγξ, γγος, ἡ [*phalanx*], *line of battle, phalanx; κατὰ φάλαγγα, in line of battle.*

Φαλῖνος, ὁ, *Phalīnus.*

φανερός, ά, όν [483], *in plain sight, visible, manifest, open; ἐν τῷ φανερῷ, openly, publicly.* 839 b.

φάσκω, vi. [483], *say, allege.*

φείδομαι (φειδ-), φείσομαι, ἐφεισάμην, 609, 4, ii. [Lat. *findō, split*, Eng. BITE, BITTER], *separate oneself from, spare.*

φέρω (φερ-, οι-, ενεκ-), οἴσω, ἤνεγκα and ἤνεγκον, ἐνήνοχα, ἐνήνεγμαι, ἠνέχθην, 655, 7, viii. [658], *bear, bring, carry, produce, receive, endure;* pass., *be borne, carry, rush; χαλεπῶς φέρειν, take it ill, be troubled.*

φεύγω (φυγ-), φεύξομαι and φευξοῦμαι, ἔφυγον, πέφευγα, 609, 5, ii. [525], *flee, take flight, run away, retreat, fly*, Lat. *fugiō, flee from, run away from, flee from one's country, be an exile, be banished; οἱ φεύγοντες, the exiles.*

φημί, φήσω, ἔφησα, 664, 1, 699 [483], *say, declare, state; ἔφη, said yes; οὐκ ἔφη, said no*, in answers; *οὔ φημι, say no, refuse, deny.* 838 a.

φθάνω (φθα-), φθήσομαι and φθάσω, ἔφθην and ἐφθασα, 646, 3, v., *get the start of, anticipate, outstrip.* 860.

φθέγγομαι, φθέγξομαι, etc., 600, 8, *make a sound, shout, sound.*

φθείρω (φθερ-), φθερῶ, ἔφθαρκα, ἔφθαρμαι, ἐφθάρην, 619, 12, iv., *destroy, lay waste, corrupt.*

φιάλη, ης [*phial, vial*], *drinking cup.*

†**φιλέω**, φιλήσω, *love*, of the love of family and friends.

†**φιλία**, ας, *affection, friendship.*

†**φιλικός**, ή, όν, *friendly, amicable.*

†**φίλιος**, α, ον, *friendly, amicable, at peace*, used esp. of countries. 772.

†**φιλο-μαθής**, ές [μανθάνω], *fond of knowledge, eager to learn.* 760.

φίλος, η, ον [*phil-anthropy, philtre*], *friendly, dear, dear to, loved by, attached to, kindly disposed*, comp. φιλαίτερος or φίλτερος; φίλος, ὁ, *friend, adherent.* 772.

†**φιλο-τῑμέομαι**, φιλοτῑμήσομαι, etc., pass. dep. [444], *love honour, be ambitious, feel piqued.*

‡**φιλό-τῑμος**, ον [444], *loving honour, ambitious.*

†**φλυᾱρέω**, φλυᾱρήσω, *talk bosh.*

†**φλυᾱρία**, ας, *nonsense*, pl. *bosh.*

φλύᾱρος, ὁ, *nonsense.*

†**φοβερός**, ά, όν, *fearful, terrible, formidable.*

†**φοβέω**, φοβήσω, ἐφόβησα, *frighten, terrify*, of unreasoning fear; comm. pass. dep., *be frightened, be terrified, fear, dread, be afraid.*

φόβος, ὁ [*hydro-phobia*], *fear, dread, terror, fright.*

†**φοινῑκοῦς**, ῆ, οῦν, 191, *purple*, so named since this colour was discovered by the Phoenicians.

†**Φοινίκη**, ης, *Phoenicia.*

†**φοινῑκιστής**, οῦ, *wearer of the purple*, a title of rank at the Persian court.

Φοῖνιξ, ῑκος, ὁ, *a Phoenician.*

φοῖνιξ, ῑκος, ὁ, *palm, date-palm.*

φορέω, φορήσω, etc. [658], *carry habitually, wear.*

φράζω (φραδ-), φράσω, etc., iv. [Lat. *later prōs, explainer*, Eng. *phrase*], *say, tell.*

φρέαρ, ατος, τό [Lat. *fervō*, *boil*, Eng. BREW], *well.*

φρήν, φρενός, ἡ [*frantic*, *phrenology*], *heart, mind.*

‡**φρονέω**, φρονήσω, *have understanding, understand, think.*

‡**φροντίζω** (φροντιδ-), φροντιῶ, iv., *take thought, be anxious.*

†**φρούρ-αρχος**, ὁ [573, 463], *commander of a garrison.*

†**φρουρέω**, φρουρήσω [573], *watch, guard.*

†**φρούριον**, τό [573], *guard, garrison.*

φρουρός, ὁ [573], *watcher, guard.*

†**Φρυγία**, ᾱς, *Phrygia.*

Φρύξ, υγός, ὁ, *a Phrygian.*

φυγάς, άδος, ὁ [525], *fugitive, exile, refugee.*

φυγή, ῆς [525], *flight, rout.*

†**φυλακή**, ῆς, *a watching, watch, picket duty, garrison.*

†**φύλαξ**, ακος, ὁ, *a watcher, guard, outpost;* pl. *bodyguard.*

φυλάττω (φυλακ-), φυλάξω, ἐφύλαξα, πεφύλαχα, πεφύλαγμαι, ἐφυλάχθην, 617, 9, iv., *stand guard, guard, watch, defend;* mid., *be on one's guard, watch out against*, Lat. *caueō;* φυλακᾶς φυλάττειν, *stand guard.*

†**φύσις**, εως, ἡ, *nature.*

φύω, φύσω, ἔφῡσα and ἔφῡν, πέφῡκα, 652, 2 [Lat. *fuī*, *I was*, Eng. BE, BOOR, *physic*], *bring forth, bear, produce;* intr., 2 aor., *was born*, 2 pf., *be by nature, be.*

φωνή, ῆς [483], *voice, speech.*

X.

χαίρω (χαρ-), χαιρήσω, κεχάρηκα, κεχάρημαι and κέχαρμαι, ἐχάρην, iv. [Lat. *grātus, agreeable*, Eng. YEARN, *eu-charist*], *rejoice, be glad.* 859.

Χαλδαῖοι, οἱ, *the Chaldaeans.*

†**χαλεπαίνω** (χαλεπαν-), χαλεπανῶ, ἐχαλέπηνα, ἐχαλεπάνθην, iv., *be angry, be severe, be offended* or *provoked.* 768.

χαλεπός, ή, όν, *hard, grievous, difficult, dangerous, severe, stern, savage.*

‡**χαλεπῶς**, adv., *hardly, with difficulty, painfully.*

†**χαλκοῦς**, ῆ, οῦν, 191, *of bronze, bronze.*

χαλκός, ὁ, *copper, bronze, bronze armour.*

Χάλος, ὁ, *the Chalus.*

Χάλυψ, υβος, ὁ [*chalybeate*], *a Chalybian.*

χαράδρᾱ, ᾱς, *gorge, ravine.*

†**χαρίεις**, εσσα, εν, *graceful, pleasing.*

†**χαρίζομαι** (χαριδ-), χαριοῦμαι, *etc.*, iv., *gratify, favour, please.* 768.

χάρις, ιτος, ἡ [χαίρω], *grace, favour, gratitude, thanks;* χάριν εἰδέναι, χάριν ἔχειν, *be* or *feel grateful;* χάριν ἀποδιδόναι, *return the favour.*

Χαρμάνδη, ης, *Charmande.*

χειμών, ῶνος [Lat. *hiems, winter*], *bad weather, winter.*

χείρ, χειρός, ἡ [Lat. *herctum, inheritance*, Eng. *chiro-graphy, s-urgeon*], *hand*, Lat. *manus.*

Χειρίσοφος, ὁ, *Chirisophus.*

χειρο-πληθής, ές [χείρ + πίμπλημι], *handfilling, as large as the hand can hold.*

χειρόω, χειρώσω, *etc.* [χείρ], *handle, subdue.*

χείρων, ον, gen. ονος, 469, *worse, inferior.*

Χερρόνησος, ἡ, *the Chersonese.*

χέω (χυ-), χέω, ἔχεα, κέχυκα, κέχυμαι, ἐχύθην, 610, 6, ii. [Lat. *fundō, pour*, Eng. GUSH], *pour.*

χήν, χηνός, ὁ, ἡ [Lat. *ānser, goose*, Eng. GOOSE, GANDER], *goose.*

χίλιοι, αι, α, 496, *1000.*

χῖλός, ὁ, *fodder, forage.*

χιτών, ῶνος, ὁ, *undergarment.*

χιών, όνος, ἡ [*cf.* χειμών], *snow.*

χοῖνιξ, *ικος*, *ἡ*, *choenix*, an Attic dry measure containing nearly one quart U.S. dry measure.

χόρτος, *ὁ*, *fodder*, *grass*.

χράομαι, *χρήσομαι*, *etc.*, 255 a, *serve oneself by*, *make use of*, *use*, *employ*, *treat*, Lat. *ūtor*. 775.

χρή, *χρήσει*, impers., *it is needful*, *one must* or *ought*.

χρῄζω (*χρηδ-*), iv., *want*, *need*, *desire*.

χρῆμα, *ατος*, *τό* [*χράομαι*], *a thing that one uses*; pl. *things*, *property*, *wealth*, *money*.

χρῆναι, see *χρή*.

χρήσιμος, *η*, *ον*, and *ος*, *ον* [*χράομαι*], *useful*, *serviceable*.

χρίω, *χρ-σω*, *ἔχρισα*, *κέχρῑμαι* and *κεχρῖσμαι*, *ἐχρίσθην* [Lat. *friō*, *rub*, Eng. GRIND, ***Christ***], *rub*, *anoint*.

χρόνος, *ὁ* [*chrono-logy*], *time*, *season*, *period*, Lat. *tempus*.

†**χρῦσοῦς**, *ῆ*, *οῦν*, 191, *of gold*, *golden*, *gold*, *gilded*.

†**χρῦσίον**, *τό*, *piece of gold*, *gold-coin*, *gold*.

χρῦσός, *ὁ* [GOLD, *chryso-lite*], *gold*.

‡**χρῦσο-χάλῑνος**, *ον* [*χαλῑνός*, *bridle*], *with gold-mounted bridle*.

χώρᾱ, *ᾱς* [*cf.* *χῶρος*], *place*, *assigned place*, *position*, *post*, *station*; *land*, *tract of land*, *territory*, *region*, *country*.

χωρέω, *χωρήσω*, *etc.* [*χῶρος*], *give place*, *withdraw*, *move*, *march*; of measures, *hold*.

χωρίον, *τό* [*χῶρος*], *space*, *place*, *spot*, *stronghold*.

χωρίς, adv., *apart*, *away from*. 761.

χῶρος, *ὁ* [*an-chorite*], *particular place*, *piece of ground*, *estate*.

Ψ.

Ψάρος, *ὁ*, *the Psarus*.

ψέλιον, *τό*, *armlet*, *bracelet*.

ψεύδω, *ψεύσω*, *ἔψευσα*, *ἔψευσμαι*, *ἐψεύσθην* [*pseud-onym*], *deceive*; mid., *lie*, *cheat*, *deceive*, *act falsely*.

ψηφίζω (*ψηφιδ-*), *ψηφιῶ*, *etc.*, iv. [*ψῆφος*, *pebble*], *reckon with pebbles*; mid., *vote*, *resolve*, *determine*.

ψῑλός, *ή*, *όν*, *bare*, *unprotected*; *οἱ ψῑλοί*, *light-armed troops*.

ψῡχή, *ῆς* [*psycho-logy*], *life*, *soul*, *spirit*.

Ω.

ὦ, exclamation, *O*, with voc.

ὧδε, adv. [*ὅδε*], *thus*, *as follows*, *in the following manner*.

ὠθέω, *ὤσω*, *ἔωσα*, *ἔωσμαι*, *ἐώσθην*, 605, 9, *push*, *shove*.

ὠμός, *ή*, *όν*, *raw*, *uncooked*.

ὠνέομαι (*ωνε-*, *πρια-*), *ὠνήσομαι*, *ἐπριάμην*, *ἐώνημαι*, *ἐωνήθην*, 655, 8, viii. [*ὦνος*, *price*], *buy*, *purchase*.

‡**ὤνιος**, *ᾱ*, *ον*, *purchasable*; *ὤνια*, *τά*, *wares*, *goods*.

ὥρᾱ, *ᾱς* [YEAR, ***hour***, ***horo-scope***], *time*, *period*, *season*, *hour*. Lat. *hōra*, *the proper time*, *opportunity*.

ὡς, procl., orig. a conjunctive adv. of manner [*ὅς*], but developed into a variety of uses. As conj. adv., *as*, Lat. *ut*, with verbs, before prepositions, and with participles (see 858), *as if*, *just as*, *thinking that*, *on the ground that*, *with the avowed intention*, *as though*; with numerals, *about*; of degree, *how*, esp. with superlatives. Lat. *quam*. as *ὡς μάλιστα*, *as much as possible*. As prep., with acc., *to*, only of persons. As conj., of time, *as*, *when*, *after*, *ὡς τάχιστα*, *as soon as*; introducing indirect discourse, *that*; of cause, *as*, *since*, *because*, *for*, Lat. *ut*; final, *that*, *in order that*. Lat. *ut*; of intended result, like *ὥστε*, *so as*, *so that*.

ὥς, *thus*, *so*.

†**ὡσ-αύτως**, adv. [518], *in this same way, just so.*

ὥσ-περ, conjunctive adv. [ὡς], *like as, just as, even as, as it were.*

ὥσ-τε, conjunctive adv. [ὡς], *so as, so that, wherefore.* 824.

ὠτίς, *ίδος*, *ἡ*, *bustard.*

ὠφελέω, *ὠφελήσω*, *etc.* [*ὄφελος*], *help, succour, assist, benefit, be of service to, give assistance to,* of voluntary service.

†**ὠφέλιμος**, *ον*, *useful, serviceable.*

II. ENGLISH-GREEK VOCABULARY.

Consult the Greek-English Vocabulary for the forms and fuller meanings of the Greek words here given.

The distinction of synonymous Greek words is here briefly indicated, if possible. But in all cases where there is a choice of Greek words, the Greek-English Vocabulary should be carefully consulted. That vocabulary is necessarily brief, but it gives the etymological meanings of the words and indicates the process by which these meanings have been developed. Sometimes the synonymous words are interchangeable, but this should not be taken for granted.

If in doubt, choose the word that is familiar. The aim has been to introduce no word into the English-Greek exercises that has not previously been given. Frequently the choice will be determined by the appropriateness of the word to the lesson in which it occurs. Each sentence in each English-Greek exercise illustrates the principles of the lesson of which the exercise is a part.

Abandon

Abandon, λείπω, ἐκλείπω, *quit* a place; ἀπολείπω, καταλείπω, *desert* a person; προΐεμαι, *surrender*, *give up*; προδίδωμι, *betray*.

Able, ἱκανός; *be* —, ἱκανός εἰμι, δύναμαι.

Abound, — *in*, σύμπλεώς εἰμι.

Abounding, — *in*, σύμπλεως.

About, ἀμφί, κατά, περί, πρός, ὡς; *be* —, μέλλω.

Above, ὑπέρ; *from* —, ἄνωθεν.

Abrocomas, Ἀβροκόμᾶς.

Abundant, ἄφθονος.

Accompany, ἕπομαι, συνακολουθέω; *accompanied by*, ἔχων περί, with acc.

Accomplish, καταπράττω, περαίνω, *bring to an end*, *fulfil*; ποιέω, *do*.

A.

Accord, *of one's own* —, ἑκών.

Accordingly, δή, οὖν.

Account, *on* — *of*, διά, ἕνεκα.

Accrue, γίγνομαι.

Accuse, κατηγορέω.

Acquainted, — *with*, ἐπιστάμενος.

Acquire, κτάομαι.

Acropolis, ἀκρόπολις.

Across, πέραν.

Addition, *in* — *to*, πρός.

Address, λέγω.

Admire, θαυμάζω.

Advance, or *make an* —, πορεύομαι, πρόσειμι.

Advise, συμβουλεύω.

Afraid, *be* —, φοβέομαι.

After, μετά.

Afternoon, δείλη.

Afterwards, ὕστερον.

Again, πάλιν, ἔτι.

Against, ἐπί, πρός.

Agreement, *make an* —, συντίθεμαι.

Announce

Aid, βοήθεια; ὠφελέω.

Alive, ζῶν; *be* —, ζάω.

All, πᾶς; *of* — *sorts* or *kinds*, παντοῖος.

Allege, φάσκω.

Ally, σύμμαχος.

Alone, μόνος.

Along, or *alongside*, παρά.

Already, ἤδη.

Also, καί.

Altar, βωμός.

Always, ἀεί.

Among, ἐν, εἰς.

Amount, — *to*, γίγνομαι.

Anaxibius, Ἀναξίβιος.

Ancestor, πρόγονος.

Ancestral, πατρῷος.

Anchor, *lie at* —, ὁρμέω.

And, καί, δέ.

Angry, *be* —, ὀργίζομαι, *be enraged*; χαλεπαίνω, *be offended*.

Animal, *wild* —, θηρίον.

Announce, ἀγγέλλω, ἀπαγγέλλω.

Anoint, χρῖω.
Another, ἄλλος; *one —*, ἀλλήλων.
Answer, or *make —*, ἀποκρῖνομαι.
Anxious, *be —*, ἐννοέω, *be apprehensive, be fearful;* φροντίζω, *be troubled.*
Any, τις; *anybody* or *— one*, τις; *anything*, τι.
Apart, χωρίς.
Appear, φαίνομαι, ἐπιφαίνομαι.
Applaud, ἐπαινέω.
Appoint, ἀποδείκνῡμι.
Apprehensive, *be —*, ἐννοέομαι, *fear;* ὑποψία ἐστί, *be suspicious, suspect.*
Approach, πλησιάζω; *let —*, προσῐ́ημι.
Arabia, Ἀραβία.
Araxes, Ἀράξης.
Arcadian, Ἀρκάς.
Argument, λόγος.
Ariaeus, Ἀριαῖος.
Arise, ἀνίσταμαι, of bodily action; γίγνομαι, of disturbance, *etc.*
Aristippus, Ἀρίστιππος.
Aristonymus, Ἀριστώνυμος.
Arm, ὁπλίζω, ἐξοπλίζω; *arms, armour,* ὅπλα; *under arms*, ἐν τῇ ἐξοπλισίᾳ.
Army, στρατιά, στράτευμα, στρατός.
Arrangement, τάξις.
Array, *in battle —*, συντεταγμένος.
Arrest, συλλαμβάνω.
Arrive, ἀφικνέομαι, πάρειμι; *— safely*, σῴζομαι.
Arrow, τόξευμα.
Artapates, Ἀρταπάτης.
Artaxerxes, Ἀρταξέρξης.
As, ὡς; (*— much*) *—*, ὅσος; *— . . . — possible*, ὅτι or ὡς with the superlative.
Ashamed, *feel —*, αἰσχύνομαι.
Asia, Ἀσία.
Ask, ἐρωτάω, *inquire;* αἰτέω, *ask for.*
Asleep, *lie —*, κατάκειμαι.
Aspendian, Ἀσπένδιος.
Ass, ὄνος.
Assembly, ἐκκλησία.
Assistance, *give —*, βοηθέω, ὠφελέω.
At, ἐν, ἐπί, πρός.
Athenian, Ἀθηναῖος.
Athens, *at —*, Ἀθήνησι.
Attack, ἐπιτίθεμαι, ἐμβάλλω; *make the —*, ἔπειμι.
Attempt, ἐπιχειρέω, πειράομαι.
Attention, *give* or *pay —*, προσέχω τὸν νοῦν.
Await, δέχομαι.
Axe, ἀξῖνη.

B.

Babylon, Βαβυλών.
Babylonia, Βαβυλωνία.
Back, πάλιν.
Bad, κακός, the general word; πονηρός, *harmful, vicious.*
Baggage, σκεύη, pl. of σκεῦος; σκευοφόρα, *baggage-train.*
Bank, ὄχθη.
Barbarian, βάρβαρος, βαρβαρικός.
Base, κακός.
Basket, κάνεον.
Battle, μάχη; *in — array*, συντεταγμένος; *give —*, μάχομαι; *fall into — line*, συντάττομαι.
Be, εἰμί; *— at hand, — by*, or *— present*, πάρειμι, παραγίγνομαι; *— in*, ἔνειμι; *— upon*, ἔπειμι.
Beast, θηρίον; *— of burden*, ὑποζύγιον.
Beat, παίω; *— off*, ἀποκόπτω.
Beautiful, καλός.
Because, ὅτι, ὡς.
Become, γίγνομαι.
Befit, πρέπω.
Before, πρό; πρόσθεν; πρίν.
Begin, ἄρχομαι, *enter upon* an action; ἄρχω, *take the lead* in an action.
Behalf, *in — of*, ὑπέρ.
Behind, ὄπισθεν; *leave —*, καταλείπω.
Believe, ἡγέομαι.
Benefit, ὠφελέω, *help, assist;* εὖ ποιέω, *treat well.*
Beside, παρά; *—* or *besides*, πρός.
Besiege, πολιορκέω.
Beyond, πέραν.
Bid, κελεύω.
Bind, δέω.
Bird, ὄρνις.
Black, μέλας.

Blow, πνέω.
Boat, πλοῖον.
Borrow, δανείζομαι.
Both, *on — sides*, ἀμφοτέρωθεν; *on — flanks*, ἑκατέρωθεν; — ... *and*, καὶ ... καί, or τε ... καί.
Bow, τόξον; *use the —*, τοξεύω.
Bowman, τοξότης.
Boy, παῖς.
Brave, ἀγαθός, ἀνδρεῖος.
Bravely, καλῶς.
Breadth, εὖρος.
Break, λύω.
Breakfast, ἄριστον.
Breastplate, θώρᾱξ.
Brick, πλίνθινος.
Bridge, γέφῡρα.
Bring, ἄγω; — *back word*, ἀπαγγέλλω; — *safely*, ἀποσῴζω; — *together*, συνάγω, συλλεγω.
Bronze, χάλκεος.
Brother, ἀδελφός.
Build, οἰκοδομέω, ἐποικοδομέω.
Burn, κάω, κατακάω; — *up* or — *down*, κατακᾶω; — *before*, προκατακάω.
Burst, — *open*, κατασχίζω.
Bury, θάπτω.
But, ἀλλά, δέ.
Buy, ἀγοράζω.
By, ἐπί; ὑπό, with gen. of the agent, rarely παρά; — *the side of*, παρά; — *means of*, ἀπό, διά; — *land and sea*, κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν.
Byzantium, Βυζάντιον.

C.

Call, καλέω; — *out*, βοάω; — *forth*, παρακαλέω; — *together*, συγκαλέω; — *a meeting* or *an assembly*, ἐκκλησιᾶν ποιεω.
Camp, στρατόπεδον; κατασκηνέω.
Canal, διῶρυξ.
Cap, *fox-skin —*, ἀλωπεκῆ.
Cappadocia, Καππαδοκίᾱ.
Captain, λοχᾱγός.
Captive, αἰχμάλωτος.
Capture, ἁρπάζω, αἱρέω; *be captured*, ἁλίσκομαι.
Cardūchi, Καρδοῦχοι.
Care, *take — of*, θεραπεύω; *take — of in return*, ἀντεπιμελέομαι.
Carelessly, ἠμελημένως.
Carry, ἄγω; — *away*, ἁρπάζω; — *over* or *across*, διαβιβάζω; — *on war*, πολεμέω.
Case, *in that —*, οὕτως.
Catch, θηρεύω, λαμβάνω.
Cattle, βοῦς, κτῆνος.
Cause, παρέχω.
Cavalry, ἱππεῖς; — *man*, ἱππεύς.
Cease, παύομαι.
Celaenae, Κελαιναί.
Centre, μέσον.
Certain, *a —*, τὶς.
Chance, *by —*, κατὰ τύχην.
Charge, ἴεμαι; — *double quick*, δρόμῳ θέω.
Chariot, ἅρμα.
Charmande. Χαρμάνδη.
Chase, or *give —*, διώκω.
Check. κωλύω.
Chersonese, Χερρόνησος.
Child. παῖς. παιδίον.
Chirisophus. Χειρίσοφος.
Choose, αἱρέομαι.
Cilicia, Κιλικίᾱ.
Cilician, Κίλιξ; — *queen*, Κίλισσα.
Citadel, ἄκρᾱ.
Citizen, πολίτης.
City, πόλις.
Clearchus, Κλέαρχος.
Close, — *to*, ἐπί.
Cloud, — *of dust*, κονιορτός.
Collect, ἀθροίζω, συλλέγω; — *supplies*, ἐπισῑτίζομαι.
Colossae, Κολοσσαί.
Come, ἔρχομαι, ἥκω; *have —*, ἥκω; — *together*, συλλέγομαι, συνέρχομαι; — *on*, προσέρχομαι, πρόειμι; — *to an end*, παύομαι, λήγω; — *late*, ὀψιζω.
Command, κελεύω, *order*; ἄρχω, *rule*; *in — of*, ἐπί.
Commander, ἄρχων, στρατηγός.
Commend, ἐπαινέω.
Commit, — *error*, ἁμαρτάνω.
Company, λόχος; *in — with*, σύν.
Compel, ἀναγκάζω.
Complete, διατελέω.
Conceal, ἀποκρύπτω.
Conduct, ἄγω.
Confer, ἀνακοινόομαι.

Confess, ὁμολογέω.
Conquer, νῑκάω, κρατέω.
Conscious, *be* —, σύνοιδα.
Consider, σκέπτομαι, βουλεύομαι.
Consternation, *in great* —, ἐκπεπληγμένος.
Consult, — *with*, συμβουλεύομαι.
Contend, ἀμιλλάομαι, ἀγωνίζομαι.
Contest, *judge of a* —, ἀγωνοθέτης.
Contingent, στράτευμα.
Converse, διαλέγομαι.
Convict, ἐλέγχω ; *be convicted*, ἁλίσκομαι.
Convoke, ποιέω.
Corrupt, διαφθείρω.
Corselet, θώρᾱξ.
Corsōte, Κορσώτη.
Counsel, συμβουλεύω.
Country, χώρᾱ ; *into the — of*, εἰς.
Courage, ἀρετή ; *lose* —, ἀθῡμέω.
Courageous, θαρραλέος.
Courageously, θαρραλέως.
Court, θεραπεύω ; *at* —, παρὰ βασιλεῖ, ἐπὶ ταῖς βασιλέως θύραις.
Cowardly, κακός.
Co-worker, συνεργός.
Creature, *wild* —, θηρίον.
Cross, or — *over*, διαβαίνω.
Crown, στέφανος.
Cry out, ἀνακράζω, βοάω.
Ctesias, Κτησίᾱς.
Cuirass, θώρᾱξ ; *in white* —, λευκοθώρᾱξ ; *put on one's* —, θωρᾱκίζομαι.
Cup, *drinking* —, φιάλη.
Cut, — *to pieces* or *down*, κατακόπτω ; — *down*, ἐκκόπτω, of trees ; *help in cutting down*, συνεκκόπτω ; — *off*, ἀποκλείω, ἀποκόπτω, ἀποτέμνω.
Cydnus, Κύδνος.
Cyrus, Κῦρος.

D.

Damage, *do* —, κακῶς ποιέω.
Dana, Δάνα.
Danger, κίνδῡνος.
Dardas, Δάρδας.
Daric, δᾰρεικός
Darīus, Δᾰρεῖος.
Date, βάλανος.
Dawn, ἕως.
Day, ἡμέρᾱ ; *on the following* —, τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ; *day's march*, σταθμός.
Daybreak, *at* —, ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ.
Dead, νεκρός ; *be* —, τεθνηκέναι, τεθνάναι.
Death, *put to* —, θανατόω, ἀποκτείνω ; *suffer* —, ἀποθνῄσκω.
Debate, λόγος.
Deceive, ἐξαπατάω, ψεύδω.
Decision, κρίσις.
Declare, ἀποδείκνῡμι.
Deep, βαθύς.
Deer, *of a* —, ἐλάφειος ; — *meat*, τὰ ἐλάφεια.
Defeat, νῑκάω ; *be defeated*, ἡττάομαι.
Defend, ἀμύνω.
Delay, διατρίβω.
Deliberate, βουλεύομαι, συμβουλεύομαι.
Deliver, — *over*, παραδίδωμι.
Deliverance, σωτηρίᾱ.
Demand, or — *back*, ἀπαιτέω.
Deny, οὔ φημι.
Depart, ἀποχωρέω.
Descend, καταβαίνω.
Describe, γράφω.
Description, *of every* —, παντοδαπός.
Desert, αὐτομολέω, ἀπολείπω, ἀπέρχομαι ; *through a* —, ἔρημος.
Design, ἐπιβουλεύω ; ἐπιβουλή.
Desire, ἐπιθῡμέω.
Desist, παύομαι, ἀναπαύομαι.
Despatch, ἀποστέλλω.
Despise, καταφρονέω.
Destroy, λύω, διαφθείρω.
Destruction, ὄλεθρος.
Dexippus, Δέξιππος.
Die, τελευτάω, ἀποθνῄσκω.
Difficult, χαλεπός.
Difficulty, πρᾶγμα, ἄπορον ; *with great* —, πάνυ χαλεπῶς.
Dig, — *through*, διορύττω ; — *a trench*, τάφρον ποιέω.
Disclose, ἐπιδείκνῡμι.
Discouraged, *be* —, ἀθῡμέω.
Disgrace, καταισχύνω.
Dishonour, ἀτῑμάζω.
Dismiss, ἀποστέλλω.
Disperse, σπείρω.
Dispirited, ἄθῡμος ; *be* —, ἀθῡμέω.

Distance, *at a —from*, πρόσω.
Distant, *be —*, ἀπέχω.
Distribute, διαδίδωμι.
Disturb, ταράττω.
Disturbance, θόρυβος.
Divide, *— up*, διανέμω.
Division, στράτευμα, τάξις.
Do, ποιέω, πράττω, in this sense used interchangeably; *— harm*, βλάπτω; *— damage*, κακῶς ποιέω; *— wrong*, ἀδικέω; *— well by*, εὖ ποιέω.
Dog, κύων.
Door, θύρα.
Double-quick, *charge —*, δρόμῳ θέω.
Draw, σπάομαι; *— up*, τάττω; *— up in line*, παρατάττω.
Dread, ὀκνέω.
Drinking-cup, φιάλη.
Drive, *— away*, ἀπελαύνω.
Dust, *cloud of —*, κονιορτός.
Dwell, οἰκέω.

E.

Each, ἕκαστος; *— time*, ἑκάστοτε.
Eager, πρόθῡμος; *be —*, ἐπιθῡμέω.
Earn, *— by hard work*, πονέω.
Ease, *with —* or *easily*, ῥᾳδίως.
East, ἕως.
Easy, ῥᾴδιος.
Eat, ἐσθίω.
Educate, παιδεύω.
Eight, ὀκτώ.
Either, *— . . . or*, ἤ . . . ἤ.
Elect, αἱρέομαι.
Eleven, *— thousand*, μύριοι καὶ χίλιοι.
Elsewhere, ἄλλῃ.
Embark, ἐμβαίνω.
Emporium, ἐμπόριον.
Empty, ἐμβάλλω.
Encamp, στρατοπεδεύομαι; *— near*, παρασκηνέω; *be encamped*, κάθημαι.
End, παύω; *come to an —*, παύομαι, λήγω.
Endeavour, πειράομαι.
Enemy, πολέμιος; *the —*, οἱ πολέμιοι.
Enjoin, ἐπιστέλλω.
Enlist, λαμβάνω.
Enough, ἱκανῶς.
Entire, ἅπᾶς, πᾶς.
Enumeration, ἀριθμός.
Envoy, ἄγγελος.
Envy, φθονέω.
Ephesus, Ἔφεσος.
Episthenes, Ἐπισθένης.
Equip, στέλλω.
Equipment, κόσμος.
Error, *commit —*, ἁμαρτάνω.
Escape, ἀποφεύγω; *— notice* or *the notice of*, λανθάνω; *— or — safely*, σῴζομαι.
Especially, μάλιστα.
Euphrātes, Εὐφράτης.
Even, καί; *not —*, οὐδέ; *in — line*, ὁμαλῶς.
Evening, δείλη.
Ever, ποτέ, πώποτε; *if —*, εἴποτε.
Every, *of — sort* or *description*, παντοδαπός; *everything*, πᾶν, πάντα.
Evident, δῆλος.
Evil-minded, κακόνοος.
Exceedingly, ἀγαθῶς, *strongly, forcibly*; σφόδρα, *grievously*.
Except, πλήν.
Excessively, σφόδρα.
Exercise, γυμνάζω.
Exhort, παρακελεύομαι.
Exile, φυγάς, ἐκπεπτωκώς (see ἐκπίπτω).
Expedition, στόλος, ὁδός, στρατεία; *take part in an —*, στρατεύομαι; *make an —*, στρατεύω.
Expel, ἐκβάλλω.
Experience, πεῖρα.
Expert, ἀγαθός.
Express, ἀποδείκνῡμι, ἀποφαίνω.
Eye, ὀφθαλμός.

F.

Face, *in one's —*, ἐναντίος.
Fail, ἐπιλείπω.
Fair, καλός.
Faithful, πιστός.
Fall, γίγνομαι; *— on*, ἐμπίπτω.
Fast, ταχέως.
Father, πατήρ.
Fear, φόβος; φοβέομαι, of sudden fear or terror; δέδοικα, of reasonable fear; *inspire with —*, φόβον παρέχω.
Fearful, φοβερός.
Feel, *— ashamed*, αἰσχύνομαι; *— grateful*, χάριν ἔχω.

Fellow, ἄνθρωπος.
Fellow-citizen, πολίτης.
Fellow-Greeks, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες.
Fellow-soldier, συστρατιώτης; *fellow-soldiers*, ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, with or without ὦ.
Fertile, ἄφθονος.
Few, ὀλίγοι.
Field, *take the* —, στρατεύομαι.
Fifteen, πεντεκαίδεκα.
Fifty, πεντήκοντα.
Fight, μάχη; μάχομαι; — *it out*, διαπολεμέω; *without fighting*, ἀμαχητί.
Fill, πίμπλημι.
Find, εὑρίσκω; — *out*, σκέπτομαι.
Fire, πῦρ; *set on* —, ἐνάπτω, ἐμπίμπρημι.
First, πρῶτος; πρῶτον.
Fish, ἰχθύς.
Fist, *with the* —, πύξ.
Fittest, ἄριστος.
Five, πέντε; — *hundred*, πεντακόσιοι.
Flanks, *on both* —, ἑκατέρωθεν.
Flee, φεύγω; ἀποφεύγω, involving the idea of escape.
Flesh, κρέας.
Flight, φυγή; *put to* —, εἰς φυγὴν τρέπω.
Flour, ἄλευρα.
Flourishing, εὐδαίμων.
Flow, ῥέω.
Foe, ἐχθρός.
Follow, ἀκολουθέω, ἕπομαι; *as follows*, or *the following*, some case of ὅδε; *in the* — *terms*, τοιάδε; *on the* — *day*, τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ; *in the* — *manner*, ὧδε, τόνδε τὸν τρόπον.
Folly, εὐήθεια.
Food, σῖτος.
Foot, πούς; *on* —, πεζῇ.
Foot-soldier, πεζός.
For, γάρ; περί, ἐπί, πρός.
Forage, χῖλός.
Force, δύναμις, στράτευμα; *the Greek* — τὸ Ἑλληνικόν; βιάζομαι; *be in* —, μένω.
Ford, διάβασις, πόρος.
Formerly, πρότερον.
Forsake, ἀπολείπω.
Fort, τεῖχος.
Fortified, ἐρυμνός.
Forty, τετταράκοντα.
Foundation, κρηπίς.
Four, τέτταρες; — *hundred*, τετρακόσιοι.
Fourth, τέταρτος.
Fox-skin, — *cap*, ἀλωπεκῆ.
Fragrant, εὐώδης.
Free, ἐλευθερόω.
Freedom, ἐλευθερίᾱ.
Freeze, πήγνῡμι.
Frequently, πολλάκις.
Friend, φίλος, ξένος.
Friendly, φίλιος, φίλος.
Frightened, *be* —, φοβέομαι.
From, ἐξ, ἀπό, παρά.
Fugitive, φυγάς.
Full, μεστός, πλήρης; *in* —, ἔκπλεως; *at* — *speed*, ἀνὰ κράτος; — *market*, ἀγορᾶ πλήθουσα.
Furnish, πορίζω, ἐκπορίζω.

G.

Garrison, φυλακή.
Gate, πύλη.
Gazelle, δορκάς.
General, στρατηγός; *be* —, στρατηγέω.
Get, γίγνομαι; τυγχάνω, *obtain*; — *together*, συνάγω, κτάομαι; — *possession*, λαμβάνω.
Gift, δῶρον; *make a* —, δίδωμι.
Girdle, ζώνη.
Give, δίδωμι, the general word; πορίζω, *furnish*; — *over*, παραδίδωμι; — *up*, παύομαι, *desist*; παραδίδωμι, ἀποδίδωμι, *restore*, *surrender*; — *a share*, μεταδίδωμι; — *way*, ἐκκλίνω.
Gladly, ἡδέως.
Go, εἶμι, ἔρχομαι; *be gone*, οἴχομαι; — *up*, ἀναβαίνω; — *away*, ἄπειμι; — *forward*, πρόειμι; — *through*, διαβαίνω; *let* —, ἀφίημι.
Goat, αἴξ.
God, θεός.
Goddess, θεά.
Gold, χρῦσίον; *of* —, χρύσεος.
Good, ἀγαθός.
Good-will, εὔνοια.
Grant, δίδωμι.
Grass, χόρτος.
Grateful, *feel* —, χάριν ἔχω.

Great, *μέγας*, of size; *πολύς*, of amount or number; *in — numbers*, *πολλοί*; *with — difficulty*, *πάνυ χαλεπῶς*.
Greatly, *μεγάλως*, *μέγα*.
Greece, Ἑλλάς.
Greek, *Ἕλλην*; Ἑλληνικός.
Grieve, *λῡπέω*.
Ground, — *arms*, *τίθεμαι τὰ ὅπλα*.
Groundless, *κενός*.
Guard, *φυλακή*, *φρουρός*, *φύλαξ*; — or *be on —*, *φυλάττω*.
Guest, or *guest-friend*, *ξένος*.
Guide, *ἡγεμών*.

H.

Half, *ἥμισυς*.
Halt, *ἀναπαύομαι*, in order to rest; *ἐφίσταμαι*, said of a commander; *καταλῡω*, *unyoke*; *ἵστημι*.
Hand, *χείρ*; *in the hands of*, *ἐπί*; *at —*, *ἐγγύς*; *be at —*, *πάρειμι*; — *over*, *παραδίδωμι*.
Happen, *τυγχάνω*, *γίγνομαι*.
Happy, *εὐδαίμων*.
Hard, *χαλεπός*; *be — pressed*, *πιέζομαι*.
Hardship, *undergo —*, *πονέω*.
Hare, *λαγώς*.
Harm, *do —*, *βλάπτω*, *κακῶς ποιέω*; *suffer —*, *κακῶς πάσχω*; *plot —*, *κακὸν βουλεύω*.
Harmost. *ἁρμοστής*.
Haste. *make —*, or *hasten*, *σπεύδω*.
Have. *ἔχω*, *εἰμί* with dat.
Hay, *κάρφη*.
Head, *κεφαλή*; *be* or *stand at the — of*, *προέστηκα*.
Headquarters, *θύραι*.
Hear, *ἀκούω*.
Heavy-armed, — *men* or *troops*, *ὁπλῖται*.
Height, *ὕψος*, *ἄκρον*.
Helmet, *κράνος*.
Help, *with the — of*, *σύν*.
Helper, *συνεργός*.
Hem, — *in*, *κυκλόω*.
Her, oblique cases of *αὐτή*.
Herald, *κῆρυξ*.
Here, *ἐνταῦθα*, *αὐτοῦ*, *αὐτόθι*, *δεῦρο*.
Hereon, *ἐκ τούτου*.
Hereupon, *ἐνταῦθα*, *ἐκ τούτου*.
Hermes, Ἑρμῆς.
Hide, *δέρμα*; *κρύπτω*.
High, *μακρός*.
Hill, *λόφος*, *μαστός*.
Him, oblique cases of *αὐτός*; *οὗ*, reflex.
Himself, *ἑαυτοῦ*, reflex.; *αὐτός*, intens.
Hinder, *κωλύω*; — *from*. *ἀποκωλύω*.
Hindrance, *τὸ κωλῦον*.
Hire, *μισθόομαι*.
His, often by the article; sometimes *αὐτοῦ*, *ἐκείνου*; — *own*, *ἑαυτοῦ*.
Hold, *ἔχω*.
Home, *at —*, *οἴκοι*; *for —* or *homeward*, *οἴκαδε*; *voyage —*, *ἀπόπλους*.
Honour. *τιμή*; *τιμάω*; *in —*, *τίμιος*.
Hope, *ἐλπίς*.
Hoplite, *ὁπλίτης*.
Horse, *ἵππος*; *on horseback*, *ἀπὸ ἵππου*.
Horseman, *ἱππεύς*.
Host, *στράτευμα*.
Hostile. *πολέμιος*.
House, *οἰκία*.
How, *πῶς*, *ὅπως*; — *many*, *πόσοι*, *ὁπόσοι*; — *large*, *ὅσος*, *ὁπόσος*.
Hundred, *ἑκατόν*.
Hunger, *λιμός*.
Hunt, *θηρεύω*.
Hurl, *ῥίπτω*, *ἵημι*.
Hurt, *βλάπτω*.

I.

I, *ἐγώ*, *ἔγωγε*.
Idleness, *in —*, *ἀργός*.
If, *εἰ*, *ἐάν*, *ἄν*, *ἤν*.
Ignorant, *ἀγνώμων*.
Ill-disposed, *κακόνους*.
Ill-treatment, *πάθος*.
Imitate, *μῑμέομαι*.
Immediately, *εὐθύς*.
Impassable, *ἄπορος*, *ἄβατος*.
Impose, *ἐπιτίθημι*.
In, *ἐν*, *εἰς*; — *the power of*, *ἐπί*; *be —*, *ἔνειμι*; — *order that*, *ἵνα*, *ὡς*, *ὅπως*.
Indicate, *διασημαίνω*.
Induce, — *to return*, *ἀποστρέφω*.
Inflict, *ἐπιτίθημι*; — *punishment*, *κολάζω*.
Inhabit, *οἰκέω*; *the inhabitants*, *οἱ ἐνοικοῦντες*.

Injure, βλάπτω.
Inquire, ἐρωτάω.
Inscribe, ἐπιγράφω.
Insist, κατατείνω.
Inspire, παρέχω.
Instead, — *of*, ἀντί.
Intend, ἐν νῷ ἔχω.
Intercept, ἀποκλείω.
Interpreter, ἑρμηνεύς.
Into, εἰς.
Intrust, ἐπιτρέπω, προΐεμαι.
Invade, or *make an invasion*, ἐμβάλλω.
Iron, *of* —, σιδήρεος.
Island, νῆσος.

J.

Jar, βῖκος.
Javelin, παλτόν; — *man*, ἀκοντιστής.
Join, συμμῑγνῡμι.
Journey, πορεῖα, ὁδός; πορεύομαι.
Judge, κρίνω; — *of a contest*, ἀγωνοθέτης.
Judgment, γνώμη.
Just, δίκαιος.
Justice, δικαιοσύνη.
Justly, δικαίως.

K.

Keep, — *safe*, διασῴζω; *kept*, sometimes the sign of the impf. tense.
Kill, κτείνω, ἀποκτείνω; *be killed*, ἀποθνῄσκω.
Kinds, *of all* —, παντοῖος.
King, βασιλεύς; *be* —, βασιλεύω.
Knee, γόνυ.
Know, γιγνώσκω, οἶδα.

L.

Lacedaemonian, Λακεδαιμόνιος.
Laden, μεστός.
Land, γῆ, χώρᾱ.
Large, μέγας, of extent; πολύς, of amount or number; *how* —, ὁπόσος.
Last, *at* —, τέλος.
Late, *come* —, ὀψίζω.
Laugh, — *at*, καταγελάω.
Laughter, *roar of* —, γέλως.
Lay, — *waste*, φθείρω; — *plans*, ἐπιβουλεύω.
Lead, μόλυβδος.
Lead, ἄγω, ἡγέομαι; — *into*, εἰσάγω.
Leader, ἡγεμών.
Leap, καταπηδάω.
Learn, or — *by inquiry*, πυνθάνομαι.
Least, *at* —, γέ.
Leathern-bag, ἀσκός, διφθέρα.
Leave, λείπω, ἐκλείπω; — *behind*, καταλείπω.
Left, εὐώνυμος, ἀριστερός.
Leisure, *be at* —, σχολάζω.
Length, *at* —, ἤδη.
Lest, μή.
Let, — *loose* or — *go*, ἀφίημι; — *approach*, προσΐημι
Letter, ἐπιστολή.
Level, ὁμαλής.
Levy, συλλογή.
Lie, κεῖμαι, of position; ψεύδω, *falsify*; — *outstretched* or *asleep*, κατάκειμαι; — *at anchor*, ὁρμέω.
Life, σῶμα.
Light-armed, — *soldier*, γυμνής.
Lightly, πρᾴως.
Like, παραπλήσιος; βούλομαι.
Line, *in even* —, ὁμαλῶς; *fall into battle* —, συντάττομαι.
Little, μῑκρός, of size or amount; ὀλίγος, of number.
Live, ζάω.
Living, βίος.
Lofty, ὑψηλός.
Long, μακρός, of space or time; πολύς, of time.
Loose, λύω.
Lose, στερέομαι; — *courage*, ἀθῡμέω.
Loss, *be at a* —, ἀπορέω.
Love, φιλέω.
Lycaonia, Λυκαονίᾱ.
Lydia, Λῡδίᾱ.

M.

Macrones, Μάκρωνες.
Maeander, Μαίανδρος.
Make, ποιέω; — *answer*, ἀποκρῑνομαι; — *war*, πολεμέω; — *an expedition*, στρατεύω; — *known*, μηνύω; *be made*, γίγνομαι.
Man, ἀνήρ, Lat. *vir*; ἄνθρωπος, Lat. *homō*; *old* —, γέρων; *young* —, νεᾱνίᾱς.
Manifest, φανερός, δῆλος.
Manner, τρόπος.

Many, see *Much.*
March, πορεία ; — *inland*, ἀνάβασις ; *day's* —, σταθμός ; ἐλαύνω, ἐξελαύνω, πορεύομαι ; — *on*, ἐξελαύνω.
Market-place, ἀγορά.
Marsyas, Μαρσύας.
Mascas, Μάσκας.
Means, *by* — *of*, ἀπό, διά.
Meat, κρέας.
Mede, Μῆδος.
Meet, συγγίγνομαι.
Meeting, ἐκκλησία.
Melt, τήκω.
Menon, Μένων.
Mention, λέγω.
Mercenary, ξενικός.
Messenger, ἄγγελος.
Midas, Μίδας.
Mid-day, μέσον ἡμέρας.
Middle, μέσος ; μέσον.
Midnight, μέσαι νύκτες.
Midst, μέσον.
Might, *with* — *and main*, κατὰ κράτος.
Milētus, Μίλητος ; *from* —, Μιλήσιος.
Mina, μνᾶ.
Miss, ἁμαρτάνω.
Mistrust, ἀπιστέω.
Mithridātes, Μιθριδάτης.
Moderation, *with* —, μετρίως.
Molest, λῡπέω.
Money, ἀργύριον, χρήματα.
Month, μήν, τριάκοντα ἡμέραι.
More, μᾶλλον.
Mother, μήτηρ.
Mount, ἀναβαίνω.
Mountain, ὄρος.
Much, πολύς ; πολύ.
Multitude, πλῆθος.
Muse, Μοῦσα.
Must, δεῖ, χρή, ἀνάγκη ἐστί ; often the verbal in *-τέος.*
My, ἐμός, sometimes ἐμοῦ or μοῦ ; *of mine*, ἐμός or ἐμοί.
Myriad, μυριάς.
Myself, ἐμαυτοῦ, reflex. ; αὐτός, intens.
Mysian, Μῡσός.

N.

Name, ὄνομα.
Narrow, στενός.
Near, παρά ; πλησίον, ἐγγύς.
Nearer, ἐγγύτερον.
Necessary, *it is* —, δεῖ.
Necessity, ἀνάγκη.
Need, δέομαι ; *there is* —, δεῖ.
Neglect, ἀμελέω.
Neighbouring, πλησίον.
Neither, — . . . *nor*, οὔτε . . . οὔτε, μήτε . . . μήτε.
Never, οὔποτε, μήποτε.
Nevertheless, ὅμως.
Next, *on the* — *day*, τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ.
Nicarchus, Νίκαρχος.
Night, νύξ ; *by* —, νύκτωρ.
Nine, ἐννέα.
Ninety, ἐνενήκοντα.
No, οὐδείς, μηδείς ; — *one* or *nobody*, οὐδείς, μηδείς ; *nothing*, οὐδέν, μηδέν.
Noble, καλός, ἀγαθός.
Noise, θόρυβος.
None, οὐδένες.
Nor, οὐδέ, μηδέ.
North, Βορέας.
Not, οὐ, μη ; — *yet*, οὔπω, μήπω ; — *even*, οὐδέ, μηδέ ; — *at all*, οὐδέν ; — *only . . . but also*, καί . . . καί.
Notice, *escape* — or *escape the* — *of*, λανθάνω.
Now, νῦν, of time ; ἤδη, *already* ; δή, inferential ; — *and then*, ἄλλοτε καὶ ἄλλοτε.
Numbers, *in great* —, πολλοί.

O.

O, ὦ.
Oath, ὅρκος.
Obey, πείθομαι.
Observe, νοέω.
Obtain, τυγχάνω.
Occupy, οἰκέω.
Offer, — *sacrifice*, θύομαι.
Offering, ἀνάθημα.
Often, πολλάκις.
Old, — *man*, γέρων.
On, ἐπί, ἐν ; — *account of*, διά, ἕνεκα ; — *horseback*, ἀπὸ ἵππου ; — *board*, ἐπί ; — *this*, ἐκ τούτου.
Once, ποτέ ; *at* —, εὐθύς.
One, εἷς, τις ; — *another*, ἀλλήλων.
Open, ἀνοίγω ; φανερός.
Opinion, γνώμη ; *be of the* —, κρῑ́νω.
Opponent, ἀντιστασιώτης.
Oppose, κωλύω.
Or, ἤ.

Order, κελεύω, *bid, command;* τάττω, *appoint, assign;* *pass the — along*, παραγγέλλω; — *arms*, τίθεμαι τὰ ὅπλα; *in good —*, εὐτάκτως; *in — that*, ἵνα, ὡς, ὅπως.
Orders, *give —*, παραγγέλλω, κελεύω.
Orontas, Ὀρόντᾶς.
Ostrich, στρουθὸς ἡ μεγάλη.
Other, ἄλλος.
Ought, χρή.
Our, often by the article; sometimes ἡμῶν.
Out, — *of sight*, ἀφανής; — *of the way*, ἐκποδών.
Outside, ἔξω.
Outstretched, *lie —*, κατάκειμαι.
Overcome, κρατέω.
Overpower, βιάζομαι.
Ox, βοῦς.

P.

Pack, — *up*, συσκευάζομαι.
Paean, *raise the —*, παιᾶνίζω.
Palace, βασίλεια.
Palisade, σκόλοπες.
Parasang, παρασάγγης.
Parent, γονεύς.
Park, παράδεισος.
Parysatis, Παρύσατις.
Pasion, Πᾶσίων.
Pass, — *along*, παραδίδωμι; — *by*, παρέρχομαι; — *the order along*, παραγγέλλω.
Pay, μισθός; τελέω, ἀποδίδωμι, μισθὸν ἀποδίδωμι; — *attention*, προσέχω τὸν νοῦν.
Peace, εἰρήνη.
Peloponnesian, Πελοποννήσιος.
Peltast, πελταστής.
Penalty, ζημίᾱ.
People, λεώς, ἄνθρωποι.
Perceive, αἰσθάνομαι.
Perhaps, ἴσως.
Peril, *be in —*, κινδῡνεύω.
Perish, ἀπόλλυμαι.
Perjure, — *oneself*, ἐπιορκέω.
Permit, ἐάω.
Persian, Περσικός; Πέρσης.
Person, σῶμα.
Persuade, πείθω.
Phalanx, φάλαγξ.
Phalīnus, Φαλῖνος.
Phrygia, Φρυγίᾱ.
Pisidian, Πῑσίδης.
Pity, οἰκτείρω.
Place, χωρίον; *take —*, γίγνομαι; *take one's —*, καθίσταμαι; *in this —*, ἐνταῦθα; *in — of*, ἀντί.
Plain, πεδίον; δῆλος.
Plan, βουλή; βουλεύω; — *harm*, κακὸν βουλεύω; *lay plans*, ἐπιβουλεύω.
Pleasing, χαρίεις.
Pleasure, *with —*, ἄσμενος.
Pledges, πιστά.
Plethrum, πλέθρον; *of a —*, πλεθριαῖος.
Plot, ἐπιβουλή; — *against*, ἐπιβουλεύω; — *harm* or *evil*, κακὸν βουλεύω.
Plunder, ἁρπάζω, ἀναρπάζω, διαρπάζω.
Point, — *out*, ἐπιδείκνῡμι; *at this —*, ἐνταῦθα.
Polished, ξεστός.
Populous, οἰκούμενος.
Portent, τέρας.
Position, *get into —*, συντάττομαι.
Possess, κέκτημαι.
Possession, *get —*, λαμβάνω.
Possible, *as . . . as —*, ὅτι or ὡς with the superlative.
Post, *take one's —*, τάττομαι.
Power, *in the — of*, ἐπί.
Praise, ἐπαινέω.
Pray, εὔχομαι.
Precious, τἵμιος.
Prefer, αἱρέομαι.
Present, δωρέομαι, as a gift; προβάλλομαι, *present arms;* *be —*, πάρειμι, παραγίγνομαι.
Press, — *hard*, πιέζω.
Pretext, πρόφασις.
Previous, or *previously*, πρόσθεν.
Princely, *in a — manner*, μεγαλοπρεπῶς.
Prize, ἆθλον.
Proceed, πορεύομαι, ἐξελαύνω.
Proclamation, *make —*, κηρῦττω.
Procure, — *supplies*, ἐπισῑτίζομαι.
Produce, φύω.
Promise, or *make a —*, ὑπισχνέομαι.
Proof, μαρτύριον.

Proper, *be* —, δεῖ; — *time*, καιρός.
Property, χρήματα.
Propitious, ἵλεως.
Prosperous, εὐδαίμων.
Protection, ἐπικούρημα.
Prove, — *to be*, γίγνομαι.
Provide, πορίζω, *furnish, supply*; παρασκευάζομαι, *get ready, procure*.
Province, ἀρχή.
Provision-money, σῖτηρεσιον.
Provisions, τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.
Proxenus, Πρόξενος.
Punish, κολάζω, *check*; τῑμωρέομαι, *take vengeance on*.
Punishment, *inflict* —, κολάζω, *check, punish*; δίκην ἐπιτίθημι, the more formal expression.
Purchase, ἀγοράζω.
Purpose, ἐπινοέω.
Pursue, διώκω.
Pursuit, δίωξις; *go in* —, διώκω.
Push, — *on*, τείνω.
Put, ἀνατίθημι; — *to flight*, εἰς φυγὴν τρέπω; — *to death*, θανάτῳ, ἀποκτείνω; — *to vote*, ἐπιψηφίζω; — *out of the way*, ἐκποδὼν ποιέομαι.
Pylae, Πύλαι.

Q.

Queen, βασίλεια.
Question, ἐρωτάω.
Quickly, ταχύ, ταχέως.

R.

Raft, σχεδῖα.
Raise, — *up*, ἀνίστημι; — *a shout*, ἀνακράζω; — *the war-cry*, ἀλαλάζω; — *the paean*, παιᾱνίζω.
Rampart, ἀναβολή.
Rank, τάξις.
Ransom, λύομαι.
Ravage, διαρπάζω, κακῶς ποιέω.
Ravine, χαράδρᾱ.
Reach, ἀφικνέομαι.
Ready, ἕτοιμος.
Rear, κύρᾱ.
Rear-guard, ὀπισθοφύλαξ.
Reason, *for what* —, τί.
Receive, λαμβάνω, *take* into one's hand, *take to oneself*; δέχομαι, *take* what is offered, *accept*.
Reconcile, καταλλάττω.
Reflect, ἐνθῡμέομαι.
Refrain, ἀπέχομαι.
Refuge, *take* —, καταφεύγω.
Refuse, οὔ φημι.
Regard, νομίζω.
Region, τόπος.
Remain, μένω.
Remit, ἀποπέμπω.
Report, ἀπαγγέλλω, ἐξαγγέλλω.
Repulse, ἀναστέλλω.
Rescue, σῴζω.
Resolutely, στερρῶς.
Resolve, βουλεύομαι.
Respect, *with* — *to*, πρός.
Rest, ἀναπαύομαι; *the* — *of*, ὁ λοιπός; *the* —, οἱ ἄλλοι.
Restore, κατάγω.
Restrain, κατέχω.
Retaliate, ἀντιποιέω.
Retreat, *or beat a* —, φεύγω.
Return, *induce to* —, ἀποστρεφω.
Review, ἐξέτασις; *hold a* —, ἐξέτασιν ποιεομαι.
Revile, λοιδορέω.
Revolt, ἀφίσταμαι.
Reward, μισθός.
Rich, *be* —, πλουτέω; *the* —, οἱ χρήματα ἔχοντες.
Rid, *be* — *of*, ἀπαλλάττομαι.
Ride, ἐλαύνω; — *past*, παρελαύνω; — *away*, ἀπελαύνω; — *up*, προσελαύνω; — *forward*, προελαύνω.
Right, δίκαιος, morally; δεξιός, of direction; *on the* —, ἐν δεξιᾷ; *give the hand*, δεξιὰν δίδωμι.
Rightly, δικαίως, ὀρθῶς.
Rise, ἀνίσταμαι.
River, ποταμός.
Road, ὁδός.
Rob, ἀφαιρέομαι.
Robbery, λῃστεία.
Robe, στολή.
Rout, τρέπω, εἰς φυγὴν τρέπω.
Ruler, ἄρχων.
Run, τρέχω, the general word; θέω, of bodies of men; — *down*, καταθέω; — *past*, παραθέω; — *forward*, προτρέχω.
Rush, ἵεμαι.

S.

Sack, διαρπάζω.
Sacred, ἱερός.
Sacrifice, θυσίᾱ ; θύω.
Safe, ἀσφαλής, the general word ; σῶος, *alive and safe ; keep* —, διασῴζω.
Safely, ἀσφαλῶς ; *arrive* —, σῴζομαι ; *bring* —, ἀποσῴζω.
Safety, σωτηρίᾱ, *deliverance ;* ἀσφάλεια, *personal safety ; in* —, ἀσφαλῶς ; *in the greatest* —, ἀσφαλέστατα.
Sail, — *away*, ἀποπλέω, ἐκπλέω ; — *round*, περιπλέω.
Sailor, ναύτης.
Same, ὁ αὐτός.
Sardis, Σάρδεις.
Satrap, σατράπης.
Satrapy, ἀρχή.
Satyr, Σάτυρος.
Save, σῴζω, διασῴζω.
Say, λέγω, φημί ; *said*, εἶπον.
Scatter, διασπείρω.
Scythe-bearing, δρεπανηφόρος.
Sea, θάλαττα.
Season, ὥρᾱ.
See, ὁράω ; — *to*, σκοπέω ; *be seen*, φαίνομαι.
Seem, or — *best*, δοκέω.
Seer, μάντις.
Seize, ἁρπάζω.
Self, αὐτός.
Sell, ἀποδίδομι.
Send, πέμπω, ἀποπέμπω ; — *for*, μεταπέμπομαι ; — *back, away*, or *home*, ἀποπέμπω, ἀποστέλλω ; — *with*, συμπέμπω.
Senseless, ἄφρων.
Separate, ἀποσπάω, διασπάω.
Servant, οἰκέτης.
Serve, παρατίθημι.
Service, *be of* —, ὠφελέω.
Serviceable, ἄξιος.
Set, παρατίθημι ; — *on fire*, ἐνάπτω, ἐμπίμπρημι ; — *forth* or *out*, ὁρμάομαι.
Seuthes, Σεύθης.
Seven, ἑπτά ; — *hundred*, ἑπτακόσιοι.
Severe, χαλεπός.
Severity, *with* —, ἰσχῡρῶς.
Shame, αἰσχύνη.
Share, *give a* —, μεταδίδωμι.
Sheep, πρόβατα.
Shield, ἀσπίς.
Ship, ναῦς.
Shoot, τοξεύω.
Short-sword, ἀκῑνάκης.
Should, δεῖ.
Shout, κραυγή ; βοάω ; *raise a* —, ἀνακράζω.
Show, φαίνω, *make to be seen ;* δείκνῡμι, ἐπιδείκνῡμι, *point out ;* διδάσκω, *inform, teach.*
Shut, — *off*, ἀποκλείω ; — *up*, κατακλείω.
Side, *by the* — *of*, παρά ; *on both sides*, ἀμφοτέρωθεν.
Sight, *out of* —, ἀφανής ; *in* —, καταφανής ; *in the* — *of*, πρός.
Signal, or *give the* —, σημαίνω.
Silver, ἀργύριον ; — or *of* —, ἀργύρεος.
Since, ἐπεί, ὁπότε.
Sincere, ἁπλόος.
Sink, — *down*, καταδῡ́ω.
Sit, κάθημαι.
Situated, *be* —, οἰκέομαι.
Six, ἕξ ; — *hundred*, ἑξακόσιοι ; — *thousand*, ἑξακισχίλιοι.
Slander, διαβάλλω.
Slaughter, κόπτω.
Slave, *be a* —, δουλεύω.
Slay, ἀποκτείνω ; *be slain*, ἀποθνῄσκω.
Sleep, ὕπνος ; καθεύδω.
Sling, σφενδόνη ; *use a* —, σφενδονάω ; *make a* —, σφενδόνην πλέκω.
Slinger, σφενδονήτης.
Slowly, σχολῇ, βραδέως.
Small, μῑκρός.
Snow, χιών.
So, οὕτως, of manner ; δή, inferential ; — *that*, or — *as to*, ὥστε ; *be* —, οὕτως ἔχω.
Socrates, Σωκράτης.
Soldier, στρατιώτης ; *light-armed* —, γυμνής.
Some, τις ; *somebody* or *something*, τις, τι.
Sometimes, ἐνίοτε.
Son, υἱός, παῖς.
Soon, ταχύ ; *just as* — *as*, ἐπειδὴ τάχιστα.
Sooner, πρόσθεν.

Sort, *what* —, ποῖος, οἷος; *of every* —, παντοδαπός; *of all sorts*, παντοῖος.
Sound, φθέγγομαι.
Source, πηγή.
Spartan, Σπαρτιάτης.
Speak, λέγω; — *the truth*, ἀληθεύω.
Spear, λόγχη, δόρυ.
Speed, *at full* —, ἀνὰ κράτος; *with all possible* —, ὡς τάχιστα.
Spring, κρήνη.
Square, πλαίσιον.
Stade, or *stadium*, στάδιον.
Stage, σταθμός.
Stand, ἵσταμαι, ἕστηκα; — *round*, περίσταμαι; — *up*, ἀνίσταμαι.
State, λέγω; πόλις.
Station, σταθμός.
Stay, μένω.
Steal, κλέπτω.
Stern, στυγνός.
Still, ἔτι.
Stone, λίθος; βάλλω.
Stop, παύω, ἀναπαύομαι; — *fighting*, καταλύω.
Straggle, σκεδάννυμαι.
Straightway, εὐθύς.
Stride, βῆμα.
Strike, παίω, κρούω.
Strongly, ἰσχῠρῶς.
Stronghold, χωρίον, χωρίον ἰσχῠρόν.
Struggle, ἀγών.
Success, *have* —, εὐτυχέω.
Successfully, καλῶς.
Suffer, πάσχω; — *harm*, κακῶς πάσχω; — *death*, ἀποθνῄσκω.
Summit, ἄκρον.
Summon, καλέω, *call*; συγκαλέω, *call together, assemble*; μεταπέμπομαι, *send for* with authority.
Sun, ἥλιος.
Superior, *be* —, περιγίγνομαι.
Supper-time, δορπηστός.
Supplies, ἀγαθά, σῖτος; *collect* or *procure* —, ἐπισῑτίζομαι.
Support, τρέφω, διατρέφω.
Surprise, καταλαμβάνω.
Surprising, θαυμαστός.
Surrender, παραδίδωμι.
Surround, περιέχω.
Suspect, ὑποπτεύω.
Suspicion, ὑποψίᾱ.
Sweet, ἡδύς.
Swiftly, ταχύ.
Sword, or *short* —, ἀκινάκης.
Syria, Συρίᾱ.

T.

Table, τράπεζα.
Table-companion, συντράπεζος.
Take, λαμβάνω; — *place*, γίγνομαι; — *the field* or — *part in an expedition*, στρατεύομαι; — *one's post*, τάττομαι; — *one's place*, καθίσταμαι; — *care of*, θεραπεύω; — *care of in return*, ἀντεπιμελέομαι; *be taken*, ἁλίσκομαι.
Talent, τάλαντον.
Tall, μακρός.
Tamos, Ταμώς.
Targeteer, πελταστής.
Taste, γεύομαι.
Teach, διδάσκω.
Teacher, διδάσκαλος.
Team, ζεῦγος.
Tell, Λέγω: *told*, εἶπον.
Temple, νεώς.
Ten, δέκα; — *thousand*, μύριοι.
Tender, ἁπαλός.
Tent, σκηνή.
Terms, *in the following* —, τοιάδε.
Terrible, φοβερός.
Terrify, φοβέω.
Territory, χώρᾱ.
Than, ἤ.
Thapsacus, Θάψακος.
That, ὅτι; ἵνα, ὡς, ὅπως; μή; *so* —, ὥστε.
The, ὁ, ἡ, τό.
Their, often by the article; sometimes αὐτῶν, ἐκείνων.
Them, oblique cases of αὐτός in plur.
Themselves, ἑαυτῶν, reflex.; αὐτοί, intens.; or by the middle voice.
Then, τότε, of time; δή, οὖν, inferential; ἔνθα, *thereupon*; *now and* —, ἄλλοτε καὶ ἄλλοτε.
Thence, ἐντεῦθεν.
There, ἐνταῦθα, ἐκεῖ; when merely expletive, it is not to be translated.
Therefore, οὖν.
Thereupon, ἐνταῦθα, ἐνταῦθα δή, ἔνθα.
Thessalian, Θετταλός.

They, generally omitted; occasionally *οὗτοι, ἐκεῖνοι.*
Thickly-grown, *δασύς.*
Thief, *κλώψ.*
Think, *νομίζω, believe; δοκέω, suppose;* sometimes *οἶμαι*, esp. when used parenthetically.
Third, *τρίτος.*
Thirteen, *τρισκαίδεκα.*
Thirty, *τριᾶκοντα.*
This, *οὗτος, ὅδε.*
Thousand, *χίλιοι; ten —, μύριοι.*
Thrace, *Θρᾴκη.*
Thracian, *Θρᾷξ.*
Three, *τρεῖς; — hundred, τριᾰκόσιοι; — thousand, τρισχίλιοι.*
Through, *διά.*
Throw, *βίπτω; — at, βάλλω.*
Thus, *οὕτως, ὧδε.*
Thymbrium, *Θύμβριον.*
Tigris, *Τίγρης.*
Timbers, *ξύλα.*
Time, *χρόνος*, the general word; *ὥρᾱ, season, hour; proper —, καιρός; — of full market, ἀγορᾶ πλήθουσα; at that —, τότε; each —, ἑκάστοτε; the third —, τὸ τρίτον.*
Tissaphernes, *Τισσαφέρνης.*
To, *εἰς, ἐπί, παρά, πρός, ὡς.*
Too, *καί.*
Touch, *ἅπτομαι.*
Tower, *πύργος.*
Town, *ἄστυ.*
Track, *ἴχνος.*
Traduce, *διαβάλλω.*
Traitor, *προδότης.*
Treason, *προδοσίᾱ.*
Treasure, *θησαυρός.*
Tree, *δένδρον.*
Trench, *τάφρος.*
Trial, *κρίσις.*
Tribute, *δασμός.*
Trireme, *τριήρης.*
Troops, *στρατιά, δύναμις, στράτευμα; heavy-armed —, ὁπλῖται; light-armed —, γυμνῆτες.*
Trouble, *πρᾶγματα; ταράττω.*
Truce, *σπονδαί.*
True, *ἀληθής.*
Truly, *δή.*
Trumpet, *σάλπιγξ.*
Trumpeter, *σαλπιγκτής.*
Trust, *πιστεύω.*
Truth, *speak the —, ἀληθεύω.*
Try, *πειράομαι.*
Tumult, *τάραχος.*
Turn, *στρέφω, τρέπω.*
Twenty, *εἴκοσι.*
Twice, *δίς.*
Two, *δύο; — thousand, δισχίλιοι.*
Tyrant, *τύραννος.*

U.

Undergo, — *hardship, πονέω.*
Underneath, *be —, ὕπειμι.*
Uninhabited, *ἔρημος.*
Unjust, *ἄδικος.*
Unless = *if not.*
Unprotected, *ψιλός.*
Until, *μέχρι, ἕστε, ἕως, πρίν.*
Up, — *country, ἄνω.*
Upon, *ἐπί; be —, ἔπειμι.*
Uproar, *θόρυβος, κραυγή.*
Urge, *κελεύω, bid; παρακελεύομαι, exhort, encourage.*
Urgent, *be —, σπεύδω.*
Use, or *make — of, χράομαι.*
Useful, *χρήσιμος.*

V.

Valiant, *ἄλκιμος.*
Valour, *ἀρετή.*
Van, *στόμα.*
Venison, *κρέα ἐλάφεια.*
Very, *πάνυ.*
Vicious, *πονηρός.*
Victorious, *be —, νῑκάω.*
Vigorously, *ἰσχῡρῶς.*
Village, *κώμη; — chief, κωμάρχης.*
Vine, *ἄμπελος.*
Virtue, *ἀρετή.*
Visible, *φανερός, καταφανής.*
Voice, *φωνή.*
Voyage, *πλόος; — home, ἀπόπλοος.*

W.

Wagon, *ἅμαξα; wagon-road, ἁμαξιτός.*
Wait, *περιμένω; — for, ὑπομένω.*
Wall, *τεῖχος; build a —, τειχίζω.*
War, *πόλεμος; — or make — or carry on —, πολεμέω.*
War-cry, *raise the —, ἀλαλάζω.*

Waste, διατρίβω; *lay* —, φθείρω.
Watchword, σύνθημα.
Water, ὕδωρ.
Way, ὁδός; *give* —, ἐκκλίνω; *in this* —, οὕτως; *out of the* —, ἐκποδών.
Wear, ἔχω.
Weep, κλάω, *wail*; δακρύω, *shed tears*.
Welcome, ἀσπάζομαι.
Well, εὖ; ἀλλά; *do* — *by*, εὖ ποιέω; *it is* —, καλῶς ἔχει.
Well-disposed, εὔνοος; *be* —, εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχω.
Wet, βρέχω; *get* —, βρέχομαι.
What, τίς, ὅς, ὅστις; — *sort*, ποῖος.
Whatever, ὅστις, ὅσος, ὁπόσον.
When, ἐπεί, ἐπειδή, ἡνίκα, ὅτε.
Whence, πόθεν.
Whenever, ὁπότε, ἐπειδή.
Where, ἔνθα, ὅπῃ, οὗ.
Wherefore, ὥστε.
Wherever, ὅπου.
Whether, εἰ.
Which, ὅς.
Whichever, ὁπότερος.
Whip, μάστιξ.
White, *in* — *cuirass*, λευκοθώρᾱξ.
Whither, ποῖ.
Who, τίς, ὅς.
Whole, ὅλος.
Whosoever, ὅς.
Why, τί.
Width, εὖρος.
Wife, γυνή.
Wild, ἄγριος; — *animal*, θηρίον.
Willing, *be* —, ἐθέλω, βούλομαι.
Willingly, ἑκών.
Wind, ἄνεμος.
Wine, οἶνος.
Wing, κέρας, of an army; πτέρυξ, of a bird; *on the right* —, ἐπὶ τῷ δεξιῷ.
Wise, σοφός.
Wish, βούλομαι, with the idea of will; ἐθέλω, *be willing*, *be ready*, but the distinction between the two words often breaks down.
With, σύν, μετά, παρά, ἀπό, ἔχων; — *the help of*, σύν; *those* —, οἱ ἀμφί.
Withdraw, ἀποσπάω, ἀναχωρέω, ἀποχωρέω, ἀπαλλάττομαι.
Within, ἔνδον; — *the night*, τῆς νυκτός.
Wonder, θαυμάζω.
Wonderful, θαυμαστός.
Word, λόγος; *bring back* —, ἀπαγγέλλω.
Work, *earn by hard* —, πονέω.
Worsted, *be* —, ἡττάομαι.
Worthy, ἄξιος.
Wound, τιτρώσκω.
Write, γράφω.
Wrong, or *be in the* —, ἀδικέω, or ἄδικος γίγνομαι; *wrong-doer*, ὁ ἀδικῶν.

X.

Xenias, Ξενίᾱς.
Xenophon, Ξενοφῶν.
Xerxes, Ξέρξης.

Y.

Year, ἔτος.
Yet, *not* —, οὔπω, μήπω.
Yield, ὑφίεμαι.
You, σύ.
Young, νέος; — *man*, νεᾱνίᾱς.
Your, ὑμέτερος; often by the article or σοῦ.
Yourself, σεαυτοῦ, reflex.; αὐτός, intens.

INDEXES.

I. GREEK INDEX.

II. ENGLISH INDEX.

In these Indexes the references are generally made to *sections*. Occasional references to *pages* are preceded by the letter p. The superior numeral there refers to the note at the bottom of the page.

For the principal parts and peculiarities in formation of important verbs, and in general for words not found in the Greek Index, consult the references under the same verbs and words in the preceding Greek-English Vocabulary.

INDEXES.

I. GREEK INDEX.

Α 5; 7–11; α ᾱ augmented 76; α lengthened to ᾱ 233, to η or ᾱ 254 b, 481, to η 492, to ᾱ or η 521 b; in contraction 241; changed to ο 419 a; for ε 505.
-α- tense-suffix 519.
α- or **αν-** privative 424 a (p. 51[4]); copulative 424 b.
ᾳ improp. diphthong 12–14.
ἀγαθός decl. 144; comp. 469, 1.
ἄγω pf. mid. system 684.
ἀγών decl. 286.
-αζω denominative vbs. in 417.
αι diphthong 12, 14; short in accentuation 28; augmented p. 77[1].
-αινω denominative vbs. in 417.
αἴξ decl. 214.
αἰσχρός comp. 448.
ἀληθής decl. 341.
ἄν, see Greek-Eng. Vocab.
ἄν for **ἐάν** p. 90[1].
αν- privative, see **α-** privative.
ἄνθρωπος decl. 79.
-αν°/ε- tense-suffix 625, 626.
ἁπλόος decl. 191.
-ασ- stems of cons.-decl. in 316.
ἄστυ decl. 358.
αυ diphthong 12–14.
-αω denominative vbs. in 417. See *Contraction*.

Β 5; 7; 112, 114; euphonic changes, see *Labials;* aspirated in second pf. system 522.
βαίνω 646, 1; second pf. of **-μι** form 660, 1.
βασιλεύς decl. 388; used without art. p. 144[3].
βούλει or **βούλεσθε** w. interr. subjv. 785.

Γ 5; 7; 112–114; euphonic changes, see *Palatals;* aspirated in second pf. system 522.
γαστήρ 289.
γγμ changed to **γμ** 550 a.
γέρων decl. 230.
γέφῡρα decl. 70.
γῆ decl. 178.
γίγνομαι 606, 1; copulative vb. 711 a, 715; w. gen. of source p. 188[1]; w. dat. 770.

Δ 5; 7; 112, 114; euphonic changes, see *Linguals.*
δαίμων decl. 286.
δείκνῡμι 650, 651, 692; w. part. 839.
δέομαι w. gen. 749; w. gen. and acc. p. 130[2].
δῆλος decl. 144; **δῆλός εἰμι** w. part. 839 b.
δηλόω inflexion, ind. 245, subjv. 283, opt. 310, imv. 335, inf. 347, part. 366, 377.
δίδωμι 639, 647, 2, 690, 694.
διῶρυξ decl. 214.
δοκεῖ generally used per. 837.
δόξα decl. 70.
δύω, see **ἔδῡν**.
δῶρον decl. 79.

Ε 5; 7–11; augmented 76, p. 83[3]; as variable vowel 153; lengthened to **ει** 233, 481; in contraction 241; lengthened to η 254 b; changed to **α** 505, 552 a, 588 a; changed to **ο** 521 a; added to theme 605.

-ε- tense-suffix 587.
ἑ pron. 511, 515.
ἕδῡν 650, 696.
ει diphthong 12–14; augment of p. 77[1]; as augment p. 83[8].
-ειας, -ειε, -ειαν in aor. opt. act. 297 c.
εἴθε, εἰ γάρ in wishes 787 a.
εἰμί pres. and impf. ind. 183–185, 188, fut. mid. and pres. subjv. 269, opt. 298, imv. 323, inf. 346, part. 365, complete 700, 664, 2; as copula 711 a, 715; w. pred. gen. 744; w. dat. of possessor 770.
εἶμι 701, 664, 3; pres. as fut. p. 274[4].
ἑκών decl. 262.
ἐλπίς decl. 230.
-εν inf. ending 345 a.
-ε°/ε- tense-suffix 473.
-ες- syncopated stems in 289–291.
-εσ- stems of cons.-decl. in 316, 340, 406, 408, 411.
-εστερος, -εστατος 447.
ἐστί accented ἔστι 188; w. ν- movable p. 42[1]; omitted p. 224[2].
ευ diphthong 12–14; augment 76, p. 232[4].
εὐδαίμων decl. 338; comp. 447 a.
εὔνοος comp. 447 b; w. dat. 772.
-ευω denominative vbs. in 417.
-εω denominative vbs. in 417; contraction of dissyllabic vbs. in p. 107[2]. See *Contraction*.
ἕως acc. of 171.

Z 5; 7; 112, 115.
ζάω contract forms of p. 139[3].
-ζω forms of some verbs in w. themes ending in δ 104, 125, 206, 227.

H 5; 7–11; in contraction 241; as variable vowel in subjv. 268 a, 276 b; for α and ε, see A and E.
η improp. diphthong 12–14.
ἡδίων decl. 449.
ἡδύς decl. 382; comp. 448.
ἡμι- inseparable prefix 424 d.
-ησ°/ε- tense-suffix 588.
ηυ diphthong 12–14; augmented form of ευ 76, but see p. 232[4].

Θ 5; 7; 112, 114; euphonic changes, see *Linguals*.
θάλαττα decl. 70.
-θε- tense-suffix 226 a, 252 f.
-θησ°/ε- tense-suffix 226 b, 252 f.

I 5; 7–11; subscript 12; augmented 76; euphonic changes of in vbs. of fourth class 464, 465, 475–478; lengthened to ῑ 233, 477, 481; in contraction 241; lengthened to ει 492, to οι 521 c; in reduplication of theme in pres. 606, 632, 642.
-ι- stems in of cons.-decl. 358.
-ι- mood-suffix in opt. 297 a, 307 b, 310 a, 635 h.
-ιε- and -ιη- as mood-suffix in opt. 297 a, 307 b, 310 a, 635 h.
-ιζω denominative vbs. in 417; fut. of p. 169[2].
ἵνα final particle w. subjv. and opt. 278, 302.
-ι°/ε- tense-suffix 464, 465, 475–478.
-ισκ°/ε- tense-suffix 642.
ἵστημι 645, 647, 6, 691, 695, 659, 697.
-ιστος sup. in 448, 449.
ἰχθῦς decl. 358.
-ῑων, -ιστος comp. and sup. in 448.

K 5; 7; 112, 114; euphonic changes, see *Palatals*; aspirated in second pf. system 522.
-κα- tense-suffix 160, 166, 252 d.
κάνεον decl. 180.
κλώψ decl. 214.
κρέας decl. 316.
κώμη decl. 51.

Λ 5; 7; 112, 113; euphonic changes 475.

λαγώς acc. of 171.
λείπω 609, 1; second aor. system 680; second pf. system 681; pf. mid. system 683.
λιμήν decl. 286.
λόγος decl. 79.
λύω inflexion, pres. ind. act. 65, impf. ind. act. 74, fut. and first aor. ind act. 102, first pf. and plpf. ind. act. 118, analysis of primary tenses of in ind. 151–160, of secondary tenses of 163–166, pres. impf. and fut. ind. mid. 200, first aor., pf., plpf., fut. pf. ind. mid. 204, ind. pass. 226, subjv. act. 268, subjv. mid. and pass. 276, opt. act. 297, opt. mid. and pass. 307, imv. act. 323, imv. mid. and pass. 332, inf. 345, part. act. 363, **λύων** decl. 262, **λύσᾱς, λελυκώς,** decl. 364, part. mid. and pass. 375, **λυθείς** decl. 376, pres. system 672, fut. system 673, first aor. system, 674, first pf. system 675, pf. mid. system 676, first pass. system 677, principal parts 442.

Μ 5; 7; 112, 113.
-μενο- part. ending 375 b.
μέσος w. art. p. 141[5].
μή, *not*, w. subjv. in exhortations 271; w. subjv. in prot. 273, in final clauses 278, after verbs of fearing 280; w. opt. in prot. 300, in final clauses 302, after verbs of fearing 304; w. imv. and subjv. in prohibitions 327; w. subjv. in questions of appeal 785; w. opt. in wishes 787 a; w. fut. ind. in obj. clause 792; in *all* protases 797 a; in *all* cond. rel. clauses 812 b; w. inf. in consecutive clauses 824 a; irregularly w. inf. and part. in indir. discourse 840. See also Greek-Eng. Vocab.
μήν decl. 286.
-μι pers.-ending in first pers. sing. 156; in opt. 297 b; verbs in 632, 633.
μῑκρός decl. 144; comp. 469, 5.
μμ changed to *μμ* 548 a.
μνᾶ decl. 178.

Ν 5; 7; 112, 113; movable p. 42[1]; can stand at end of a word 232; euphonic changes before labials and palatals p. 45[9], p. 160[2], 506; before another liquid p. 167[3]; before *σ* 287 (p. 594); *ντ*, *νδ*, *νθ* dropped before *σ* 233; dropped in some liquid themes 506, 562; changed to *σ* in liquid themes before *-μαι*, *-μεθα*, and *-μενος* 562; in pres. tense-suffix of vbs. of fifth class 623–627.
-ν- adj. stems in of cons.-decl. 338.
-ναι inf. ending 345 a.
νδ dropped before *σ* 233.
νεᾱνίᾱς decl. 107.
-νε°/ε- tense-suffix 627.
νῆσος decl. 79.
νθ dropped before *σ* 233.
-ν°/ε- tense-suffix 624.
ντ dropped before *σ* 233.
-ντ- adj. stems in 259–261; part. ending 364 a.
-νυ- tense-suffix 651.
νύξ decl. 230.

Ξ 5; 7; 112, 115; can stand at end of a word 232.

Ο 5; 7–11; augmented 76; as variable vowel 153; lengthened to *ου* 233; in contraction 241; lengthened to *ω* 254 b; at end of first part of compound words 419 a c d; for *ε* in second pf. system 521 a.
ὁ, ἡ, τό, see *Article*.
ὁδός decl. 79.
-°/ε- tense-suffix 595, 252 a, 440, 492, 490.

οι diphthong 12–14; short in accentuation 28; augmented p. 77[1]; for ει in second pf. system 521 c.
οἷ pron. 511, 515.
ὀλίγος comp. 469, 6.
ὄνομα decl. 236.
ὁπότε causal 781.
ὅπως as final particle 278, 302; in obj. clauses w. fut. ind. 792.
ὄρνῖς decl. 230.
ὄρος decl. 316.
-οτ- part. ending 364 a.
ὅτε causal 781.
ὅτι causal 781; in indirect quotations 830.
ου diphthong 12–14; by lengthening ο 233.
οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ, *not*, p. 13[2]; accented p. 142[3]; in all apodoses 273, 300, 797 a; in neg. clauses after verbs of fearing 280, 304; in causal clauses 781; in rel. clauses of result 819; w. ind. in consecutive clauses 824 a; regularly w. inf. and part. in indir. discourse 840. See also Greek-Eng. Vocab.
οὐ μή w. fut. ind. or subjv. as strong fut. 786.
-οω denominative vbs. in 417. See *Contraction*.

Π 5; 7; 112, 114; euphonic changes, see *Labials;* aspirated in second pf. system 522.
παῖς, voc. παῖ, gen. dual and pl. παίδοιν, παίδων, p. 73[2].
πείθω pf. mid. system 685.
πεῖρα decl. 70.
πελταστής decl. 107.
περί not elided p. 84[3].
Πέρσης decl. 107.
πῆχυς decl. 358.
πλήρης decl. 341.
πόλις decl. 358.
πολίτης decl. 107.
πρό not elided p. 251[1].

P 5; 7; 112, 113; can stand at end of a word 232; initial ρ doubled p. 166[2].
ῥᾴων, ῥᾷστος 469, 8.
ῥήτωρ decl. 286.

Σ 5; 7; 112, 113; after mutes 215, 231; can stand at end of a word 232; ν before σ 287 (p. 59[2]); ρ and a lingual before σ 233; σ dropped in stems in -σ- before all case-endings 316 b; dropped also in the verbal pers.-endings -σαι and -σο 200 b, 204 a, 276 d, 307 c, 332 a; added to some vowel themes 441 a b, 534; rejected in first aor. system of liquid verbs 481; dropped in ἔχω 491 c; dropped between two consonants 549; linguals changed to σ before μ or another lingual 551.
-σα- tense-suffix 165, 252 c, 481.
-σαι, -σο in second pers. sing. 200 b, 204 a, 276 d, 307 c, 332 a.
Σεύθης decl. 107.
-σθαι inf. ending 345 a.
σκεπτέον w. obj. clause 792.
-σκ°/ε- tense-suffix 642.
-σ°/ε- tense-suffix 159, 252 b, 204 c.
στέλλω pf. mid. system 686; second pass. system 688.
στρατιά decl. 51.
Σωκράτης decl. 316.
σῶμα decl. 236.

T 5; 7; 112, 114; euphonic changes, see *Linguals.*
-τατος sup. in 446.
τελέω pf. mid. system 682.
-τεος, -τεον, verbal adjs. in 581–584
τέρας decl. 236.
-τερος comp. in 446.
τίθημι 636, 647, 1, 689, 693.
τῑμάω inflexion, ind. 245, subjv. 283, opt. 310, imv. 335, inf. 347, part. 366, 367, 377.

τῑμή decl. 51.
-τ°/ε- tense-suffix 460.
τρόπον adv. acc. 734.

Υ 5; 7–11; augmented 76; lengthened to ῡ 233, 477, 481; dropped 478 a, 492 a; lengthened to ευ 492.
-υ- stems in of cons.-decl. 358, 382.
υι diphthong 12–14.
υἱός omitted after art. p. 316[7].
-ῡνω denominative vbs. in 417.

Φ 5; 7; 112, 114; euphonic changes, see *Labials*.
φαίνω fut. system 678; first aor. system 679; pf. mid. system 687.
φιλέω inflexion, ind. 245, subjv. 283, opt. 310, imv. 335, inf. 347, part. 366, 367, 377.
φίλιος decl. 144.
φρέαρ decl. 236.
φύλαξ decl. 214.

Χ 5; 7; 112, 114; euphonic changes, see *Palatals*.
Χάλυψ decl. 214.
χαρίεις decl. 260.
χάρις decl. 230.
χρύσεος decl. 191.
χώρᾱ decl. 51.

Ψ 5; 7; 112, 115; can stand at end of a word 232.

Ω 5; 7–11; in contraction 241; by lengthening ο 254 b; as variable vowel in subjv. 268 a, 276 b.
-ω- in Attic second decl. 169.
-ω verbs in 634.
ῳ improp. diphthong 12–14; by augmenting οι- p. 77[1].
-ω/η- as variable vowel in subjv. 268 a, 276 b.
-ως substs. and adjs. in 169–171; in gen. sing. 358, 388.

II. ENGLISH INDEX.

Abundance adjs. exp. 415.

Abuse vbs. sig. w. dat. 768 a.

Accent 23–39; recessive 32; of proclitics 37, 186 c; of enclitics 38, 186, 187; in contraction 180 b c, 191 a c, 242, 243; of substs. and adjs. 44, 45, 52, 146, 170 a, 216, 338 c; of verbs 62, 185, 188, p. 837, 297 d, 345 c, 364 c, 376 b, 490 a, 519 a.

Accusative case 42, 43; sing. and pl. of cons.-decl. 213, 2, 4, 5; contracted acc. and nom. pl. alike in cons.-decl. 341 a, 358 a, 382 b, 449. Syntax: 95–97; 350; 354; 355; p. 216[2]; 731 (p. 106); 732 (p. 122[1]); 733 (p. 115[8]); 734 (p. 70[8]); 735 (p. 63[2]); 736 (p. 194[4]); 737 (p. 100[2], p. 180[1]); 738 (p. 94[2]); 739 (p. 90[8]).

Accuse vbs. sig. w. gen. 755.

Acknowledge vbs. sig. w. part. 839 b.

Acquit vbs. sig. w. gen. 755.

Action suffixes denoting 405.

Active voice 58.

Acute accent 23, 27, 29–31, 33; of oxytone changed to grave 34.

Adjectives inflexion 87, 144–147, 191, 258–262, 338–341, 382, 385; formation 411–416; comparison 445–449, 469; verbal in -τος and -τεος 581–584; attrib. and pred. 710 (56 Rem.); w. apparent force of adv. p. 308[5]; agreement with substs. 88 b, 717; used as substs. 718; w. dat. 772, 773; verbal w. gen. 760 (p. 21[1], p. 91[2], p. 104[11], p. 126[2], p. 126[3]); w. inf. 850.

Admire vbs. sig. w. gen. 756.

Advantage dat. of 769 (p. 25[4]).

Adverbial acc. 734 (p. 70[8]).

Adverbs used attrib. p. 23[1]; formed from adjs. 484; comparison 484 c; numeral 496; w. gen. 761 (p. 28[1], p. 91[2]); w. dat. 772, 773.

Advise vbs. sig. w. dat. 768 a.

Affection, vbs. exp. w. gen. 756.

Affinity, of words 131–137 431–434.

Agent gen. of 223, dat. of 224; substs. denoting 404; w. verbals in -τεος and -τεον 583, 584.

Agreement of verb w. subj. 714, 90, p. 232[7]; of pred. w. subj. 715; of adj. *etc.* w. subst. 88 b, 717.

Aim at vbs. sig. w. gen. 746.

Alphabet 5.

Anger vbs. exp. w. gen. 756; w. dat. 768 a.

Antecedent, see *Relative;* def. and indef. 812 a.

Antepenult 19.

Aorist 60, 61, see λύω; first aor. system 252 c, 436; of mute verbs 457–459; of liquid verbs 481; second aor. system 437, 438, 489, 490; in -μι verbs 632, 635; first pass. system 252 f, 574–578; second pass. system 587, 688. Syntax: ind. 101, dependent moods 265–267, 355, part. 372, 860 a; aor. *tense* unchanged in indir. discourse 354, 828, 830–832, 839, 845; iterative aor. 805.

Apodosis 272; neg. οὐ 797 a (273, 300); various forms of 814.

Apostrophe (in elision) 21.

Appear vbs. sig. w. part. 839 b.

Appoint vbs. sig. w. two accs. 739 (p. 90[8]).
Apposition 716 (p. 25[3]).
Article definite declined 53, 88; proclitic in some forms 88 a; w. prop. names p. 23[2]; w. dems. 174, 539 end; omitted p. 144[3]; in possessive sense 531 d (p. 23[3]); agreement w. substs. 717 (p. 10[3]); position w. attrib. adj. 719, w. pred. adj. 720; w. inf. 852, 853.
Ashamed vbs. sig. w. part. 859 a.
Ask vbs. sig. w. two accs. 737 (p. 100[2]).
Aspiration transfer of p. 162[1]; of final mute of theme in second pf. 522.
Assimilation, see *Relative*.
Assist vbs. sig. w. dat. 768 a.
Association words of w. dat. 773 (p. 83[10]).
Attain vbs. sig. w. gen. 746.
Attic second decl. 169–171; fut. p. 169[2]; reduplication p. 209[1].
Attributive prepositional phrases and advs. p. 23[1]; adj. 710 (56 Rem.); position of art. w. 719; gen. 743; partic. 857.
Augment 75, 76, 128, p. 77[1], p. 83[8], p. 232[4].

Barytone 36.
Begin vbs. sig. w. gen. 746; w. part. 859 a.
Belonging to adjs. sig. 412.
Benefit vbs. sig. w. dat. 768 a.
Black-face letter p. 40[5], p. 155[1].
Blame vbs. exp. w. dat. 768 a.
Borrowed words p. 40[5], 432.
Breathings 15–17.

Call vbs. sig. w. two accs. 739 (p. 90[8]).
Cardinal numerals 496, 497.
Care for vbs. sig. w. gen. 747.
Cases 42, 43; case-endings 47, 212, 213. Syntax, see *Nominative, Genitive, etc.*
Causal sents. w. ind. 781.
Cause exp. by gen. 756; by dat. 775 (p. 141[6], p. 221[1]); by part. 379; by rel. clause 820.
Cease vbs. sig. w. gen. 753; w. part. 859 a.
Choose vbs. sig. w. two accs. 739.
Circumflex accent 23–25, 29, 31, 35
Circumstantial part. 379, 857.
Claim vbs. sig. w. gen. 746.
Classes of verbs 440 a, 594, 655; I. 440, 595–600, 603–606; II. 492, 493, 609, 610; III. 460, 461, 613; IV. 464–466, 474–478, 616–620; V. 623–627, 651; VI. 642; VII. 647; VIII. 655, 656.
Clothe vbs. sig. w. two accs. 737.
Cognate mutes 114 a; words 433; acc. 732 (p. 122[1]).
Commands, etc., 271, 325, 327.
Comparative degree 445–449; w. gen. 451, p. 179[1], 763; w. dat. 776 (p. 171[5]).
Comparison of adjs. 445–449; irregular 469; of advs. 484 c.
Complex sent. 844; dependent verbs of in indir. quot. 845.
Compound verbs 127, p. 84[8], 422; augment and reduplication of 128, p. 251[1]; accent of p. 83[7]; w. gen. 757 (p. 107[4]); w. dat. 774 (p. 31[3], p. 118[8]); compound words 136, 396, 418–430; forms 207, 276 e, 307 d; indirect compounds 422; compound negs. p. 202[2].
Conceal vbs. sig. w. two accs. 737 (p. 180[1]).
Concession exp. by part. 379.
Conclusion, see *Apodosis*.
Condemn vbs. sig. w. gen. 755.
Conditional sents., first class 797, 803, 804, second 798, third 273, fourth 300; summary of 814. See *Apodosis, Protasis.* Cond. rel.

clauses 812 b c; four classes of 813, 814.
Consonants classification of 112–115; final 232; see the various letters in the Greek-Eng. Index. Consonant-Declension, see *Declension*.
Continue vbs. sig. w. part. 859 a.
Contraction rules of 241–243; in vowel-decl. 177–180, 191; in cons.-decl. 316, 341, 358, 382, 388, 449; in verbs in -αω, -εω, -οω, ind. 241–246, subjv. 283, opt. 310, imv. 335, inf. 347, part. 366, 367.
Convict vbs. sig. w. gen. 755.
Co-ordinate mutes 114 a.
Copulative verbs 711 a.
Corōnis p. 55[4].
Crasis p. 55[4].
Crime exp. by gen. 755 (p. 110[3]).

Dative case 42, 43. Syntax: 94, 97; 224; 583, 584; 767 (p. 252); 768 (p. 84[1]); 769 (p. 254); 770 (p. 212); 771 (p. 188[6]); 772; 773 (p. 115[4], p. 83[10]); 774 (p. 31[3], p. 118[8]); 775 (p. 141[6], p. 221[1], p. 255, p. 126[7], p. 47[5]); 776 (p. 171[5]); 777 (p. 45[4]); 853.
Declension 46; substs. of first or A-decl. 48–52, 69, 70, 107–109, of second or O-decl. 79–82, 169–171; contract substs. of vowel-decl. 177–180, adjs. of vowel decl. 87, 144–147, 191; substs. and adjs. of third or cons.-decl. 210–218, 230–238, 258–262, 286–292, 316–318, 338–342, 358–360, 382, 383, 388–390, 449: irregular adjs. 385; participles 262, 363 a, 364, 367, 375 a, 376, 636 d, 639 d, 645 f, 650 d, 659 b. See *Article*, *Pronouns*, *Numerals*.
Defend vbs. sig. w. dat. 768 a.
Degree of difference dat. of 776 (p. 171[5]).
Demand vbs. sig. w. two accs. 737 (p. 100[2]).
Demonstrative prons. 172–174, 539–542.
Denominatives 397; substs. 404, 408, 409; adjs. 412; verbs. 417.
Dependent clauses in indir. discourse 845, 846.
Deponent verbs 255.
Deprive vbs. sig. w. two accs. 737.
Desire vbs. sig. w. gen. 747.
Determinative compounds 429.
Diaeresis mark of (¨) p. 105[12].
Differ vbs. sig. w. gen. 753.
Digamma p. 161[2].
Diminutives suffix of 409.
Diphthongs 12–14; in contraction 241 c j; augment of 76, p. 77[1], p. 232[4].
Direct obj. 709, 731.
Directions for reading 140, 148; for translating into Greek 149.
Disadvantage dat. of 769 (p. 254).
Displeased vbs. sig. to be w. part. 859 a.
Do vbs. sig. w. two accs. 738 (p. 94[2]).
Doric fut. p. 174[1].
Double consonants 112, 115.
Dual 41, 65 a.

Elision 21, 22; accent of elided word 39; in compound verbs 127, but περί and πρό exceptions p. 84[8], p. 251[1].
Emotions vbs. exp. w. gen. 756.
Enclitics 38, 185–187, 348 a, 512, 513, 556.
Endings personal 154–156, 163, 199, 322, 331; of inf. 345 a; of part. 364 a, 375 b; in -μι verbs 632, 635; case-endings of cons.-decl. 212.
Endure vbs. sig. w. part. 859 a.
Envy vbs. exp. w. gen. 756; w. dat. 768 a.
Exhort vbs. sig. w. dat. 768 a.
Exhortations 271, 325.
Extent acc. of 735 (p. 63[2]).

Fail vbs. sig. w. gen. 753.
Fear vbs. exp. w. obj. clause 280, 304, 793.
Fill vbs. sig. w. acc. and gen. 749 (p. 265[3]).
Final consonants 232; clauses 278, 302, 791.
First Aorist system, see *Aorist*.
First Passive system 252 f., 574–578.
First Perfect system 252 d, 500–507.
Fitness adjs. denoting 413.
Forget vbs. sig. w. gen. 747 (p. 251[5]); w. part. 839 b.
Formation of words 396–430; of substs. 402–410; of adjs. 411–416; of advs. 484.
Friendliness vbs. exp. w. dat. 768 a.
Fulness adjs. exp. 415.
Future 60, 61, see λύω; fut. system 252 b; of mute verbs 457–459; of liquid verbs 473; first pass. system 252 f, 574–578; second pass. system 588, 688; fut. of some verbs in -εω p. 159[3]; Attic fut. p. 169[2]; Doric fut. p. 174[1]; fut. mid. for act. p. 159[2]. Syntax: 100; fut. ind. in obj. clauses w. ὅπως 792; in prot. p. 375[1]; in rel. clauses exp. purpose 818; w. οὐ μή 786.
Future Perfect 60, 61, 203, see λύω; pf. mid. system 252 e, 535.

Gender 83–86, p. 18[1]; A-decl. fems. in -ᾱ, -η, or -α 50, 69, mascs. in -ᾱς or -ης, 109; O-decl. 82; cons.-decl. 217, 234, 237, 292, 317, 359, 389.
General suppositions 802; forms of 803, 804.
Genitive case 42, 43. Syntax: 93, 96, 97; 743, 1 (p. 132[4]); 743, 2; 743, 3 (p. 126[6]; 743, 4; 743, 5 (p. 115[9]); 743, 6 (p. 138[1], 453); 744 (p. 132[4], p. 138[1]); 745; 746 (p. 243[8]); 747 (p. 63[3], p. 251[5]); 748 (p. 83[3]); 749 (p. 107[1], p. 265[3]); 753 (p. 60[2], p. 107[9]); 754 (p. 90[7]); 755 (p. 110[3]); 756; 757 (p. 107[4]); 758; 759 (p. 74[1]); 760 (p. 21[1], p. 91[2], p. 104[11], p. 126[2], p. 126[3]); 761; 762; 763 (p. 179[1], 451); 853.
Grave accent 23–26; for acute in oxytones 34.
Group of words how related 132.

Hatred vbs. exp. w. gen. 756.
Hear vbs. sig. w. gen. 747; w. part. 839 b.
Hit vbs. sig. w. gen. 746.
Hostility vbs. exp. w. dat. 768 a.

Ignorant of vbs. sig. to be w. part. 839 b.
Imperative 59, 321–323, 330–332, 335, 635 c d j. Uses: 325, 327.
Imperfect 60, 61, see λύω; in pres. system 252 a, see *Classes;* in -μι verbs 632, 635. See *Contraction*. Syntax: 73; in unreal conditions 798; with ἄν, iterative 805.
Impersonal verbs w. inf. as subj. nom. 352; verbal in -τεον 584.
Inceptive or sixth class of verbs 642.
Indefinite pron. τις 556, 557, 724; rel. ὅστις 565.
Indicative 59; tenses of 60, 61; see λύω, *Contraction*, *-MI Verbs*, and *Present*, *Imperfect*, *Future*, *etc.* Uses: in causal sents. 781; w. οὐ μή (fut.) 786; in obj. clauses w. ὅπως (fut.) 792; in prot.: pres. and past tenses 797, fut. p. 375[1], secondary tenses in unreal suppositions 798, in cond. rel. clauses 813, 814, in temporal clauses 821–823; in apod.: 797, 798, 803, 804, 273, 814; iterative tenses w. ἄν 805; w. rel. to express purpose (fut.) 818; w. rel. to express result 819; w. rel. to express cause 820; w. ὥστε 824; in indir. discourse 830, 832, 845.

Indirect compounds (verbs) 422; reflexives 515; obj. of verb 709, 767, 768 (p. 252, p. 841); discourse 827, 828, 830–832, 836–840, 844–846.
Inferiority vbs. exp. w. gen. 754 (p. 907).
Infinitive 59, 345, 347, 635 e. Uses: 350, 352, 354, 355, 823, 824 (p. 2107), 836–838, 850 (p. 2191), 851–853; w. μέλλω p. 3201.
Instrument dat. of 775 (p. 475); suffix denoting 407.
Intensive pron. 510, 511.
Interrogative prons. 555, 557–559; subjv. 785.
Intransitive verbs 709 a; cognate obj. of 732; w. dat. of indir. obj. 768.
Iota or fourth class of verbs 464–466, 474–478, 616–620; subscript 12.
Irregular adjs. 384, 385; comparison 469.
Iterative tenses w. ἄν 805.

Judicial action vbs. exp. w. gen. 755 (p. 1103).

Know vbs. sig. w. part. 839 b.

Labials 114; euphonic changes 215 a, 457, 460 a, 548, 575; aspirated in second pf. 522. See ν.
Lead vbs. sig. w. gen. 748 (p. 833).
Learn vbs. sig. w. part. 839 b.
Likeness dat. of 773 (p. 1154).
Linguals 114; euphonic changes 231, 233, 459, 465, 502, 551, 575.
Liquids 113; ν before p. 1673; before ι of tense-suffix -ι°/ε- 475–477. Liquid verbs 254, 439, 472–477, 481, 500, 504–507, 521, 562, 577, 578, 587, 588.

Make vbs. sig. w. two accs. 739 (p. 906).
Manner dat. of 775 (p. 255, p. 1267); w. comp. 776 (p. 1715); exp. by part. 879.
Material adjs. denoting 414; gen. of 743. 4.
Means exp. by part. 879; suffix denoting 407; dat. of 775 (p. 475).
Measure gen. of 743, 5 (p. 1158).
-MI Verbs 632–636, 639, 645, 650, 659, 689–697; irregular 664, 667, 698–704.
Middle voice 196–199; mutes 114.
Miss vbs. sig. w. gen. 746.
Mixed or eighth class of verbs 655. 656.
Moods, see *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, etc.
Mutes 112, 114; euphonic changes, see *Labials*, *Linguals*, *Palatals*. Mute verbs 254, 439, 456–461, 464–466, 492, 493, 500, 502, 503, 519, 521, 522, 547–552, 575, 576, 587, 588.

Name vbs. sig. w. two accs. 739 (p. 908).
Nasals 113; nasal or fifth class of verbs 623–627, 651.
Negatives compound p. 2022. See οὐ and μή.
Neglect vbs. sig. w. gen. 747.
Neuter pl. w. sing. verb 90. See *Gender*.
Nominative case 42, 43; sing. of cons.-decl. 213, 1, 5. Syntax: 713 (p. 1053), 714, 729; inf. as 352.
Noun defined 44 a.
Number 41; agreement in 714 (p. 1058), 717 (p. 1063).
Numerals 496, 497.

Obey vbs. sig. w. dat. 768 a.
Object 709, dir. 731 (p. 1066), indir. 767, 768 (p. 252, p. 841); clauses w. μή and subjv. or opt. 280, 304, 793; w. ὅπως and fut ind. 792.

Objective compounds 428; gen. 743, 3 (p. 126[6]), 760.
Omission of subj. of inf. 350; of subj. nom. 713 a; of prot. 808 end; of antec. of rel. 812 a.
Opposition words of w. dat. 773 (p. 83[10]).
Optative 59, 295–297, 307, 310, 635 h. Uses: 300, 302, 304, 787, 804, 813, 814, 822, 823, 830–832, 845, 846.
Order of words 56 Rem., 68 Rem., p. 200[3], 719 (p. 70[2]), 720.
Ordinal numerals 496.
Oxytone 33.

Palatals 114; euphonic changes 215 b, 458, 464, 550, 575; aspirated in second pf. 522. See *ν*.
Paroxytone 33.
Participles 59, 363, 364, 366, 367, 375, 376, 635 f. Uses: 369, 371, 372, 379, 717, 718, 836, 839 (p. 250[5]), 840, 857–860 (p. 250[3], p. 265[1]).
Particular suppositions 802.
Partitive gen. 743, 6 (p. 138[1]).
Passive voice 221–225; second pass. system 437, 438, 587, 588.
Penult 19.
Perceive vbs. sig. w. gen. 747; w. part. 839 b.
Perfect 60, 61, see λύω; first pf. system 252 d, 500–507; second pf. system 437, 438, 519–522, 659–661; pf. mid. system, 252 e, 534, 547–552, 562. Syntax: 116, in dependent moods 265–267.
Perispomenon 35.
Persevere vbs. sig. w. part. 859 a.
Person 57; agreement of verb in 714, of rel. in 568.
Personal prons. 510–515; position of gen. of p. 194[1]; substituted for possessive 531 c. See *Endings*.
Pertaining to adjs. exp. 412, 413.
Pity vbs. exp. w. gen. 756.
Place suffix exp. 410; advs. of w. gen. 761.
Please vbs. sig. w. dat. 768 a.
Pleased vbs. sig. to be w. part. 859 a.
Plenty verbs of w. gen. 749 (p. 107[1]).
Pluperfect 60, 61, 117, see λύω; first pf. system 252 d; 500–507; second pf. system 519–522, 659–661; pf. mid. system 252 e, 534, 547–552, 562.
Plural 41; neut. pl. w. sing. verb 90.
Possessive compounds 430; prons. 531, p. 200[5]; gen. 743, 1, 744 a (p. 132[4]); dat. 770 (p. 21[2]).
Postpositives p. 15[2], p. 43[3].
Predicate 708; adj. 710 (56 Rem.); subst. 711; agreement of 715; apparent adv. force of p. 308[5]; position of 720; pred. acc. w. obj. acc. 739 (p. 90[8]); gen. 744 (p. 132[4], p. 138[1]).
Prepositions 93–98; in compos. w. gen. 757 (p. 107[4]); w. dat. 774 (p. 31[3], p. 118[8]); w. inf. and art. 852.
Present 60, 61, see λύω; pres. system 252 a; pres. stem, see *Classes;* in *-μι* verbs, 632, 635; reduplication 606, 632, 642. See *Contraction*. Syntax: 64, in dependent moods 265–267, 355, part. 372.
Price gen. of 758.
Primary tenses 61.
Primitives 397; prim. substs. 402, 404, 405, 406; adjs. 411.
Principal Parts of verbs 253, 603; of deponents 255 a b.
Proclitics 37, 186 c.
Prohibitions w. μή 327.
Pronouns, see *Personal, Intensive, Reflexive, etc.*
Pronunciation 5, p. 4[1], 14.
Properispomenon 35.

Prosecute vbs. sig. w. gen. 755.
Protasis 272; neg. of μή 797 a (273, 300); various forms of 814; exp. by part., adv., *etc.* 808 end.
Prove vbs. sig. w. part. 839 b.
Punctuation marks of 40.
Purpose exp. by final clause 278, 302, 791; by part. 379; by rel. w. fut. ind. 818; by inf. 851.

Quality substs. exp. 408.
Questions dir. and indir. 558, 570, 827, 828, 830, 832; of appeal w. subjv. 785, 831.

Reading the art of 138–140, 142; directions for 140, 148.
Reciprocal pron. 529, 530.
Reduplication 119–123, 128, p. 209[1], p. 235[4]; of theme in pres. stem 606, 632, 642.
Reflexive prons. 526–528, p. 200[3]; indir. reflexives 515, 528.
Regular verbs 596.
Relative prons. 565–571, 725; rel. clauses 818–820; cond. rel. clauses 812–814.
Release vbs. sig. w. gen. 753.
Remember vbs. sig. w. gen. 747 (p. 251[5]); w. part. 839 b.
Remind vbs. sig. w. two accs. 737.
Remove vbs. sig. w. gen. 753.
Repent vbs. sig. w. part. 859 a.
Reproach vbs. exp. w. dat. 768 a.
Respect dat. of p. 126[7].
Restrain vbs. sig. w. gen. 753.
Result substs. denoting 406; exp. by rel. cl. 819; by ὥστε w. inf. or ind. 824 (p. 210[7]).
Revenge vbs. exp. w. gen. 756.
Root 135–137; changes of 399, 400.
Rough breathing 15, 16; mutes 114, 120, 332 b, p. 263[9].
Rule vbs. sig. w. gen. 748 (p. 83[3]).

Satisfy vbs. sig. w. dat. 768 a.
Second aor., pf., *etc.* 438, 489; second tense systems, see *Aorist*, *Passive*, *Perfect*.
Secondary tenses 61.
See vbs. sig. w. part. 839 b.
Semivowels 112, 113.
Separation gen. of 753 (p. 60[2], p. 107[9]).
Serve vbs. sig. w. dat. 768 a.
Share vbs. sig. w. gen. 745.
Show vbs. sig. w. part. 839 b.
Sibilant 113.
Simple words 396.
Singular 41; sing. verb w. neut. pl. subj. 90.
Smooth breathing 15, 16; mutes 114.
Sound-changes 401.
Space extent of w. acc. 735.
Specification acc. of 733.
Stem 47, 134, 135. See *Tense-stems*.
Strong-vowel or second class of verbs 492, 493, 609, 610.
Subject 708; of finite verb 713 (p. 10[5]); omitted 713 a; of inf. 350; neut. pl. w. sing. verb 90; several subjs. w. one verb p. 232[7].
Subjective gen. 743, 2.
Subjunctive 59, 265–268, 276, 283, 635 g. Uses: 271, 273, 278, 280, 327, 785, 786, 791, 793, 803, 813, 814, 822, 823, 831, 845, 846.
Substantives formation of 402–410; w. inf. 850.
Suffix of opt. mood 297 a, 307 b, 310 a, 635 h; in nouns 398, 401–416. See *Tense-Suffixes*.
Superiority vbs. exp. w. gen. 754 (p. 90[7]).
Superlative degree 445–448; w. gen. 453, 743 a.
Supplementary part. 857, 859, 860.
Suppositions particular and general 802. See *Conditional*.
Surpass vbs. sig. w. gen. 754 (p. 90[7]).
Swearing particles of w. acc. 736 (p. 194[4]).

Syllabic, see *Augment*.
Syllables 18–20.
Syncopated stems in -ερ- 289–291.
Syntax defined 707.
Systems, see *Tense-Systems*.

Take hold of vbs. sig. w. gen. 746.
Taste vbs. sig. w. gen. 747.
Tau or third class of verbs 460, 461, 613.
Teach vbs. sig. w. two accs. 737.
Temporal sents. 821–823. See *Augment*.
Tense-Stems 152, 252. See *Tense-Systems*.
Tense-Suffixes 152, 252, 490, 519, 587.
Tense-Systems 252, 436, 438; pres. system 252 a, see *Classes;* fut. 252 b, 457, 473; first aor. 252 c, 457, 481; second aor. 490; first pf. 252 d, 500–507; second pf. 519–522; pf. mid. 252 e, 534, 535, 547–552, 562; first pass. 252 f, 574–578; second pass. 587, 588.
Tenses 60, 61, see *Present*, *Imperfect*, *etc.*
Theme of verb, 63, 151; vowel of modified 254 a b, 442, 476, 477, 481, 492, 503, 505, 507, 521, 535, 552, 576, 588 a, 635 i j, 642.
Theme or seventh class of verbs 647.
Think vbs. sig. w. two accs. 739.
Threats vbs. exp. w. dat. 768 a.
Time exp. by part. 379; acc. of 735; gen. of 759 (p. 74[1]); dat. of 777 (p. 45[4]).
Touch vbs. sig. w. gen. 746 (p. 243[8]).
Transitive verbs, 709 a; obj. of in acc. 731 (p. 10[6]).
Trial of vbs. sig. make w. gen. 746.
Trust vbs. sig. w. dat. 768 a.

Ultima 19.
Unlikeness words of w. dat. 773 (p. 115[4]).

Value gen. of 758.
Variable vowel 153; long in subjv. 268 a, 276 b; omitted in -μι verbs 659. See *Tense-Suffixes* and *Classes*.
Variable-Vowel or first class of verbs 440, 595–600, 603–606.
Verbals in -τος and -τεος 581–584; verbal adjs. w. gen. 760; substs. w. dat. 772.
Verbs principal parts 253, 255 a; defective 253 a, 596; kinds of 254; deponent 255; regular 596; in -μι and -ω 633, 634. See *Classes* and *-MI Verbs*.
Verb theme, see *Theme*.
Vocabulary how to be acquired 137, 434.
Vocative case 42, 43; sing of cons.-decl. 213, 3, 5. Syntax: 730.
Voice 58, 196–199, 221–225.
Vowels 7–11; contraction of 241 a–f. See the various letters in the Greek-Eng. Index.
Vowel declension 81, 87, 144–147, 177–180, 191; verbs 254, 441, 442, 478, 534. See *Contraction*.

Want vbs. of w. gen. 749 (p. 107[1]).
Weary vbs. sig. to be w. part. 859 a.
Whole gen. of (partitive) 743, 6.
Wishes exp. by opt. 787.
Wonder vbs. exp. w. gen. 756.
Word-Grouping 132–137, 431–434.
Words borrowed and cognate, 432, 433.

Yield vbs. sig. w. gen. 753.

GREEK TEXT-BOOKS.

Goodwin's Greek Grammar. *Revision of 1892.*

By WILLIAM W. GOODWIN, Ph.D., Eliot Professor of Greek Literature in Harvard College. Revised and Enlarged Edition. 12mo. Half morocco. xxxvi + 451 pages. Mailing price, $1.65; for introd., $1.50.

FOR thirteen years the second edition stood unchallenged as the best elementary Greek Grammar in the English language. Nevertheless it has been possible to improve it.

1. The relative degrees of prominence that should be given to the various aspects of grammar have been carefully considered of late years, and the new edition of Goodwin will be found in accord with the soundest ideas on this subject.

2. Changes have been freely made where improvement could be effected. For instance, a great part of the section on the verb has been remodeled and rewritten.

3. Particular attention has been paid to improvements in the Syntax, and the chief increase has been made in this department.

4. A radical and marked improvement has been made in the numbering of sections.

This is offered as the best Greek Grammar for preparatory schools and colleges that reasonably can be demanded in the present state of our knowledge and experience.

It should be borne in mind that Goodwin's Greek Grammar is entirely complete. It does not require the student to get the author's MOODS AND TENSES, as it contains as much on these subjects as any elementary Greek Grammar does or should.

No difficulty will be experienced in using the new edition of Goodwin's Grammar with texts that refer to the former edition. A complete table of parallel references is given at the beginning of the new edition.

The work is so favorably and universally known that it is not deemed necessary to print any commendations. A few figures however may be found of interest. In the year 1893, according to the best reports attainable, the Grammar stood as follows in four representative states.

Massachusetts	171	Schools using Goodwin.	21	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]
New York	233	"	"	51	"	"
Illinois	60	"	"	17	"	"
Georgia	57	"	"	8	"	"

New Anabasis.

First Four Books. Revised by Professor W. W. Goodwin, author of Goodwin's Greek Grammar, and Professor John Williams White, author of Greek Lessons, The Beginner's Greek Book, etc. With the Illustrated Vocabulary of Professors White & Morgan. 12mo. Half leather. With map and illustrations. liii + 274 pages. Mailing price, $1.65; for introduction, $1.50.

SOME points of the new edition are: The thorough revision of the text; the large Porson type; summaries of the contents inserted in the page; an introduction of 43 pages, containing all needed information about history and antiquities.

The notes have been made on the conviction that the first Greek book read by a student must be used in part as a basis for drill in the ordinary construction of syntax, and that it is only by systematic study of syntax at the outset that a student can prepare himself to read Greek afterwards without constantly stumbling over common forms of syntax. The grammatical information is given chiefly by references to the grammars, but seldom without some hint as to the nature of the construction.

This book, made up by the collaboration of three eminent scholars and specialists, can be most confidently recommended as able and thorough in scholarship, skillful in adaptation to the end in view, and free from all features that are merely "taking" and without real value.

S. Waterhouse, *Professor of Greek, Washington University, St. Louis, Mo.:* For clearness of explanation, excellence in lexicon, relevancy of notes, and elegance of typography, the Anabasis is worthy of high praise. There is no better edition for the use of secondary schools.

O. D. Robinson, *Principal High School, Albany, N.Y.:* It seems to leave nothing to be expected in the way of excellency even if it could be desired.

Martin L. D'Ooge, *Professor of Greek, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, Mich.:* It furnishes every proper appliance to the beginner for reading Greek.

Chas. C. Ramsay, *Principal High School, Fall River, Mass.:* I am delighted with it. The notes and vocabulary are unequaled.

J. Irving Manatt, *Professor of Greek, Brown University, Providence, R.I.:* It lacks nothing, and ought to leave room for nothing on the same ground in our schools.

E. G. Warner, *Instructor in Latin, Polytechnic Institute, Brooklyn, N.Y.:* It not only gives satisfaction, but positive pleasure.

The Beginner's Greek Book.

By JOHN WILLIAMS WHITE, Ph.D., Professor of Greek in Harvard University, and author of *First Lessons in Greek*, etc. 12mo. Half leather. xv + 428 + 70 pages. By mail, $1.60; for introduction, $1.50.

THE Beginner's Greek Book aims to give the pupil only the forms, constructions, and vocabulary which will be of practical use to him in reading.

The book is complete in itself, not requiring reference to any grammar. It presents, in carefully graded lessons, the usual forms and ordinary constructions of the language, its general vocabulary, and selections for reading. The lessons present the facts of grammar simply and briefly, and furnish, with the necessary special vocabularies, exercises for practice both in reading and in writing Greek. The selections for reading are sufficient to meet all the demands of the first year's study. The book is in two Divisions :

I. Lessons 1-100, a First Book in Greek, complete in itself.

II. Lessons 101-139, a Greek Reading Book and Elementary Syntax.

C. F. Smith, *Prof. of Greek, University of Wisconsin:* A very careful examination of the book leads me to believe that it will be found the best, and in the end the shortest road yet offered by an American text-book as an introduction to the thorough study of the most perfect of all languages. I firmly believe that this work must be the beginner's Greek book for at least the next decade or score of years, and that its general use in the schools of the country will give a tremendous impulse to the study of Greek.

F. H. Ellis, *formerly Instructor in Greek, Wesleyan Acad., Wilbraham, Mass.:* It is in use at our Academy and is giving complete satisfaction.

M. L. D'Ooge, *Prof. of Greek, University of Michigan:* I find it admirably fitted to accomplish the end for which it was made. It serves at once as a grammar, a reader, and a composition book for the first year's study. If thoroughly studied it cannot fail to give the student a sufficient acquaintance with the forms, the vocabulary, and the syntax of Greek, to enable him to go on to the reading of the Anabasis and the more systematic study of the language with success.

C. S. Crosman, *Head Master Haverford College Grammar School, Penn.:* I think it one of the finest text-books ever published.

William G. Manly, *Prof. of Greek in the Missouri State University:* I regard it as the best book yet published for beginners in Greek.

J. B. Sewall, *Principal of Thayer Academy, South Braintree, Mass.:* It is simply admirable. I do not see how it could be improved.

White's First Lessons in Greek.

Prepared to accompany Goodwin's Greek Grammar, and designed as an Introduction either to his Greek Reader or to his *Selections from Xenophon and Herodotus*, or to the *Anabasis* of Xenophon. By JOHN WILLIAMS WHITE, Ph.D., Professor of Greek in Harvard University. 12mo. Half-morocco. x + 286 pages. Mailing Price, $1.30; Introduction, $1.20.

A SERIES of eighty lessons, with progressive Greek-English and English-Greek Exercises, *taken mainly from the first four books of Xenophon's Anabasis*. The Exercises consist wholly of complete sentences, followed by a series of Additional Exercises on Forms, and complete Vocabularies. These lessons are carefully graded, and do not follow the order of arrangement of the Grammar, but begin the study of the verb with the second lesson, and then pursue it alternately with that of the remaining parts of speech. The references are to the new edition of Goodwin.

Alexander Kerr, *Prof. of Greek, University of Wisconsin:* The best book for beginners which I have ever examined.

E. H. Wilson, *Principal Wilson School for Boys, Norwalk, Conn.:* It is the best book for beginners in Greek I have ever used.

Companion of Parallel References to Hadley and Allen's Greek Grammar.

Designed to accompany the second edition of *A Series of First Lessons in Greek*. By JOHN WILLIAMS WHITE, Ph.D. iv + 45 pages. This pamphlet accompanies all copies of *White's First Lessons in Greek* free of charge, when so ordered, and thoroughly adapts the *First Lessons in Greek* to use with Hadley & Allen's Grammar. Exact parallels have been found to almost all the references in the *Lessons*, and the new references are more than simple parallels: they are made to present the particular point or subject *fully and completely*.

Leighton's New Greek Lessons.

With references to Hadley's Greek Grammar as well as to Goodwin's New Greek Grammar. Intended as an Introduction to Xenophon's *Anabasis* or to Goodwin's Greek Reader. By R. F. LEIGHTON, Ph.D. (Lips.), late Principal of the Fall River High School, Mass. 12mo. Half-morocco. 283 pages. Mailing price, $1.30; for introduction, $1.20.

ABOUT seventy easy and well-graded lessons, both Greek and English, introduce the pupil to the first book of Xenophon's *Anabasis*, from which the Exercises and Vocabularies are mainly selected. The amount of matter to be translated into Greek is sufficient to prepare a student for most American colleges.

Anabasis Dictionary.

An illustrated Dictionary to Xenophon's *Anabasis*, with Groups of words etymologically related. By JOHN WILLIAMS WHITE, Professor of Greek, and MORRIS H. MORGAN, Assistant Professor of Greek and Latin, in Harvard University. 12mo. Cloth. viii + 290 pages. Mailing price, $1.35; for introduction, $1.25. Also bound with Goodwin and White's *Anabasis*. By mail, $1.65; for introduction, $1.50.

THIS is a new collection and examination of all the words in the *Anabasis* itself. It contains all words found in any of the principal editions now in use, with every meaning which each word has in the *Anabasis*, and with full references to the passages in which they occur.

Greek-English Word-List.

Containing about 977 of the most common Greek Words. By ROBERT BAIRD, Professor of Greek, Northwestern University. 12mo. Cloth. 43 pages. Mailing price, 35 cents; for introduction, 30 cents.

THE lack of a vocabulary is the greatest obstacle to the reading of Greek and the enjoyment of Greek literature. This little manual is designed to help the student master this difficulty.

LATIN AND GREEK SCHOOL CLASSICS.

See also the Announcements.

Under the general editorial supervision of WILLIAM C. COLLAR, Head-Master of the Roxbury Latin School, and JOHN TETLOW, Head-Master of the Girls' High and Latin Schools, Boston.

For the Latin books of this Series, see page 47.

The Gate to the Anabasis.

With Colloquia, Notes and Vocabulary. By CLARENCE W. GLEASON, Master in the Roxbury Latin School, Boston. 16mo. Cloth. iv + 107 pages. Mailing price, 45 cents; for introduction, 40 cents.

THIS book is intended to do for beginners in Greek what the Gate to Cæsar has done for beginners in Latin.

Odyssey, Book VI.

Edited by CHARLES W. BAIN, Professor of Greek, University School, Petersburg, Va. 16mo. Cloth. pages. Mailing price, cents; for introduction, cents.

THIS edition is intended to meet the wants of pupils just beginning Homer. The notes are copious, and all passages likely to present any difficulty are fully explained.

The Beginner's Greek Composition.

Based mainly upon Xenophon's Anabasis, Book I. By WILLIAM C. COLLAR, Head-Master of Roxbury Latin School, and M. GRANT DANIELL, Principal of Chauncy-Hall School. Sq. 16mo. Cloth. viii + 201 pages. Illustrated. Mailing price, 95 cents; for introduction, 90 cents.

THIS book is designed to offer a complete preparation for admission to college. It contains eighty-five exercises for oral and written translation based on the first book of the Anabasis, with notes and numerous comparisons of Greek and Latin idioms and constructions. Following these are several miscellaneous passages of continuous English for translation into Greek, and certain Harvard admission papers suitably annotated.

W. S. Tyler, *Emeritus Professor of Greek, Amherst College*: The plan is a good one and it is executed with wisdom and care.

Edward B. Clapp, *Prof. of Greek, University of California*: It is the best book for the purpose which we have.

George D. Lord, *Prof. of Greek, Dartmouth College*: Its method is sound. Its clear and compact treatment make it markedly practical.

Edward North, *Prof. of Greek, Hamilton College*: A good example of recent advance in the teaching of Greek and Latin.

Syntax of the Moods and Tenses of the Greek Verb.

Rewritten and Enlarged. By WILLIAM WATSON GOODWIN, Eliot Professor in Greek Literature, Harvard University. 8vo. Cloth. xxxii + 464 pages. Mailing price, $2.15; for introduction, $2.00.

A MOST careful revision and a judicious enlargement of the previous edition. Full use has been made of all contributions to the discussion of the subjects here treated, as well as of the author's own further investigations and maturer judgments. The work is presented as something indispensable to all students and teachers of Greek.

Goodwin's Greek Reader.

Edited by Professor WILLIAM WATSON GOODWIN, of Harvard University. 12mo. Half morocco. 384 pages. Mailing price, $1.65; for introduction, $1.50.

CONSISTING of Selections from Xenophon, Plato, Herodotus, and Thucydides,

Seymour's School Iliad.

With Introduction, Commentary, and Illustrated Vocabulary, by THOMAS D. SEYMOUR, Professor of Greek in Yale College.
Books I.–III. Square 12mo. Half-leather. 371 pages. Mailing price, $1.35; for introduction, $1.25.
Books I.–VI. 478 pages. Mailing price, $1.75; for introduction, $1.60.

THIS is believed to be without exception the ideal Iliad for school use. The introduction, which contains forty-five pages, presents, in a concise but systematic form, the most important facts regarding Homeric life, the Homeric poem, Homeric style, syntax, dialect, and verse. The text is printed in the large and clear type that has distinguished the College Series of Greek Authors. The commentary has been adapted to the wants of beginners in Homer. The notes are copious for the first three books. They are less copious for Books IV. to VI., but the commentary on Book VI. is fuller than that on Books IV. and V. One finds numberless evidences that the editor has done his work not only in a careful and in a painstaking and scholarly way, but with personal pleasure and with sympathetic regard for the difficulties of beginners. The vocabulary described below contains more than twenty wood-cuts, most of which are new in this country.

A. H. Buck, *Professor of Greek, Boston University:* A positive and valuable help to an easy and adequate preparation for college work. A notable contribution to the cause of classical learning.

Charles Forster Smith, *Professor of Greek, University of Wisconsin:* Universally conceded to be the best school edition of any part of the Iliad that has yet been put on the American market.

Homeric Vocabulary.

A Concise Vocabulary to the First Six Books of Homer's Iliad. By Professor T. D. SEYMOUR of Yale College. Square 12mo. Cloth. x + 105 pages. Mailing price, 80 cents; for introduction, 75 cents.

THIS Vocabulary has not been compiled from other dictionaries, but has been made from the poem itself. The maker has endeavored to give nothing but what is important for the accurate and appreciative reading of the Iliad, and yet to show the original and derived meanings of the words, and to suggest translations which should be both simple and dignified.

GREEK TEXT-BOOKS.

		INTROD. PRICE
Allen:	Medea of Euripides	$1.00
Baird:	Greek-English Word-List	.30
Collar and Daniell:	Beginner's Greek Composition	.90
Flagg:	Hellenic Orations of Demosthenes	1.00
	Seven against Thebes, $1.00; Anacreontics	.35
Goodwin:	Greek Grammar (Rev. Ed.)	1.50
	Greek Moods and Tenses. Rev. Ed.	2.00
	Greek Reader	1.50
Goodwin & White:	New Anabasis, with Illustrated Vocabulary	1.50
	Selections from Xenophon and Herodotus	1.50
Hogue:	The Irregular Verbs of Attic Greek	1.50
Jebb:	Introduction to the Study of Homer	1.12
Leighton:	New Greek Lessons	1.20
Liddell & Scott:	Greek-English Lexicon. $9.40: Abridged	1.25
Parsons:	Cebes' Tablet	.75
School Classics:	Gleason's Guide to the Anabasis	.00
Seymour:	Homer's Iliad (School Edition with Vocabulary, Books I.–III., $1.25; Books I.–VI.	1.60
	Language and Verse of Homer. Paper, 60 cts.; Cloth	.75
	Homeric Vocabulary, 75 cts.; Selected Odes of Pindar	1.40
Sidgwick:	Greek Prose Composition	1.50
Tarbell:	Philippics of Demosthenes	1.00
Tyler:	Selections from Greek Lyric Poets	1.00
White:	Beginner's Greek Book, $1.50; First Lessons	1.20
	Oedipus Tyrannus of Sophocles	1.12
	Passages for Translation at Sight, Part IV.	.80
White & Morgan:	Anabasis Dictionary	1.25
Whiton:	Orations of Lysias	1.00

College Series.

Allen: Weekley's Prometheus Bound of Aeschylus. Text and Note Edition. Paper, $1.10; Cloth, $1.40.

Beckwith: Bacchantes of Euripides. Paper, 95 cts.; Cloth, $1.25.

Bennett: Xenophon's Hellenics, Books V., VII. Pa., $1.10; Clo., $1.40.

D'Ooge: Antigone of Sophocles. Paper, $1.10; Cloth, $1.40.

Dyer: Plato's Apology and Crito. Paper, $1.10. Cloth, $1.40.

Flagg: Euripides' Iphigenia among the Taurians. Paper, $1.10; Cloth, $1.40.

Fowler: Thucydides, Book V. Paper, $1.10; Cloth, $1.40.

Humphreys: Clouds of Aristophanes. Paper, $1.10; Cloth, $1.40.

Lodge: Gorgias of Plato. Paper, $1.35; Cloth, $1.65.

Manatt: Xenophon's Hellenics, Books I.–IV. Pa., $1.35; Clo., $1.65.

Morris: Thucydides, Book I. Paper, $1.35; Cloth, $1.65.

Perrin: Homer's Odyssey, Books I.–IV. Paper, $1.10; Cloth, $1.40; Books V.–VIII., Cloth, $0.00.

Richardson: Aeschines against Ctesiphon. Paper, $1.10; Cloth, $1.40.

Seymour: Homer's Iliad, Books I.–III. and Books IV.–VI. Each, Paper, $1.10; Cloth, $1.40.

Smith: Thucydides, Book III., Cloth, $1.65. Book VII., Paper, $1.10; Cloth, $1.40.

Towle: Protagoras of Plato. Paper, 95 cts.; Cloth, $1.25.

Editions of the Text are issued separately. Each, 40 cents.

Copies sent to Teachers for Examination, with a view to Introduction, on receipt of Introductory Price. The above list is not quite complete.

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,
Boston, New York, and Chicago.

Art in	Friday	8:30
English	Monday	8:30
History	Tuesday	1:30
Geometry	Thursday	8:30
Greek	Saturday	8:30

Latin	Thurs.	8 30
History	Sat.	8 30
English	Mons.	8 30
Greek	Sat	8 30